Transcending the Matrix Control System

www.montalk.net

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 3.0 Unported License.

Index

Metaphysics:


Conspiracy:

Conspiracy Intro | The Horrors of Public Education | Disease and Chemtrails | How to Block Microwave Mind-Programming Signals |

Matrix:

Matrix Intro | Why Negative Forces Seem to Respect Freewill | Emotional Management | The Art of Hyper Dimensional War | Human Simulacra | Realm Dynamics | Food for the Moon | Methods of Deception | Timeline Dynamics | The Trap of Combative Dualism | Advice for Newbies | Spiritless Humans |

Aliens:


Gnosis:

Gnosis Intro | 1 - Corruption of the Demiurge | 2 - The Philosopher's Stone | 3 - The Holy Grail | 4 - Ark of the Covenant | 5 - Mosaic Abuse of Demiurgic Technology | 6 - Nordic Aliens and the Grail Race | 7 - Dawn of a New Cosmic Day | 8 - Polar Mythology | 9 - The End | 0 - Gnosis Summary | Ancient Mariners and Demiurgic Technologies |

About:

Site FAQ | Truth Analysis | Key Concepts | Glossary (montalk.net) | E-mail Q&A |

Science:
Welcome

22 June 04 (article)
There is far more to this world than taught in our schools, shown in the media, or proclaimed by the church and state. Most of mankind lives in a hypnotic trance, taking to be reality what is instead a twisted simulacrum of reality, a collective dream in which values are inverted, lies are taken as truth, and tyranny is accepted as security. They enjoy their ignorance and cling tightly to the misery that gives them identity.

Fortunately, some are born with spiritual immune systems that sooner or later give rejection to the illusory worldview grafted upon them from birth through social conditioning. They begin sensing that something is amiss, and start looking for answers. Inner knowledge and anomalous outer experiences show them a side of reality others are oblivious to, and so begins their journey of awakening. Each step of the journey is made by following the heart instead of following the crowd and by choosing knowledge over ignorance.

Knowledge is the key to unlocking our potential. It gives us the self-determination, responsibility, and power necessary to cast off the chains of covert oppression. Knowledge is therefore the greatest protector, for it also gives us foresight to impeccably handle the challenges of life and, most importantly, to sidestep the traps on the path to awakening. The more you know of higher truths and apply what you know, the more you begin operating under higher laws that transcend the limitations of the lower.

Here you will find articles and resources that push the boundaries of fringe knowledge. Specific subjects include:

- alternative science, from orgonomy to quantum physics
- current events and the New World Order
- the role of extraterrestrial and hyperdimensional aliens
- how you are being farmed for your spiritual energies
- the Matrix and its agents
- how most people are asleep, what it takes to wake up
- possible cataclysmic futures and what they entail
- nonlinear nature of time and reality
- meaning of deja vu’s and synchronicities
- the reality shift into fourth density

For a more detailed outline of ideas at montalk.net, read Key Concepts. Take only what resonates with your inner sense of knowing and correlates with your observations and experience – leave the
This is a short overview of ideas presented at montalk.net. Deeper overviews of specific subjects can be found as intros to each section of the site.

God
- Source of all creation
- Projects two aspects of itself: pure individuated consciousness, and matter/energy
- Infuses matter/energy with fragments of its own consciousness
- Infinite intelligence exploring its infinite potential through an infinite variety of finite fragments
- Allows individuated fragments to expand via learning until they unite with the whole
- Does not diminish in size when a fragment is created…the process is holographic replication
- Also called Creator, Source, All, Nous

Soul and Spirit
- Aggregates of conscious energy, holographic fragments of God
- Consciousness is the only thing that actually exists in the absolute sense; it is an aperture into infinity.
- Individualized consciousness is a self-regulating portion of existence aware of its own existence.
- Soul is “lifespark”; characterized by basic awareness and consciousness.
- Spirit is “Godspark”; characterized by self-awareness and individualized consciousness.
- Mineral, plant, animal, and human souls differ in complexity and level of individuality.
- Whereas minerals, plants, and animals are growing their souls, humans are developing their spirit.
- In higher planes of reality, beings may exist without a physical body.
- While occupying a physical body, genetics tend to match spirit/soul nature — if spirit or soul is present.
- Large mismatches in genetics and soul frequency result in failure to incarnate properly.
- Slight mismatches cause gradual mutations in one to accommodate the other; genetics change epigenetically with soul growth and vice versa.
• The developed human individual is composed of physical body, soul (etheric and astral body) and spirit (volitional and mental body).

• Not all humans or animals have a spirit, just soul and body.

Evolution
• Physical evolution is due to natural selection, random mutation, conscious selection, and conscious mutation

• Human evolution is mostly artificial; either DNA mutates to conform to alien soul frequency, or else DNA is artificially altered through advanced genetic engineering by certain alien factions

• Because body must match soul, the death of a species means loss of compatible bodies for purposes of reincarnation. Thus physical life seeks physical survival and propagation of genes.

• The purpose of physical evolution is to accommodate and serve spiritual evolution

• Spiritual evolution is the accumulation of individuality, self-awareness, and knowledge

Morality
• All that encourages spiritual evolution is called positive, all that hinders it is called negative.

• What is painful, scary, and illegal is typically called “evil,” while what is nice, loving, and accepted is commonly called “good.”

• Good and evil as such are subjective and relative terms, while positive and negative are objective and absolute.

• Proper balance between good and evil, each in their proper place, results in positivity.

• Too much good leads to stagnation and jadedness, which is negative; too much evil leads to total destruction, which is also negative.

• Balance is maintained by having both in proper ratio and diametric opposition.

• Morality has to do with being good; conscience with being positive.

• Morality is programmed into us by our social and biological programming; conscience originates with our innate spiritual intelligence.

• One who fights solely for good or evil is a fool, one who fights strictly for positivity is a noble warrior.

• Such a warrior will incorporate the proper balance of good/evil within himself, then seek to restore balance to negative systems.

Freewill
• Some beings have more freewill than others.
• The more consciousness, self-awareness, or spiritual evolution one possesses, the greater one’s freewill.
• Possession of freewill is useless until it is recognized and applied.
• Beings with freewill can be coerced into behaving as though they have none.
• Knowledge allows these deceived beings to regain the full use of their former freewill.
• Humans in general are beings with enormous amounts of freewill.
• Negative alien factions have instated a control system to trick humans into limiting their own freewill.
• Negative alien factions possess less freewill than humans, thus their reliance upon technology and subtle coercion as a form of spiritual jujitsu to overcome a spiritually greater opponent.
• Beings with actively applied higher levels of freewill, can override the actions, thoughts, and realities of beings with lower levels of freewill.
• Beings with lower freewill, either directly or indirectly serve beings of higher freewill.
• Physicality allows the violation of freewill between physical beings, the main reason why physical existence is a valuable experience in the path of spiritual evolution.

Cosmology
• Reality has multiple timelines, dimensions, and planes of existence including physical, astral, and etheric.
• Physical reality is generated and sustained by a base level consciousness known as the Demiurge.
• Demiurge is the soul of the physical universe, an etheric and astral construct permeating, underlying, shaping, and perpetuating physicality.
• It is without independent sentient consciousness, freewill, or creativity; rather, it fashions our environment according to inputs from above and below itself.
• Demiurge provides the physical, etheric, and astral substance from which our bodies and environments are made.
• A portion of the Demiurge has become corrupted by negative inputs, and thus our reality is partially corrupted.

Physics
• The speed of light is how fast finite consciousness propagates through linear space.
• All of physical reality from beginning to end, in all its possible manifestations, was instantly created when the Creator projected its unified infinite self into an infinity of differentiated finite selves.
• Reality exists as a static fractal hologram, encompassing all possible modes of existence and experience.

• Through this holographic web of possibilities, consciousness chooses which frame of the hologram to experience, giving rise to the illusion of time.

• This choice is restricted by the Demiurge and the opposing freewill of other beings.

• The unified field is a hypercomplex quantum phase field, meaning three quantum phase coordinates in addition to three spatial coordinates.

• Flows, whirls, and compressions in the phase field give rise to electricity, magnetism, and gravity.

• By itself, the phase field is amorphous and encompasses all probabilities and quantum wave functions.

• Consciousness provides a coherent wave source interacting with the phase field and extracting a chosen slice of the hologram to experience as manifested physical reality.

• There are three types of time: linear time, phase time, and spiritual time. These correspond to the three quantum phase coordinates.

• Linear time is our conscious record of events, phase time measures the difference between parallel timelines, and spiritual time measures progress along the axis of spiritual evolution and freewill.

• Physical reality as we know it moves forward in linear time and is entropic.

• From a linear perspective, individual consciousness originates from the many probable futures and propagates backwards in linear time, negentropically affecting the probability of processes happening in the present.

• When individual consciousness is coupled to physical reality, it experiences forward linear time.

• When coupled to an astral, etheric, or higher dimensional body, time becomes nonlinear.

• When coupled to no body, time becomes nonexistent and the soul unites with its Source.

Humans

• The human body is a biological vehicle whose great genetic diversity allows for the incarnation of a great diversity of souls/spirits.

• Human genetics are unique in allowing potentially closer energetic interface with the Creator and the machine code of reality than most other physical lifeforms in the galaxy.

• While physically uniform, mankind is metaphysically diverse.

• Origins of souls in human bodies include native human, alien, animal group-souls, or artificial/nonexistent souls.
• Aliens genetically engineered different human races by crossing various alien races with each other, crossing them with hominid and neanderthal genetics already present on Earth, and successively tweaking what resulted.

• Some tweaks resulted in a psychically and intellectually handicapped type of human laced with numerous backdoors and programmed reactions, which is now our modern species.

Aliens

• Originate from other planets, dimensions, parallel realities, and times

• Have countless reasons for being here but can be classified into positive, negative, and neutral factions.

• Each alien race is composed of a mixed bag of factions of varying intentions; some races are more homogenous than others.

• Reside underground, inside mountains, on the Moon and other planets, in space, underwater, and in higher levels of reality.

• Have human proxy counterparts, which are these alien souls or spirits incarnated into genetically tweaked human bodies.

• Negative aliens abduct humans for mind programming purposes, physical and etheric food, and hybrid breeding experiments.

• Main negative groups at present are factions within the Gray, Reptilian, Mantis, and Nordic races.

• Grays primarily use humans as genetic stock to build a new hybrid race for further entrapping the human soul matrix.

• Reptilians and Negative Nordics want humans as a natural physical and spiritual resource.

• Positive Nordic (human-like) aliens exist but are a minority and therefore work clandestinely and cleverly to subvert the negative alien agendas.

New World Order

• NWO is a compartmentalized political entity seeking to subjugate humanity under a hostile alien agenda.

• The NWO hierarchy is composed from the bottom up of negative factions of law enforcement and military, organized crime, politicians, bankers, secret societies, aliens, and demonic beings from the lower astral planes.

• The current goal is to politically unite humanity into a global nation and then hand over the reigns to alien factions.

• This unification will be accomplished by rigged threats to humanity such as terrorism, nuclear war, planetary cataclysms, or staged alien invasions.

• America is the NWO’s biggest threat due to her gun culture and libertarian foundations. The
American government is the seat of the NWO.

Religion

• There is no religion higher than truth.

• Most organized religions are control systems to mentally and spiritually enslave humans and deprive them of freewill.

• Most religions have alien and demonic origins, or else are corrupted by negative alien factions and their human counterparts who seek control over the masses.

• Any religion demanding its followers pray or focus on an anthropomorphic deity outside themselves is aiding in the transdimensional economy of spiritual energy robbery and consumption by nonphysical beings.

• Many religions were created specifically by a parent alien race to be followed by its human counterpart race, a form of software to accompany the hardware.

• Faith should only be used for yet-unknowable, not dogmatically ignored, phenomena.

• Mainstream church is unnecessary as an aid to spiritual evolution and only acts as a social institution for social programming purposes.

• Direct gnostic communion with one’s inner guidance is more valuable than any religion, for it allows extraction of truth/wisdom from anything including scripture.

• Without that gnostic guidance, scripture remains nothing more than an indistinguishable mix of truth and falsehood.

Matrix Control System

• Control infrastructure of the corrupted Demiurge and its minions.

• Manipulates humanity via artificial synchronicity, demonic possession, alien mind programming, and limitation of perception to the five senses.

• A synchronicity is a meaningful coincidence, or something that appears accidental but has a hidden purpose; can come from positive or negative sources.

• Matrix suppresses individuality, awareness, and initiative by amplifying people’s weaknesses and subjecting them to emotionally draining melodramas.

• It is a tool used by spiritually atrophied beings to subliminally control spiritually powerful humans and feed off their energies.

• It is built and maintained by negative hyperdimensional beings who require this energy for survival and power.

• In more general terms, the Matrix is the invisible control system around us which manipulates our minds, emotions, and actions without us necessarily noticing, questioning, or fighting it.
• It uses a variety of human agents to accomplish its job; anyone who lacks a soul or spirit is a prime Matrix agent.

• Because they are directed by the Matrix, these agents exhibit coordinated hive-mind behavior.

• The Matrix interfaces with the underlying “machine code” of our reality and can manipulate certain aspects of our timeline to create circumstances that bias our choices.

• At its core, the Matrix is an etheric, pseudo-conscious machine that crunches data about our habits, emotional patterns, and present behavior in order to synchronistically insert an appropriate event in our life for effective control and the extraction of energy.

• Because we are more conscious than the Matrix, we can overcome it; it’s a matter of regaining and exercising our freewill through knowledge.

• Viewed from the proper metaphysical perspective, the Matrix is merely a training program indirectly helping us discover our weaknesses, strengthen our soul, and act from our spiritual core.

Positive Forces
• Beings whose thoughts, feelings, and actions are directed more by their conscience, wisdom, and love for the spirit in others than by negative impulses.

• Includes positive humans, positive aliens, positive time travelers, angels, spiritual guardians, archangelic forces, and the Creator.

• Operate via the law of non-interference for the preservation of freewill; they intervene only to counter negative interventions.

• Do not interfere with self-chosen karmic experiences since doing so would short circuit the learning process.

• Prefer guiding, nudging, dropping clues in most cases.

• Are more powerful, but more restrained, than the negative hierarchy.

If these ideas interest you, please read my book Fringe Knowledge For Beginners (free download). It gives a simple and concise overview of the most important and useful ideas I have to offer about these topics.

(index)

Metaphysics

Metaphysics Intro

30 July 04 (metaphys)
Beyond the material world, beyond the common rules, limitations, and assumptions we take upon ourselves, resides a greater spiritual reality operating under a set of higher principles that can help
us transcend foolishness, strife, and drudgery. Knowledge limited to the physical world and bound by the shortcomings of our five senses is not enough to attain freedom. Metaphysics is the study of higher knowledge, the deeper truths of life. We only have to recognize these higher truths and live by them to rise beyond old behavioral patterns and access a new vista of inconceivably wonderful possibilities.

All is Mind:

- Everything is consciousness, and all consciousness shares a common source. It is the ultimate center, the initiator of all causes, the core perceiver, the chooser.

- Consciousness is the dreamer (Creator), the dreamed (individualized consciousness), and the dreamscape (matter, space, energy, and time). There is no difference between reality and dreams except that reality involves mass consciousness holding the rules of reality rigid, whereas in dreams usually only the personal subconscious does so. Just as thought underlies objects in dreams, so does thought form the basis of matter in waking reality.

- Creation is infinite, composed of a unified infinite being (the Creator) and its expression as an infinite variety of finite beings. Stated another way, the Creator is an infinite being exploring its infinite potential through an infinite number of finite avenues. While individual evolutionary paths begin and end – beginning as the first stirring of awareness among primal matter and ending in unified congruency with the Creator – the grand experiment itself is without beginning or end because there are an infinite number of these paths.

- Because all life shares a common source, all life is interrelated and of equal worth. Only the expression of the underlying source differs from one lifeform to another. To differing degrees, each lifeform is endowed with freewill, the potential ability to choose independently of another being’s choice. Freewill adds a wildcard factor that makes the grand experiment interesting instead of boringly deterministic.

- Existence is both holographic and fractal in nature. It is holographic in the sense that all possibilities exist simultaneously and timelessly, while our individual consciousness interfering with this static pattern is what generates the illusion of dynamic experience. In other words, it is we who move through the static pattern, the dreamscape projected by the Creator. Existence is fractal in the sense that freewill requires discontinuities and inconceivable complexities in this static web of possibilities. A fractal exists as a static pattern created from a deterministic equation, but due to the infinite complexity of a fractal, its exploration by a conscious perceiver becomes a nondeterministic affair. And thus the game of life can be characterized by freewill even though the gameboard itself is static and deterministic.

- Progress arises when freewill moderates the interaction between two opposite forces. This forms a trinity generically composed of an active force, passive force, and neutralizing or balancing force. This trinity can be found everywhere that progress is to be found. For example, the tension of a string comprises the active force, inertia of the string creates the passive force, and the musician is the balancing force. From this is born music. Within individuals, the lower impulses form the passive force, higher spiritual callings of the heart
form the active force, and you – the incarnated consciousness – form the balancing force by choosing between these two opposite polarities. From this is born the progress of your personal evolution. Even the fractal boundary of the Mandelbrot set acquires its infinite complexity by being the balancing point beyond two opposing mathematical values, the finite and the infinite – which ties back into reality being a fractal hologram.

Good and Evil:

- Choice allows one to serve the Creator within oneself by exploiting others or by serving the Creator within others. The first path is identified as evil/darkness/negativity while the second path one associates with good/light/positivity. This sets up two branches of evolution – one that works against the laws of Creation and one that works with and for it. Both ultimately serve the Creator’s exploration of self, but only the positive path does so in a balanced manner. The tension between these two evolutionary paths enriches the grand experiment and provides the impetus for evolution by both sides.

- As Goethe wrote, the dark force “wills forever evil yet does forever good.” The self-serving path, despite giving the individual personal power, also puts him in unwitting subservience to higher powers. The highest power of all is the Creator, which those of the dark hierarchy unwittingly serve by providing the grand experiment with the passive force necessary for evolution. They provide the darkness against which the light stands out. Lucifer is referred to as the “lightbringer” because through self-serving actions, manipulation, and infliction of pain, self-serving individuals unwittingly give others the opportunity to see the light.

Cosmology:

- Finite consciousness can be classified into an octave scale of conscious development. This octave arises naturally because consciousness is vibration, and vibration strung between a beginning point (as matter) and ending point (as unity with the Creator) sets up a scale. This scale consists of eight notes: do re mi fa so la si do. The first note signifies sleeping consciousness and the last note represents active consciousness – and notice that these notes have the same name, illustrating how sleeping and active consciousness are just two expressions of the same infinite consciousness. The space between two notes on this evolutionary scale is called a “density” and there are seven total densities, each encompassing a particular class of conscious development. The higher densities have higher vibrations of consciousness and are more evolved.

- Whereas densities categorize different evolutionary levels of the dreamed, the terms “spacetime” and “timespace” classify different aspects of the dreamscape. Spacetime is the arena of causal interaction better known as physicality, where two or more beings interact while bound by a common set of physical laws. Spacetime is where experiences occur and lessons are learned – the ground, the battlefield, the classroom. By contrast, timespace is the sky, the command center, the teacher’s office. It is where individual beings have a bird’s eye view of what occurs in spacetime, providing a still point of contemplation, reflection, and planning of further spacetime experiences. This is the state one enters in between physical incarnations. The lower densities exist primarily in spacetime while the higher densities choose to exist almost exclusively in timespace.
Personal Spiritual Evolution:

- Upon incarnating into a physical body, we experience an occultation of awareness and forget who we are. Then social conditioning and biological impulses graft a false identity upon us that is in total discord with our true spiritual nature. Most people wear this false identity for life and fail to recognize and fulfill their true reasons for incarnating. But for others, intuition and experiences help them realize that there is more to life than the material world (matrix) admits. Throughout life these individuals experience higher impulses guiding them toward becoming lucid in this dream, while simultaneously lower impulses beckon them toward sleep. For those who consistently listen to their higher impulses, inner and outer life transforms and begins to operate under divine instead of material laws, removing limitations of the latter and opening up new possibilities. This is the process of transcending the matrix, using higher laws to override lower ones by developing and purifying one’s internal nature to resonate with higher realms of existence. This is a prerequisite for fulfilling one’s potential.

True Reality Creation (Part I)

16 July 04 (metaphys)

“You Create Your Own Reality” (YCYOR) is the predominant belief system of many New Agers. This doctrine states that reality is entirely the product of our minds, and that by controlling our beliefs, we may determine what happens to us: what events we focus upon, we attract; what we do not focus upon, we do not experience. Creating for oneself what one desires is called “manifesting”, and having all one needs in life is called “abundance.” For those who utilize YCYOR, manifesting abundance is usually a key goal.

Do we create our own reality? Yes we do, but not as freely as proponents of YCYOR claim. As it exists, YCYOR is a faulty paradigm whose incomplete nature was made so by design. This belief system is a dangerous spiritual weapon used by negative forces to disarm their potential victims. People who seek the New Age as an alternative to atheism or Christianity are not improving their situations. They are merely falling for further deception, the same trick with a new look. Like gravity, such deceptions can be traps, or they can be used as slingshots to propel one further along if one is careful and learns from mistakes.

There are several reasons why YCYOR is dangerous.

First, YCYOR fools its followers into believing they are more spiritually evolved than they truly are. Such New Agers are lulled into a false sense of security, an overestimation of their abilities and invulnerability, and thus fail to prepare against random accidents or attacks from negative forces.

Second, the practice of “manifestation” often becomes an act of black magic when used irresponsibly. Black magic is the manipulation of higher forces by lower individuals to their own spiritual detriment. For example, when corruptly implementing “manifestation” through visualization, ritual, chanting, or meditation, one can circumvent one’s life mission or agenda, extort one’s Higher Self, and violate the freewill of other sovereign humans.
Manifestation is used properly when it does not initiate a freewill violation. Manifesting or requesting has different consequences, depending on whether it is directed toward higher positive, higher negative, or lower negative beings. “Higher” and “lower” refers to their relative level of evolution compared to yours. To explain all this more clearly, a description of higher positive and negative forces is necessary.

One’s evolutionary level is determined by the lessons one has accumulated since metaphysical genesis as an individuated being. What higher positive and negative forces have in common is that they are both very aware and near to their respective evolutionary finish lines. The difference between them lies in their levels of wisdom, freewill and freedom, and what exactly they are evolving toward.

Negative beings evolve toward the sleeping half of the Creator, physicality. They are irresponsible, lack wisdom, and have little freedom or freewill.

Positive beings evolve toward the active half of the Creator, consciousness. They possess much responsibility and discernment, are wise, and enjoy more freedom due to their greater freewill and responsibility.

The importance of the preceding clarification lies in the fact that, despite having more awareness than you, higher negative forces actually have less freewill. Physical matter itself is the end product of their evolution, and it is obvious that matter has very little freewill. You can manipulate it at your leisure, and it does not resist. You can perfectly predict its behavior, meaning it is all predestined within a single unified equation, leaving no room for novelty or freewill. Simply by operating under a negative polarity, a being already acquires some of these characteristics.

The awareness that higher negative forces have, which exceed your level of awareness, is used only to create ever more sophisticated technologies and tricks to circumvent your freewill which they cannot directly violate except through backdoor methods and the abuse of what permission you have given them. One such permission is in the form of a contract with physicality you hold while existing in a physical body. Their abuse of this contract can be seen in their extreme reliance upon technology to try and manipulate you.

If you attempt to manifest something through the help of negative higher forces, two factors must be taken into consideration. First, they will not help you unless your desire is of a negative orientation, such as lust for power, financial elitism, or sexual prowess. Second, these will be given to you if you pay the maximum price, which is the circumvention of your life path, the lowering of your soul frequency, a stunting of spiritual evolution, and a commission of your soul energy paid to these higher forces. You lose freedom, freewill, responsibility and creativity in exchange for illusory power, money or sex. This Faustian deal is no bargain, but a metaphysical scam.

If you attempt to manifest something through the help of positive higher forces (including your Higher Self), you can only request help. Requesting respects their freewill, and leaves it to their wise discretion whether to help you or not. They also respect your freewill and do not intervene unless you allow them to help. Positive higher forces have more wisdom than you, and you would find it either impossible or detrimental to force them, via trickery through corrupted visualization and meditation, into fulfilling your desires. Should you succeed, most often you will have made a very bad choice which seemed desirable at the time only due to spiritual short sightedness.
It is clear that attempting to manipulate beings and forces higher on the spiritual hierarchy, be they of positive or negative polarity, can cause severe problems. It is best to make requests to positive higher forces, to allow them to help you in any way they can.

The positive (or STO, Service to Other) hierarchy is a network. This means higher evolved beings help lower evolved beings learn and evolve. In this way, those higher beings evolve as well. Here on earth, those who think they can fight through life alone are failing to make use of this network. They are succumbing to negative influences because of their pride, and must learn that because they are part of a network, requesting help from higher positive forces is perfectly fine. If the request is pure, those higher positive forces will help, especially if it aids in unblocking or accelerating one’s spiritual evolution.

To make a distinction, requesting is different from manifestation, in that it is an act of calling upon positive higher forces while respecting their freewill, leaving it up to them to help you if they deem it wise. Manifesting, on the other hand, is a direct way of influencing your reality. Concerning positive higher forces, requesting is the way to go. But with lower evolved beings, manifestation is the appropriate method.

Recall that manifestation works best when it does not violate freewill. It is fact that freewill cannot be violated if it does not exist or is not being used. Lower beings tend to either not have a particular aspect of freewill, or else fail to use it. They are therefore primed for influence by higher beings with more freewill. While this sounds insidious, remember that higher freewill implies greater lessons learned, higher evolution, and thus greater responsibility and wisdom. Your Higher Self has controlled your actions countless of times, to ensure that certain scripted events come to pass. This is no true violation of your freewill, just influence of behavior to best facilitate evolution.

Thus, when higher positive entities influences lower beings, it is done carefully and for the greatest benefit of all. It only becomes insidious when the awareness of the influenced being is purposely suppressed through technology, disinformation, or trickery, which is what negative forces do in order to lower the utilized freewill of their target to a level lower than their own, which makes the target easily manipulated.

As can be seen, YCYOR either fools a person into thinking he can control reality more than he really can (thus making him vulnerable to negative forces who exploit his ignorance), or else ensures that when he does influence his reality, it becomes an act of black magic which stunts his spiritual evolution.

This disinformative doctrine is a spiritual booby-trap, plain and simple. Its targets are tricked into disarming and corrupting themselves, avoiding the acquisition and utilization of knowledge, sabotaging their own lives, and later blaming the resultant misery on their failure to adhere even more strongly to YCYOR protocols.

The reason YCYOR works so well is because it is based on a lot of metaphysical truth. People awakening from more ignorant belief systems are lured by the truth content of YCYOR. But as with all disinformation, its designers care not so much what their targets know, but what they do. Despite a large truth content which influences what its followers know, the few lies and logical inconsistencies in the doctrine is enough to twist what they do. Negative forces want them to do what is in line with the negative agenda. Such targets are effectively “tenderized” for consumption
or “disarmed” for elimination.

Through twisted logic, certain faulty inferences are made from the true idea that we create our own reality. Some of these are listed below, followed by short explanations which will be elaborated upon later in this article.

“**If you don’t believe in evil, it cannot harm you because it will not exist in your reality.**”

- Not believing that evil can harm you if you ignore it, is like thinking that a truck cannot run you over if you close your eyes. It is better to open your eyes and step out of the way.

Negative beings have freewill and a definite objectivity in your reality. Many exist outside your range of control, and can choose to attack you if they wish. Whether they succeed in their attack is another matter, but the fact is that they will attack and succeed if they can.

Their ability to succeed depends upon the relative superiority of your freewill and the awareness required to access it, metaphysical protection by higher forces or Higher Self, and your physical and spiritual application of knowledge in the area of personal defense against such attacks.

Manifestation involves intent, the application of will in a particular direction of desired experience. This direction is available only if one is aware of its possibility. Therefore, ignorance cannot protect against anything. Protecting against an attack must be based upon awareness of the many ways such an attack can happen. Once you are aware of these ways, besides actually preparing to deal with them, you can take additional preventative measures by focusing your will upon the probable futures in which those specific methods of attack fail to materialize or succeed.

Manifesting protection only works against negative forces who have less freewill than you, who require that you be unaware of a particular mode of attack such that they can use it as a bridge into your reality. Freewill unused is freewill denied, for awareness is the key that unlocks what freewill you have already gained through earlier evolution.

Not being aware of an attack possibility leaves it unclaimed by your freewill, and it is like having no freewill at all. Like an unguarded bridge, this direction of experience involving a particular mode of attack is hidden behind a blind spot in your field of awareness. Negative forces, who would otherwise be unable to harm you due to their lower freewill status, can cross this hidden bridge, breach your reality, and implement an attack.

In such a case, preventing the attack does not involve fighting these forces directly, but merely cutting off their invasion route by guarding the bridge. This is done by becoming aware of their attack methods.

Should an attack succeed, whether it is through an unguarded bridge into your reality, or by negative forces who are simply more powerful than you, or perhaps were allowed into your reality by your protectors as a learning lesson for you, dealing with such attacks requires direct active interaction, physical and psychological preparation, and utilization of knowledge.

Thus, awareness/knowledge alone passively protects in the sense of “guarding the
bridges” and locking down one’s reality against attempted dislodging by lower negative forces. But once such forces break through, it is only through the active utilization of knowledge and awareness that these attacks are thwarted. If they break through, it means some lesson has not been learned.

For all of us, spiritual evolution is impossible without the active use and application of knowledge/awareness, for one implies the other. With this fact in mind, it becomes clear why awareness and knowledge alone can passively protect, but only sometimes. An explanation follows:

When you are more positively spiritually evolved than another being, you possess greater freewill than that being. You have learned everything that being has learned, and then some. All the attacks this being is capable of are limited to the scope of its awareness, of what it has learned already.

Because you have learned all this being has learned (evident by virtue of your higher spiritual evolution), all its attacks against you are actually redundant as far as learning lessons for you are concerned, for they cannot teach you anything you have not already learned.

However, they can remind you of things you have forgotten. That you have forgotten such lessons is the only reason such lesson-redundant attacks can happen at all. Remember the lesson by becoming aware of the attack method, and it loses all meaning and justification. Your freewill then shuts out that attack from happening since it would serve absolutely no purpose anymore.

In sum, the passive protection of awareness/knowledge happens only when that awareness/knowledge has already been utilized before, which led to an increase in one’s level of spiritual evolution.

Awareness/knowledge cannot passively protect if it has only recently been acquired but not yet utilized. It will surely be put to the test first, either in active preparation and prevention, or in direct “combat” against an attacking force.

A hostile being who is more evolved than you, despite having less freewill, will probably be more clever than you and thus trick you into accepting an attack. Its higher level of awareness means it has something to teach you. And you will learn the easy way or the hard way, depending on whether you prepared ahead of time or not.

As can be seen, spiritual osmosis occurs throughout creation. Higher evolved beings, no matter their polarity, always teach lower evolved beings, either directly or indirectly.

When a lower being attacks, its attack can be easily averted through remembrance or awareness of its possibility, which accesses the freewill required to end the attack whose resulting lessons you have already learned at some time.

When a higher being attacks, proper passively counteractive freewill does not exist and can be gained only through struggle and the application of knowledge/awareness, which increases your spiritual evolution to a level equal or greater than the attacker, at which point the attack ceases to materialize as long as you remain aware of your lesson.

In relation to Reality Creation, the preceding ideas reveal the fact that “manifestation” is
the passive application of knowledge/awareness, and should not (or often cannot) be
used to protect against things which one needs to experience in order to evolve.

This is why YCYOR’s “manifestation of protection” fails in many instances, for a
person using this doctrine might attempt to stop an attack from succeeding by applying
passive protection through manifestation, but the attack is either necessary to help the
person evolve, or to help him remember the lessons he has already learned but forgotten
or ignored. YCYOR can induce an intentional forgetting of lessons through blind faith,
the abandonment of knowledge seeking, and sheer ignorant bliss.

In fact, the induced ignorance guarantees that an attack happens successfully so that the
person eventually “wakes up” to the truth. Negative forces count upon this principle to
sustain their feeding. As long as the person can be continuously tricked into ignoring
lessons, the food supply stays plentiful. In that case, either the person is fed upon simply
because he can be fed upon (requiring active utilization of knowledge/awareness to
stop), or else the Higher Self repeatedly allows its lower self to be food until the lower
self awakens and puts an end to it (which necessitates the passive use of
knowledge/awareness).

“You can transform evil by sending it love.”

Because they have freewill, evolved negative forces can choose whether to accept your
love or not. And most often, they will not allow themselves to be transformed by it.
Trying to change a negative being this way is like pouring a man many glasses of water
and asking him to drown himself.

Often, this sent love can be of such a corrupted nature (due to misperception of what
love is) that it is of a frequency palatable by negative beings who then feed upon it.
Whether negative beings can feed upon an emotion depends not so much upon what
type of emotion it is, but whether it is based on awareness or ignorance. Sympathy and
compassion out of ignorance makes better food than righteous anger, for example.

Sympathy and compassion out of knowledge would mean sending love to beings who
have not yet chosen their polarity, who out of their suffering request and accept the love
they receive. They thirst for the water set before them. Discernment and experience is
required for any compassionate person to know when this is the case. Sometimes there
are etheric vampires seeking to steal the energy of the compassionate by feigning
distress, and giving one’s love to these people only leads to an energy drain in oneself.
Whatever the case, one thing is certain: that the forces commonly considered “evil”
have chosen their polarity and therefore cannot be changed. They can only be
understood, for that results in empowerment of the perceiver rather than attempted
freewill violation of the perceived.

So as far as “transforming evil” is concerned, external events cannot change one’s
polarity (positive or negative, STO or STS), merely reinforce what one has already
freely chosen to be.

Receiving an act of kindness may make a positive person beam with more positivity, or
make a negative person salivate with the prospect of feasting upon an easy prey. Being
physically abused may make a positive person reflect upon how horrible such abuse is
and how he would not wish the same upon anyone else, while a negative person may
abuse others out of vengeance and hatred.
Therefore, being nice to evil, showing it how act positively, sending it love and light, and acting chivalrously toward it usually ends in complete failure for you, and a full stomach for the intended target. Negative forces do not play by the same rules as positive forces, as they have no respect for respect, and no empathy for empathy.

You cannot transform evil, merely help it evolve. Yes, negative forces are on a path of evolution. They are evolving toward the Creator just like you are. The only difference is that they are evolving toward the sleeping half of the Creator, associated with matter, lack of freewill, and determinism.

Therefore, if you cannot transform a negative being (you can only cautiously provide the opportunity for change on its behalf, and allow it to choose its way) you can at least help it evolve, which also helps you evolve. This is done by acting responsibly and not feeding them. You learn how to better defend yourself, and they learn how to better attack their targets.

Within the negative hierarchy, beings force each other to evolve through constant competition, tricks, manipulation, extortion, and violence. Within the positive network, beings help each other evolve through creativity, compassion, teaching, sharing, and learning.

To be positive or STO consists of two qualities: having gained the lessons required to interact harmoniously within one’s polarity, and having gained the lessons needed to interact vigilantly with the opposite polarity.

And here lies another fault of YCYOR, the idea that all is “love and light” and one need merely think fluffy thoughts and put on rose colored glasses, and all will be fine. Another aspect to disinformation is missing information. Here, New Agers are taught only half the equation. Christians are taught the same thing with the “turn the other cheek” idea which is actually a corruption of the original meaning of the phrase.

The half of the equation they do possess involve the ideals of creativity, compassion, teaching, and so on. But when it comes to dealing with negative forces, they are wholly ignorant and unprotected sheep. This is another principle that negative beings count upon, for it makes their targets easy to feed upon and control.

When opposite polarities interact, problems can occur if the positive being treats the negative being as though it were positive. Rather than simply behaving “nicely”, being inclined toward STO means not feeding STS; being positive means not feeding negative. No matter your polarity, the only way a negative being will learn is through resistance against its manipulations or attacks, on your part.

If you were of negative polarity, you would often take the initiative to attack another less powerful negative being, but if you were positive, you would only act in self-defense and never actively provoke anything, merely respond if your response was “requested” by another being through its act of aggression.

The best way for positive to interact with negative is to not feed them, to act only in response to a hostile request, to stick up for oneself if attacked, and to pick one’s battles wisely. Treating them as though they were positive only feeds them more, and burns oneself out, like the short-circuiting of two batteries incorrectly connected.
This reveals yet another ploy of the dark side, that of creating the illusion that a hostile being is just like the positive target. Matrix agents such as spiritless humans, for example, utilize the soul energies of their targets to mirror back at them their own personality and essence.

This is a method of spiritual camouflage. The target then stays open to manipulation and feeding, and since the predatory behavior of the spiritless humans often contradicts the image he maintains in the mind of the target, there will be confusion and psychological friction in the mind of the target which generates more energies to be consumed by the spiritless human.

The trick in dealing with spiritless humans is in realizing who and what they are, then adjusting one’s perceptions, emotions, and actions to reflect that new awareness. Because they are less evolved than their targets, passive protection of knowledge/awareness often works very effectively in stopping their attacks. If this does not work, then asserting one’s freewill by standing up against them and coolly putting them in their place is necessary.

“There are no limits.”

In truth, there really are no limits. But how easy is it for you to shed your present limits? Is it enough to merely think to yourself “there are no limits” and off you float above the ground as gravity, formerly a limit, no longer remains part of your reality? The fault of YCYOR is in making the phrase “there are no limits” appear more general, easily applicable and achievable than it really is.

While we exist here in physicality, there are several types of limits.

Illusory limits are those that truly do not exist, except in your mind as a consequence of your lack or suppression of awareness. These include such things as personal insecurities, false beliefs about your intellectual or physical abilities, glass ceilings, and subconscious programs.

Practical limits exist at the boundaries of your spiritual evolution. They are things you are not capable of because you have not evolved to the point where you can do them. Surpassing these limits requires spiritual evolution, often through struggle and the active use of knowledge/awareness.

Imposed limits are those placed upon you by beings with higher freewill than you. They may be aspects of your own consciousness, such as your Higher Self. These limits are mere handicaps, placed upon you so that you can exist within this reality and learn other lessons.

One such limit is the “veil of amnesia” we are born with, which prevents us from easily remembering all our other incarnations. Not knowing them, we start each life with a fresh page, keeping only our soul essence from our “last” life. This system maximizes the richness of experience and the rate of spiritual evolution. Were we to recall all our lives all the time, life would get boring very fast, and old habits would become very hard to drop.

Another imposed limit is our predominant inability to communicate telepathically or move objects with our minds. Could we do this, the world would be a much easier place
in which to live. There would be no secrets, no New World Order. But we did not come to 3D earth to have such an easy life.

Earth is like a weight training room…resistance all around, the quickest way to bulk up. Too little resistance, and progress is slow. Too much resistance, and progress is impossible. The purpose of true Reality Creation is to remove unnecessary weights so that resistance is just right.

The greatest example of an imposed limit is that of physicality, including all its laws which are nicely described in the laws of physics. Negative forces abuse physics through their technology, which can result in manipulations so cunning that most people cannot even fathom their existence.

Practically speaking, then, there are indeed limits. What you must do to surpass these limits determines how objective they are. Illusory limits are mainly psychological, and getting rid of them will do wonders enough in one’s life. No limits are insurmountable, it is just that some limits are damn hard to break through.

When YCYOR says “there are no limits”, it accurately states that illusory limits are not real. However, one would be a fool to think that the phrase applies to all types of limits, that imposed or practical limits are as easily bypassed as illusory ones. Some extreme forms of YCYOR do incorporate this idea, and its followers think that reality is so much a function of their belief that they need merely believe they are invincible, and so they become it. Never mind that they lack the spiritual evolution and awareness to do so, and are attempting to violate their own Higher freewill. They think they can exist in a world without limits just by changing their 3D mind or subconsciously programming themselves through visualization or self-hypnosis. While this does work great to rid oneself of illusory limits, other limits remain.

Now, there are cases of people who can levitate, teleport, bend spoons, and so on. Mind is definitely capable of bypassing the laws of nature. We hold a contract with physicality, which states that we collectively agree to participate by its rules. Our world or imposed limits is indeed held up by self-imposed limits, but to break through these limits, one must be at the same level that one created the limit to begin with.

For example, if you impose upon yourself a limit made on the subconscious level through some trauma followed by autosuggestion, then it is on that subconscious level which the limit must be removed. If it is the Higher Self that holds the agreement with physicality, then it is the Higher Self which can break that contract. (Let the distinction be made, however, that using technology to levitate, teleport, and time travel is a way of manipulating physicality itself, not our Higher Self).

It is clearly unwise to think that you can, at a lower state of consciousness, void the limit created and imposed from a higher state of consciousness without actually going there. Going there is often the lesson of the limit in the first place. Some of these imposed limits can be forcibly surpassed through intense meditation, but it is a way of short circuiting one’s own evolution for the gain of a few new tricks. The tricks themselves are not “bad”, merely premature. When the timing is right and they are well-earned, they will be put to good use and aid one’s evolution.

Occult practitioners of the black arts try to develop their psychic faculties without a corresponding increase in beingness, which only results in their descent further into the
maw of the negative hierarchy.

For all these reasons, while there are no limits as they can all be surpassed someday and somehow, due to our present physical and mental natures, we cannot break through all limits just yet. It is necessary to be aware of what limits one is truly up against, and which ones can be changed or voided.

Negative forces with lower freewill, or perhaps higher negative forces who do not wish to violate freewill but rather coerce their targets through deception for the purposes of consuming them fresh and whole, use illusory limits to the fullest extent possible.

Illusory limits are those we give power to, despite their actual nonexistence. Nonexistent limits do not violate our freewill. If we give them power and impose those limits upon ourselves, they were indeed inspired by negative forces but actually implemented by us, and thus the negative forces do not dirty their hands with our own freewill violations, for there is no violation if we imposed it upon ourselves.

Imposed limits, such as physicality, can be used against us by negative forces as well. If you are falsely accused of a crime, engineered so by clever negative forces, and are consequently jailed, what keeps you behind bars is the solidity of the walls and threat of apprehension and violence if you try to escape. In this way, despite physicality being voluntarily maintained by a higher aspect of your own consciousness, it is being used by negative forces against you.

Your Higher Self does not sit idly by, not noticing any of this. It allows it to happen to teach you a lesson. Should the case arise where negative forces attempt to physically harm you in such a way that no lesson is learned and many other future lessons would be postponed, the Higher Self can intervene and re-arrange the linear timeline so that negative forces fail. In this way, some people are protected from harm despite massive targeting by negative forces. Nevertheless, the possibility that physicality itself can be used against you is reason enough to actively use your knowledge and prepare for contingencies.

Concerning illusory limits of the subconscious nature, be aware that subconscious programs are actually surrogate motivators. This means they are passive redirectors of your will, and can in themselves open you up to undesirable probable futures. Before, it was mentioned that struggle often accompanies spiritual evolution. Struggle does not always mean pain, it simply means active application of one’s will to progress and learn. As an analogy, rock climbing can be considered a struggle, but it is still fun for many who do it as a sport. When it comes to spiritual evolution, painful struggle is actually unnecessary, while fun struggle is the ideal way to evolve.

Psychologically painful struggle happens for one main reason: the dissolution of old subconscious programs. Struggle itself is an aspect of spiritual evolution, but the pain results from having to uproot old programmed illusions that one has held near and dear all one’s life. The more programmed one is with the old ways of viewing the world, and the more inertia one has against change, the greater the pain accompanying spiritual evolution. It is not a matter of struggle versus no struggle, but painful struggle versus fun struggle.

Like a stuck rudder, programs or surrogate motivators make it difficult to get one’s “boat” traveling in the right direction. Moving forward anyway creates friction, which
eventually heats and dissolves the programs, but not without causing some discomfort. Progressing without pain can only happen in two ways: either you have already evolved to the approaching level and are merely retracing your steps, or you are struggling with a fun attitude.

However, painful struggle can also be a sign that you are venturing beyond the planned boundaries of your pre-incarnational objectives and the recommendations of your Higher Self. This is most evident if you feel like you are moving against the grand flow, things are going terribly for you in life, it takes much willpower to succeed, and you must often employ negative or STS tactics to do so. Falling into STS is like sinking into quicksand. It is a struggle to stay afloat, and even more of a struggle to get out. Your painful struggles in life are always the results of errors committed or allowed by some part of you, which placed you temporarily into a negative orientation that now requires restitution.

If you are painfully struggling for any reason other than dissolving your subconscious programs or resolving karmic issues, it is very likely that you are not acting in alignment with your Higher Self. Like assembling flat-pack furniture, if you are struggling and things keep turning out horribly, you are not following the instructions.

Fun struggle is accompanied by a thrust or intense motivation, an inner glow of joy and enthusiasm, and results in a hearty satisfaction. This is the ideal way to evolve spiritually, and virtually guarantees that one is on the right path, in alignment with one’s Higher Self. When in this “flow”, events in life click into place perfectly. Once one is relatively free from negative surrogate motivators, one is following the flow of the right destiny current and can simply “let go” and have fun with life, struggling but evolving in a positive manner.

Lack of struggle is equally suspicious. Fun without challenge, without inner satisfaction, often comes from surrogate motivators influencing one’s actions and perceptions. More often than not, something like this is considered “fun” because it is a lack of “pain”, be it social, physical, or psychological pain. For example, if you are programmed with social expectations that drinking and partying are key steps in securing one’s self-worth, and that not having a bar life makes one lame and unaccepted, then one can squander away much of life in a drunken stupor, blissfully thinking all is fun with this programmed lifestyle.

Much of humanity is lost on a permanent detour off their primary intended life path, due to these surrogate motivators which have been grafted onto their minds from birth via clever programming by negative forces through media, culture, religion, and sometimes directly through abductions and mind control.

Getting rid of these grafts is the first and best action one can take in one’s quest for a limitless reality. This will accelerate one’s evolution, and soon practical limits fall away until an evolutionary state is reached that is equal to the state where such limits were imposed. Those limits then dissolve as well.

Another trap of YCYOR and the New Age paradigm has to do with “resolving issues” and “removing karmic debt” via cheap gimmicks which only give a temporary illusion that things have been fixed. They are merely patched over and ignored, all the while festering beneath an inflated “happy” persona.
Resolving karma can only happen through forgiveness that permeates deeply into one’s subconscious. It is subconscious regrets and grudges that make us choose to incarnate again with karmic life experiences to resolve them. Hypnosis is one of the few methods that can resolve karma without having to go through these experiences because this forgives the issues on the subconscious level where they reside. All karma necessitates is the learning of a lesson, not necessarily the experience of karmic events. If such lessons can be learned under hypnosis, then all the better.

Nevertheless, there are those who ignore their issues rather than confronting them, who try to act positively, think positively, but are doing nothing to get rid of their surrogate motivators via an active increase their awareness and utilization of knowledge. Rather than learning a lesson, they would rather do some meditations, “clearing” sessions, crystal work, or other methods to cover up the warning signs that those lessons must be learned. The way they try to think and act is opposite of what they are on the inside, and this conflict builds up a lot of anger and anguish. It is amazing how many people, who claim to be love and light New Agers, are actually two-faced, petty, flaky, and moping individuals. They are an example of the fact that there is no shortcut to learning.

“Evil is the absence of good.”

A rock lacks the quality of good. But it is not evil. So lacking good does not make something evil, and evil therefore is not the absence of good. Evil, characterizing the negative forces, is a force unto itself. It exists as an independent though parasitic creation, and is ultimately a product of freewill.

The sleeping half of the Creator, to which all those on the negative path are evolving, lacks any and all creativity. This is why matter itself, though conscious, has almost no freewill and is thus characterized by physical laws which allow the perfect prediction of all future states of such matter (not counting quantum effects, which arise from the interface between the conscious and sleeping halves of the Creator on a subatomic level). If it can be predicted, it can be controlled, and thus it has no freewill. The point here is to emphasize that negative forces lack creativity. This is not to say they are boring, but merely limited in what they can do. They are always one step behind positive forces, because the latter have the upper hand spiritually when it comes to metaphysical sovereignty and who gets to control whom.

The negative hierarchy, despite having its own individuality, must exploit positive beings and consume their soul energies because they themselves lack originality, creativity, and negentropy, and use the creative soul energies of positive beings (which such beings suckle from the Creator by virtue of their spiritual purity) to counteract the entropic nature of their own evolution. A clock, once wound, will wind down again unless more energy is put into the system. Negative forces need the creative energy to keep up what they are doing, otherwise they will decay.

So evil is not the absence of good because it has its own identity and freewill, though it does depend upon good for its survival because it is parasitic in nature.

YCYOR is once again faulty in inferring that since “evil is the absence of good”, evil can be negated just by putting some good in its place. An evil person simply lacks good, according to this idea, and so being good to that person and bombing him with love and light will fill him up with goodness and thus erase the evil, much like annihilating a hole in the ground by filling it with dirt. Of course, in truth evil has its own solid identity,
and prefers to feed upon good, so YCYOR is the perfect mechanism allowing them to do this.

“Nothing happens to you unless you allow it.”

This is true, but the question is, which part of you allowed it? If you stand in the street and a truck is barreling toward you with no intention of stopping, what will allow it or prevent it from running you over? Is it the part of you that is reading this right now, who decides things as mundane as picking up a newspaper or making some toast, or is it the part of you considered the Higher Self? Obviously, it is something like the latter. That is, unless you have personally evolved in this body to a state identical with your Higher Self, in which case reality becomes plastic to you since then you can break the contract with physicality. And do not let YCYOR fool you into thinking you are by default functionally identical with your Higher Self, unless you can stop bullets in mid air like Neo at the end of The Matrix.

You can only allow/prevent things that have less freewill than you. And then, only with proper awareness to direct your will in the right direction. Depending on your level of evolution, these allowances or preventions can range from stopping attacks from lower negative entities, to influencing whether or not you get pulled over by a cop this weekend, or whether your car makes it through without a breakdown on a road trip. These things involve situations with elements that have less freewill than you do, and therefore you can influence them. You are directing your influences downward on the spiritual hierarchy, and that is absolutely fine by all universal laws.

While most everything that happens to you has been allowed at some level or other, there are exceptions. There exist times when, through the leverage of your ego-level freewill, you take actions yourself which mess things up. One example is suicide. If you commit suicide, the Higher Self will not reinsert you in a corrected timeline where it did not happen. It can make it more difficult to carry out, however, to get you to think twice about your decision. Examples include a gun jamming, or rope breaking, etc… In this case, it was allowed to happen, but by you personally, not your Higher Self.

When a negative entity more powerful than you attacks, this is allowed by the Higher Self because nothing negative that can harm you exists on an equal or greater level than the Higher Self. It therefore has jurisdiction and authority to control and correct all that happens beneath it, though the Higher Self has the wisdom and knowledge to do this with utmost discretion.

When an event happens, be it an attack, an accident, a synchronicity, or something pleasurable, most likely it happened for a reason. It would be wise to reflect upon possible meanings and extract the lessons as efficiently as possible. If not, the lesson may be introduced again and more unjustified pain introduced. The reason may be as simple as that an attack happened because it could. The lesson would then be to ensure than it cannot happen again.

The preceding half of this article listed and described the faults of YCYOR. Numerous as these faults are, the idea of “reality creation” is based upon much truth. One must be careful not to throw out the baby with the bathwater, to discard the facts because of errors in their interpretation.

Just because YCYOR is dangerous, not all variations of reality creation are necessarily false. It does not mean that reality is so objective that our thoughts, feelings, and beliefs have no effect upon it,
that reality is nothing more than harsh struggle for survival by tooth and claw. Manifestation and requesting are real tools available to you, that if used properly and wisely, can make your life as easy as it should be.

What it all comes down to is the following:

You incarnate in this life to learn a certain set of pre-arranged lessons. Through synchronicity, your Higher Self guides the flow of your life on an archetypal level to introduce these lessons when you are ready to learn them. It is up to you, via your freewill, to determine how you turn these archetypal scripts into concrete experiences. You choose how you learn your lessons, the easy way based on awareness, or the hard way based on ignorance.

Under ideal circumstances, you always learn these lessons the easiest way, which is a way most closely aligned with the mindset of the Higher Self, a virtuous spiritual position endowed with awareness and discernment.

But there is much possibility for going astray. Because you have freewill, you can commit “errors”. Even worse, negative forces exist to trick and manipulate you into straying as far from your life path as possible. There is no wrong path through life, as all lead to you learning the same lessons in the end. Nevertheless, the farther you stray from the easiest path, the more lengthy, convoluted, and painful the path toward learning that particular lesson.

Thus, for every given lesson, you choose the degree of painful suffering necessary to learn it. If you choose with discernment, no suffering is necessary.

The more ignorant you are, the more painful your struggle. Pain, anguish, and suffering out of ignorance are what negative forces feed upon. They have a vested interest in manipulating you into making ignorant choices. Instead of going home on a clear and straight highway, they trick you into taking a long detour with many tollbooths along the way.

The proper use of manifestation and requesting is to help you learn your lessons as easily as possible. Because learning lessons is all that matters, there is no virtue in choosing the most painful struggle toward achieving them. That is actually a sign of ignorance. Ideally, learning them should be fun, and if you are aware and make good use of what knowledge you have attained, learning will indeed be fun.

Not all lessons must be experienced with pain, because it is obvious that clever people can learn from the mistakes of others. This arises from the concept that, in truth, we are all “one” on a fundamental soul level, and learning from the mistakes of others is an action that illustrates one’s correct understanding of this principle. Always having to experience something negative for oneself is a sign that one is separate, alone, and more individuated than one truly is. The price of that ignorance is having to suffer through a painful experience. Experience is a means to an end of learning a lesson. Those who make experience the end goal are going down the negative path.

There are two ways to end the pain of an unnecessarily arduous path. One either fights to get back on track (such as completing karmic issues or eradicating subconscious programs), or one ignores the pain and continues on the detour thinking all is fine. The latter path is one advocated by YCYOR, where serious problems are ignored rather than confronted and overcome.
If you have made a bad choice in life and are presently painfully struggling because of this choice, the only thing you can do is stop straying even more; you must grit your teeth and gradually move forward in the right direction. It may be difficult to do so, but going forward with a commitment to awareness and discernment is the only permanent solution.

Those on the negative path are ones who have chosen the detour, the path of separation, and have accepted the resulting struggle as a way of life. Rather than getting back on track, they toughen themselves to face the pain, and make an industry out of pulling other beings off track and into the wilderness to be fed upon. Their subjectivity fools them into thinking that their fantasy interpretations of reality are objective.

Manifestation and requesting are methods at your disposal to help you stay on smooth road, or to help you to return if you have strayed. Once you are on that road, you must still move forward. Manifesting and requesting are auxiliary methods to accompany the main thrust of your existence which consists of actively using knowledge to evolve and gather more knowledge, to change your environment which helps other beings evolve as well. Manifestation and requesting cannot be relied upon alone, but they should also not be abandoned.

Continue to Part II

True Reality Creation (Part II)

16 July 04 (metaphys)

Using proper manifesting and requesting in conjunction with initiative and action on your part is the quickest way to learning the lessons you came here to learn. Manifesting is how you use your metaphysical abilities to synchronistically influence components of your reality, including the lower freewill beings in it, to keep your life from being unnecessarily difficult. Requesting is how you allow higher forces in your network to watch over you and guide you toward what is best for your evolution and do things that you simply cannot do because of your practical limits.

The guidance, protection, and ease acquired from these two methods merely clear the path through life, but you must still make the effort (fun struggle) to progress and move forward through it. This is why manifesting and requesting (two components to reality creation) comprise only half of proper living. The other half is personal effort and action.

YCYOR promotes the idea that these two things are sufficient to create everything one needs, that no effort at all is necessary. Its followers become armchair experiencers. Like spectators of television football games, they may be watching exercise happen, but they themselves become increasingly out of shape. Doing reality creation without putting forth personal effort leads to an analogous situation, spiritual stagnation.

Here is an example of the balanced application of reality creation principles with personal action:

Let us say you wish to get a better job. Just manifesting and requesting alone will often not be enough to make this happen, if you do not make personal effort to send out resumes and go to interviews. Although possible, it is very unlikely that you can simply sit at home next to the phone and expect a company to call you out of the blue and offer you the job you want. In addition to
reality creation, personal effort is absolutely necessary to get results.

On the other hand, consider the possibility that you are too skeptical or proud to even try proper reality creation. In this case, you can send out resumes and go to interviews, but you will find that your “luck” is absent. You must apply a great amount of effort to secure that better job. If you do reality creation, however, you will find your luck increasing and the perfect job popping up after just a few tries. In that case, you would have made enough personal effort to learn the required lesson, but because you utilized reality creation, which is part of your toolbox in life, you did not have to struggle with more pain than necessary.

In practice, however, your Higher Self ultimately decides what is best for you. If your effort at Reality Creation is in conflict with your Higher Self’s judgment, you will not succeed in getting what you want. Often you will later find that what you wanted would have really been a bad idea had you gotten it.

To clarify, just the right amount of personal effort is synonymous with fun struggle. More personal effort than necessary is defined as painful struggle in this article. Struggle or effort is necessary for spiritual evolution. Such effort is optional when you have already learned a particular lesson but are temporarily handicapped due to amnesia of that lesson. Thus, some people can do well with reality creation and not need to apply as much personal effort as others who require that effort to evolve. Reality creation works best for those who are most highly evolved, who do not need to learn those lessons from scratch.

YCYOR makes people think they need less personal effort to get through life than they really do. Illusory limits make people think they need more personal effort. Both are traps designed by negative forces to make their targets either easier to prey upon, or more productive energy producers.

But remember, as far as manifesting is concerned, you can influence reality when it does not violate anyone’s freewill. Also remember that freewill cannot be violated if it is not being utilized, and this fact alone allows one to create stupendous synchronicities that incur no spiritual detriment, just by manifesting one’s virtuous desires. So you do not need to be “highly evolved” (whatever that means to you), just more evolved than the components of reality you need changed to fulfill your manifestation.

A mundane example is getting a good parking spot at the supermarket. You can manifest that reality, and most often it will materialize. What happens is that everyone else in the parking lot is too dazed to realize that they can do the same, and they will either miss that good spot “reserved” for you, or else someone will pull out just when you need it. They will pull out at the right moment because their behavior was influenced by your attempted manifestation to create that synchronous timing. That they pulled out at that precise moment does not violate their freewill, either because the act is too trivial, or because they were too unaware to behave otherwise.

Awareness is what anchors your freewill to a particular thing. If you do not have awareness of something, your freewill does not claim it, and it therefore becomes easily malleable by forces who cannot or choose not to violate your freewill. The following four possibilities illustrate the “rule” of this principle:
When you are aware of something no one else is aware of, you can change it easily by manifestation techniques, declaration of your intent, and direct physical action. Because no one else is aware of it, your change of this element of your (and their) reality does not violate their freewill. The only resistance you may encounter in this case is non-allowance by your Higher Self who may see some changes you are attempting to manifest, as detrimental to your learning curriculum.

When you are aware of something that others are aware of as well, a potential tug of war between opposing freewill may occur. Who wins depends on who had the greater amount of freewill and the knowledge to utilize it. Should you have tremendous amounts of freewill, or else are no longer bound to the realities of others, your own reality becomes easily and directly changeable by you, as easily as is done in a lucid dream. But do not be fooled into thinking you are necessarily at that level already.

When you are not aware of something that no other humans are aware of either, then that portion of your environment becomes fluid, much like an unobserved particle becomes a wave function, an enfolded hologram. These elements of your environment are most easily changed by beings who are aware of it, but who cannot or choose not to violate your freewill otherwise. Because you and no one else is aware of it, no freewill anchors that element of reality, and it is free for alteration by lower beings or respectful higher beings.

When you are not aware of something, but another human or entity is indeed aware, then that portion of your reality coupled to theirs is easily altered by them, for such an alteration does not violate your freewill since you did not anchor it to that changeable element.

These four possibilities follow from the laws of freewill and how we create our reality in concert with others. These possibilities also follow from the macroscopic consequences of quantum mechanical laws.

Schroedinger’s Cat, a classic thought experiment dealing of quantum mechanics, illustrates these principles, though given a few corrections to the experiment. The cat, which at any moment may be dead or alive, is physically shielded inside a box through which the scientists can gather no data to determine whether it is, in fact, dead or alive. In truth, it is not necessarily lack of physical perception that makes reality fluid, that allows the cat to be in a wave state of both dead and alive possibilities, but rather lack of conscious awareness of that element. The scientists staring at the box, wondering if the cat is dead or alive, are influencing and objectifying the state of the cat because despite not being able to see into the box, their consciousness is still directed toward it, they are still aware of the experiment and thus influence it. Consciousness of the cat aside, if the scientists went out to lunch and forgot about the experiment, and no one else in the world was thinking about the experiment either, then is the cat indeed in a wave state including both possibilities. But the moment anyone focuses their attention on the experiment, whether they know the cat’s state or not, the experiment reverts to a non-wave state.

Therefore, when it comes to the fluid nature of elements in one’s own reality, it is not enough to merely close one’s eyes, but actually disengage one’s freewill from it by entirely forgetting about that element. This frees it up for influence by other forces.

Thus, the less aware and alert you are, the more malleable or fluid your reality is to other beings who wish to change it without violating your freewill. Having awareness of something locks it
down, then only alterable by direct physical action, or only by metaphysical action on the part of 
beings with more freewill than you who wisely override your lockdown of that element of reality to 
ensure your learning lessons flow in smooth sequence.

Therefore, fluidity of your reality is not necessarily detrimental, for most of reality creation requires 
such fluidity before reality can be reshuffled into what you demand or request. The trick is in 
becoming aware of all possible changes (locking them down to prevent influence from lower 
negative forces), and then stating your request specifically and honestly, which opens up one of 
those possibilities to fluidity. If your request is specific enough, lower negative forces cannot take 
advantage of that fluidity because it only flows in a direction that is as you specified, without 
loopholes or opportunity for negative twisting.

It is important to note that if you anchor your freewill to an element of “reality” that does not 
actually exist, but was artificially created by negative forces, then the creator of that artificial 
element essentially controls you through that anchor. These artificial reality elements can consist of 
false paradigms, false perceptions, subjective illusions, and so on.

Another critical thing to realize is that when you do reality creation, unless it is in the form of 
manifesting which influences the behavior of lower evolved beings, reality transforms only because 
something higher than your present state of consciousness made it change.

Reality creation, in the form of requesting, changes reality indirectly via a higher force. This higher 
force often makes it clear to you that you were not the creator of that change, merely its requester. 
How does it do so? By fulfilling the request in such a way slightly different from the way you 
requested it. The synchronicities created to fulfill your request often come as surprises, in a way you 
did not expect.

The primary reason for this is to prove that you, the ego-level consciousness, are not complete 
master of your reality.

The secondary reason behind surprising synchronicities is that synchronicities in general happen 
most easily when that aspect of reality is fluid; it is fluid because you are unaware of it, which in 
turn leads to its surprising nature when the requested change materializes. If you make a request, 
then keep expecting it to materialize, never allowing that possibility to become fluid due to your 
constant obsessing and lack of faith whether it happens or not, if your request is indeed to be 
fulfilled, it must happen through elements of your reality that are still fluid, not locked down by 
your constant expecting, and thus consist of elements you are not aware of, which will seem 
surprising when they create a given synchronicity.

This leads to the core issue of how reality works and how synchronicities happen. What we know to 
be physical reality is nothing but a shared dream maintained by the collective consciousness of all 
who participate in this reality. The collective consciousness is bound via a central coordinating 
mechanism that may be called the Grand Matrix of physicality. Within this physical universe exist 
minor matrices, including that overlaying the earth, known as the earth grid. This is a local 
mechanism interfacing with the collective consciousness of humanity to maintain reality on earth as 
we know it. Like Einstein said, reality is illusion, albeit a persistent one. Its persistence makes it 
objective for all practical purposes, but its illusory nature makes it malleable enough to be 
influenced by our thoughts, feelings, and beliefs.
Our reality consists not only of the present state of things, but our perceived past as well. The sum of our present and past states of recorded personal existence comprise a particular timeline.

We are conditioned to accept that the past is written in stone, and are divided over whether the future is fated, or if it is open. In truth, it is open because we have freewill to change it, or rather, choose which future we manifest by our actions and metaphysical influences.

Those who think the future is alterable are comfortable with the idea of shifting through probable futures, but most are bothered by the idea of a shifting past. In actuality, the liquidity of the future is exactly the same as liquidity of the past. Causality only applies within timelines, and can be thrown out the window if you move between timelines and have your memories (and anything that records the past) rearranged in the process.

Linear time, the idea that our past is set and future yet to come, is all an illusion. Linear time is a product of our minds, a limited interpretation of the way time actually functions. It is not time that moves past us while we watch, but our consciousness which moves through various timelines and experiences. Everything physical, in all its manifestations and possibilities, has already been created and exists as a static hologram. What has not been created yet is the world path we freely take through these possibilities, which particular experiences we choose, and what paths we take in learning a particular lesson. All probable futures have been created, but which of those futures we choose to move into is open.

All this is not to say that we are hopelessly lost due to the fickle nature of our past and instability of our memories, because changes to the linear past obey the same laws as changes to the present or future, which mean respecting freewill. Manifesting and requesting things which materialize in one’s future work best when they do not violate freewill, and changes to the past follow the same rule.

In other words, changes to fluid elements in reality does not only mean changes to present reality, but shifts in an entire timeline, past and present.

Just as negative entities with lower freewill cannot successfully attack you and manipulate your future unless you allow them or have a lapse in awareness, so are they barred from altering your past unless similar conditions exist. This is because past and future are identically frayed. These negative forces, most existing in a hyperdimensional state beyond linear time, do not concern themselves with causality, with “going back in time” and changing key events, but rather merging an alternate timeline (or dimension) with your current one, which is identical to pulling all of mankind on to that alternate timeline. Whether timelines are merged into yours, or whether you and mankind are pulled into the alternate timeline makes no difference, for both are the same concept.

To these hyperdimensional negative forces, messing with your timeline is simply a matter of moving you and all connected to you spatially across timelines into another, if they can. Because of your freewill and higher protection, they are very limited in where they can move you, or which timelines they can merge with yours. This is just another way of saying that they are limited in what elements of your reality (which includes recorded past and present circumstances) they can change.

All their timeline manipulations only affect linear time. Linear time is the progression of physical events which are in actuality already created and remain a static hologram of quasi- infinite
possibilities. Linear time is like the “time” of a movie or audio CD, already recorded, but selectively playable. Actual time consists of one’s progression of choices among these possibilities of experience, and is measured not in tics of seconds, but in demarcations of lessons learned.

The timeline manipulations cannot affect your freewill path through the spatial time plane unless that is what you choose, though making a choice difficult for someone is not a freewill violation if it does not keep him from making that choice.

Choosing, the core process engendered by freewill, is necessary to complete learning lessons in life. With choice denied, freewill is violated, and a lesson is delayed indefinitely. Thus, while negative forces with lower freewill cannot deny you choices, they can bias them toward one most benefiting to their agenda. For them, it is a gamble. If they win, you will make a foolish choice because you gave in to negative principles such as hatred, laziness, greed, lust, or fear. In that case, they get some of your energy, a partial conversion to their polarity, and the temporary removal of a potential threat to their agenda. If you win, however, the more difficult they biased your choices, the greater and quicker your spiritual evolution, and the more invulnerable you become to further manipulation. This reveals the ultimate purpose of negative forces, which is to act as resistance for those striving in a positive direction just as weights act as resistance for bodybuilders.

When it comes to timeline manipulations, negative forces of lower freewill can only alter your timeline in a way that biases your choices, that makes things more difficult for you. That is, unless they possess time travel technology which works on physical principles you agreed in the contract with physicality, in which your ego-level freewill can indeed be violated.

Disregarding that possibility, these changes will appear as negative synchronicities to you, also known as bad luck. Your Higher Self does not create bad synchronicities for you, it merely opens the gates and allows a few negative forces to do what they do best. The purpose of such bad luck is to alert you that a change in belief, perception, thought, feeling, and action are necessary. Whether you change them toward a more negative polarity and carnally fight through them, or whether you follow a positive polarity and proceed with wisdom, discernment, and fun struggle, is entirely up to you. Your goal is to learn the lesson and apply it, so that the particular timeline manipulation and resultant negative synchronicity does not happen again. Remember, when implemented by lower negative forces, it happened only because you were not aware of it, which provided an unguarded bridge into your reality. Become aware to passively protect, and utilize knowledge to actively protect.

So far the article has concerned theory, discussing why YCYOR fails, and why true Reality Creation works.

My goal is to inform you about the importance of using all your life tools and help opportunities, to be careful about assessing what you are truly capable of, and to proceed in life with awareness, wisdom, and discernment. Your learning lessons should be as fun and easy as possible.

To continue, the subject of “positive thinking” needs to be clarified. The problem with New Age’s version of positive thinking is that it comes at the expense of awareness, for it is a product of pure ignorance and denial. On a scale of awareness, there are two places where one feels blissful: either at the point of no awareness, in which one wallows in ignorant bliss, or in total awareness, where one understands that there is nothing to worry about since all preparations have been made and
lessons learned. YCYOR positive thinking urges one to be at the bottom of the awareness scale, while true Reality Creation requires having full awareness.

True positive thinking is not denial or ignorance of the negative, but full awareness and understanding of how to deal with the negative. New Age positive thinking is merely a false fix, an attempt to suppress internal pressure and misery which arise because of fundamental misperceptions due to lack of awareness. If a pressure cooker is about to explode, it is better to turn off the heat than press down harder on the lid. With true positive thinking, your awareness fosters correct perceptions, which lead to the correct emotions and actions to match a given situation. Perceptions, emotions, and actions are a balanced trinity when awareness is sufficient.

The less awareness one has, the more unbalanced the trinity, with resultant detrimental effects which benefit negative forces. Unbalanced perceptions make it easier for your reality and timeline to be manipulated, for attacks to happen through gaps in your awareness. Unbalanced actions lead to self-sabotage, a missed opportunity to take active protection. Unbalanced emotions lead to either mechanization of the soul, or an overflow of emotional energy which are lapped up by negative forces who feed upon it.

Gaining awareness and utilizing knowledge balances perceptions, emotions, and actions, solving all these problems. For example, we often mistakenly assume that others act upon motivations that are identical to our own. Given the same circumstance, it seems we would behave the same. In reality, there is more to behavior than environmental circumstance. We differ in our individual experiences, what programs we have assimilated into our neural circuits, our genetic predispositions, what we have learned, our emotional learning path, and the orientation and degree of sophistication of our soul development. Often it is our emotional learning path that determines, via acausal principles and shuffling of the timeline, what circumstances we are born into and encounter throughout life; this complicates the “nature vs nurture” dichotomy concerning human behavior.

Nevertheless, the assumption that everyone is functionally equal leads to much emotional anguish when we fail to reconcile their behavior with our own. A paradox arises because reality conflicts with our assumptions, and our attempts to solve the paradox without further awareness only puts our hearts through the perpetual grinding stone. In such cases, our perceptions are skewed. For instance, we may mistakenly see a virtually soulless person as having a heart, and then attempt to rationalize how he could do such horrendous things if we ourselves could never commit such cruelty.

False positive thinking would consist of ignoring the paradox rather than solving it. Changing our perceptions via ignorance or awareness may both lead to emotional tranquility, but these comprise only 2/3 of the trinity. The third element, action, differs between the two cases. Those who ignore the paradox will be incapable of taking appropriate action to rectify the source of their problem. But were we to gain knowledge about the true nature of this person, after necessary contemplation and discernment we may recognize his true nature. If he has no soul, for example, we would realize that he therefore has no empathy. In other cases, the person may have a different soul orientation from our own, different experiences, or differences in any of the other numerous physical, psychological, and metaphysical variables that bias freewill and contribute toward human behavior. Being open to the idea that such differences exists prevents us from overlooking them. Therefore, in such cases we neither take offense nor continue to perpetuate the paradox. This corrects our perceptions, and we
may then behave in an appropriate manner without spilling emotional energy.

If any single element, be it perceptions, actions, or feelings do not match and balance the others, you will be fed upon, exploited, controlled, and sometimes even sabotaged. For example, if you understand the nature of psychopaths and do not shed tears for their contrived dramas or get into rage over their intentional provocations, but neglect to take any action to stop them from doing so, they will just hammer away at you and feed off you in other ways. That is because despite your perceptions and feelings being appropriate, lack of action creates the imbalancing factor. Likewise, if you have balanced perceptions and take appropriate action, but your feelings are in turmoil, these etheric vampires stick around to soak up the energy. All elements of the trinity must be in balance.

More generally, correct positive thinking means viewing life from an aware perspective, and thinking/acting/feeling in a manner consistent with this new understanding. The more aware you are, the higher your evolution, and if you are evolving toward a positive polarity, the more resonant you become with your Higher Self. Feeling good emotions is secondary to becoming more aware and acting upon that awareness. For some New Agers, feeling good emotions is the primary goal, and actions or awareness is often neglected. Unlike this faulty type of positive thinking, the good emotions that result from correct positive thinking happen because of a true understanding of the situation. Without taking action, preparation is avoided, and ignorant bliss becomes short lived. By taking action, preparation is made, and attacks are prevented or defeated.

It is true that you attract what you focus upon. This does not mean that you can prevent what you ignore, however. Attraction of probable futures (or merging of alternate timelines), via manifesting or requesting, does not “prevent” anything, it merely increases the probability of that focused possibility. Prevention requires not ignorance, but the active utilization of knowledge.

How can you know if thinking positively about something is an act of denial or one of understanding? Sometimes you cannot. The best course of action is to think positively regardless, but always act upon your awareness and do what you have to do, be it prevention, standing up to an imposing force, or actively deconstructing illusory limits. In this way, you attract positive experiences, but also take physical measures to prevent negative situations. The latter is missing from YCYOR, which leaves its followers very vulnerable to attacks.

One rule of thumb that works well for me goes as follows: *Let the heart be your compass and intellect be your flashlight. The heart shows you where to go, the intellect shows you where you’re stepping.*

Your Higher Self does not fear anything, nor does it have hatred, jealousy, vengeance, lust, or greed. These emotions, among others, are to be avoided, but not suppressed. If you have to suppress them, this means you are merely patching over faults in your perceptions rather than increasing your awareness. You increase awareness by observing, thinking, contemplating, analyzing, theorizing, testing, feeling, and experiencing. You will know that your positive emotions match your perceptions and awareness if it thrusts you into taking action that cuts off the source of an annoyance at its root, that gets you to change your reality via active participation.

Due to illusory limits and programmed misperceptions, most of us have a more negative outlook on life than necessary. A negative outlook is one that makes us feel we have more limits than we actually do.
When we have negative emotions, they consist of two parts: one subjective half induced by illusory limits, and the other objective half induced by provocations in the environment. To solve the problem of a negative emotion, change must take place both internally and externally. Internally, we must dissolve subjective emotions based on limited awareness by filling in perceptual holes with true understanding. Externally, we cut off the source of an annoyance by taking action based on discernment.

For example, if a person at work pushes your buttons all the time, not only must first you understand his true nature and thus diffuse the subjective half of the negative emotions you would otherwise generate, but you must also take action and stand up to him or do whatever is necessary to get him to stop attacking you, which then removes the other objective half of your negative emotions by cutting off its external source or removing oneself from it.

It is not enough to only extinguish subjective emotions, because objective negative emotions remain unsolved and not acted upon. Thus, the external provocation remains. Ignoring objective emotions and failing to take well planned action leads to a “turn the other cheek” attitude, a submission to violence, and one remains a victim.

Victimhood is not only a state of mind, but a state of inaction. There are some who think that merely changing one’s mentality removes them from victimhood. Plenty of talk exists about ridding oneself of “victim mentality”, but that is only half of the solution. The other half is to rid oneself of “victim behavior” by not allowing the predator to feed, exploit, or control oneself.

Although malleable, reality does have much objectivity, which as already explained is a consequence of contracts one has made with other beings and forces, contracts made at a level you cannot break without evolving to that level or requesting your Higher Self to make such exceptions. Because of the objectivity of reality, changing your mentality is not always enough to solve a problem; action is often needed. The proportion of mental to physical change required depends on the situation, of course.

But to deny the objective component of such an experience is sheer ignorance, like in the case of a prisoner who thinks he is free just because he changes his mentality and tries to enjoy being imprisoned. Besides, is that not one goal of negative forces in their quest to manipulate us, to get us to love our prison or perhaps deny that we even exist in one? This is another trap of YCYOR, to make us believe our reality is more subjective than it truly is. In truth, our prison is both psychological and physical, internal and external, and breaking out requires changes in both.

When it comes to organic portals, to apply the preceding principles you must first dissolve all subjective negative emotions within yourself by understanding what is really going on, and only then should you take action to remove the rest of the annoyance. If you attempt to remove an organic portal without first changing your perceptions and diffusing the psychologically induced component of your emotional response, the organic portal will simply feed off of you. Crudely put, their behavior will not change because your over-emotional attempt to tell them off actually gets them off.

By first understanding the situation, what emotions you do have left are objective, righteous, and in alignment with your perceptions; these, the organic portal cannot feed upon. By taking action without submitting food, the organic portal has no choice but to retreat and find someone else to
The benefits of true Reality Creation, when used in conjunction with personal effort and objective action, should be apparent by now. The remainder of this article describes two ways of how to apply Reality Creation.

**Manifesting**

Once again, when it comes to manifesting, you can best influence elements of your reality that you have already evolved beyond, whose associated lessons you have learned, and who exist in a lower frequency of awareness than you. The less evolved and aware you are, the more you stay slave to your physical reality, and the more you might tend to rely upon technology to manipulate it into obeying your will.

If evolved, you are entrusted with the ability to change lower elements by virtue of your relative higher awareness and discernment. If you try to manifest something for negative reasons, either your attempt will fail due to lack of awareness which generated the negativity, or else you will tarnish your spiritual track record and impose upon yourself some karma. Karma is just a check list of things one needs to experience to learn.

Manifestation requires utilization of one’s freewill, the active employment of will, intent, and focus. Mere mechanical attempts at manifestation tend to fail, unless they are of an extremely ritualistic and symbolic nature which actually comprises a way of hacking into reality. Ritual and magic is a type of technology, a crutch that atrophies freewill and hitches one’s soul to the negative hierarchy if used as an ends rather than a means to an ends. It is recommended that one stay away from ritual and magic, for they are not necessary, and tend to be detrimental methods of manipulating higher forces irresponsibly.

Manifesting means changing your reality without applying physical action. It is a facilitator of physical action, not its replacement. The basis of manifesting involves using one’s mind to create or seek out an alternate timeline, an alternate possibility to the way things are now or will most likely go in short time. Present reality and that alternate reality must be made identical in order for manifested changes to materialize.

How exactly one goes about doing this varies from person to person. What works for one might not work for another. To discover what works for you, just think back to all the times you actually got what you intended to manifest and what state of mind you were in.

The following method and theory describes my personal application of Reality Creation principles, which may or may not be identical or similar to what works for you. Keep in mind that these are no substitute for direct action, preparation, fun struggle, or prevention. There merely aid these things, ridding one’s life of unnecessary friction.

Here is the method and theory I use:

First, you must be fully conscious to manifest something, which means planting your mind firmly upon this point in space and time, becoming aware of the here and now. This channels your will and energy into the actual present reality within which you exist, rather than sloppily diffusing it across random dimensions and moments as is typical of daydreams or states of inattention. This energy
will be used to bind present reality to the one you intend to manifest.

While maintaining this alertness of the present moment and location, visualize what it is you intend to manifest. This creates an alternate dimension, an assemblage of thoughtforms, a way of seeking out candidate timelines which match the intended manifestation. The best fitting timelines are automatically selected, ones that accommodate the freewill of everyone whose realities are coupled to yours.

Last, you need to merge your visualized dimension or candidate timeline with present reality. This is done by identifying both of them as being the same thing, by intending and believing that what you visualized is present reality. You use the feeling of full consciousness and awareness of the present reality to empower the visualized reality. They thus become bound together, and synchronicities arise to complete their merger.

To summarize, first you consciously grab hold of the present reality by focusing on this point in space and time, then construct or select an alternate reality by visualizing the subject of your manifestation. You empower that visualization with the feeling of presence gained from focusing upon the present reality, and then fully bind the two by seeing them as identical. This process can be abbreviated by skipping the first step, and simply placing full focus and intent into the visualized reality. The purpose of the first step is just to get a feel for “actuality”.

In other words, know what you want, demand what you want, and mean what you demand. The more specific you are in your demands, the more likely it will happen. This is because manifestation requires the directing of will, and being specific directs one’s will with precision. Being specific also shows use of awareness, the accurate pinpointing of one’s demands rather than a blind shot in the dark.

Whether manifesting is an act of wishful thinking or the positive use of one’s abilities, depends on whether it aids spiritual evolution, respects freewill, is demanded with full consideration of truth and, is directed downward on the spiritual hierarchy, and is even possible to achieve.

On the one hand, it can be used for negative purposes and the control of others, or it can be used for positive purposes such as protection from redundant attacks and hassles. Whatever the case may be, keep in mind that the method of manifestation is only auxiliary, to be used for making things as easy as they should be, but cannot be relied upon to actually thrust you through life.

**Requesting**

This method is also known as prayer, though it does not require kneeling or folding one’s hands. When requesting something, you can direct it toward all positive and higher aspects of your own consciousness, including your Higher Self, positive entities who are more evolved than you, and the universe itself. The point of requesting is to make use of the network you are part of, to allow higher aspects of yourself to do things that you yourself cannot do because of your limited evolution. They will help if they deem it a wise thing to do, if it does not hinder your spiritual evolution.

Unlike the process of manifesting, you are not sending your will and energy outward to twist the arm of anyone or anything. You are merely announcing your openness, making an earnest request for help from higher positive sources, who normally respect your freewill and therefore do not
intervene unless you give them permission.

Help from higher forces is unlike influence from lower negative forces, who absolutely cannot interfere unless you give them permission, which unfortunately comes in more forms than mere verbal submission. Other forms of permission included your contract with physicality, personal displays of ignorance, and succumbing to subjective negative emotions.

As the saying goes, “God helps those who help themselves”, and “ask and ye shall receive”. Reality must be met halfway, and requests are only granted if one has first done everything one can do. In other words, do all you can do, and if you request, the rest will be taken care of.

Like manifestation, requesting is merely an aid to living. Its best application is in helping you get protection from things you cannot personally protect yourself from.

Conclusion

We exist to learn and evolve. The nature of a particular reality we operate within reveal how such lessons should best be learned. This is because at some level, we choose the circumstances of our lives to best facilitate our evolution. Evolution progresses most efficiently when full use is made of all available resources, physical and metaphysical.

Attempting to evolve while adhering to a purely physical paradigm results in unnecessary pain, friction, and interference. Trying to evolve while only following a metaphysical perspective leads to stagnation, vulnerability, and sloth. But combining both to create a balanced paradigm and approach to life results in efficient learning and evolving. We exist on earth for a reason, which is to learn and evolve by both physical and metaphysical means, by transforming both ourselves and our environment in accordance with divine structure.

Changing our environment without changing ourselves leads to irresponsibility and refusal to learn, while changing ourselves without changing the environment is a selfish act that defeats many people’s purpose for even being here. This change of the environment is simply the physical effect of a higher positive metaphysical cause, the creative influx of higher energies which lead to personal actions which change the environment in a way that facilitates the evolution of all. Change of oneself means personally evolving by gaining knowledge and awareness. The purpose of physicality is to lock different beings into common dimensional arenas of interaction, so they can evolve via that interaction. Thus, the goal of physical existence is to personally evolve by helping others evolve, no matter the polarity.

The objective nature of our reality demands that it is not enough to change the world by merely transforming our internal psychological and spiritual state. We do create our own reality, but at a level beyond our total control at this level of evolution, and thus there are some things we cannot change by merely changing ourselves. These require utilization of knowledge, putting what one has learned into practice.

Internal transformation and growth by themselves only have a passive effect upon reality by setting up synchronicities, passive protection, and other reality creation processes. These can only do so much; they cannot do all. The rest can be achieved only through active efforts, which occur when internal transformation guides one’s actions. When it comes to seeking to materialize something positive, it is not enough to only think positively and do reality creation, but to take action and make
it happen. And when it comes to protection, it is not enough to become aware of dangers and request protection or intend that they keep away, but to get into action and take preparatory or preventative measures. Reality creation facilitates action, but does not take its place.

While YCYOR is a trap designed by negative forces to disarm its targets for easier consumption, true Reality Creation provides metaphysical tools which help one progress through one’s learning lessons as efficiently and painlessly as possible. Manifestation and requesting are methods of true Reality Creation which make good use of our position on the spiritual hierarchy between higher and lower evolved beings and forces.

Freewill, Fate, and Causality in The Matrix Reloaded

20 July 04 (metaphys)

The Matrix Reloaded explores freewill, fate, and causality, three themes that may formulate the very basis of existence.

Causality is a phenomenon whereby one cause is the effect of another. This axiom or assumption forms the foundation of orthodox physics; if all causes are known, then theoretically all effects can be known and predicted with absolute certainty. Causality cannot begin or end itself because, by definition, in a purely linear system every cause is the effect of another preceding it, a “causal chain” that extends forever into the past.

In truth, a causal chain is finite; it begins and ends with choice. Freewill is the only true cause; all else is purely effect. Thus, freewill is both beginning and end; causality merely mitigates and facilitates freewill by creating consequence from choice. From a physics standpoint, choice arises when indeterminate quantum states are made definite by the wave-collapsing ability of consciousness. Nonlinear systems are sensitive enough to translate quantum causes into classical effects, thereby allowing consciousness to initiate linear causal chains extending into the macroscopic world.

Without multiple choices, there is just causality. When you perceive only one choice or one effect, you become a passive link in a causal chain initiated by someone else. The more knowledge and understanding you have, the more genuine choices you see, and the greater your role becomes as cause rather than effect. It is lack of knowledge that places one under the influence of causality. You cannot change what you cannot see, because without seeing you cannot choose.

Fate is the causal consequence of choices made outside your realm of linear time. Because you do not see your fate, you cannot – or more accurately, you do not — change it. So you become a passive link in the chain of causality initiated by a hyperdimensional source. In the case of fate, that source is your Higher Self, a greater aspect of your being with whom you merge after physical death to review your recent incarnation and plan another. In this planning phase, while merged with the Higher Self you choose the key lessons and events that characterize your upcoming incarnation. Once incarnated, the original choice to learn those lessons has already been made. As the Oracle said in The Matrix Reloaded, the point is to understand why they were made and therefore learn the lessons prompted by fated events.
But freewill is not subordinate to fate; quite to the contrary, freewill is the ultimate of precondition of existence. Fate merely orchestrates, while causality executes. Freewill does seem subordinate when it is not applied, as in the case where one does not know one’s fate and therefore makes no choice to alter it. But fate can be changed if it is known.

In their proper places, fate decides what lessons must be learned and why, while freewill decides how they are learned and when. Alternate events can lead to the same lessons learned, so it is not the mundane details of events that are ruled by fate, but rather their core meanings. Because freewill decides the timing as well as the qualitative nature of how lessons are learned, neither timing nor quality of experiences is definite.

Things of a game are real only within the game. Like any game, our reality exists because we consensually create it by setting rules and limitations to define the nature of our mutual interactions. In abstract terms, we place infinity in a box, thus separating former inseparables into a structured reality composed of individual elements obeying definite rules; mathematics as we know it details our consensual restrictions upon infinity. All mathematical equations include a hidden variable representing the potential influence of freewill. Because freewill is absent in cases where rules are followed, this variable often remains silent. Nevertheless, it represents an exit from the game or program, a choice to break the rules and become an anomaly.

Because the mathematics of a game is accurate and real only within the game, those who take choices delineated by its rules become predictable and easily controlled by those who know the mathematics, the why of an effect. It is this knowledge that allows manipulators to see and therefore strategically deny others certain choices; when denied the multiplicity of choice, people become passive elements in the causal chain initiated by those with power. What you don’t see controls you via causality.

To make a choice beyond those given by the game, particularly the game of physical incarnation ruled by linear time, one must have a connection to something beyond its boundaries. This connection allows the introduction of nonlinear variables in the equation of one’s behavior. What cannot be predicted cannot be controlled; “to be predictable is to become hunted.”

Examples of such connection include higher knowledge and higher emotions, those originating from our Higher Self. Higher knowledge allows one to see transcendent choices, while higher emotion helps one intuitively feel their possible existence. Incidentally, both of these arise from one’s connection with the Higher Self, the same aspect that orchestrates fate. Because they share the same source, fate is often associated with higher knowledge and higher emotion. On rare occasions we accomplish the impossible or improbable because we were fated to do them, because we knew and felt that they must be regardless of the rules of the game.

Choosing to attempt the impossible arises from two processes: the rational knowing of what must not be, and the irrational emotional drive to risk accomplishing what might instead be.

Neo’s fated choice to save Trinity despite the impossible odds demonstrates this perfectly: 1) he rationally knew that choosing the door on the right would lead to the assured continued survival but enslavement of humanity, a choice his predecessors foolishly made which he knew must be avoided, and 2) he felt an irrational compulsion out of his love for Trinity to risk everything and choose the door on the left, an emotion that “opened him to unlimited possibilities” and allowed
him to do what the Architect with all his calculative perfection could not predict.

The Architect is a character who demonstrates the limits and fallacies of deductive reasoning. Deductive reasoning starts with fundamental axioms and deduces conclusions from them, attempting to know what is from what ultimately is assumed. The problem is that these assumptions are rooted within the game itself, thus they allow no deduction of possibilities outside the game.

In contrast, reasoning via contradiction is superior because it is easier to see what is not than to accurately know what is. When choices within a game are eliminated as viable possibilities, finite mathematics declares none are left; but in an infinite universe where everything is possible, choices external to the game must remain. Every wall has at least two sides; what ends one domain begins another.

Truth is internally consistent, meaning it does not contradict itself, so while deductive reasoning can mistakenly eliminate the truth from its conclusions when one begins with false assumptions, reasoning via contradiction always leaves truth as an option among its set of non-contradicted possibilities. It is the irrational impulses of faith, hope, and love that beckon us to explore these possibilities.

If we take a choice based solely on reason, because calculations indicate it is the least risky path to take with the most favorable outcome, we will remain trapped within the game because we are automatically denying all possibilities beyond those delineated by the game’s rules. Like delusional mimes, we predict, pretend, and thus concretize our own limits. This works well if one wishes to advance within the game, but more is needed to evolve or expand in an orthogonal manner. True limits are to be tested, not manifested, though the weak are never willing to take that risk. But what is risk?

Risk is the chance for failure, the chance of encountering a limit. It is a relative quantity because it depends on which goals one is attempting to reach, what limits one is testing, and whether failure is even a possibility. Some only take mundane risks to receive mundane rewards such as social attention, an adrenaline rush, or professional promotion – rewards given because of the game or program. Although they may seem like courageous risk takers, these individuals tremble when faced with genuine risks that offer rewards given despite the game, rewards actually worth acquiring.

Mundane risks are distractions, while worthwhile risks offer learning lessons and expansion for the soul. One’s soul and its inventory of lessons learned are the only things that consistently survive physical death, therefore it is important to prioritize which risks are worth taking.

Ironically, risks that test the game’s limits are buffered by the influence of fate, thus they tend to be the least risky of all. We are fated to test the game’s limits, to make choices based on our knowledge of the past, objective awareness of the present, and faith in the future. We have entered this physical reality to learn how to eventually transcend it, to take risks by applying our freewill to learn fated lessons. When placed in proper context, such risks have no chance for failure because all paths potentially provide the needed lessons; on some chosen paths, we can learn the easy way, others the hard way, but either way the same lessons are ultimately learned; it is just a matter of time.

While failure is not an option, stagnation is nevertheless possible when one refuses to choose to
learn; those preoccupied with the transitory distractions of the program are wasting away their finite lives. They encounter experiences meant to shake them loose from their hypnotic trances, but choose to ignore them and therefore redundantly repeat the same mistakes. As the Architect said, they are given the choice to refuse the program but keep choosing to accept it.

Due to the influence of fate, risks that the program deems most dangerous are actually the safest risks of all. They are only dangerous to the program itself because such risks allow individuals to escape its control. For example, the institution of public education deems dropping out to be the most dangerous risk to anyone wanting a successful career, and yet those with the most successful careers are often ones who did not follow that rule.

Those who trade liberty for security become enslaved; they are sold on the idea of security as defined by the program, a definition engineered to perpetuate control. To avoid the necessity of making genuine choices and therefore taking risks, many give their freewill to a surrogate “chooser”, thereby becoming a passive link in a causal chain initiated by the “chooser”. A causal chain is ruled by precise mathematics: one does “x” to effect “y”; there is no risk involved when the outcome is certain, hence the illusion of security. Because abdication of freewill is a precondition for participating in a causal chain, the price of resultant security is enslavement.

True security is found in taking worthwhile risks, ones that provide fated lessons. Fate fully supports our endeavors to take such risks because we have incarnated for that very purpose. While the program ensures “safety” via causality, fate ensures safety via synchronicity. The first is illusion while the second is tangible.

Synchronicity is normally defined as a meaningful coincidence, but its definition can be expanded. More generally, synchronicity arises from a chain of causality that originates outside the program. Because the program cannot see where the chain begins, where the original cause resides, it deems the phenomenon acasual. In context of fate, synchronicity is a causal chain that resides outside the program of linear time and space, a.k.a. “physical reality”.

Synchronicities are whole packets of cause and effect spanning past, present, and future that are instantly inserted into the timeline. Because every synchronicity includes a definite series of cause and effect, it may be easy to rationalize the phenomenon as mere coincidence by claiming that synchronicity is simply a mundane product of mundane causes. But this logical fallacy cannot explain away the sheer improbability and meaning behind the synchronicity, which arises from the fact that the synchronicity and all its causal components are inserted as a whole into the timeline.

Many think the future is variable due to freewill; until we have chosen our next move the future remains open. With a single application of freewill the distribution of possible futures shifts as some are prevented while others are created. But what most do not realize is that freewill doesn’t just affect the future, it can change the past and present as well. For example, a synchronicity can be created in direct response to a decision you make now, but tracing back the synchronicity reveals it to be the culmination of a series of cause and effect that may have started yesterday. Prior to making your present choice, yesterday may have been different.

Linear time as we know it is illusion. It is the finalized version of events recorded in the memory function of our brains and the environment. Real time is variable and selective, meaning causal chains from beginning to end can be instantly inserted and removed at the command of freewill. It
is our cumulative recording of the “last” sequence of events that generates the illusion of continuity. The intervals of time between elements of a linear causal chain are imaginary; when the first domino is pushed, the last might as well have already fallen. Time only increments in intervals demarcated by freewill choices.

What you are reading now is the finalized version of an article, which up to the point of completion I am at liberty to edit. Between this sentence and the next, I might halt and choose to revise earlier sections of the article, possibly inserting or deleting entire paragraphs, but how would you possibly know? All you see is the final product with no record of the actual sequence involved in creating it. If you understand this, then you can understand the illusory nature of linear time.

The present is a fulcrum between past and future; a shift in the fulcrum will affect both. How we apply our freewill now has consequences that can span both ways on the timeline. Effects depend on the choice of cause, and individuals brainwashed by the program see only the choices that cause strictly future effects, choices whose consequences reinforce the illusion of linear time and the faux supremacy of causality.

Making choices that affect the entire timeline requires connections beyond the program, choices that comprise the aforementioned worthwhile risks. They are transcendental choices based on the rational knowledge that the program’s options are void, and the “irrational” hope that greater possibilities must exist. Fated choices are ones that seem right because they feel right and there is nothing clearly wrong with them. They are not choices made because of limits, but choices made in spite of them. They are not choices that obey the program, but ones that are open to unlimited possibilities.

Therefore, those who obey the program become prey to causality while others choosing to transcend it are aided by synchronicity. The acausal phenomenon of synchronicity ensures that the program never succeeds in preventing individuals from choosing to fulfill their destinies. The Higher Self can override any actions, laws, or limits endangering that fulfillment because the program is never to undermine its purpose, which is to indirectly assist and accelerate the spiritual evolution of physical incarnates. Consequently, those taking fated risks need not search for safety nets to catch them because failure is never a possibility in such cases. All that is needed is the knowledge of which choices to avoid and the desire to transcend the program’s limits. Life then falls into place synchronistically.

Freewill is the only universal constant — the rest is causality. Fate is simply a type of causality that originates beyond the limits of linear time, initiated by choices already made on a higher level of reality. As Morpheus said, “Everything begins with choice.”

Notes:
1 Linear systems are straightforward in their behavior. The output is directly related to the input. If the inputs of a system are known, as well as the rules by which the system processes them, then the output can be known. There is no mystery about how they function or any quirkiness and unpredictability associated with them.

2 According to quantum mechanics, everything is made of waves. Particles are actually waves spread out among possible states of existence. Only when we measure or observe a particle does its
wave “collapse” into one possibility and one observable manifestation. In truth, we are simply tuning into one slice of the probability wave, choosing to experience one manifestation of it. Which state a wave collapses into is entirely unpredictable by quantum mechanics because mathematics cannot predict the influence of freewill. If something is predictable, then it has no choice of being anything other than what is predicted, and therefore has no freewill.

3 Nonlinear systems are ones where output need not correspond to input in a simple or direct manner. Often there is feedback involved where part of the output gets fed into the input and creates amplifying loops. According to chaos theory, the smallest triggers can have the largest effects due to that amplifying characteristic. A well-known example is the butterfly effect, where something as small as a butterfly can trigger the formation of a hurricane due to the sensitive nature of the atmosphere. How small can the smallest trigger be? In some cases, it can be as small as a single quantum process. Whether the wave of the particle collapses into one state or the other is correspondingly amplified by the nonlinear system into a large and observable output. Because the collapse of a wave function is decided by consciousness, nonlinear systems are a means through which consciousness can influence the observable physical world. Our brains are an example of such a system; whether a neuron fires or not could ultimately depend on decisions made by the soul to think a certain thought.

4 According to quantum mechanics, everything is made of waves. Combining different waves in different proportions creates different types of objects. A wave existing in free space (one that is free from the influence of any external fields or forces) is not quantized, meaning it does not take on certain limited values. Such an amorphous wave consists of infinite possible values. But when the wave is placed in a box called a “potential well”, certain frequencies and probabilities are cut out. The wave then assumes a discrete number of possible values, thus creating a definite and distinguishable object. So “putting infinity in a box” means creating our reality by imposing restrictions upon what is possible. It is like forming a statue from a block of marble by chipping away the stone to leave only what one wants, or like creating a board game by setting up rules that determine what is not allowed within the game. These rules can be described by mathematical equations, but since such rules were ultimately agreed to or created by us, we are free to break them if we know how. Therefore, all mathematical equations are never absolute; because they are based on consensual rules, such equations have exceptions.

5 “Orthogonal” means “at right angles.” An orthogonal expansion implies expanding in a manner perpendicular to the old way of being. It signifies a fundamental motion that isn’t just a continuation or recombination of the old, but an entirely new way of doing things.

Principles of Spiritual Evolution (Part I)

30 July 04 (metaphys)

Spiritual evolution is about growth of being, an ever brightening of the godspark that is your consciousness. Knowledge is the crucial cornerstone of this process, but a cornerstone alone provides no shelter. Unaccompanied by other principles like faith and love, knowledge stagnates and fails its purpose.
Progress requires conscious application of several groups of synergistic principles in a balanced manner. They are as follows: knowledge/awareness/wisdom, faith/hope/love, and humility/forbearance/levity. Omitting or marginalizing any of these principles either stunts or corrupts the process.

I will attempt to define each principle within the limits of practicality, so suitably modify these for yourself.

Knowledge is gained by the conscious reflection and integration of experiences, observations, and thoughts. Conscious reflection is what distinguishes memory from understanding, as the latter requires it while the former does not. Knowledge encompasses both, being not just the memory of facts but also the understanding of objective truth.

Awareness is attention of the present moment, applied in context of prior knowledge. Knowledge broadens awareness by highlighting aspects of reality previously not noticed. With greater awareness comes a wider field of perception, sharper focus and alertness, and better readiness to acquire new knowledge and apply what has already been learned.

Wisdom transcends linear time and concerns the understanding of absolute metaphysical truths. It applies to our past, present, and future without fail. Wisdom is the understanding of divine principles, of the relation between self and others against the backdrop of Creation. It is knowledge tempered with love, or love tempered with knowledge.

Faith is trusting that in Creation, all things are possible. It is the suspension of disbelief. It works where knowledge fails. While knowledge stops at every precipice, faith leaps across it. While knowledge further refines knowledge, faith expands it. Simply put, knowledge is deterministic and faith is non-deterministic. Expanding knowledge requires leaping into the unknown, an act that knowledge finds irrational but faith finds necessary. Making paradigm leaps requires faith – not blind faith in what one chooses to ignore, but pure faith in what one cannot yet know.

Hope is knowing that in Creation, all things are possible. It is the reconciliation between faith and knowledge, of knowing that having faith allows one to accomplish the impossible. Hope is confidence in non-determinism, freedom from bondage to causality. It comes not from the ignorance of facts, but from the recognition of higher truths demonstrated by miraculous experience.

Love is the vibration of infinite truth. What resonates with love aligns toward the Creator. Seeing
with love means seeing with the eyes of the Creator, a perspective chosen to be undistorted by prejudice, intolerance, ignorance, or separation. With love, all things are made possible because anything that is of the Creator is understood, allowed, accepted, and forgiven. To feel love is to feel the joy of remembering the divine unity of all existence and acknowledging the absolute truths within and before you. Loving another means recognizing the common godspark within them and therefore caring for their spiritual evolution as much as you would for your own. It is compassion without pity.

**Humility** is having awareness of one’s relation to the finite and infinite – that everything with a beginning has an end, and that any being regardless of rank is infinitesimal in the framework of infinite Creation. Humility is not about belittling or exaggerating yourself, as that is either false modesty or hubris, but about knowing your place and size in the grand scheme of things. It is choosing truth over ego, verity over self-importance. Humility begins with gratitude, an attitude that allows you to acknowledge truth without resentment by being thankful for whatever learning opportunities you receive.

**Forbearance** is knowing that every event has its proper time. This builds tolerance for difficult situations and patience for events whose time has not yet come. The doors of opportunity open when time is right. Having forbearance means aligning with the pulse of synchronicity; rather than choosing which doors to force open, you choose which open doors to walk through. This requires faith in letting things fall into place, and awareness of opportunities when they arrive.

**Levity** is having a sense of humor and a lighthearted approach to life. Without it, you overestimate the reality of illusion. Levity puts situations in their proper context, the divine framework in which everything is a learning lesson and learning is fun. You can laugh at what once seemed serious because you learned its lesson and since realized its purpose in your life. Levity is the choice to see this humor not just in past experiences, but in present and future ones as well.

These three groups provide the minimum requirements for stable spiritual evolution. Each principle in a group supports the other two principles, and each group balances the remaining groups. This creates a whole greater than the sum of its parts. A balanced configuration offers the optimal route toward accumulating wisdom, increasing freewill, and manifesting one’s spiritual potential. With this balance, life becomes effortless at best and challenging at worst, but never a struggle.

**Consequence of Imbalance**

An imbalanced or partial configuration slows progress and creates opportunities for corruption. The resulting pain, discouragement, struggle, or depression alerts you to what requires attention. It is easy to see what one principle without another can bring. Knowledge without humility leads to intellectual arrogance, and humility without knowledge leads to self-deprecation. Levity without faith becomes nervous laughter, and faith without levity becomes anticipation. Faith without knowledge leads to foolishness, and knowledge without faith becomes stagnant. After pondering the other combinations yourself, it should become clear just how important each principle is to the whole.

Buildings fall when built on poor foundations, and the downfall of countless organizations, individuals, or belief systems can be traced to imbalance or omission among these principles. Imbalance destroys either via the natural process of implosion, or by offering vulnerabilities
opportunistically exploited by malevolent forces who have a vested interest in slowing or corrupting the evolution of all under their influence. Anyone targeted by negative forces would do well to strive for balance because a fort with a missing wall offers no fortification.

**Origins of Imbalance**

Where does imbalance originate? Primarily from the triad of ignorance, stupidity, and naiveté. These may best be described as follows: ignorance is a choice, stupidity is a condition, and naiveté is temporary. This is said not with condescension or insensitivity, but with the aim of accuracy and practicality; euphemisms and political correctness only obscure the truth.

**Naiveté** is a temporary lack of knowledge and awareness concerning a particular truth. This state eventually remedies itself as it’s just a matter of time before an unknown truth is learned. Therefore, naiveté deserves no blame. The naive student is open to a truth but simply hasn’t yet encountered it.

**Stupidity** is the inability to grasp a particular idea due to its perceived overwhelming complexity. It also deserves no blame because stupidity is a condition that one can do little if anything about, as it stems from the natural shortcomings of one’s mental abilities.

**Ignorance**, however, is the choice to ignore truth even when presented with it. It is a conscious decision to deny or turn away from the truth in favor of more trivial pursuits. Ignorance cannot be remedied by anyone other than the person who holds it, for any attempt to change his mind only reinforces his decision. Such a decision cannot be commended, but it must be respected if freewill is to be preserved. Ignorance improves to naiveté with the simple choice to open one’s eyes.

**Discernment** necessitates being aware of the subtle differences between these when interacting with others and getting to know yourself. For example, while naiveté welcomes truth, ignorance rejects it and stupidity misperceives it. A debate arising out of naiveté is an exchange of information that ends when mutual understanding is reached, but a debate founded on stupidity or ignorance becomes an argument that rarely resolves itself. We are all uniquely ignorant, stupid, or naive concerning various areas of knowledge, so this is no opportunity for judgment or prejudice lest one succumb to hypocrisy.

Imbalances by themselves merely slow progress, which is really no big deal since even slow things eventually reach their destination. The real concern is corruption of the process, as that implies heading toward an entirely different and unintended destination. Freewill allows this to be so. Although we incarnate with a general pre-planned outline of our key experiences and lessons which structure the course of our lives, the freewill of ourselves and others allows for deviations from the
optimal manifestation of this plan.

**Life Experiences as Learning Lessons**

There are easy and hard ways of learning the same lesson, and a missed life lesson repeats itself in alternate ways. Lessons become as painful and difficult as one’s skull is thick, so ignorance guarantees drastic experiences. Having conscious volition to see the truth as soon as possible speeds and smoothes the process, often eliminating the necessity for harsh experiences when the mind is receptive to subtler versions of a lesson.

The general purpose of life lessons is to catalyze one’s growth of being, to increase soul strength. In our case, this often requires emotionally charged experiences because emotions provide a type of energy that temporarily boosts or retards what we are capable of doing depending on how they are used. Without this boost, we would be reluctant to transcend limits or explore new ground because our motivation would depend solely upon old ways of being and doing. The efficient use of emotions in a learning experience increases soul strength and expands knowledge, and thereafter nothing more than the newfound understanding is required as motivation when facing similar experiences in the future. On the other hand, emotions can retard progress if they limit what you feel you can do.

Learn to separate emotions that limit you from ones that open you to new possibilities. The value of positive and negative emotions depends upon what you do with them. Positive emotional energy can be used directly to put knowledge into action with gusto.

**The Role of Negative Emotions**

To be of any use, negative emotional energy must be transformed into positive after the truth they accompany has been acknowledged. When confronted with a shocking truth, a person usually experiences negative emotions as the initial involuntary reaction. In those cases, negative emotions serve as wake up alarms that rudely awaken a slumbering mid. But after getting up, there is no use in keeping the alarm going.

Maintaining a state of negative emotional shock longer than necessary turns it into a choice rather than an involuntary consequence. This would be like holding the clock to one’s head while going about the day, relentlessly listening to its blaring sound. Why would someone do this? Maybe complaining about the pain gains him sympathy from others, maybe suffering makes him feel like a martyr, or maybe because since an alarm clock serves to wake him up in the morning, then it should continue to increasingly wake him up with every passing minute of the day, right? In the end, this attitude would instead leave him stressed, tired, and deaf.

Indulging or wallowing in negative emotions leads to stagnation, victimhood, and severely weakens spiritual resiliency. While negative emotions arise involuntarily, there is no excuse for choosing to continue them beyond their initial function as alarm clocks. They must instead be transformed into positive emotional energy and reunited with the truth originally alerted so that the latter can be put into use effectively. Consciously seeing truth in context of its divine significance accomplishes this, as does choosing to see and apply the truth with an attitude of love, humility, and levity.

While negative emotions alone can motivate one into taking action, such action is far from impeccable. Knowledge combined with positive emotions allows one to accomplish the same with
greater efficiency, safety, precision, and skill.

Three Stages of Learning Lessons
With the preceding section in mind, one can see that there are generally three steps involved in the successful learning of a lesson. The first stage precedes the lesson and consists of ignorant bliss, a vulnerable state of emotional positivity that remains so because it has been undisturbed by truth. The second stage is the negative emotional shock that comes from realizing the truth. In the third stage, negative emotion is transformed and the resulting positive emotion is united with truth. The third stage, that of positive awareness, is stronger than the first and more effective than the second.

Positive emotions open you to progress, and awareness shows you any pitfalls to avoid. Not only realizing the truth, but viewing it in full context of its metaphysical significance is the first step in transforming negative into positive energy.

Symbolically, truth is a sword that in darkness merely cuts, but when exposed to light also emits a radiance that turns away danger. Ignorant bliss is going unarmed in the sunlight. The sword of truth is found in a valley of darkness and despair. It must be retrieved from the valley and brought into sunlight to exude its total power. However, if your heart glows early on with faith and a strong love of truth, the sword will be energized by this inner light even amidst the valley’s darkness, thus allowing safe passage into sunlight. Getting lost in the valley with no inner light to empower the sword puts you in direct battle against the creatures that dwell there…and eventually turns you into one of them.

Harmful Negative Emotions
Negative emotions serve little purpose when they are unaccompanied by truth. The blaring of an alarm clock after you have long gotten out of bed only annoys and distracts you from your daily duties. This metaphor manifests in several ways. One example is obsession, the investment of energy without return of knowledge. When one repeatedly dwells on the futility of some disparaging situation, negative emotional energy is wasted. A stuck car spinning its wheels for too long damages its engine.

Another example of harmful negative emotions is when they are directly induced by malevolent forces as part of a psychic attack seeking to undermine your faith and disrupt the harmony of your spirit. This happens very frequently among truthseekers because they are primary targets. Although
truth can be shocking, it is in the interest of these forces to amplify and perpetuate the negative state, for this not only slows and possibly corrupts the esoteric progress necessary to evolve beyond their grasp, but this also creates an abundance of negative energy upon which they feed. These types of negative emotions color the truth rather than result from it.

The choice to succumb to such negativity weakens spiritual resiliency, creates imbalance, and opens further opportunities for even deeper attacks. Continued indefinitely, this gradual weakening process ends with the truthseeker successfully incapacitated. Any imbalance among the principles of esoteric evolution invites this possibility, especially when the imbalance is due to insufficient knowledge, love, or humility. Thus, beware especially of ignorance, obsessive negativity, and self-aggrandizement as these unlock the castle gates and invite danger.

Conclusion
In reading this, keep in mind that discernment is the ultimate necessity in flexibly applying any guideline, as formulas and rules are bound to have exceptions which malevolent forces eventually exploit. Discernment is the application of freewill, applying knowledge and wisdom in a balanced manner to fit the unique circumstance. Believing that any single source of knowledge holds the complete truth, or subscribing to any rigid system of belief, marginalizes the role of discernment and therefore makes one predictable and easily controlled or corrupted.

Knowledge, awareness, and wisdom provide the bricks of spiritual evolution. Faith, hope, and love places these bricks in line with the divine blueprint. Humility, forbearance, and levity provide the mortar that gives the wall its strength. All are necessary and their roles must be balanced. Seek with love and understanding the truth and beauty in all you encounter.

Principles of Spiritual Evolution (Part II)

30 July 04 (metaphys)
Part I was a general guideline discussing the minimal requirements necessary to ensure stable spiritual evolution. The key consisted of incorporating into one’s life a balanced trinity of fundamental principles: faith/love/hope, humility/forbearance/levity, and knowledge/awareness/wisdom. The fault with many philosophies and religions is that one or more of these basic requirements is ignored, forming a structural weakness that potentially leads to collapse. This collapse is hastened when weaknesses are further exploited by malevolent forces seeking to sabotage the efforts of truthseekers about to evolve beyond their control.

Since part I is essentially complete in itself, part II shall merely expand upon a few of its themes. Here, focus will be given upon the necessity for both knowledge and love rather than strictly one or the other in any methodology for spiritual evolution. To summarize, knowledge accompanied by negative emotions may produce positive physical results, but negative metaphysical consequences. Likewise, love accompanied by ignorance may lead to positive metaphysical results but negative physical consequences. Both in balance and in conjunction with the lesser principles of the aforementioned trinity results in strength on both physical and metaphysical planes. Because the enemies of truth attack on all fronts physical and metaphysical, one would do well to seek progress and reinforce defensive strength on these planes.
The proper role of negative emotions was explained in part one, whereby they served as wake-up alarms alerting us to an internal or external danger. Beyond this function, they serve us no benefit. By becoming aware of the truth they signal and then letting our realization of the truth’s greater metaphysical context transform the negative emotional energy into positive, the quality of energy thus formed helps us apply the truth in the most efficient manner possible.

As stated, without the conscious transformation of negative into positive emotional energy, the truth can still be applied but not as efficiently and not without detriment to our spiritual resiliency. Wallowing in negativity undermines any gain in knowledge due to the discordant effect it has upon your soul, and because it puts you in greater resonance and contact with malevolent forces and harmful experiences. It should become clear, from experience and contemplation, that positive feeling and positive thinking are the best routes toward positive action on both physical and metaphysical fronts.

Falsely Justifying Negativity

It is absolutely imperative that we strive for both knowledge and love. You might resist this idea by saying, “Negative emotions make up part of who I am. To counter these would mean cutting off a part of myself, leaving me incomplete. Since lack of wholeness leads to disharmony and imbalance, I should not counter my negative emotions.” Though this excuse sounds attractive, it is fallacious for the following reasons.

While negativity may indeed be part of you at the moment, do you expect it to remain part of you forever? Who you are now should not limit whom you choose to become. If you expect your future self to be more evolved than your present self, how will you become this purer self other than striving toward it step-by-step, choice-by-choice? You can accept yourself in totality each step of the way and still make progress — not by cutting away part of the whole, but rather by transforming and purifying it.

While you can be in complete harmony with your self, the self may not always be in complete harmony with Creation. Only by first accepting yourself as a whole can you choose to bring the whole gradually into harmony with Creation. When you experience a negative emotion, you can and must accept it as part of who you ARE in order to allow it to serve its purpose as a learning catalyst. But once acknowledged, you can then choose whom you will BECOME by taking the next step and refusing to entertain or indulge in this negative emotion. Rather than by cutting off negativity cold turkey, which only leaves an unnatural vacuum, this is done by replacing a negative thought with a positive thought, a negative emotion with a positive emotion. When the accompanying truth is properly integrated via deep contemplation and understanding of its greater context, this transformation happens naturally. In this way you remain whole and in harmony with yourself, while simultaneously progressing toward greater levels of knowledge and love.

Another common objection to the idea of striving toward positivity and awareness is the difficulty of doing so, or that there is futility in striving to attain something that cannot be reached due to the imperfections of the human mind and challenging conditions of human life.

To answer the latter objection, realize that you need not worry about whether you can reach the North Pole in order to begin walking north. As long as one step is north of the other, you will have progressed. How else can the destination possibly be brought closer? Every step counts, and the
smallest of steps is infinitely greater than no step at all.

As for the difficulty of trying to remain positive, understand that positivity is a choice and not a consequence. By default, a rock naturally moves from high to low when it falls as a consequence of gravity. But one can choose to make the rock move upwards against the tug of gravity by lifting it. Likewise, while our reactions to an internal or external impulse is negative by default is minimally a consequence of our genetic and social programming, we can choose to defy this programming by willingly seeking to act positively or transforming something negative into something positive.

For example, what would otherwise be a depressing truth can be made into a positive truth by choosing to view it in context of its greater metaphysical significance – rather than the truth being watered down or sugar coated, it is your palate or sense of taste that is expanded to make the bitter truth taste sweet. This way, it is the self rather than the truth that changes, which is the whole goal of spiritual evolution anyway: to evolve the self, particularly into congruency with the Higher Self.

Properly transforming a negative thought and feeling into a positive thought and feeling merely changes the way you think and feel about a particular truth; it does not add or subtract from the truth itself.

It is the raising of a barbell against gravity, rather than its release into freefall, that builds the muscles. Likewise, the difficulty of attaining and maintaining positivity and awareness is what builds spiritual strength. Sugarcoating the truth, or anesthetizing oneself to the truth via selective denial, is like cheating yourself by using lighter weights. Indulging in negativity is like lifting weights incorrectly and causing muscle damage. But just as sore muscles can be sign of a good workout, so can the pain of a muscle injury due to incorrect exercise fool you into thinking you’re making proper progress. So those who attempt to evolve while indulging in negative emotions may misperceive the pain of spiritual damage as a sign of spiritual progress. They might even see the pain as an ends rather than means, which creates the foolish condition of martyrdom – conscious suffering for misguided ideals. But most importantly, there is no substitute for lifting the weight yourself – you cannot pay someone to do it for you. Likewise, only the through personal choice to put in the appropriate effort, introspection, contemplation, enlightenment and transformation can the spiritual muscles be strengthened.

How to Transform Negative into Positive

To get a better idea of how to handle and transform a negative emotion, let’s survey some metaphysical resources on the subject. The Ra Material contains a description of how both positive and negatively oriented entities utilize the emotion of anger:

The entity polarizing positively perceives the anger. This entity, if using this catalyst mentally, blesses and loves this anger in itself. It then intensifies this anger consciously in mind alone until the folly of this red-ray energy is perceived not as folly in itself but as energy subject to spiritual entropy due to the randomness of energy being used.

Positive orientation then provides the will and faith to continue this mentally intense experience of letting the anger be understood, accepted, and integrated with the mind/body/spirit complex. The other-self which is the object of anger is thus transformed into an object of acceptance, understanding, and accommodation, all being reintegrated using the great energy which anger began. (The Law of One, Book II, p.
In other words, rather than lashing out blindly at the object of anger, you would do better to first center yourself, then turn inward and focus upon the feeling of anger itself. Feel it as you would a bodily sensation. Once your attention is removed from what originally provoked you, anger is cut off from its generating source, and what’s left is an internal free-floating quantity of energy. Your freed attention is then able to see the folly of this anger due to its uselessness, an act which can often make you laugh when you finally realize the ridiculousness of the situation and how you initially reacted. By accepting what has happened and how you reacted, you can then begin seeing yourself and what provoked you from the proper bigger picture perspective. Once composed and collected, you can then confidently solve any remaining external problems. In the end, you will have grown from choosing to act positively rather than react negatively, protected yourself by feeling positive rather than negative, transformed and integrated the emotional energy rather than burying it within you via denial and repression of the initial feeling of anger, accepted who you are in totality, and likely avoided a reckless confrontation with whatever or whomever provoked you.

*The Kybalion* gives good advice of how to transform negative emotions directly. This is useful when negative emotions arise without any visible provocation. Many factors can create seemingly baseless negative emotions, ranging from mood swings, chemical and hormonal fluctuations, and biorhythmic cycles to electromagnetic suppression of one’s emotional state, psychic attack, the triggering of a posthypnotic command installed during an abduction or via an implant, and the presence of negative thought-forms as will be explained later.

In these cases, you may not know what is putting you into a bad mood, only that you are in one. Also, unlike the negative emotions that initially accompany a shocking learning lesson, these types of negative emotions stem not from shock, but from direct physical or metaphysical induction. In other words, they are products rather than by-products, and the lesson to be gained in dealing with these seemingly fruitless negative emotions involves the growth of willpower and personal discipline.

“To change your mood or mental state — change your vibration.” – *The Kybalion*

One may change his mental vibrations by an effort of Will, in the direction of deliberately fixing the Attention upon a more desirable state. Will directs the Attention, and Attention changes the Vibration. Cultivate the Art of Attention, means of the Will, and you have solved the secret of the Mastery of Moods and Mental States.

“To destroy an undesirable rate of mental vibration, put into operation the principle of Polarity and concentrate upon the opposite pole to that which you desire to suppress. Kill out the undesirable by changing its polarity.” — *The Kybalion*

This is one of the most important of the Hermetic Formulas. It is based upon true scientific principles. We have shown you that a mental state and its opposite were merely the two poles of one thing, and that by Mental Transmutation the polarity might be reversed. This Principle is known to modern psychologists, who apply it to the breaking up of undesirable habits by bidding their students concentrate upon the opposite quality. If you are possessed of Fear, do not waste time trying to “kill out” Fear, but instead cultivate the quality of Courage, and the Fear will disappear. Some writers have expressed this idea most forcibly by using the illustration of the dark room.
You do not have to shovel out or sweep out the Darkness, but by merely opening the shutters and letting in the Light the Darkness has disappeared. To kill out a Negative quality, concentrate upon the Positive Pole of that same quality, and the vibrations will gradually change from Negative to Positive, until finally you will become polarized on the Positive pole instead of the Negative. The reverse is also true, as many have found out to their sorrow, when they have allowed themselves to vibrate too constantly on the Negative pole of things. By changing your polarity you may master your moods, change your mental states, remake your disposition, and build up character. Much of the Mental Mastery of the advanced Hermetics is due to this application of Polarity, which is one of the important aspects of Mental Transmutation. (*The Kybalion*)

Although this is stated rather clearly above, I shall rephrase: to change a negative emotion, fix your attention upon the opposite emotion until it transforms, degree by degree, into that polar opposite. This works for a couple reasons.

From a metaphysical perspective, you empower whatever you focus upon, so naturally the positive emotion will grow in intensity as the negative emotion diminishes if you fix your attention upon it. Also, it is easier to change the degree upon a scale than transforming one scale into another.

From a physical perspective, fixing your attention on a positive idea creates a feedback cycle wherein your hormonal and neurochemical makeup begin matching what you are holding in mind, thus reinforcing it. That emotions can be chemical in origin is no excuse for refusing to attempt to transform them – via the mind-body feedback cycle, the body can respond positively to positive thoughts, and thus a reorientation of the soul can reorient the body. Although this may involve the release of endorphins and other pleasure chemicals, understand that the body and soul are coupled and will therefore what happens in one might be consequently mirrored in the other, both ways. What matters is where the initiative originates (body or soul), therefore whether it aims to serve physical or metaphysical ends. When the mind decides to think positively, these pleasure chemicals accompany the thought to provide a physical means toward a spiritual end. If instead drugs were used to anesthetize one against a negative emotion, then this constitutes a physical means toward a physical ends which might in many cases be detrimental to one’s spiritual learning path by suppressing the necessary emotional catalyst for learning.

The Cassiopaeans (read my warning first) provide a succinct answer to this issue of positive and negative emotions: “If you choose, you may have only positive emotions.” This was in response to an individual attempting to argue that negative emotions were part of who he was and were thus necessary, which constitutes the fallacy already dissected earlier in this article. The Cassiopaeans responded by subtly revealing the core ingredient necessary for transmutation of negative into positive: choice. Thus, one can truly choose to only have only positive emotions, regardless of what excuses the ego can come up with for indulgence in further negativity.

The Ra Material advises similarly with the following:

> There is no necessity for negative thought-forms regardless of pain distortions. The elimination of such creates the lack of possibility for negative elementals and other negative entities to use these thought-forms to create the worsening of the mind complex deviation from the normal distortions of cheerfulness/anxiety. (*Law of One, Book IV, p. 17*)
This segues straight into the next topic: how negative thoughts and emotions can lead to spiritual detriment. Here, Ra mentions that negative thoughts can create negative thought-forms which can be used by malevolent forces to worsen the condition of individuals who have created them.

**Consequence of Negative Thinking: Harmful Thought-forms**

What is a thought-form? In the conventional sense, it is nonphysical entity created from thought energized by emotion. Thoughts are real things on the mental or imaginative level of reality, and when empowered by emotions, these thoughts gain added dimensionality into the etheric and astral levels as well, increasing their power to affect things in the physical. A negative thought energized by negative emotions creates a negative thought-form.

These etheric entities exist much like eddies in a stream of water, borrowing their existence from its flow. However, in addition to owing their existence to the individual who created them via his thoughts and feelings, by having a life of their own they often return to their creator and induce within him further emotions to feed upon them. This is how people can become slaves to their negativity – not just by habit, but by these very thoughts gaining life on the astral/etheric level of reality and becoming energy parasites, so to speak. They can just as easily dissipate when starved of negative emotions, so choosing to remain positive goes a long way toward freeing yourself from former negative thought-forms.

Ra suggests that these thought-forms can be employed by malevolent forces as supplemental agents of attack. The book *Brotherhood* mentions this phenomenon in context of the mass thought-forms generated by mankind:

> And the Enemy – who—what is he? Only the entitized form of the mass selfishness of men, that vast cumulation of the evil thoughts and passions of men’s lower nature appropriated by Masters of Evil, grown great and powerful by their stealing and feeding off of the vital forces that their unsuspecting dupes at their instigation had poured into such evil thoughts and desires, thus giving them direct power over men through men’s own life-force now absorbed and incorporated into their Master-nature, which they could thereby easily use to bend men to their will. (*Brotherhood*, p. 70)

This describes very well the etheric thought-form component of the Matrix Control System, (the other components consist of the following: the phenomena of hyperdimensional manipulation of mankind by advanced negative entities, and the institutional/social manipulation of humanity by their human counterparts in the New World Order).

Negative thought-forms have their own “gravitational” field that tends to negatively bias the thoughts and feelings of individuals exposed. So a large and concentrated group of people thinking and feeling similarly can potentially overpower the independent thoughts and feelings of those nearby. For example, entering a densely populated city in which the predominant mood is negative can often lower your mood, even without any specific incidents provoking such a mindset. This goes to show that not all negative emotions are accompanied by specific events which function as learning catalysts, but rather the soul grows from the very act of choosing to assert its individuality over the impinging collective thought-form by remaining positive despite the negative bias.

As should be evident, even when negative emotions are used as wake-up alarms alerting one to a truth or catalytic event that needs to be acknowledged, recognizing the truth without transforming
the negative emotion into positive can cause problems on the metaphysical level, particularly in the creation of negative thought-forms.

So in the case of a truthseekers garnering attention from the so-called “Masters of Evil” or equivalently “fourth and fifth density Service-to-Self entities,” the more truth he learns and applies, the greater his caution must be against indulging in negative thoughts and emotions, for the thought-forms he creates via this dangerous expenditure of energy and caustic form of thinking can come back to haunt him, literally. Via mind programming and psychic or electromagnetic means, malevolent forces often seek to bias a truthseeker toward negative thinking and feeling, as this opens him up to attack should he choose to wallow in them. Only through caution and the choice to stay optimistic, faithful, and aware can such an individual avoid this trap. Because the process is gradual, it is never too late to benefit from turning around a negative mindset.

Consequence of Negativity: Harsher Learning Experiences

There are reasons other than the effects of thought-forms that make extended negativity dangerous. One’s emotional learning path, consisting of how one chooses to respond emotionally and mentally to experiences, greatly determines what is experienced. This is because in the metaphysical sense, we experience what we need to experience in order to learn a particular lesson – if our needs call for highly painful experiences due to our ignorance and inertia, then that shall typify the nature of our experiences. Conversely, if we are astute and quick to learn from our past mistakes, present experiences, and the mistakes of others, then we can learn our intended lessons with less need for shocking experiences.

Generally, having an ignorant or negative mindset and emotional nature requires greater shocks to teach you a lesson, while having a happy-go-lucky but aware mindset puts you in greater congruence with the mindset of the Higher Self and thus allows lessons to be learned more smoothly due to the proper attitude.

Negativity Increases Sabotage by Malevolent Forces

Sabotage and encounters with malevolent forces would certainly qualify as a negative learning experience. In fact, it is in the vested interest of these forces that you be as ignorant, negative, and reactive as possible so that your Higher Self approves of their hostility since the shocks they provide would then match your chosen emotional learning path – in other words, that what they do to you would be entirely the result of your freewill actions necessitating such drastic measures.

The only problem is that these forces don’t care about what you need, but rather how much they can get away with. So in this sense they are reality hackers, attempting to bypass or disable your “firewall” of freewill. When they succeed, it is by trickery more so than blunt force.

For example, rather than eliminating a targeted individual right away, which may be impossible due to his emotional learning path not being conducive to allowing such action, they may wear him down bit by bit. They may provoke a targeted individual into reacting negatively by externally biasing his emotional state and then triggering its explosion with a manipulated incident. Using this expended negative energy, they reinvest it toward increasing the strength of their next attack. This continues with the target’s defenses growing weaker each step. Although he chooses each step of the way to continue letting the attack happen, the consequences of his earlier choices to ignorantly
indulge in the provoked negativity increasingly makes it more difficult for him to choose otherwise. All this depends greatly upon what physical, spiritual, and psychological weaknesses he has, since these weaknesses are where malevolent forces tend to attack.

Ultimate Consequence of Negativity: Reprogramming, Death, or Reanimation

Needless to say, should the careless truthseeker choose to consistently succumb to these negativities, he will inevitably face death, heavy mind programming, or possibly reanimation. In reanimation, rather than an individual expiring permanently, his body continues living though with the residing consciousness either reprogrammed or replaced. He may continue living as before, but now as an agent of the dark side programmed to disseminate disinformation.

This is neither fantastic nor impossible, as the body is simply a machine under the control of whatever switches it neurons, be it the original soul, a reprogrammed soul, or some remote technological interface.

To quote again from the book *Brotherhood*:

[…] the Evil Masters, where opportunity offers, will deliberately break the Divine Law by dislodging and driving out the Souls of the infants, thus stealing their bodies from them, or by driving out Souls from mature bodies, dispossessing them, and thereafter obsessing and impersonating such Souls to their friends and associates. Such in the near future will be of common occurrence, and will be made easy for them by all who succumb to fits of passion, indulgence in intense hatred, jealousy, or self-pity, or continual brooding over wrongs done to them, or habitual condemnation of others, and who will suddenly wake one day in another world minus their physical bodies.

(*Brotherhood, p. 76*)

Variations upon this phenomenon of replacement or reanimation are discussed in the Ra material, Cassiopaean transcripts, and in the book *The Allies of Humanity*. It is not the purpose of this article to go into detail about the theories and process of reanimation or the replacement of targeted individuals, except to say that the common denominator among all of these views is that the targeted individual succumbs because of physical and spiritual vulnerability. The latter is due primarily to a lack of spiritual resilience, brought on by a deficiency in positivity and awareness.

The trinity of essential principles detailed in part I, said to ensure stable means of spiritual evolution, are therefore not just suggestions for more efficient evolution, but suggestions for the avoidance of such drastic outcomes as death and reanimation. Knowledge and love are the greatest protectors. Even in the case of an individuals who is abducted by malevolent hyperdimensional entities (grays, reptilians, *et al*…) who attempt to replace or reprogram him, if his knowledge and love are sufficient, these attempts will fail.

Spiritual Resiliency and the Aura

So what exactly constitutes spiritual resiliency? For one, it is associated with the aura, the etheric/astral energy field surrounding and penetrating the body that interfaces the physical with the metaphysical. This interface works on the quantum level, not so much via physical force and causality but rather via probability-biasing and synchronicity. This interface is very responsive to your thoughts and emotions. Because it functions as an interface field reaching both into your body and extending into your environment, it not only regulates your biological life functions but it also
affects your physical experiences and environment. Thus, having negative thoughts negatively affects both your body (cancer, disease) and your experiences (accidents, sabotage). When strong and clear, it also acts as a synchronistic shield protecting you from unnecessary dangerous experiences:

Your aura contains every color in the spectrum of the sun. Oh, if man could but see his aura, when he is thinking unkindly or speaking rash, harsh, unkind words. If he could but see the change that takes place in the spectrum of his aura, he would never again think an angry thought, let alone speak in anger.

[...] Man’s aura is his shield of protection. Remember, man’s aura is man’s protection. When, through man’s thinking, the colors are kept crystal clear and radiate brightly, man can walk through the abyss of Hades and fear no evil.

Let he who is living the life of a mystic live in the protection of his aura. In mortal thinking, when one does not accept the negativeness of another, the aura of the mystic remains his spiritual fortress. (Ancient Mystical White Brotherhood, p. 113 – 114)

This is one reason why knowledge protects, as the Cassiopaeans have repeatedly emphasized, and why love protects, as Ra has stated. Both act to reinforce one’s spiritual resiliency by brightening and tempering the aura, and offering one greater synchronistic protection against unnecessarily harmful experiences due to the mentioned function of the aura as interface between physical and metaphysical, mind and experience. The metaphysical function of love or positive emotion is to help one vibrate at a frequency beyond easy reach by malevolent forces and experiences which tend to vibrate at a lower frequency.

Frequency Resonance Vibration and The Emotional Learning Path

There is clearly a relation between the vibratory characteristics of the aura and the quality of one’s emotional learning path. Both stem from one’s personal choice concerning which thoughts and feelings to associate with particular truths and actions. Thoughts and emotions impress upon the aura a unique spectrum of resonant frequencies, which in turn resonate with and attract corresponding experiences to match the learning profile of the individual projecting such thoughts and emotions. This process is quantum mechanical in nature, since linear time as we know it is simply the sequential perception of events selected from among a broad range of candidate events by virtue of their resonance with our soul.

So just as the physical nature of an object determines at what acoustic frequencies it resonates, so does the metaphysical nature of the aura or soul determine with what experiences it resonates and therefore attracts. The idea of raising your frequency, or your resonance frequency vibration (FRV) as the Cassiopaeans call it, means simply to clarify, brighten, and strengthen your aura by cleaning up your emotional and mental state to keep out negative thoughts and feelings. This resonance frequency vibration, then, is essentially the frequency at which your reality radio is tuned.

[...] The negative person attracts all the negative things of life, all the ills, inharmonies, troubles that are in the mental atmosphere—the effluvia of other weak and negative minds; while a positive person attracts all the good. If you understand the radio you will know that when you set your dial at a certain wave length, all that is “on the air” of that wave length will make itself heard. It is exactly the same with your mind; it will receive
whatever happens to be “on the air” of the wave length to which your thoughts are attuned. So that it is “up to you” and you only what your mind radio gives forth or outmanifests. (*The Way Out*, p. 34-35)

Staying on a good station is accomplished by having knowledge, love, faith, gratitude, humility, etc… in a balanced manner as outlined in part one. Imbalance among these principles, or incorporation of their negative opposites, leads to the consequences detailed in this article. Avoiding such consequences does not prevent the learning of lessons, but allows more efficient means toward reaching the same spiritual ends. This requires that:

You must train yourself to STAND GUARD CONTINUALLY AT THE DOOR OF YOUR MIND, AND TO LET IN NO THOUGHTS OR FEELINGS THAT YOU DO NOT WANT TO OUTMANIFEST.

It may seem hard — at first, and you may not know what to admit and what to deny. But guard the door from every negative thought and feeling of whatsoever nature — from every thought that you know God would not have you think; from every doubt, fear, worry, anxiety, or concern of any kind; from every tendency to criticize, judge or condemn anybody or anything or any condition; from self-pity, jealousy, envy, irritation, unkindness, anger, hatred, etc. These will give you an idea of what are negative and ungodlike thoughts, and which must no longer have part in your consciousness.

If you will keep all such untrue thoughts out of your mind, you can see that then and then only can your Higher Self draw into your mind the true and positive thoughts that will attract to you the good that is waiting to manifest itself to you. For while your mind is cluttered with all those fearful, worrying, discouraged, sick, weak, poverty-tainted thoughts, how can you expect anyone who feels these vibrations — and vibrations are things you cannot cover up—to be attracted to you, or how can you expect God to inspire you with thoughts of a beneficial nature?

In fact, such negative thoughts actually keep away the things you are longing to have manifest in your life — for like attracts like. Think! Poverty-stricken thoughts do not attract prosperity or jobs; sick thoughts do not build a healthy consciousness; and belief that you are failure invites failure. (*ibid*, p. 17-18)

As you can see, knowledge alone is not enough, seeing the truth is not enough — one must also choose how to emotionally and spiritually interpret and apply what one knows and sees, as this choice determines one’s spiritual orientation toward high or low FRV, toward serving others or toward controlling others, toward being free or being predator/prey, toward being man or machine. In turn, these determine the quality and range of our experiences.

**Beyond Knowledge**

Both higher evolved compassionate and malevolent individuals can know the same truths, but what differentiates them is how they have chosen to interpret and apply these truths. For example, there is the truth concerning the paramount importance of freewill – while positive individuals respect freewill by supporting it, negative individuals “respect” freewill by manipulating their victims into giving it up freely. Thus, while the level of knowledge, wisdom, and awareness may be equal in two oppositely polarized entities, it is their chosen emotional learning path that ultimately determines their spiritual orientation and resultant nature of experience, all of which follows from how they
choose to think and feel about what they learn.

Make no mistake, there is indeed choice in who we shall become, choice between responding negatively or positively to the same experience, as that is the purpose of freewill. By learning about external objective reality, we get to choose how to achieve congruency between our selves and this objective reality. The positive path brings the self into harmony with the universe via acceptance and service of others, while the negative path seeks to bring the universe into congruency with the self via imposed order and conquest. Both are paths of uniting the external with the internal, the above with the below, and the self with the other, though by different means and resulting in different outcomes for the individual in question.

Conclusion

So the important thing to remember is that everything begins with choice, no matter how seemingly insignificant the choice. The truth exists independently of how you choose to perceive it, but it is your choice that determines how this truth is integrated into your being and thus in what direction you evolve spiritually.

Choosing to indulge in negativity by failing to strive for an aware, positive, and balanced mindset incorporates further negative elements into your being, which resonate with and attract corresponding experiences and intelligences, even providing “handles” by which such intelligences can toss you about. These elements can only be identified and transformed if you know yourself by being in harmony with yourself and who you are. Every moment is another chance to choose for the better, and in this way the whole can be gradually purified and brought into harmony with Creation.

Addendum: There is a science experiment whereby sand and powder are thoroughly mixed and placed on a rubber sheet. When the sheet is vibrated by sound, the mixture separates into piles of sand and piles of powder. This is because the powder is of a finer consistency than the coarser sand, and therefore shares different resonant frequency characteristics. When vibrated by the same frequency, each substance responds differently and thus begins to separate.

A comparison may be drawn between this separation of sand and powder and the polarization phenomenon happening among individuals today due to the influence of a hyperdimensional vibration known as “the Wave” pouring into our planetary sphere and beckoning our evolution to the next level. In short, under the influence of this Wave, individuals responsive to it have begun distancing themselves from individuals of discordant frequency and have synchronistically met those of more congruent frequency. This is the precursor to a full reality split between masses of individuals necessitating different collective destinies, just as the initial vibration of sand and powder is the precursor to full separation of the mixture into piles of one or the other.

It is our internal vibratory nature, formed not only by our knowledge level but also how we choose to integrate it via our thoughts and emotions, that determine how strongly we respond to the Wave. Love and understanding allows the greatest resonance, providing connection with maximum impulse toward the next evolutionary level.

(index)
Ignorance, fear, and superstition stem from reason being overridden by emotional and instinctual impulses. The historical consequences of human ignorance have given philosophers cause to invent a solution, most proposing objective reasoning and intellect as the antidote. In the past, the dichotomy was religion versus secularism, blind faith versus logic.

Today, religion and secularism are old news and the dichotomy has shifted into other areas. In the alternative knowledge field, for example, there presently exists a split between those who advise abandoning reason and submitting to feeling and sensation (certain fluffy New Age paradigms) and those who advise abandoning emotional subjectivity and striving for objective knowledge by thinking with a hammer.

But is intellectual reasoning enough? Although overcoming the subjectivity of emotions and instinct, the intellect comes with its own share of problems as outlined in this article. For the most part, the follies of emotionalism and primal impulses are matched by the shortcomings of intellectual reasoning. When one is held supreme and the other denied expression, severe imbalances result.

Reason without emotion is entropic and lifeless, while emotion without reason is animalistic. Specifically, New Age philosophy denies the intellect and gives too much free reign to the subjective whims of the emotional center, leading to gullibility and ignorance. Its opposite counterpart unwisely declares the intellect supreme.

In their proper places, reason and emotion exude their virtues. But when misappropriated they make for the worst of vices. This is evident from examining Marxism, communism, fascism, the Spanish Inquisition, allopathic medicine, and New Age disinformation philosophies, all of which owe their growth to the exploitation of some imbalance or underdevelopment among the physical and metaphysical faculties of their supporters.

We know about the proper and improper role of emotion – properly used it propels us into action and gives life to our thoughts. When outside its role, it blinds us to the truth and reduces us to reactive animals. But the use and misuse of intellect is more subtle and will therefore be the focus of our discussion.

The intellect can discern, measure, discriminate, compare, and contrast – and thus appears to be the ultimate faculty available to man. But its supremacy is false, for the intellect is still inferior to man’s higher spiritual faculties. What we commonly know as the emotions, intellect, and instinct are all part of man’s lower nature arising from his neurological, biological, and physiological systems.

Man is more than just machine. He is the ghost in the machine. The true human possesses soul, mind, and spirit in addition to his physical body. So besides the lower emotional, intellectual, and primal centers, he has the potential to access his higher emotional and higher intellectual faculties. They surpass the lower ones in function and verity because they are of a conscious rather than mechanical nature. They operate through direct knowing instead of linear logic.

In keeping with the narrow rigor of materialistic science, the leading intellectuals in recent history have denied the existence of soul, mind, and spirit. So the problem with most secular philosophies
is that they revolve around man’s lower centers. Even if properly balanced, the lower centers are still incomplete and imperfect; any philosophy restricted to their use will likewise be flawed.

Communism touted the virtues of reason and rationalism, centralizing and calculating all aspects of the state, while fascism saw the limits of logic and instead emphasized the virtues of irrationalism and impulse. Both of these merely traded one lower center for another, which ultimately solved nothing. Both became abominations because they molded man into what they falsely assumed him to be, a mechanical unit void of the very spirit needed to sustain the system.

The lower intellect is like a clever computer. Given a set of inputs, it can calculate a set of outputs. But given false inputs, it will not realize that its outputs are also false until a cataclysmic rude awakening forces a reassessment of assumptions. It is a blind man probing the world with a stick. It is a ruler that measures distance but cannot tell direction. The intellect is therefore detached from sensing absolute reality.

Instead, the higher (spiritual) centers act like a compass, telling one via intuition, inspiration, and insight what is “north.” While the lower intellect perceives only symbolic relationships between ideas, the higher centers allow you to perceive the intrinsic meaning and validity of an idea. There is a difference between seeing a symbol on a map, and seeing that destination for yourself. Using the lower intellect is merely browsing the map. Only by turning inward and walking consciously to the core of an idea can you perceive its level of resonance with the truth.

When people communicate, they are sharing maps of ideas with each other. Ideally, each person should be responsible for using the map received to consciously locate within himself the destination represented. The sender never gives knowledge to the receiver, rather he points toward a place where the other can find it for himself. Knowledge cannot be taught, it can only be shown.

If one works only at the level of lower intellect, the map itself is taken as the territory because the shallow faculty of reasoning alone cannot tell the difference between symbol and reality. Words are mere reflections of ideas, and those who mistake the map for territory will never find the treasure.
This is why group consensus built upon intellectual agreement rarely guarantees objectivity. Being blind to the absolute value of an idea and taking everything to be relative and uncertain, the intellect finds group consensus as good a verifier as anything. So when a truth comes along to challenge an erroneous consensus, the intellect sees only one idea contradicting the judgment of multiple minds and naturally rejects it.

The greatest vice of intellect is hubris, its rationalizing away of higher truths and spiritual impulses as baseless and frivolous ideas. It truly is a blind man with a walking stick – unable to distinguish between a high curb and a cliff, and thus afraid to cross the street. The intellectual man is an agnostic rationalist, one who is unsure of everything and prone to rationalizing challenging truths as mere aberrations and fantasies, interpreting the three dimensional picture in terms of his two dimensional world view.

Seeing the faults of intellectual reasoning, many at this point make the mistake of rejecting rather than transcending it. They turn toward lower forms of human expression and fool themselves into thinking they have reached higher states. Relativism is why ever increasing levels of decadence are hailed as breakthroughs in modern art and philosophy. And not being able to tell up from down, the intellect can mistaken falling for rising, an error often fatally reinforced by group consensus. These illusions seem valid until one hits the ground.

In truth, the intellect should be put in its place rather than rejected. What is the proper function of the lower intellect? At best, it can determine what IS NOT, mainly by naturally discerning differences between two things and so proving among them the presence of a falsehood or incompleteness. But when intellect attempts to declare what IS, it cuts down the infinite range of possibilities to one ignorant conclusion and defends it. If instead it stays within its bounds and proves what IS NOT, it cuts out one possibility among many, leaving the truth among the remaining possibilities. Continuous whittling of possibilities allows the truth to eventually be cornered. Sherlock Holmes used this method, eliminating the impossible until what was left, no matter how improbable, must have been the truth.

When the lower intellect begins heeding the advice of spirit coming through the higher centers, then one becomes a gnostic intellectual rather than an agnostic rationalist. One then knows things intuitively but uses reason to check these impressions and give practical substance to them. With map and compass in hand, the intellect can step forth with confidence. The blind man begins to see, perhaps vaguely at first, but enough to know that a curb is just a curb.

Here, the lower intellect has been placed in service to the higher centers as a scribe and navigator. For each center to exhibit its virtues, lower must always be placed secondary to higher. Ideally, the higher centers communicate an intuitive impression to the intellect, which after analyzing, makes a decision that is empowered by emotion before being put into physical action. This process results in further impressions which in turn give rise to further actions. In this way, the will of Spirit becomes manifest in the physical world, but only by cascading from the higher centers down through the lower.

This is an aim of spiritual evolution at our level, to access the higher centers and give them command over the lower. It means following the impulses of your spiritual self rather than being slave to the whims and reactions of your lower self.
To progress, it is not enough to be objective and watchful of your mechanical and animalistic aspects – that merely refines the intellect and places it in command over the lower centers, but does nothing to access the higher spiritual centers. As you learn and apply what you learn, you must also strive to listen to your intuition and inner knowing, becoming proficient at using your intellect to dissect and transcribe these impressions. Give no free reign to the vices of your lower centers, but place them in balanced service to your noblest aspirations and spiritual impulses.

Maximizing Your Potential to Help Others

30 July 04 (metaphys)

In a recent email exchange with a friend, an important subject came up. How can we help others, and what difference would it make? This question came about because he was feeling down and confused about the world and the prospect of acting upon his desire to help. In the past I have had these thoughts myself, feeling dejected with the seeming futility of trying to make a difference in a world brimming with negativity and corruption.

From my own contemplation of the matter, certain answers revealed themselves over time. These I offered to my friend in the following email. I have met many others in recent months who were equally discouraged and confused by these same issues, so for the benefit of anyone reading, I am publishing my email response here. Rather than condensing my response into a formal article, I decided to merely do some minor editing and leave the conversational flow intact.

One of the reasons I am confused at the moment is because I have been talking to a person who is confusing me. He is a really nice bloke, but he asks me about spiritual matters and then the conversation gets all … confusing! I don’t know if the feelings he is sending me are of good nature, or if he is being negative. He totally disables me! I need something to get me back on track.

[...]

You see I am drawn to discussing spiritual things with certain people. … for instance, this boy who is confusing me, I walk into his room and he sits there reading the papers getting noticeably upset with the state of the world. I tell him to not read the papers if it’s getting him down. He says that is burying his head in the sand. I say it might do you good to be aware of a negative side, but you shouldn’t dwell on it. He says “if you have all the answers, how can I help the world? there is people starving & we sit here eating luxury food etc etc…” I say I don’t know all the answers but am aware of a bigger perspective that may help him see things in a different way” and the conversation ends with me feeling confused and a bit helpless. How can I help people!

Regarding the person who confuses you, consider it a challenge testing you on not only how well you know what you know, but how well you can communicate it to others, especially when there could be things working through them to befuddle your mind (usually involves an energy drain and neurolinguistic programming through their language that works to put you in a slight hypnotic trance, all unbeknownst to them).
The more you learn what you know, and learn how to communicate it, the greater your confidence and power. It’s like wielding a sword…at first it’s heavy and slows you down, but only after practicing can it be turned into a great tool.

Can I ask you a question? What is the best way to help somebody? Should you talk about the bigger picture to other people, or just let them discover it for themselves? If now is a critical time for Earth, is it good to “throw seeds about” or is it unwise?

What I do is “give up” only when my interaction with someone turns purely into a waste of energy. That’s the line you cross when you see they have made their choice and actively defend it to the point of no longer hearing what you have to say. You can tell this happens when they start becoming irrational or argue in circles or simply don’t get what you say no matter how you put it. That’s when naiveté on their part spills over into willful ignorance. Naiveté is simple lack of information but willingness to learn, while ignorance is choice to hear no more. Once you understand this difference, you’ll know when to try and when to stop.

You can plant seeds as long as something goes into them, but once they shut the door and lock it, then your job is done for the moment. So what I do is keep going til I cross that line, then for good measure try a bit more just to make sure their door truly is locked. So cross the line, and go a bit farther, then be satisfied you’ve tried and get on with your life.

I say it might do you good to be aware of a negative side, but you shouldn’t dwell on it. He says “if you have all the answers, how can I help the world? there is people starving & we sit here eating luxury food etc etc…” I say I don’t know all the answers but am aware of a bigger perspective that may help him see things in a different way” and the conversation ends with me feeling confused and a bit helpless.

Whenever you feel confused, that’s usually a sign that some great truth is buried there. Confusion says “Figure me out!!”, like a present contained in a chinese puzzle box…gotta figure out the tricky way of opening it and the present is yours.

For example, a close friend of mine recently complained that we’re here to do good in the world, and yet she’s consuming products that require things be thrown away, which damages the environment so that’s not really helping. She asked theoretically, why not just move into the country and live off the land, grow our own food and help the earth?

There is a paradox there – we come here to help the world, and yet we’re harming the world through our garbage.

After thinking about it, the solution hit me: you must maximize how much of your potential you can manifest. Let’s say your potential is to reveal the truth to as many people as possible, to wake them up, arm them with knowledge to free themselves from the Matrix Control System, to maximize their potential and so on. But you then move into the country away from civilization and spend all day working the farm just to stop yourself from being a consumer that harms the environment — sure, you’re no longer harming the world, but you’re also not applying your potential in ways that could help the world a hundredfold more. If people like us moved into a wooden shack and lived off the land without electricity, we could save the earth for a year but ultimately allow tyranny on earth to prevail for the next thousands of years (if that were our destiny, hypothetically speaking).
To maximize how much you can help the world, you have to weigh the costs and benefits of doing or not doing something. The cost is between how much you help the world by doing it, and how much you hurt the world by failing to spend that time making better use of your potential. This will vary from person to person, but one thing I guarantee is that the only way to know what’s right for you is to know what gives you enthusiasm, what is naturally in line with your drives, your skills, and the needs of the world.

Some examples I can think of are donating large sums to charity and working in soup kitchens. Depending on who you are, these may or may not be the ideal options for you. There are those who do precisely these things because that is the maximum extent of their potential, and they know it because it is their heart that leads them to do this. If you have time you cannot think of spending any other way, then naturally these are right for you.

But for me, other than giving money to homeless when they come my way on the streets, or having spent time doing volunteer work in college when I had the time, I don’t go out of my way donating to charity or working at homeless shelters because I’m busy helping the world in other ways. When I donate, I don’t give money indiscriminately, but rather where it counts — where a little can go a long way. Tithing the homeless is an example. So is donating to a fellow truthseeker’s website. Under higher laws, only time is a limit, never money. When you give for the right reasons, reality compensates you: give to receive.

Regarding many of the “altruistic” options the Matrix gives us are just the opposite – most amount of money for the least amount of effects. Think about donating to the “National Cancer Foundation” to help with cancer research. Sounds like a noble thing to do, but in truth cures for cancer are being suppressed by these same pharmaceutical companies, and it’s amazing how much money universities blow on research that ultimately does nothing. A hundred thousand dollars for a university physics lab may build a machine whose results may be published in an obscure scientific journal that gets forgotten, or a hundred thousand dollars in the hands of a renegade inventor presently working in his garage on a free energy machine may be enough to change the world.

It’s all about where you put your time, energy, and money. Not only must you maximize your potential, but you must apply it in a way that makes use of others’ potential in the best way as well. Many compassionate people from 4D incarnate into 3D and often sacrifice themselves for the well-being of others, only to learn eventually that wisdom is needed in knowing when and how to help. This is the lesson we need to learn.

Sometimes a little harm is needed to access an exponentially greater amount of help. I use gasoline to power my car, so that I can network and buy things I need to help others. The harm I do is insignificant to the help I try to accomplish. And being that the SOUL is what matters, metaphysical help is far more powerful than sheer physical help. Therefore, you also must learn to prioritize things.

Then there are problems you can’t do anything about, like the starving children in Africa. Well, you could go there and help them for the rest of your life, but the issues above must be taken into account. The least you can do, however, is send them love and compassion, which helps ease the suffering of their souls on the metaphysical level.
He says “if you have all the answers, how can I help the world? there is people starving & we sit here eating luxury food etc etc…”

See, what would this guy be implying? That we should feel guilty about what we have (which ignores that we chose our life before incarnating), that we should live like the starving people (which ignores that we’re living the life we’re supposed to), that we should give all our food to them (which would be impractical), etc…? When we can help someone, then we should help in the wisest manner possible. If we cannot help someone, then we should not worry about it other than sending them some metaphysical help like a prayer. Everything happens for a reason, because of a choice.

You cannot help everyone in the world – if you have to choose between feeding someone in Africa versus India, how is this less “sinful” than choosing between donating to such charities and using the money to, say, write a book that helps free the minds of thousands? This is IF you had to make that choice – often you can indeed contribute money toward charity and still have much left over for helping others in more productive ways, but nevertheless wisdom demands optimization and the long range view.

What do you suggest? I want to help stop that horribleness in the planet…all the ignorance and negative energy.

If you can’t do something physically, then you can only work on the metaphysical level which is good because that’s where the physical is projected from anyway. You can be a beacon – by discovering your inner truth, manifesting it as practical knowledge, and maintaining your frequency and confidence in what you know, you become a beacon broadcasting higher frequency and higher knowledge into your environment and into the lives of all who cross your path. You create ripple effects in reality, sending waves out through the lives of others. You throw seeds and they grow in those whose minds are fertile. You create a forward cascading effect into the future, in ways only the divine mind can grasp in its entirety because the future is nonlinear – small things can have HUGE effects if applied in the right way at the right place at the right time. You can’t calculate these ahead of time, but know that by following your divine calling, you’ll always be on target.

You don’t have to yell in a park to teach the truth, you can simply discuss it with those who bring it up in conversation – just speak your mind in the most logical way you can, share your opinion when called for. You don’t have to give your life to charity to be altruistic – while that’s great for some, for others who have a different level of potential, this can only be a side project but not the main thrust of life.

Think about Neo and Morpheus in The Matrix. They knew their goal, and they knew that it takes a little hurt to do a lot of good. It’s not about “right” and “wrong” but a matter of what needs to be done and the wisest way of doing it. Maximizing potential isn’t as simple as following society’s criteria for what the right thing is to do. Surgery requires creating a wound to fix an internal problem. Likewise, sometimes the physical in the world will be harmed slightly so that the root cause on the metaphysical level can be fixed.

But what is the best way to help? To sit over my computer reading C’s and other material? Or to get off my arse and go and do some helping? Charity work, cooking for homeless people etc.?
Imagine you had the wit, the strength, and the knowledge to tell that guy exactly why he shouldn’t gripe about the headlines. Imagine him lighting up with recognition, of him seeing that truth that has always been within him. Say he then stops wasting his energy and starts refining how he can best help the world, and how all who then cross his path share in his ignited light. Okay, so this is an ideal scenario that doesn’t always happen, but unless you know your truth and have practiced the clarity of mind needed to share it, this can never happen.

Reading the C’s transcripts may seem like nothing on the physical level, but on the nonlinear and metaphysical level you now understand how it can indeed help. In life, it is very difficult to make things happen that aren’t in line with the flow of your destiny. To serve means to serve when called to serve, not just to go out and start picking things to serve. When your heart calls you (via enthusiasm or inspiration), when someone calls you by asking you a question or leaving himself open to your words and thus subconsciously asking for your help, then that is the time to act. And to act well, you must be knowledgeable and wise – which is why learning is far from fruitless. The more knowledge you have, the more you understand where help is needed, how to apply it wisely and effectively.

I want to get rid of this helpless feeling. I want to stop talking about “higher” stuff and start acting higher. But I don’t know how a higher person would act! I feel I am kind and caring, but what’s the point of being kind and caring if I don’t get out there and care for anybody? etc…

Let’s say you’re a person who likes to give presents. Do you go out and just force presents into people’s hands? No, giving when not called for is not giving at all. I know people like this who do it literally, they get internal satisfaction from giving things to people, even when people don’t even need or ask for what they are given. This is why patience is required for the right moment. Until that moment, you can only become better prepared to meet it.

I think you are doing a grand job with your web site, I could make one too…. but there again we could just end up with a world full of people reading stuff on the internet and thinking “yeah that’s good stuff”. but how is this really helping?

Think of it this way. There’s someone out there right now whose future can benefit from you speaking your truth. You have a role to play in his life – and whether you fulfill it is up to you. Among the many people nodding their head with what they already know by reading your site, there will be a couple who will open their eyes for the first time. Even if it’s a single idea that they haven’t thought of yet, it’s enough to kick them into an interesting direction. The divine flow works through all channels that can contain this flow. By opening up your channel, you give one additional outlet for the divine flow to do its thing. That’s how it works. It’s like building a new road in town – sure, people can say “just another road” but who knows what difference it can make…by taking a shortcut, the ambulance may get to the hospital soon enough to save someone.

Because of the eventually unpredictable effects of our actions, the best we can do is live our destiny and our heart’s calling to the fullest, regardless of whether we think anyone is listening or not – because what we THINK we are doing isn’t always how things really end up working out. I don’t get much feedback on my site, but occasionally someone tells me that because of my site, he and his whole circle of friends have now hit upon some new ideas and have been helped. THAT is
something I could not predict, but it happened anyway.

These are important points to consider, because they are things I’ve had to learn for myself, and things I understand can discourage a lot of us if we are unaware of them.

Opening the Flow

14 August 04 (metaphys)
Have you ever been under distressing financial circumstances, expecting to fall into an abyss of poverty with the next emergency expense? How many times have you suffered the worst of your expectations? How many times did help come from unexpected places to get you through despite the worst of odds?

Our expectations come from what we have been programmed to expect. What actually happens depends on the laws of reality deciding the nature of our experiences. Those who pay attention will see that what actually happens is most often at odds with what is expected. Why do our plans and anticipations about the future rarely happen the way we envision them? Why are our programmed expectations so different from our actual experiences?

The answer is that many of these expectations are control mechanisms grafted onto us by the Matrix Control System. From birth we are indoctrinated through school, social programming, media and culture to believe in a backward system of limitations and motivations that have nothing to do with our true potential or reason for being here. We are taught what is taboo and what is respectable, what is possible and what is not, what goals to shoot for and what path to follow to achieve those goals. This indoctrination is so complete that most of us accept its precepts as common sense and tend to fight or disbelieve any suggestions that reality could be to the contrary, even if these suggestions come from our own life experiences.

The system of assumptions we are offered by the Matrix is only a simulacra of reality, a manipulated copy posing as the original. It seems perfectly legitimate until you explore territory not covered by the impostor version of reality, then true reality shines through. By daring to do the impossible, pushing the limits, you begin seeing glimpses of a higher realm of possibility.

Often we don’t have the guts to push the envelope but are nonetheless thrust into these forbidden territories through seemingly unfortunate circumstances: financial disasters, emergencies, ultimatums, and unavoidable risks. And just when failure seems certain, the unexpected happens: money comes from an unexpected source, a needed opportunity arrives just in the nick of time, everything amazingly falls into place.

Most people encountering these last minute miracles pass them off as freak exceptions to the rule, nothing that can be relied upon as a common occurrence. But what these people don’t realize is that as far as life experiences go, the anomalies of yesterday can become the norm of tomorrow. In other words, rather than being “freak” anomalies, they are manifestations of higher laws that are just as immutable as the laws of science. Still, these higher laws tend to go unnoticed by people who have bought into the control system and keep their noses to the ground.

The higher laws of reality are yours to employ if you can muster sufficient courage to live by them.
There is no guarantee for the future other than what was guaranteed in the past. Reflect upon your unusual positive past experiences and know that the principles behind their manifestation shall continue to hold true in the future. They are failsafe and dependable principles that can be applied with some faith. This faith is not blind faith, but one based on real experience, of having previously glimpsed the next stage and confidently knowing it exists and can be reached.

Have you ever thought to yourself, “If only I had the money, I would…” do something positive, buy what you need, fulfill your dreams? Well, realize that if your motivation is pure and wise, then the money is already secured.

…money flows from unexpected sources. (Cassiopaean Transcripts)

By first taking a leap of faith toward your goal without worrying about the material means to get there, these material means automatically fall into place. That is a type of financial security guaranteed by higher laws. You know these laws are valid because they have always worked and will therefore always continue to work.

When one worries first about money, the trap is set. When one pursues one’s passion, all else falls into place. What you do not yet allow yourself to understand is that this principle never, ever fails. But you certainly are not alone. The 4th density STS programmers relish the thought. (Cassiopaean Transcripts)

Some will have doubts because this goes entirely opposite our programmed expectations and “common sense.” The Matrix tells us that to reach a goal, we must first secure the financial means. This security is offered through credit cards, financing, loans, or savings, all of which require no faith or understanding of higher laws to secure, only ambition and soul-bargaining. While this certainly works, it is inefficient because to attain the goal this way, you must give up either some energy or freedom in exchange for security. Evidently, ignorance of the higher creates slavery to the lower.

There are no limits, just controls…The knowledge gives one all the necessary tools to overcome the controls. (Cassiopaean Transcripts)

There are no limits other than those we assume through our ignorant beliefs or bring upon ourselves through unwise choices. Although opening the flow requires that we cast aside limiting assumptions and expand our beliefs to include higher truths, this does not allow us to also escape having to complete what was initiated by past choices. Financial debt, marriage, children, binding contracts and obligations – these are continuing consequences of choices once made. They cannot be immediately eliminated with a simple change of attitude, which may be discouraging for those who wish to avoid responsibility.

But there is cause for hope. Just as the past affects the present, so does the present affect the future. No matter how burdened your life is right now, tomorrow can be better if you choose to align your thoughts, feelings, and actions with higher principles and thereby initiate consequences that liberate instead of bind.

As Inside, So Outside

To open the flow, you must be free of fear, worry, and doubt. Unfounded negative thoughts clog the
flow just as gunk clogs a sink.

...your mind must not only hold true and pure thoughts — God’s thoughts only — about the material life of yourself and others, and about your physical well-being, but you must know that God’s Mind is the Source of all true thoughts and by perfect faith and trust in Him you thus keep yourself open to the free circulation of His Thoughts in your consciousness about both your affairs and your body, thus creating perfect health and harmony in both. (*The Way Out*)

The question is, what constitutes an *unfounded* negative thought? Some people say their negative thinking is justified because such thoughts are natural responses to negative life experiences. This excuse is flawed for several reasons. First, just as experiences influence thought, so does thought influence experience. Secondly, we *choose* how to mentally and emotionally respond to any given experience in life, meaning there is more than one way to respond.

So we participate in a feedback cycle with reality, experiences shaping our mindset and our mindset influencing our experiences. Choice is what lets us break out of any cycle and initiate a new kind. By assuming there can only be negative responses to negative experiences, people lock themselves into a vicious cycle whereby negative thoughts create negative experiences which in turn seem to “objectively” justify further negative thoughts. By assuming the external world is independent of our internal world, the internal world capitulates to the external world. Because thought effects experience, the only way to break out of this cycle is to *choose* to think, feel, and act differently than before, in alignment with higher principles rather than old Matrix-programmed assumptions.

Therefore, one must replace fear, worry, and doubt with courage, faith, and confidence *regardless* of prior negative patterns of experience. This may seem like willful ignorance or wishful thinking, but there is a difference. Wishful thinking is baseless and proves itself empty when its false assumptions contradict what actually happens. In contrast, unclogging the flow by having courage, faith, and confidence is far from baseless because it stands upon principles that have already been proven through past positive patterns of experiences. Furthermore, rather than contradicting what actually happens, these actually *affect* what happens.

The quickest way to rid your mind of that old fear of want, fear of your job, fear of the power of money, is to have an absolute trust in your heavenly Father’s loving care and for you to pay out gladly your last dollar for a needed thing. KNOWING that by so doing you make it possible for Him to supply you with plenty more. (*The Way Out*)

The validity of having courage, faith, and confidence in higher principles is evidenced by the consequent alteration of life experiences for the better.

**Increasing the Flow**

Because money is a type of flow, we can make a comparison to water flow in order to illustrate the difference between making money the Matrix way or the Divine way. To empty water from a bottle, common sense says to tip it upside down. Sure enough, the water goes “glug” several times and eventually empties. But if instead one first shakes the bottle in a circular motion, the flow forms into a vortex that more rapidly and efficiently drains from the bottle. Nature loves efficiency, and the vortex is nature’s most efficient form of flow. If one initiates an impulse in line with the laws of nature (shaking the bottle / leaping toward a wisely chosen goal on solid faith that the material
means will synchronistically fall into place), the resulting flow will be many times more efficient than were these laws ignored. The Matrix method of progress is based on ignorance of higher laws and is inefficient. But if one initiates an impulse in line with those higher laws, progress speeds up as reality aligns via numerous synchronicities, just as flow speeds up as water aligns into the shape of a vortex.

It is as if your needs must keep the stream of money ever flowing, if you would not clog up its source. For money, in its true sense, is the means for the perfect expression of material life even as the blood is the means for the perfect expression of physical health. (*The Way Out*)

To increase the flow of money, you must exercise your ability to spend it. This is no different from increasing physical energy by exercising your body. Pinching your dollar to save money is like staying physically inactive to conserve energy. Some would say this makes sense, that to increase money one must stop spending it freely, and to increase physical energy one must conserve it. However, in the long run this leads to nothing less than atrophy. Some would say it is paradoxical that in order to increase physical energy one must expend it – but that is precisely what’s needed. Exercise increases your *capacity* to generate and handle a greater amount of physical energy. Likewise, by exercising your ability to spend money without reservation, you increase your *capacity* for handling greater flows of money and so flow naturally increases.

It is the pinching and holding on to your last dollar, fearing that no more will come, that actually prevents your receiving more. For giving, more than anything else, helps to open the channel so that supply, both spiritual and material, can freely flow. (*The Way Out*)

What the Matrix tells us is once again backwards from the truth. You increase money by spending it.

**Giving is Receiving**

It should now be clear why wisdom teaches that giving is receiving, and why the more we give, the more we receive. People tend to take this at face value and fail to realize the far-reaching implications of this principle. Their interpretation is that we give at our own material expense, and the most we will get in return is some appreciation which should satisfy our hearts by being a fair trade lest we feel guilty for not considering something immaterial a fair compensation for our material expense. This is faux spirituality hiding an underlying conflict between our programmed drive for material survival and programmed drive for social acceptance as seemingly ‘altruistic’ individuals. This twisted doublethink arises because it is based on the false assumption that we give at our own expense.

In truth, by giving, everyone wins. The recipient wins because by becoming open channels for synchronistic flow, you allow this flow to reach him or her through your act of giving. And you win because by being an open channel, more shall flow into your life. A river receives from upstream what it sends downstream. Likewise, what you give, you receive.

**The Fallacy of Ascetism**

The Matrix Control System takes care of its own. Those who sell their souls and assimilate
themselves into the Matrix system of greed, competition, and manipulation are rewarded with sufficient material perks, social status, and power to keep them from wanting to leave.

Then there are people who look upon this system with disgust, seeking instead a path free from materialism. The live in poverty conditions, believing that the only way to be spiritual is to reject the material. However, this belief contains a fatal mistake, one that the Matrix Control System has encouraged because it disarms spiritual seekers from having any real power in the world. In truth, the key to spiritual empowerment is not in rejecting materialism, but in transcending it.

There is a difference between rejecting money and transcending money, for example. The first eliminates money from one’s life, the second eliminates money’s control from one’s life. The first makes one slave to poverty, the second makes one spiritually free from material limitations. The first creates impotence, the second creates power.

Indeed, self-imposed material limitations can detrimentally affect one’s ability to be of service to others. The greatest benefactors of humanity were those who transcended rather than rejected the system and therefore possessed the power to make a difference.

The problem facing those who reject rather than transcend the material world when pursuing spiritual priorities is that they reside in the intermediate void between the lower and higher reality. As mentioned, the Matrix provides material rewards to those who ambitiously carry out their self-serving desires, and the Divine Will (that of the Creator, the Higher Self, etc.) provides material assistance to those who recognize and apply higher principles in dedication to service and awakening. People who live in the void are neither rewarded by the Matrix nor assisted by the higher principles of prosperity they fail to recognize. Believing that material martyrdom is necessary for spiritual progress makes it so.

All there is, is lessons. When one understands this, one no longer searches for the non-existent and unnecessary, safety net. (*Cassiopaean Transcripts*)

Because our reality is a learning program, material limitations are superceded in priority by metaphysical ends, whether those ends are towards empowering or giving up one’s soul. This is why those who sell their souls become the materialistic elite of this world, and those who empower their souls to enable better service to others also have no worries about material limitations. All is lessons. Material things are just props of the learning program, easily edited and rearranged to suit the learning needs of any individual. Material limitations exist only for those who have yet to develop their full potential, yet to strongly polarize toward the Matrix Control System or the Divine Will.

To summarize, material martyrdom is not necessary for spiritual progress. When in balance, material prosperity naturally arises when priority is given to spiritual prosperity. Where the Divine Will flows, material limitations melt away.

**Turning the Tables, Flipping the Boat**

When you transcend material limitations, everyone wins but the control system and its power monopolies who rely upon the illusion of finite resources to pose as the sole providers of those resources. When you transcend material limitations by aligning your inner and outer world with a higher reality, you no longer feed the control system. This does more than starve the control system,
it actually removes money from the system.

Knowledge of how to open the flow is heavily suppressed for this reason, not by overt suppression against the availability of this knowledge, but rather covert programming of the masses to be unaware or willfully ignorant of it. Before discussing how the Matrix suppresses this knowledge, I must first explain why opening the flow actually harms the control system beyond merely starving it.

Let’s say someone kindly gives you a sum of money for whatever reason, and soon this person, by having opened his flow, receives compensation in an unexpected way from “up the river.” Where does the river start? Where does the money originally come from? The only place it can come from: the Matrix financial system itself. Besides new job opportunities, unexpected sources of money often manifest as surprise rebate checks, unannounced bonuses, miraculous contest and lottery prizes, forgotten savings or inheritance money recently discovered, etc… the possibilities are endless. If it doesn’t come from someone who himself is passing along the flow, then it comes from its ultimate source, the Matrix financial system.

Yes, when people reclaim their divine heritage and open the flow, something amazing happens: money flows from the collective walking dead to the brave family of living souls. It transfers from the Matrix Control System to those who have transcended it. Transcendence is power. This transfer of wealth happens via the phenomenon of synchronistic induction (my term). Synchronistic induction is the rearrangement of lower material circumstances to suit higher divine will. To the lower, this manifests as glitches, accidents, mistakes, accounting errors, freak anomalies, happenstance, synchronicity, etc… but from the higher perspective it is all according to plan and principle. Higher laws override lower laws when they are recognized and applied.

Man Behind the Curtain? What Curtain?

The majority of mankind does not recognize higher laws and consequently cannot apply them. This is by design — and by choice. The Matrix Control System owes its power to the fact that people give it power. Illusion, ignorance, and greed sustain the control system. Freewill is bartered for security and most people live as slaves, perhaps happy slaves but slaves nonetheless. You might see this situation as an injustice, but once you realize that freedom is not denied, simply ignored, the matter is no longer an injustice but rather a tragedy. Like Dorothy, we have always had the power. We have always had the ability to open the flow to prosperity, but it takes a long and arduous road of failure and deception for most to finally recognize and gain confidence in a better way.

But the programming is deep and our fear of failure can be strong enough to cast doubt on the validity of “opening the flow.” We may look at the homeless, the battered, the social and financial failures we see every day in the media, on the streets, in our neighborhood, even in our own families – we look at them and wonder why, if the higher principles of flow are valid and one need only spend to prosper, have they fallen to the bottom? We may look at everyone else but ourselves, and thereby choose for ourselves the very limits others have chosen. This is foolish – the limits of others need not be your own, but the Matrix sure hopes you see it that way.

Understand that besides those who have fallen because of unwise choices, who require such harsh experiences to resolve karma or learn some lesson that could not be learned otherwise, there are other people who exist primarily as “hired clappers” for the Matrix directing the rest of the
audience, setting examples for the rest of society to follow. You read about them in the news all the
time – examples of what the Matrix says will happen to you if you don’t sell your soul in exchange
for the security it offers. This is only a scare tactic, though a very effective one at frightening people
into believing they share the same vulnerability and limitations as those advertised through the
victims of society.

In truth, only your own experiences, intuition, and reasoning skills can tell you what laws,
possibilities, and limitations apply to you. Forget the limitations of others, they are not your own.
Only by testing reality can you know what you’re capable of, and whether the higher principles you
previously glimpsed are valid and can be counted upon in the future.

Do What You Love, and You Will Love What You Do

When you follow your enthusiasm, acknowledge and act upon the calling of your soul, and do what
really interests and satisfies you on a deep spiritual level, that is when the flow opens wide and life
becomes effortless, free of the struggles familiar to those still bound by the Matrix.

When you are doing as you should, it is effortless. Let that be your guide. There is no
such thing as “hard” work, unless one is going against the “grain.” (Cassiopeaen
Transcripts)

Some may frown at the word “effortless” and wonder how there can be personal growth without
struggle. With this objection there is failure to distinguish between lower and higher interpretations
of the terms “effortless” and “struggle.”

The lower interpretation, best suited for life under Matrix control, defines “effortless” living as
getting large returns from minimal investments of energy. The Matrix tells people to pride
themselves on efficiency since this perpetuates the illusion that resources are finite and must
therefore be economized to produce the greatest returns. The “effortless” life in this sense means
being at the top and living the high life at the expense of others.

Likewise, within the Matrix system the term “struggle” means spending energy and asserting
personal will over the opposing will of others and overcoming material limitations through sheer
ambition and perseverance. Relying solely upon themselves to succeed, those who struggle to the
top in this manner do so at the expense of their own soul energy and end up as wealthy but hollow
shells.

Remember, your reality is a result of your thoughts. If you believe that things are hard,
what are you creating? Many of you have spent lifetimes honoring and respecting
family members or people of society who you believe are uplifting citizens and who
represent to you a certain work ethic and value system. You have not thought to
question this work ethic or to see if there is any other way. So you believe that in order
to get money you must expend a great amount of energy, or you must be employed by
someone who is going to give it to you, or whatever. These ideas are completely and
totally erroneous. We cannot emphasize that enough. When you are allowing, Spirit will
compensate you in a variety of unexpected ways. The only reason this has not happened
before is that you just haven’t believed it was possible. When you believe things are
possible, reality changes. (Bringers of the Dawn)

As for the higher interpretations of these terms, applicable to opening the flow and transcending the
Matrix, what is meant by “effortless” is that when you follow your heart, all the energy you need to be productive is infinitely supplied in the form of enthusiasm and love. Additionally, material limitations disappear as opportunities synchronistically manifest to assist you. Because your energy to be productive comes from an unlimited source, and reality assists rather than resists your utilization of this energy, life becomes effortless and fun.

State of mind is the name of the game here. We cannot emphasize that to you enough: how you feel about reality and how you program reality is how you are going to respond to it or how it is going to present itself to you. That is why we say, “Go for it! Be outrageous! Do what excites you! Do the impossible!” You can do it. You can do whatever you want to do. You will transform your world no matter what state the world is in. (Bringers of the Dawn)

So, whereas Matrix slaves struggle to pit their own willpower and energy against external obstacles and competition and burn out in the process, these same issues are moot for those who have transcended the Matrix.

This leads to the higher interpretation of “struggle” because once you are free of the material struggles that preoccupy people still stuck in the illusion, you have a more important set of struggles to deal with, namely spiritual ones. By opening the flow, life can become effortless in the material and logistical sense, but spiritual goals and challenges take their place.

Money seems to be an issue with everyone. You all have very definitive beliefs about how money comes to you. The more you believe you must work hard for money, the harder you are going to have to work. Many of you believe it is quite normal to work hard for money, and that if you don’t work hard for money then it is “dirty.” Let us ask you to remember the word effortless and incorporate it into your vocabulary. Say to yourself, “I am effortlessly intending that this come about.” To be effortless is to command to reality to bring itself to you in a way that gives room for plenty of energy to be expended in other experimentation. (Bringers of the Dawn)

This also answers another potential question: “What incentive is there for doing productive work if money manifests simply by spending and giving?”

The answer should be clear. First of all, transcending lower limitations and burdens doesn’t free you of all challenges. In fact, it only frees you of the petty ones so that ideally, you have more time, energy, and resources to do work that actually matters in the big scheme of things. Instead of being preoccupied with chasing illusory goals and butting heads against illusory limits, living by higher principles frees you of these distractions and lets you engage in more meaningful work. This all comes from doing what you can and love to do, rather than suffering through unappealing work because in ignorance of higher principles you feel you have no other choice.

We mentioned before about career. And we mentioned family. When one is engaged in going against the grain, never the twain shall meet. You have seen that by now. Now please recognize that your interests should direct your life from here. To be engaged in unsatisfactory endeavors has led you to this point. Please follow your instinctual objectives. This is what will lead from the gloom into the Glorious Light. (Cassiopaean Transcripts)

Opening flow requires that money come purely as a byproduct of following your heart; money is
not an incentive when the heart alone compels you into action. In other words, the “incentive” for doing higher productive work lies beyond material compensation, arising instead from an inner sense of service, compassion, wisdom, courage, and necessity. By acting on these living principles as they are felt and acknowledged, the material details automatically work themselves out.

Seek ye first the desire of the heart and all else falls into place. (*Cassiopaean Transcripts*)

Transcending the Matrix Control System means entering a new realm of development along spiritual instead of material lines, with the latter no longer being an obstacle. Instead of fighting for material power, for example, one fights for truth and the enlightenment of self and others. Instead of struggling against social or financial competition, one struggles against ignorance. These are definite challenges – but ones motivated by love and destiny rather than greed and social programming.

**A Challenge**

After reflecting upon your life experiences and hopefully affirming what I have written in this article, are you courageous enough to put this realization to the test? Have no doubt that these principles can be tested, for they are immutable laws.

Here is the challenge. After making an assessment of your current and previous financial situation, commit yourself to applying these higher principles.

*When you spend to progress, you prosper.* (*Cassiopaean Transcripts*)

Give a couple dollars to the homeless when they approach you, and donate some money to people, websites, or causes that appeal to your heart. If there is something you or a loved one needs to buy, have no qualms about spending the necessary money. If you need to make necessary repairs to your house or car, do not delay. If there is a book that appeals to your thirst for knowledge and wisdom, get it. And so on. Whatever your heart compels you to do, whatever brightens you from the inside and uplifts your spirits when considering it, do it without regret or worry. Let each act be an affirmation of your confidence in the validity of a better existence.

Know that you can freely do all these things because you are opening yourself as an outlet for the divine will and sending downstream what you shall receive from upstream. With compassion toward whom you are giving, have gratitude toward the source from which you shall be receiving. Know that the less you can fathom the manner in which what you give or spend could ever return to you, the more surprising shall be its return.

After keeping this up for a month, reassess your financial situation. If you have taken the synchronistic opportunities that came your way and even halfway maintained your sense of faith and courage, you will find that despite spending more, you are actually better off than you were before.

However, if you consistently spend on items and activities that harm others, impede your spiritual progress by serving as distractions, or indulge in negativity and egotism, then the flow will diminish. If you are uncertain whether what you are doing, spending on, or giving for is wise, then 1) consult your intuition, and 2) watch how reality “reacts” to your intentions. If you are acting
unwisely, not only will there be an inner sense of flatness or resistance, but reality will respond with
synchronistic obstacles and mishaps indicating that you are going against the grain of progress. This
will always happen when you try to do something that is simply not meant to be, or perhaps not yet
meant to be.

Good things happen to those who have patience and avoid anticipation. (Cassiopeaen
Transcripts)

The biggest killer of flow is anticipation. Anticipation comes from worrying about the future,
particularly when following a sequence of steps to create a pre-calculated effect. Some might
attempt to apply higher principles solely as a means to obtaining more money. This is backwards
from the correct system of following higher principles and letting money come naturally as a
material complement to the enrichment of spiritual life. By reversing the process and impatiently
anticipating the return after having applied a series of steps in order to “milk” reality of wealth, one
merely cuts off flow and suffers the consequence of exploiting higher principles to satisfy lower
desires.

The proper way to open flow is to act on principle instead of anticipation. Anticipation is based on
the illusions of past and future, principle exists in the only true moment, the present moment.
Anticipation is temporal, principle is eternal. Following your heart, or acting from your higher
center, negates the need for anticipation because first, doing so fills you with the faith and courage
to know it will all work out and thus there is no worry pressing you into obsessing about the
outcome, and secondly, instead of implementing a series of steps to create an eventual result, you
are responding in the moment to a higher impulse, be it love, enthusiasm, or compassion.

True Reality Creation
The systems of “True Reality Creation” and “Opening the Flow” greatly complement each other.
Respectively, these are direct and indirect ways of employing higher principles to improve your life.
The first involves intending that things go your way without interference and requesting assistance
or protection from higher forces. The second, as covered in this article, involves consciously
aligning yourself with the Divine Will.

Together, intending, requesting, and aligning comprise a three-fold system of practical spiritual
empowerment. To learn more about the first two, please read Reality Creation and True Reality
Creation.

Conclusion
Opening the flow is opening the door to a new realm of possibilities. It is these possibilities,
however, that we were born to explore. We incarnate with a basic list of spiritual priorities and goals
but most of us get caught up in the illusion and neglect to fulfill them. Only by seeing through the
illusion, acknowledging the reality that lies beyond, going with the flow, acting from the higher
center within, following our hearts and heeding our intuition can we regain the clarity and power
needed to accomplish what we came here to do and optimally learn what we came here to learn.

(index)
The first and most important step in waking up is discerning between the positive and negative. One must differentiate what lifts up and what drags down. As spiritual beings inhabiting third density bodies, we are caught in a battle of opposites. This manifests within as a battle between our higher and baser natures, and outside as a battle between divine and diabolical forces. What is within resonates with what is outside, the divine resonating and working with our higher self and the diabolical doing the same with our lower self. Every moment is a choice, and every choice is a response to the following question: whom will you follow, the lower or the higher?

When faced with a choice, we may feel within us simultaneously conflicting influences. A part of us wants this and another part wants that. For the majority of asleep people, these conflicts are between the various sub-personalities making up the mosaic of their inconstant minds. But sooner or later the contrast is turned up until the conflict is primarily between what is written in our hearts as spiritual conscience and aspiration, and what is programmed into us socially, genetically, and psychologically.

Anything can fall down, but not everything can fly up – likewise, it takes little effort to fall into darkness but considerable effort at times to withstand the pull of this spiritual gravity and even more to rise higher. The intensity of this “gravity” fluctuates with time depending on physical and metaphysical factors, and the strength of one’s soul is put to the test during the more intense periods. Just as weight determines how strongly something is pulled downward by gravity, so does the level of dominance held by our lower aspect determine how strongly we are affected by negative influences. These weigh us down for as long as we are chained to them via our repeated indulgence in negative reactions and thoughtless mechanical behavior. But by consistently identifying and choosing that which uplifts and originates from our nobler aspects, the chains rust away from neglect and the possibility of flight becomes a reality.

So identifying the choice and making the right one is imperative. Some would say there is no wrong choice, and that is true because all roads lead to the same destination. However, some roads are far more circuitous than others. The yellow brick road circles the globe – if your destination is ten miles east, you could just as well get there by traveling twenty five thousand miles west. By right choice, I mean the smart choice.

Most esoteric literature you may come across, such as Sufi, Fourth Way, hermetic, alchemical, and inner Christianity literature, expound upon the necessity of distinguishing between higher and lower. The most basic of these discuss the importance of seeing the contrast within us. The more advanced ones mention influences that originate outside us as well. For example, Boris Mouravieff in his three volumes of *Gnosis* does an excellent job of showing how our inner progress depends upon what types of outer influences we assimilate. These influences he sorted into two basic categories: those that beckon one to stay within the current level of evolution, and those that compel one toward the next level.

Largely missing from esoteric literature is mention of the hyperdimensional factor. Save for a few writers like Michael Topper, most do not discuss its negative aspects like soul abductions, implants and mind programming, dimensional engineering and timeline manipulation, artificial
synchronicities, technological soul frequency modulation, etc… This is understandable since the soul grows from hardship regardless of where the resistance originates, and one can therefore get by without having to know the specific methods of deception and persuasion employed by dark forces. Nevertheless, as much as darkness has a place in Creation as mirrors for our own weaknesses and catalysts for growth, its agents do have freewill and use extreme cunning and technological tricks to get their way. It is easy to be misled and the price can be heavy; we must bear the consequences not only as delay in progress, but in missed opportunities to be of service to others. Thus, more knowledge is better than less.

Readers often ask me, “How can one tell the difference between positive and negative synchronicities?” They would like to know which of the unusual opportunities placed before them are genuine and which are traps. It is an important question because since each incarnation has a finite span and making the most of it therefore requires discernment to avoid the pitfalls.

Toward that end I have sketched out some of my observations on distinguishing between positive and negative influences. These are tentative guidelines rather than absolute formulas. Formulas are mechanical substitutes for discernment undermining the very reason challenging situations are arranged into your life. So as always, take what makes sense and leave the rest.

In my wrestling with this issue of discernment, I have found it useful to divide influences into eight categories based on whether they originate from a positive or negative source, manifest within or outside us, and whether they are forms of encouragement or resistance. They are listed below together with identifying characteristics gathered from internal and external observation. To avoid writing solely about the obvious, the following list will focus more on the hyperdimensional than mundane types of positive and negative influences.

**Negative external resistance**

These are responses by the Control System toward individuals making or contemplating some positive form of progress; sometimes they are messages designed to instill fear and doubt, other times they manifest as distraction and diversion, and occasionally they are sheer outbursts of frustration. Whatever the case, negative forms of external resistance are but empty threats and optional obligations, illusions that only carry consequence if you choose to buy into them. They attack your certainty instead of your strength; rather than forcefully oppose your chosen actions, such influences merely attempt to undermine your confidence in continuing/undertaking them. Nevertheless, such messages can be highly manipulative because they work through anyone and anything that can be influenced by the Control System, allowing for methods of deception too subtle to be discerned by the average person.

Examples of negative external resistance include: irrational criticism/ridicule of your choices, being shown examples of others who failed, multiple individuals giving you the same baseless warning around the same time delivered in the same way, hive mind harassment like evil glares and cryptic mutterings from strangers, people exploding into rage at you for no reason, electronic glitches and paranormal phenomena that serve as overly dramatic omens, and twisted synchronicities that seem smug and contrived. All of these appeal to ignorance, fear, insecurity, shame, and self-importance.
Positive external resistance

Rather than deceptively baiting your freewill, positive external resistance comes in the form of subtle warning signs and logistical blocking of detrimental courses of action. The warning signs are clues that guide one toward gaining an expanded perspective of the situation in order to see some hidden danger. In contrast to their negative counterparts, these positive signs and synchronicities require a raising of awareness to decipher. The logistical blocking comes in the form of interruption and delay in plans. When severe, it manifests as an increase in accidents, mechanical failures, and health problems. Positive resistance is far more persistent, all encompassing, and final than the negative type, more like a brick wall than a stop sign. Forcing one’s way through these blocks results in mounting personal misfortune. Positive external resistance appeals to reason, intuition, and discernment.

Negative external encouragement

These are deceptive opportunities and messages that appeal to one’s weakness, ignorance, wishful thinking, and primal desires. They are spiritual hooks cast into our world by the Control System to reel in the weak and gullible for consumption. These hooks are baited with empty promises and artificial synchronicities, appealing to the ego and lower emotions and frequently reinforced by “confirmation” in the form of blatant coincidences designed to give the impression that this was all “meant to be”.

Examples of negative external encouragement: slick individuals giving you opportunities that are too good to be true, belief systems offering quick results and empowerment, “reality” responding to ego-based requests and “prayers”, dreams that are literal rather than symbolic and involve characters trying to talk you into something dubious, disinformative ideas pushed upon you simultaneously by multiple unrelated individuals, physically impossible anomalies and indubitable synchronicities appearing during periods of uncertainty in an attempt to sway your decision, and oddly timed requests for participation in some form of distraction.

Positive external encouragement

Reality aligns when one is in the flow. Confirmation in the form of genuine synchronicities and signs tend to come after the choice has already been made to pursue some positive idea or action. Another type of positive external encouragement is a serendipitous and unexpected opportunity that answers a soul-based calling or earnest need. What distinguishes positive from negative types is that positive ones appeal to reason and intuition, lifting one’s spirits and bringing relief; positive ones also lack the intuitive vibes of desperate baiting, plus they are not limited to working within the comparatively narrow range of what is susceptible to negative control. At its extreme, positive external encouragement conspires with destiny to make critical events fall into place unexpectedly and thus unavoidably, always for the better in the long run.

Negative internal resistance

When naturally occurring, negative internal resistance originates from psychological inertia and habitual resistance to change, as well as emotional addiction to old ways of being. Other natural factors include chemical, biorhythmic, astrological, and lunar phase variables. When intentionally induced or amplified, negative internal resistance generally arises from a combination of artificially lowered emotions and destructive posthypnotic suggestions, which send the fickle mind into a downward spiral of
rationalization and reinforcement of these triggers. They may manifest passively as impulses that are followed without second thought because they so closely mimic real thought, or they may manifest actively as compulsions that push the mind firmly into resisting some positive action. The latter arises most commonly as procrastination or unfounded bias toward a beneficial field of study. Whatever the case, such influences can be discerned on the basis that they suppress lucidity and emotional balance.

Examples: incessant critical self-talk, mental block or fog in regards to some constructive thought or action, symptoms of trance state signifying activation of a posthypnotic command, sudden emotional envelopment in a dark cloud, feelings of fear and despair rationalized by dwelling upon personal insecurities, unexplainable hostilities toward a harmless idea or person, clenching sensation abnormally isolated in the solar plexus area and designed to imitate the more subtle gut instinct, symptoms of conversion (mind disobeying a hypnotic command and releasing the pressure in other ways) such as unexplainable fidgeting and sudden feelings of anxiety or panic that come to nothing, and positive thoughts immediately countered by discouraging or distracting thought loops.

Positive internal resistance

When the lower self acts contrary to higher wisdom, this shows up as an inner feeling of indifference or caution toward some matter. Despite superficial justification by the ego, this feeling persists and can only be drowned out by purposeful identification with lower impulses and desires. Sometimes this is accompanied by a faint inner voice or intuitive impression, the tone ranging from calm advice to urgent caution, but never does it manifest as spiteful criticism or threatening commands. When in the form of a gut-instinct, this feeling tends to circulate through the upper body rather than just the gut or solar plexus area; the latter in isolation can be post-hypnotically triggered to provide a false signal. In contrast to negative internal resistance, positive demands lucidity instead of hysteria and requires rationalization to ignore rather than to believe. As a whole, positive internal resistance is the heart and mind saying “no” in unison.

Negative internal encouragement

All of these play upon latent tendencies to compel one toward hastily and impulsively engaging in harmful or distracting behavior such as acting upon false assumptions or pursuing sexual and material fantasies. Programmed thoughts can be amplified by lower emotions and primal instincts to produce obsession, wishful thinking, and prejudice. Forms of negative internal encouragement range from the completely mechanical (habit, custom, hypnotic programming) to the completely emotional (hormones, ego preservation, primal instincts) but most often tend to be a synergistic combination of both. The subtlest types simply dress up fruitless ideas as good ones, and the most extreme types demand violent action. Any type of negative encouragement can be detected by its irrational, hasty, impatient, and desperate nature. Physiological clues accompanying negative internal encouragement match those of mechanical or emotional trance; mechanical trance involves mental and emotional muting preceding the carrying out of a programmed command, while emotional trance is accompanied by physiological symptoms like tightened breathing (subconscious activation of the thanatos death instinct), increased heartbeat (adrenalin surge from engagement of the survival instinct), or flushing and salivary changes (tapping of the sex drive).
Positive internal encouragement

This lights up the heart, mind, and soul. A truly good idea will be agreeable to both reason and intuition, deepening the breath, bringing a sense of relief and inner knowing that defeats any necessity for impatience. Whereas negative encouragement propels one into action like gravity sending one tumbling down a hill, positive encouragement puts spring in one’s step. It always sharpens and energizes the mind. It engages the higher emotions of wonder, curiosity, creative joy, enthusiasm, and spiritual satiety. If active on the mental level, it will come in the form of an epiphany. If solely on the intuitional level it will manifest as a deep and calm sense that something is a good idea — unlike negative versions of same where a “good idea” only seems so after sufficient rationalization drowns out any underlying lack of soul interest.

Positive and negative are never identical, but they can be very similar. The training of discernment demands increasingly challenging exercises. Whenever confronted with ambiguity, turn within and reflect upon your own experiences. Truth is found by reconciling example with counter-example, extracting insight from conflict like fire from friction. Below are some examples of positive phenomena and their simulacral negative counterparts. How does one tell the difference between:

1) “loss of faith in what is actually a good idea” vs. “intuition finally coming to light that something was a bad idea all along”? Both begin in hope and are interrupted by discouragement, so superficially these seem indistinguishable. Knowing that positive and negative are never identical, a difference must exist and here it is: while the first begins with excitement in what is and meets discouragement by “what if?”, the second begins with overconfidence in “what if?” and is eventually defeated by what is. In other words, loss of faith in a good idea happens when facts are overpowered by speculative failure scenarios and mental paralysis through insecurity and fear, while intuitive recognition of a bad idea starts with overenthusiastic fantasizing and ends in a rude awakening to the facts.

2) “indifference due to absence of soul interest” vs. “programming to resist and turn away”? Both involve lack of total enthusiasm for an idea or course of action. Nevertheless, they differ as follows: the first signifies total lack of inner soul enthusiasm, the second drowns out inner soul enthusiasm with negative influences (lower emotional encouragement toward distracting alternatives and thought-loops rationalizing failure and insecurity). In the first case, no inner enthusiasm can be found; in the second case, it can be found if one pays attention to it despite the noise.

3) “good course of action encountering obstacles” vs. “obstacles signifying a bad course of action”? Both involve goals being hindered. The difference is that that in the first case the factual and intuitive basis of the idea is not negated by the obstacle, while in the second case that basis is defeated by evident non-viability of the idea. The first logically requires a bypass of the obstacle, the second demands abandonment or modification of the idea.

4) “resistance out of intuitive perception of danger” vs. “being programmed to resist out of paranoia and feelings of doom”? Both involve the impression that there is danger, but the difference comes down to awareness vs. reactivity. The first creates a sense of urgency that heightens awareness and sharpens perception, while the second skews perception by inducing physiological symptoms of fear and panic. Both may involve fear, but in the first case fear follows perception while in the second case fear precedes and molds perception.
What is written in this article is not entirely universal because tests of discernment are tailored to the discernor. How much of it applies to you depends on how much you can recognize the above in your own life. The point of this article is merely to show you the necessity of discerning positive from negative and to illustrate by example that it can be done.

Triad of Progress

22 March 05 (metaphys)
Ignorance, rejection, revelation…these three stages summarize the path between believing a lie and grasping the truth. Consider them a problem-reaction-solution sequence toward divine ends.

Ignorance is essentially false belief reinforced by mental and emotional programming. By ignorance, it is meant unwillingness to seek greater understanding. This can come from a lack of intellectual application and/or absence of intuition.

Rejection occurs when one glimpses all the fallacies of the first stage but is shocked into losing balance and perspective. This stage requires intellect, but suffers from an absence of intuition. Rejection is just a logical inversion of the first stage, a negative image so to speak.

Revelation is when one sees the fallacies of the first stage, the contextual shortcomings of the second stage, and the constructive truth residing beyond both of them. This requires intellect and intuition—intellect to see the fallacies, intuition to gnostically leap into a higher level of understanding.

Most of mankind never makes it past the first stage, existing instead as mainstream mouthpieces for the Matrix Control System. Many of them lack the higher chakras and are thus incapable of revelation. Some are simply too busy with body and ego survival to care for rocking the boat.

Then there are the smart ones who awaken from the first stage. They think they’re pretty clever in seeing the flaws in some mainstream institution or belief system. Those who get fixated on rejection tend to plunge into cynicism, skepticism, and negativity because all their energy is devoted to pulling weeds rather than planting seeds. A negative image indeed.

During the second stage people are emotionally shocked and frustrated, which leaves them vulnerable. Shocks can stun the intellect into adopting an immature binary viewpoint, that if something is a lie then its logical negative (opposite) must be the truth. For example, those who awaken from the lies of Catholicism but get stuck on the second stage either become rabid atheists or satanists, trading one stupidity for another.

In the third stage, one comes full circle. Atheists may once again believe in a higher deity but nothing like what is propagated through mainstream religion. Those who rejected the naive positivity of New Age fluffism in favor of cynical “objectivity” may once again believe in the value of positivity but this time only when matched with awareness.

These stages are therefore three points on a helical spiral where a full 360 degrees brings one upward to the beginning of the next turn. One starts at 0 degrees, ignorance, runs madly to the opposite side at 180 degrees, rejection, and then completes the turn at 360 degrees, revelation. This
is ascension, the cyclical raising of consciousness through increasingly less distorted manifestations of the same archetype.

For those with two dimensional minds, 360 degrees is 360 degrees and elements derived through revelation seem just as foolish as elements mired in ignorance. That is why the Wanderer is said to travel the Way of the Fool. Those with wisdom are seen as fools by any who stubbornly occupy the 180 degree position of rejection.

Unfortunately most of mankind is plagued with a two dimensional and binary view of reality, and this makes them total suckers for the Control System. The devil has two arms…if you move away from one but stay in proximity, he’ll swat you with the other. Disinformation takes many forms, but these generally fall into two main categories: 1) direct programming for those of the first stage and 2) diversion and capture for those of the second stage.

Disinformation for intellectuals requires associating the third stage with the first due to their angular similarity, then discarding the third along with the first and placing their angular opposite, the stage of rejection, on a pedestal. Any lie can be sold as truth when placed beside the shortcomings of another lie.

There’s no chance of ascending up the spiral if one fails to make a complete turn. This, of course, is what the Control System wants. Too many turns and people might just spiral completely out of the prison. And so people are kept at 0 or 180 degrees, a false dichotomy if there ever was one.

Ascension up the spiral can only happen when one uses both the head and the heart, intellect and intuition. It is not enough to see what’s wrong with the old; instead, internal revelation must also open one’s eyes to the new.

Standards of Channeling

6 September 06 (metaphys)

Channeling is the least reliable source of information, yet the most novel source for inspiration. The intellect alone is unable to make the kind of creative leaps that only channeling can provide. To be clear, intuition and sudden epiphanies are instances of channeling where some higher objective source beyond the intellect is momentarily tapped to provide an answer before the explanation is evident. Quality channeling combined with diligent research can make for excellent results, especially if one has keen intuition to make creative connections bridging the two.

Problems arise when the channelled material itself is inferior, research is shoddy, discernment nonexistent, or intuition is lacking. In fact, that is begging to be deceived. The reason why channeling is often of poor quality is that those who receive it lack the discernment to qualify what comes through. Sacrificing their standards of what constitutes quality, people often settle for what they can get. Soon as the channelled source satisfies their skepticism, soothes their insecurities, or strokes their ego they go no further.

System of Standards

So for the sake of discernment we need a system of standards by which to gauge a source. The
following is one such system where quality is divided into levels ranging from the crudest to the most advanced.

**First Level: noise without information.** On a ouija board this means nonsense letters or no movement of the planchette. In verbal attempts this means silence, random syllables and tongue noises. For automatic writers this means no movement of the pen, or else repetitive scribbles. It may be a prelude to a message, a warmup exercise to start the flow, or else it may simply be like the noise on a disconnected television.

**Second Level: information without message.** Intelligible words may form, but these are still nonsense, a more organized form of noise but noise nonetheless. Or the words form into sentences but there is no point to them, mostly just insignificant filler phrases that go nowhere and make no sense.

**Third Level: message without autonomy.** Sentences form that make a point, but the channeler is basically faking it. Some fake it knowingly to continue the show even after the well runs dry. Others fake it unknowingly by employing a hefty dose of denial and make-believe.

**Fourth Level: autonomy without novelty.** So the message streams forth without fabrication by the channeler, perhaps because he or she is unconscious (not remembering what happened during the session) or because the participants are conscious but aware they themselves are not willingly producing the message. And yet the message contains nothing original, just a rehashing of what the channeler already knows indicating the source could be the mechanical part of the subconscious or some etheric thoughtform / deceiver parroting back the anticipation of the human participants.

**Fifth Level: novelty without veracity.** New and interesting information comes through, and the source definitely appears to be an independent entity. But upon actually checking the information it is revealed that the entity is a total phony playing games. Nothing can be verified that wasn’t already known or easy to guess, and the rest is outright false. Trickster entities often give false prophecies of perpetually impending doom to feed off the negative energy and disempowerment experienced by their targets.

**Sixth Level: veracity without positivity.** Here the source can give predictions that eerily come true, reveal facts and personal details about others that later prove to be accurate, or show off their presence with paranormal phenomena — but it uses these confirmations solely to satisfy its authoritarian, hostile, or egotistical agenda. The source is most likely some negative thoughtform, mischievous discarnate being, or lower astral entity looking for easy targets to control, especially those interested left-hand occultism or those quickly awed into obeying an exotic authority. They have limited ability to see the future, read and manipulate the minds of humans, and create artificial synchronicities. That their predictions turn out correct says nothing about their intentions.

**Seventh level: positivity without sincerity.** The same negative beings may hide their hostile nature by resorting to sugary language chock full of spiritual catch phrases that cater to the participants’ wishful thinking and psychological blind spots. They can even impose upon their targets a warm tingly sensation to falsify the presence of something positive, but the effect is similar to a tranquilizing drug: hypnotically lowering awareness instead of raising it towards lucidity. Combined with cheap methods of confirmation, this level of channeling can be very convincing to all but the sharply
discerning. The most virulent outlets of disinformation operate at this level.

**Eighth level: sincerity without sublimity.** The channeled material comes from a friendly source but lacks conciseness, elegance, and subtlety. All this means is that the source has good intentions but lacks wisdom and experience compared to more advanced higher positive entities, or that the channeler is has too crude a lexicon. It should be noted that fourth through seventh level sources can fake sophistication by employing redundant verbosity, complex jargon, and convoluted trivia that have no practical significance.

**Ninth level: sublimity without balance.** Subjects are discussed in an articulate manner with profound perspicacity but the actual range of subjects is restricted. Most of the time the participants are responsible for asking an imbalanced set of questions, other times the source is lopsided in experience or determines one set of subjects has greater urgency and importance than another. For instance, the source may prefer discussing the neutral to positive subjects like cosmology, metaphysics, and spirituality while not having much to say in detail about how the dark forces operate, or vice versa.

**Tenth level: balance, resonance, excellence.** Subjects are only limited by the imagination and freewill of the participants. The source elegantly nurtures their intuition and discernment, helping to raise awareness and expand freewill in whatever manner is optimal. Answers are frequently given in a Socratic manner that encourages contemplation and discovery, catalyzing rather than subsidizing the learning process. Simple answers may contain multiple layers of meaning or be worded in such a way that one grasps its inner content only when one is ready for it. It bears all the finesse of esoteric mystery schooling while maintaining a lucid and sometimes amused tone. People with good discernment and intuition will recognize that this level of material resounds strongly with truth and sense, has unlimited practical applications, and contains novel ideas that when analyzed turn out to be accurate and profound.

Because channeled material varies in quality from session to session, the above levels are meant to signify the central tendency, that which best describes the material overall.

**Channeling as Transluminal Communication**

Whereas investigation, experience, and reasoning are based within the realm of the real, channeling provides an influx of ideas from the imaginary; real and imaginary are used here in their mathematical sense, where imaginary denotes what is outside our meme box, perpendicular to our consensual paradigms. Its perpendicularity does not guarantee that channeling points toward new levels of objectivity because it could just as well point towards a new levels of subjectivity. So it could provide original fantasies that have no practical basis in reality, or it could provide original (previously unacknowledged) truths. Only intuition and discernment can determine where outside our old paradigm it points. I find great value in quality channeling if used in conjunction with intuition and discernment.

Channeling is a form of transluminal communication because it happens across realm boundaries enclosing the temporal arteries embedded in the fractal holographic reality matrix. Stated plainly, genuine channeling establishes two-way communication with beings outside our physical reality. This can only happen through the quantum barrier separating the real from the imaginary, whereby nonphysical intelligence biases the nondeterministic quantum fluctuations to initiate an organized
cascade of effects that become recognizable to the conscious receiver at the macroscopic level.

I am merely highlighting the possibility that quantum laws are responsible for the elusive nature of channeled communications. From my article *Timeline Dynamics*:

[A]ccording to quantum physics we are caught in mutual feedback loops with all our probable futures. The greater the probability of a particular future, the stronger the feedback loop, the more tangibly beings from that future can interact with you in the present. Fuzzy time travel happens...all the time. Technically, it is not time travel so much as one realm interacting with another in regulated ways. [T]he more you vector towards a particular probable future, the more tangible and objective your interaction with that future becomes.

Imagine for a moment that you are a time traveler interacting very loosely with someone of the past. You would like to interact more objectively, but quantum laws preserving freewill prohibit you. How, then, can you achieve this without violating freewill? By using your limited range of interaction to solicit or entrain the person into volitionally vectoring ever closer towards your own timeline. The more this person’s probable futures become your probable pasts, the more both of you become part of the same time stream, and the more objectively you may interact.

This technique of entrainment to achieve greater deterministic influence is a favorite tactic of self-serving hyperdimensional entities who find it profitable to enslave other souls. The more tangibly they can do so, the less freewill their targets have to resist. From our linear time perspective, these entities come from a very negative probable future and are interacting with us now in dodgy but manipulative ways to entrain us into reinforcing their timeline, either by becoming them, serving them, or not being an obstacle to them.

[A]lthough from your linear perspective the Higher Self is a distant probable future, ultimately this future perfected self exists right now alongside you. According to the quantum principle discussed in this article, the more you vector towards becoming the Higher Self, the more objectively the Higher Self can interact with you. A weak connection means its guidance is limited to faint intuitive impressions, symbolic dreams, certain synchronicities, and so on. A stronger connection would allow direct inner conversation, which is clearly more objective than vague impressions. The voice of the Higher Self is often described as a “small, still voice” meaning an inner knowing that is easily drowned out by mental distractions. A prolonged and sincere effort to think, feel, and act like the Higher Self — to live from the highest part of you, the heart of your soul — increases the feedback loop and widens your capacity to act as a channel for your future self.

Freewill preservation is paramount at the quantum level. While two entities occupying the same physical realm can interact in a causal manner and violate each other’s freewill, communication across the quantum barrier is necessarily acausal. This means the congruency of freewill among all participants is what holds together the conduit of interaction. The less causal the interaction, the more an attempted freewill violation will collapse the conduit.

**Biased Skepticism as Source of Corruption**

The above is meant to point out why channeling is necessarily somewhat ambiguous when judged by the standards of biased skepticism that wants to be shown proof despite its foregone choice to
disbelieve. Skeptics want accurate predictions, lottery numbers, photographic proof, table rapping, balls of light, and other “in your face” proof that the source is not just a fabrication. And ironically, it is the negative entities that are more than willing to provide some of these. They can push quantum laws to the limit and induce such physical phenomena so that the skeptics, being flabbergasted by this demonstration, are forced to accept its reality and in abandoning their discernment become naive followers of the source, or perhaps deeply obsessed with the phenomena while missing out on the more transcendent possibilities. That is why something as objectively tangible as electronic voice phenomena must come from realms closest to the physical, realms where the crudest entities and energies incidentally reside.

As for channelled entities from the future, they “pick up the phone” to reinforce their own timeline. Any biases by the human participants will constrict the communication conduit or bend it towards some lower source because it biases what probable future they are heading towards. Their attitude correlates with the source they channel. People can channel their future selves, but depending on their current choice of orientation, attitude, awareness, and level of responsibility, what probable self they channel may vary… could be their positive, could be their negative future self. Therefore, the higher the dedication, integrity, discernment, and intuition of the channelers, the more likely they will connect with a high level positive source.

As far as bias goes, the channeler can be given some slack if an audience of sufficient size and quality reinforces the conduit by themselves being empowered towards a positive future. But if the material is retracted from public access and due to biases the channeler acquires a negative probable future trajectory, then there is little hope that the conduit maintains its integrity.

Final Thought
There exists no perfect channeled material since corruption is inevitable. Ego biases, mistranslations, quantum laws interfering with transmission of quantitative data, hacking by negative entities, programming of the channeler through abductions and implants, etc… can all cause degradation in the conduit over time. And of what material is published, perhaps just a few percent fall within the top three levels of standards. So as much as channeling can be a valuable source of inspiration and insight, I advise extreme discernment and a high set of standards when approaching it.

(index)

Transcendence Through Intuitive Thinking

20 June 07 (metaphys)
In this article I will be discussing the philosophical system used to derive the content of my website, the nature of proof, and the importance of intuitive thinking as an effective method of truth analysis. Hopefully this will round out your understanding of what it means to be a truth seeker and satisfy anyone wondering how I derive my material.

The Binary Fallacy and the Misappropriation of Intellect
The intellect is overrated and underrated because few understand its true purpose. In truth the intellect is a passive tool that evolves a given input towards an output according to certain rules and
takes a premise toward its logical conclusion. But like a computer it passively carries out its programmed function without true creativity of its own. What the intellect produces depends on two things, its input and programming, both of which originate from outside itself and are therefore unguarded sources of corruption. As the saying goes, garbage in garbage out: with a corrupted input comes corrupted output. And even with perfect input, if the rules are incomplete or sloppily applied then the output is likewise garbled. So for all its virtues, the intellect alone is insufficient for effective truth seeking.

The problem with overrating the intellect comes from thinking that through accurate application of the rules one can produce an accurate output, which ignores the possibility of incomplete or false input. In practical terms this implies that intellectuals, or let’s say stubborn skeptics who pride themselves on scientific objectivity, refuse to question the root assumption from which they are logically reasoning. These root assumptions originate with statements made by potentially fallible sources of external authority like group consensus, prolific academics, university curriculums, and irrational biases rooted in financial and social survival that embed themselves into institutional policies. When confronted with truths that contradict these, rather than revise incomplete or false assumptions, intellectuals use them to rationalize away counter-examples and counter-reasoning, thereby misappropriating the intellect into fortifying the walls of their mental prison.

Those who notice the limiting nature of intellectualism might make the counterpart fallacy of under rating it. They wish to transcend reason by disposing it in favor of the only alternative, feeling. Feeling does not obey logic, therefore it can go beyond logic. While that much is true, the error comes in not distinguishing between intuition (flowing from our higher aspects) and emotionalism rooted in lower aspects like animal instinct, ego biases, sentimentality, subconscious programming, collective consciousness, or external telepathic persuasion. This attempt to abandon intellect instead gives it a new job by merely switching the inputs and removing the need for consistency in applying the rules. What results is an intellect that rationalizes subjective impulses in ways that are not even logically consistent.

What underrating and overrating the intellect have in common is that they arise from the binary fallacy: “If not 1, then 0. Since 2 is not 1, 2 is 0.” Above reason is intuition, below reason is emotionalism, and through the binary fallacy intuition and emotionalism become indistinguishable because neither is based in reason. Meanwhile, those who overrate the intellect also commit the binary fallacy by confusing what is beyond their comprehension with what is beneath their standards of logical integrity, rejecting both for being different and unsubstantiated by their own understanding. These are two sides of ignorance, two manifestations of the intellect being unable to accommodate solely those inputs that would lead it toward higher objectivity. Either it stubbornly rationalizes its current level of objectivity against higher levels of objectivity beyond its understanding, or else it rationalizes away objectivity altogether in favor of subjectivity.

The binary fallacy therefore boils down to recognizing only objectivity and subjectivity, choosing between solely these when there exists a third option that transcends both. For lack of a better term, we may call this third option transjectivity, meaning that which is trans-objective. This is what I meant earlier by “higher levels of objectivity.”
Degrees and Levels of Objectivity

How can there be different levels of objectivity? Science aims toward increasing degrees of objectivity, toward increasingly accurate understanding reality, whereas by different levels of objectivity I am referring to different levels of reality, not just the level we know as physicality. The problem with the term objective is that it implies “that which is real” when what we call reality is actually a localized phenomenon whose characteristics depend on what locations you span within the greater framework of existence. It depends on the level within that framework that forms the foundation of your current realm of experience. So there is an important distinction between degrees and levels of objectivity. Gaining a higher degree of objectivity means getting a more accurate understanding of what level of reality you are currently exploring, whereas gaining a higher level of objectivity means gaining an accurate understanding of an altogether higher level of reality. This matters because while logic alone can bring you to higher degrees, intuition is needed to reach higher levels.

The Limitations of Scientific Proof

When it comes to scientific research and proof, exploration is into phenomena that carry a factual existence independent of the observer, quarantining it from psychological bias and delusion. But by limiting proof to what is universally replicable, what remains are solely those phenomena comprising the lowest common denominator of experiences available to all observers inhabiting a consensual reality. In other words, scientific proof is strictly material proof that depends in no way upon the individualized conscious or spiritual state of the observer. Thus scientific proof encompasses the crudest set of phenomena that are undeniably real to individuals with even the crudest levels of conscious development.

Scientific standards do not allow for personal proof that depends on the observer, and yet it is precisely the conscious development of the observer that determines what other levels of reality beyond the purely physical and deterministic can be accessed. The closest science has come is in quantum mechanics where it is now commonly accepted that the observer plays a unique role in the outcome of an experiment. But beyond verification of the statistical trends describing the distribution of all possible observations in a given experiment, any particular outcome is not universally replicable. That is why quantum physics, in not being able to predict any specific observations, must resort to statistical descriptions because in doing so it once again approaches collectivity and thus what it defines as objectivity. Even so, the exact influence of the observer on a quantum system is not understood, and thought to be random as well as being limited solely to the atomic scale.

That’s as far as modern science goes. Yet seasoned researchers of fringe knowledge and battle-hardened experiencers of the strange know that transjective phenomena also operate on the macroscopic scale and depend on the quality of consciousness and spiritual orientation of the observer. Synchronicities and the correlation between attitude and attracted experiences are some examples. We are not just observers of reality, but active participants endowed with freewill to choose to transcend our realms by going above and beyond our prior assumptions. Inexplicable events happen, and we can either rationalize it away with assumptions and rules programmed according to our collective mainstream reality, or we can figure it out within ourselves and leave the herd in the dust.
Accessing Transjective Proof

Levels of objectivity are arranged concentrically like small circles inside larger ones, with the lower levels being subsets of the higher. The smallest circle is physicality, the most illusory level of reality, while the largest circle is one “whose center is everywhere and circumference is nowhere” because it is absolute and infinite. Relative to the absolute, observations and truths are but assumptions and half-truths. It is only within a particular level of objectivity that the assumptions and half-truths defining that level become objective observations and truths for its inhabitants.

Once you access a higher level of reality, proof within it becomes fully objective to you, but that proof cannot be gathered by someone who lacks access to that level. Your personal proof would at best represent for him a possible transjective truth because it supersedes what he considers objective. But he might commit the binary fallacy in mistaking it for mere subjectivity on your part because he cannot replicate or substantiate it with his current knowledge or methods of investigation. Considering that each of us are in the same position with respect to transjective truths from levels of reality higher than our own, it is necessary to employ a method of truth analysis that can guard against subjectivity without simultaneously eliminating access to transjective truths. That method requires a certain amount of mental and intuitive finesse to understand and apply, but it will be explained fully in the proceeding discussion about the nature and place of logic and intuition.

Logic alone is enough to increase the degree of objectivity because old assumptions are merely being taken toward increasingly intricate logical conclusions. Then progress is made into unexplored rather than unfathomable territories, and what increases is the refinement rather than evolution of knowledge. This is drawing a circle and pouring effort into exploring the bounded territory rather than widening the circle itself. As soon as the perimeter is drawn, everything within is already delineated. This forms the enclosed set from which any further discoveries are made, meaning such discoveries are far from new; they instead follow directly and predictably from the old. The process is deterministic, that is to say, the old directly determines the new. Those who cling solely to this objective approach are fortifying their ignorance when they stubbornly seek to justify existing assumptions and observations rather than revolutionize them with more expansive ones.

We must transcend the delusion of subjectivity and the ignorance of objectivity. To be subjective means to deny the reality of the level you are inhabiting. To be objective means to fully acknowledge and understand the reality of your level but go no further. To be transjective means to shift to a higher level of objectivity altogether, one that forms a superset of the old level. If sound logic and sharp observation is needed to overcome subjectivity and reach objectivity, then those two plus the additional faculty of intuition is needed to overcome objectivity and reach transjectivity, to break through the barrier of previously limiting assumptions.

Logic and Intuition

The road to transcendence is traveled via intuitive thinking, which may also be called nonlinear or nondeterministic thinking. Whereas deterministic thinking proceeds from the old to generate the new, meaning the new is just an extension of the old and therefore not new at all, intuitive thinking allows one to feel out the new and revise the old so that previous assumptions are overturned to become extensions of the new. Intuitive thinking is therefore the only way to reliably come up with anything truly new because it gives you newfound vision.
What is intuition? The common understanding likens it to instinct or internalized knowledge that can be used to achieve correct results without having to think. A familiar example would be software or electronic devices said to have an intuitive interface; what that really implies is that the interface makes use of pre-programmed mechanical tendencies so that the user does not have to learn or think to make it work. But that is just another form of determinism, albeit one that does not necessitate logical thinking, just programmed reaction whether the programming is academic, social, or biological. Nothing new is done or discovered this way, it is all about accessing new forms of the old without active application of the intellect. The only similarity between real intuition and this common misunderstanding is that both achieve correct results without initial involvement of the intellect.

No, real intuition does what the intellect alone cannot: sense truths that do not follow directly from the old assumptions, old logic, or old programming. Truths accessed by intuition are therefore transjective. Intuition can point you to flaws in prior assumptions, help you notice new observations that were otherwise missed, and present new possibilities to contemplate.

Real intuition comes from beyond. Whatever determines your current realm, your current body of assumptions and programming — intuition originates from beyond that. If you are a product of the past, intuition is a feedback flow from the future. If you are the lower self, intuition comes from the higher self. If you are operating from the five senses, intuition comes through the sixth. So it is an influence that comes from beyond, that beckons you beyond, versus influences that come from the lower self, the collective physical reality, and genetic programming that solicit you into rationalizing away the new for being unsupported by the old. Intuition is your internal compass magnetized to absolute truth, that if followed takes you through ever greater levels of objectivity and thus through ever more advanced realms of existence. It is the thread that leads you out from the maze of illusions, it is the heart of your soul, the voice of your spirit, and it only speaks as clearly as you have ears to hear and the mind to listen.

With intuitive thinking, intuition is the guiding hand of logic. Logic alone is incapable of determining the absolute value of anything because it deals in binaries and the relation between them: premise versus conclusion, subject versus object, congruent versus divergent, rational versus irrational, or cause versus effect. But what decides the premise? What determines the first cause? Who decides what is rational? What determines objective truth? Not the intellect; it only acknowledges and obeys them after they have already come into existence. Intellect takes what it is given and follows through with it. In the absence of intuition, it takes orders from group consensus or physical signals, hence the “nature versus nurture” debate, which is another binary fallacy that fails to include the transjective possibility of spiritual factors. Logic without intuition puts intellect in the business of reinforcing biases rather than uprooting them.

On the other hand, intuition without logic leads to vague impressions that never become accurate expressions or communicable understanding. The intellect is also necessary to avoid confusing intuition with emotionalism; the latter being subjective, its commands will have holes, self-contradictions, discoverable motives that are less than reasonable, and consequences that you can already foresee would be unpleasant. As mentioned, those who discard the intellect have no means to distinguish between the two. They get caught up in a self-made world of illusion that is wholly at odds with the objective reality they reside within.
Intuition as an Absolute Gauge

But why exactly can intuition do what logic alone cannot? What exactly goes on when you intuitively sense whether an idea is true or false? In intuitive thinking, the truth value of an idea is felt directly rather than determined through its relation to other ideas. By turning within and consciously focusing on a thought, awareness of your surroundings momentarily fades away and the separation between you (subject) and the thought (object) disappears as well so that both overlap into a single entity: yourself-as-the-thought.

It is the same process that leads to empathy when you internally observe yourself-as-other. In empathy, you feel internally what another person feels, which is only possible if you set aside your separate self and your personal circumstances and step into their shoes and see them relative to themselves. With intuitive thinking, you step into a thought and feel it relative to itself, or rather you feel yourself-as-the-thought relative to yourself-as-absolute-truth. The core of your being, the source of your intuition as well as that which observes itself in the process of self-awareness, is your most reliable absolute truth reference point because you can absolutely verify the truth of your own existence by noticing yourself notice yourself. By stepping into a thought you can feel whether there is resonance or dissonance between yourself and the thought in question, thereby comparing the thought to not just another idea originating from outside yourself, but to an absolute truth anchored at the very core of your being. Its truth value can therefore be estimated by how much it resonates with your being. Then, in using your intellect to thoroughly investigate ideas that resonate, you asymptotically approach absolute truth by reaching ever higher levels of objectivity. Deep resonance indicates the presence of truth.

The Process of Intuitive Thinking

Intuitive thinking is only possible through deep contemplation. Stitching together a patchwork of other people’s ideas is not sufficient to move forward in a revolutionary way. If you really want to figure things out, take time to contemplate deeply. This involves focusing inward to become ever more sensitive to your intuition, ever more capable of discerning between genuine intuition and subjective bias. It also involves cranking up your intellect to follow through with the suggestions intuition provides, to look for holes and inconsistencies, to unravel an intuitive “thought ball” into words clear enough for others to understand. I recommend getting a blank notebook to brainstorm and work things out in a freestyle manner since putting ideas down on paper frees up the mind to tap into the next batch of intuitive impressions and allows an instant survey of progress.

Good intuition and good thinking leads to good truth analysis. If an idea feels off, then find out exactly why it feels off. If an idea feels right, then find out exactly why. You are not finished until you clearly understand the intuitive impression, have logically dissected it, and can convey it accurately in words. Doing so is a divine act because it gives clear voice to spirit. It is really an internal communion, a nonverbal socratic dialogue between the lower self and the higher Self. You turn within, pose the question, feel out the possibilities, investigate the results, correct misunderstandings, apply them, test them, revise them, learn from them, ask and receive, feel out and figure out, realize and transcend.

Intuition provides answers to questions after the intellect has dutifully exhausted a line of reasoning and humbly bows in request of assistance. Logic can only go so far before it hits an impasse, a
discontinuity where what comes after cannot be logically deduced from what came before due to limitations in prior assumptions and observations. That is when intuition throws a rope from the other side, so that intellect can deduce what came before from contemplating what possibly comes after. It is a backwards process, but it works and is a perfect example of how intellect obeying intuition moves one toward a higher level of objectivity. After having made use of the rope, following through by logically analyzing and unraveling an intuitive impression is equivalent to building a solid bridge across the impasse so that in the end, what was formerly a discontinuity is now a continuous path that can be logically followed forwards or backwards. That is because higher levels of objectivity are supersets of lower levels, and to derive a superset from the subset is impossible while the reverse is more than natural.

After intuition results in an epiphany, everything you thought you knew realigns slightly so that the answer to a previously befuddling question becomes smack-your-forehead obvious. Intuitive thinking therefore leads to logically self-consistent results even if the intervening process momentarily abandons logic for intuition when encountering an impasse. Intuitive thinking can do everything that strict logical reasoning can, but unlike the latter it can also transcend itself. The condition is that you logically follow up on an intuitive impression, which may be nothing more than the most resonant and best-fitting guess, even if your current observations, experiences, and assumptions do not yet prove it directly. If your intuition is correct, then in following and testing it you will encounter new observations, new experiences, and revised assumptions that prove it. But this type of transjective confirmation must come after-the-fact. Since intuition comes from beyond, the proof of its validity is accessed by going beyond.

And that is the true scientific method, where a hypothesis is proposed first and then tested. Too many scientists and skeptics irrationally reject “far out” hypotheses before investigating them solely because these “wild assertions” are not yet supported by prevailing assumptions. They are afraid to take a single step without the certainty of group consensus and the absolute confirmation of all prior steps, and so they are barred from accessing higher levels of objectivity and instead rationalize away transjective influences. Intuitive thinking is more scientific than modern science because it does not allow the scientific method to be restrained by limitations irrationally imposed by old assumptions. It is the way of the gnostic intellectual rather than the agnostic rationalist. Intuitive thinking is the true science of transcendence.

Further Reading

• **Truth Analysis** — a short article of mine detailing the practical steps I use to apply intuitive thinking toward figuring things out. It was written a couple years ago and only briefly touches on some concepts that were more fully explored in the current article.

• **The Philosophy of Freedom** (also published as *Intuitive Thinking as a Spiritual Path*) by Rudolf Steiner — this book gets to the core of intuitive thinking, freewill, and transcendence. Steiner wrote it in a manner meant to exercise both intuition and the intellect, thus it is very difficult to read and understand. I had an easier time figuring out these same concepts myself through intuitive thinking than deciphering them from the book, and only afterwards did I get what Steiner was talking about since I had already reasoned it out on my
own. Still, it is a rewarding work for anyone looking for a mental and intuitive workout, and the concepts it covers have far-reaching implications.

- **Greater Community Spirituality** by Marshall Vian Summers — a more readable, comprehensive, spiritual, and practical approach to intuitive thinking. In this book, real intuition is termed Knowledge with a capital “K” and made the cornerstone of what amounts to a fourth density STO philosophical system where listening to the heart, the voice of spirit, is essential to making wise choices in the challenging times to come. The wisdom and advice given in this book is true to my experience, so I recommend it for all truth seekers.

---

**Soul Resonance and Music**

7 September 14 (metaphys)

In this Article

- Why do people like certain types of music and not other types?
- Is musical preference merely a product of social conditioning?
- To what extent do biological and metaphysical factors play a role?
- What exactly is texture, rhythm, melody, and harmony?
- Which of these elements invoke resonance in the soul?
- How do melody and harmony differ in their metaphysical nature and effects upon the soul?
- What are the pros and cons of polyphonic versus monophonic music?
- What are the psychological and spiritual implications of key modulation?
- What is the nature and origin of ancient music?
- How did classical music change over time?
- What influences are behind modern music?
- Which music portrays the archetypal essence of mankind’s future?

(This article includes audio examples throughout. You can also download them in a ZIP file).

**Introduction**

There are subjective and objective reasons why you might prefer one song over another. Subjective reasons include:

- **Tradition:** because that is what you heard while growing up. Your preference then arises from habit and identification with your family and culture. You derive pleasure from safety, comfort, and familiarity. Folk and country music feature this prominently.

- **Identity:** because the song is a token representation of some subculture you have invested your social identity into, whereby the music is more a fashion accessory or emblem displayed before others. You derive satisfaction from the reactions you get from others. Anything associated with a distinctive look such as rap, punk, goth, country, and metal can serve this function.

- **Sentiment:** because you hear a song during a meaningful or emotional time in your life, and
the two become linked together in your mind. The song will then trigger those same emotions when heard again in the future. Like a scent of perfume bringing back fond memories, you derive pleasure from the sentimental effect this brings. Pop songs, especially ballads frequently played on the radio, appeal to this factor.

Alone, these factors have little to do with the intrinsic musicality of the song. They merely project subjective values upon what is heard.

True music is measured by the degree to which its melody, harmony, rhythm, and texture in and of themselves evoke an objective response in us. For example, a minor chord sounds sad without us ever needing to be conditioned to feel that. Infants can distinguish between harmonious and dissonant chords well before their enculturation. A beat can make us clap or tap our foot without having to be taught to do so, as seen in babies who bend their knees and bounce to the music instinctively. Similarly, an odd pattern of strange sounds can make us tilt our heads in curiosity.

Some objective responses stimulate the intellect, some the physical body, and some the emotional and spiritual aspects of our being. So in addition to the aforementioned subjective reasons for musical preference, there are also objective ones:

- **Intrigue**: your intellect is aroused by the originality, quirkiness, or complexity of a song. You find amusement in being stirred from boredom, apathy, or jadedness by its novelty. Experimental electronica, noise, and math rock focus exclusively on this aspect.

- **Groove**: the song’s beat and rhythm stimulate the motor and speech areas of your brain, provoking you to dance. You derive pleasure from the endorphins released through physical movement, from the social approval and camaraderie present when dancing with others, and it simply feels good being physically motivated and energized by the sonic equivalent of a stimulant drug.

- **Resonance**: there is something within a song that stimulates something within you at the emotional, spiritual, archetypal level. It evokes a response according to how much we inwardly resonate with that song’s combination of melody, harmony, rhythm, and texture.

Songs typically represent a mixture of all the above. When a song combines several factors, it has greater impact and wider appeal:

- A bit of emotional resonance goes a long way toward building associative conditioning, which then amplifies the apparent emotional intensity of the song and leads to a strong sentimental effect. This is the basis of sappy ballads played on radio stations throughout the 70s and 80s.

- Groove enhances intellectually fascinating songs by adding some physical energy, making it both interesting and fun, with many examples to be found in electronic music.

- Groove combined with tradition makes for a high dance factor, as can be heard in Eastern European folk dances, samba and salsa, Mexican polka, American hoedowns and country line dancing.

- Identity, groove, intrigue, and resonance of anger may be found in most forms of nu metal, djent, screamo, grindcore, etc.
Musical Preferences

We know that people differ in the degree to which they respond to a song. Some may not identify with the tradition being represented; some find its intellectual complexity confusing and irritating; some only desire groove and find little appeal in a slow emotional ballad; some do not have within their souls the aspects that a song is aiming to resonate; some never had a meaningful or emotional experience linked with a particular song that, for someone else, has much sentimental value.

So when different people respond differently to the same song, understand that in regard to the objective factors, the difference involves only the degree to which that factor is present in that person. A quirky and complex experimental piece might arouse much interest in one person, little interest in another, and strong disinterest in a third. When a song has groove, one person will dance uncontrollably, another will only tap his or her foot, and another with no sense of rhythm will fold his arms in boredom. When a song resonates the emotion of happiness, one person will have tears in her eyes, another will merely feel uplifted, and another might not care for feeling happy at the moment. It’s about varying degrees on the same scale.

On the other hand, the subjective factors have no such consistency:

• One man hears a song during his first kiss, another just prior to the car accident that killed his wife. The same song by association will evoke a smile in the first and sadness in the latter.

• The same rap song brings a sense of belonging and identity to one person and a sense of hatred or contempt against black culture in another.

• Negative association can be so strong that it overrides the intrinsic resonance value of a song. One person likes metal because it resonates his inner sense of valor and strength, another hates it solely because her abusive ex-boyfriend was in a metal band.

Strong antipathy against certain music is usually due to a combination of lack of resonance, negative conditioned associations, clash against one’s tradition or subcultural affiliation, and dislike of the bodily responses induced by a song’s texture and rhythm (such as strong dance beats coming off as licentious to the prudish, or distorted guitars grating the ears of those who prefer comfort and gentleness).

So the question arises, what does musical preference say about a person? Here are some possibilities:

• If you like a song solely because of tradition, identification, or sentimentalism then that simply indicates the nature of the experiences and social influences you have been imprinted with. It says very little about your inner being. How can it, if resonance to a song’s intrinsic musicality played no part in your always listening to it or singing it?

• If you like a song solely for its intellectual intrigue, then that merely indicates you haven’t really heard something like it before. It is something new, surprising, and thus amusing. If the song is complex and abstract, maybe it says you have an active intellect that enjoys abstract sensory stimulation. But it says nothing about your soul.

• If you like songs solely for their groove, then you’re probably a kinesthetic person with
good hand-eye coordination and a healthy motor-speech system in the brain. It speaks more to your physiological and neurological composition than anything.

These factors don’t provide much insight into your inner emotional, spiritual, archetypal composition. For that, we must look at the resonance factor, whereby something in music resonates something in you. In other words, pure communication from song to soul.

Soul Resonance

Our internal compositions differ; we don’t all have the same emotional resonance spectrum. A song can only resonate what is there to be resonated, and if a portion of one’s inner spectrum is absent, then the corresponding qualities of the song will not be noticed, let alone felt. Like two people with different types of color blindness, it’s possible for one person to see something in a song that the other cannot, and vice versa. This kind of difference is not due to a difference in subjective projection or association, but inner perception of what is objectively there.

So what we’re really talking about here is soul resonance characteristics, meaning the unique spectrum of emotions, themes of experience, and pathways to fulfillment that you most deeply respond to and yearn for. These can be glimpsed by asking yourself the following questions:

- What are your deepest priorities?
- What brings you the greatest fulfillment?
- What motivates your existence?
- What completes you as a being?

The answers may correspond to the music you resonate with most. Esoterically, the answers to these questions also correspond to the “story of your life.” The same soul resonance characteristics that are touched by music are also touched by your inner responses to life events. In fact, it is these resonance characteristics that synchronistically attract such events in the first place through quantum-metaphysical processes. Thus the theme of your life, the nature of your soul, and the musical qualities of the songs you resonate with all share correspondence.

Musical Texture

Music encodes the soul’s responses to certain themes of experience, or realms. But how does it do so? Let’s examine the components of music, starting with texture.

Texture conveys information about the setting, atmosphere, and origin of a sound. Consider the sound of a wine glass being struck by a fork versus the beep of a fire alarm at the same pitch. The same musical note can evoke different settings, atmospheres, and origins via different textures. Texture cues the brain into invoking sensory data linked by association to that texture.

This association happens in several ways:

- **Conditioning**: If the ding of a wine glass was previously associated with good times at a banquet, that texture might invoke a sense of celebration, elegance, and happiness. But it could just as well invoke terror if the association were built through a traumatic experience.

- **Instinct**: Nails on a chalkboard invokes a visceral reaction at a deep physiological level. The
loud roar of a lion, the gruff yell of an angry man, or the sharp hiss of a snake are understood at an instinctual level to signify danger, and hence babies will cry at these sounds without having previously experienced harm from them. There is something evolutionarily coded into our biology, or even into our collective unconscious, that makes us respond to certain textures in certain ways. It’s the sonic equivalent to fear of snakes and spiders in people who have never been hurt by one.

- **Resemblance:** When one sound’s texture resembles that of another, the traits of the latter are associated with the first. For example, the texture of a distorted guitar is similar to that of sizzling oil, rushing waters, or the roar of a crowd, thus it evokes impressions of energy and power. The bassoon’s texture is similar to the voice of someone with a stuffy nose, hence the bassoon evokes nose-oriented imagery such as a bumbling gnome with a large nose.

What constitutes texture exactly? It has to do with the unique fingerprint of harmonic overtones that ride atop the fundamental frequency of a tone and how these evolve or decay over time. Some digital synthesizers use this principle to combine multiple frequencies (fundamentals and harmonics) to create a unique texture emulating that of a flute, piano, guitar, trumpet, and so on.

Two sounds that share the same pitch have the same fundamental frequency, but their harmonic fingerprints differ. A wine glass or tuning fork have a pure fundamental with few overtones, while a distorted guitar will have many overtones and thus sound thicker or richer at the same pitch.

**Example 1:** The same pitch with different textures. Sine wave, square wave, synthetic trumpet, synthesizer, nylon string guitar, electric guitar, flute, flute with reverb, violin, piano with reverb, piano with reverb, chorus, and delay.

Texture is further conveyed by sound’s reverberation. Reverb’ is similar to echo. A sound played in a large stone cathedral will have a long, rich, dense reverb versus the same sound played in an elevator. Reverb is produced by a change in the sound’s harmonic overtone structure as it interacts with the environment. Stone, metal, wood, plastic, leather, and cloth all absorb and reflect sound differently, subtracting certain overtones from a sound before reflecting it back. The distance and angle of these surfaces further modifies the amplitude and timing of the individual overtones being reflected. Thus the reflections are altered in a unique way according to type of space the sound is played in. This cues the brain into imagining the nature of that space, and hence the setting and
atmosphere. So reverb is another aspect of texture, one that paints a picture of the space in which the tone is sounded.

So when you hear a warbling piano with lots of reverb, you might think of an old piano playing in a large dilapidated building which, by the associations built up via all the horror movies we’ve seen, gives an impression of creepiness, ghosts, haunted houses and such.

Texture isn’t really a fundamental musical element, it merely accessorizes a song by providing informational cues about how it should be interpreted. Music is not even a requirement, as texture alone can turn a momentary tone into vivid imagery via association. Therefore texture by itself is not capable of directly resonating the soul; at best it might induce an objective visceral reaction in the body, e.g. nails on a chalkboard. Most of the time, though, texture is an associative device, a sign that points.

However, the soul can resonate with the theme of experience represented by a particular setting and atmosphere, which themselves may be associatively evoked by sound’s texture. So if your soul resonates with themes of monastic spiritual living, then the texture of a choirboy singing a note in a space that sounds like a cathedral may appeal to you. The resonance you feel is not with the musical structure of that sung note, but the context that its texture represents.

If we wish to discover what within music produces direct resonance in the soul, we have to turn off the texture to prevent associative cueing from acting as a substitute. If a song can draw out the same feelings even when performed solely by something as elementary as sine waves, then it must contain something intrinsic to its musical structure that stirs corresponding points of resonance in the soul.

Harmony

Of the four components (texture, rhythm, melody and harmony) it is melody and harmony that resonate the soul directly. Melody occurs when tones are played in sequence, harmony when they are played simultaneously. Melody tells a story, harmony gives the context or backdrop for that story’s events. Together they encode a particular theme of experience, namely the “story of your life” mentioned before.

If we produce a single tone, or note, little is evoked because it lacks context and variation. It just is. But when two notes are sounded together, each provides context for the other. This combination is known as an interval, the simplest of harmonies. More complex harmonies involve more notes played simultaneously, and these are called chords.

In harmony, the frequencies involved comprise a certain ratio. If one tone consists of air vibrations that oscillate at 200 cycles per second and the other at 300 cycles per second, together they comprise a 2:3 frequency ratio. It is this ratio or interval that carries a certain feeling when perceived. The 2:3 ratio (perfect fifth interval) has a regal and powerful feeling, 4:5 (major third interval) a merry one, and 5:6 (minor third) a somber or melancholy color.
Example 2: Sine wave of a single note, two notes forming a minor third interval, three notes forming a minor chord. Same sequence repeated with piano.

Chords, in being made of several notes or intervals stacked atop one another, evoke an even richer palette of feelings… up to a point. From a metaphysical perspective, the purest interval is unison, which is not really an interval but a single frequency. Two tones in unison have the same pitch and are therefore One. The next simplest interval, 1:2 is the octave, representing the “As Above, So Below” principle. The subsequent intervals of 2:3, 3:4, 4:5, etc. increasingly move towards sounding dissonant for they are increasing distortions away from One (1:1). Readers of the Law of One series will be familiar with the concept of distortion.

Example 3: The twelve intervals from unison to octave relative to C. Unison, minor second, major second, minor third, major third, perfect fourth, augmented fourth, perfect fifth, minor sixth, major sixth, minor seventh, major seventh, octave.

Same with chords; the more complex the chord, the more dissonance and impure ratios are involved. By the time we get to seventh, ninth, eleventh, and thirteenth chords we are quite far away from the metaphysical realm and now firmly in the arena of life entrenched in the physical domain. These chords evoke feelings that resonate the soul’s contortions to life in 3D. These chords have “character” the same way a person “who has been through some things” or a banged up rusty car is said to have character. It’s no surprise that blues, jazz, and classic rock make frequent use of these chords.
Example 4: Progression from simple chords to increasingly weird and complex chords. Major triad, minor triad, suspended fourth, augmented triad, diminished seventh, dominant ninth, dominant eleventh, dominant thirteenth.

If even further intervals were added so that a chord consisted of dozens if not hundreds of notes at the strangest and most dissonant of intervals, that represents distortion so far away from divinity that it begins sounding like matter itself; in fact, atoms, molecules, stars, and planets give off vibrations that exhibit this character.

To recap, harmony in the absence of melody, rhythm, and texture can still evoke a feeling in the soul as evidenced by a minor interval or chord sounding sad and a major one happy. How is it that sadness is encoded by just two numbers: 5 and 6? Isn’t it amazing that something as seemingly subjective, rich, and profound as human emotion is inextricably linked to something as cold, objective, and intellectual as mathematics? That’s the paradox of music. Clearly, music is a bridge between physics and metaphysics.

Melody

Whereas harmony is the vertical stacking of tones, melody is their sequential arrangement. Melody depends on time since the notes come one after another and each carries a certain duration. Therefore melodies automatically have some element of rhythm as well. As explained earlier, rhythm is associated with the physical body. It parallels the pumping of the heart, the repetition of breath, the pounding of the feet upon the pavement, the movement of hands in the air, and the pacing of speech. Faster song tempos are known to speed these up, slower tempos can slow them down.

Note that linear time and physical bodies are the two things that together define what it means to have a corporeal existence. You have a body with all its rhythmic biological patterns and you live life from one event to the next. Thus melody and rhythm are the two aspects of music that parallel experience in the physical and etheric planes.

Harmony is Transcendental

Pure harmony, on the other hand, is timeless and bodiless. The ratio between two frequencies is a dimensionless constant. It is independent of time, space, dimension, and scale. It doesn’t matter whether the frequencies are low or high, whether the vibration takes place in air, water, or aether. A ratio is a ratio regardless of these variables. Even on the surface of a black hole where space has contracted to zero and time to infinity, ratio remains intact.
Thus harmony and its associated feelings are transcendental; they exist beyond space and time. That is how harmony can reach upward through the levels of existence and stimulate the higher half of the soul, namely the astral body, which unlike the etheric body is independent of linear time and space.

Harmony is an astral language. The astral body is known in occult lore to contain archetypal patterns, and presumably each has a corresponding musical pattern. These archetypal patterns are precisely the soul resonance characteristics discussed earlier.

When one harmony progresses into another, that represents a change in the state of the astral body, whether due to some experience evoking a certain response or the soul undergoing a shift in perception of a given situation.

Whereas melodies chronicle the external events of life, harmonies describe the inner subtext as well as the behind-the-veil metaphysical context for those experiences. Harmony provides the inner stream of consciousness, melody the visual storyboard.

Context is important. To illustrate, a happy melodic progression matched with sad underlying harmony encodes sorrow lurking beneath lighthearted appearances. Someone is striving for victory and putting on a smile but deep down they know it’s all in vain; the ending is tragedy. This bittersweet juxtaposition is a potent device used in many songs.
Example 5: How context affects the interpretation of a melody. First, a simple melody using the major scale. Then the same melody accompanied by major chords. Then by minor ones.

So melody and harmony respectively encode inner and outer streams of experience. The manner in which these play off each other captures the essence of a particular realm. If you resonate with certain music, you are resonating with the realm it embodies, and that says something about your soul.

Monophonic Music

Not all cultures employ rich harmony in their traditional music. Some only emphasize melody and rhythm. This kind of music is called monophonic, meaning melody without accompanying harmonic progressions.

One example is Indian classical music, where a lone melody plays atop a steady drone. Other examples of monophonic music include Irish bagpipes, some forms of Tuvan throat singing, early Medieval liturgical chants, and some Turkish and Middle Eastern music. Nowadays it can also be found in a good portion of electronic tracks centered on rhythm and texture rather than melody and harmony; these tracks fill the sonic void with an underlying drone or rhythmic monophonic bass line.

Example 6: Monophonic music. Classical Indian style, Irish bagpipes (by Anthony Byrne), overtone singing (by Alex Greenfield) as practiced in Mongolia/Siberia, Hildegard von Bingen - O Successores, Khetzal - Indian Attic (melodic Goa trance, which borrows from Indian monophony).

In traditional monophonic music, the drone acts as a fixed point of reference allowing the melody to be more clearly distinguished. Without it, notes in a melody are either heard in relation to one another, or relative to an imagined base line that might be different from the one the songwriter
intended.

For example, the notes C and D# are a minor third interval apart, and played together they create a melancholic effect. When they are played sequentially, then in absence of any other musical cues the brain juxtaposes the second note with its memory of the first, and the effect is like playing both together; it evokes the same sadness. If we now add in a low fixed drone of pitch C and play the sequence again, the sad effect remains.

**Example 7**

C and D# played together, then C and D# alternating, then C and D# alternating with low C underneath it, then C and D# alternating with low G# beneath instead, then repeated in polyphonic style with some arpeggios to emphasize the difference.

But if we change the drone to G# and repeat the experiment, now the sad effect disappears. Why? Because the brain no longer juxtaposes drone C with note D# as before to make a sad sounding minor third. Rather it first hears the interval G#:C (perfect fourth) and then G#:D# (perfect fifth) — neither of which sound sad. Thus the drone functions as a “tonal center” that gives orientation to a melody. A different tonal center gives a different interpretation of a melody.

**Atonal Music**

Melodies that have no tonal center and whose notes have no obvious relation to each other, have no musicality or harmony, whether explicit by the stacking of tones, or implied by the juxtaposition of sequential notes in memory. If harmony is associated with the astral body and melody with the etheric, then atonal music represents a body devoid of both. It is a series of events not threaded through by any conscious and emotional perception. Recall how in some science fiction films, the noises a robot or computer makes was typically a random series of beeps, representative of the machine’s lack of sentience or humanity.
Example 8: Schoenberg - *Three Piano Pieces, No. 1*, then some randomly generated notes of random length.

It doesn’t matter if the notes are chosen according to some abstract mathematical principle; if the principle does not pertain to those active within spirit, soul, and body then the result is not musical. If someone were to cook a meal made from periodic table elements whose atomic numbers follow the fibonacci sequence (1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89) that would be incredibly innovative and pay homage to the golden spiral principle of nature, but it wouldn’t be *food* and you would slowly die from eating it. And yet, humans are adept at developing *acquired* tastes for that which kills them slowly, such as alcohol and tobacco, and the same may be said of certain music.

Is it surprising then, that atonal music came into vogue in the late 19th and early 20th century during the heights of the industrial revolution and scientific materialism? Its appeal is primarily one of intellectual intrigue and identity, but the factor of soul resonance remains absent except for attempts by some to induce a sense of fear, alienation, and anxiety through dissonance.

Polyphonic Music

Compared to Eastern monophonic music, most Western music since the Renaissance period is polyphonic and makes great use of harmony. Intervals interweave and/or chords progress with the melodies played atop them. Whereas in monophonic music the tonal baseline is fixed, here the baseline changes as desired, and so the orientation of a given melody changes accordingly. The same melody can be given different perspectives depending on which chords accompany it.


To listeners used to monophonic music, the shifting baseline or changing tonal center of polyphonic
music creates an unsettling, ungrounded, vertiginous effect. There are some profound mysteries contained in this. As it turns out, cultures that enjoy monophonic music also happen to be ones that place greatest importance on tradition and cultural stability. The constant tone subliminally represents the keynote of their culture, the line that every generation walks. It may be said that the tonal center is the keystone of a given realm, the prime numerical index that distinguishes that realm from another. This is no more evident than in Hinduism where the syllable “Om” is said to be the underlying drone of reality, the vibration that gives rise to our manifested existence. It is the hum of the Logos as it sings Creation into existence cymatically through the Demiurge.

**Key Modulation**

So then, what does it mean for a tonal center to change? If each tonal center is the baseline of its own realm, then a change represents a transition from one realm to another.

Notice how the same life event can be viewed from different perspectives depending on what realm or perspective your consciousness is rooted in. If you are rooted in materialism and vanity, then losing your body in a boating accident will be devastating. If you are rooted instead in your higher spiritual mind, you might see this as the natural conclusion to a well-planned curriculum. In the same way, a melody can take on different hues depending on its underlying harmony and tonal center.

Now, given any pitch, you can build a scale of notes upon multiplying its frequency by various ratios. This pitch then becomes the tonal center (or tonic) of that scale. By stacking various notes of that scale, you can create chords. Both the scale and chords are rooted in that tonal center. So when a song is said to be “in the key of C major,” that means its tonal center is C and the scale from which the chords and melodies are built happens to be the major scale.

**Example 10:** How the key of C major sounds. First the familiar do re mi scale (major scale), then a polyphonic ditty using both scales and chords of that key.

In contrast, monophonic music keeps the same key throughout a song, sounds the tonic constantly, and plays only one melodic line. The complete opposite is true for polyphonic music. It may change key, not always sound the tonic, may stack notes into chords, and play several interweaving melodies at once.
When the key changes throughout a song, that is known as key modulation; it means shifting the aforementioned tonal center throughout a song, sometimes even within the same melody or musical phrase. Melodies themselves can stray outside the scale they started in. A melody might go up in the happy sounding major scale and descend in the sad sounding minor scale. The chords accompanying the melody might also shift from one key to another while this occurs, if so desired.

**Example 11**: Non-modulating compared to modulating. Notice how the non-modulating example sounds a bit boring and conventional, while the modulating example sounds more interesting but odd.

The Power of Polyphonic Music

Modulation is the transitioning between musical universes. It takes you out of one realm into another.

The most rudimentary form of modulation, frequently used in pop ballads, is where a chorus repeats but raised in pitch by some interval. This is humorously termed the “trucker’s gear shift.” It’s a cliche we’ve all heard: just when you think the song couldn’t get any more sappy, it jumps in pitch (usually after a dramatic pause) and that’s when the camera pans to some woman in the audience shedding a tear while the crowd cheers and the vocalist wails on. The raising of the tonal center parallels breaking the sound barrier and entering an altogether new level of intensity. That is only one example of modulation.

When a melody remains in the same scale and its accompanying chords progress in the same key, the song stays bounded in the same realm. Every resonance this song induces in the soul belongs to the same set. These resonances parallel experiences that take place in only one realm. It has its uses, but can be a bit one dimensional. Monophonic music is an extreme form of this.

It makes sense, then, that Western civilization has seen the greatest turnover in cultural, political, scientific, and social paradigms. Just consider how much has changed since the late Middle Ages, since the birth of polyphonic music in Western culture. Western society is not a monophonic culture that holds steadfastly to an ancient drone and remains anchored in one realm. It is as volatile as its music.

Since modulation involves movement from one chord or interval to another of a different scale and/or tonal center, then since there are many chords and intervals, there are an even greater number of possible modulations. And every one of these modulations carries its own unique feel as well.

Example 13: Sequence of chords in C Major that do not modulate, then sequence of chords where every chord is in a different key from the one before it.

So in addition to simple intervals or chords each having their own feel, a particular transition from one to another also has a unique feel, and that includes transitions from a chord in one key or musical universe to another. The profound implication is that since even the latter can induce resonance in the soul, then in some way the soul must be familiar with transition between realms.

The trucker’s gear shift is popular because it represents the reaching of a new plateau in life, which on Earth typically means reaching a new level of success, realization, or triumph. That is a peak experience that many souls incarnating here seem to be striving for. It’s the transition from a lesser to a more exciting realm of experience. Since this is such a common theme among human incarnations, the potential to resonate with the corresponding modulation is equally common. Hence
its use in pop music to build and amplify sentimentality and thus revenue.

Other modulations are less familiar. Going from C:G to C#:F# (or E:B to F:A# as in the example) has a dark, mystical, occult feel to it. This is partly due to the involvement of an interval known as the augmented fourth, basis of the tritone chord which the medieval Church banned for sounding too diabolical.

**Example 14:** The tritone chord, which the church banned. Then the augmented fourth interval it's based on. These are highly dissonant and truly evil or foreboding sounding. The proper way to use them, however, is via E:B to F:A# as illustrated in this example, where E->A# and B->F are augmented fourths, yet together they lose their dissonance and become otherworldly. Played in this way, one hears the pinnacle of modulation, maximum otherworldliness. That may be what the Church really wanted to ban, namely the stimulation of transcendent impulses. In this example, the chord sequence is repeated with varying emphasis on certain notes so that you can hear the pairs of augmented fourths. Then follows a clip from my song *Deep Black Lake* where I use this sequence.

Whatever experience this modulation parallels, it is not something confined to the Earthly domain. But the fact that we can respond to it at all shows that our souls have endured exposure to dark, mystical, occult realms. If we really enjoy that feeling, then the resonance must be particularly intense, and perhaps we have a foot in that otherworld. If we merely feel odd and shrink away from it, then maybe we’ve caught glimpses of those realms and much prefer the comfort of our life back home.

Hence, we frequently find the tritone or C:G to C#:F# modulation used in gothic, black, or doom metal but almost never in country music or pop ballads because the latter are firmly planted in everyday life on Earth. Note that the tritone or augmented fourth is only diabolic when sounded simultaneously or played as a melody in the same key, for that juxtaposition brings out its inherent dissonance. Dark music uses this to imply doom or dread. But in a modulating sequence such as C:G to C#:F#, two augmented fourths (one going low to high, the other high to low) end up neutralizing each other like some matter-antimatter collision, generating instead an eerie musical wormhole between realms. That is why this chord sequence is the very epitome of realm transition. Strange modulations may also be found in horror and fantasy film soundtracks. The Harry Potter theme by John Williams tries really hard to modulate in a manner evoking a sense of occultism,
magic, and mystical wonder.

**Example 15:** Harry Potter theme by John Williams, who also scored *Indiana Jones, Star Wars, E.T., Jurassic Park, Jaws,* and more.

Other modulation are merely strange in an innocent elfin, elemental, or sylvan way. One example is C:E to D#:G. Since these are two major third (happy) intervals with no evil tritone to be found among them, they are otherworldly but in a more lighthearted sense.

**Example 16:** C:E to D#:G an elfin modulation, then same with an accompanying flute melody to enhance the effect.

*The Power of Monophonic Music*

That is not to say monophonic music with its absence of harmony and modulation is inferior. What it lacks in ability to stir the astral body, it gains in stimulating the etheric and physical bodies. There is a secret science to monophony that allows it to alter physicality through manipulation of the etheric intermediary, or alter physiology through deep level manipulation of neural circuitry and the etheric body.

The frequency and texture of a tone is known to affect the growth of plants and the health of the human body for better or worse. Hindu and Chinese legends speak of music being used to alter the
weather and even induce human combustion. Gurdjieff discussed “objective music” and “inner octaves.” In the opening scene to Gurdjieff’s biopic Meetings with Remarkable Men we see a musician resonating canyon stones into full agitation via overtone singing; perhaps the filmmaker knew something about that technique. Overtone singing is the humming of a note and changing of the mouth/teeth/lip position to filter out certain harmonics, creating the effect of a high-pitched melody wandering atop a drone, just like with bagpipes. Asian overtone singing and Irish bagpipes are likely vestigial holdovers from a time when monophony was used to manipulate physical matter. Tibetan monks have allegedly demonstrated levitating a heavy boulder several hundred feet into the air using the power of sound.

As the drone is sounded, each note in a melody forms a certain interval with respect to it. Some intervals we are familiar with, such as the 5:6 frequency ratio comprising the sad minor third interval. Other intervals sound like the tuning is off, but really they consist of the drone plus a microtonal note that isn’t in our twelve tone chromatic scale, which according to Hindu music theory nonetheless has a definite and unique color or impact.

The melodies in monophonic music usually pass through such intervals quite quickly without dwelling on them to where harmony becomes prominent. The listener hears the melody first and foremost. This allows for the sonic equivalent of acupuncture, where each note is like a needle positioned on a specific meridian point to activate a certain function. To treat a condition, acupuncture uses a set of such needles on meridian points related to that condition. Likewise the Hindu songs known as ragas use a specific scale and rhythmic pattern known to collectively have specific effects on the listener.

All of these feats were accomplished through monophonic music. As mentioned, melody affects the etheric and physical bodies and pertains to events of the exterior world. Those with occult knowledge have taken this principle to an extreme to heal or harm the body and to manipulate matter, energy, space, and time.

As you can see, even without harmony, music can be quite powerful when engineered according to a secret science. Without this science, music is imprecise or accidental in its objective effects.

But what this secret science consists of, exactly, remains a mystery. Nonetheless, Alain Daniélou has contributed much to its decipherment. In his book “Music and the Power of Sound,” Daniélou shows how Hindu, Greek, Arabic, Chinese, and Western musical systems all derive from a common meta-system. For example, the notes, scales, and chords used in Western music are but small subset of all the ones available in this meta-system. Arabic music chooses a different subset, Chinese yet another.

Indian classical music is the most sophisticated and complete, for it uses notes that don’t even exist in Western music theory. It employs microtones, which are notes that reside between the notes we know. This is what Gurdjieff meant by “inner octaves”, namely the spectrum of microtones between notes.

At best, Western music uses microtones in a crude way when accenting notes by bending, slurring, or vibrating them. Drummers do an equivalent technique with rhythm when they purposefully play ahead or behind a beat on certain notes, thereby altering the rhythm in microscopic ways in order to impart a subliminal groove that makes an otherwise clinical beat come alive. Such accents add a
sense of passion to music. Good artists make use of both microtonal and microtiming variations to put “soul” and “groove” into the music they play. [This directly parallels the subtle expansion and contraction of electron orbitals in atoms that accompanies the production and absorption of longitudinal or scalar waves, which are biologically and etherically active (literally the ghost in the shell). These expansions or contractions are beneath the threshold of what would trigger a jump in orbit and the production or absorption of a regular transverse EM wave (photons), hence their effects are sub-electromagnetic, sub-quantum, or virtual. The same can be done in music by subtly bending the timing or pitch from its common value, as opposed to deviating all the way which would simply produce another common note or beat].

It is precisely this passion that Hindu monophonic music aims to tap with its bending of notes and the use of microtones foreign to Western music. However, this passion is not quite the same as the full bodied feelings that only harmony brings. It takes place at a different level of the soul, a more instinctual or reflexive rather than introspective level. The “passion” and “soul” response arises at the border between the etheric and astral, which is not quite at the level stimulated by sweeping emotions and epic archetypal themes resonated by harmony and modulation in polyphonic music. Rather, without any pejorative connotations implied, it’s more at the visceral reflexive level of what animals feel. Animals have etheric and astral bodies, but their astral bodies are not as developed as those of humans. That is why human feelings comprise a superset of what cats and dogs experience.

The melodic and rhythmic accents that monophonic music adds to notes in order to create feeling and passion, these share a mechanism in common with animal vocalizations. We can understand cat meows because such accents are relatively universal to mammals. We can tell a sad meow from a happy one, from a question mark, from an exclamation mark, from an impassioned groan, and so on. We share those same inflections integrated into our speech; think of all the ways “hmm” can be vocalized to convey different meanings. Rock and blues vocals place heavy emphasis on such inflections to convey attitude, passion, or agony sort of like moaning cats or growling dogs, only with lyrics.

Interestingly, dogs howl to drawn out notes and cats will respond to certain melodic inflections played on a guitar but neither will respond to intervals, harmonies, or chord progressions. Yet humans respond to all of these. It stands to reason that there are even higher beings whose feelings are supersets of ours, who can feel things most humans cannot. And yet, their feelings ought to be encodable in music as well. If you were to hear such music, perhaps non-human feelings could be stimulated in you if they happen to be present within your soul in embryonic or residual form. Maybe that is what certain strange sounding modulations achieve.

Ancient Music

In Hindu music, the scale of notes and their timing, slurring, and vibrato are highly intentional and specific. Research suggests the ancient Vedic culture received their knowledge and heritage from the Aryan Hittites that invaded India in the first millennium B.C. (see the works of L.A. Waddell). These Hittites descended from even earlier proto-Hittite-Phoenician-Amorites who possessed global navigation and megalithic technology and thus surely knew the secret science of sound. They also founded the ancient Mayan, Chinese, Minoan, Sumerian, and Egyptian civilizations and were possessors of vast knowledge in mathematics, music, and other arts and sciences.
The meta-system of music that Daniélou investigated may have been known for several thousand years, but cultural fragmentation produced musical fragmentation away from the meta-system. Perhaps this was done on purpose. Maybe Western music was covertly turned into eventual polyphonic form, with equal temperament tuning making feasible the playing of harmony in various keys, in order to induce rapid cultural, social, political, and scientific turnover. Maybe if Europe had stayed with monophony, we’d still be riding donkeys.

In ancient China, music was heavily regulated to ensure that all instruments were tuned to a particular tonal center and only certain scales were used. This perpetuated the stability of the civilization. It’s said that when foreign musicians became popular in a region, or local musicians decided to innovate and play other scales, the local culture suffered a decline in order, health, and morality.

Plato was aware of this problem as well, complaining that “our music was once divided into its proper forms. It was not permitted to exchange the melodic styles of these established forms and others. Knowledge and informed judgment penalized disobedience. There were no whistles, unmusical mob-noises, or clapping for applause. The rule was to listen silently and learn; boys, teachers, and the crowd were kept in order by threat of the stick. But later, an unmusical anarchy was led by poets who had natural talent, but were ignorant of the laws of music. Through foolishness they deceived themselves into thinking that there was no right or wrong way in music, that it was to be judged good or bad by the pleasure it gave.”

Classical Music

This naturally brings into question the effects of modern and even classical music. It may come as a surprise that not all Western classical music is good and healthy. Each style of classical targeted its respective zones within the soul, some higher or lower than others. Starting from a high point during the late Medieval and Renaissance times, the spiritual integrity of both culture and music declined in a systematic way over the subsequent centuries.

The Medieval period spans from 400 to 1400 AD and encompasses the rise of Merovingians and the Kings of Britain, historical events pertaining to the Holy Grail, the proliferation of chivalry and alchemy, spread of various Gnostic sects, construction of the Gothic cathedrals, and rise and fall of the Templars. It also included the Catholic Inquisition and the Crusades.

Early Medieval music was monophonic. The official “sacred” music of the time consisted of plainsong sanctioned by the Church, which was neither sacred nor musical in the true sense. Gregorian chants, for example, were intentionally minimalistic and plain so as to avoid stimulating the soul and spirit, which might have awakened individualistic “pagan” feelings that could undermine the absolute spiritual authority of the Church.

Early Medieval secular music, however, was influenced by Arabic and Persian cultures, whose societies were experiencing a golden age at the time Europe was still climbing out of the Dark Ages. Therefore Medieval secular music had Middle-Eastern elements, though with lyrical themes centered around courtly love and heroic deeds. The gnostic troubadours and minnesingers who were propagators of the Grail legends sang in this style.

So all in all, the cultural highlights of the Medieval period were purity, sacredness, devotion, and chivalry. These are the same themes found in Iranian, Indian, Scandinavian, and other Indo-European traditions that trace back to the ancient proto-Hittite-Phoenician-Amorite civilization (4,000 BC to 1500 BC) mentioned earlier and discussed in my Gnosis series as being the original bearers of the Grail stone.

Basic forms of harmony developed by 800-900 AD though complex polyphony took several more centuries to mature. The Church adopted what was in vogue and consequently liturgical music became polyphonic. So although the Church became the primary vehicle for such sacred polyphony, spiritual and gnostic undercurrents covertly bubbled up through that oppressive framework. And not only in music but also in literature and art, as evidenced by the Grail stories that carried Christian themes on the surface but were gnostic and hyperborean at the core, or the alchemical themes encoded in the various statues and reliefs of the Gothic cathedrals.

This kind of polyphonic music, which flourished in the late Medieval period and evolved to perfection in the Renaissance and early Baroque, focused on harmony of the highest order and thereby sought to stimulate the upper reaches of the astral body closest to spirit. For once, sacred music resonated the capacity for spiritual devotion through pure harmonies and melodies.

Perhaps the same body of secret sciences behind the sacred geometry of the cathedrals, or the alchemical tinting of their stained glass windows, also engendered the polyphony performed therein. This may have been an act of occult warfare aimed at undermining the tyranny of the Church. Like uploading a virus to the mothership, by injecting a transcendent, gnostic, individualistic element into Church architecture and music, it would only be a matter of time before that became the new cultural keynote.

Indeed, that is exactly what happened during the Renaissance (1400-1600) when individual development to the highest divine, artistic, philosophical, and intellectual potential took on greater importance than austere submission to the Church. Instead of an aloof spirituality, the Renaissance added a more personal human dimension to the divine. The focal point thereby shifted from spirit to the spirit-astral boundary where the higher ego resides. The higher ego represents one’s highest potential. This was the spiritual height of Western music, the golden mean between above and
below where complexity did not come at the expense of divinity. Such music reached its zenith around 1500 with the Franco-Flemish style of sacred and secular polyphony.

**Example 19:** Middle and late Renaissance music. First an anonymous secular chanson called *Tourdion, Quand je bois du vin* (mid 1500s), then Monteverdi - *Antiphona, In Sancte Trinitatis*, (1610). Monteverdi bridged the Renaissance and Baroque.

In the subsequent centuries, virtuosity and excellence became idolized to the point of intellectual hubris. Hence the Renaissance was followed by the Age of Enlightenment (1600-1800) where *reason* became the highest of virtues and anything superstitious or mystical took a back seat. Science eclipsed philosophy and chemistry displaced alchemy. This was a counter-reaction to the tyrannical nature of the Church during the preceding centuries. But in doing so, it increasingly threw the baby out with the bathwater and discarded mystical, sacred, spiritual impulses as being symptomatic of religious ignorance.

The musical styles associated with the Age of Enlightenment, known as Baroque and Classical, placed less emphasis on sacred spiritual impulses than exploring the technical heights of what could be done with Western music theory that nonetheless produced something intelligible, logical, and pleasing. While early Baroque still possessed the spiritual virtues of the Renaissance, by the late Baroque and Classical periods the focus had shifted entirely from the higher to the lower ego, or intellect. It may have been the most intricate music ever written, but it lacked a certain numinous glow.

In counter-reaction to the insipid intellectualism and conventions of the Classical period, next came the Romantic period (1800-1900) whose aim was to evoke strong emotions and sentimentality. Rich harmonies, textures, and melodies together stimulated the inner emotional life, stirring up yearnings and passions. However it stimulated only the middle and lower regions of the astral body, either directly or via association.

Whereas Baroque and Classical were melodic, pleasing, and memorable because they still respected the natural laws of music, Romanticism went against convention, broke the rules of music theory established up to that point, and dove into the darker regions of human existence. This was the first time that elements from the lower astral planes — the demented, twisted, delirious, demonic, angry, lustful energies and entities there — could potentially enter into classical music. For better or worse, Beethoven channeled his astral body into his works and thereby gave them a fierce astral nature, almost to the point of luciferian mania in certain pieces.

Example 21: Excerpts from Beethoven's *Symphony No. 5* (1808). Beethoven was the first truly modern composer in the sense of tapping into astral currents that had not been put into music before, and which are quite active in music nowadays.

This era also romanticized earlier cultural themes such as the Grail legend, but in lacking the spiritual influences behind these original themes, all it could do was caricaturize. Classic example is Richard Wagner’s *Parsifal*, an epic opera loosely based on Wolfram von Eschenbach’s Grail poem from the 1200s.

Wagner took Romanticism to its logical conclusion by abandoning melodic and harmonic elegance and simplicity in favor of textures so rich and chords so complex (in an attempt to express power, emotion, and epic themes in an associative way) that what unwittingly resulted was a kind of astral “heat death,” a drowning in sentimentality, a smearing of emotions into an amorphous nebula of hysteria. Consider his famous Tristan chord, which consisted of the augmented 4th (horror, fear), Minor 3rd (human sadness), and Augmented 6th (nostalgia). It’s the sound of a languished soul
longing for better days. No wonder Lars von Trier chose to use it throughout the film Melancholia.

Example 22: Wagner's famous Tristan chord, from the prelude in Tristan and Isolde (1865). First is an excerpt from the beginning of the prelude, then the ending.

Impressionism then arose in the late 1800s as a reaction to the pompous, gaudy, melodramatic sentimentality of Romanticism. Its goal was to be subtle and subliminal in its effects upon the listener. Impressionism did away with memorable melodies and traditional harmonies. Rather, it abandoned music in favor of using sound to stimulate reactions that took place beneath the threshold of consciousness, thereby producing certain moods or atmospheres that couldn’t always be put into words.

Example 23: Impressionist(ic) music. Debussy - Rêverie (1890), Maurice Ravel - String Quartet in F Major (1903).

One could say Impressionism was an attempt at objective music, but only at the physiological level and haphazardly without knowledge of the exact science behind it. The same way Impressionist art focused on light, Impressionist music focused on sound; both sought to bring art and music down to the level of sensory stimulus.

So by the turn of the 20th century, the only thing left was to throw out all conventions and purposely make nothing resembling traditional music. This was practiced by Arnold Schoenberg
and others of the Atonal / Expressionist movement. Atonal “music” aims to produce sounds that have no followable tonal center. No note is afforded any easily identifiable harmonic or melodic connection to any other note, the only emotion intended to be aroused was continuous fear and anxiety through relentless dissonance.

Example 24: Arnold Schoenberg - *String Quartet No. 4*

While some might enjoy it intellectually for its novelty and even develop an *acquired taste* for it, at the core it remains music stripped of musicality, like a body stripped of its soul. In the end, it expressed what came to define the early 20th century: materialism, nihilism, rebellion, brutality, destruction, chaos, terror, suffering, death, and loss of spiritual consciousness.

Occult Trajectory

Though simplified, the above history illustrates how Western music follows a trajectory from the highest heights to the lowest lows: spirit giving way to intellect, intellect to sentiment, and sentiment to unconsciousness and chaos. Or in Rudolf Steiner’s terms, it followed a trajectory from Christ to Ahriman to Lucifer to Sorat. All this within five centuries. The focal points trace a linear descent down the spirit, mind, astral, etheric, and physical layers of the human being. Mere coincidence?

Every movement was a reaction to the preceding one, just one step down in the metaphysical scale. Problem, reaction, solution. This dialectic synthesis generated progressively devolving states that ultimately amounted to a triumph of matter over spirit.

It should now be clear that the devolution of classical music has either paralleled, or directly engendered, a systematic decline of Western civilization.

Modern Music

Classical music was limited by the technology of its day. The pipe organ was the closest thing to powered machinery since it ran on steam, and the old masters used it prolifically. If electric and digital instruments had been available, they would have been used. Today we have not only the traditional instruments available to us, but all the new ones afforded by modern technology. And not only can modern musicians invoke the styles of past centuries, but they may employ newer ones and even fuse various styles and juxtapose instruments of different eras.
Therefore today’s music is a superset of the old rather than a mere sequel. It is a “Resurrection” of the old, augmented by the new. The same principles, wellsprings of inspiration, and occult influences that animated old music are still available to us, provided the musician can tap into them. Further, we now have additional influences that did not exist back then, at least not to the same degree. Good or bad, this means music today is capable of more: more divinity, more otherworldliness, more power, more intricacy, more texture, more rhythm, more elegance, but also more darkness, more demonism, more aggression, or more manipulation depending on the musician’s intent.

It’s beyond the scope of this article to analyze the archetypal basis and metaphysical effects of every modern genre and subgenre. However, these are easy enough to determine from the lyrics and graphics accompanying the music, for these are not normally in contradiction. For instance, there are no country albums about knights fighting dragons, rap albums about pickup trucks and old dirt roads, or reggae albums about a robot apocalypse. Lounge and jazz reflect urban socialite living, metal reflects various permutations of power, punk reflects youth and rebellion, etc. and the reason why a genre reflects a given archetype or realm of experience goes back to the objective resonance and subjective association factors explained earlier.

Music since the early 1900s has diversified into hundreds of genres and subgenres. The diversity is so immense that we cannot categorically dismiss modern music simply for being modern; too many factors are at play.

Some factors are due to the novelty of the times. There are electronic styles owing their distinction to the capabilities afforded by synthesizers and samplers. And metal could not have arisen without the invention of electric guitars and high gain amplifiers. New cultural elements have entered into the equation as well, such as African work songs, voodoo rhythms, and brothel music that became the basis of blues, Jazz, and derivative genres. The difference between European and American styles of pop, jazz, rock, metal, etc. is due to greater Africanization of the latter in the 20th century.

Other factors are metaphysical. Some musicians may be drawing subconscious inspiration from past or future lives, perhaps focusing on Medieval elements in their works because they still share a strong connection with that life and time period. There are neoclassical composers who, in having the benefit of historical hindsight, are able to outdo the old masters and produce even more beautiful and numinous works. An unexpected and under appreciated but noteworthy example is modern video game soundtracks. It all depends on what realms they are tapping into.

Some artists may have had past lives as aliens, or they might be angelic beings in human form, and their music contains an otherworldly element that resonates other people who might also have had past life connections with that realm. Through psionic linkage established between artist and audience, and through the resonance characteristics of the music itself, these artists can broadcast uplifting and liberating energies into the world.

Other music is purely commercial in nature, engineered to appeal to the broadest audiences and extract the most money. That is the definition of pop(ular) music. Some is engineered by political think tanks for propaganda, cultural revolution, or cultural suppression reasons. Then there are individuals possessed by demons or taking part in demonic secret societies who use music as a means of harvesting energy from fans and injecting demonic vibrations into the collective
unconscious. They do this through subliminal messages and neurolinguistic programming, through textures, rhythms, melodies, and harmonies that stimulate resonance with the demonic realm, and through employing the song or music video as an occult sigil to psionically link the audience to the demon(s) possessing or shadowing the artist. These have far stronger effects on a listener than, say, whether a song is tuned to A 440Hz or A 432Hz.

Point being that in flipping through the radio or browsing music on the web, you are surveying a sonic microcosm that mirrors the vast macrocosm of beings, realms, dimensions, influences, and energies accessible to human consciousness. Past, future, this world, other worlds, divine, demonic, human, alien, animal, commercial, organic, robotic — it’s all out there right now in musical form, and to a potentially greater intensity and fidelity than ever before attained.

So aside from modern music being mere entertainment, mere fun, mere associative subcultural identification, there is a more serious aspect where music serves as the battleground for competing political, occult, spiritual, and alien influences.

On an individual level, it’s not so much about changing a person into something he is not — because he will detest and refuse to listen to something he neither resonates nor identifies with — but about bringing out the best or worst in him or her. On a collective level, however, an upstanding principled culture can be thoroughly inverted, subverted, and perverted through its music over the span of a few generations because most children are easily enculturated out of evolutionary necessity. As shown above, that agenda has been ongoing for some time.

Future Music

When people think of futuristic music, they typically envision something spacey, electronic, and robotic sounding. It’s natural to assume that the future is an extension of the present, that since the defining feature of modern life is technology, the future will be the same just with even more technology. But that expectation is too encumbered by the shortcomings of scientific materialism and transhumanism, whose one-sided view of existence excludes anything outside mainstream assumptions. There are also metaphysical, alien, occult, and eschatological variables at play that will not only influence the future but outright override the lesser technology factors and create outcomes that completely go against the prevailing assumptions of our times.

As a planet we are approaching a simultaneous convergence of astrophysical cycles, occult trends, metaphysical plans, and alien agendas. This convergence represents a schism or nexus point, a discontinuity in human history that will throw the prevailing order into chaos. From this chaos will arise any number of new orders. Whatever the outcome, over the long term the future will not simply be a linear progression of current technological trends, but rather a full scale precipitation of esoteric/alien/occult factors that for now have remained sub rosa.

The future may be divided into two major phases: the transition between old and new eras, and the new era itself. The new era will be one of peace, enlightenment, and integrity. It will be a new renaissance of the spirit, mind, and soul. Every myth, vision, and prophecy speaks of this Golden Age, this Kingdom of Heaven, this Reign of Wisdom.

However, the transition phase preceding it will be one of superhuman heroism in the face of extreme hardship as the spiritually awakened square off against old and new adversaries who seek
to maintain their dominance. The transition will require dealing with the tyrannical death throes of
the old power structure, surviving the collapse of civilization, and developing enough knowledge,
strength, cohesion, and identity to keep the spiritual flame alive during the next Dark Age. Threats
to human sovereignty will evolve from mere political oppression at the very beginning to
increasingly cosmic and supernatural opposition near the middle and end. A new chivalric order will
arise in response to these challenges. Our powers to deal with these threats will evolve as well,
shifting from five-sense methods toward more paranormal, psychic, etheric, spiritual forms of
defense and offense. This, as our consciousness, self-knowledge, divine connection, perception,
technology, and environment gradually pivot to a higher octave of existence.

If we were to translate the above into music, what would it sound like? Would country music do?
Would jazz? Our music would have to be epic, human yet superhuman, powerful, dynamic,
transcendental, mysterious, spiritual, and intense.

Modern music devotes too much of itself to realms of experience whose days are numbered: urban
life, fashion, celebrity, glamor, materialism, promiscuity, mundanity, etc. Very few genres are even
capable of capturing the zeitgeist of what’s to come. For that, we need music whose texture, rhythm,
melody, and harmony is anything but small and worldly.

An obvious choice for a texture that embodies power, energy, and dynamism is the distorted tone of
an electric guitar. The distortion comes from an overloading of the vacuum tubes inside a guitar
amplifier. The signal hitting the tubes is so intense that it surpasses their rated limitations, and so the
signal’s waveform distorts and acquires a harder sonic edge. So here we already have the concepts
of power, energy, and the transcending of limitations. The resulting sound carries not only the
identifiable pitch of the original signal from the guitar, but now has a rich spectrum of harmonic
overtones added. Instead of one, there are now many. This captures the essence of power. Cymbals
in a drum set likewise consist of a huge spectrum of harmonics, but they lack a well defined
fundamental pitch and therefore don’t have the sonic “direction” that a distorted guitar has. The
latter embodies the power of many acting under a single purpose. The rushing sound of a massive
waterfall, the buzz of a high voltage generator, the roar of a crowd — all of these share in the
expression of power.

And hence, the distorted electric guitar tone is the epitome of power, energy, and transcendence. It
is the golden mean between the directionality but loneliness of a pure sine wave and the
multitudinous but directionless sound of pure noise. That is why all metal music employs the
distorted guitar tone, for power is the common denominator of all metal subgenres; the predominant
chord metal uses is even called the “power chord”, based on the 2:3 perfect fifth interval, because as
mentioned earlier, the perfect fifth by itself already has a regal and powerful sound, which is only
enhanced by distortion.

The archetype of power that underlies metal can be filtered or accessorized through various
harmonies, melodies, textures, and rhythms to generate the various subgenres of the field.
Unfortunately, just as physical power defaults toward violence and destruction in today’s world, so
has the power of metal defaulted toward violent and dark applications, but it need not be so. If
directed toward the divine realm instead, the result would be an expression of divine power, an
archangelic archetype rather than a demonic one. In Indian classical music, the instrument known as
a tanpura has a similar texture to the electric guitar and generates a drone that signifies cosmic
Aside from expressing power, our music would need to employ modulation to convey the sense of transition between realms. An elegant use of modulation signifies a hyperdimensional state of existence beyond the limits of linear time. What it represents is closer to the domain of aliens, angels, demons, or jinn than the human domain, but that will change as the human race evolves. In life, humans get a faint taste of realm transitions via dreaming, which is a crossing of realms from waking life into the inner dreamscape and back again. To create a song that evokes the essence of dreams without resorting to special textures, you must employ modulating melodies that have a supernatural elegance to them. In fact, music first heard in dreams will often have this very quality. Moving from the old world to new era will be like crossing the waking-dream boundary.

When a song or phrase begins and ends with the same key while modulating in between, that parallels leaving your home and going on an epic journey ending with you back home. How many adventure, fantasy, and science fiction stories have we come across with this theme? The Wizard of Oz is an example. If the modulation is especially otherworldly sounding, then the adventure is a magical one. This encodes the archetype of the hero’s journey, the template that Joseph Campbell discovered was the universal basis of mythology. Mythology itself is a trans-dimensional map of our planetary destiny showing where we came from, who we are, why we’re here, and where we’re going, albeit encoded in symbolic form like a dream. And just as dreams can foreshadow the future, the hero myth foreshadows our own future triumph over ignorance and adversity.

So modulation is essential for encoding the property of transcendence. Done properly, songs that modulate may evoke feelings in us that foreshadow a future time when certain heroic humans transcend the worldly matrix and acquire the otherworldly powers, knowledge, and experience needed to return and help liberate their brethren who are still struggling to transcend.

As for the other impulses active during the transition phase, for the spiritual element we can look to the pure and elegant harmonies of Medieval and Renaissance music. For the celebration of human individuality, the exuberance of the Renaissance and Baroque eras. For the emotional gravitas of hope and tragedy amidst collapse and change, the passionate vocals and epic choirs of the Romantic period. For heroism, valor, and chivalry, perhaps the folk melodies of the Scandinavians or modern operatic metal vocals. For pure power and superhuman caliber, the unmatched energy and power of metal’s guitars and drums.

Combine all these synergistically and employ otherworldly modulation, and you will have an example of something capable of expressing the era of transition.

That doesn’t mean future generations will be listening to precisely this kind of music, only that the most active archetypes of that future can be resonated right now through certain compositions of appropriate scope and splendor. Whether it would stimulate anything in you depends on how much you resonate with those archetypes. In turn, that would depend on who you are, where/when you came from, why you’re here, and where you’re headed in life.

Conclusion

What music we enjoy potentially includes not only our soul resonance characteristics and recurring life themes, but also the more superficial aspects such as cultural/subcultural affiliation and degree
of intellectual vs kinesthetic vs emotional centris.

It would be a mistake, however, to confuse soul resonance with the more mundane factors behind musical preference and therefore draw the wrong conclusions. To reach the soul, a song must pass through the brain’s musical circuitry. If the circuitry is not well developed, the song will never be perceived to the depths necessary to resonate the soul in the first place. In that case, a person’s musical preference may be due more to mundane factors such as association, identity, groove, or intrigue. Many such individuals tend not to have strong musical preferences at all and will listen to just about anything; that’s because their preference doesn’t conditionally follow from their unique soul resonance profiles.

But assuming we can achieve objective insight into the soul based on musical preference, what are the implications? Well, in short it means that we all have spiritual roles that are unique in their idiosyncrasies yet generic in their stemming from just a few archetypes. These archetypes include the warrior, the healer, the wanderer, the trickster, the chieftain, the child, the king, the princess, the knight, the hero, the technician, the alien, the martyr, the observer, etc. These archetypes are what underlie the correspondences between soul, life, and music.

It also means that we are what we are, and we stand for what we stand for. If others acquire perception of our inner archetypes, and we of theirs, that should be no cause for mutual embarrassment, contempt, hubris, or hate. It should only be cause for mutual matter-of-fact acknowledgement and understanding without necessarily betraying our own values and roles, for we must be what we must be.

Topics Not Discussed

Since this article was only a general overview, I did not include the more difficult technical analyses of all the mathematical, occult, and historical facets of music and how to apply them. Many of these I still need to research and experiment with before being able to explain them to my satisfaction.

So here is a list of topics left to explore:

- How musical scales and modes (Ionian, Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian, Aolian, and Locrian) differ in their impacts on the soul.
- How modes and scales affect the cultures that employ them.
- How scales correspond to the chakras and influence them.
- Implications of scales like the minor or major pentatonic having only five notes, and how this correlates to the cultures using them.
- How as Rudolf Steiner pointed out, mankind’s preferred mode has progressively shifted over time from Lydian (prehistoric) to Phrygian (Egypt and Greece) to Dorian (Medieval) to the current Ionian mode, with Locrian being the next mode preferred by our descendants.
- How we have not yet evolved the ability to perceive the Locrian mode accurately and authentically.
- How Locrian is the only mode that uses a tritone in place of the perfect fifth, why this represents a hyperdimensional ability to shift between realms, and how that correlates with
what future humans will be like.

- A list of intervals, chords, and modulations between chords, and their corresponding color, feel, realm, etc.

- A reliable method for modulating between one key and another, toward intended effects, within the time allotted in a song.

- The specific ways in which micro-timing of rhythm or microtonal variation of tone imbue music with “soul.”

- The two types of sound mentioned by Gurdjieff in Chapter 42 of “Beelzebub’s Tales to his Grandson”, one being the ordinary sound we know, and another capable of altering matter, influencing health or disease, and affecting the mind; relates to John Keely’s work.

- In what manner vocal inflection corresponds to musical intervals and rhythm.

- Harmonic analysis of different vowels including overtone singing, and in what manner these point to different realms, archetypes, or beings that can be invoked through such sounds.

- How the above may tie into three dimensional cymatic standing waves induced in the ether, which function as portal openers and/or occult sigils made of geometric vibrational patterns.

- Discussion of Rudolf Steiner’s insights and observations regarding music and the soul, and Alain Daniélou meta system of music.

Further Reading

Music and the Power of Sound – Alain Daniélou

The Secret Power of Music – David Tame

The Inner Nature of Music and the Experience of Tone – Rudolf Steiner

The Occult Basis of Music – Rudolf Steiner

Outer Streams, Metaphysics of Music – Dr. Nelson Harrison

(index)

Stages of Conscious Awakening

7 January 15 (metaphys)

It is imperative that we awaken from mundane awareness into full spiritual remembrance of who we are. The problem is that even when physically awake, we can still be mentally asleep, unaware of ourselves and entirely absorbed in whatever mechanical impulse or external stimulus captures our attention. This state of confluence, or mental absorption, keeps us in an unproductive dream state.

The common understanding of what it means to be “awake” disguises the truth, which is that despite walking around with eyes open, people tend to nonetheless be hypnotized, dimly conscious, sleepwalking, daydreaming, or in a state of trance. What all these states have in common is that the conscious core of the individual is absent or passive, blowing like a leaf in the winds of environmental stimuli.
In dreams we might make the strangest “logical” associations that amount to no logic at all, have little say in what happens to us, do things impulsively, and fail to question our reality or observe ourselves. Compare this to how people tend to behave in everyday life, the anecdotes and gossip they speak, how they might communicate via recitations of lines from movies or TV shows, speak in trite memetic phrases without conscious thought or originality, engage in ludicrous programmed behavior, engross themselves in petty dramas, and switch between goofy or borrowed personalities. For them, dreams do not end in the morning.

The world is an insane asylum but society is too asleep to notice the insanity. Just as you may not question insane dreams while having them, some people never question their insane lives. The implications of mass somnambulism is obvious: with billions of people asleep, those in power who are awake have the advantage. Sleeping people are easily controlled. Their conscious core exists within a mental prison, harvested for time, labor, and energy. They possess little or no freewill because they have abandoned the awareness necessary to harness it.

The mind and body can be asleep or awake independently of each other. With mind and body awake, one is truly awake. With mind and body asleep, one is dreaming. With mind awake and body asleep, one is lucid-dreaming. With mind asleep and body awake, one is sleepwalking. Gradations exist between these four states, ranging from hypnotism and trance to daydreaming and dim consciousness.

Stage 1: Breaking Negative Confluence

The first step to awakening requires breaking out of this negative confluence by gaining a degree of lucidity, a measure of self-awareness. At any moment you can turn your attention inward and observe yourself, placing your attention firmly in the present moment. You can notice your thoughts, analyze your feelings, pay attention to the sensations in your body, feel your breath, engage in self-examination, and survey your situation and surroundings from a higher perspective.

In doing so, you quickly become aware that all these perceptions ultimately originate from outside of you even if they are playing out inside your own mind. That is because at the very core of your mind is a center of perception that defines the true you, while the peripheral territory of your mind is populated by thoughts that may or may not be your own. This inner core is the silent observer, the consciousness watching through your eyes and thinking through your mind. It is that which experiences, chooses, realizes, and lives. The rest is just machinery.

Becoming lucid depends on being cognizant of your own awareness. Some call this self-remembering since confluence is the state of self-forgetting. Lucidity is as simple as turning within and remembering yourself in the present moment. Remembering yourself stops confluence, and stopping confluence is the first step to snapping out of what suffocates your spiritual identity. It is one thing to know that you are, but quite another to know who you are. In time, the first leads to the second.

Being consciously present in the moment is easy to implement but difficult to maintain. Books have been written on just this task alone. The problem is both physical and metaphysical. Initially, heightening one’s state of awareness requires both vital energy and an adequate supply of neurotransmitters. These deplete after a short period of exertion and one slips back into lowered consciousness. But like a muscle, mental focus grows with training because the physical and subtle
bodies adapt to a greater demand for energy.

Maintaining lucidity becomes easier with practice, as with practice one gradually increases the length and depth of focus. By practicing lucidity in a controlled setting, the same state of heightened awareness can more easily be reached and maintained under more natural circumstances. Hence some forms of meditation assist the training of self-awareness.

One common method of exercising lucidity is mindfulness meditation, where you pay attention to your thoughts and sensations by being a calm and lucid third party observer. Unlike transcendental meditation where chanting a mantra for hours leads to self-hypnosis and a lowering of consciousness, mindfulness meditation raises consciousness.

Another practice called Vipassana requires that you relax and then pay attention to every sensation in your body, starting with the top of your head and working your way down to your toes, then back to the top. The primary benefit of this type of meditation is that we become conscious of signals that are otherwise ignored and forgotten. This is useful because in this modern age not only do we normally forget ourselves, but we tend to forget our own bodies. For instance, watching television or using the internet places our attention into virtual bodies that displace our own. This causes a schism between mind and body in addition to the already prevalent disconnection between self and mind. Dissociation of this type is antagonistic to higher awareness. Observing physical sensations goes toward mending the schism, which in turn assists conscious integration between self and mind.

Interestingly, the practice of such lucidity literally changes brain structure over time and increases the activity of gamma brainwaves, which are 40Hz oscillations of the entire brain resonating via quantum coherence.

Additionally, Vipassana and related exercises such as Robert Bruce’s New Energy Ways or the Microcosmic Orbit Meditation of Taoist yoga all have the effect of stimulating nonphysical structures and circuits within the etheric body, which if nothing else can help remove blockages and stagnant energies. If properly executed with sufficient regularity of practice, however, these can also awaken certain extrasensory abilities.

Dealing with Negative Emotions

Becoming mindful of your thoughts, feelings, and physical sensations is also useful in transmuting internal negative emotional energy. By observing negative emotions as they arise and objectively noticing the physiological sensations they evoke, one keeps from entering into a runaway feedback loop between thoughts and emotions that would otherwise explode into over-reactivity and generate a skewed sense of perception and judgment. In other words, this practice can break your confluence with external provocations.

If the negative emotion is triggered by some button-pushing event, lucid awareness of the emotion itself (rather than where it points, or the person/event that triggered it) is a way of defusing the negative energy without suppressing it. On the other hand, if negativity is more a constant pressure without any specific trigger, then self-awareness helps you stand upright against the pull of this emotional gravity.

In the midst of such storms, through lucidity you will find that you are the eye of that hurricane, an impersonal observer who stands above and beyond. That is the pivot point that disarms and
transmutes the energy.

So, lucidity is the key to keeping one’s composure. Only when you have gotten the upper hand over an escalating emotion are you in a position to make an informed choice as to whether to go with it or reign it in; without awareness, that choice is never made and one simply reacts like an animal.

Suppressing emotions by allowing them to fester as you turn to look the other way will cause them to flare up in unexpected ways at unexpected times. This is not healthy; emotions must be dealt with, not ignored. By becoming aware of the raw emotional energy, you can instead harness it — when appropriate. This includes anger in cases where the imminent action fueled by that anger is both wise and necessary, meaning if one is too weak to take care of needed business otherwise.

If a negative emotion and its associated action is not appropriate, then awareness of that energy and remembrance of yourself as the transcendent observer will defuse the energy and transmute it into a higher grade of spiritual fuel for your soul.

Thus whether you harness the energy toward needed action or toward transmutation into a higher form of positive energy, either way you are dealing with it instead of suppressing it.

Stage 2: Positive Confluence

In summary, observing yourself expands the bandwidth of your awareness, breaks negative forms of confluence, and has enhancing effects on your brain and soul. Returning to your center allows you to choose in the moment what to think, feel, or do next. Without self-awareness there is no choice, just a mechanical reaction to a given stimulus. By default we behave like machines, but at any moment we can regain lucidity and disengage the autopilot.

It would therefore seem that self-remembering, mindfulness, or lucidity is all we need to develop spiritually, but unfortunately that is not sufficient. Some esoteric schools of thought stop there and become preoccupied with deprogramming and self-remembering in an effort to pick the weeds of the mind and soul. However, without planting the seeds, adding water and sunshine, what remains is an immaculate but ultimately barren field of dirt.

Notice that by itself, lucidity is merely a state of mindfulness that squelches mechanical reactivity and lets you think on what to do next, but it doesn’t necessarily offer a transcendental or transjective influence to direct you toward the ideal outcome. The sword is liberated from the stone but no map or compass is provided for the quest.

And thus there is need for a second stage in conscious development that goes beyond mere self-remembering. While the first stage aims to interrupt negative confluence, the second stage involves initiating positive confluence with the higher aspects of your being. Speaking from your heart, following your intuition, tapping into your subconscious, virtually “channeling” your Higher Self — these are all examples of positive confluence.

Here, you willingly seek out these higher impulses and let them flow as your self-awareness takes a back seat. Reflect upon times when words flowed from you that must have come from something higher. What you said was wiser and more helpful than anything you could have come up with solely on your own. And while they were flowing, you were unaware of yourself as though in a trance (not unconscious, just not self-aware). This is a state of being in the flow, in the so-called
This type of confluence is productive and happens from time to time even without being trained in self-observation. However, self-observation helps you make these connections more consistently and intentionally by reducing interruptions by periods of negative confluence, mainly through your noticing them and nipping them in the bud.

The main function of the second stage is to strengthen your connection with the higher centers, the higher chakras, the uplinks to your Higher Self or Higher Mind. By grooving a conduit to these higher aspects through regular use, their influences become more permanent. This is important because at this second stage, becoming lucid while being in the flow will momentarily interrupt the flow. For instance, speaking from your heart but then suddenly becoming aware of yourself temporarily breaks the connection.

Lucidity hampers all types of confluence, even the positive ones. That is, unless the flow is sufficiently strong such that lucidity does not interrupt it. To illustrate, consider how when we first drift off to sleep at night, if we catch ourselves falling asleep we immediately wake up again. In this case, the initial sleep state is not strong enough to withstand the conscious mind suddenly withdrawing from confluence. However, once one has entered deeper sleep and begun dreaming, it is possible to become lucid and continue dreaming. Those who are unskilled in lucid dreaming have difficulty either maintaining their lucidity, whereupon they continue dreaming unaware, or maintaining their dream state, whereupon they break out of sleep upon realizing they are dreaming. But with practice the state of lucid dreaming can be prolonged.

Stage 3: Positive Lucidity

What does this say about positive confluence? It says that positive confluence is merely a means toward making the connection with one’s higher aspects sufficiently permanent (through repeated exposure and practice, which in turn changes the structure of the brain and soul to create a more hardwired connection) so that one can eventually have self-awareness and not break the connection.

This is the third stage: being simultaneously connected and lucid.

There are two categories of meditation, one lowers consciousness and the other raises it. Both seek to unify the conscious mind with the subconscious and thereby achieve integration of the whole being. But while the first category is regressive, the second is progressive.

Regressive meditation seeks to dissolve the ego into the subconscious so that, in theory, one becomes an unconscious extension of higher sources. If one thereby enters into positive confluence, then that is good.

But with the subconscious merely being a doorway to anything and everything outside the lower self, without deliberately setting a genuine positive destination that doorway could just as easily lead toward becoming a puppet of subconscious complexes, power tripping gurus, or negative entities.

This means that regressive practices carry the risk of losing ego in favor of potentially malevolent influences. Mindless chanting of a mantra, focusing on an external guru, practicing channeling with no filters in place, and slipping into altered states of consciousness for the sake of novelty are
examples of things that carry this risk. If you are not engaged in positive confluence with your spiritual core by being and feeling it, then there’s no telling what you’re entering into confluence with.

Some forms of meditation marketed to the West should be called mindlessness meditations because that is precisely what they accomplish: a lowering of awareness into a murky state of unconsciousness that only ends up creating habitual mindless trance states and susceptibility to manipulation by delusional or malevolent forces; it works for stress relief the same way psychiatric drugs take the edge off, but it is inappropriate for spiritual development since at best it merely inebriates and tranquilizes and at worst leads to becoming a mindless puppet.

Technically speaking, positive confluence is regressive because it puts us back into the naive childlike state of divine innocence as before the Fall. Self-awareness is lowered into mere awareness as one becomes an expression of a higher will. But as long as this remains a means rather than ends, that is okay. This state has its uses and is better than being in negative confluence, which is the sleepwalking state society seems to be in or the mindless puppet state that certain meditators and channelers enter into.

Despite being regressive, positive confluence is also better than being in a sterile state of lucidity not connected to anything positive, as happens with those who practice self-remembering for years without ever training their capacity for love, empathy, intuition, and other faculties of spirit. They become very lucid but also very cold and hardened, signifying the onset of ossification or Ahrimanization of the soul.

So as a means, positive confluence (Stage 2) is more useful as a stepping stone toward emerging into active divine consciousness (Stage 3). The goal is operating with self-awareness intact so that rather than being an unconscious extension of a higher source, one evolves into that higher source.

In this third stage, one practices self-awareness without interrupting the flow of impressions flowing from the higher centers. This amounts to a passive observation and gentle allowance of the influence your Higher Self exerts over your thoughts, feelings, words, and actions.

Why is lucidity important again after it was set aside in the second stage? Because staying lucid while letting positive influences work from within is simply an act of supervising the process so that you can step in as necessary to correct deviations or initiate a new line of inquiry and action.

The problem with Stage 2 is that positive confluence easily passes into negative because one is not always self-aware enough to catch the switchover. Think of a dreamer who is heartful and wise in one dream, then quickly sinks into stress and anger when the dream changes to something negative. There is no consistency. That is why I said positive confluence is fragile, just as Adam and Eve were in a fragile state that was good while it lasted, but ignorance is bliss and that ignorance allowed them to be easily swayed by interceding negative forces.

It is difficult enough to gain lucidity without interrupting the flow, which is why lucidity must at first be passive in the beginning of the third stage, meaning “watch yourself but do not interfere with the expression of your heart.” This, as distinguished from the “express your heart and higher wisdom by forgetting yourself” aspect of the second stage. The latter is a means toward achieving the first, however, so anyone stuck in Stage 1 to the point of having become more lucid but
simultaneously colder inside, should practice entering into positive confluence. That means loosening up and absorbing yourself into positive, productive, creative, empathic, revelatory, and generally spiritual activities.

Once the lower self is free of negative confluence and the Higher Self has a clear and permanent communication link (achieved through brain and soul structure enhancements brought about through the aforementioned exercises) and both higher and lower are present at the same time, a mutual flow of communication is possible. The lower self becomes an adept assimilating the wisdom and essence of the Higher Self, thereby rising to its level. In this way, the lower finally merges with the higher and achieves total integration of being.

This is different from the higher sinking into the lower during positive confluence; it is different from annihilation of ego and the return to a primitive pure state. Rather, it is a forward progression, an entelechy of human consciousness.

Nonlinear Evolution

In practice, these stages of conscious awakening are not discretely sequential like grades in school. Rather, we occupy one of the stages as a primary center of gravity yet can spontaneously spike into the higher levels or drop into the lower.

The higher stages are trickier to access and maintain, but that does not mean we are barred from accessing them, just that without practice we access them less frequently. The glimpses we catch of the higher stages should motivate us to acquire them permanently as our new center of gravity. This is much like regular dreamers being motivated by spontaneous lucid dreams to practice and have them more frequently until it becomes the normal mode of dreaming. Higher awareness happens in flashes, like a fluorescent bulb flickering before fully igniting.

Shortcomings of Existing Systems

As for esoteric systems like Fourth Way claiming that the higher remains incomprehensible until the lower stages are mastered, remember that there is a difference between systems of conscious evolution and systems of conscious awakening. We are not here to grow our souls from scratch, as there is no time left for that, but rather to awaken ourselves into full spiritual remembrance. We don’t start off life as a blank slate, for the incarnating spirit is already quite seasoned from prior incarnations. The higher centers of the soul may simply be latent or atrophied due to biological and social programming factors we receive from birth that cause neglect and forgetting; if so, then accessing them is not as impossible and incomprehensible as Fourth Way makes it out to be. I think Fourth Way was speaking more for the general mass of dimly conscious people in this world (including spiritless humans) instead of those who are in the upper percentile, but in force fitting the latter into the first it does great harm.

So we have society in general advocating a kind of Stage 0 consisting of negative confluence (to the exclusion of anything higher), Fourth Way and similar paradigms advocating Stage 1 (to the exclusion of anything higher), and Christianity and Buddhism each emphasizing dissolution of the lower self per Stage 2 (to the exclusion of anything higher). While these are each progressively better than the previous, they all stop short of the aforementioned entelechy of human consciousness, which is the fulfillment of our potential without restrictions and exceptions.
Few systems concern themselves with Stage 3. For that, one would have to look toward the Hermetic, Gnostic, Rosicrucian, Toltec, Fifth Way, and Anthroposophical streams.

**Conclusion**

Interestingly, the stages of conscious awakening reflect the macrocosmic process of conscious evolution. What follows is a diagram comparing the two:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1D</th>
<th>2D</th>
<th>3D</th>
<th>4D</th>
<th>5D</th>
<th>6D</th>
<th>7D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The process can be painted via the following story. A prince leaves his father’s kingdom and suffers a loss of memory then leads the life of a peasant until he grows weary of poverty. In his yearning for a better life, he suddenly remembers he is a prince and returns to see his father. From afar he watches his father carry out the duties of a king, then when certain of his own identity, the prince gathers enough courage to speak with his father. In the years following this reunion, the king teaches his son all his wisdom until one day the prince himself becomes king.

The goal is to retrieve what was locked away within us, to re-establish contact with our higher centers, and ultimately remember who we are. And it all begins with self-observation and listening to your heart.
Further Reading

**Hypsoconsciousness** – John Baines. A guidebook on “various exercises to aid the individual in elevating his level of consciousness through concentration, relaxation, centeredness, will power and the development of a superior I.”

**The Stellar Man** – John Baines. Synthesis of modern psychology and Hermeticism. Thorough explanation of the Hermetic Principles. Also includes a legend of how Moses screwed things up by making a pact with a demonic entity named “Y”.

**Gnosis Book I, Book II, and Book III** – Boris Mouravieff. Supposedly based on the original teachings of which Fourth Way is just a collection of fragments, Mouravieff considered his approach the Fifth Way. Main source is inner Eastern Orthodox, but probably traces back to Sufi and related groups. Something valuable on every page. Not a fan of his political views, but the esoteric stuff is spot on. Includes discussion on spiritless humans, called pre-Adamics.

Changelog

2.0 – Jan 7, 2015. Merged with “You are Dreaming,” expanded on certain points, corrected other concepts.

(index)

STO, STS, and Densities

14 March 15 (metaphys)

In this Article

- Why is the idea of “density” necessary?
- Don’t we all have the same god spark, making categorization unnecessary?
- Where did this paradigm originate?
- What is a density?
- What are STO and STS?
- How is this not dualistic thinking?
- What exactly is meant by “self”, considering there is more to our being than just our everyday mundane self?
- What about Service-to-All?
- How do densities relate to the STS and STO concept?
- How do densities relate to the physical dimensions (length, width, height, time)?
- If densities signify degree of conscious evolution, then what does it mean to “be in Fourth Density” or “be in Fifth Density”?
- What is Fourth Density like, precisely?
- What about the reported shift in consciousness that occurs when you enter a 4th or 5th Density environment, is that the same as becoming a 4th or 5th Density being?
- If STO serves others, does that include allowing themselves to be abused by STS who selfishly demand to be served?
- Does that mean STO never helps STS?
Do higher STO ever work with higher STS?

How do the physical, etheric, and astral planes as defined in occultism relate to the densities?

What do occult researchers mean by the astral having lower, middle, and higher regions?

Where do angels and the Higher Self fit into all this?

Why do the Ra and Cassiopaean sources differ on the upper densities?

How does this density paradigm explain the Demiurge?

Why do the Demiurge, Higher Self, and Angels seem to have quantum-synchronistic control over our physical environment?

Why doesn’t the Higher Self just tell us everything we need to know, or take us over, so that we skip right to 6th Density?

Where is the so-called Kingdom of Heaven among the densities?

This article explains the system of “densities”, “Service-to-Self”, and “Service-to-Others” as discussed in the Ra Material and Cassiopaean Transcripts and shows how they relate to the occult concepts of the etheric and astral planes. Instead of summarizing what’s already been said, my aim here is more to provide new insights and resolve some common misunderstandings.

Why is the idea of “density” necessary?

Consider the following phenomena:

- Elementary particles, such as electrons or protons, which display no sentience beyond fluctuating unpredictably at the quantum level.
- Minerals, which exhibit a highly ordered structure, grow, reproduce, and can exhibit a subtle energy field.
- Plants, which are alive, demonstrate a growth pattern toward light, and exhibit basic reflexive reactions to stimuli.
- Bacteria, which are alive and show autonomous motion and rudimentary intelligence, more so than plants, minerals, or elementary particles.
- Animals, which in the case of dogs, cats, elephants, dolphins, etc. show sentience, emotional sensitivity, memory, and a will to live.
- Humans, who possess the capacity for self-reflection, self-awareness, self-determination.
- Aliens, who demonstrate psychic powers and don’t seem to exist completely in our physical realm.
- Cryptoids such as bigfoot, mothman, men-in-black, etc. who like aliens are not fully anchored in our realm.
- Ghosts, who seem no more or less intelligent than humans and are simply lacking the physical body.
- Astral beings ranging from basic parasites and critters to humanoid characters of hostile or benevolent natures.
• Demons, who range from imp-like minions to chthonic overlords and are the personifications of evil, antilife, antispirit, darkness, and entropy.

• Angels, who are completely nonphysical and demonstrate perfect congruence with divine ethics and can surgically edit our reality if divine intervention requires it.

• Higher Self, which is stationed at the end of our personal spiritual evolution and reaches back/down through time to help its past/lower projections still immersed in the human experience.

• Demiurge, the pseudo-intelligent soul or quantum field of the universe that sustains physical existence as we currently know it.

• Positive and negative beings, whose existence indicates that a duality exists between those who choose to assist and those who choose to exploit others.

• Infinite Creator, who is infinitely sentient and both permeates all of Creation and exists timelessly beyond it.

Now, organize these phenomena into a coherent framework that shows the relation among all its parts, and do this via the simplest system possible that accounts for all those parts. What you end up with is something like the density / STO / STS system. It is not the only possible interpretation, but it’s useful and provides a working framework.

Don’t we all have the same godspark, making categorization unnecessary?

We may all be One in origin and essence, but we vary in the expression, form, function, polarity, and intensity of that fundamental spark. That is because we all have different life histories. And once lifeforms acquire self-awareness and freewill, they make different choices in response to their circumstances. So we are unified at the trunk, but diverse at the branches. We are a unified diversity, and classification is needed to better understand that diversity and the relation among its parts.

Where did this paradigm originate?

It was first delineated as such in the Law of One books, also known as the Ra Material published by L/L Research in 1981. These books are transcripts of trance channeling sessions held with a “sixth density social memory complex” that called itself Ra, who explained the concepts of density, Service-to-Self, Service-to-Others, and related topics. Many of these concepts resembled those of hermetic, gnostic, eastern, and other spiritual traditions, just stated in a more technical and complete manner.

Over a decade later, another group using an Ouija board made contact with another “sixth density social memory complex” calling itself the Cassiopaeans. The resulting Cassiopaean Transcripts (1994-2002) greatly expanded upon the Ra Material system and introduced the acronyms STS and STO.

Both channeling conduits were brought to an end by sustained attrition by dark occult forces aiming to corrupt, disrupt, or close the conduits (see Epilogue to the Law of One books and my Cassiopaea warning). Channeling is dangerous and most channeling out there is disinformation. Yet, despite the dangers of channeling, with high quality material the risks are offset by the reward of novel
information that simply cannot be found in other “safer” material. For example, an academic study on the UFO phenomenon might represent the hardest proof but weakest novelty, spanning hundreds of pages but barely saying anything deep due to the timid nature of such modes of inquiry. Good channeling, on the other hand, is maximum novelty but minimum proof. The proof comes from its effectiveness when applied and tested, rather than from footnotes and citations.

But due to the inevitable presence of corruption and bias in channeled material, even with the best, one must extract from these sources the logical, relevant, and corroborative information. Doing so reveals a coherent paradigm that is fundamentally gnostic. Gnosticism, Hermeticism, Manichaeism, Buddhism, Zoroastrianism, esoteric Christianity, Toltec Shamanism, etc. are variations on the same paradigm. If one does a comparative study of these, one may conclude that their otherworldly sources may be the same that inspired the Ra and Cassiopaean texts.

Below is my personal interpolation of Ra, Cassiopaean, and associated paradigms. It encompasses and goes beyond each of these, as necessitated by personal experience, the experiences of others, and the latest research. No source is sacred, no source is canon, no source is dogma. So I don’t believe in subscribing stubbornly to just one source. Truth must be extracted and assembled from various sources to build the simplest and most elegant theory explaining all that requires explaining, that continually proves itself in the face of new experiences and information.

**What is a density?**

It denotes a certain degree of sentience. Just as biology divides physical life into six kingdoms, so can we divide conscious life into at least seven densities. Why seven? Because that is the minimum number of classifications needed to account for the plurality of physical and nonphysical lifeforms we know about. There may be more, but there are no less.

We know that minerals are less sentient than plants, plants less sentient than animals, and average animals less sentient than average humans. So already we see there is a gradient from lower to higher sentience. Experience further shows there exist otherworldly lifeforms such as ghosts, aliens, demons, and angels who have capabilities we lack. Clearly the spectrum goes beyond the human sphere.

We can therefore extrapolate this spectrum upwards until the ultimate singularity of sentience is reached, which would by definition be the infinite Creator. Hence, between elementary matter and the infinite Creator resides a spectrum of life that can be divided into at least seven primary levels as follows:

- **First Density (1D)** is the lowest, corresponding to subatomic particles, atoms, molecules, chemicals, and minerals, where conscious development is rudimentary and limited to simple awareness at best. Because consciousness, freewill, and nondeterminism go hand in hand, the unpredictable behavior of quantum systems (such as atoms and subatomic particles jittering nondeterministically) is due to their possessing (or being immersed in) an infinitesimal but nonzero level of consciousness, a kind of blind primordial awareness.

- **Second Density (2D)** encompasses plant and animal life, where consciousness first experiences striving, will, passion, drive, pain, or pleasure. Examples of the
lowest 2D lifeforms include plants, bacteria and fungi, whose consciousness is rudimentary. The higher 2D lifeforms begin experiencing the first inklings of freewill and self-awareness.

- Third Density (3D) includes humans and other unpolished beings like us. 3D beings possess the seed of self-awareness and freewill. With these, they begin exploring their own individuality and its relation to others, and consequently they begin choosing whether to hone their individuality by helping others or by exploiting them. This process comes with a myriad of experiences and lessons accumulated over many lifetimes that hammers together their core of individuality and exalts it. As the choice of polarity solidifies and the limitations and illusions of life in 3D are overcome, a threshold is eventually reached where one has more consciousness and metaphysical energy than can be contained by the 3D realm of experience, and so one transcends to the next level.

- Fourth Density (4D) includes beings that have partially transcended the limitations of space-time. They straddle the boundary between physicality and the higher nonphysical realms. Both 4D beings and their environments are part physical, part ethereal. For them, physicality is plastic and responsive to thought. Telepathy and supernatural abilities come easily. They exist behind the dimensional curtain and can project into our physical reality at will. Some are positive, others more negative. The spiritual goal of 4D existence is to achieve understanding of consciousness and mastery of mind over matter, to evolve as a cohesive society, and to fully live out one’s choice of spiritual polarity with intensifying love and dedication. Fledgling 4D entities and societies tend to lack wisdom and perspective compared to the more seasoned ones.

- Fifth Density (5D) is a completely nonphysical state of existence. It functions both as a stopover zone (the “afterlife”) for departed 2D/3D/4D souls and as a native realm for 5D beings who have evolved to that density after transcending 4D. The natives of 5D seem focused on accumulating the highest wisdom and total perfection of their individuality. This is the first density that is entirely nonphysical.

- Sixth Density (6D) is also completely nonphysical or ethereal, occupied by individual entities who have attained perfection as far as personal evolution is concerned, who then join with other perfected individuals to evolve together as a soul group unit. They exist as energy beings in a realm completely outside space-time. They are outside the “Matrix” so to speak.

- Seventh Density (7D) is “unity with the Creator” and the total dissolution of individual existence, though not through annihilation of consciousness but achievement of infinite expansion of consciousness that permeates all life and all existence.

There are no sharp boundaries between the densities; they blend relatively smoothly like the seven colors of the light spectrum. Thus we have animals like bonobos or dolphins who might as well be 3D beings; human occult masters who have understanding and abilities that rival those of aliens; and aliens of such divinity and nonphysicality that they might as well be considered angelic light-beings.
What are STO and STS?

They are the two fundamental pathways that conscious evolution can take. They denote one’s spiritual polarity. In other articles, I prefer using the more generic terms positive and negative.

These dualities follow from the fact that 1) you are conscious, 2) your consciousness is individualized, which gives you a sense of “self”, 3) you interact with “others” who are also conscious and individualized, 4) you have the freewill to choose the relation between your “self” and these “others.” Consequently, you either choose to grow at their expense (be predator), let them grow at your expense (be prey), or grow in a way that benefits both/all/most (neither predator nor prey).

The STS or “Service to Self” path means serving self by exploiting others, but since big fish eat little fish, that also means being exploited by more powerful predators, hence STS existence also makes one prey. Thus both predator and prey comprise the STS polarity. In being predator, the system becomes unbalanced in one’s favor. In being prey, it becomes unbalanced in others’ favor. Either state is one of imbalance where a part of the system suffers and hence the whole system suffers from not being in its most optimal and efficient state where the greatest evolution for the greatest number of beings may occur.

But the STO pathway is beyond that predator-prey dynamic. As an STO being, you would be cognizant (and directly perceptive, rather than merely taking it on faith) of the fact that all is One, that by helping others you are helping the “you” in “them.” You would work toward the maximization of energy, growth, freewill, awareness, and power of everyone including yourself, in a balanced and harmonious way. This is not just an intellectual “going through the motions,” but a free-spirited expression of the love, empathy, wisdom, and liveliness that wells up from the true and permanent core of sentience within you, also known as spirit.

In this way, you are helping the system as a whole, bringing it toward greater efficiency and efficacy in moving conscious evolution forward toward ever-greater congruence with the infinite Creator, thereby helping the Creator achieve self-realization. The impulse to accomplish this comes from the spirit (divine intelligence) within, and so the feedback loop between internal and external/transcendent Creator is thereby closed.

STO bears some similarity to “light”, “divine”, and “good”, while STS relates to “dark”, “infernal”, “evil.” But unlike the latter terms, there is no moralistic, relativistic, subjective, “because my religion said so” dimension to it. Rather it follows logically from such concepts as freewill, self, other, and conscience/empathy or lack thereof, which are universal and self-evident concepts from which we each can identify, confirm, and draw conclusions. Thus properly defined, the terms STO and STS avoid the many pitfalls of the vaguer subjective terms.

The phrase “helping another” is also cause for confusion. The problem arises when people don’t differentiate between the lower and higher parts of another person. They are unaware which of the two they are actually helping and thereby growing or exacerbating. Are they worsening another’s STS tendencies through this help? Or are they facilitating another’s spiritual empowerment and awakening? They think help has to be blind and unconditional, in their minds incorrectly meaning without discernment or discretion. That only ends in heartbreak, loss, and burnout. Nor do they recognize when a person is thoroughly under the control of his or her lower aspect and cannot be
helped at this point in their evolution. Love must be fortified with wisdom; otherwise one ends up as prey, which is STS.

How is this not dualistic thinking?

It is dualistic, but for good reason. Freewill is the ability to choose, and choice requires at least two genuine options. The two most fundamental, profound, and enduring options are whether to observe, honor, and support the divine spark within all, or to disregard and act against it. And thus are born the STO and STS pathways. To believe in freewill is to admit the potential duality of its expression.

STO and STS comprise a legitimate duality, perhaps the only one. There are plenty of false dichotomies, all of them existing within the STS realm where illusion, deception, manipulation, and ignorance are the norm. It is right to call these out as dangerous forms of dualistic thinking. But don’t let these examples lead to the erroneous conclusion that all dualism is false. Discerning between real duality and false dichotomies is important.

There may be one genuine duality, but it has been imitated by numerous illusory ones. To throw out the genuine along with the imitation is a straw man fallacy and a win for the STS Matrix Control System. Example: rejecting religious moralism in favor of moral relativism, and in the process ignoring the higher objective ethical framework beyond both. Likewise, to accept the imitation along with the genuine is also a win for the Matrix. For example, believing that certain religious, political, or social norms are expressions of absolute good.

What exactly is meant by “self”, considering there is more to our being than just our everyday mundane self?

This is a matter of semantics, so we have to clear up the definitions. The key to solving this is that technically there are at least three selves: 1) the Higher Self (of which you are an independent and self-aware projection), 2) the middle self (you reading this now), and 3) the baser self (also known as the “shadow”, which Jung calls the “id”, Castaneda the “predator”, and generally speaking is the sum total of your biological and social programming, negative entity attachments, and negative subconscious complexes).

When talking about the Higher Self and lower self, the definition of “lower self” depends on what it’s relative toward. If it’s you compared to your Higher Self, then you are technically its lower self. But the baser self is lower than even you. So the phrase “I will not give in to my lower self” is said from the middle self regarding the baser self, while “the lower self must align with the Higher Self” is said from the middle relative to the higher.

Further, the ego in the original Jung/Freudian sense simply means “the me” which would mean your middle self, a.k.a. you. However, when we say that someone is being egotistical, or that we must conquer the ego, we’re really talking about the baser self being overactive and needing to be reigned in. So “ego” can mean either the middle or baser self, depending on context.

So when STO and STS refer to self and other, this “self” refers mainly to the middle self, the one that is incarnate, consciously thinking, acting, choosing, and growing as an individual.

This middle self has the option of choosing in favor of the Higher Self or the baser self, typically
stated as choosing between spirit or ego. Ego in that context means the baser self, the “other, within” — basically the devil on your shoulder. You can’t serve the baser self by serving others. You can only serve your middle and Higher Self by serving others, because only these get anything out of that. The baser self is strictly a predatory/parasitic/mechanical thing and the source of STS impulses.

What about Service-to-All?
This concept was invented by those who misinterpret STS and STO as meaning predator and prey. They view “Service-to-All” or STA as being the transcendent, balanced, and neutral alternative to that dichotomy. STA is based on the misconception that Service to Others means “serving only others, while ignoring self,” such as being a doormat or ascetic who is weak and neglectful of his or her own well-being. By neglecting yourself, you handicap your future ability to do good, thereby decreasing your total positive impact and increasing imbalance, which is STS.

Properly defined, STO means serving self through serving others in a balanced way that is of maximum spiritual benefit to all. It means being neither predator nor prey. It does not mean being a doormat, nor neglecting personal well-being to the point of interfering with one’s future ability to serve, which is a shortsighted form of martyrdom. So what some define as STA is already the correct definition of STO, therefore the term STA is unnecessary. What they call STO is actually the prey component of the STS predator-prey dynamic. Therefore, instead of [STA (neutral transcendent) | STO (prey) | STS (predator)] it should be [STO (neutral transcendent) | STS (prey vs. predator)].

The difficulty with treading the STO path is that it involves maximization of energy balance and freewill in a system, and supporting this balance requires an intelligent exercise of freewill to consistently hit the sweet spot for any given situation. To balance a broomstick is hard, while letting it fall is easy. Being STS is easy because no genuine spiritual intelligence is needed to be a passive lump being preyed upon, or to give into reactive behavior and let yourself fall under Matrix influences into animalistic or demonic states.

The only daily challenge STS predators have is in being cunning and watching their own backs. The irony is that every STS predator is prey to a bigger STS predator except the one at the very top of the food chain, and even that entity is perilously close to collapsing under the weight of its own darkness. Thus to be STS means to be both predator and prey.

We humans are 3D STS and we are preyed upon by more powerful 3D STS humans (criminals, international bankers, negative secret societies, psychopathic corporations, etc.) who themselves are fodder for 4D and 5D STS beings who prey upon them as well as us. Meanwhile, we eat plants and animals, who eat even lower lifeforms. That is the STS food chain.

STO beings are outside that food chain, ideally neither feeding on us nor contributing to the amount of imbalance in the system. They follow the dictum: do no harm. This they observe to the best of their ability, and that ability increases the higher the density.

How do densities relate to the STS and STO concept?
The higher the density, the more intense and pure the expression of STS and STO archetypes. That is because as consciousness grows in power, intelligence, energy, sophistication, understanding,
perception, and love of self / others, the complexity and scope of what it can do likewise increases. Thus it is able to better express the STS or STO archetype.

The choice to align as an individual with the STS or STO pathway begins in 3D due to this being the level where self-awareness, freewill, and thus self-determination first arise. Up to that point, one simply acts according to one’s nature as predetermined by physics, chemistry, biology, and occult factors.

This brings up an interesting point, though, which is that the STS and STO archetypes are reflected even in 1D and 2D, at least in rudimentary ways. For example, among the elements some are more lifegiving and noble, others more poisonous and disintegrative.

Compare oxygen and uranium, for instance. Oxygen is an important component in biologies. Uranium meanwhile is not essential to life; instead it is an unstable element whose decay is a pure expression of entropy. By destroying DNA, its radiation knocks down what evolution has built up. Wilhelm Reich, who experimented with orgone (etheric) energy, found that ionizing radiation turned healthy orgone into deadly orgone. Likewise, clairvoyants can sense differences among the auric energies of various minerals, some having a vitalizing and healing effect, and others an interfering, discombobulating, or lowering effect.

In early 2D, some plants are harmless and live in balance with nature, even providing nourishment and thus supporting life. Others are poisonous, parasitic, predatory, and generally dangerous. Fungi, bacteria, insects, and animals likewise polarize into a spectrum from the archetypally more positive to the more negative.

So you could say that every species is representative of an archetype, and that archetype is closer toward the STS or STO end of the spectrum. This is explained by an occult perspective whereby every 2D species actually has a group oversoul that exists as an individualized 3D persona in the astral plane (with which shamans interact, like when they talk about communicating with the spirit of a particular plant or animal species) and this persona is what is polarized more toward STS or STO.

Now, there is a natural order to our world whereby everything that lives must eat. Some forms of eating are more STS than others. Eating low on the food chain is less STS, but there is a limit dictated by biology. Obviously we cannot live by eating dirt, and so we must eat plants. But even fruits and plants don’t always provide sufficient nutrition, so we may require animal products as well to the extent that our personal genetics and lifestyles demand; some people do well on a vegetarian or vegan diet, some do not, and some are in denial about how poorly they are faring on an inappropriate diet. Note that killing or impairing oneself through malnutrition, on the assumption that one is sparing life, is actually an STS act when the resulting tiredness, loss of clarity, and illness keeps you from doing the novel and positive things you came here to do; in that case, there is a net loss in the growth of the system. Therefore the final tally, the big picture, the long-term consequences are what ultimately determine the value.

In eating, a life is taken (or denied, as in the case of eating a fruit or seed) to serve oneself. The natural order is that higher eats lower. That is the STS food chain as allowed within the divine framework to the extent that it supports life. Lower is sacrificed to advance the evolution of the higher, hence the system as a whole progresses toward a higher state. As long as the higher uses that
nutrition to output an equal or greater amount of novelty in the system than was taken through eating, there is negative entropy and hence a net gain overall.

The problem is when lower eats or harms higher and retards evolution, thereby slowing or inverting the natural order. Only the most archetypally STS of 1D and 2D forms exhibit this trait. There is a fascinating phenomenon in demonology where certain lifeforms tend to pop up synchronistically when there is a demonic presence around. We are all familiar with Beelzebub’s association with flies. Centipedes, poisonous snakes and spiders, cockroaches, scorpions, mold, ant swarms, and wasps are better examples.

What is it that sets these apart from other lifeforms including predators like lions, which don’t seem to have a demonic association? The answer is that these are lower lifeforms of a poisonous or predatory nature that have the ability to harm something much higher on the evolutionary ladder, and often do so without mercy or discretion. How is that any different from what demons do? Hence the archetypal resonance between the two, and why one often accompanies the other. Physical lifeforms associated with conditions of cold, damp, death, decay, disease, putrefaction, and darkness are mirrors (as above, so below) of the demonic hierarchy doing likewise at the etheric and astral levels. Demons are vibrationally lower beings who seek to poison our consciousness and feed off the decay of our spirit.

So, even though the individual STS and STO paths begin in 3D, enter their sublime expressions in 4D, and attain perfection in 5D, they still have their mirroring resonances in 1D and 2D, just that life at those densities lacks the self-determination needed to embody those paths at the individual and freely chosen level. In 6D, STO beings have moved beyond individual evolution toward evolving further in soul groups.

6D STS beings don’t exist except as a harmonic overtone of the collective consciousness of STS beings in the lower densities. In other words, STS exists in 6D only as an archetypal thoughtform, an impression stamped into the etheric and astral substrate, a malicious command injected into the program known as existence, an artificial intelligence that carries out its given directives — this I have termed the “Corrupt Demiurge” in my Gnosis articles. More on that subject below.

How do densities relate to the physical dimensions (length, width, height, time)?

Higher densities can access a higher dimension beyond ours, lower densities can only access the lower dimensions familiar to us. That’s as far as the relation seems to go.

Obviously rocks, plants, animals, and humans interact with each other with full tangibility and zero ambiguity, so at least on Earth, the first three densities are all mired in the same linear time and three dimensions of space. They all have bodies anchored to spacetime.

4D beings such as aliens, however, have demonstrated the ability to access a fourth dimension (or the fifth, if you count time as the fourth dimension). Through this higher dimension they can phase themselves in and out of our timeline, slip through solid walls, travel through time, slide between timelines, and view the probable events of our past, present, and future simultaneously as though spread out like a tableau. 5D and 6D beings can do likewise, just with greater fidelity and without the aid of technology.

So despite their differences, the first three densities occupy the same three-dimensional space. And
although fourth density is associated with the fourth dimension, that does not mean Fifth Density can access the fifth dimension, or Sixth Density the sixth dimension, or Seventh the seventh.

If densities signify degree of conscious evolution, then what does it mean to “be in Fourth Density” or “be in Fifth Density”?

This has to do with the fact that lifeforms of various densities exist in various corresponding environments owing to the limitations or powers of their consciousness.

Beings of the first three densities on Earth inhabit a completely physical environment while they are incarnate. Since 3rd Density humans live a physical life, sometimes it’s convenient to make 3rd Density synonymous with physicality or third-dimensional existence, since for humans one implies the other. Therefore to “be in 3rd Density” can mean being here in this physical realm.

Similarly, 4D beings exist in a variably quasi-physical / quasi-ethereal environment owing to their greater conscious development and/or technology that affords them access to the dimension beyond space-time. This state comes with its own principles and environmental characteristics different from ours (more of an extension or superset). Thus to “be in Fourth Density” means to exist in that quasi-physical realm. The same goes for 5D beings, whose existence takes places in a completely ethereal or metaphysical environment that may be called Fifth Density as well.

So strictly speaking, there are only three major types of environments: physical, quasi-physical, and nonphysical. But for reasons explained above, these can be termed 3rd, 4th, and 5th/6th Density as a matter of convenience due to one usually implying the other.

That said, it is important to distinguish between density as a measure of consciousness, and density as a signifier of environment. While the two correlate, they are not permanently locked together. For example, it’s possible for a 3rd Density entity to “be in 5th Density,” as happens after death when a human enters the afterlife. Here we mean a 3D consciousness entering a nonphysical environment. Since that environment is normally the native realm of entities that have achieved 5th Density consciousness, we can say that the afterlife takes place “in 5th Density”. But that doesn’t mean a deceased human is a 5D being in terms of conscious evolution. He’s just a visitor in the “visitor area” of 5th Density.

Likewise, a 4D lifeform can enter a 3D environment, which simply means he/she/it becomes physical. And a 3D human can be brought up into 4D, say via an abduction or perhaps entering an underground military base that has been technologically shifted into a “sideband” of reality via displacement along the fourth dimension.

What is Fourth Density like, precisely?

No precise answer can be given. We either don’t know because we haven’t personally experienced it, or we have experienced 4D but cannot access those memories in our current state of consciousness, or we can remember but cannot put it into words, or we can put it into words that make sense to us won’t be understood by a reader who lacks the proper experiential context.

But that doesn’t prevent us from making an approximation based on several clues:

1) What the Ra and Cassiopaeian sources have said regarding Fourth Density, as well as what aliens themselves have told or shown people.
2) What abductees and contactees have observed of the capabilities, behaviors, mistakes, technologies, tendencies, and limitations of alien and shadow military abductors.

3) The so-called “Oz Factor” surrounding abductions and contacts, such as temporal discontinuities, warping of space, change in the ambiance of the local environment, or altered states of consciousness and perception.

4) Fortean phenomena as investigated by Jacques Vallee and John Keel among others, which demonstrate that aliens are not constrained by our known laws of physics and that one’s consciousness is a key variable affecting the probability and nature of human-alien interaction.

5) What folklore, mythology, religion, and occult traditions have said regarding non-human beings, their technology, their habitats, the laws or principles by which they operate, or their capabilities and limitations.

6) What can be extrapolated from exotic physics fields concerning complex spacetime, ultra relativity (what is beyond space-time), holographic reality, quantum phase and gauge freedom, and what quantum physics experiments have yielded concerning probable futures and probable pasts interacting with each other. These scientific discoveries point the way to understanding the nature of hyperdimensional beings and technology.

7) Anecdotes of shamans, spiritual masters, and alchemists throughout history who succeeded in transcending 3D limitations.

8) That the line between 3D and 4D is blurred, meaning we can already experience faint versions of 4D principles and phenomena. An example is reality creation, i.e., using your mind to attract certain probable futures. By extrapolating these early stirrings of 4D, we can determine what must be the norm in 4D.

From the above, we can easily conclude there is more to existence than the everyday material world of our five senses. For us, time seems to move in a linear direction at a steady rate, we are limited to three dimensions of space, the speed of light is constant, gravity cannot be manipulated nor can time, and most people have never witnessed major anomalies that make them question their reality. But anomalies do happen and they represent cracks in the façade of this illusion. The implication: maybe what is the exception in our world is the rule in another.

4D is a superset of 3D, like how the complex plane in mathematics is a superset of the real number line (there is more truth to this than the analogy implies). So if we are confined to the real number line, they have access to the entire complex plane. In other words, they have access to a higher dimension.

What we have (matter, energy, space, time, bodies) they have, but unlike us they are not bound to having only that. 4D is not a diaphanous nonphysical existence; it is very real and tangible in its own way, just different from ours in that beings there also have access to etheric perception, etheric technology, and etheric manipulation; also they are not hampered by the rigid constancy of time and space. To such beings, matter and energy are amenable to manipulation by the mind. Reality is more fluid, variable, malleable, and selective there.
They have a deep understanding that matter and consciousness are the same thing at the root. The illusion separating the two is smaller there than here. In 4D, matter appears to be more deeply charged and impregnated with consciousness and etheric lifeforce energy, so everything there has more vibrancy and intensity than our anemic “desert of the real”.

4D has space but is not restricted to just the three spatial dimensions. It has time, but is not restricted to linear time. If a 4D being wishes to experience time linearly, it can. If it wishes to confine itself to a three-dimensional environment, it can. If it chooses the time and space in such a way that it matches ours, then that is the method by which it projects itself into our 3D environment.

To show up at your front door for dinner, such a being would have to use its mind or technology (usually both) to synchronize its time rate, timeline, moment in time, and position in space with the target point. Or it can opt to show up invisibly simply by staying slightly phased out (displaced along the fourth dimension) instead of fully locking phase with our reality. Hanging back like this keeps them from suffering the side-effects (energy leakage and loss) of becoming fully physical in our environment. When they project fully into 3D, they become 3D beings for their duration here; if they stay too long, their 4D awareness can slip away and they risk getting stuck.

Due to the malleability of physicality in 4D, concepts such as left and right, forward and backward, here and there, past and future — these are more or less variable, their validity depending on how tightly a 4D being (or group of them establishing a mutual environment) can focus and hold these concepts in place. Without that focus, things take on a more “Alice in Wonderland” tone. If through black ops technology or some natural anomaly a human were thrust into 4D without mental training or some technology to stabilize him, he would probably be caught in a kaleidoscopic fluid reality and lose his mind, like how the poor sailors of the alleged Philadelphia Experiment, at least the ones who escaped getting embedded in the walls or bursting into flames, went insane.

The reason these illusions of space and time define our existence here is that they are the chalk and chalkboard upon which we learn our 3D lessons. These restrictions are what allow the kinds of dramas, challenges, and triumphs we experience as humans. They are the medium or matrix of our growth. But they are not permanent fetters, anymore than a five pound dumbbell is a permanent training tool for a bodybuilder. In 4D, the restrictions of 3D space and linear time have served their purpose and are no longer the primary framework for the catalysts of evolution, but they can be invoked as needed, same way we can invoke arithmetic even if we know algebra or draw stick figures even if we can paint.

Similarly, whereas average animals and lower humans learn through physical pleasure and pain, higher humans can also learn through emotional, psychological, and spiritual pain and joy; life in 4D hinge more on the latter as learning catalysts versus physical pain, illness, and suffering that defines life in the 2D/3D jungle.

When a particular 4D incarnation has reached its length and grows tired, the being dies, goes to 5th density for recuperation and contemplation of its life, and then is born again into 4th density to begin a new life. Thus reincarnation still exists in 4D, but how it happens varies depending on whether one is early 4D or upper 4D; the latter, where mind has achieved greater mastery over matter, may not require birth into an infant body, but instead the body could be directly precipitated using the power of thought.
Instead of being reborn as a 4D infant, one could (if allowed) choose to be born into 3D as a human baby, which is what the Ra Material calls a “Wanderer”; that is, someone from a higher density who incarnates in a lower. Or the incoming soul could take over the body of someone whose soul agrees to leave (or is forcibly removed), this being known as the “Walk-In” phenomenon. In 3D, a higher density soul would be encumbered with typical 3D limitations, but something of their 4D mindset and mission remains, even if only subconsciously. Perhaps that allows them to advance their 4D cause from the inside and accomplish here what they could not from the outside (this has to do with laws of non-interference).

Much of individual development in 4D revolves around training the mind, body, and spirit to achieve greater metaphysical abilities to be applied in all areas; for instance, being able to project oneself into 3D requires a higher level of consciousness mastery, and so organized training exists in 4D to teach and develop that skill among others. Shortcomings in mental abilities can be compensated by technology, thus it is the less evolved 4D groups who rely more heavily on technology.

4D beings are telepathic, some more than others. While they can speak in words if they need to, telepathy is how they normally communicate because it is much higher in bandwidth and fidelity, like high definition video versus smoke signals. They can read our minds like open books since we have no familiarity with telepathy and thus have not put in place any psychic safeguards against being monitored. They can also write to our minds to varying degrees depending on our level of mindlessness, suggestibility, or psychic sensitivity. Additionally, they can perceive etheric energy and thus can both observe and manipulate our aura or etheric body, through which they can mentally induce paralysis, heal or sicken, induce emotions or take them away, induce pain or numb it, and enhance consciousness or knock it out.

As for the visual appearance of 4th Density beings, since they don’t have 100% control over their environment or bodies (only partial) they are still influenced by the genetics of their second and third density ancestry. So a fourth density being whose ancestry included humanoids like us, will look humanoid in 4D as well. If they evolved or were genetically engineered from reptilians or insects, then likewise they will have those characteristics. This is in contrast to 5D, where consciousness has grown so powerful that it can project/dissolve a custom body as needed.

Yet, despite the external resemblance, the specific genetic coding and structure, physiology, organ structure and placement, and the chemical makeup of the 4D body is not necessarily identical to its 3D ancestry. That is due not only to them having advanced genetically, or having modified themselves artificially, but because matter in 4D operates by an expanded superset of physics and is more enlivened or enriched by consciousness and lifeforce energy. Hence, more is possible there in terms of what types of biological processes (just as with their technological processes) can arise, and so that leads to some differences in the function and structure of the body as well.

For example, a 4D nordic alien may resemble a 3D human enough to walk among us without turning too many heads, but anyone like a doctor looking more closely would be perplexed. Their dietary requirements would not be the same as ours either. We require thousands of calories, lots of protein and carbs and fats and fiber and most of it leaves as waste, which speaks to the inefficiency of our digestive systems. Meanwhile, they could get away with much less. Some reports describe them eating jello-like foods, broths, and crystalline beads that they demolecularize and absorb.
straight into their bodies. The type of food and method probably depends on their genetics and degree of mind-over-matter mastery.

Due to their being psychic and having a highly energized etheric body, 4D beings are not divided within themselves in the sense of having a higher, middle, and lower self all cut off from each other, or having different personas wrestling over the steering wheel of the mind as humans regularly do. We are only in that condition because our etheric energy levels are so low, and our etheric circuitry so inactive or latent, that the different parts of our being are not connected by the necessary communication linkages. So the 4D mind, soul, and body is comparatively more whole, interconnected, harmonious within itself. In the STO mode, this includes an active uplink with the spirit or Higher Self. In the 4D STS mode, it is only the middle self merged with the demonic energies of the baser self that guide action; or if no middle self, then a hive mind, external demonic influence, or external proxy control by forces higher up in the STS food chain.

Likewise, because such beings are telepathic and can perceive the “vibes” of others, 4D societies are not divided within themselves like ours are. Due to our psychic blindness and inability to quickly understand another person from the inside out, we remain relatively disconnected and disorganized except through commonly enculturated beliefs and lifestyles. But if you could know your neighbor as deeply as your own mind and vice versa, you wouldn’t need years of friendship and countless hours of discussion to come to some equilibrium or harmonization of your standing and understanding with each other.

Now apply this to an entire society. 4D beings are connected telepathically to others who are compatible with them, and so a spontaneous type of psychic network emerges whereby all individuals, without losing their individuality, understand and harmonize with each other into a more organized, cohesive, and connected whole. This is what the Ra material calls a “social memory complex.”

4D STO and STS are of different vibration, different goals, different orientations. Normally they don’t interact with each other, let alone bump into each other in 4D (middle and higher 4D especially). From our perspective, they might as well be on different realities or timelines. That is because in not being locked into one instance of spacetime, they can segregate onto separate ones, similar to how walkie talkie communications can be assigned to different channels. One group of friends chooses one channel, another chooses another. We 3D beings, meanwhile, are generally locked onto one channel with everyone talking on top of everyone else and wars breaking out as a result.

Of course, in practice this isn’t so black and white and is actually more a matter of degree, since by changing our own thoughts and feelings we can do something similar just in a weaker sense, more along the lines of probability bending and thus manifesting for ourselves a future that keeps us from running into people and situations that don’t fit that vibe or mindset. Just that in 4D, this is taken to a whole other level and is the default mode of operation.

However, when 4D STO and 4D STS concern themselves with 3D affairs like the fate of our planet and whether humans should be exploited as a resource or nurtured toward spiritual maturity, or if some abductee or contactee is of vital interest to both, then these 4D groups collide and are forced to interact over such matters, be it via collaboration, diplomacy, or fighting. Thus it’s not so much
that STO and STS fight each other directly in 4D (although they can) but rather that they fight over us and through us. In fact, you could say that our history, our reality, and in some cases our own lives are largely the reflections/products of conflicting interactions between higher density forces.

As the Ra Material explained, the main goal of 4th Density social memory complexes is to exercise and thus develop their STO and STS natures by reaching out to less polarized (that means us) civilizations and catalyzing their polarization toward greater STO or STS, in accordance with the individual and collective freewill of those civilizations. What the STS forces get is more food, energy, resources, and slaves/recruits. What the STO groups receive is the learning, growth, and satisfaction that comes with looking out for their spiritually younger siblings.

What about the reported shift in consciousness that occurs when you enter a 4th or 5th Density environment, is that the same as becoming a 4th or 5th Density being?

If you were to take the soul of the average animal and give it a human body, it would now have access to the human intellect and be able to learn how to speak and function in society. With an upgrade in biology comes new tools, in this case physical/neurological ones. However, this humanimal would be a rudimentary human with no wisdom under its belt, no higher spiritual priorities, and would likely be preoccupied with personal survival and reproduction because that is all the soul has known so far. Thus it would experience an altered state of consciousness due to a different body and better brain, but at the core it would remain a 2D being.

Likewise, when a purely 3D human is brought into 4D via abduction, psychic, or technological means, he would experience an altered state of consciousness but remain 3D at the core. The change in consciousness comes mostly from an upgrade in his etheric body circuitry, due to etheric currents being shifted and heightened within him, which in turn is due to the 4D environment being denser with such energies. This etheric activation enables certain psychic functions that allow bypassing some of the limitations of the physical brain. He or she would feel lighter, more alive, be able to comprehend much deeper and wider thoughts, and be able to perceive and remember things that otherwise are inaccessible.

But until he lives there for a long time and learns the gamut of lessons unique to 4D existence, he would remain a 3D being at the core. And when he is brought back to 3D and his etheric energy subdues back down to base levels, all of that fades away and he might even forget his experiences there, for they were perceived and recorded in a portion of his being other than the physical brain into which he is now locked.

Similarly, if a 4D being incarnates into a 3D human form, or projects itself down into 3D and becomes fully physical for far too long, the 3D environment and laws of physics would begin impeding this being’s formerly high caliber abilities. Like a plant cut off from light, it may enter a kind of spiritual sleep, a kind of stupor or amnesia. In a sense, a former ‘god’ becomes a mere ‘mortal.’ At their core, they will still be 4D but they will now be subject to the entropy, inertia, and handicaps typical of 3D environments and bodies.

And when a person dies and goes to the 5D afterlife, in being freed from the restrictions of biology, linear time, and space, he would now have an expanded level of perception but still only have 3D experiences and wisdom gathered at the core of his being, with more to acquire in further 3D lifetimes.
Now, the tricky part is that not every human is necessarily a 3D soul. If a 4D soul incarnates as a human (say, as part of a humanitarian mission) then if this person were brought into 4D during an abduction, he would return to his former self during his stay there, instead of merely being augmented with foreign abilities. In fact, these abilities might feel familiar. (Higher density beings who incarnate here into 3rd Density are termed “Wanderers” in the Ra Material, “Systems Busters” in Bringers of the Dawn, and “Helper Souls” in my book Fringe Knowledge for Beginners).

Similarly, when a 5D being incarnates as a human and later dies, its entrance into 5D density is not merely a temporary sitting down at the sidelines in between incarnations, but a return home to the nonphysical realm it natively inhabited before coming here.

So there is a difference between having your consciousness altered into something unnatural to your level of evolution, versus having handicaps lifted and returning to your true self in that higher density.

If STO serves others, does that include allowing themselves to be abused by STS who selfishly demand to be served?

No, because that creates further imbalance. To help the wrong person, in the wrong way, the wrong time, or for the wrong reasons is to harm. To feed STS in a manner that clearly exacerbates or enables their STS tendencies is to increase the total imbalance of the system, making that an STS act, one that arises from lack of understanding and foresight. This creates negative consequences such as draining of energy, time, health, life, and resources and leads to inevitable regret once the damage is done and realized.

This is a difficult but necessary lesson to all who are progressing in an STO direction but are still in contact with STS environments and beings. People who are loving, compassionate, and kind but who lack strength, discernment, and wisdom will encounter human and non-human predators who initiate some very painful learning lessons. Higher feelings are not enough, one also needs higher intelligence, for the higher aspect of one’s being has both a higher heart and a higher mind. In other words, the higher emotional and higher intellectual centers must both be actualized to secure an STO state.

Keep in mind that as humans, despite our good intentions, we are still 3D STS beings. That means we exist in an STS realm and are therefore in direct contact with other STS forces. It also means we are running on finite energy, time, and resources. That is why we can encounter abusers in the first place, and why we get burned trying to help them. In turn, that is why we also need strength, discernment, and wisdom to navigate through these obstacles. These higher intellectual qualities can only be gained by immersion in the STS realm and confrontation with its forces and pitfalls. This fact was encoded in the myth of Adam and Eve eating from the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil and being expelled into the Wilderness, where that knowledge could be acquired.

Compared to our difficulty in dealing with other STS individuals and beings, things are different for higher density STO. First, they are not limited in energy, time, or resources like we are, therefore they can give more of themselves without suffering imbalance as a result. Angels don’t have to sleep eight hours a day, feed their children, or betray their integrity to make ends meet. To be STO means to be free from the constraints that define life in the Matrix. It is inner spiritual freedom that leads to outer freedom, not vice versa.
Second, beings in the higher densities are not as crammed together and tangible to each other as they are here in 3D. Here, a good hearted person and a nasty thug — each in their own realm or mode of living — are equally physical to each other, and sometimes paths cross and there is a murder. In 3D, both are physical and only the probability of physical interaction is influenced in the sense that karmic and soul resonance factors can sway whether the paths cross in the first place, or whether synchronistic factors prevent the intersection of their circumstances. But synchronicity aside, randomness and the law of the jungle also exist, and sometimes violations happens just because they can and someone chose to violate.

But in higher densities, realms are separated by “frequency,” somewhat like different stations on the radio spectrum. Two separate realms might be intangible to each other, just as one radio station is not heard on another. In higher densities, STO beings cross paths with STS beings by choice, not by force as is our case where humans share the same physical environment.

Note that there are plenty of anecdotes of divine forces “coming down” to deal with demons or pluck someone in a near death experience out from the lower astral realms, so it’s not like STO beings by virtue of their soul resonance differences cannot ever enter an STS realm. They can and do when necessary. However, as mentioned earlier, STS seemingly cannot enter the STO realm, for they cannot make it far before they lose their energy and cohesion upon encountering the higher vibratory energies. Therefore higher density STO don’t have to worry about defending themselves as much as we do.

Third, higher density beings have spiritual powers that allow them to read one’s mind and soul. Therefore they are not easy to trick. A selfish man begging “God” for petty victories and vain successes can be read like an open book, and the only beings who answer his prayers are STS forces who have a Faustian bargain to offer. In contrast, humans who lack telepathic powers — and sometimes even simple intuition — can be fooled by a charming scammer who then proceeds to bleed them dry financially.

Therefore higher density STO endure no constant risk of being abused by STS. We, on the other hand, must make up for our 3rd Density limitations with strength, discernment, and wisdom. We must understand that not everyone returns kindness with kindness or respect with respect; some people, as well as demons and negative aliens, see our kindness and respect as weaknesses to exploit. There is no sense in sacrificing oneself to these predators, as it only increases imbalance.

Does that mean STO never helps STS?

No. We are fundamentally STS, and yet STO beings do help us sometimes. Higher STO forces can help STS beings if doing so increases the total balance in the system. How is that possible? Because not all STS beings are 100% STS, meaning some still have a part of them potentially resonant with STO impulses.

It’s possible for someone to be STS yet be moving toward STO. Position versus velocity. Thus we must differentiate between the state of being STS or STO, and the direction of change toward becoming more STS or STO.

One can have STS qualities, but less so than other people, and less with each passing day. Perhaps one’s altruistic motives still have elements of selfishness, but if one’s intentions and actions result in
increasing balance in the world, in enabling greater awareness in the uninformed and freewill in the oppressed, then that carries a net gain in the cause of service to others.

When higher density STO help such people, it is done with the aim of increasing total balance, awareness, and freewill. Thus some peripheral STS tendencies can be overlooked if the STO-directed aspects of a person prevail in a given situation and its outcome. It would be these latter aspects that are assisted.

We can and should do likewise when helping others, since indiscriminate enabling of their baser impulses decreases balance, awareness, and freewill overall. A person’s baser self is essentially an externally grafted parasite holding the middle and higher self hostage. By feeding the hostage taker, one is working against that person’s true self. Thus respect for freewill requires discriminating between the lower and upper aspects of a person and not indulging their lower impulses.

Do higher STO ever work with higher STS?

Since the STS mode of existence comes with a deep seated ignorance and denial of one’s true nature and place within the divine framework, it’s doubtful that STS forces fully understand the STO way of thinking and being. They might be aware of the existence of STO groups, but perceive them as an intimidating enigma to be reckoned with. At worst, they view the STO forces as an annoyance or serious threats depending on how much their activities interfere with their own.

There seems to be a mutual understanding between them, however, that each has its jurisdiction and purpose. Conflict only arises when jurisdictions are perceived to be violated, or when circumstances only allow mutually exclusive courses of action to be taken that can only benefit one side, or when one encroaches upon the goals of the other. Otherwise, each generally acts independently.

It also depends on the density level. At the upper levels, the vibrational difference between STS and STO is so wide that it’s unlikely that the highest of angels would ever interact with the most chthonic of demonic overlords at the bottom most astral levels. This, versus lower 4D where STS and STO alien groups are not as vibrationally distant and, due to having etheric and physical bodies, may sometimes encounter each other in those environments. In 3D, we are all physical and it’s only geographic separation and good behavior that keep us apart.

If a region like North America is under STS alien and black ops jurisdiction, then unauthorized STO activities here that directly undermine their agenda is treated as a threat. Shadow military using alien technology shoot down STO crafts for that reason, all the while working directly with the STS alien factions that control them or give mutual materiel support. If an STO alien group wishes to operate here, they would either have to do it covertly or with permission, and the latter comes with strings attached. Permission would be granted if there is potential gain for presiding STS authorities. In rare circumstances, this may include working with them, or working directly under their supervision.

Naturally, the outcome of such arrangements is never a done deal. There is no guarantee of the desired outcome, only a risk of loss and possibility of gain that cannot be acquired any other way. In other words, STS and STO can interact in a seemingly cooperative fashion but really it’s a gamble most of the time.

For example, consider the case of a certain person who has come under the concern of demons and
angels. The demons, being what they are, seek to feed off the disintegration of his soul, while the angels normally protect him from such paranormal meltdown. Then let’s say part of his destiny is to become a writer and teacher on the subject of demons. He cannot do this without experiencing them directly. So the angels withdraw their protection enough to allow him to experience their influence, with the potential outcome that he will overcome the challenge and grow knowledgeable, strong, and wise concerning their nature and methods of operation. But that outcome isn’t guaranteed. He could, by his own choice to indulge in his vices when nudged by these demons, descend into alcoholism, perversion, depression, violence, or illness, suicide, and eventual death. The demons need not even know of the gamble being taken; they might only see that the target is wide open and then, being opportunists, jump at the chance. In that case, an STS force carries out its agenda not knowing that it’s unwittingly serving a positive ends provided the person(s) enduring their attacks play their part and make it through in one piece.

So it’s not usually STO and STS working together in the sense of old friends having tea and playing chess, or one playing good cop and the other bad cop while behind the scenes they are buddies, but rather STS carrying out its psychopathic agenda while STO allows, cooperates, or makes concessions on the slim chance that it could backfire on the STS forces and bring about a more positive outcome than otherwise achievable had that gamble never been taken. STO forces, in being aligned with the divine will and not being blinded by the denial, ignorance, and delusion of the STS pathway, can see outcomes that the STS cannot. Therefore they (or rather the divine intelligence they are serving) are given to using the little things like synchronicity or butterfly effect to confound and ultimately throw the best laid plans of the STS forces awry despite the latter’s seemingly superior (to us humans) logistics, technology, infrastructure, and calculations. STS function more deterministically, STO more synchronistically.

In practice, we typically find that an incredibly positive outcome came about only because some instrument of the STS forces (a matrix agent) became the catalyst that deviated the target onto a positive timeline instead of the intended negative one. At first it would seem the STS forces intentionally brought about the positive outcome, but in actuality they intended the opposite, but they simply lost the bet and it backfired.

In attempting to make someone weaker, they take on the risk of potentially making him or her stronger. This is true both individually with regard to our dealing with matrix agents or occult attacks, and collectively with humanity facing the various alien, black ops, and end time agendas. In the case of someone spinning off onto a positive future due to a matrix agent acting as the catalyst for that, if we look more closely we see that there was an equal or greater chance that things could have turned out horribly instead, but due to the person playing it safe, wise, and smart it went the opposite way.

It may be said that STS and STO together provide us with the tools, circumstances, and opportunities that increase the rate at which we polarize onto the STS or STO pathways, depending on how we choose to use them.

The Internet, for example, has obviously been a tool for education and spiritual liberation thanks to the proliferation of awareness-raising websites, ebooks, podcasts, and videos and free access to them. It has allowed people otherwise isolated and alone to connect with each other from around the world. And yet it just as well has dumbed down an entire generation with distractions, group think,
memes, and soundbytes.

More importantly, the Internet has given the surface and shadow governments an easy way to monitor and profile everyone, in order to build digital models of individuals and networks of individuals to determine whom to control to what extent, or whom to outright round up and eliminate when the opportunity presents itself.

One opportunity would be during a future solar EMP event when society is days away from total chaos and a complete communications blackout allows for surreptitious military operations such as this. They would need to neutralize subversives during time of great chaos, otherwise the latter’s ability to affect the course of history grows exponentially due to the butterfly effect amplifying their actions.

Right now with the status quo still in check, there is a lot of cultural and economic momentum acting as a buffer that makes the system resistant to change. Activists are limited in their reach at the moment since most people are too satiated and complacent to care. But during times of chaos they are suggestible and easily influenced, hence the need to wipe out opinion leaders whose influence runs contrary to the agenda of these STS factions.

But the outcome is still up in the air; such attempts may backfire and be the catalyst needed to deviate humanity onto a positive future, provided things are handled wisely.

How do the physical, etheric, and astral planes as defined in occultism relate to the densities?

The physical plane is the aforementioned space-time continuum, to which the first three densities of life on Earth are bound while incarnate. Animals, plants, and people are very much anchored into the same environment. While all densities have access to the physical plane, just the first three tend to be mired here. Higher density beings prefer staying in their less restrictive higher dimensional environments.

The etheric plane is the “computer code” beneath physical matter, energy, space, and time. Changes to the etheric create corresponding changes in the physical. As humans we only perceive the physical plane, yet it is upheld, permeated, and underpinned by the etheric plane. Physicality is like the tip of the iceberg, and there’s plenty underneath the surface of the etheric ocean.

The etheric plane encodes not only physical objects but additional energies and structures that are nonphysical and invisible to our eyes. So what to human perception looks like a simple plant, in the etheric plane it also has a subtle energy body where the plant’s life force resides, which is visible to clairvoyants as its aura. There are also etheric structures that have no corresponding physical aspects, such as ghosts or thought-forms, or etheric organs in and around the human body that aren’t just mirror duplicates of the physical ones. So there is a lot of “metadata” in the etheric plane not visible in the physical.

The astral plane is more of an inner dimension of consciousness rather than something that underlies space-time like the etheric plane does. The astral environment is completely nonlocal, nonphysical, dream-like, energy-based, and to some degree symbolic. It exists beyond space-time; some would call it time-space instead, a kind of mathematical inversion consisting of three dimensions of imaginary space and one of real time, which is opposite that of physicality as we know it. That is, linear time there can be traversed as easily as we can walk through a network of
tunnels. Alternatively, think of it as looking at the index or table of contents of a book and being able to flip to different chapters. Where in the plot is the table of contents? Nowhere, it’s outside of it, yet references it.

What one perceives in the astral is to some degree symbolic interpretations of what’s actually there. This is due to the mind interpreting energy patterns and entities there via its own lexicon of familiar imagery, similar to how dreams are symbolic representations of otherwise ineffable archetypes. So what may seem to the human mind as a library of knowledge there (here I’m referring to the fabled Akashic Records) might be perceived by an alien as a databank full of holographic information bubbles. When near death or past life experiencers report visiting a wonderful realm of landscaped parks and relaxing benches in the afterlife, there is likely no actual grass and wooden benches in the astral plane, it’s just what their mind interprets of the abstract energies and constructs there, or what it creates via its own projections.

Given the above, we can summarily state that 1D, 2D, and 3D are locked into the physical plane when awake and incarnate, that 4D beings additionally have access to the etheric plane, and that 5D beings exist natively in the astral plane.

Note also that as long as a being has an astral body, under certain conditions it can shift its focal point of awareness into the astral environment. Therefore those of 2D, 3D, and 4D can access the astral plane (5D) during sleep, astral projection, and the afterlife. That is because the astral body is rooted in the astral plane even while we are awake and alive; it interfaces with the etheric and physical bodies via the chakra and meridian system, whose components function as translators, transducers, and transceivers between the physical and metaphysical. Thus the 5th Density environment (the astral) can be visited by entities that are not necessarily 5th Density themselves.

What do occult researchers mean by the astral having lower, middle, and higher regions? Empirically speaking, the lower astral regions are dark and oppressive, some would say “low vibration,” where one finds lost souls and demons. The most powerful demons inhabit the lowest levels, being quarantined there by their own inertia and inability to withstand the energies of the higher astral realms, as if they were the black holes of the spiritual world. From that dark place, they can only project themselves with varying degrees of success into the etheric plane and exert varying degrees of influence upon the physical environment and humans, plants, and animals.

The middle astral region is where average animal group souls, deceased humans, and other 2D/3D density beings (or their astral components) reside or visit. The higher regions are where positive 4D, 5D, and 6D beings reside or visit.

Does it therefore mean the lower, middle, and higher regions of the astral correspond to the lower, middle, and higher densities? Not necessarily: negative 4D and 5D beings are higher than us in terms of conscious sophistication and power (and thus density level) and yet when astral they populate the lower astral regions.

Thus the sliding scale between highest and lowest astral regions entails not density level (at least not directly in a one-to-one correspondence) but rather “vibration” or spiritual purity, integrity,
light, vitality, and power. It has more to do with the STO-STS spectrum, than the 1D-7D spectrum.

The higher astral regions have a divine quality and are home to transcendent masters and angelic beings. The lowest regions have an infernal quality and are the home of demons. The difference between angels and demons is the polarity and degree of their spiritual qualities (their STO-ness or STS-ness). Both have extremely large and pure amplitudes of vibration, just that they differ in frequency, one being extremely high and the other extraordinarily low. Angels and demons are on the same sliding scale, just at opposite ends. This scale measures whether a being’s astral body is imbued more with affinity for divine, negentropic, creative, loving, noble impulses… or demonic, entropic, deterministic, hateful, and self-serving impulses. In other words, spiritual life or spiritual death.

Humans are in the middle zone, having comparatively weak and impure amplitudes and having frequencies hovering near the middle of the spectrum. Of course there are saints and psychopaths among us, but they aren’t as polarized as higher density beings of STO or STS orientation because 3D human limitations (our biology, lifespan, physical strength, stamina, and intelligence) place a cap on how much we can accomplish in one life and thus how deeply we can polarize. Higher density beings have more latitude, longer lifespans, and greater intelligence and therefore can polarize more intensely. Animals, meanwhile, in not having as much sentience and thus not as much freewill, are not as polarized as we are, and therefore haven an even dimmer soul vibrational amplitude.

As a being evolves through the densities, its ability to resonate with the divine or demonic increases. In other words, it expresses STO or STS more intensely and at greater extremes of frequency. Hence in the astral, a good-natured human might be a little higher up than a benign animal group soul, and a positive alien higher than the human, and angels higher than the alien. But once you factor negative beings into the equation, you see that higher density does not always mean higher in the astral because a negative alien or demon will be lower in the astral than a negative human.

Again, whereas density measures a being’s degree of conscious sophistication, evolution, and power, there is an additional spiritual or astral factor that measures the presence of light, purity, spirituality, and vitality. This factor can be positive or negative in value, and by clairvoyants is perceived as brightness or darkness of energy. Hence, among 4th Density beings you have both positive and negative types, and this refers to their spiritual polarity or astral qualities, i.e. the intensity and purity of their STO or STS tendencies. For example, the lowest beings in the astral, the chthonic demonic overlords, are incredibly dense and pure centers of STS impulses, like black holes. Meanwhile angels are likewise intense and pure centers of STO impulses, like radiant suns.

In occultism, the astral body is the seat of cognized impression, passions, willpower, emotions, and wishes. These are all energies or impulses that, like vectors, point in a certain direction. For us humans they can either point more upward and toward our higher nobler self or downwards toward the baser self. When the astral body is polluted with impulses that point in the direction of serving matter, it undergoes a bit of spiritual entropy or decay or darkening because it loses the
nondeterministic creative qualities intrinsic to spirit and instead subjects itself to the deterministic entropic tendencies of matter.

Demons are an extreme example of the latter, who despite being nonphysical are nevertheless embodiments of death, entropy, decay, destruction (characteristics of matter, as proven by the laws of thermodynamics) and sow these wherever they go. They are extensions of the “Abyss,” reaching upward like tentacles and pulling everything it can grasp down to its level. Demons pollute our etheric environment with their low vibrational energies, make plants, animals, and people ill as a result, and seek to destroy all qualities of spirit within a person.

So the higher and lower astral environments are inhabited by beings of higher and lower spiritual polarities. Thus a kind of resonance is established between who you are and where you go in the astral. This explains some of the discrepancies between what people experience when they die. Some report entering a healing environment surrounded by loving helpers, others report being taken into dark hell worlds of torment. The latter admit to being angry, selfish, negative people, so what they experienced correlated with who they were internally at time of death. To visit the higher astral regions, you have to be of a corresponding higher spiritual nature or be taken there by divine grace.

Of course, positive beings from these higher regions can elect to come down into the lower ones without too much difficulty when divine intervention is required. In contrast, the lower beings cannot enter the higher because they lack the energy, strength, and integrity to rise up without losing cohesion in their chosen astral polarity; thus such beings tend to disintegrate (they describe it as burning, as in “the light is burning me”) if they enter too vibrationally high an environment, which is the last thing they usually want.

Note that even our everyday 3D environment, with its everyday events and everyday people, is vibrationally higher than the level where these demons originate. So when they project themselves out of their astral pits into our environment (mainly our etheric environment) they undergo disintegration unless they can gather enough dark energies to condition a space (such as a bedroom, bar, basement, corner of the closet, a haunted box, tomb, etc.) to make things more comfortable for themselves, commonly referred to as nesting.

Therefore it follows that by conditioning a physical space with higher vibrational energies (via love, devotion, gratitude, happiness, health, life, freshness, brightness, etc. or simply requesting a higher spiritual intelligence to bless and protect the space) that makes this environment especially caustic to demonic entities.

Where do angels and the Higher Self fit into all this?

We know that angels are natively nonphysical; that’s why you never see them with functional suits, devices, ships, bases, or eating food. In being nonphysical, they don’t have physical limitations that require technology to overcome. For the same reason, demons in their natural form also don’t display technology, let alone clothing. The etheric plane (which is tied to the physical) however has laws that are quasi-physical in nature, thus there exists etheric technology, devices, ships, and bases. However in the astral it’s all 100% consciousness.

Therefore we can say that angels, who are energy beings (not necessarily robed humanoids with wings) are at least 5D. But angels are a bit impersonal, rigid in their ethics, group-oriented, and
extremely powerful. This would place them above your typical 5D denizen who has comparatively more individuality and thus more autonomy. Therefore angels are likely 6D beings.

If we go by theological and occult explanation of angels, they are not necessarily lifeforms who have evolved upwards from 1st to 2nd to 3rd density all the way to 6th. Rather they are directly-projected emanations from the Creator, from the top down. As Rudolf Steiner explained, they are direct personifications of cosmic metaphysical laws.

As for the Higher Self, according to the Ra and Cassiopaeans Material, 5D is the last density where individualized personal progress is possible. The end of 5D comes with perfection of the individual path. In 6D, further progress is only possible as a group, since highly integrated networked consciousness represents a new dynamic over the individual.

So since the Higher Self is a kind of impersonal perfected self, but not yet one that is integrated with other Higher Selves as part of a soul group (which is not the same as a group soul, which is the oversoul of a species of animals or plants), that would place the Higher Self at the transition zone between 5D and 6D.

Why do the Ra and Cassiopaeans sources differ on the upper densities?
The Cassiopaeans say 7th Density is the end and represents ultimate union with “One/All”, while Ra says 7th Density is still somewhat like 6th density where they reside and that 8th Density is where it all ends/restarts. So the only difference is semantics, in that what the Ra source terms 6th and 7th density are for the Cassiopaeans merely the earlier and latter parts of 6th Density.

How does this density paradigm explain the Demiurge?
Ra mentions negative forces can’t evolve past 5D. That appears to be true since individual evolution ends with the end of 5D, and STS evolution focuses on enhancement of the individual self at the expense of everyone else. Therefore it would be impossible for a negative individual to give up his individuality and remain negative.

However, the Cassiopaeans say there still exists a “thought-form reflection” of the STS archetype in 6D, whom the reptilians worship and is called by some Ormethion (from Greek hormon meaning “that which sets in motion”, horman “impel, urge on”, and horme “onset, impulse”). In short, it is identically the Corrupt Demiurge that I discussed in my Gnosis series.

The Corrupt Demiurge is a portion of the “world soul” (whose substance consists of the astral and etheric planes) that has acquired negative programming (a universal ego) and therefore works in the service of matter rather than spirit. It is not a sentient negative being like a 5th Density demon that has graduated to 6th Density, but something more omnipresent and impersonal, a kind of harmonic overtone in 6th density of the STS collectives in the lower densities and lower levels of the astral plane.

The Corrupt Demiurge bears the outer characteristics of a 6D construct, but while being of a negative spiritual polarity (low frequency vibration). But it’s more of an artificial intelligence without true sentience; it proceeds with pseudo-autonomy while lacking the spirit core that might have given it true sentience. Hence it’s more of a demon-like machine, and hence it is the central mainframe of the Matrix Control System. It is therefore a negative thought-form reflection in 6D,
especially in light of what I explained in the first Gnosis article about what a thoughtform is, namely an etheric and astral construct with a programmed intelligence.

Thus what Ra and the Cassiopaeans say is not a contradiction since Ra says individual, personal STS evolution beyond 5D isn’t possible, and the 6D thought-form reflection is not a product of an individual’s evolution to that state, but more an imprinting of the 6D Demiurge with the STS impulses of sentient STS beings in the 3rd, 4th, and 5th Densities.

Why do the Demiurge, Higher Self, and Angels seem to have quantum-synchronistic control over our physical environment?

The Demiurge is traditionally understood to be the shaper, fashioner, perpetuator of our physical universe. It does this according to whatever directives it’s given. Ideally it takes its directives from the divine and fashions physicality in a divinely harmonious manner. But the corrupted portion of the Demiurge presently does this in the interests of matter and the STS food chain, thereby establishing harsher than otherwise predatory and spiritually oppressive conditions for those under its dominion. Therefore the Demiurge and/or Corrupt Demiurge are, by definition, active at the “root level” of our physical existence, meaning they are actively shaping our five-sense reality via the etheric plane (which, as you may recall, is the “matrix code” behind physicality).

Now, the Higher Self was explained as being at the border between 5D and 6D, while angels were firmly in 6D. The Ra and Cassiopaeans claim to be 6D and say they are light beings. It’s interesting to note that one thing these all have in common is that they function as oracles. An oracle works via synchronistic communication. Synchronicity is the opposite of material deterministic causality; synchronicity occurs thanks to something outside space-time influencing the course of events here. When you shuffle tarot cards, throw I Ching coins, receive an omen or encounter an everyday synchronicity, these can only come about because probability is being tweaked at a very fine level — the quantum level — with surgical precision.

Divination employs methods of communication with intelligences who possess such finesse and control; if they didn’t, they wouldn’t be able to influence random events into meaningful patterns. So divination is one means of contacting oracular sources. Hence, oracular intelligences are the same ones that have surgical control over our physical environment (way beyond the capability of 4D beings). This suggests that there’s something about 6D that demonstrates an immense mastery over the etheric and hence physical environment.

To better understand this, observe the following relations between physical, etheric, astral and the densities:

At the very beginning of 1D, elementary particles are found. They are nothing more than physical bodies. Thus 1D is associated with the earliest stirrings of matter.

In the beginning of 2D, the plant kingdom arises, which differs from elementary particles in that plants possess a vibrant etheric body in addition to the physical body. Thus the beginning of 2D is associated with the first stirrings of the etheric.

In the latter half of 2D, the animal kingdom develops, which has acquired an astral body in addition to the etheric and physical. So upper 2D is associated with the first stirrings of the astral.
In 3D, individuality begins to manifest and via the freewill this endows, one chooses the spiritual orientation of whether to work for the good of everyone, or work only for oneself at the expense of others. 3D is therefore associated with the first stirrings of individualization and freewill, which are properties of spirit.

In 4th Density, with the choice of spiritual polarity having been made, it is now lived to its fullest. One’s individuality and freewill are thereby mastered, and so spirit is developed to its fullest.

In 5th Density, one leaves physicality completely behind and moves on into the astral environment and perfects oneself there. Here, the astral nature is mastered.

In 6th Density, beings acquire mastery over the ethereal environment, which allows them to alter our reality at will.

In 7th Density, one becomes unified with All, and that includes matter and all other aspects of existence. Hence one achieves true mastery over existence itself.

Notice the symmetry in this. Whereas matter first arises in 1D, matter is subsumed upon attaining 7D. Whereas the etheric first arises in lower 2D, it is mastered in 6D. Whereas the astral first arises in upper 2D, it is mastered in 5D. And whereas individuality and spiritual polarization first arises in 3D it is taken to its logical conclusion in 4D.

For some reason this symmetry has never been discussed in either the Ra or Cassiopaeian or derivative material, yet it’s obviously there.

The point of this is to show that since upper 1D / lower 2D and 6D are counterparts, that if the etheric body initially develops in the first, ethereal mastery is acquired in the latter. And by controlling the etheric plane, they control our space-time continuum fully. That is how the Demiurge perpetuates our universe. Hence 6D and the types of intelligences found there have bizarre control over our physical environment. 6D STO are completely outside this snow globe we call reality, looking in at us and tweaking things as required, limited only by the laws of the divine framework governing the whole thing.

Why doesn’t the Higher Self just tell us everything we need to know, or take us over, so that we skip right to 6th Density?

One of the fundamentals of this creation is freewill and self-discovery or self-learning, because in acting and experiencing, one grows. That’s the point of being separated from the Creator or Higher Self and being endowed with freewill. It’s the absolute core directive of our existence. Why are there video games instead of just books and movies? Because people want to play and discover for themselves, they want to exercise their freedom and experience a world.

So it’s more than just knowledge-lessons, but also soul-growth and deepest wisdom and self-discovery at work here. Some things we know only because we have gone through them, and these lessons and changes would not have penetrated so deeply into our souls so quickly if one were just watching from the sidelines.
If the Higher Self really is the end point of one’s personal evolution, an omega reaching into the river of time to help out its lower/past tributaries, then it’s very unlikely that within your currently human lifetime you can become 100% identical with it. You can only “channel” it or “anchor” it so to speak, but you won’t fully be it because you haven’t gone through the future paths that it’s already gone through. Intellectual learning isn’t the same as testing yourself and being changed by the experience.

Being that we are autonomous, yet potentially connected with the Higher Self if we choose, there is a golden mean between the two extremes of being 100% your Higher Self, and 100% your baser self. It’s the place where you are most conscious, devoted, effective as a human being: noble and ethical, in intuitive or conscious communion with the Higher Self, given to creativity, self-expression, discretion, chivalry, love, empathy, and so on.

Contrary to popular opinion, the baser self isn’t what makes us human; it’s what makes us animalistic or demonic. The middle self is what makes us human, in that we have the capacity to choose what we align with, listen to, and think and feel from. By choosing spirit, we express it, thereby exercising it, and consequently growing increasingly congruent with it. That pathway of congruency is an ongoing process lasting into 4D and 5D as the choice of STO is lived out to its fullest.

Where is the so-called Kingdom of Heaven among the densities?

Clearly it would have to be an STO realm. But what density? Notice there is a distinction between the mythical Garden of Eden and the Kingdom of Heaven. They are similar in that both are domains of the divine. But in the first, humans are naive and innocent beings, pure yet vulnerable. That represents the 3D STO state, which is a form of infantile bliss.

The Kingdom of Heaven is said to be accessible through the mediation of Christ, who is equated with Life and thus with the Tree of Life. Entering the Kingdom of Heaven is not a return to the old but a stepping into a new transcendent state, a graduation of sorts. In the Book of Genesis, the Elohim lament that if Adam and Eve ate also from the Tree of Life (which Christ later represented) and not just the Tree of Knowledge (which ejected them into the 3D STS realm in order to learn the nature of good and evil) then they would become like the Elohim and acquire everlasting life. This shows that the Elohim themselves are transcendent, and the Christ connection implies they are denizens of the Kingdom of Heaven.

Thus at minimum, the Kingdom of Heaven is the 4th Density STO realm. If we interpret the Kingdom to be entirely nonphysical, then that would place it in 5th Density, meaning the upper strata of the astral. It would be useful, therefore, to generalize the Kingdom of Heaven to mean the 4th, 5th, and 6th Density STO realms. It may be defined as “a transcendent STO state and environment.”

The Kingdom of Heaven would be a composite of these densities. It would thereby consist of 4th Density STO “knights” at the bottom, 5th Density nonphysical “kings” or “wizards” or “masters” in the middle, and 6th density “oracles” or “godheads” or “unseen ones” or “angels” near the top. This structure is represented in the Grail myths and imitated by various chivalric orders throughout earthly history, for example the Cathars.
Conspiracy Intro

30 July 04 (conspiracy)
Not everything is a conspiracy, but let’s face it: those who strive for power are also those most likely to abuse it. The correct use of power requires integrity and wisdom, virtues human nature doesn’t come with by default; they are acquired virtues and thus quite rare. It follows that due to this rarity, of those who gain power the majority will lack the integrity and wisdom to use it correctly. And so conspiracies arise, for conspiracies are nothing more than underhanded schemes of self-serving individuals bent on gaining and maintaining power.

This basic observation has held true for thousands of years, and being that power hungry individuals are also ruthlessly intelligent and persevering, enough time has passed for the establishment of gargantuan conspiracies designed to eventually give these madmen ultimate power over mankind. This madness is not limited to human psychopaths, but extends to nonhuman ones who have long set their eyes on dominating mankind. Toward this end, there exists an ancient global shadow government still coordinating world affairs from behind the scenes, running a script that through machiavellian principles guides mankind ever closer to acquiescing its collective liberty in exchange for security under global and cosmic tyranny.

Elected governments are false fronts coordinated by a global shadow government:

- National governments pretend independent motives while enacting a scripted version of world events.

- The global shadow government, also known as the New World Order or illuminati, consists of human elite directed by hyperdimensional and cryptoterrestrial forces who seek total domination over mankind. These human elite are assigned the task of enslaving the rest of mankind and then handing over control to their nonhuman superiors. Because such individuals are hungry for power anyway, they have no reservations about enslaving those beneath them.

- To consolidate this power, world events are scripted toward creating conditions that rationalize the increasing removal of freedom and independence from nations and individuals. Wars, civil wars, and revolutions provide this catalyst. In the future, earth cataclysms and an overt alien invasion will be used toward these ends.

There is no American government:

- Our elected government is a sham. Elections are manipulated to put key puppets into office, and polls are rigged to sway mass opinion. A few token mavericks are allowed to give people the illusion their voice is being heard. Politicians are blackmailed or bribed into serving the New World Order. Blackmail comes via past activities they may have been tempted into partaking, or else such politicians have been bribed with luxuries and promises of further power, privilege, and survival in times to come.
• The majority of those who become politicians are corrupt. It takes psychopathic ruthlessness to make it to the top of politics, and because of networking and other factors, only those selected by the shadow government ultimately make it to the top. There are countless ways of getting rid of dissenters, from assassination to discrediting to blackmail.

• Tricks used by world manipulators include Hegelian dialectics and false dichotomies. Hegelian dialectics is better known as problem-reaction-solution, whereby a problem is created to push people into accepting a rigged solution. Incidents such as the Oklahoma City bombing, Columbine massacre, and 9/11 attacks were engineered by the shadow government to justify the further removal of freedoms from the populace to “keep them safe.” Ultimately, liberty traded for security leads to slavery.

• False dichotomies are illusory choices, options that all lead to the same outcome. The dichotomies of “liberal vs. conservative” and “secular vs. religious” are false dichotomies because each side leads to the same end result of ignorance and imbalance. The political system relies on the illusion of two party choice which makes people think they’re living in a democracy. There is no democracy because mass opinion is swayed through media manipulation and rigged polls, and there is no republic because the electoral college consists of bought members who obey the shadow government. The most willing slaves are those who think they are free.

• By laws not being enforced, people demand more laws to solve perceived problems. These laws then pile up until one day all can be enforced at once and create a legal form of totalitarianism.

Media and public education brainwash citizens into acquiescing to corrupted authority:

• Public education is behavior modification designed to create worker drones instead of capable individuals. This is done through systems of reward and punishment, compartmentalization of the mind, preoccupation with meaningless work, political correctness, and distortions of facts and principles in textbooks.

• The media has no obligation to report truth, only to make money and obey orders from the government. Thus they either appeal to the lowest common denominator in mass consciousness and thereby help lower mass consciousness further, or else they report stories that propagate an agenda. News is designed to emotionally shock and hypnotize the public into giving up their self-determination and discernment.

The economy is heavily manipulated:

• Stock markets and commodities are rigged to provide funding for the shadow government. What appear as random fluctuations in the market are instead planned in advance, allowing the elite to retract their investments before a planned downturn or crash. This pumping mechanism happens on a greater economic scale as well, allowing the elite to periodically harvest wealth from ignorant citizens who buy into the illusion of a free economy.

• The shadow government uses the Federal Reserve and the IRS as further sources of funding. The Federal Reserve prints millions of dollars in cash every year but pays only for the
manufacturing cost. This fiat money is then injected into the economy where people assume it has real worth and thus do real work and create real products in exchange for these worthless reserve notes. Normally this would cause inflation, but what the Federal Reserve prints the IRS later takes out through income tax. Because what goes in as fake cash is then taken out as real wealth, citizens are shafted and the parasites of humanity grow fatter.

Why all the control?

- No self-serving individual wants to lose his power. Control is necessary for those in power to maintain and increase their power. Manipulation tactics are designed to make people predictable, and what can be predicted can be controlled. To make people predictable, they must be deprived of knowledge, intuition, physical and vital energy, initiative, creativity, spontaneity, willpower, and individuality. The means of suppression surround us, comprising the fabric of society via its institutions and culture. All impulses that cannot be suppressed are diverted toward serving an agenda, and as the saying goes, the road to hell is paved with good intentions.

- Each self-serving person serves higher self-serving forces, and each takes what they want from those they control. This turns Earth into a farm and prison (in addition to the original purpose as a school and training grounds). Lower forces want money, security, pleasures while higher dark forces want spiritual power, energy, and conquest.

Secret societies:

- Human elite are characterized by superior knowledge and power. Depending on how this knowledge and power is used, they can be of positive or negative orientation. Secret societies seek isolation from general population, either to protect themselves and work in peace, or to gain an advantage by covertly manipulating the population.

- What characterizes secret societies is that they are elite, but not all parts of them are necessarily elitist. Some just stay hidden to better carry out their jobs. Past misunderstandings caused them to be persecuted and so they have learned not to flaunt their presence.

- They either start out as elite groups intent on control, or positive groups intent on preserving, refining, and sharing knowledge, but the latter inevitably become corrupted. This causes splits within those groups whereby the positive parts go deeper into secrecy while the corrupted parts join the dark hierarchy to manipulate mankind.

- Generally, secret societies such as Rosicrucians and Freemasons fill their lower ranks by recruiting from the more successful members of the general population. Fraternity and goodwill characterize these outer levels, but often they are a control mechanism to keep positive individuals from spreading their knowledge by soliciting them into taking secrecy oaths. From these members, those with exemplary potential are recruited into the upper levels of secret societies and placed into positions of power to carry out the recruiters’ agendas.

- Secret societies often consist of dualities. The dark half seeks knowledge and power to
manipulate others, and the light half seek to protect this knowledge from misuse. There are battles between those who seek to abuse knowledge and those that are destined to protect it. These battles are often fought through the masses, who are blind to their own participation in an invisible war.

- All dark secret societies are after knowledge that would increase their power and ability to manipulate and conquer. This is achieved by extracting knowledge from the general population, buying the brains to do exotic research, scouring the Earth for hidden knowledge and technology from past civilizations (Templars and Skull and Bones are/were known for this), channeling occult demonic forces for knowledge, and working with cryptoterrestrial and alien hyperdimensional groups for their technology.

- Secret societies tend to contain concentrations of specific bloodlines, particularly those bloodlines that have a greater portion of off-world genetics, meaning those with closer genetic ties to alien factions. This is because genetics and soul tend to correspond and influence each other, and genetics also influence one’s probability trajectory (morphogenetic destiny). It is why presidents have strong concentrations of royal blood. The same can be said for positively oriented souls — they also tend to incarnate into certain bloodlines, but these bloodlines are harder to trace because divine synchronicity arranges their branching and merging instead of arranged marriages as royal families are known to engage in.

(index)

The Horrors of Public Education

24 February 01 (conspiracy)
“School sucks.”

Most students will agree, and many have voiced their disgust concerning this abomination we call public education. They spit the good students who obey like little sheep, frown at imposed conformity, and laugh at the hypocritical nature of the system.

The same will be done here, but there is a big difference between these defiant students and me, the author. I was one of those good little sheep. I graduated high school with a 4.0, perfect attendance record, two years of student council under my belt, and a host of top scholarships to get me through college. Teachers loved me, students both feared and respected me, and the principal knew me better than I knew him.

It’s enough to make you sick. I know it made me sick. So here I am, biting the hand that feeds because it’s been feeding nothing but propaganda and sour grapes.

I’m not writing this article because of envy or spite against system-indoctrinated valedictorians, nor am I trying to put blame on my school for all my academic failures. In fact, I cannot because I was that valedictorian and had few if any academic failures.

I’m writing this article because the system itself is messed up. Having been to many different public school systems over the past 15 years, I have more than adequate credibility to make this claim.
What is taught is random, useless, and meaningless

In class, too much time is wasted on useless topics. The quality of education has been sacrificed for quantity, and as a result, academic inflation and the devaluation of information has turned intellectual ambition into apathy and bright minds into gray mush.

In an effort to be multicultural and eclectic, class curricula have become shallow and disorganized in their effort to teach students a global viewpoint. Topics are taught piecemeal, and never do teachers spend time to help students integrate the pieces into a coherent picture that can be used or built upon. And even if within a class the ideas are put together, between classes the grand education still remains compartmentalized.

For example, both geometry and physics can be mastered by the average student, but the connection and communication between the two are not. When physics is taught in a junior high or high school physics class, it involves only the most elementary of geometry concepts, and vice versa. Without synthesis of the two, each remains without purpose or effectiveness.

Such synthesis between topics is neglected in the school curriculum, and consequently one’s experience in the public education system becomes a vague memory of random, meaningless, and useless facts, just as a disassembled engine is just a junk heap of random metal parts. Most school subjects themselves aren’t even real knowledge. History books are full of purposely engineered inaccuracies and distortions for the sake of corporate gain and political correctness.

It amazes me how the general public functions at a sixth grade level when we all supposedly graduated high school. Much of history, algebra, geometry, biology, physics, etc. are forgotten. If teachers spoke into empty classrooms all those years it would make the same difference.

Much of school is wasted time

The purpose of education should be to make one an independent, competent thinker, one who can make a difference in the world for the better, and one who has the best chance for survival and success in the world.

So what the hell are we doing with such profundity of pep rallies, football and basketball games, proms, crazy hair days, sex education, death education, quiz bowls, and student council meetings?

Sure, without them, school would be dull. But, school is supposed to be an incubator of young humans to prepare them for excitement in the real world. School is doing more than it’s supposed to and has instead become a surrogate provider of such excitement, turning it artificial and socially harmful. Is your vacuum cleaner also supposed to do the dishes, trim your hair, balance your checkbook, and be your Friday night date? If we stripped out the extraneous, school would only be 4 hours a day and maybe 120 days a year. Kids would get more sleep, have more free time to think and live and grow. Ah, but that would be a terrible inconvenience to parents stuck in the 8 hour work day, and the education industry getting paid by the hour and day wouldn’t make as much.

So much in school concerns extracurricular activities that time which could be spent on real world activities is instead being wasted in these trivialities. The effect is an amassing of students dependent upon the system and isolated from the real world. Social, financial, and academic dysfunction result. Once again, quantity over quality has prevailed, because there is no profit for the supplier in quality. Quality only helps those in the demand, but when consumers of education have
themselves been dumbed down to primal levels, discernment and appreciation of quality disappear. Despite these problems, almost everyone is happy.

Parents are happy. Moms get to watch their soap operas and dads get to work while their kids are being babysat. They don’t have to worry about teaching morality or ethics to their children because it’s being done for them in school. They don’t have to entertain them or spend genuine time with them because these children are too busy being entertained in school functions. Moms just have to drive their girls to soccer practice, and dads toss the football a few times. Perfectionist parents keep their child competitive not by guiding them and helping them on a daily basis, but by yelling them once a school quarter when report cards come out. Because the public resides at a sixth grade skill level, parents typically can only help their children with homework up to sixth grade, and beyond that they are at a loss. There are exceptions, such as parents who are academics or teachers, but they are too small a minority.

Teachers are happy, as they have a secure job from 8 to 5, and the more they work, the more they get paid. The more school programs there are with federal or state funding, the more money they get. The more schools have the programs, the more funding and perks they receive from federal benefactors.

Everyone is happy, that is, except for the students. But who cares? Who are they to complain? What do they know? Those with the gold make the rules, and all students have is some pocket change for cookies and milk.

As is well known, in school, you spend more time learning how to obey and what to think, instead of and how to think and think for yourself. The fact of the matter is that at least 3/4 of the time spent in school is a waste. Remember back to elementary school and how much time was spent on behavioral conditioning. You will then realize that so much of what looks like learning is actually programming. Remember all the time and energy spent learning cursive. Yet by the time students enter high school, they rarely write in proper cursive anymore, let alone good handwriting, and even less so in college. Teachers don’t care unless it’s totally illegible. What then, was the point of all those years of reward and punishment learning how to make the “t bar” just the right size, how to write the cursive “G”, to keep the upper, middle, and lower zones in the right proportions? The only thing it consistently produces is a conditioned fear of punishment or disapproval and conformity to the wishes of authority.

Students are not at fault

But that’s not the worst part. The worst part is that public schools not only have a crappy curriculum, they actually oppress their students by forcing them to participate in it. It is one thing to offer a profundity of shallow assignments, and quite another to make students do them.

Simply put, students are forcefully occupied with junk to prevent them from learning something useful.

Almost everything important I have learned, I learned on my own time outside school. During junior high, the assignments given to me were few, and I often completed them in class. This left me with enough time to go to the library to begin my study of metaphysics and the paranormal, to learn truth on my own and experiment with what I had learned to confirm the nature of absolute truth. I
may be an exception, but if they had doubled my workload with fluff then I would have been forced away from learning on my own. Well, that’s precisely what has happened with newer generation of children entering the school system. With every year, quantity of homework increases and quality of the material goes down.

As I progressed through high school, increasingly useless assignments were given to me which taught me nothing (and believe me, I searched for something useful in them) but occupied my time nonetheless. What was being taught to me was compartmentalized, full of holes and errors, shallow, and politically correct to the point of nonsense. Was it my duty to integrate the parts and learn the material well enough to be applied? Sure, but the sheer quantity of homework prevented me from finding time to do just that. Quantity over quality once again.

At the time of writing, I am in a state college, and it’s no different. The oppression continues, except now I’m getting wiser and have caught onto their tricky scheme to graduate robots instead of humans.

I wish I had more time to do research related to this site, to learn true physics and history, to continue writing music, and make a difference. But this time is eroded by the wasteful components of the school curriculum.

Students, except for a few genuine slackers, are not at fault when lagging in critical thinking skills. They are not being held back by their own laziness, but by direct oppression from a system with the power to punish them or put a bad mark on their transcripts if they don’t give up their individual pursuits of knowledge in favor of hollow schoolwork.

Overloading creates dysfunction

There are multiple consequences to this program of quantity over quality. Children are under a lot of stress nowadays in schools due to this, and as a consequence they shift into a survival mode.

This survival mode consists of taking shortcuts and getting by with the least amount of effort possible, but even this small amount of effort is too much and applied toward futile ends. Grades become an ends to a means, and the true goal of education is detached from daily work. Studying is only applied toward taking the test, but not for retention thereafter. Escapism takes hold and watching television, taking drugs, engaging in delinquent behavior, and over-socialization result. This further detracts a student from learning what’s truly needed.

Under such stress, the student body splits into two groups: those who conform and those who fail.

The ones who conform learn the rules of the game, no matter how illogical they are and play the game to the satisfaction of the faculty. They become detached from reality, from what truly matters, and are stifled in their potential as they are stripped of their inspiration, creativity, and originality. Quantity over quality matters as part of the survival mode, and there is no profit in overdoing quality when the profits of doing so are decades away in the reaping. Due to this survival mentality, thinking that far into the future is neglected. The ones who conform become robotized and are respected for how well they fit the mold. What was once innate curiosity to discover the world is turned into neurotic attempts to escape failure.

The ones who do not conform fall behind unless they are clever enough to find another source of
education that befits them. Their grades are mediocre as they are disillusioned with the system and no longer care about pleasing it. Chances of graduation and pursuing higher education is slim, and most of these either drop out or graduate and immediately acquire low paying jobs. The price of refusal to conform is rejection into substandard wage earning.

Either way, those entering public education leave either as robots or peasants, hyperbolically speaking.

The system itself

Teachers are not to blame either. They are like soldiers in the trenches fighting a war to educate the public, taking orders from their superiors who have no idea what the current conditions are on the front lines. Or maybe some do and have ulterior motives.

Teachers are overstressed, underpaid, and restricted in their ability to respond to what they perceive in the classroom. Due to political correctness, threat of legal action by parents, and contrite school boards scared of disapproval by a vocal minority with big political clout, teachers are confined to a tight curriculum they are forced to follow.

They are forced to teach some things and not allowed to teach others, such guidelines being set by a panel of nodding puppets with no clue as to what the truth is, let alone initiative to spread it should they know the truth. These puppets are those who design the school curriculum, who despite once being teachers themselves, are for the majority removed from the classroom feedback mechanism.

It’s the little things that contribute to an oppressive atmosphere in schools. Notwithstanding the social atmosphere, teachers on a strained school budget worry about saving paper, staples, or tape. When my high school received thousands of dollars of funding from the community, it used that money to expand its inventory of computers that weren’t even needed just to keep up with the politically correct trend for schools to be technologically current. That money should have been used for the little things, such as office supplies. Wasted extravagance in one place, poverty in another, a microcosm of our world.

Disruptive students are put in the same class with well-behaving ones, creating academic socialism whereby equality is maintained by dragging up the idiots at the expense of the smart ones. Separating students on the wrong criteria leads to incongruities and a breakdown of the system and its components. Putting them into grades by age, when they should be instead separated by level of knowledge and skill, results in academic entropy whereby the smart become dumb and the dumb learn how to waste other’s time.

Teachers spend more of this time teaching children how to shut up and sit still than to pay attention and think. Because they are very limited in their methods of discipline, teachers and students suffer as the idiotic and delinquent minority ruins it all for the rest.

Friction within the system from misplacement of resources induces hatred among its components, as each is suffering and blaming one another instead of blaming the system itself. In fact, the system is set up such that the components feed off one another in a long-term downward spiral.

Teachers have contempt for the students and often make an effort to take out aggression upon them, seeing them as the enemy and cause of their own stress. Students see authority as something to be
defied unless they are already broken by it. Teachers make up illogical rules to test how well students obey, such as making them walk a certain way through the library, or not enter or leave certain exits at certain times, and other minor things which irritate students and allow faculty to feel good when they exert their powers. This tension between student and teacher shatters trust between them, and any teaching and learning between them enters the domain of negative reinforcement. Instead of them loving and respecting one another, they hates each other but do what they are supposed to, to avoid consequences if they do otherwise.

When you see a student, what you’re really seeing is someone low on ambition and initiative, but starving for recognition and self-esteem. This is a symptom of a system that is anti-life, anti-individualism, and anti-spirit. Compressing a wonderful human into a precise block to fit perfectly into cubicle induces the survival mode of life. Knowledge, having been made into the source of his distress, is put at the bottom of his list of priorities, as he has to do whatever is possible to regain his self-esteem, recognition, and peace of mind. However, he must do so within the confines of the system.

Dysfunction results. Instead of individualism meaning thinking for oneself and seeking one’s own truth and sense of morality, individualism becomes wearing freaky clothing, having funny hair, and garnering attention via infantile vulgarity no matter if it is for fame or infamy. These superficial methods are all that are still legal within the system. The true human spirit, however, is suppressed.

Those who are broken follow the teacher’s illogical rules and learn to trust authority over their own potentials. In this, they become a cog in the wheel. Breaking orders is taboo to them, something they get very nervous about when it happens, and they certainly don’t do it willingly. They become neurotics and unstable perfectionists who stand high on shaky foundations.

Once their individuality is broken, they become robots very good at their tasks. Many go on to college, absorb what’s fed to them and become academicians with a groovy little niche and nice income in their fields of research or industry. But however wonderful that sounds, they are robots and nothing more. Or to make another analogy, they are cows. They don’t know that being the best cow still doesn’t make you a cowboy.

The straight track

We hear stories of entrepreneurs who strike it rich after dropping out of college and pursuing their dreams. We hear stories of those who go from rags to riches, of those who defied convention and revolutionized the world.

But what do we hear in school? We hear that these people are the exception, not the rule. That is certainly true statistically speaking, but what the system is implying is that you are the rule, not the exception, so don’t even try to deviate from the straight track.

The straight track is what students are being taught by the system, concerning the course of their lives. The straight track told to high school students goes as follows:

You need to do your assignment to get a good grade. When you get good grades, your transcript will be favored by employers and colleges. You might even get scholarships to go to a good college. If you’re good in college, you’ll get a degree and have good chances of getting a good job. And with a good job you’ll have a good wife, good kids,
and a good life.

What they’re really saying is this:

Don’t worry about changing the world, just concentrate on getting good grades because that is the only measure of what you’re worth in the eyes of those you’ll serve. Go to college and find your quiet niche in the world, where you’ll be secure in your job because you’re so specialized, there’s no one else in the world who can take your place. You’ll be working to maintain the system as you’re seen fit. Focus all your energy into this specialized area and don’t worry about making an impact on the world because as long as you stay specialized and compartmentalized, we’ll clothe you, feed you, give you a good family, and bury you in a good plot of land.

Deviating from the track is abhorred by the system. If you show initiative and take risks, you become a statistical outlier, an anomaly in their statistical models, someone who poses a threat to the system because you are a seed with the potential to overturn the mirrors and reveal the truth behind this silent war.

Defy

In this lies the point of the article. You cannot be successful, recognized, or a true human being unless you defy the system in areas that deserve to be defied. If you only do what you’re told, you’ll be no better than average.

The system has been designed by the biggest corporation of all, the state. Public schools either turn out worker drones who serve the state and its partnering greedy corporations, or else they turn out welfare recipients who are an excuse for the state to maintain its colossal parasitic size and an idiotic consumer base to buy these corporations useless toys and poisons.

So many students are under this illusion, the illusion being that they either follow the straight track and try to be the best cow in the herd to maintain financial and social security, or else defy the system and fail miserably, ending up as a bum on the street.

You are seen as a social failure if you defy the system. If you measure your success by what the system deems is successful, then you will fear deviating from the straight track because that is a sign of failure.

However, you must therefore redesign your standards of success. Would dropping out of a state college make you a failure? In the eyes of other cows, maybe, but pursuing a better education elsewhere be it independently or real world experience would more than make up for it.

How many famous people do you know who did everything they were told and nothing more, who never took risks for fear of defying the status quo? Not very many.

Conclusion

The lesson is that not only must you take risks and utilize your innate initiative, you must also get over your fear of defying the system and do so to get ahead of the herd. You are the exception, not the rule, because you have the power to be.

Now, the robots in the system are definitely needed. We still need employees, soldiers, and scientists who are specialized in what they do, but presently there is an overabundance among these.
Therefore, the emergence of individualists, generalists, and entrepreneurs is encouraged.

And the only way for them to increase in numbers is for people like you to break out of the mold and fulfill your destiny as a human, not a machine.

Disease and Chemtrails

14 July 04 (conspiracy)

Metaphysics of Disease

Whether a pathogen has any effect upon a potential victim depends largely upon his or her immune system. The immune system isn’t just biological in nature, it is also electromagnetic and metaphysical. In other words, there are electromagnetic and metaphysical factors that greatly determine just how severe a response will be to the introduction of any particular pathogen. Viruses are passive things, having no energy or mobility of their own to force their way into infecting anyone or anything. Only with the aid of a host’s own cells can it invade, replicate, and destroy. They are more akin to gentle knocks than battering rams when it comes to opening the door to ill health.

Even on a biological level, to some degree there is subconscious permission from the host for the disease to take root and blossom. Metaphysically, a body’s inhabiting soul allows a disease to reach maximum infection if doing so potentially provides for some learning lesson (“potentially” meaning there is still risk it will backfire). For example, when one strays from one’s life path by adopting a stressful and cynical outlook on life, diseases can manifest which are both symptomatic of that mental and emotional imbalance and serve to potentially teach one to adopt a more healthy state of being. Yes, there are biological processes that reflect these, such as rises in cortisol (stress hormone) levels, but these either run parallel with, or are a result of, the underlying metaphysical process.

The points in the preceding paragraph are self-evident, but even published sources mention the link between metaphysics and health. For example, the Ra Material talks about disease providing chosen learning lessons for the infected person. It is the reason why laughter and positive attitude lead to more rapid recovery and why, as mentioned, stress aggravates disease. Mindset, soul vibrational characteristics, and subconscious permission play a role in changing the probability and extent of disease.

Physics of Disease

The physical component of the immune system plays a large part as well, however. In the door analogy above, it was said that viruses are more like knocks than battering rams. Well, even gentle knocks can rip through paper doors — so a drastically physically weakened immune system will not protect against disease, regardless of metaphysical and electromagnetic factors.

Sometimes a dysfunction is caused by an overpowering physical factor. If a migraine is actually caused by microwave energy creating resonant standing waves within the skull, then the only effect a positive mindset will have is maintaining one’s morale. The actual cause, however, must be dealt with in a physical way, such as detecting and blocking the beam as described in another article. If some occult, scalar, or electromagnetic disturbance is affecting sleep, then likewise a physical
counterbalance may be used such as melatonin supplements. If a disease or vicious infection is stronger than the soul can deal with, then physical medical methods are warranted.

Those succumbing to viruses obviously tend to have disrupted immune systems, but it is the point of this commentary to emphasize that their vulnerability isn’t just physical, but involves metaphysical factors as well. In other words, having a healthy mental, spiritual, and emotional state of being is great protection against disease, especially against most viruses.

Metaphysical Immunity and Vulnerability

To illustrate the physical and metaphysical nature of disease, here is a summary discussion of those who are more vulnerable. Children are vulnerable for two reasons: first, except for inherited immunity, they have no library of antibodies gained from past exposure to viruses and are therefore physically defenseless against many viruses, and second, their body-soul interface matures with time and so the soul (Higher Self, actually) cannot control what happens to them in as refined manner as when they become older.

Another vulnerable group consists of humans without individualized souls, termed “spiritless humans” in my article of the same name. Their infection patterns are mostly random because there is neither reason to allow or disallow any particular disease, nor is there a higher metaphysical agent to control such patterns.

The Cassiopaeans (read my warning first) suggested increasing one’s awareness to close the gaps that allow viruses to enter, which makes sense because with increased awareness there are fewer mundane lessons one needs to learn. I have been intensely studying the nature of reality over the past decade, constantly increasing my awareness, and it’s beyond coincidence that I haven’t gotten the flu in as many years. The few times I’ve gotten a cold came immediately after indulging in prolonged periods of negative thinking and going against the grain. One might say that stress hormones lowered the immune system, but that is only one variable because in correlation with such mindsets also comes an increase in accidents, injuries, and misfortunes, which are clearly not dependent on the state of our physical antibodies.

Once again, healthy emotions and a knowledgeable mind seem to prevent disease. Combine this with good physical health via a decent diet and whatever supplements are needed, and great health is virtually guaranteed.

Some may ask, what is the point of health? Isn’t that being body-centric? Well, as with everything, it is a matter of balance. If one is too sick, he or she will be too preoccupied with moping and healing to do anything else. If one is too focused on health, then he or she will be too preoccupied with being a health nut to do anything else.

Lessons can be learned the easy way or the hard way. The easy way is by learning from the mistakes of others. Disease is a hard way to learn a lesson, but not the only way. So those who claim that not getting sick cuts one short of lessons are both right and wrong, they are wrong in the sense that lessons can be learned the easy way as well; for example, one can learn to see things in a more balanced positive manner rather than being hateful and cynical, thus preventing some illness that might otherwise about befall them. But they are also right in the case where disease is forcefully removed without corresponding correction on a metaphysical level. For instance, cancer
resulting from some emotional blockage stemming from a life long trend of resentment and anger can be excised during surgery, but this does nothing to address the reason the cancer formed in the first place, and the cancer will often return to fulfill its purpose. The purpose of health is to optimize one’s biological machinery so that one’s life mission can be accomplished in the smoothest and most efficient manner possible.

Scalar Technologies

This brings us to the electromagnetic component of immunity. It is through quantum mechanical processes and exotic electromagnetic fields that the soul interfaces via neurons and DNA with the physical body. These exotic fields include electrogravitic and scalar/vector potential fields. It is possible generate such signals artificially to disrupt the soul-body interface.

Such fields can also be used to heal (as in the case of Rife beam units) but the occult technocracy that runs this world prefers to use technology that manipulates and kills the “useless eaters” instead. The combination of quantum mechanics and exotic effects leads to a holographic resonance principle employed in radionic and psionic technologies. It is where the vibrational signature of one object can be transmitted to and mingled with the vibration of another. For instance, with radionics it is possible to mix the vibration of a pesticide with a sample of a bug-infested lawn in a radionic machine, and soon the lawn is cleared of insects without a single drop of pesticide physically sprayed on it.

The individualized human soul projects its own quantum-exotic field (aura) via the etheric body which tends to keep the body’s cells organized and operating coherently. This field can be sensed by certain psychics and can also be captured with Kirlian photograph. Kirlian photography actually captures the static electrical discharges of an object placed on an electrode, but the aura alters the fundamental constants of space (the permittivity of free space to be exact) which changes the dielectric constant and hence lowers the resistance of the vacuum/air along certain lines through space, which the electrical discharges tend to thereby follow.

It is possible, therefore, to broadcast signals containing the vibrational frequency of a specific disease in order to enhance the probability of its spread among a targeted population.

An alternative of complementary method is to broadcast audio or microwave subliminals designed specifically to weaken people’s immune systems. Because one’s mental and emotional states play a large part in immunity, these subliminal programming techniques would merely have to implant negative thoughts and emotions in order to pry open a gap in a person’s awareness for viruses to then successfully invade the physical body.

Additionally, through sheer mass hysteria, psychosomatic illness can result, a phenomenon which I don’t doubt has played a hand in various pandemic cases. Mass psychic energy pooled into a single concept creates an etheric thoughtform, a pseudo-intelligence which functions as a probability template that biases the likelihood of disease susceptibility in resonant sectors of the population – one more possible negative consequence of media hype.

So another point of this commentary is to suggest the presence of broadcasted electromagnetic signals specifically tailored to aid the proliferation of certain diseases. The book Bringers of the Dawn states:
Modern technology is one of the biggest weapons of frequency control. You have been sold devices for entertainment and convenience, and they are all involved with frequency control. We recommend strongly that you get rid of your television sets. They are the primary tool used to manipulate your consciousness on a day-to-day basis. This experiment is so finely tuned that you respond subliminally to disease via the television. So there is an entire generation that is killing itself by watching television-and supporting the medical society while they are doing it.

[…] Sometimes liberating information is broadcast—perhaps even a New Age show. However, you may watch such a television show about how uplifted and unlimited you can be, while subliminally you are being hit with a frequency that keeps you from original thinking. This subliminal keeps you immobilized and holds you in a “survive, arrive, be-on-time, be-silent, go-to work” society. Television also promotes inactivity and a sedentary, obese life. Look around you. Wake up, humans!

Most of the subliminals on television are done through technology that was developed in conjunction with off-planetary beings. The use of subliminals to upset human consciousness has become a worldwide program. If you think about the houses that have two, three, and four televisions in them, you must agree that this has been a very successful marketing program. Some people who know about the subliminals on television feel that they are immune to them. However, the effects of television are so permeating that no matter how clear you say you are going to be, you cannot counterbalance what the technology is presently doing to your vibrational frequency.

Certainly, television would be one of the most effective devices through which to broadcast disease signals because of their ubiquity across the planet. The old CRT televisions emit electric and magnetic fields, x-rays, positive ions, longitudinal vector potential pulses, and pulsed light waves all under the modulation-control of whatever program the TV is receiving. In comparison, the Rife beam unit used for healing consists of a glass tube filled with a noble gas charged with modulated electricity to produce a pulsed light. If a Rife tube can heal, then a television tube can probably weaken or infect.

Modern LCD screens are based on semiconductor technology instead, which employs quantum principles to manipulate electrons to produce light. These also emit exotic fields, but modulated with much greater finesse than the old CRT technology.

Evidence strongly suggests that television has a negative influence upon one’s mind. This goes beyond just simple time-wasting and cultural and political indoctrination. Thus, be wary of what you watch, especially when it comes to news programming. How many pandemic cases have been catalyzed by signals broadcasted through news which everyone is watching to keep updated on the pandemic to begin with? Perhaps this is a minor factor, but I believe it is technologically feasible.

Chemtrails
The subject of immune suppressing EM signals ties directly into the chemtrail phenomenon. In 2000 I wrote Chemtrails: Suppressing Human Evolution which hypothesized that chemtrails contained viral vectors engineered to infect and genetically alter targeted populations to prevent their DNA from activating into a higher evolved form. This may sound like science fiction to you, but read the article and decide for yourself. I still stand by this hypothesis as nothing has yet disproved it.
At the time of the article’s publication, there was no evidence of barium or aluminum salts in chemtrail fallout because no one had tested for it, and only shortly thereafter was barium titanate first found in samples. Barium titanate is an incredible dielectric, meaning it holds charge very well. It seemed to me at the time, that this substance was used to hold charge on chemtrail fibers so that they would not clump but rather repel and spread out. Today, it is a known fact that various barium and aluminum salts and particles are present in chemtrails, some of which are better radar and microwave reflectors than charge holders. This indicates additional reasons for their presence besides homogenizing chemtrail cover.

Various excuses have emerged to explain the chemtrail phenomenon away as benign or benevolent government projects. I already refuted the three main theories in 2000 that chemtrails were part of a mass inoculation program, severe population reduction project, or weather modification, but a couple new ones have emerged since then. One example is a report posted anonymously at carnicom.com. It proposed two theories, 1) that chemtrails contain metal particles that reflect sunlight away from Earth in order to combat global warming, and that they also create conductive atmospheric ducts to be used in a military 3d terrain mapping project.

The global warming theory is clearly false, because biological materials such as various pathogens and dried human blood cells have been found in chemtrail fallout, and also because chemtrails are regularly seen during the night. Where is the sunlight to reflect at night? William Thomas has adopted and popularized this theory, and I must call into question his intentions or sources.

The second theory is an actual technological application within the military known as Radio Frequency Mission Planner (RFMP) and Variable Terrain Radio Parabolic Equation (VTRPE). Read about these at the carnicom.com link above. These are used to map enemy territory and more easily monitor their communications. While this may be true, radar and microwave reflective particles such as barium and titanium salts can serve much more sinister purposes. Also, this theory does not explain the presence of biological components in chemtrail fallout, the immune-suppressing nature of chemtrails, nor the fact that thousands of cities across America have been weekly sprayed by chemtrails since at least 1998 — if this is a military project, how much testing is needed, and why only over populated areas? Clearly, this theory is being used as disinformation.

Now, it is absolute fact that disease rates spike several days after any particular chemtrail spraying in any given community. Pathogenic materials have been found in multiple chemtrail samples from multiple locations. People tend to get sick with similar symptoms simultaneously in separate towns whose only common factor is that they were sprayed in the same day. (Not everyone without fail gets sick, however, due to the metaphysical and biological factors discussed earlier in the article).

Here is a generic list of ingredients I strongly believe are present in chemtrails:

1. Immune suppressing chemicals, such as ethylene dibromide (EDB).
2. Radar and microwave reflective metallic substance, like barium or aluminum.
3. Dielectric hollow polymer fibers.
4. Viral and bacterial vectors.
5. Remnants of genetic engineering and replication procedures used to construct the pathogenic vectors.

With the preceding information in mind, here is an educated guess as to the purpose of metal
particles in chemtrails:

The purpose of the chemtrail project is indeed to suppress human evolution on a physical, mental, and spiritual level. Its primary goal is to perform aerosol “gene therapy” upon targeted populations by spraying them with viral vectors capable of shutting down the DNA activation process in those infected. But because viruses themselves are quite weak, several enhancements are needed:

1. The encasing of viral vectors in a hollow polymer fiber to protect them from destructive effects of UV radiation from the sun and to help the agent spread out via electrostatic repulsion of the charged fibers.
2. The accompaniment of chemical immune suppressants to weaken and prep the body for reception of the virus.
3. The use of microwave reflective substances to help amplify beamed mind programming and disease-signature signals upon the population in order to disarm their metaphysical immunity mechanisms.
4. The covering and inhalation of microwave reflective substances to make people more visible to Celldar technologies (using cell towers as radar antenna), whereby lung pathway patterns create a unique fingerprint for each person.
5. Secondary objectives are to mind program the masses and modify their collective behavior in conformity with some agenda.

Using HAARP in conjunction with electromagnetic “ducts” consisting of conductive channels formed in the atmosphere by metal chemtrail particles, focused beaming of mind programming microwave signals upon the population below is possible.

The resonant cavity formed between a conductive chemtrail sheet and the ionosphere can support induced oscillations in the ELF range. Televisions and microwave cell phone towers, two other control methods, are not capable of generating ELF waves as easily as chemtrails in conjunction with HAARP would.

But even more, pulsing of the charge density in these conductive chemtrail sheets creates longitudinal electrogravitic waves that, like sound waves from a speaker cone, bears down on the population below. These would have the greatest psychological and biological properties of all. See my Scalar Physics Research Center for more on the actual physics and math behind such technology.

Summary

So to recap, because viruses are often disallowed by the metaphysical protection mechanism, a combination of physical, electromagnetic, and scalar methods of disarming that defense is required to undermine this. Hence, the employment of immune reducing chemicals in chemtrails, microwave amplification effects formed by their conductive properties, and longitudinal waves emitted by these aerosol plate antennas. Additionally, the latter can also muddle the mind, implant thoughts, agitate emotions, and induce docility.

Thorough and all-encompassing as these control methods are, they still fail to achieve their aim of suppression and control in cases of individuals with healthy states of being consisting of high levels of awareness, emotional well-being, and reasonably fit physical immune systems.
Pandemic viruses like SARS, avian flu, swine flu, etc. illustrate how diseases function in a political, biological, psychological, commercial, and metaphysical contexts. Both these pathogens and chemtrails are simply part of a hostile agenda implemented by the world’s political and military elite to keep Earth’s population locked down and under control.

Fortunately for us, their methods are imperfect and with each passing day more individuals awaken and empower themselves. It was the intent of this article to help contribute toward this end.

How to Block Microwave Mind-Programming Signals

14 July 04 (conspiracy)

We have all heard jokes about tinfoil hats. Turns out there might be some practical truth to that idea. Aluminum foil really does attenuate (lessen) certain EM radiation if electrically grounded and not touching the skin. For those who are heavily bombarded by microwave beams from sources like cellphone towers, which is easy to determine if you have an RF signal detector as I do, blocking these waves with grounded metal sheets goes a long way to lessening the radiation.

A large source of dangerous EM radiation comes in the form of microwaves emitted by cell phone towers. From personal experimentation, and hearing the experiences of others, I am convinced that microwave pollution and intentional targeting can muddle thoughts, induce fatigue, reduce willpower, and maybe even subliminally implant thoughts or entrain emotional states. They may also be used for monitoring purposes.

Using a microwave signal strength meter, I have made several objective observations about these signals:

1. They tend to be beamed through the window of a room where one spends the most time, usually the window facing the front street.
2. They are specifically directed to target and track a person inside his home.
3. The tracking speed is slow, and when the target moves, the signal takes several seconds or minutes to search and find the target at his new location.
4. When the target enters an area in his home that the signal cannot reach, the signal goes on a wide search mode, thinking the target has left his home and is traveling about town.
5. When the primary window is blocked off, within days the signal finds another window or thin wall to penetrate.
6. One can feel the effects of this signal, which may induce a dull headache or pressure in the temples.

It appears cell phone towers are generating these signals by triangulating hotspots on selected tracked targets. This would require that computers perform the calculations necessary to alter the signal of each of three cell phone towers so as to triangulate a hotspot of signal at the target’s location. When the target moves, new calculations have to be made, which takes several seconds. Maybe something else generates the beams, like satellites.

These signals may consist of microwave carriers with ELF modulation, and perhaps with audio or text encoded messages. Some possibilities:
1. The microwaves resonate with DNA, can penetrate flesh and bone, pass through some walls and windows, and are already in use by cell phones.

2. These signals entrain brainwaves into a high-beta state, which causes aggression and stress, or an alpha level that induces hypnotic states and muddled thinking.

3. Besides the ELF waves that entrain brain states, the carrier may also convey audio messages. I have not verified what these messages are, but they could be something along the lines of “you are angry, you cannot think, you give up, you have no energy, etc.” These audio messages could be modulated into the microwave carrier via frequency modulation, while the ELF brain-entrainment signals could be amplitude modulated.

4. There may also be emotional signatures frequency-modulated into the carrier. These can induce anger, frustration, sadness, or essentially any human emotion into susceptible targets.

5. Standing waves within buildings can cause phase cancellation, turning the EM energy into scalar waves instead. These may have additional psychological, biological, and even paranormal effects.

Who is responsible for all this? Probably shadow factions of the military/intelligence community. If they wish to keep the population docile and keep all dissenters from acting upon their dissenting thoughts, no means are unthinkable to accomplish those ends.

What Can Be Done

There are two things you can do. First, you can learn to better cope with these signals. The more you are in control of your own mind and emotions, and the more observant you are about your own behavior, the less influence these signals have upon your thoughts, feelings, and behavior. Knowing is half the battle. Second, you can take additional steps to reduce the level of EM radiation in your home, by blocking these signals.

Standard methods of blocking microwave mind programming signals consist of Faraday cages, but proper Faraday cages made from copper mesh are difficult and expensive to build. Meanwhile, aluminum foil hats actually increase signal exposure by acting as antennas and resonant cavities unless they are grounded, so you can forget about that.

An easy and relatively cost-effective way to block microwaves goes as follows:

1) Obtain these items:
   - Several emergency foil blankets (also known as space blankets, emergency camping blankets, or mylar foil blankets). These come in small folded packs, found in the camping section of department stores. Available on Amazon.
   - Banana plug to Alligator test leads. These cables will clip onto the foil sheets and plug into the ground hole on your electrical outlet. Available on Amazon.
   - Alligator leads, to connect one sheet to another. Available on Amazon.
   - Duct tape, packing tape, or masking tape to hang up the sheets.
   - RF / MW (radio frequency / microwave) signal detector, optional but highly recommended. Two that work well are the Cornet RF Meters on eBay and 3-Axis EMF Meter (orange ball) on eBay. Detectors are important. I call them anti-paranoia meters, because these will
confirm that you’re not just being paranoid. *Their frequency range must go up to 3 Ghz minimum, 6 Ghz ideal.* Anything lower than that will not pick up on the higher frequency microwaves. Avoid the CellSensor detector and anything that’s a gauss meter, since these are only good for low frequency fields under 1000 Hz like from transformers, power lines, and household appliances, not cell tower radiation which is typically in the 900 Mhz to 4 Ghz (4,000 MHz) range.

- If you cannot obtain a signal detector, take your best guess at which windows or walls to cover. An ideal choice would be the corner or wall closest to your bed. Any protection is better than no protection. But without a device to measure what’s really there, your subjectivity may get the better of you.

3) Use the signal detector to record the relative signal strength from all windows in the room you wish to protect, preferably the office or bedroom. You can even move a metal pan held a foot away from the detector, around the detector in order to block the beam, thereby indicating what direction the beam is coming from. Depending on the type of detector, you may also notice peaks and troughs in the signal strength, as you move the detector in a linear direction; these are the nodes and anti-nodes of standing EM waves being detected.

4) Without gaps, cover the walls or windows with emergency foil blankets, using tape to hang up and connect the pieces. It does not matter which side of the blankets faces the wall as far as effectiveness goes, but put the metallic side (which can be scratched off) toward the wall or window so that it doesn’t get rubbed off by stuff in the room brushing up against it. If covering walls is too much, then just cover the window. If this is too ugly for you, then using this same method you can make a safe room out of a large closet, or put your bed or desk in the corner and cover the half of the walls adjacent to it. Leave some openings for ventilation.

5) Widen the splayed banana plug tip by inserting a knife of thin screwdriver into the gaps, and stick into the ground jack on your electrical outlet. This is the middle one that’s round, not slotted. It won’t fit in the slots anyway, which carry dangerous electricity. These instructions are written for the USA type outlets; consult references for your country’s outlets otherwise, looking for the ground connection.

6) Then connect the alligator clip end to the bottom edge of a blanket, so that it grips onto both sides of the foil. Then use double-alligator wires to connect one blanket piece to another, so that an electrical pathway is traced between the grounded plug and the last blanket. The more grounded outlets used, the better.

7) Check for incoming radiation, add another blanket where necessary. After an hour or two (or a week or two) check the remaining windows and compare their signal strength to what you recorded previously. If they are now showing intense incoming radiation, the signal has re-oriented and you must cover that wall or window as well.
You will feel the difference. As an experiment, tape up only half of a grounded blanket, so that you stand before an uncovered window. Verify the beam is strong. Then tape up the rest so the window is covered. The pressure in your head may disappear, only to reappear if you pull the blanket down again. If you live in a flat urban area, the field intensities tend to be high. Some places I have lived, the radiation was surprisingly weak and so no foil blankets were necessary.
Why does this work? Microwaves cannot easily penetrate metal, especially grounded metal such as the electrically grounded foil blankets. When an incoming microwave beam hits the foil, if the foil isn’t grounded then it will “splash around” and reflect in various ways, sort of like a water hose aiming at a dinner plate. Your meter will detect the energy leaking out around the foil blankets in that case. Radiation will still enter your home but at least not be as directional. But if the foil is grounded, then the energy is sucked out of the beam and channeled into the ground hole on the outlet and out of the building through a copper rod sunk into the soil (buildings are supposed to have these per regulation). Then the sheet acts as an absorber.

The reason why emergency blankets are recommended over Reynolds aluminum foil is that these blankets are larger, more durable, cheaper, and easier to hang up. But you can use aluminum foil if you wish, and being thicker they will be slightly better at attenuating the frequency. Though some signal still gets through, and foil does not block pure ELF waves (ones without a higher frequency carrier), this is one step to greatly reducing the level of incoming microwave radiation. To block ELF and especially scalar waves is not easy, so I have no tips regarding those.

Other Miscellaneous Tips

• For temporary relief, go to the basement, lie on the floor, or move around. These prevent strong hot spots from locking onto you. This may seem paranoid, but test it with a signal detector and you will verify this for yourself.
• If one has a choice, avoid spring mattresses. Use instead air mattresses, waterbeds, wooden cots, or futons. Platform beds made of wood are available to support a futon mattress. Springs are like antennas, and focus EM and ELF energy into your body while you sleep.
• Get proper sleep and nutrition. This means enough calories, protein, adequate minerals, plenty of clean water, and fresh fruits and vegetables. Being deficient in any of these will cause mental weakness and submissiveness to mind programming signals. Foil shielding may improve sleep, if sleep is being disrupted by such fields.
• Question baseless thoughts or emotions you may have, especially negative emotions such as aggression or depression that urge you to act without thinking. Becoming aware of their presence is often enough to deactivate them.
• Don’t let the means become an ends. Reducing mind programming signal influences should serve to increase your productivity and efficiency in what you truly desire to do, the goals you choose to follow. Don’t let fear and paranoia become obsessions that displace the importance of following your goals.

Matrix

Matrix Intro

30 July 04 (matrix)

What is the Matrix? School or prison, depending on your chosen perspective. On the one hand, it is a hyperdimensional teaching system accelerating your rate of spiritual evolution by providing you with catalytic experiences in response to your thoughts, emotions, and spiritual composition.
On the other hand, many of these experiences manifest as predatory forces preying upon your weaknesses. Of course, the only way to prevent being manipulated by these forces is to discover, integrate, and transform your weaknesses into strengths, thereby indirectly accomplishing the higher purpose of the Matrix which is to help you transcend it.

Nevertheless, these predatory forces possess freewill and have their own agenda, which is to expand their power base and sustain themselves by feeding upon humanity’s emotional energies as well as keeping anyone from becoming aware enough to add destabilizing influences to the spiritual prison/farm they are running here on Earth.

The sum total of their hyperdimensional manipulation system may be termed the “Matrix Control System.” It is a school of hard knocks that weakens the spiritually weak and strengthens the spiritually strong, in accordance with their choice to be victims or warriors.

Hyperdimensional Predators:

- Beyond the human level of evolution are several levels occupied by more sophisticated forms of life, including hostile beings with the ability to transcend space and linear time, read thoughts, manipulate emotions, puppeteer unaware individuals, and project themselves in and out of our physical reality.

- They require emotional, etheric, vital energy to sustain themselves; mankind has long been their primary food source. They feed upon energies that are in resonance with their own soul vibrations: negative emotions, psychological suffering, and perverted sexual energies.

- Being greedy as they are, rather than just harvesting naturally occurring energies emitted by those who have freely chosen to engage in lower vibrational behavior, these predators seek to induce ignorance, suffering, and perversion in as many people as possible to maximize their energy harvest. While this isn’t technically a freewill violation (because they can only amplify what latent negative tendencies we already have within us), their forceful milking of energy via the Matrix Control System does constitute an imbalance because it encourages ignorance and slavery instead of awareness and freedom.

Suppression of Awareness:

- Because hostile hyper dimensional forces have a vested interest in the Matrix Control System, they go to extraordinary lengths to suppress any destabilizing factors that could disrupt their food supply. Anyone who starts the process of waking up and regaining personal power and freedom is immediately targeted. The targeting aims to put him or her back to sleep, render him powerless, or make him or lose faith in continuing his path.

- When a personal impulse toward freedom occurs, an equal and opposite impulse is set into motion, attracting to the target various negatively synchronistic opportunities to engage in vibe-lowering experiences to offset his impulse toward freedom. These include situations that aim to induce fear, distraction, suffering, doubt, depression, indulgence in lower impulses, and self-serving behavior.

- Sometimes this phenomenon arises naturally from the law of inertia (occult and karmic laws) while other times there is intentional and active amplification of this counter-impulse
by negative hyper dimensional forces to disarm the threat before he gains more power.

- Other methods of suppression include sabotaging and distracting a targeted individual via people around him who are open to direct manipulation. Anyone who fails to be fully conscious in the present moment can be a puppet for as long as his or her attention is elsewhere. Lapses of attention are enough for a subconsciously implanted impulses to result in regrettable words or actions.

- Most people in this world place no priority on awareness or attentiveness, and instead live life in a semi-conscious dream state that makes them very prone to being nudged by external influences. Some are born with insufficient levels of individualized consciousness to ever experience a lucid moment, and it is these who form the primary class of “Matrix agents,” the rest of us functioning as agents only part of the time when we fail to watch ourselves. Due to the plethora of spiritually asleep people in the population, the Matrix Control System has no problem finding chess pieces to maneuver into place around a target.

The Bigger Picture:

- While we may not always be the source of injustices against us, we are the cause of its entrance into our lives. The Matrix, even with all its imbalances and corruption by those freewill entities who have overstepped their place in nature, is nevertheless still a learning program entirely responsive to our own ignorance and weaknesses. It may be a predator’s choice to attack, but it is our choice to accept the attack and succumb to it.

- The Matrix Control System can only trip us via the elements within us that correspond to its low vibratory nature. If we ignore our intuition, have blind spots in our awareness, or engage in ignoble feeling and behaviors, then these are the avenues through which we are had. Attacks serve to identify our own weaknesses, thus providing focus for where to take the next step on one’s path of spiritual awakening.

(index)

Why Negative Forces Seem to Respect Freewill

9 March 03 (matrix)

There are many ways negative forces can influence targeted individuals. Two common methods are through reality manipulation and matrix agents. This article discusses the important roles freewill and awareness play in such cases, which may explain why negative forces often maneuver the way they do. Matrix Agents: Profiles and Analysis and True Reality Creation provide background material for this article.

Reality Manipulation

Reality manipulations consist of acausal changes in one’s reality, performed by hostile hyperdimensional beings (4D STS) who reside outside one’s realm. The acausal changes occur when the target is moved about the temporal plane spanned by the axes of linear and phase time. Linear time measures the progress of our perceived sense of time while we reside in third density, and phase time measures movement from one timeline or dimension to another.
Reality manipulation is identically a process of either moving an individual to a new spot on the temporal plane, or of merging his timeline or dimension with another that fits the engineered requirements of a 4D STS agenda. The difference between moving to a new timeline or having one’s timeline merged with another is merely a matter of perspective. Being shifted about the temporal plane means an individual’s conscious locus is moved to a new timeline, complete with new memories of the past and possibilities for the future. We are accustomed to thinking causally and within the framework of linear time, that outside forces can influence us only in the sense of affecting our possible futures, but some are equally capable of affecting our possible pasts.

Freewill Preventatively Hinders Reality Manipulation

The individual cannot be moved to just any new location on the temporal plane if he has freewill. His freewill anchors him to all points upon the temporal plane of which he has awareness. These elements remain tied to him, and he is likewise tied to them. Any attempts by 4D STS to manipulate such elements automatically places them in direct engagement with his freewill, for such elements are anchored to his freewill via his awareness.

To avoid this engagement, reality manipulations tend to occur upon elements that are not tied to his freewill, those of which he is unconscious. This is why attacks come from the shadows, from where they are least expected.

When Prevention Fails

Sometimes engagement is unavoidable, then a secondary tactic of disinformation is used. An individual with false knowledge is at greater peril than one who has no knowledge because his freewill is then tied to pseudo elements, ones which are not firmly rooted in immovable objective reality. These elements provide artificial handles upon his reality, graspable by those who created the disinformation. But this no longer involves acausal manipulation, but rather causal distraction and diversion.

Nevertheless, it greatly behooves 4D STS to ensure that targets remains as naïve as possible so that their reality includes a greater portion of freely manipulable elements.

Clue Dropping

That targets are encouraged to remain naïve may appear contradictory to the fact that some matrix agents tend to purposely clue-drop, waving warning signs in the face of their targets before proceeding with further infiltration. The clues can be anything literal or symbolic. Literal clues include warning phrases said in seeming jest, their personal history, and behavior. Symbolic clues are ironic and may appear in their names, word choice, and synchronicities related to them. Whatever it may be, it provides a clue that the target is in danger, much like the warning colors of a poisonous plant or the hiss of a snake. If the target ignores the clues, then the agent proceeds with the next step. Each dropped clue is a subtle way of asking permission to get closer. Any ignorance of that clue is permission granted.

The question is, if 4D STS require that an individual has no awareness of certain elements of reality in order for them to be manipulated, then why do agents purposely drop clues and risk the individual gaining more awareness? Why risk revealing their agenda by giving hints? The answer is
that while reality manipulation is an acausal phenomenon that happens outside one’s realm and therefore beyond the engagement range of a target’s freewill, agents are within one’s realm and automatically in direct engagement with an individual’s freewill because of their sheer physical presence in one’s environment. Once freewill is engaged, what applied to acausal reality manipulation becomes defunct.

**Why 4D STS Subvert Rather Than Violate Freewill**

All this becomes clear with the following realization: that 4D STS sometimes cannot, and other times *choose* not, to violate the freewill of a target. There are two ways to avoid violating freewill: either don’t engage it in the first place, or do only what the target permits. Reality manipulation occurs from outside one’s realm, and so freewill is not engaged in such cases, so there is no freewill violation. Agents, because they are in one’s realm already and in engagement with a target’s freewill, have no choice but subtly ask permission if they wish to not violate freewill or are not able to do so.

They cannot violate freewill in cases where they are engaging a freewill that is more powerful than theirs. This includes cases where an individual is stronger than they are, or where he has divine protection whereby sovereign beings intervene and overpower the lesser manipulators. It also includes cases where the freewill of multiple beings is anchored to the same reality element and reinforces it beyond the manipulability threshold of 4D STS. This is why although our timeline or reality can indeed be changed, there are limits to what they can change. They cannot change the entire timeline as they please, only elements that are relatively non-anchored.

Then there are cases where they are able to violate freewill, but choose not to. The reason is complex but will be explained here.

**Realm Dynamics**

According to the Cassiopaeans (read my [warning](#) on that source first), realms are divisions of reality based on experience and assumptions. Beings in different realms have different assumptions about reality and will have different experiences; those in the same realm will have similar experiences. The more a group of beings interact with each other, the more their realms merge. Two beings in completely different realms will rarely interact with or perceive each other. Realms are basically fenced off from each other according to the FRV or frequency resonance vibration of an individual. FRV is the strength and tone of his soul vibration based on the level of his being, which in turn depends upon his level of knowledge and direction of evolution, which is tied to his assumptions and experiences. Realms also measure the engagement range of one’s freewill, and so entering a person’s realm means engaging his freewill.

Because two beings from completely different realms cannot directly interact with each other, for them to do so there must be a common element or bridge formed between their realms. One way of looking at this is to think of the common element as a frequency bridge that provides resonance between the two and allows transfer of information and energy. If both have a unique spectrum of fundamental vibration that would ordinarily share no common component frequencies, then the frequency bridge is the introduction of a common fundamental tone between the two realms. 4D STS exist in an extremely negative realm and are thus usually barred from perceiving or interacting
tangibly with an individual that is of a completely different realm. In order to manipulate him in any way, they must use a frequency bridge which normally is the individual’s own negative emotions. These negative emotions provide a frequency sub-spectrum that is in resonance with the realm of 4D STS and allows them to penetrate his realm and interact with him on some level. The more his realm is in resonance with theirs, the more they can manipulate him, and the more objective their manipulations will appear. If their realms becomes virtually identical, then he is under their complete control and is part of the STS hierarchy.

Because realms are projected divisions of one’s FRV, and the FRV is a product of one’s being, it is mainly through a change in being that the realm changes. Negative forces who require a reality bridge would prefer the target’s being change toward a more negative frequency. This would open his realm to easier penetration. So what does it take to change being? Beingness can only be changed by the individual himself, by freely choosing to make negative choices which lower his frequency and align him with the STS evolutionary current. Anything that happens to him which violates his freewill does not change his being for the following reason:

Freewill is about choice, and one learns by facing the consequences of one’s choices. If a situation arises that does not violate freewill but rather offers choice, then if the individual later regrets making a choice, it is entirely his own fault for having done so. Furthermore, the lesson he learns, had he learned it earlier, would have allowed him to make a different choice. In other words, it is because choice was given that his lesson has any value at all. If he were given no choice – his freewill thus being violated – then nothing he could have learned earlier would have made any difference, and thus it wouldn’t be a lesson at all. Therefore, freewill violations do not result in lessons for the individual, and without learning anything, his being does not change. Without a change of being, the FRV and realm boundary remains relatively unaffected.

Therefore, those who seek to influence a change in a target’s realm toward a more palatable frequency must necessarily respect his freewill. All they can do is offer choices, biasing the choices so that the individual is more likely to choose the negative option and therefore tarnish his being. Biased as they are, as long as they are still choices, his freewill is not violated. It’s amazing what degree of manipulation can be done which does not qualify as a freewill violation, for “permission” is a broad term.

Agents as Freelance Karmic Devices

The best way for agents not to violate freewill is to operate within the framework of an individual’s karmic lesson profile. A person comes into life with a pre-set list of what lessons to learn. It is up to him to decide how and when they are learned, factors determined by what he does with his freewill. His FRV, being a spectrum of fundamental resonance frequencies that indicate the composition of his being, broadcasts into reality his lesson profile, which tends to attract via acausal signaling or force certain types of experiences which may offer him fulfillment of a particular lesson plan. Matrix agents can smell a needy frequency spectrum from afar and opportunistically provide that experience. Agents such as organic portals, FRV robots, etheric vampires, or people with a strong anima component to their psyche are examples of those whose behavior largely depends upon the lesson profile of the targeted individual. Besides serving the function as trojan horses to allow 4D STS to better penetrate the target’s realm, they themselves are often in it for the spiritual and
emotional energy they can feed upon. They prostitute karmic lessons in exchange for energy. Individuals who succumb to their manipulations do learn lessons in the long run, but such lessons are learned the hard way.

So although agents do provide lessons, there are better ways of fulfilling one’s lesson profile, such as having foresight and gaining it without having to go through the experienced suffering. Of course, those who cannot learn it the easy way will learn it the hard way. Whatever the case, it is important that agents respect freewill because only then will the target learn, and only then will most agents even be allowed to interact with them.

It should now be clear why matrix agents drop clues. It shifts the responsibility of what follows entirely upon the targeted individual, allows him to learn lessons, and potentially lowers his FRV so that his realm becomes more penetrable to 4D STS forces. Were agents to not drop clues, lessons would be denied, FRV remains unaltered, and the realm stays impervious. Additionally, some aware negative beings may wish to incur karmic debt, and so try not to violate freewill in such cases. They may also wish to avoid incurring the “wrath” of a target’s divine protection.

Freewill Violations

As to how often 4D STS are unable to violate freewill versus them choosing not to do so, it is my view that for many people, the latter is rarer. I believe that due to divine intervention, the sovereignty of the Creator and the Higher Self, the power of the universal consciousness, realm differences, and the great deterioration of negative entities’ level of being, that it is commonly the case that 4D STS absolutely cannot carry out certain forms of manipulation, particularly murder and sabotage of life plan to a point that denies a person future lessons. Despite their fourth density status, there are even greater powers who referee the game and keep curbs in place.

The reason I say this is because there are many individuals whom negative forces would gladly kill, but who are still alive because their destiny does not allow it. There are many people they would like to directly sabotage, but cannot due to divine protection and realm differences. There are limits upon what they can do, of this I am certain. The fact that we still exist, that we can move in a positive direction, and that there are indeed victories for STO forces is evidence of this.

Awareness Protects both Actively and Passively

Lastly, we must revisit the concept of awareness and its active and passive protection aspects. As mentioned, awareness of reality elements binds them to freewill, keeps them in place, and essentially guards them from acausal manipulation by negative forces. The acausal manipulation of reality can be thusly prevented by accumulating knowledge. Having knowledge alone keeps reality in place and one’s realm secured, and this forms protection. For this particular function, knowledge need not be applied, merely earned and kept.

This is also why I think the Cassiopaeans emphasized the importance of expecting attack. Whatever one expects, one’s freewill is locked upon and energy is directed toward bulwarking. Negative forces love to operate in shadows, in areas where freewill is not focused and therefore need not be engaged. When one expects a particular method of attack, their use of such a method would mean direct engagement of one’s freewill. Aside from the possibility that they cannot violate one’s freewill because their level of being is lower, it is also true that freewill introduces nonlinearity into
the dynamic and therefore makes it unpredictable. Predictability is a necessary precondition of the success of STS attacks because their plans are intellectually conceived based on founding assumptions about the predicted nature of one’s behavior. Thus, if they strike from the shadows of one’s field of perception, they have the highest chance for success. Passive protection of awareness is simply a method of keeping a guarded territory well lit so that freewill guards all areas of one’s reality. This works well for acausal manipulations because it keeps reality in place.

The active protection of awareness comes into play when freewill is directly engaged. Two examples are expecting a method of attack, and the phenomenon of matrix agents.

In the first case, one can expect an attack, particularly an acausal manipulation, to happen and negative forces may still decide to use that mode. One can then take acausal action, something that works through phase time, not just causally through linear time. This involves psychic self defense methods such as declaring with firm intent that they stay back, or the various forms of prayer or visualizations and defensive thought form creations. This is a form of active acausal action, active because it begins with awareness and an engagement of freewill, and then personal initiative to act upon it and follow through.

The second case, matrix agents, involves active protection as well but of a causal nature. By evidence of their physical presence in one’s environment and the resulting interaction, they have already been given permission and breached one’s realm boundary. It does no good to only declare intent or use psychic self defense methods – although it can help – because they are very much physical and interacting causally with their target. Passive defense is simply a way of closing and locking doors, but in this case the “enemy” is already inside. Active protection of awareness in this case implies taking action to counter their offenses, of noticing their warning signs and not giving in to their sly attempts to further penetrate your realm or steal your energy, and especially avoiding believing in their disinformation.

In sum, awareness is necessary to fully access or utilize one’s freewill, whether actively or passively. Like FRV, freewill is a function of one’s level of being. As long as an individual earns his lessons, his level of being increases in proportion with his increased awareness. This balanced ratio between the two results in maximized efficiency of learning.

Unmanifested Freewill Offers Little Protection

The unfortunate situation with many humans is that we have more being than awareness, due mainly to spiritual amnesia and forced hypnosis which suppresses our awareness and leaves much freewill unused. An ideal goal would be to gain knowledge in order to use our latent freewill. Ironically, 4D STS have much more awareness than they have being. So rather than use their awareness to maximize their own freewill, because they lack a balanced proportion of being they instead use their awareness to manipulate the freewill of others.

One can obviously see the danger of not earning one’s knowledge, but absorbing it for free without putting in the required conscious effort to cogitate and understand what is being learned. True learning is a method of internal discovery under the guidance of external reminders, and of consciously experiencing life.

The objective truth, and the universe as a whole, exists within most conscious humans; they need
merely retrieve it by conscious effort. This retrieval is of a holographic nature; one’s level of being determines the resolution of the holographic retrieval. The more developed the being, the more accurately the inner world is a reflection of the outer. For those with impaired or underdeveloped levels of being, they truly cannot retrieve much from within themselves and must instead increase their level of being so that it resonates with a larger portion of objective truth, widening their bandwidth so to speak. This growth of being is accomplished by gaining lessons via emotional conscious experience and possible suffering. For those who have already gone through much of this process but simply have spiritual amnesia, they need merely retrieve the treasures of knowledge already buried within themselves.

Either way, the importance of learning lessons via conscious effort or emotionally charged experience must be emphasized. The conscious core forms the gate to one’s inner vault of being. Anything that is placed in that vault must pass through conscious perception, cognition, experience, and ultimately understanding. Without conscious perception, any gained awareness fails to enter, and does nothing to increase the level of being. Such asymmetric knowledge becomes externally grafted, mechanical tools that atrophy the individual who becomes like a cyborg with every attachment replacing some part of his being. He becomes slave to the utilitarianism of knowledge for the manipulation of the environment, rather than understanding its purpose in aiding spiritual evolution. Absorbing information purely via rote memorization, learning the rules of reality as though it were a trivial game for hedonistic amusement, and failing to retrieve or confirm knowledge within oneself can all lead toward spiritual atrophy.

[This is why many of the articles on this site are written in such a way as to foster discovery, to encourage the experience of eureka, whereby ideas in these articles serve as reminders for what the reader may not have thought of yet or perhaps forgotten. It is why everything here is for the reader to personally confirm, whether by observation, experience, or internal confirmation. I discourage rote memorization of information here unless it’s something that cannot be internally confirmed or retrieved, such as facts that have no bearing on objective truth – names, dates, jargon are examples. If one truly understand something, it automatically becomes memorized because it is integrated into one’s being. Memorizing without understanding merely grafts it onto oneself].

Conclusion

This article has emphasized the importance of knowledge and awareness, for they are catalysts that help us better utilize our latent freewill. It is easier to defend against reality manipulation and agent attacks with knowledge, which protects passively by itself and actively when utilized. I have described a proper method of gaining knowledge and expanding one’s level of being, and explained why negative forces are limited in their offensive actions and tend to respect freewill. It was the intent of this article to update and clarify the issue of freewill and awareness in the context of dealing with 4D STS and their 3D agents.

(index)

Emotional Management

16 April 03 (matrix)

Have you ever gotten emotionally riled up over events which later turned out to be trivial? Do little
things happen around you which “coincidentally” poke at your emotional sore spots? Does it seem like someone “behind the curtain” is pushing your buttons? In many cases, someone or something is.

This article is about emotional defense against an invisible enemy who profits from your overindulgence in negative emotions. As part of the matrix series, this text focuses upon the central issue in the matter, that of loosh economy. “Loosh” is Robert Monroe’s term for a quantifiable spiritual/emotional energy produced by physical beings such as humans, a highly-valued commodity in the eyes of nonphysical beings who feed upon this energy. Although not its only function, the matrix acts as the machinery which extracts loosh from humans by subjecting them to synchronistically arranged emotional melodramas.

Here will be given a practical discussion of the nature of emotion, who manipulates emotion via the matrix, their modes of attack, and suggested methods of defense.

Nature of emotion

Science sees emotion as the perceptual end-product of chemicals and hormones affecting our nervous system, nothing more. In truth, such chemicals in our bodies are just physical components of an overall metaphysical process. The body is synchronistically coupled to the soul, meaning the soul doesn’t actually impress a physical force upon the body’s cells as a magnet would upon iron filings, but rather the soul generates a morphogenic field which tends to make one’s neurons and cells “accidentally” behave in a way that directly mirrors the behavior of the soul. The morphogenic field alters the probability of cellular events in such a way to conform to the will of the soul.

When the soul feels the emotion of love, for example, neurons “accidentally” fire in a specific pattern which any neuropsychologist reading a brainscan will interpret as corresponding to that emotion.

During life in a physical body, the body and soul are strongly coupled. One’s daily consciousness, the ego, resides at the border between physical brain and metaphysical soul, meaning it can experience the illusion of emotion through drugs. Such artificial inductions of emotions are generated through the body rather than the soul. Any generation of emotion via physical methods leads only the generation of false emotions.

The difference between true and false emotions lies in their origin. There is only one true emotion, love, and there is only one source for it, God. “Love” and “God” do not have their usual meanings here; love does not mean physical intimacy between couples and God does not mean a personified deity. Love is defined here as a creator energy, the original will of God that separated the original void into positive and negative space and time, an emotion filled with truth, knowledge, and awareness. God is defined as the original seed of consciousness from which all reality and individual consciousness arose, an infinite supply of true emotional energy to which humans are energetically connected and have access.

Eaters of Emotion

In other articles on this site (www.montalk.net), a classification system of zero order, first order, and second order beings has been utilized to separate the major types of consciousness. God is a zero order being, humans are first order beings, and thoughtforms or entities without a direct energetic
link to God are second order beings. Likewise, there are zero, first, and second order emotions. Zero
order emotion is the will of God which essentially powered the Big Bang. First order emotion is
true love as humans can experience it, that of truth, knowledge, and awareness. Second order
emotions consist of everything else, from illusory love to lust, hatred, fear, jealousy, and contempt.
These are false emotions, for they stem not from God but from illusion. Loosh is a generic term for
emotional energy, and “negative loosh” implies false emotion, while “positive loosh” means true
emotion.

Second order beings are the primary beneficiaries of the matrix for they feed upon their
Corresponding type of loosh, second order emotion. Such beings were not created by God originally,
their creators are first order beings who either purposely or accidentally succumbed to illusion and
began to feed such illusions by putting emotional energy into things not connected to the physical
reality created by God. In other words, instead of focusing entirely upon physical reality and truth in
their lives, first order beings (who by definition have Creator-like abilities) began to create a new
reality of their own, that within the realm of their imaginations. This imaginary reality is now
known as the etheric realm, and energy dumped into this realm was shaped via first order beings’
fears and fantasies into second order beings called thoughtforms. Thoughtforms are etheric robots
without an energetic connection to God — a metaphysical form of artificial intelligence.
Thoughtforms, generated by illusion, soon resorted to parasitism upon first order beings to feed
themselves and maintain their own existence. Over time, thoughtforms have created an entirely new
illusory reality overlaying the real reality on earth, and this illusory overlay is the matrix.
The movie The Matrix was a metaphorical representation of this phenomenon. One point of
evidence toward this fact is that the metaphor was imperfect; machines turned humans into
batteries, sources of electrical energy, and yet they could have much more easily resorted to nuclear
power. In reality, the metaphor alluded to the fact that the “machines” or second order beings are
after loosh, not electricity, and there is no better generator of loosh than a human. Hence, in the
movie, humans had to be the power source despite the obvious flaw in the metaphor.

For emotion to be consumed by second order beings, it must be converted into a palatable
frequency or flavor and dumped into a domain over which second order beings have precedence.
Physical reality, being a product of God and composed of its love/will condensed into solidity, is not
second order beings’ preferential domain. Anything straying from reality, such as fantasies,
misconceptions, fears, and illusions miss their mark and flow into second order beings’ etheric
reality, if not first tapped directly by the matrix. Therefore, the matrix attempts to induce negative
emotions in you (flavoring the loosh with a palatable frequency) and pulls your mindset away from
truth so that your emotion becomes available for harvesting.

Dynamics of Emotion
Emotions are somewhat analogous to electricity; there is static electricity (stationary quantity of
charge) and dynamic electricity, also known as current (moving quantity of charge). Likewise,
emotions can be static or dynamic.

Dynamic emotion is loosh energy that is always being utilized for either constructive
physical/spiritual action or else leaking or spurting into the ether. All your genuine emotional
energy comes from your connection to God by virtue of you just being human, conscious, and alive.
You receive this energy from God to power much of your higher mental and spiritual functions, but you must still consume physical food to run your body. What you do with your supply of loosh is up to you; the matrix would like you to convert it into a negative form and feed the energy into imaginary reality for interception by the matrix.

Static emotion, psychologically speaking, is repressed emotional energy. Emotion, being a quantified substance, can neither be created nor destroyed by anyone except God. This law of conservation is nothing new, many authors and psychologists know of that fact.

While emotion cannot be created or destroyed, it can be tapped from God and converted into various grades, frequencies, and forms. Negative emotion can be converted into positive, and vice versa. Perception is the key that converts one form into the other.

When you experience a negative emotion and do not let it out or convert it into something positive, it becomes a thoughtform parasite, an auric leak, and a spiritual burden. To have become angry in the first place is okay, but to remain so in a non-constructive way must have arisen from some illusory component in your view of the world. In other words, because your perception of a situation was not based entirely on truth, you became angry, stayed angry, and did nothing about it except ignore and repress it. Your illusory perception combined with the resulting negative emotional energy forms, by definition, a thoughtform, except it is one closely attached to your soul. In this article, such an entity will be called an *internal thoughtform*. It has a conduit leading back to the core of your soul and siphons energy from your emotional reservoir, becoming bloated in the process as long as you continue repressing it.

While God’s supply of emotional energy is infinite, your rate to receive such energy is not. Therefore, any leak in your loosh reservoir such as one caused by an internal thoughtform generated from repressed emotions will take away from your influx of energy. The more repressed emotions you have, the more auric leaks you have, and the less loosh energy you can use for yourself.

Internal thoughtforms severely affect the way you behave. Beside keeping you low of energy, they also tend to pull your own utilization of energy in their direction.

 Severely repressed emotions (to the point of amnesia) stem from soul fragmentation, where a piece of your consciousness accompanies the perceptions and emotions splitting off from your main soul during the trauma. Such internal thoughtforms are their own personalities in perpetual suffering. The amnesia results from memories being a function of consciousness, and since that particular component of consciousness has left, the main consciousness has no access to those memories unless the fragment possessing them returns to its source. Ordinary internal thoughtforms are not total *fragmentations*, but rather *distortions*; both affect the main soul’s consciousness through some etheric or astral link.

Internal thoughtforms affect your behavior by regurgitating a negative frequency of loosh back into your main energy reservoir which corrupts your general mood in addition to sublimely keeping your world view in accordance with the illusion having generated the internal thoughtform in the first place. It affects both your emotions and perceptions and tends to keep them anchored in illusion.

Static emotions cannot be tapped by the matrix, although they are still detrimental in altering your behavior like a stuck rudder on a ship. One’s emotions remain static only as long as they are out of
one’s present conscious focus. Remember that internal thoughtforms are their own loosh reservoirs, feeding off your reservoir which in turn is filled by God. You may think of these thoughtforms as bloated sacks of loosh just waiting to burst. To access these reservoirs, the matrix must open them with a perceptual key so that your consciousness focuses upon them, opening the floodgates and unleashing an explosion of dynamic emotion which bursts into the ether and is collected by the matrix.

Thus, the matrix can do one of two things: elicit dynamic emotions in you and tap them directly, or else pop your repressed emotions and reap a huge bounty. Often it does both and makes sure dynamic emotion is repressed and allowed to grow for later harvest. How it accomplishes all this is the subject of the next section

Modes of Attack

The matrix and those who operate it attack humans for various reasons including sabotage, experimentation, and loosh harvesting. An attack is defined as a hostile act intended to benefit the perpetrator more than one receiving the attack.

Let’s begin with how the matrix harvests static emotions. As stated before, it must utilize the correct key to unlock stored reservoir of loosh. In practical terms, this key is simply a synchronicity in your environment which triggers an overblown emotional reaction from you. If you have ever gotten angrier at something than warranted because you’ve had enough and it was the last straw, then you have had an internal thoughtform purged of its reservoir. While this may make you feel better in the short run, it will fill up again and continue to influence you unless it is permanently disabled by a change of perceptions. Disabling internal thoughtforms will be discussed later.

A synchronistic trigger is created from precise calculations and data gathering by the matrix; it knows what buttons to push. The source of this trigger may be something you read, a keyword, song, person’s name, dream event, or something someone does or says. In the case of reading something, the synchronicity is mainly created through you…the matrix has imperceptibly altered your actions and the path of your trigger until they intersect and the trigger comes to your attention. In the case of being triggered by something someone does or says, the same basic process occurs except another person is being manipulated as well. (Generation of synchronicities doesn’t happen by the direct calculation and alteration of every single step necessary to produce them, rather a small section of the symbolic “machine code” of reality is altered which automatically restructures the timeline and course of reality-based events).

You may wonder how and when this manipulation occurs, because you cannot remember or feel any real manipulation going on. Well, the manipulation of your actions is synchronistic and occurs most often when you are on “autopilot” or in the alpha state of mind. It is known that one becomes suggestible and receptive during the alpha state, in which brainwaves pulsate between 9 and 14 cycles per second. During this state, your consciousness relaxes its perceptual filters and becomes susceptible to external influences. It is during this autopilot state that the matrix finds it easiest to get you to do something which will play part in a later synchronicity. When it happens, because the synchronicity is not yet fulfilled, the trivial action you just undertook during the alpha state goes generally unnoticed, thought of as insignificant and not even worth remembering. The manipulation is subtle, and only after-the-fact does it become obvious. Most often, however, the manipulation is
not a direct influence to do something, but rather a suppression of your memory function...you perform an action while having temporarily forgotten a key piece of information that would have made you act otherwise. Induced temporary forgetfulness resulting in a later synchronicity is the most common way an external or higher force (even a positive one) can bypass the ego and manipulate a person’s actions.

Susceptibility to manipulation is proportional to lack of awareness. Forewarned is forearmed. Remember:

If you’re not in control of your actions, something else is.

It could be the matrix, internal thoughtforms, external thoughtforms, subliminals in advertising and music, entity attachments, alien transmissions, and even positive guidance such as your higher self and intuition. Which of those you tend to tune into depends upon your general mood, which is nothing more than the prevalent emotional climate of your being. Emotions are generated from perceptions, and to attract positive guidance in times when you go into autopilot, you must have positive perceptions aligned with truth. The more accurate your perception of reality, the better your mood, and the less susceptible you become to influence from negative sources.

Of course, if you were a hermit, this advice would be easy to apply. Unfortunately, every person you associate with, be it friend, family, or stranger, is also susceptible to manipulation by various forces. The less aware they are, the more easily manipulated they become. Being aware means being conscious of your actions and taking responsibility to make sure that what you do is really what you want to do, and not some subtle force attempting to manipulate you into playing part in someone else’s emotional triggering. The people you interact with can be manipulated into triggering you, pushing your buttons, sabotaging your plans, and hurting you without them even knowing it. In fact, you have played that part as well, unknowingly performing actions which synchronistically affect others without you being aware of it at the time. It happened to you today and it will happen again tomorrow.

As fellow researchers have learned, the biggest challenge to anyone aware of this manipulation is when someone you love or trust becomes a “conduit of attack,” an unwitting player in the negative forces’ sick game of sabotaging you or harvesting your loosh (inducing suffering in you, and often the others involved). Children, spouses, and partners in personal or business relationships are the most common conduits of attack. Besides performing just minor synchronistic triggers, such people can be fully manipulated into doing anything to stress you, including hurting themselves, misperceiving you, and directly attacking you verbally or physically. By physical harm, it is not meant that some external force picks up their fists and swings them at you, rather that some force manipulates the person’s emotions and perceptions into making them take out their frustrations and misguided anger on you. They believe that they are in control of all their actions, but in reality they are not.

In cases where manipulation of a person goes beyond mere synchronistic acts, there is usually a direct alteration of his/her soul via artificial means. This can include physical means such as electromagnetic mind control signals, physical implants, hypnosis, harmful chemicals and nutritional deficiencies, or metaphysical means such as etheric implants, chakra alterations, entity attachments of negative beings or aliens, or remote psionic influence. Whatever the case may be,
the person isn’t truly himself, and the painful part is that he is not even aware of it.

Lack of awareness puts a person into the domain of illusion and misperception. Once there, it is easy for the matrix or its operators to inject false speculation into the minds of the intended targets of sabotage. The less information one has about a particular situation, the more he will tend to speculate. Like a game of Wheel of Fortune, the less letters already chosen by contestants, the greater the possibility that the hidden word could be almost anything. Because there are so many possibilities that would fit the limited facts one has, such possibilities must include a great portion of incorrect guesses, illusions. Because such possibilities are weighted equally until another piece of information comes along to shift favor to one or the other, it is during speculation that the matrix finds an opportune time to nudge a person’s perceptions toward false conclusions. It can do so directly by emotional manipulation and memory suppression, or it can do so with false data introduced to him synchronistically. Not all data you could encounter via synchronicity is false, but be aware that some of it surely is.

Such sabotage typically happens to split apart two people or a network which poses a threat to the matrix’s agenda. This happens best when one or more of the people targetted is much more unaware than the other, and therefore becomes an easy conduit of attack. Whether one is unaware or both are, between them there is usually a lack of full understanding of each other’s personality and circumstances. This may be due either out of social custom not to be nosy, lack of time to become more acquainted, or fear, mistrust, and ignorance. The latter factors make a relationship most vulnerable to sabotage. Fear causes mistrust, leading to ignorance of facts contrary to paranoid speculations, and limits the informational exchange between people involved. With lack of information, speculation arises, and such speculation is manipulated by the matrix toward false conclusions and soon the relationship breaks apart due to misunderstandings on both sides of the cleavage. It is a tactic of divide and conquer. This is why love and trust between two or more aware people is the biggest threat possible to the matrix — it forms an invincible and indivisible unit more powerful than the sum of its parts. The matrix must then resort to treating this unit as a single entity and manipulate other people into attacking it from the outside…but the network or relationship is now stronger than any single person.

Such a network is impossible between individuals who are not collinear. Collinearity is the quality of sharing the same direction of spiritual evolution, even if there are differences in awareness. Two individuals who are collinear but not equally aware can provide for a pleasant teaching/learning experience. But two who are not collinear will be in conflict because each will be resistant to the other and both are going different directions in life. Among collinear individuals, it is merely separations in awareness that allow the matrix to create misperceptions and disruption. So it is important for a collinear couple to be completely honest with each other and on equal ground.

Methods of Defense

As bleak as the previous accounts of matrix attack modes may have been, in truth there are ways out of this mess, methods of defense.

_I believe that the Matrix can remain our cage or it can become our chrysalis…_

– Neo, original script for The Matrix

_The Matrix is the system used by foreign forces operating on this planet, so as to accelerate_
spiritual choices of each individual on Earth without violating their freewill.
– www.geocities.com/freeyourbrain

In the big picture the matrix is just another, albeit grandiose, learning device much like an obstacle course or puzzle for humanity. All puzzles have solutions, that is their reason for existence: to be solved. Acknowledging that the matrix and humanity’s exploitation has a place in the course of things does not imply that we should just accept it and submit to it. That would be like acknowledging that a puzzle comes disassembled in a box, but going further and arguing that it should therefore be left alone; if putting the puzzle together would no longer make it a puzzle, would “eradicating” it make one guilty of being an anti-puzzle bigot? That is ludicrous. Obstacles exist to be overcome, puzzles exist to be solved, and evil exists to be counterbalanced. If we are to treat the matrix properly in regard to its true universal function, then we must individually overcome it.

To overcome the matrix’s method of emotional triggering via synchronistic keys, it is necessary to discharge, disable, and eliminate negative internal thoughtforms and prevent new ones from forming. While doing this perfectly is close to impossible, steps in that direction can be taken.

There are numerous books discussing ways of healing emotional wounds and getting rid of self-defeating subconscious programming (internal thoughtforms). While methods vary in complexity and efficiency, the basic idea comes down to finding an internal thoughtform, discharging it by consciously replaying the associated false perceptions and emotions, realizing that the perceptions were false, and replacing them with a new realization closer to the truth. Find, discharge, replace. There are other ways as well, check the suggested reading list at the end of this article.

Preventing the creation of new internal thoughtforms is a matter of changing your perceptions through an increase in awareness and immediately transforming any negative emotional energy you do accumulate. For example, if the matrix induces a synchronicity designed to play upon your emotions and arouse futile anger, if your perceptions are in good shape then it will not even affect you; it will pass right through. Recall the following quote from The Matrix:

Neo: What are you trying to tell me, that I can dodge bullets?

Morpheus: No Neo. I’m trying to tell you that when you’re ready, you won’t have to.

If your negative internal thoughtforms are discharged or nonexistent, then even without a perceptual guard your emotional reaction will not be greater than warranted by the trigger. Nevertheless, the perceptual guard is simply an understanding that a particular trigger is actually trivial and warrants no negative emotion. There is no need to dodge bullets if they pass right through you without touching or stop mid-air.

Anger itself is not that negative of an emotion if transformed; only when repressed does it cause problems. Contempt, jealousy, hatred, and guilt however are very negative because they are emotions that are very difficult to employ constructively. All four imply stasis, inaction, or reckless destruction.

“Contempt” implies illusory superiority (superiority based on illusory criteria) and does nothing to help a person constructively…it perpetuates separation, oppression, and exploitation.
“Jealousy” is an emotion of lack, insecurity, obsession, or of having to fantasize to have something imaginarily — an automatic ejection of loosh into the ether.

“Hatred” is rarely acted upon and is a brooding emotion, dynamic, sending oozing negativity into the physical and etheric environment and atrophying the soul. When acted upon, hatred leads to destabilizing destruction.

“Guilt” is a major negative loosh producer. It is a futile attempt by a soul to change the past. As detailed in “Synchronicity and Reality Manipulation,” emotions are the carrier wave upon which information can be sent back into the past of the current timeline to alter the current timeline. This is the linear interpretation of how synchronicities are set up. When feeling guilty, a person is actually attempting to change a regretful past situation via this method…it fails most of the time because his wish to change the past is based upon faulty perceptions (illusions) and it would complicate certain karmic balances that required him to have done as he did. Thus, the emotions go nowhere but into the mouth of the matrix. The proper way to handle guilt is to relieve oneself of the emotion through thoughtform discharge, change in perception, and then to avoid repeating the guilt-inducing mistake in the future. There is a difference between a psychopath without guilt and a free person without guilt; the free person’s actions stem from perceptions which have changed because life’s lessons, while the psychopath’s actions stem from perceptions which exist as they are in spite of life’s lessons.

Negative emotional energy is loosh with a particular vibrational frequency tuned into resonance with negative entities and the matrix. Because this frequency is of a second order nature, it is associated with the quality of illusion. For example, when one is angry and offended, sometimes such emotions trigger revenge fantasies. The angered person’s direction of focus is absorbed in the trigger which is anywhere but in the here and now. Loosh energy is channeled into wherever consciousness is focused, and if one is absorbed in directing anger toward the object of offense, that is where the energy goes. This is the most common way the matrix collects energy; it merely pushes a button and opens its mouth to feed.

What factors create large responses to triggers? As explained, repressed emotions are one factor. Another already mentioned is lack of understanding or being. Someone with certain lessons yet to learn is yearning to have experiences which teach them those lessons. The matrix very often provides those lesson opportunities in exchange for the negative loosh it harvests. It is fact that the more lessons one learns, the less responsive one becomes to manipulative triggers, i.e., the less dependent one’s internal emotional state becomes to external factors.

Try to remember something that made you cry as a young child. Would it make you cry if it happened to you now? If not, what has changed to make that so? Your perceptions; you have grown in awareness since that young age and something that would give you a tantrum at three would make you laugh at thirty. In fact, any spiritual lesson that you have already learned would no longer affect you the same way if it presented itself to you again. Once you solve a homework math problem that causes you lots of grief, if asked again on a test, you would remember how you did it and breeze right through.

Not learning a lesson or repressing an emotion are very similar because both lead to no growth of being. Awareness and understanding are necessary to grow one’s level of being, and without
conscious processing of emotions and the lessons they teach, growth does not occur. In the case of not yet having learned a lesson, there is no stimulus for growth, and with repressed emotions, growth is artificially squelched. Both of these create demand for and vulnerability against further matrix manipulations in order to provide the opportunity for learning lessons.

Ultimately, it is the Higher Self that allows the matrix to have its way, to create situations which can teach the lower self needed lessons. Unfortunately, negative second order beings and the matrix are interested in maximizing loosh extraction from every targeted individual, not being their teachers — thus, the slower the target learns his lessons, the more energy he will continuously expend to the satisfaction of the matrix. This carrot-before-the-donkey phenomenon can be avoided with simple effort to learn quickly from every experience, and especially to learn preemptively from the experiences of others.

It is possible therefore to learn lessons without negative experience if such lessons are cognized and empathized beforehand. This is gaining knowledge the easy way which requires effort on the part of the learner to see objective truth. If this effort is neglected, physical experience will be created to teach it to him or her the hard way. Such experiences will repeat in various manifestations until the lesson is learned. Once it is learned, a corresponding growth of being occurs which prevents such experiences from necessarily reoccurring. In this way, knowledge protects indirectly because having it kills the broadcasted demand for a matrix-provided experiential learning lesson. Nevertheless, negative entities still have the freewill to attack whomever they can, so a direct application of knowledge in the form of prevention or repulsion will help one defend against these attacks should they occur. As the Cassiopaeans (read my warning first) say, “Knowledge protects, ignorance endangers.” The reasons for this should now be clear.

Most of us are imperfect and we still have lessons to learn, we still have wounds and repressed emotions. Therefore, we can expect testing from the people and situations we daily face. Because these are nothing more than learning lessons, an ideal objective would be to learn these lessons as completely, efficiently, and easily as possible.

While possible to observe the mistakes of others and therefore gain their learning lesson for ourselves, unexpected tests attempting to push our buttons or those which we must absolutely experience can arise at any moment. Fact of the matter is that if your level of being is insufficient to remain unaffected by the trigger, if you have yet to learn the lesson potentially provided to you by this negative experience, then you will experience negative emotions. To try and stop cold such emotions leads to repression, which is the problem that many people experience when they force themselves to be nice and happy every moment of every day. Repressed emotions resurface later in a twisted and magnified form and can lead to all kinds of psychological problems, even health problems if repression is lengthy and severe.

The solution to such a situation where negative emotions are bound to arise is not to stop or repress them, but to transform them. This is the first step, with the second step being to act in accordance with what the situation demands.

Recall that the negative quality of emotions are associated with illusion, with anything but the here and now. Essentially, your loosh is being ejected from your own being rather than conserved. Also recall that wherever your consciousness is directed is where your energy is directed. Therefore, to
transform your energy and conserve it, you must do two things: direct your consciousness in the here and now to conserve it, and try to gain an immediate objective understanding of the situation to transform it. This method is well known among students of Gurdjieff and Mouravieff, and the explanation I provide here has been simplified to ease understanding for the general reader.

To illustrate this method, consider the case of someone saying something which offends or angers you but causes no harm to anyone or anything except your own ego. This may trigger an upwelling of negative emotional energy which, if you are not careful, could be channeled toward that person if you lose your sense of self and instead become hypnotically enraged at what they said. Rather than focusing upon the trigger, it is important to immediately focus upon your own internal state in the present moment, to feel your own presence and the emotional energy within you. While staying centered this way, feel the inner part of you that is calm, observant, and understanding, and identify with it — see this situation as ridiculous and funny and try to understand the truth of why it is happening; perhaps it is a matrix manipulation and a lesson for you.

When properly done, this process converts the negative loosh to conserved positive loosh, and should manifest as a genuine flip of your emotional state from anger to joy. This is easier said than done, of course, due to physical stress hormones and adrenaline which linger after the initial trigger, but it becomes easier with practice. What is important here are the concepts of self-awareness and knowledge. The first is what directs your energy toward yourself rather than wasting it “out there”. The second is what allows you to have a proper understanding of the situation. For example, some people just can’t help themselves in their inconsiderate behavior, much like a dog cannot keep from relieving itself in public places, but it is just as ridiculous to be offended by the first as by the latter. With proper understanding of a trigger, you will hopefully find no continued justification for clinging on to a negative emotional response. Be assured that if you hold on to them, you have not yet fully learned the associated lesson.

One common misunderstanding which leads to great offense is revealed by the phrase “But I would never do such a thing, how could they?” The answer is that sometimes, “they” are not like you. They function differently for whatever reason. This phrase reveals an assumption that you are identical with them. It is clear in the case of a dog that there is a great difference, and so it is less offensive for most to see a dog relieve itself in public than a person. But just because someone looks human doesn’t mean that they psychologically and even metaphysically operate in the same manner as you do. There exists a whole sector of the human race that behaves fundamentally differently from the other half, as you may read more about in my article Spiritless Humans. Reading that article and those linked within will save you a lot of grief in dealing with potential button-pushers because it will help you understand who they are and why they might act as they do.

In cases where all else fails and negative emotions cannot be transformed, they must still be released – anything but repressed. Temporary release of any unconverted negative emotion can be as simple as screaming or slamming your fist upon the table, or gentle like writing or exercising, even crying. This is strictly for cases where there is no constructive way of acting upon that emotion — in other words, no external problem to solve. If someone else is violating your freewill and you feel an upsurge of emotion urging you to defend yourself, then that emotion is best employed for that purpose.

When succumbing to an emotional trigger, you must release the negative emotion to prevent it from
becoming an internal thoughtform, then later learn from that trigger and understand why it set you off. If it did so because it keyed into an internal thoughtform, then you’ve found one to work on. If it affected you because of some hole in your perception, then contemplate and learn the lesson so that it will not have to be repeated.

Understanding that emotional triggers do happen and are synchronistically introduced into your environment with sometimes malevolent intention is enough to get your guard up. You must understand that the goal of such a trigger is to elicit an overblown emotional response. You must prevent speculation and focus on the undeniable facts. To illustrate one possibility, if a woman indulges in speculation, pretty soon she will be in an emotional meltdown thinking her husband is cheating on her when in truth the perfume on his clothes came from the annoying saleslady spraying samples of the stuff onto people passing through the store he visited.

Focusing on the facts is essential in preventing the matrix from cleaving apart a potentially positive relationship. As explained earlier, two people who refuse to be open and trusting to each other end up perceptually isolating themselves. Each person can thereby be manipulated by the twisting of his or her speculations into falsely disliking the other and ending the relationship. Were they to discuss any issues that might crop up, they would discover that their speculations were false. And if they turned out to be true, then the relationship was never really positive to begin with and should be ended. But one cannot be sure of which case it may be unless there is mutual trust and an openness to discover the truth of the situation.

Truth itself is untouchable by the matrix and its operators which revel in illusion and lies. As long as one remains impeccably within the domain of truth, which means no lying to oneself or others except in situations that demand one’s survival, those attacking such an impeccable person often end up hanging themselves.

Now, it may seem from the foregoing discussion that the point of emotional management is to become unemotional and unresponsive to the world. This is totally false. The goal of emotional management, and any esoteric work for that matter, is to decouple one’s internal state from one’s external behavior. In other words, it is the point of emotional management to make your internal perceptions, thoughts, and especially emotional state independent of your external experiences and behaviors. Where is the division line between internal and external? The line resides between the real you and everything else.

Those familiar with Gurdjieff’s teachings will recognize this as the practice of separating internal considering from external considering. External considering has to do with how you physically interact with the world, what actions you perform, and what things you say toward the people around you. Internal considering involves your inner thoughts, perceptions, and emotions. These two must be made independent of each other, because that is the only way you can begin freeing yourself from the matrix. As long as the two are linked, your mind can be controlled by your environment, and the environment controlled by the matrix.

So in this process of dealing with a conduit of attack, your emotions need not correlate to the seriousness of the situation. In other words, you don’t need to be stressed out of your mind to effectively deal with a partner in distress. What you do does not have to reflect how you feel. To put it another way, separating feeling from doing is an extremely important concept when facing a
negative situation. This does not mean repression of emotion or becoming emotionally dead, it just means being emotionally responsible and ideally expanding your awareness to see the situation in a more accurate context.

Once a trigger is neutralized via the process of immediate self-awareness and understanding, the internal battle has been won. The external battle can then commence if necessary. Do not make the mistake of inseparably linking *feeling* with *doing* in this case — some people get the impression that if you feel nice, you must therefore act nice. That’s nothing more than a computer algorithm with input “feel nice” and output “act nice” which contains no intermediate contemplation or choice process. This is just another example of total and misguided coupling between internal and external states which can lead to disaster if you are dealing with a predator who counts on you not defending yourself. Coupling implies causal link without room for choice, and thus it’s simply a puppet string tugging your inside from the outside.

If the concepts of internal and external considering are understood and made independent, then what would happen instead is that internally, negative emotions are replaced by cool confidence and joy, but externally actions would take whatever form necessary in order to neutralize or deflect the external threat.

Internal victory must *always* precede external victory. To do otherwise would most often feed the matrix or aid the agenda of negative forces. It is easier to make mistakes or succumb to further manipulation if you proceed to solve an external conflict while internally enraged. With negative emotions, thinking is skewed. The positive emotions that come with triumph over negative emotions result from *understanding*, and so is by no means overconfidence. While actions are independent of feelings, having negative feelings can sometimes impair external actions because at our stage of evolution the two aren’t entirely independent.

Make no mistake about it — emotions are vital because they are *fuel*. They help you accomplish things which your level of *being* up to that point could no do, therefore causing it to grow. As stated before, the purpose of emotional management is not to become unemotional or unresponsive but rather to make internal states independent of external, and also to help transform negative emotions into positive ones. With increasing growth of *being*, one’s emotions become increasingly one’s *own* rather than mechanical responses to external stimuli.

If a lesson has been learned, then no negative emotions are necessary to motivate one into action since the action comes naturally out of understanding and as a consequence of a growth in *being*. Once a lesson is learned, it can be acted upon out of enthusiasm and understanding.

But when a trigger evoking negative emotions genuinely arises, it is the goal of emotional management procedures to transform that negativity into positivity, and then to use that new positive state accompanied by mental clarity to fuel external actions and solve the external problem. Emotions provide the fuel for internal and external growth, and positive emotions provide the quickest and most efficient way of achieving that.

Emotions are necessary to deal with a problem that is happening. But they are not needed as intensely in cases where a problem is yet to occur and can therefore be prevented. Learning from the mistakes of others involves a certain level of empathy, enough to create understanding. Emotions are merely a means to an end of developing one’s understanding and *being*. Learning
things the hard way requires the most amount of emotional expenditure, which is why the matrix prefers that mode. Having foresight and avoiding mistakes by increasing your understanding — and definitely not repeating mistakes — is the least painful way of reaching that end.

Thus, learning the easy way is preferred, but when learning the hard way is unavoidable, emotional management helps make it smoother. The problem with those who choose to be unemotional or in any other way repress their emotions is that they often lack both the being and understanding to support their actions, and hence they remain passive individuals vulnerable as lambs. If negative emotions arise, they indicate that some growth on your part is necessary, and to accelerate that growth use emotional management techniques of self-awareness and understanding.

It should be clear that those earlier on the learning path will have more negative emotional experiences than those more advanced. There is no judgment implied – everyone is where they should be and it is pointless to envy another because judging oneself by another’s standards is illogical (the grass is always greener on the other side). People who pretend to be more advanced by being less emotional suffer from the fact that they are passive, for they lack the being and understanding necessary to otherwise fuel their actions, which translates to an apparent lack of willpower. Hence, it is okay to feel negative emotions, as they first alert you to the presence of a learning opportunity, and can help develop your understanding and fuel your actions as long as you practice being self-aware and try to see the objective truth of the situation.

It must be emphasized that any emotion that is based on truth and applied constructively toward altering or changing something in physical reality is a positive emotion that helps everyone except for the matrix and negative beings. Any emotion applied to fantasy, false speculations, and glut of the ego is negative, for it is based on illusion and becomes food for the matrix and fuel for its agenda.

The preceding paragraphs concerned situations where a trigger was external, perhaps inserted by the matrix, maybe purely accidental. But as Gurdjieff emphasized, daydreaming is a big waste of emotional energies. This is not to say that daydreaming should be curbed, but at least try to avoid negative fantasies of vengeance, hatred, lust, and fear. Fantasizing draining melodramas and getting stressed out about some exaggerated hypothetical situation is almost as damaging as false speculation. These are conscious indulgences in negative emotions which, like the phenomenon of obsession, serve no purpose in expanding one’s understanding. Curbing negative self-talk and useless fantasies is a practical exercise you can start immediately.

Finally, to ensure that the concept of emotional management is not misunderstood or twisted into disinformation, let it be emphasized that emotional management has nothing to do with what’s said in some New Age articles glorifying the New Age definition of “positivity,” which is more accurately defined as complacency, submissiveness, softness, and passivity. According to the “you create your own reality” paradigm, by not feeling any negative emotions or acknowledging that the dark side exists, your reality will be void of negativity and filled with safety and abundance.

The basic principle of consciousness and emotion affecting reality is true, but it does so imperfectly and only alters the probability of a particular type of event (positive or negative) occurring in your life. It does not eliminate the possibility that an event of either type could happen. The main faults of this particular New Age paradigm are 1) neglect of physical preparation and 2) repression of
negative emotions.

Because reality creation is imperfect for most humans, a negative event will happen sooner or later. If the New Ager is under the illusion that nothing bad can ever happen to him because it would violate his freewill, then he will neglect to prepare for the day he encounters such a negative event. It could cost him dearly.

Secondly, being strictly “positive” without a change in perceptions or even a correct definition of what constitutes “positive,” the New Ager out of sheer ignorance will accumulate a large storehouse of internal thoughtforms (repressed emotions). Eventually he will explode and do something he will greatly regret. The “Love and Light” illusion is just another agenda of the dark side, for the dark side does not prefer good or evil, merely an imbalance between them. That which is repressed becomes perverted.

So, although this article does seem to emphasize abstinence from negative thought, be sure to grasp the importance of preparation and expansion of perception. This abstinence comes not from repression, but from transformation of negative into positive emotions. This is possible because loosh is a quantity of energy whose vibrational frequency can be flipped. Physical reparation, a manifestation of external action, results from planning which is mental activity serving reality instead of fantasy. Growth in understanding and being creates a change of perception, which is the key to managing emotions and preventing their repression or future redundant triggering.

**Conclusion**

Most importantly, keep a lighthearted attitude toward life and constantly seek to increase your awareness by learning lessons the easy way. Remember that negative situations need not be accompanied by negative emotions if your perceptions are accurate, and that a trusting relationship between two or more collinear people forms a powerful network impervious to corruption by the matrix.

(index)

**The Art of Hyper Dimensional War**

30 July 04 (matrix)

This is a summary of what I have learned from my encounters with inner and outer demons. Let this text be food for thought and don’t take my word for anything… but do customize what you read here to fit your own experience.

First, understand that you only experience what you need or choose to experience, and what you need to experience was chosen by you at some other time or level of being. Therefore, you are in some way responsible for all that happens to you, whether you created it or allowed it. The attacks you receive ultimately serve to teach you lessons, and how successfully you defend against these attacks determines how easily you learn your lesson. Learning a lesson before the experience often voids the necessity of having to experience it.

Second, in the absolute sense the Matrix Control System serves to accelerate your spiritual growth, and although its agents see you as the enemy, know that you can utilize them as teachers. You do not need to seek them out, for they will find you as you progress in your learning path. Most
importantly, know that you will never be given anything you cannot choose to handle successfully.

Now, the likelihood of an attack depends upon two factors:

a) **their desire to attack** – the attention you garner  
b) **their ability to attack** – the weakness of your defense

Having strong defenses and lowering your profile as a target reduce the probability of being attacked.

Strong defenses consist of the following:

1) **being aware of your internal weaknesses and countering or watching them closely** — emotional buttons, ego flaws, lack of knowledge and false assumptions, resentment and envy, bias and prejudice against the bitter truth, emotional dependency upon sources of authority, blindspots in your awareness, etc…

2) **being aware of your external weaknesses and countering or watching them closely** — people you depend upon or who depend upon you, who can become unwitting tools of attack via their weaknesses being exploited; aspects of your finances and business which can be sabotaged and thus lead to a cascading series of problems; potential health weaknesses you may have which can be flared up in an attack to wear you down; physical and mechanical problems like car accidents and malfunction, slipping and falling on something to hurt yourself, missing appointments due to various odd mishaps delaying you; and if all that doesn’t work, then the people you care for are attacked in these same areas which necessarily gets you involved.

3) **being resolute and wise in your decisions** — they attack mainly to bias the decisions you haven’t yet made, and to reinforce the wrong decisions you make. This has to do with the Law of Freewill and the STS (negative path) preference to win by their target’s own will to submit. So prior to making the right choice, you may be attacked to keep you from making it. But once you make it, since any further attacks may only confirm for you that you’ve made the right choice, so they tend to stop immediately once that learning plateau has been reached. If you make the wrong choice, they then attack you even harder to make you think you’ve made the right one.

If you are wishy washy, agnostic, and conservative in your decision making, perhaps because you’re afraid of making mistakes or being definitive, you will receive constant attacks because you’re straddling the fence and that is where you’re most easily tipped over to either side by the least amount of force. STS attacks the weakest link at its weakest moment, and being irresolute about your decisions creates just such an opportunity for them. It is better to make a firm decision and be wrong (as then the results show that you have been wrong and you can easily reverse the mistake) than to fear ever being wrong and thus become wishy washy (which makes you uncertain of everything and totally undisciplined in your progress).

Lowering your profile as a target consists of these:

1) **stopping whatever you’re doing that makes you a threat** — not a good option, as that defeats the very purpose of your existence. Any step forward toward independence for yourself and others will naturally shine the spotlight upon you. To reduce attack, don’t cower in the spotlight and return to your former self, but rather move forward with ever increasing strength of your defenses. Gaining knowledge and applying it naturally
ups your defenses – so the very knowledge that makes you a target can protect you against succumbing to attacks. Those who hoard knowledge without taking it seriously enough to apply in life get all the targeting that comes with great knowledge, but possess only half the protection, so they get eliminated pretty quickly.

2) **seeking to learn from all you experience** — if you are open to learning from your experiences, then the more they try to attack you, the more knowledgeable you become. They take a gamble every time they attack – either they win and you become weak, or they lose and you become stronger. It’s your choice. Being egotistical psychopaths prone to wishful thinking about their skill and prowess, they always attack and usually end up shooting themselves in the foot when they attack a strong target.

3) **keeping up a positive emotional frequency** — if you are spazzy, frightful, and fearful, you become a reaction machine, one with buttons so sensitive it takes a simple “boo” to get you to splurge all your emotional energy into your etheric environment which STS forces lap up with delight and then use to hack into your reality more easily next time. You become a puppet they can easily control, and they will do their best to use your reactive condition to their advantage.

Additionally, although 4D STS forces can see beyond linear time and analyze our probable futures and pasts, their perception range is limited due to the narrow spectrum of their soul frequencies. Thus they can only see and predict that which resides within their choice to perceive. If you are in a negative mindset or mood, your probable future is within that narrow spectrum, or alternately, you resonate with the sector of hyperdimensional reality that is their territory. In that case, they can more easily screw with you, predict what you’re going to do next, and thus control you. The solution is to stay out of their probability-detection-range by having composure, being active rather than reactive, and generally keeping up a positive emotional state.

So keeping up your emotional frequency isn’t about shielding yourself from the truth (because you can gain knowledge and stay positive if you choose), but rather it’s a necessary tactical method when involved in a hyperdimensional ambush. Consider it donning your metaphysical body armor and camouflage.

4) **having foresight, awareness, and knowledge** — this makes you less predictable. The more knowledge you have, the more freewill you have, the more choices you can make because you’re aware of those choices, and the harder it is for them to calculate what you will do next. Being unpredictable makes them less efficient in their attack because they must spread their resources to account for a wider range of probable weaknesses.

Some general tips about attacks:

1) **attacks ALWAYS have more than one way of succeeding** — countering one route of attack doesn’t mean you have countered all, and you can be your own worst enemy. For example, when using an agent to sabotage or harass you, they can win through directly sabotaging your efforts, or by getting you to sabotage yourself via overreaction and paranoia. Often, when they cannot harm you directly, they try to scare you so that by your own overreaction you accomplish their goal. In such encounters, you have two adversaries: them and yourself. Know yourself, and know them, and you will never succumb – that’s common sense and also the key advice of Sun Tzu in “The Art of War”.
Another example is this: if their goal is to prevent you from accomplishing yours, then they can win either by sabotaging your goal directly, or getting you to become so distracted with this whole business of “defending against attack” that you forget to continue your original goal. The best defense is a balanced defense. Sabotage and distraction are thus the two key things you must watch for.

Another method of self-sabotage is to become frightful and reactive, which lowers your frequency as mentioned and puts you deeper into their game, which means they have more power over you and your reality. So although defense is necessary, never forget about what you’re defending, and never forget about your own weaknesses and potential for self-sabotage. Add to this the possibility of being abducted and mind programmed with self-destructive thought loops and posthypnotic suggestions, and you can see the importance of watching not only your adversary, but also yourself.

2) **you have more power than they want you to believe** — they have created numerous falsehoods in religion, philosophy, spirituality, politics, and culture designed to disempower you by inducing within you a lack of faith in what you can accomplish. It’s the whole “Oh well, what’s the use” mentality that allows predators to run rampant, not because they are strong, but because people make themselves weak by not standing up for themselves or others. It’s worth at least trying, as that tests your limits rather than falsely assumes them.

3) **you can rarely succeed in fighting them in the dark** — as that is their territory and there are a million directions from which an attack can come invisibly from the dark. But if you drag them into the light by making their tactics visible to everyone, they whither, flee, or in rare cases go bonkers and thus reveal themselves fully. They play dirty, exploiting loopholes and cheating to win, as the ends justify the means for them. For example, winning a debate usually consists of successfully arguing the logic of one’s case. But there is another way of winning: wear down and overwhelm your opponent. This they do by leveling loaded questions and accusations against you faster than you can respond. If you don’t respond, they claim a win. If you do respond, the ignore what you say and immediately throw you another accusation or question, and thus they eventually win when you slip up or give up. The best you can do in that case is see if the fight is really worth fighting, and extracting yourself if it isn’t...often the truth speaks for itself, and you have no obligation to explain yourself to the ignorant who purposely avert their eyes away from the truth.

4) **watch your emotional energy output** — emotions are energy that open doors into other realms. Normally, emotions help you expand your range of action and thus enter new states of being and levels of experience and learning, but your negative emotion and misdirected thoughts can equally be used by STS forces to open doors into your realm. Or to look at it another way, if they cannot directly reach you, they can still taunt you into exposing yourself where they can reach, then hit hard what you reveal. Although negative emotions are helpful sometimes in alarming you to present danger, be wary of indulging in them beyond their initial use as alarms. Also, watch out for interacting with clearly harmful individuals who seem preoccupied with demanding your time and energy – some are decoys sent to milk you of energy, which can then be used to breach your realm (hack your reality) as stated, leading to more severe attacks than was possible before. Also beware of implanted paranoia that cuts you off from potentially fruitful networking opportunities. As you can see, balance is the key – there’s no substitute for discernment.
5) **know that attacks happen on multiple fronts, meaning inside you and outside you simultaneously** — your mood can be artificially depressed by malevolent forces using technology or pure psychic attack, and these can be coupled with external attacks exploiting the external weaknesses mentioned earlier. Your judgment may be detrimentally affected while external conditions are set up to test your judgment and lure you into making unwise decisions. Therefore, when in a negative state of mind, refrain from making important decisions and instead have faith in your sober self, waiting until you sober up before making a decision. But if the situation is urgent, you can center yourself mentally, concentrate upon a happy thought or feeling, and through sheer willpower sober yourself up – then you have the clarity of mind and heart to carry on wisely. Whatever your negative emotion is, just meditate upon its diametric opposite – this establishes an internal feedback cycle that over the span of a couple minutes brings you to it.

6) **employ your intuition and nonphysical guidance** — pay attention that little intuitive voice that has always warned you in the past of danger or unwise moves on your part, it is your Higher Self attempting to communicate with you through your subconscious. If what it conveys matches all the evidence you see, or if nothing you see contradicts what it advises, then you better take it seriously. Your intuition and logic are the most trustworthy aides you have.

Also, pay attention to symbols in your dreams and external waking environment which may convey the presence and nature of an attack. Dreams will generally warn of an upcoming attack or one that is underway. As for symbols in your external waking environment, these are known as omens or synchronicities. Pay attention to them – they often give you a heads up as well. Waking reality is no different from a dream except that it is shared. Just as nightly dreams contain meaningful symbols, so can waking reality contain them. If you pay attention, you will see signs in your environment correlating with hyperdimensional attacks, either as a warning by your subconscious or as a simple byproduct of the attack itself.

An odd but significant form of guidance is the phenomenon of intermittent ear ringing – not tinnitus, which is constant and due to nerve damage, but rather the sporadic type. Ear ringing is generated by your nervous system as an internal audible signal either warning you of psychic intrusion or alerting you to an important thought. The pitch, duration, volume, and apparent location (left, right, both ears, above, below, etc…) communicate different things, and only by observing and correlating them with concurrent events and thoughts can you figure out what each type means. In my case, generally speaking, left ear ringings indicate monitoring by hyperdimensional sources prior to an attack or abduction – while right ear ringings confirm the importance of some thought I was just having. Either way, they signal “Be alert, pay attention.”

7) **call upon help from divine sources** — such as your Higher Self or God or Jesus or whomever you understand to be representative of the divine will. The help you receive will be in the form of knowledge and strength, and occasionally in the form of direct squelching of the attackers if the fight is otherwise terribly unbalanced against you. They can’t always help you directly, but they can help you help yourself in ways you may not be aware of at the time. In your 3D form, you are very limited in what you can do yourself. You are like the pinky of a hand, barely able to flick a fly — but you can flick on the powerful bug zapper; likewise, you can choose to align with and receive assistance from higher divine laws and principles who command far greater power than you could muster via strategy and personal willpower. Have gratitude for their
8) **you cannot win by taking the choices your adversaries give you** — always look for the third option, the way of skipping, skirting, or circumventing the rules they try to foist upon you. This is known as the ‘third man’ theme. The best way to win a game is to stop playing by its rules. Their games are customized to fit what they know about how you react, so stop reacting and alter your methods as fits the situation on the basis of what seems like the smartest thing to do. By gauging your method upon their approach, you are always one step ahead. But generally, it's wise to not even play their games, so watch out for falling into their ambush: stay centered in your territory where the light shines.

Lastly, here is a summary of guidelines to keep in mind when slandered or challenged:

a) **Acknowledge any truth in the criticism** — this ensures that you don’t become delusional by becoming ignorant of potentially constructive criticism.

b) **Remain non-judgmental, observant, impeccable, and calm** — this keeps your emotional frequency elevated and stable, ensures that you don’t overreact, and helps you focus on resolving the situation with finesse.

c) **If necessary, reveal only the universal truth in the situation** — this helps you avoid becoming distracted by trivial facts, such as he-said/she-said drama that is plentiful but worthless for you and others to invest time and energy. The universal truth consists of that which can be applied again elsewhere to help you or another make better choices. Arguing over petty facts and issues is a trap, quicksand that can quickly suck you in while making you believe you’re defending the truth – instead, you’re defending your ego and personality.

d) **Disarm an attack by revealing its underlying mechanism for all to see** — this brings the manipulations into the light, where the manipulator then loses all power except over the most gullible and ignorant of people. People rarely give into manipulations when they know they’re being manipulated, so show them why they are being manipulated and they will refuse to give it power.

e) **Never attack or defend ego, for that puts you dangerously upon their turf** — this is a big one. Anything done out of ego, for the benefit of ego, or in defense of the ego will always come back to bite you. So always act for the highest good and noblest of reasons, unless you want to learn the lesson of their necessity the hard way. Anytime you’re dealing with an attack and applaud yourself for being so fiendish, look again as you may be unwittingly setting up your own booby trap to trip in the future.

f) **The battle is waged for the undecided who deserve an informed choice, not the permanently ignorant** — in other words, when involved in an argument or defending against a slanderous attack, you can’t convince those who have chosen to ignore, and you have no need to fight for those who already see the situation for what it is. Thus, all your arguing, defending, etc... are only for the benefit of those who have yet to choose, who are open to the truth, and who may benefit from learning. If there are none of these (as time goes on, there will be less and less of them as the facts become more than obvious), then there is no point wasting your energy defending yourself. Therefore, know what you’re fighting for, and it’s nothing worth fighting for, then don’t fight.
g) **You cannot and should not override freewill, but you can help people use it** — you cannot reverse people’s choices, but you can help them make more informed ones. This means your energy isn’t spent preaching, but rather sharing what you see and know so that those who have yet to choose can use it for their betterment.

h) **To avoid defeat by distraction or avoidance, never abandon your principles or give up progress for the sake of defense** — as explained before, the counterpart to sabotage is distraction, and you are the only one responsible for succumbing to distraction. Deal with attacks as quickly and efficiently as possible, then get on with your life and don’t dwell on the past. Don’t hold regrets or grudges or dig up the dead, and don’t succumb to those individuals who try to open your wounds.

   Knowledge protects, ignorance endangers.

   Always use love: kind love for the kind, tough love for the tough.

   Follow the compass but watch where you step.

   (index)

**Human Simulacra**

21 February 05 (matrix)

*What if you were to discover that certain individuals in government, corporations, military, academia, media, and the alternative research community are either reprogrammed versions of their former selves or artificial beings entirely? What if you learned these were under the complete control of covert forces possessing a vested interest in manipulating society? Then you would see a hidden order beneath the chaos in current affairs that leaves others with more limited understanding shaking their heads in puzzlement. (and you’d take politics a hell of a lot less seriously).*

   free e-book: HumanSimulacra.pdf (380kB)

   (index)

**Realm Dynamics**

17 June 05 (matrix)

Version 0.2 :: June 30th 2005 :: montalk@montalk.net :: Download PDF

[The principles of Realm Dynamics were inspired by the Cassiopaeans, expanded by the Nexus Seven, refined through numerous discussions with friends, and confirmed by experience.]

**Introduction**

An ancient hermetic axiom states that everything is mind, everything vibrates. Since each living thing is uniquely conscious, each living thing carries a unique vibratory signature. The soul broadcasts a rich spectrum of vibrations, which through the principle of resonance attracts a corresponding spectrum of experiences. Souls of a common frequency share common realms of experience and tend to cross paths in life.

This is the study of realm dynamics, how vibrations influence experience, and how experience
influences vibration. The simplicity of correspondence between soul vibration and personal experience betrays the astounding nature of its implications. For instance, realm dynamics explains how our daily experiences are the end effects of hyperdimensional processes, why people with victim or predator mentalities attract each other, how dissonance between individuals attracts synchronistic triggers for confrontation, how learning a lesson ahead of time prevents it from manifesting as experience, why a pure heart protects one from danger, and how personal parting of ways and the upcoming Shift are different degrees of precisely the same phenomenon.

Vibration

When we speak of vibration, we are really talking about waves with amplitude, frequency, and phase. Amplitude is the strength, frequency the rapidity of fluctuation, and phase the alignment or timing of a wave. For a wave to exist and propagate there must be a source and medium, that which generates vibration and that which carries it outward. For instance, a guitar string initiates vibrations that travel through air in the form of alternating peaks and troughs in air pressure.

Soul vibrations are no less tangible than sound waves, though their nature and medium of propagation are more exotic. They employ the same medium through which light and radio waves travel but are made of potential waves rather than electromagnetic waves. This means the soul vibratory field (also known as the aura) consists of fields and waves far subtler than electric or magnetic fields, which is why conventional instruments cannot detect the aura. Nevertheless this field is rife with patterned energy and information — the very stuff of thought and emotion.

Realm dynamics is essentially about quantum physics, or at least how quantum principles allow consciousness to interface with physical reality. Quantum physics calculates probable futures and consciousness selects which one to experience. But whereas conventional science says quantum effects are limited to the subatomic scale, here we acknowledge that perhaps quantum phenomena are just as active in the macroscopic world and actually drive the progression of our experiences. Because quantum processes determine not only what we perceive but also through what we perceive, we are largely unaware of their influence. The situation is similar to swimmers floating down a river at equal speed, each swimmer relatively stationary to the other; by looking only at each other they may conclude they are in still water, that motion in the water is only evident if they look down and observe the tiny eddies swirling about. Conventional science only looks downward and fails to realize that a massive quantum current is what moves us through time. But how exactly does consciousness manifest experience?

The Fractal Hologram

At each moment in time our universe is but one slice of a complex web of infinite possibilities that is unchanging and eternal. Technically this multiverse may be termed the “state vector” or “wave function” of reality. It is a fractal hologram that zooms forever into the future. The fractal itself does not change, it is only our mind that moves through and thereby generates for itself the illusion of space and time. To understand this process, one must understand how holograms work.

Holograms encode information by recording the interference pattern between two waves of common frequency, one wave being uniform in consistency and the other having its phase altered by the information to be encoded.
The traditional way of making a hologram goes as follows: a laser beam is split in two, one half shining onto photographic film and the other bouncing off an object before shining onto the film. What is recorded on the film is an interference pattern between these two beams, encoding the topography of the object. After the film is developed, the same laser illuminating it will be modulated in phase and intensity by the pattern and will reproduce the encoded information, projecting from it a visual replica of the object. The nature of the image projected forth from a hologram depends on the angle, intensity, and frequency (color) of the laser.

Frequency determines what information may be accessed. If the hologram is recorded with a red laser, a green laser will fail to elicit an image. Multiple images can be encoded into a hologram, each called forth by a corresponding laser color.

The angle and region of illumination decides what particular information from the range available is selected for projection. In the case of holographic film, the projected image rotates with a rotation in the laser’s angle of incidence, or changes to a different image if the laser shines upon a part of the film upon which was recorded a different object. Angle and position are both types of phases, so it is phase that selects from a given range what image to bring forth.

Lastly, intensity of illumination (amplitude of the wave) determines the degree of fidelity in the projected image. The greater the amplitude, the more accurate and complete the decoded information.

The holographic process has metaphysical parallels. The mind of the Creator corresponds to the laser source, archetypes correspond to the objects recorded, and the matrix of existence corresponds to the photographic film. It follows that we as individual units of consciousness are the illuminating laser. The laser’s color is the frequency of our emotions, its phase our thought patterns, and its amplitude our level of intent.

Just as laser color determines the layer of accessible holographic information, so does our emotional nature determine the archetypal range of accessible experience. Of this range, our thoughts determine the particular phase angle from which this archetype is experienced. And the strength of our intent determines how accurately and vividly it manifests.

This is no metaphor; the universe is indeed holographic. But it is also fractal as briefly mentioned. A fractal is infinitely complex and allows inward or outward zooming without limit. Each zoom level inward is a subset of all previous zooms. In our current state, we are zooming into the fractal and perceiving this motion as progress into the future. And naturally the future is a subset of all previous probable futures, though in truth time is illusory because all levels of the fractal exist simultaneously. Once again, this fractal is holographic; we illuminate portions of it in accordance with our emotional nature, thoughts, and intent.

Reals

But our emotional nature is complex and the frequencies comprising it are numerous. Therefore our consciousness vibrates with a spectrum of frequencies and consequently accesses from the hologram a spectrum of experiential archetypes. Each person has a unique vibratory spectrum, though different individuals may share certain frequencies. This spectrum identifies not only soul composition but also one’s unique learning path in life. Our temperament reflects our soul nature
and determines the *realm* of our experiences.

Realms are the personal worlds we inhabit, our sphere of influence, range of perception, and region of activity. They are specific areas of the hologram we illuminate in accordance with our vibratory spectrum, our being, our *essence*.

Every individual projects and occupies a unique but not necessarily independent realm; some frequencies are more or less shared and account for consensual realities and mutual experiences. Realms can therefore intersect, supercede, or be subsets of other realms.

**Realms as Themes of Experience**

The inhabitants of two intersecting realms inevitably cross paths and exchange lessons. These lessons are of an archetypal nature determined by what part of the hologram both realms commonly access.

When one realm is the subset of another, those occupying the greater realm will fully understand and perceive those of the more limited realm but not vice versa. The difference may be small between teacher and student or adult and child, or great between man and animal or hyperdimensional being and man. Small differences account for differences in level of understanding while large differences between realms give rise to differences of perception. This simply means one has a vibratory spectrum that includes and surpasses another.

Sometimes two realms are independent, sharing few but the most fundamental of frequencies. For instance, two people may share the lowest frequencies placing them on the same physical plane but their difference in life path will make each an insignificant character in the life of the other. They may cross paths but only in a superficial manner. And if they are forced to interact or communicate, there is bound to be mutual misunderstanding and lack of interest at best and aversion or confrontation at worst. When the difference between realms is extreme, beings of each realm may not even physically perceive each other.

Realms are somewhat like movie scripts, each person being the star of his script but all scripts including others as major, minor, or background characters. The greater the congruence between two realms, the more important the role played by each character in the other’s script. The importance of a character is not determined by how frequently we interact with them, but how meaningfully we do so. We may cross paths with a background character every day, perhaps a neighbor or coworker and they leave no more than a fading impression on our souls. Others we may meet only once in life during an experience so meaningful that it marks us for life.

**Perceptual Limitations**

Realms also signify the boundary of our perception. Sometimes we cannot see the point another is trying to make, or else we cannot understand why they do what they do, which indicates our realm does not extend into certain regions of the hologram they are familiar with. So on a mundane level, realms delineate what you can identify with and notice.

On a more significant level realms define what you have the ability to perceive; it is possible for another being to be so far outside your realm that you cannot even perceive them and vice versa. This is for beings whose realms are mutually independent.
As for beings occupying realms of which yours is a tiny subset, hyperdimensional beings for instance, they are normally outside your range of perception but can choose to manifest visibly by projecting their consciousness into a narrow band of vibration that matches yours. This concept is easy to grasp if you consider the mundane interpretation of “realm”. When you encounter someone whose realm is a subset of yours, say a small child who has yet to learn the lessons you have already learned, you can choose to simplify your language and communicate on their level. Often this requires using metaphors they can comprehend. Likewise hyperdimensional entities wrap themselves in visual forms that we can comprehend. These visual forms are alternate expressions of their vibratory archetypes just as metaphors are alternate expressions of meaning.

Probable Futures
[If physics gives you a headache, please skip ahead to “Metaphysics of Realm Dynamics”]

Quantum physics defines a wave function as a probability field. When specified as an equation it can give information about the probability that a subatomic particle, say an electron, will be in a certain position or state of energy when measured. Wave functions can be thought of as a cloud of possibilities from which only one possibility manifests when observed. It is one small region of the universal hologram from which one angle of information is projected. Quantum wave functions are the physical basis of “realms” and realms define the reach of our personal wave functions.

Unlike electrons we are incredibly complex and the wave function of our being is far richer in composition than that of any subatomic particle. Nevertheless the principles of quantum physics are just as valid for us in the macroscopic realm as for electrons in the subatomic realm. On the macroscopic scale these quantum principles manifest as the principles of realm dynamics.

Phase Selection
When a subatomic particle is measured in the lab, its wave function locks phase with the instrument’s wave function. Whoever reads the instrument locks phase with its wave function and in the end the observed particle, instrument, and observer all occupy the same reality by having zero phase difference between them. This phase is a physical quantity and is commonly called “geometric phase” or “berry’s phase” or “aharonov-bohm phase” (different names for the same phase in different situations). This phase is nothing more than the physical alignment of the wave function. To repeat, for two things to occupy the same reality and interact causally with each other they must have zero phase difference between them.

In realm dynamics the situation is a bit more complex. Geometric phase says nothing about the characteristics of consciousness. For that we need esoteric phase. Mathematically speaking, while the geometric phase is real, the esoteric phase is imaginary. Metaphysically speaking, while the geometric phase is a material property, esoteric phase is purely a conscious property. Geometric and esoteric phase are but the real and imaginary components of a “quaternion” phase characterizing the alignment of both mental and material wave functions.

To understand the role of esoteric and geometric phases in context of the holographic principle, recall how the image projected from an optical hologram depends on the angle of the laser, its frequency, and where on the hologram this laser shines.

The geometric phase of quantum physics is simply the angle of illumination. It is only important
after the frequency and illumination region have already been selected. Just as selecting the laser angle determines the viewing angle of the final image, so does selecting the geometric phase precipitate one observable state from a wave function.

What about the region of illumination and frequency of the laser? These would correspond to the esoteric phase. Thoughts, emotion, and intent shape the esoteric phase to determine which part of the hologram is illuminated; this specifies one’s realm. Geometric phase then selects what tangible experiences manifest from the given range of probable futures. For the mind to experience a specific probable future, it must achieve both esoteric and geometric phase lock.

Together, geometric and esoteric phase determine where we are located on the universal holographic fractal at any moment in time. Our realm is therefore a wave function that extends from this location spherically outward into all directions of space, time, and dimension.

**Electromagnetism and the Aura**

Geometric phase is sensitive to sub-electromagnetic fields, known as potential fields. These are the building blocks of electric and magnetic fields and are comparatively simpler in structure. Whereas magnetic fields are analogous to a bundle of water vortices, the potential fields are more like water currents. By uncurling a magnetic field one can generate a plain potential field capable of shifting the geometric phase of an electron, for instance. Technology exists to create such fields and allow the manipulation of geometric phase.

Esoteric phase can only be modulated by superpotential fields, which are even simpler in structure than potential fields. Whereas potential fields are like water currents, superpotential fields represent the water itself. Only two things are capable of generating and manipulating such fields: consciousness and certain hyperdimensional technologies.

Conscious beings radiate potential and superpotential fields containing various patterns, vibrations, and intensities paralleling the laser’s region of illumination, frequency, and brightness. This sub-electromagnetic field extends spherically outward into the universal hologram, illuminating regions within physical, temporal, and dimensional proximity. This glowing cocoon defines one’s realm.

The portion of this multidimensional field intersecting our physical plane is known as the aura. The aura is a combination of potential and superpotential fields emitted by living entities and serving as an interface matrix between the originating consciousness and the external environment. Standard instruments cannot detect it because the fields comprising the aura are structurally simpler than electromagnetic fields. Specialized technology is needed, some of which has been patented and the rest restricted for use by advanced military and alien factions.

The aura is a resonance field that encodes which region of the hologram is accessible for phase lock and what experiences are therefore attracted. To a limited extent the aura maps one’s wave function and realm. It drops off linearly with distance, causing realms to often be physically localized. This is why the vibe of a person or place becomes noticeable only when one is sufficiently close.

But because the aura is only the *physical*, albeit subtle, component of one’s total vibratory field and the rest being in imaginary space, realms may also extend through mind-space and drop off with degree of conscious proximity. Two people far beyond the reach of each other’s auric range may still share realms through mental and emotional proximity. Long distance relationships or internet
discussion forums are examples.

To summarize, one could say that the aura is a sub-electromagnetic field that attracts themes of experience but does not explicitly select which particular experience manifests. The latter is left to personal choice and circumstance. Archetypal elements within consciousness become symbolic patterns in the aura that resonate and attract corresponding experiences from the universal hologram.

**Metaphysics of Realm Dynamics**

With the physics of realm dynamics behind us, we are ready to examine the metaphysics. As explained, consciousness generates a field that resonates and attracts meaningful experience. But what is meaningful to one person may be old news to another. Hence your soul vibrations outline your emotional learning path — what sequence of experiences are meaningful and have enough emotional charge to catalyze your spiritual growth.

Emotions as we know them are surrogate motivators. This means they push us into doing what is beyond our normal motivation to do. Without emotion, we do what is only within our understanding and programming to do. That is our natural state of being, our realm at equilibrium.

When we are happy, we smile and become more animated than usual and our realm momentarily extends slightly along that direction. When we are angry, we may throw insults or objects and our realm boundary likewise deforms to reflect and reinforce those actions and their consequences.

So emotions alter realm boundaries by momentary illuminating new regions of the hologram. They also influence what realms we occupy. As *Bringers of the Dawn* states, emotions can carry us into other dimensions. Moving to a different realm state may be simple as changing your attitude and thereby accessing a happier sequence of experiences or as profound as shifting out of this reality into a higher density. When the laser switches color, it brings out parts of the hologram previously inaccessible.

Spiritual growth is the never-ending expansion of one’s realm to encompass deeper and wider aspects of the hologram, to increase the vibrancy and strength of one’s being. This involves enriching and expanding one’s vibratory spectrum and raising the intensity of illumination. The richer the spectrum, the closer it moves toward white light containing all colors, meaning the closer consciousness arrives to unifying with the hologram and the Source that recorded it.

When we are in need of a lesson our vibratory spectrum is lacking certain frequencies; the aura is devoid of a particular pattern. If our vibratory spectrum is missing a component, there is nothing within us to repel through dissonance the corresponding component in the hologram. And so we essentially allow into manifestation that which we most need to experience.

Stated another way, at equilibrium our realm boundary contains missing areas into which fit corresponding probable futures. These probable futures contain significant experiences whose emotional component is sufficient to fuel the expansion of our realm boundary and fill the gap. Once a lesson is learned, the new equilibrium state no longer invites those types of experiences because the gap is filled, but failing to learn the lesson leaves the gap a bit wider than before. This is why failing to learn a lesson the first time causes it to repeat in various forms of escalating severity.
Different people can learn the same lesson in different ways because each individual has a unique emotional learning path. What experiences are significant to one may be incomprehensible or unnecessarily harsh to another. How the lesson archetype manifests as experience depends on the emotional responsiveness of the individual in question. Some learn better with compassion and joy, others with fear and pain — whatever is the most efficient surrogate motivator. Each emotion has a certain frequency (an oscillation in the esoteric phase) and like the laser accessing a particular holographic layer according to its frequency, people with different temperaments have access to different layers of the hologram and thereby attract different probable futures for any given lesson archetype.

Thus it is temperament that most significantly influences the nature of one’s personal experiences. Temperament is merely one’s life attitude and emotional climate, the spectrum of frequencies at which the soul in its current state can naturally resonate. It measures our response-ability to learning opportunities. We can place temperament on a scale with programmed reactivity on the lower end and conscious activity on the higher end.

Temperaments that are neurotic, paranoid, worried, fearful, angry or hostile are implicitly reactive. The associated soul resonance spectrum is centered around the lower frequencies, near that of physical matter. Matter is perfectly reactive and deterministic; for every action there is an equal and opposite reaction. People with low vibratory frequencies are highly reactive and at the mercy of external influences.

Temperaments that are calm, observant, and discerning are active rather than reactive because awareness and freewill predicate responses to experience. The associated soul resonance frequencies are higher on the scale, closer to that of pure consciousness. In contrast to reactions, actions are nondeterministic for they follow from true choice rather than the predetermined effect of some cause.

The scale from absolute reactivity to absolute activity is bounded by matter on the lowest end and infinite consciousness on the highest end. We as individuals are somewhere in between, our location determined by our chosen emotional learning path. Therefore our soul vibratory spectrum measures where we stand on the grand cycle of spiritual evolution.

Individuals who tread the path of reactivity require relatively abrasive catalysts to get them moving. But because every learning experience offers choice in how to proceed, there is always the opportunity to climb the frequency scale and become more conscious and less reactive, which in turn makes life experiences less abrasive.

Collective Choices and Lessons

When people gather into mutual physical or mental proximity their vibratory fields sum to produce a collective field resonating strongly at frequencies shared among them. Gaps in this field invite collective lessons and experiences. This collective field is self-reinforcing because it exerts repulsion upon anyone or anything whose spectrum is dissonant with the collective frequency. For instance, people entering the field will either be repelled or attracted depending on how closely their aural profiles match that of the collective.

Cities and neighborhoods are examples of physical groups generating a collective field whose
intensity falls off with physical distance. Getting too close to an area with vibrations strongly dissonant to one’s own may evoke feelings of uneasiness, suffocation, or panic; entering areas with resonant vibrations will invite feelings of comfort and vitality.

Sometimes people move to a particular place because it provides the necessary probable futures that catalyze personal evolution. But once those catalysts are exhausted, the realm boundary gaps formerly inviting those experiences become filled in and cause dissonance. This dissonance automatically evokes from the hologram varied catalysts for separation. In other words, when it is time for someone to move to a more fruitful area, improbable events manifest to force relocation.

When dissonance is weak between individual and group, repulsion may manifest as emotional uneasiness or apathy; when strong, friction may ignite emotional fire through negative experiences that catalyze the severing of physical or mental interaction between dissonant elements.

**Frequency Wars**

Beneath the threshold of ordinary awareness, “frequency wars” take place between groups competing over the same physical or mental environment. When subtle, these battles take place not with confrontation so much as the establishment of dominant frequencies that overwhelm and subconsciously repel the opposing side. Because amplitude of vibration is the deciding factor, a few individuals with low but strong vibrations can overrun a larger group with higher but weaker vibrations, or at least damp their frequencies and thus drag them down.

Internet message boards are examples of mental groups whose collective fields diminish with mental distance. As discussed earlier, mental distance implies that the less one invests emotional energy and mental focus upon a particular nonphysical group like a forum, the less one feels its collective field. For instance, it takes only a few highly “negative” or fragmented individuals to join and infect a message board if the membership is unaware and weak in vibration. They need not be violent or hostile, just firmly and loudly anchored in their low vibrations. Other members may interpret growing feelings of emotional apathy or uneasiness as their own and withdraw their energies from the collective field out of lack of enthusiasm, thus allowing a low vibration to dominate and repel all present and future members of positive inclination. And if dissonance is particularly strong, visible confrontation will erupt and force the expulsion of individuals dissonant with the dominant vibrations of the collective field.

But these are just microcosmic reflections, or subset realm dynamics, of a bigger frequency war taking place between the hyperdimensional forces of oppression and liberation. Hyperdimensional beings are beyond linear time and what is for us a range of probable futures, presents, and pasts is simultaneously their native territory. They possess greater degrees of freedom than we do in navigating the hologram.

**Hyperdimensional Wars**

Physical wars use physical force to gain advances in physical territory. But a hyperdimensional war is fought on a hyperdimensional battlefield extending forwards and backwards in time and sideways through parallel dimensions. Our soul vibrations and the realm we choose to occupy determine which probable futures we access, or alternately, which hyperdimensional territory we connect with and thereby reinforce. The hyperdimensional war is largely fought through us, through the
frequencies we choose to hold.

For any lesson archetype a variety of experiences are viable for learning. The lower frequency paths attract cruder experiences than the higher frequency paths. For example, an individual or collective lesson about independence may require the pain of enslavement for the lower path while victory over tyranny may suffice for the higher paths. Only the first is advantageous to tyranny. Therefore the hyperdimensional forces of oppression have a crucial interest in lowering the frequency of those they wish to enslave so that the enslaved attract subjugation as their preferred mode of learning.

This is why hostile forces often seem to respect freewill — they require that targets be within a certain frequency bandwidth resonant to their own before they can lock on and manipulate in a causal manner. Remember that phase lock is necessary for two things to causally interact, for the hyperdimensional subtleties of realm dynamics to evaporate and leave only the physical laws of cause and effect. By resonating within their frequency spectrum, you enter their hyperdimensional territory and they acquire the ability to physically overpower you.

Realm Dynamics of Abductions

Abductions are a good example. There are countless individuals, myself included, who have been targeted for elimination. The question is why the abductors do not simply kill their targets. Sometimes they do, but only because sometimes they can.

Individuals occupying a low soul frequency vibration such as military personnel or the extremely paranoid are sufficiently within the proper vibratory spectrum to get abducted and mutilated or consumed. The same may be said for individuals whose auras are weak, as is the case with chronic drug abusers. Also, the auras of young children are not fully formed because the soul has not fully seated into the body, so their realms are far easier to penetrate than those of adults. Abductions take place most frequently during childhood when the mind is both malleable and realm easily breached, allowing the opportune installation of mind programming systems.

As mentioned, the lowest soul frequency is that which keeps us connected to the physical plane and causally interacting with each other. Abductions employ hyperdimensional teleportation technology that momentarily removes one from the physical plane. This presents certain problems for the abductors, namely that the most viable avenue for phase lock must be momentarily abandoned. This severs the thread of causality that would otherwise provide a clear line of continuity between the individual’s incarnative choice to submit to the laws of physicality and its ultimate consequence at the hands of the abductors.

Manipulation must therefore occur through more subtle openings in the realm boundary, through the individual’s various spiritual, psychological, and emotional vulnerabilities. Thus the preferred method of manipulation is mind programming. At a higher level the individual allows exploitation of his weaknesses because there is always a marginal chance for the learning of a lesson and patching of the weakness. For instance, mind programming is allowed only because the individual can, through self-control and self-observation, become more focused and conscious should he or she choose to be active rather than reactive. Every experience attracted can move one up or down the frequency scale depending on how one chooses to perceive and utilize these experiences. It is unfortunate, however, that many abductees do succumb and at some level choose the path of further manipulation and even death.
It is dangerous getting within physical proximity of an underground base because one is then close enough to be physically abducted without use of teleportation. The thread of causality stays intact and affords the abductors greater freedom in handling the target. In more fortunate cases the individual has enough residual acausal defenses to stave off the worst consequences, but much more can be done during such abductions than through more standard procedures involving teleportation over great distances. These opportunities are frequently used to install new “hardware” and “software,” perhaps implants and subconscious coding systems providing for remote programming so that future abductions are not necessary. The military/government factions are keen on this technology. It allows them to send programming signals to remote targets anytime, anywhere. It is not uncommon for abductees to be hypnotically programmed to travel to a dangerous location where they may be physically abducted. So despite realm limitations, hostile forces are adept at leveraging their resources.

Negative Attractors
The degree to which negative hyperdimensional forces manifest tangibly in one’s life varies with resonance. Some people are more in tune with low frequency vibrations and experience the presence of negative entities far more objectively than those whose vibrations are primarily elsewhere in the spectrum; the latter encounter hostile forces far more subjectively, fleetingly, and ambiguously.

The greatest attractors of alien-related phenomena are fear, paranoia, jumpiness, and obsession. These are lower frequency characteristics that make one reactive, easily predictable, and thus easily controllable. Abductees who experience the most indubitable variety of encounters with hostile entities are often neurotic, obsessed, fearful, and/or paranoid.

One could argue that having objective experiences of a horrifying nature would make one neurotic, but such experiences are merely the end result of a vicious cycle of frequency attracting experience and experience biasing one’s frequency. At each turn of the cycle there is choice to regain control over one’s emotions and reactivity through the practice of nonchalance, calmness, and a positive attitude.

But some abductees are resistant, enjoy feeling “chosen”, and are not in favor of ending their alien encounters. Or perhaps they simply cannot escape suffering the karmic consequences of choices made in this life or previous ones, such as making a pact with the dark side. The causal thread established by such a pact is difficult but not impossible to cut; doing so involves renouncing past agreements and raising one’s frequency and awareness.

Realm Depressors
Consistently maintaining a high soul frequency is absolutely essential for staying out of trouble. But this takes effort because we are immersed in ambient fields that can bias our own. Some of these fields are astrological in origin and fluctuate with the various lunar and planetary cycles. Other examples include the collective fields generated by physical or mental gatherings of individuals.

If these fields are sufficiently strong they can entrain the soul vibrations of those within their reach. For instance, the moon generates an extremely strong low frequency field within a few days of new or full, and this negatively biases the temperaments of people vulnerable to its influence. Reactivity
rises and lessons of a highly abrasive emotional nature tend to increase around such times.

Not all these biasing fields are natural. Some can be technologically generated via fluctuating potential and superpotential fields. For instance, it may be possible for microwave towers to triangulate standing electromagnetic waves whose magnetic and electric field components cancel, leaving only an oscillating potential field capable of suppressing the aura and exacerbating emotional sensitivity. The conductive grid formed by chemtrails can also create vibrating potential fields that suppress the mental and emotional balance as well as the auric integrity populations irradiated. Sometimes it is not necessary to use such advanced methods...often cruder methods for manipulating thought and emotions are employed that simply throw neurochemical and hormonal levels off balance.

Nevertheless, it is important to remember that soul frequency can temporarily drop when overpowered by ambient sub-electromagnetic fields, such as when one is within the mental or physical proximity of a low frequency source. Of course it is possible to rebuff such influences if one is sufficiently aware, vitalized, and centered. When the ambient low frequency fields amplify, it feels like someone has turned up the “gravity” and more strength is needed to stay upright and balanced. It is possible during such times to mentally connect with a higher frequency realm and thereby remain centered. This requires an inward meditation and contemplation of higher ideals and archetypes.

Other sources of frequency depressors include thunderstorms, direct psychic skirmishes between hyperdimensional factions, physical proximity to their crafts, psychic attacks, and the immediate presence of demonic astral entities or negative thoughtforms.

Psychic attacks require that an entity use intent to get within mental proximity of a target and unleash a barrage of low frequency energy. This attempts to overpower the target’s own field and achieve phase lock, after which causal forms of damage (as specified through visualization) may proceed.

Thunderstorms are physical reflections of the tension and release associated with realm dissonance and separation, thus the classic association between emotional tempests and atmospheric types. Preceding such storms, low frequency energy fields intensify. (Wilhelm Reich called this energy “deadly orgone.”)

Often this archetype of conflict extends into the hyperdimensional realms and correlates with battles taking place in other dimensions whose effects spill into our realm; thus our personal experiences often reflect “battles between the gods”.

Interestingly, whether we succumb to lower frequencies or choose to “weather the storm” may affect the outcome of such hyperdimensional skirmishes. For one realm to influence another requires some level of mutual entanglement.

Some clouds reflect the presence of hyperdimensional ships hovering just beyond the dimensional veil. These clouds tend to be geometric in shape. Cloudships belonging to dark entities radiate an intense low frequency field that can induce feelings of doom or aggression in the population below and odd defensive behavior in animals. The darker the energy, the more foreboding the cloud and violent the storms that precipitate. Such ships tend to gather near critical points on the timeline where reality is most easily influenced to their advantage. By getting close enough to the place and time of an “interesting” region of the hologram, dark entities can more accurately read the local
probable future trajectories and calculate what manipulations are necessary to ensure the most devastating probable future. In the case of human disasters, this assists the greatest harvesting of lifeforce energy.

**Energy**

Causal interactions involve exchanges of energy. For two realms to exchange energy they must share some degree of resonance. The weaker the resonance, the more energy is needed for entities of one realm to directly affect those of another. Negative entities are usually not in full resonance with their targets and are therefore limited in what they can directly do to them. However, with additional energy they can compensate for weak resonance and impact realms otherwise beyond their influence.

This energy is known as loosh, identically the lifeforce energy harvested from human suffering, the emotional energy expended in the learning of lessons, and the psychic energy expelled through prayer and ritual. For every frequency of vibration, the soul may emit loosh at that frequency. A comparison may be drawn to laser energy of a particular color. Entities with low soul frequencies consume energy of a low frequency.

Not only does loosh fuel the expansion and crossing of realm boundaries as discussed earlier in context of learning lessons and surrogate motivators, but it allows negative entities to more strongly manifest in the realms of their targets. Loosh is a commodity in higher realms because it is the very fuel of transdimensional navigation and conquest.

Energy harvested from one region can be rerouted to another. For example, a natural disaster in one part of the world may provide negative entities with sufficient energy to penetrate the realms of targets elsewhere. Other sources of energy include occult and religious rituals. Sunday worship provides “mass” amounts of energy and affords negative forces easier attack opportunities on Sunday than other days of the week. The moon plays an important part in energy harvesting by depressing global frequencies twice a month and initiating a veritable feeding frenzy for negative entities; this is what Gurdjieff meant by mankind being food for the moon.

**Realm Breach**

The ultimate objective of any hyperdimensional ambush is realm breach, the penetration through a realm boundary. Like a syringe breaking through skin, realm breach allows direct injection of disruptive influences into the target realm. This operation consists of three steps: stalking, baiting, and bridging.

Stalking is the act of reading the weaknesses of a target and moving into position to exploit those weaknesses. This is achieved either through remote monitoring or direct sampling of the auric field. Methods of remote monitoring include remote viewing and data gathered through neural implants.

Remote viewing requires that the observer be within mental proximity of the target and have sufficient frequency bandwidth to access a good portion of the target’s probable futures. Hostile aliens and their subordinate human military factions occupy a narrow bandwidth and must use psychically talented abductees possessing greater bandwidth to remote view a wider range of probable futures. Such abductees may either be teleported into an underground base or under hypnotic trance dictate information about assigned targets, or if implanted with remote mind
programming technology they may be utilized as such while asleep in their beds.

Direct sampling of the auric field necessitates both physical proximity and a stimulated emission of vibratory energy. For instance, black helicopters outfitted with frequency sampling equipment may hover loudly near the target in order to induce a fear/panic reaction that stimulates the soul into giving off a measurable vibratory response. At the very least this provides an immediate readout of one’s vulnerabilities, and at most it pushes one into deeper fear and paranoia that puts one further into their vibratory territory. The aura can also be sampled when a target interacts face-to-face with certain implanted individuals.

Once vulnerabilities are ascertained, the target may be programmed accordingly and baited into dropping his or her frequency, committing self-sabotage, and attracting through realm boundary gaps a disruptive variety of learning lessons. Overreaction to these disruptive experiences may further drop frequency and allow for a more intensive round of programming and baiting. Through this process the programmers can run a careless target into the ground.

A common form of realm baiting involves strangeness for the sake of strangeness, weird experiences that have no point other than to arouse obsessive intrigue in the target. For the unfortunate recipients, curiosity leads nowhere but further into the trap. That these inexplicable or mysterious experiences are real is undeniable, however they are often decoys void of deeper significance. Trying to find that deeper meaning is simply opening the door to more of the same, and in this way life can get strange indeed and madness is not an uncommon result. Every drop in frequency drops another bridge across the castle moat.

Synchronicity
According to Jung, synchronicities are meaningful coincidences. They function as waking dream symbols and communicate the presence of something significant beneath the threshold of conscious awareness. Synchronicities tend to appear during hyperdimensional activity or prior to emotionally charged events and expansions in awareness. In general, they are precursors to either realm expansion or realm breach.

Moving realm boundaries generate shockwaves that radiate spherically into the surrounding holographic region. An emotional experience several hours in the future may send shockwaves backward in time, which upon impacting the present realm induces vibrations that resonate and attract corresponding synchronicities. These meaningful coincidences share the same archetypal basis as the emotional event having generated the shockwave; the wave shares the frequency of its source. Thus synchronicities often precede learning experiences and carry a symbolic nature that reflects the nature of the impending event.

In fact, any perturbation in the realm boundary will inevitably generate precursor synchronicities that give information about the source of disturbance. A looming realm breach, for instance, will be preceded by foreboding synchronicities such as omens or the sighting of certain warning numbers. Because the archetype filters through a symbolic lexicon before manifesting, the same warning may manifest differently for different people depending on what symbols they find meaningful. Some symbols are more universal than others. Interpreting them should be handled no differently than interpreting dream symbols.
Discontinuities

When numerous people share the same environment, their collective field attracts a coordinated set of experiences. This means one probable future manifests for all that somehow accommodates the learning requirements of each individual. The greater the dissonance between individuals contributing to a collective field, the more contorted and improbable this future must be to smooth out any discontinuities.

Reality can get strange when one’s vibratory spectrum is significantly out of sync with that of the environment. Consider people who are either temporarily or chronically obsessive and paranoid about alien abductions, government monitoring, or the matrix control system. For reasons already explained, they may attract blatant forms of harassment and a plethora of unusual paranormal phenomena most people cannot fathom much less believe. What if they enter a collective realm whose vibratory spectrum is very different from their own, say someplace public with lots of average people requiring relatively mundane experience? Then reality will contort to accommodate both realms, though sometimes without much success when uncanny glitches indicate cracks in the illusion. Instead of seeing aliens or demonic entities in public, which would surely scare the hell out of everyone else as well, their experiences of monitoring and harassment will come through elements that seem ordinary to ordinary people. This way both can have their realm and live it too. They may hear a random person mumble cryptic phrases a bit too uncanny to be mere coincidence, they may notice people watching and following them, they may encounter harassers whose eyes indicate the momentary presence of a demonic being. But to everyone else these vehicles of harassment seem like ordinary characters: the homeless man by the gas station seemingly asking someone for change, the group of diners near engaging in a bit of people-watching, the guy serving coffee getting a bit cranky at some customer.

Schizophrenia aside, these disturbing experiences are very real and can be logged as objective evidence, though attempting to do so often negates their ability to manifest. Objective proof is that which can bring the experiences of one realm forcibly into another, bypassing the learning process and violating freewill.

But improbable experiences need not be negative. One can have a high frequency and attract experiences that are strangely positive with things just working out. Something as simple as getting nothing but green lights all the way to a destination is significant to the one experiencing it, but to all others just another car went by. If the discontinuity is extreme, one meets the strangest positive synchronicities and helpful characters.

Prime Numbers as Archetypal Realms

Another way to understand how realms coordinate is to think in terms of numbers. Since frequency is but a number, we can assign a unique number to any unique realm to represent the wavelength of its fundamental vibration.

Recall that phase lock is necessary for entities of one realm to interact with those of another – waves can only lock into alignment if they match up, even if only periodically. This periodic interval is simply the least common multiple of their various wavelengths. The least common multiple of several realm numbers represents the number of their collective realm. Through this collective realm, subsets can enter into mutual phase lock because they all “fit” into its number. For
instance, realms 2 and 3 fit perfectly into collective realm 6. Realms 7, 9, and 11 fit perfectly into collective realm 693.

Higher realm numbers indicate lower probability and less harmony, greater discontinuity and contortion. How this meshes with strange experiences brought on by frequency discontinuities is illustrated as follows: consider a collective field formed by individuals in realms 2, 4, and 5. The collective field is 20, quite an ordinary number. Then let’s say someone with realm 53 enters. The collective field jumps to 1060 to accommodate all, indicating quite a high level of improbability and strangeness. This simply means that a far less probable future is attracted when there is abrasion between vibrations. It also illustrates why dissonance between individuals brings about improbable scenarios of confrontation and separation.

Notice that some numbers fit into others. Realm 13 fits into realm 39 for instance. Qualitatively speaking, this says that the latter is a subset of the first. Individuals in realm 13 can enter realm 39 but not vice versa. To illustrate, we in the third dimension may occupy realm 39 while hyperdimensional beings are native to realm 13 — they can choose to phase lock with us if they so desire, or remain beyond our range of perception. Lower realm number means shorter wavelength and higher frequency.

The realm number of physical existence itself must be astronomically large due to the participation of unfathomable varieties of conscious life. This of course means the vibration of physicality has the longest wavelength and the lowest frequency. Physical existence is the ultimate subset of all realms. It is the arena through which beings can choose to engage in mutual causal interaction. The collective realm of all consciousness in this universe may be large, but it is not infinite. So the frequency of physicality is infinitesimal but not identically zero, hence the existence of zero point energy.

Prime numbers (1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, etc…) are only divisible by 1 and themselves. Obviously, realms with prime number wavelengths are the most fundamental realms. They are the primary ones, all other realms are subordinate subsets. Prime numbers therefore relate to the “eigen frequencies” of Creation. Each prime number represents a single universal archetype whose harmonic multiples generate the various realms and probable futures associated with that archetype. For instance, if 3 is the fundamental realm of joy, then realms 3, 6, 9, 12, etc… are realms where joy is the fundamental keynote of vibration, though each realm encompasses a different expression of joy that gets more distorted with higher realm numbers.

The above is simplified. Realistically speaking, we as individuals have a spectrum of frequencies and thus a spectrum of realm numbers defining our personal realm. Prime number components represent lessons we have fully mastered, while non-prime components are those we have yet to learn. Learning is cyclical, each archetype revisited with greater clarity and accuracy than before.

The grand cycle of spiritual evolution starts with the highest realm number and converges upon the lowest. Lowest prime is the Creator. Highest prime is the demiurge Ormethion who stirs at the threshold of oblivion. Realm 1 vibrates with the archetype of infinite love; it is home of the Prime Creator. It is the primary realm; all others are subsets. Just as 1 divides into all, so does the Creator preside over all.
The Shift
The world is now experiencing a parting of ways between sectors of the population no longer resonating with each other. It is a realm split, a cleaving of collective fields into several smaller ones.

Experiential catalysts are pushing people off the fence, forcing them to discover who they truly are and what they stand for. Their soul vibrations are purifying and intensifying, bringing a retreat from the superfluous and a return to destiny.

What was once an emulsified mixture of diverse realms is separating into layers, and when the cup tilts it will be the lowest density layers that spill down the drain. The polarization phenomenon begins with mutual disinterest between individuals of uncommon paths. There may be confrontation and separation, or circumstance may simply bring a gentle parting of ways. But as time goes on and people gather into their most harmonious collective realms, the chasm between these realms will run so deep that eventually even the collective sharing of perception and experience will be severed. The learning requirements of each collective realm may become so mutually contradictory that they can no longer share the same space, the same timeline, the same density. This would entail a timeline split, each major realm following a different trajectory into the future that best accommodates the collective learning needs of its inhabitants. What tilts the cup remains to be seen.

Frequency Anchors
Of course not all is predestined. There are chaotic factors left to freewill. Some hyperdimensional forces aware of the impending shift are counting on mass frequency suppression to lock mankind into a probable future where these forces reap maximum energy harvest and retain control, whether in this density or the next. This may involve anything from mass loss of life to genetic assimilation and spiritual enslavement. A collective choice to elect such a scenario would acquiesce sufficient freewill to give such forces free reign to rewrite history in order to expand and solidify control in the present and future. To an extent this has already occurred and the world as we know it today is the end result of the most recent timeline revision. And yet time marches on and the “final” future is still open.

This brings us to what we as individuals can do. The wiser sources say we should simply be ourselves, remember who we are and radiate the essence of our soul. Indeed, we are frequency anchors. The vibration we hold determines the realm we establish, and our realm contributes to the collective realm. There are frequencies of suppression and frequencies of liberation. By exultantly living from your heart you not only set an example for others, you also help lift the heaviness of the local and global collective realm. Nothing lifts gravity like levity and love. This assists those who would otherwise be subconsciously crushed by the prevailing low frequency fields. It is commendable to take action and do something when called, but in the meantime simply hanging onto your center is enough. This sets you on the high path beyond the reach and sight of darker elements and clears the path for others to come with you. Keep your poise through the turbulence and cling tightly onto your mast when the sirens beckon you overboard. Shine as a lighthouse amidst the fog.
Resources

For additional information on realm dynamics, please read The 33 Arks of Soul Resonance by the Nexus Seven and research the Cassiopaean Transcripts regarding the terms “realm”, “FRV”, “frequency resonance vibration”, “frequency of light”, and “frequency resonance envelope”.

Change Log

v0.2 – June 30, 2005: added paragraph on “strangeness for the sake of strangeness” in the section Realm Breach.

(index)

Food for the Moon

30 July 05 (matrix)

The moon is more than just a pale satellite of interest to poets and astronomers. Its influence goes beyond merely creating ocean tides or driving biological cycles. More importantly, the moon exerts a significant influence upon the mechanical, emotional, and psychological states in man. The werewolf myth and superstition concerning full moon lunacy are not far from the truth. Certain lunar phases heighten the possibility for emotionally draining situations and stimulate reactivity and sensitivity in vulnerable individuals.

Personal observation reveals what numerous esoteric sources have explained at length, namely that we are food for the moon. In this article I shall summarize these sources and then give an account of how through personal experience I independently arrived at similar but more expansive conclusions framed in context of the matrix control system. This is an incredibly fascinating and practical subject since the lunar factor can be observed by anyone with eyes to see and knowledge of such cycles can be used to bypass obstacles normally exacerbated by the fog of ignorance.

Gurdjieff and Ouspensky

Fourth Way philosophy aims to strip man of his mechanical behavior and hypnotic programming in order to build within him a core of heightened consciousness. It is an esoteric system assembled from incomplete fragments of inner Christianity and Sufism. It’s founder, Georges Gurdjieff, frequently admonished the thoughtless mechanical behavior of humanity and was fond of saying that we are “food for the moon.”

What did Gurdjieff mean by this phrase? Many have interpreted “food for the moon” as a figure of speech, that perhaps Gurdjieff meant we are slave to our mechanical conditioning and feed our baser impulses. While it can be additionally interpreted that way, Gurdjieff was likely being literal. Peter Ouspensky, one of Gurdjieff’s most prolific disciples, lectured at length concerning the moon’s role in human affairs and its place in the cosmological scheme of things. It is reasonable to assume what Ouspensky wrote about the moon accurately reflects what Gurdjieff taught him.

According to Ouspensky, the moon acts as a giant electromagnet pulling upon all organic life on earth and sucking into itself the soul essence of dying creatures. The moon is an embryonic planet receiving its nutrition from organic life on earth through an etheric umbilical cord, an energy conduit between earth and moon.
In man, the moon drives his mechanical aspects like a pendulum moving the gears of a clock. The degree to which one’s actions are driven by the moon is proportional to one’s level of reactivity and non-being. For people incapable of moving themselves through life by nobler spiritual impulses, the moon provides a propulsive force. Without this force, mechanical individuals would be passive as puppets without a puppeteer.

Ouspensky went so far as to say that the very physical motion of our limbs was made possible thanks to the moon. Other Fourth Way initiates like Rodney Collin explained that because our body was largely made of water and the moon pulls on water to create the ocean tides, our bodies are made to move in similar but more complicated ways through hydraulic principles. Though I find this explanation dubious, I have included it only to be complete in my summary. The moon’s gravitational field pulls on all masses equally and is not strong enough to have any measurable physical influence over the motion of water within the body.

It would be more accurate to say that the moon exerts some subtle influence upon the organs of our etheric body responsible for initiating neurochemical impulses that trigger habitual motions. Such mechanical behavior may therefore be driven by the moon, but not necessarily via crude physical means.

The moon is therefore an important factor in driving our mechanical actions. As long as its influence is limited to such effects, the moon is doing its job properly. Ouspensky warned, however, that if lunar influences trespassed into one’s emotional and mental aspects, then emotional and mental imbalances would occur. How can the moon affect our emotional and intellectual centers? By the very fact that these lower centers have their own mechanical aspects.

Ouspensky was asked whether there was any truth to the connection between full moons and lunacy. He said there was none and that lunar phases are irrelevant because the moon is always around earth exerting virtually the same pull regardless of its phase. That much is true, however as I shall explain later, it is the alignment between earth, sun, and moon that colors the lunar influence, therefore lunar phases do correlate with cycles of mental and emotional stability and instability.

In the cosmological schema, earth is like a mother to the moon which is still a fetus in the sense that it cannot yet “breathe” on its own, hold an atmosphere, or support life. Gurdjieff said: “The Moon is actually a fragment of this Earth, which must now constantly maintain the Moon’s existence.” In that sense, the moon is like a parasitic thoughtform. Nevertheless, the equation is balanced because in exchange for the moon propelling our mechanical movement, we feed the moon so that it may grow and one day be born as a living planet. As to how organic life feeds the moon, Ouspensky explained that upon death the physical body returns to the earth but the soul essence, the astral and etheric energies sloughed off by the evacuating spirit, float toward and deposit themselves upon the moon. This comes with the dissolution of the body’s mechanical center. During life, however, unprovoked emotional turmoil and unconscious psychological suffering produce subtle energies that feed the moon, and this much is detrimental to personal esoteric evolution.

In line with the objectives of Fourth Way, to escape the more deleterious lunar influences Ouspensky said we must “create moon within ourselves.” By this he meant we must develop within us a driving mechanism that can take the place of the external lunar influence; in this way we would break free of the puppeteer. Assuming for a moment a more general and practical interpretation, this
simply says that in order to become free from mechanical conditioning and reactive behavior we must reinforce our sense of self-awareness so that conscious choice and awareness reigns supreme over any external stimuli that might provoke an unconscious reaction. In this way we stop feeding the moon while living, and still properly pay our dues upon death.

Mouravieff

In his epic work *Gnosis*, Boris Mouravieff formulated an esoteric system for spiritual evolution founded upon the inner traditions of Eastern Orthodoxy. Though sharing a common basis with Fourth Way, what Mouravieff detailed is comparatively more complete, accurate, and systematic. Here is an excerpt from *Gnosis* summarizing what is necessary to transcend the lunar influence:

As a cell of organic life on Earth, man plays a part in the development of the Ray of Creation. The vivification of the Moon, that cosmic foetus, is one aspect of this development. This requires considerable quantities of energy, which is produced in particular by the human part of organic life. Illusion, which plays such an important role in the waking consciousness of man, was introduced into that state so that he would accept this aspect of the cosmic work, participating in it without rebellion.

If we become conscious of this situation and desire to escape it, we must conceive and create a screen which will protect us against this devouring influence of the Moon. We must meanwhile guard against falling into Illusion again by erecting a false screen; the result would be an aggravated waste of these forces instead of an economy of force. The quantity of force necessary to genuinely oppose the influence of the Moon is already considerable. The first imperative, then, is to stop wasting these forces, to turn off the taps which let the energy escape uselessly: sterile emotions, in particular negative emotions; fantasies from uncontrolled imagination; uncoordinated mental gymnastics, gossiping and chattering. We must thus act like a wise minister of finance and carefully economize our energies, yet without all the time sterilizing either our activity or our intelligence. On the contrary, we must store and as far as possible augment these forces to build up our reserves. These are the two main aspects of the first objective we have to attain. (Mouravieff, *Gnosis I*, p.168)

Mouravieff also explained that organic life functions as a transmitter station sending refined energy to the moon to assist its growth. Despite increases in the human population and thus an increase in quantity of energy transferred, times of peace do not produce sufficient energy and so catalysts for suffering such as wars and catastrophes arise to sustain the process.

The Moon’s passive energy arises from solar energy. It reflects this, but not without a transformation as its own nature. […] Unlike the Earth, the Moon does not have a direct organic link with the Sun. Being a satellite, it depends directly on its planet, and it is only through the latter’s mediation that it enters into relation with the Sun. One of its essential roles is to reflect solar energy onto the Earth’s surface in a form modified by reflection as described above. This also leads to qualitative and quantitative variations that depend on its phases. These changes do not prevent continual reverberation, due to the fact that the Moon always presents the same face to Earth, as the duration of its rotation around itself and around our planet are both the same. (Mouravieff, *Gnosis II*, p.29)

Although Mouravieff did not elaborate in what manner the lunar influence varies with phase, it stands to reason that essentially it is a matter of astrological alignment between earth, sun, and
moon. During new and full moons, the moon and sun are respectively in conjunction and opposition. During quarter moons they are square. Opposition, conjunction, and square represent alignments that in this particular case aggravate the mechanical aspects in man. Other times of the month when the moon is trine or sextile sun, a more harmonious astrological aspect establishes itself. These alignments engender calmer temperaments with the mechanical influence not trespassing into emotional or mental territory.

That the moon always shows the same face, has an unusually circular orbit, and is precisely distanced to blot out the sun during total solar eclipses implies an intentional placement by the “Architect” of the matrix, or perhaps it simply suggests a collective choice to experience this highly improbable but necessary reality. When asked if the moon was intentionally placed, the Cassiopaeans responded: *This is impossibly complex because in one way or another, everything is part of a “plan.”* Mouravieff and Ouspensky emphasized that despite the soporific nature of the moon and the urgent necessity for individuals to overcome its influence, there is still an important cosmological reason for this arrangement. If nothing else, the moon makes physical life possible by driving the earth’s rotation.

The Zelator

Another interesting source is *The Zelator* by Mark Hedsel, an autobiographical account of his initiatory pathway through various mystery schools. The following excerpt takes place in the presence of a teacher who gives a lengthy discourse on the moon:

> We became fascinated by the nature of the Moon, and with the other female planet, Venus. It was as though our attention had been drawn to the feminine side of Darkness and Light, as represented in the purgatorial side of the Moon, and the burning light of Venus. Our questions led our Master to some fascinating and unexpected observations about the lunar connections in ancient esoteric lore, and it was not surprising that the few questions we did put to our Master at that time concerned these planets. ‘Do you know what the third-day pig is?’ he asked in response to a question I had put to him about the Moon. Although our Master was looking directly at us, everyone shook their heads, as though he had directed the question to each of us personally. Perhaps the question had been rhetorical, for he continued almost immediately. ‘The three-day pig is a phrase from the ancient Mysteries. Prior to the initiation held during the Greater Mysteries of the Boedromion at Eleusis, in Greece, there was what the Greeks called the Halade Mystai. Early in the morning, the candidates for initiation would make their way to the sea, carrying young pigs, which they would wash and then sacrifice. The usual — we might even say the exoteric — explanation for this sacrifice is that they considered the blood of the pig to be especially pure, and much appreciated by the gods of the Underworld. They buried the killed pigs deep in the Earth, after the blood and slaughtered bodies had been dedicated to these infernal gods. Because the sacrifice was held on the third day of the Greater Mystery, such a creature was called the third-day pig.’

> He raised his eyebrows, and smiled. ‘Now, as with all Mysteries of initiation, the term is not quite correct — it is meant to hide something. It was not a third-day pig, but a two-and-a-half-day pig, as the sacrifices always took place in the morning. The fact that the rites were conducted near the sea should lend a clue to one aspect of this arcane symbolism, for the two-and-a-half day period is a lunar period. In two and a half days, the Moon completely traverses one sign of the zodiac: the period, cosmically speaking,
is a 12th part of the month. Now, perhaps, you will begin to see something of the deeper significance of the third-day pig? Perhaps once again the question had been rhetorical. At all events, there was no sound from the circle.

‘In a sense, the third-day pig is humanity — the liquid sweat of the Earth. Humanity is in thrall to the Moon — mankind is subject to the two-and-a-half-day rhythm, and to all other lunar periodicities. In another sense, the third-day pig is the animal of Set, the reject darker side of Mankind — that lucifuge side, which does not strive towards the light.

‘This truth is recognized both in the overt symbolism of the pig sacrifice, and in its deeper arcane implications. The initiation centres have always recognized that mankind is in thrall to the Moon — that ordinary men and women are sleeping under the influence of the lunar powers. […] The symbolism of the three-day pig must now be evident. The creature is a surrogate for a sacrifice which is no sacrifice, as the loss is of no value in the face of that gained. […] What happens to our higher principle at this fission of porcine sacrifice is of direct account in the symbolism of the three-day pig. Just as in a sacrifice involving a burnt offering, where the flames go upwards, and the carbonized remains go downwards, so the sacrifice of the third-day pig is a fission of separation. Note this word, fission. One cannot go far in the hermetic studies without having formed a good idea of what Spiritual fission implies.

‘On one level, then, the pig is symbol of the lower nature, which must be buried — or, more accurately, placed into the hands of the infernal hordes, to which it rightly belongs. Meanwhile, the initiated Spirit rises upwards on the scales of perfection. As you know, only the initiates sacrifice at the Helade Mystai, so we may presume that, at the symbolical death, it is only the lower part of the “pig” — the body and the blood — which is rendered unto the lower world. The higher world carries the Spirit to a higher realm, in the wonder of initiation. You see, the three-day pig is a symbol of this rejected part, of the dark part pushed downwards after the separation which is the immediate consequence of initiation.’

[…]

‘But the pig. Let us glance once more at the symbolism of the famous three-day pig. We are the pig, awaiting sacrifice. We are in thrall to the Moon: we are all sleeping Endymions, who must render to the Moon that which bears the imprint of the Moon. Let us presume that the sacrifice of the three-day pig is symbolical of the three days …’ — he emphasized the words to show that they had a much deeper meaning than might be at first apparent — ‘… that we spend in the sphere of the Moon after our death. As you know, in traditional Christianity, this period is called Purgatory. In esotericism, it has other names, with which you will all be familiar. The three-day pig is a symbol’ — he emphasized the word — ‘of this period we must spend in Purgatory.

‘If you reflect upon it, you will see that it is not a far-fetched symbolism. The pig, through its association with Set, is a creature of the Moon, and the period in Purgatory is a “blood sacrifice” in the sense that during that experience the sins of the blood — one might say the sweat of our blood sins — are washed away. In Purgatory, at great cost to ourselves, we sacrifice our sins. These entities — our sins — are devoured by the demons in what might be regarded as a blood-lust. We have clung to our sins throughout our lifetime, and letting them go is no easy matter: they must be torn away from us.
‘Purgatory is a sort of cosmic clearing house — even a place of enforced learning — where the entities and dispositions born of sin find fulfillment and regeneration. Without the existence of such a cleansing house, the Spiritual atmosphere of the Earth would have been completely poisoned long ago.

‘The skull-face of the Moon, glaring down with cratered eyes at the world, is a perpetual memorial to the inexorable consequences of human sin. It would be possible to point to vast documentary sources for this belief that the Moon is the cosmic centre of purgatory — it is indeed encapsulated in very many symbols in Christian doctrine and symbolism. On what may be the most obvious level, the very idea that demons have horns is probably a throw-back to the idea of the crescent of the Moon, their natural homeland: they are, so to speak, branded with the C of the crescent.

‘You were quite right, Mark …’ — much to our chagrin, he turned to us, making public private conversations we had had with him — ‘… to link the Moon with demonic assault, and with the dark realm of seances and atavistic clairvoyancy. The demonic beings love the dark. While it is true that the seance rooms are kept dark to enable amateur conjurors to perform without detection, it is also true that those Spiritual beings who work evil through such seances love the dark. They are lucifuges. Just as they cannot understand the need for light, so they cannot understand human love.

‘The ancients used darkness, not to contact the demons, but to contact the Higher Beings. One reason why the so-called air-shafts in the Great Pyramid are directed towards specific stars is to allow these stellar influences to pierce into the darkness where the initiations took place. ‘The ancients built their stone circles to enable them to use darkness for specific purposes. They knew that during an eclipse, when the Moon is thrown into darkness, the effect of the Moon is, to some extent, weakened. At such times, certain diabolical and evil influences which have been built up in the aura of the Earth can escape. It is as though a safety valve has been opened in the skies, pouring into the cosmos down the dark tunnel of the Black Moon, which hangs in the shadow of the Earth. This Black Moon — the Moon of snake-infested Hecate in the ancient mythology — is quite different from the Lighted Moon. In some of the ancient centres this Black Moon was even given a different name.

‘The Lighted Moon is, to some extent, Spiritually warmed by the Sun. One has to be attuned to cosmic realities to feel the difference between the Dark Moon and the full Moon. When the Sun is eclipsed by the Dark Moon, then it is not unusual for birds to drop from the skies in fear. Great wisdom is shown in such fear. You must all try to experience an eclipse — solar or lunar — to catch a feeling of this cosmic reality. There is a frisson in the air, quite unlike anything which can be felt under normal circumstances. The primaevul terror of the Moon among the ancients was not entirely unrealistic: in those days, there was a different consciousness which allowed men to perceive cosmic realities that are now hidden from us. You will never understand why the ancient stone circles were built if you do not familiarize yourself with the Dark Moon.’

[...]

In the meeting prior to his death, our Master fulfilled his promise to speak about the secrets of the Moon. Normally, he would wait for someone in our midst to ask a question. This time he began to speak without preamble.
‘In the esoteric literature, you will find many records indicating that the Moon was at one time part of the Earth. It had to leave the Earth, in order to allow life on Earth to continue its Spiritual development unimpeded.

‘It is important that anyone on the Path should attempt to form a clear picture of what this separation was like. Not only was it of considerable evolutionary importance in the cosmogenesis of the Earth, but it is played, in miniature, in many of our Spiritual activities. It is the archetypal form of fission. Now, unfortunately, in modern times even our imaginative faculties have been materialized, and it is difficult for us to form a picture of what this Moon-loss was really like. It is difficult for us to form clear images of the fission which lies at the root of all Spiritual activity. It is difficult for modern man and woman to visualize things in purely Spiritual terms. This is because the picture-making which lies at the basis of our imaginative faculty longs for mythology, since mythology is itself an agency of Spirituality.

‘If you cannot imagine in this way at present, you must perforce cling to materialistic images …’ — he touched the glass of water on the round table in front of him — ‘… then imagine a glass of water clouded with a pigment. If the glass is left to stand, the particles will settle to the bottom in a thick dross, leaving the water above clear. This is much nearer to the Spiritual reality of what happened when the Moon left the Earth, taking with it certain forms of dross materiality. […]

‘The schema which depicts the planets in extended space pertains only to physical vision. You must understand this, or there will be no way in which you can approach some of the greater Mysteries of the cosmos. What appears to be on the outside is more accurately described as being on the inside: our Earthly vision is extremely limited, for, under normal circumstances, we see outwards from the central Ego to the cosmic periphery. However, this is not the cosmic vision. We are so used to this limited vision that we are not sufficiently tolerant to accept that there can be others — including a vision from the periphery into the centre.

‘In the case of the Moon, the matter is made more complex by the fact that the physical matter of the Moon did once form part of what we now call the Earth. Within the context of the lunar sphere, the two centres did once coincide. A tremendous effort of meditative power is required to follow these connections, however, and the bald statement I have made can result in misconceptions.’

‘Why,’ asked Philip, ‘did the Moon have to separate from the Earth?’ ‘It was a cosmic fission. The Moon represents the harder mineralization of the Earth. In the body of the Moon is the matter which, had it remained with the Earth, would have weighed down human development too deeply. Man would not have been able to bear the weight of those forces in his own body. Just as we know from our own observations of ourselves that we must slough off darkness to reach into the light, so the planetary bodies must also involve themselves in a similar fission. Even so, it is true that the weight of the Moon, albeit removed by half a million miles, still contorts the physical body of the Earth and its inhabitants through what are usually called ‘gravitational’ effects.

‘Now we must touch upon the connection between the Moon and clairvoyancy. We must do this because one of our members has — wisely or unwisely — become involved with mediumistic groups.’

‘It is important that we set out very clearly the dangers inherent in opening the soul to
such activities. It is not for me to forbid such activity. I have no power to forbid, and would relish no such power. Much as I would wish to protect you, I cannot. The best I can do is make the dangers clear to you. After that, your beliefs and your conduct remain your own.’

He looked around at our faces, as though to indicate that he had arrived at the most important point of the evening.

‘And so now we must look at an esoteric truth which touches on the very edge of what is permissible. What I have to say will be greatly disturbing for many people of modern times. It will disturb, because it is generally taken for granted that clairvoyancy, mediumship and spiritualistic activity are somehow linked with Spirit development, and consequently of benefit to mankind. Unfortunately, this is far from the truth. A vast amount of our modern so-called “Spiritualist” literature pertains to channelling and clairvoyancy which is far from beneficial for the development of mankind. Indeed, not to mince words, I should tell you that it is distinctly harmful.

‘I must now make a statement which will introduce you to a concept which was, until comparatively recently, one of the deepest secrets of the esoteric Schools: In some ways, the Moon is the greatest problem of esoteric lore. The Moon is not at all what it appears to be.

‘At the end of the last century an astounding revelation was made, as a result of dissent among members of secret Schools. Information, hitherto guarded jealously by the most enclosed of the inner Orders, was made public. The secrets disclosed pertained to a far deeper level of knowledge than has hitherto been made exoteric by the Schools — even in this enlightened age.’

His trace of cynicism seemed to go by unnoticed.

‘Our purpose here is not to document how so deep an esoteric idea was made public — or even to assess whether it was wise for this idea to be brought out into the open. All this has been dealt with in the literature — and if any of you wish to follow this up, I will give you a few titles later.

‘In a nutshell, what was made public during this conflict in the Schools was the truth that our Moon is a sort of counterweight to another sphere, which remains invisible to ordinary vision. This counterweighted sphere is called in esoteric circles the Eighth Sphere.

‘We must be careful with these words, for, in spite of what I have just said, this region is not itself a sphere, nor is it a moon. Even to locate it behind the physical Moon is not correct, for in the Spiritual realm spaces and distances are different. The truth is that this Eighth Sphere does not pertain to anything we are familiar with on the physical plane, yet we must use words from our own vocabularies whenever we wish to denote its existence. Were we to use a word which fits most appropriately this Sphere, then we should really call it a vacuum. Certainly, vacuum is a more appropriate term than sphere, for the Eighth Sphere sucks things into its own shadowy existence.

‘This Sphere is lower in the scale of being than the Seventh Sphere (which is the Earth). It acts as a sort of demonic conduit to suck into its maws certain degenerate Spiritual forms on the Earth. It is a shadow Sphere, controlled by shadow beings. However, the
fact that they are shadow beings should not lead us to demote or underestimate their capabilities and intelligence. In many respects they are more intelligent than Man, for they are not limited by the power of love, as is Mankind.

‘The operation of this Eighth Sphere is complex. Its denizens — those shadowy beings for whom it is home — wish to people their Sphere with humanity, or (more accurately) with human souls. Towards this end, it has erected what we might call terminals on the Earth: these terminals are soul-conduits, which will suck into the lower Sphere a certain form of materialized Spiritual energy that is engendered on the Earth plane. The most usual circumstances where this materialization or engendering takes place is in seances, and in other localities wherein human beings attempt to meddle — against the cosmic law — with the lower Etheric planes.’

Philip was having difficulties with this curious account of the lunar powers, and asked: ‘Are you saying that Spiritualist activity is itself victimized by the Eighth Sphere?’

‘Yes, Philip. Certain Spiritualist activity is coloured by the erroneous belief that the realm of the dead is accessible to the living. In truth, mediumistic activity cannot penetrate through into the true realm of the dead: it is therefore dealing only with shadows. In so doing, it is creating fodder for the nourishment of the Eighth Sphere. This sucking of certain forms of human soul-matter into the Eighth Sphere is not, by any means, intended for the benefit of humanity. The aim of the denizens of this world is to enhance and populate a world which may truly be described as the realm of the damned. The efforts of these denizens, or demons, is contrary to the evolutionary development which has been planned for the world. In truth, the human being was not designed to become a shadow being, captive in a demonic sphere: it was designed to become a god.

‘It is less than one hundred years since this knowledge of the Eighth Sphere was made public. At first there was an outcry at this breach in initiate knowledge, but now we can see that it has proved something of a blessing that the demonic threat has been brought out into the open. In some ways, it is easier to deal with a visible enemy. Those who dabble in the supposed communications with the dead, and with that spirit-land which they fondly imagine lies beyond the veil, have not gone unwarned.

I will leave most of the above for the reader to digest, and discuss only the so-called “Eighth Sphere.” What is meant by the moon being a counterweight to the Eighth Sphere? Evidently, the moon is but a physical reflection of something tangible but not material, something beyond our realm of perception.

Based on the clues given in The Zelator we must conclude that the Eighth Sphere by definition encompasses all the nonphysical aspects of the Matrix Control System, the service-to-self (STS) hierarchy from top to bottom minus the physical levels of which we ourselves are part.

The Eighth Sphere would therefore include: the lower astral planes where carnal and demonic thoughtforms dwell, the hyperdimensional realms inhabited by so-called reptilian beings, the parasitic etheric lattice overlaying the earth comprising the very tendrils of the Matrix, the soul-pool of which spiritless humans are incarnate extensions, and the demiurgic creature positioned atop the negative occult hierarchy sucking into itself all energy gathered from the “tiers” below.

This interpretation of the Eighth Sphere should be self-evident for those familiar with the works of
Rudolf Steiner, Carlos Castaneda, Robert Monroe, Dr. William Baldwin, the Cassiopaeian Transcripts, and my articles on the Matrix.

For instance, that spiritless humans have something to do with the moon is clear from the fact that they, being extensions of less evolved (“second density”) energies occupying human (“third density”) bodies, are essentially two-and-a-half density beings, which relates to the two-and-a-half-day pig. Pigs, by the way, are physically incapable of looking up at the sky which, in addition to the fact that they share many human characteristics and have genetics strongly suited to house low vibrational frequencies, makes them ideal symbols for the animal nature in man. That the moon shares an archetypal basis with spiritless humans is further evidenced by it being a second density planet reflecting light rather than generating its own, just as spiritless humans are not fully third density and merely reflect back the soul image of others.

Personal Observations

Studying the mythological and esoteric meaning of the moon is mere entertainment if no practical understanding comes from it. One can easily get absorbed in the arcane and lose sight of its application in the real world. So I was fortunate to have observed the lunar influence for myself before reading anything about it, and based on these observations I developed some practical solutions.

This began with my early experiences as moderator of an alternative discussion group on the internet. Having been a member of several forums previously, I was aware of the various pitfalls and how theoretically to avoid them. Putting theory into practice required close observation, foresight, and a case-by-case system of moderation. Over the months I was forced to deal with various disruptors of varying degrees of cunning, each of which played key roles in setting up and triggering a period of emotional turmoil.

After numerous months of this, it finally dawned on me that these disruptive episodes followed a cyclical pattern, always one or two incidents per month on the same set of days that would gradually shift later in the month with each passing month. So it was nine months of observation that made me realize there was order behind the chaos. Furthermore, trouble wasn’t limited to the forum; often it occurred elsewhere such as in my personal life or with my family, on other message boards, and with friends and their families — anyplace at all, but only during certain predictable days of the month.

That these key days shifted a little each month implied that perhaps it has something to do with the moon phases, since full and new moon dates do shift gradually from month to month thanks to our irregular calendar system. So I took the nine months of records and checked them against a moon calendar: sure enough, the disruptive incidents happened consistently within two and a half days from new or full moon.

This much I had figured out by October 2004. By constructing a calendar with days shaded according to their proximity to lunar perigee or apogee and new or full moon, I was able to test the theory over the next several months. It was utterly disturbing to watch disruptions take place on schedule month after month during the predicted days and never outside of those days. And it wasn’t just me seeing what I wanted to see because when learning lessons of an emotionally charged nature arise, there is no mistaking or ignoring them. Additionally, I started with nine
months of unbiased records in which a pattern was clearly evident before I ever suspected the moon might be involved; the data spoke for itself.

Putting this knowledge to practical use involved predicting and preparing for disruptive days, understanding that during heavy lunar influences things might not be as they seem, and remembering that emotional buttons are far more sensitive during such days. Moderating the forum became a game of nailing the timing, nature, and plot of the upcoming disruption in order to head it off, sometimes with success and sometimes without depending on how sophisticated the plot was and how well I could decipher the synchronistic omens and symbolic warning dreams preceding these impending obstacles.

The process usually played out as follows: within a week or two leading up to an incident I would be given dreams containing symbolic clues about the themes and characters involved, then I would reference the moon chart to get an idea of the timing, and finally within a day I would receive numerous synchronicities informing me the event was close at hand. Lately I have begun incorporating astrological aspects (planetary alignments) to gain additional insight on the timing and theme.

While this system may seem delusional to the casual reader, it was derived using a process of observation, hypothesis, testing, and refinement. That this system has been applied successfully in all areas of my life to reduce stress and redundant obstacles, improved my skills as moderator and kept the forum impervious to permanent disruption, and continues to correctly predict when mechanical tendencies are amplified — these prove to me its validity and practicality.

**Lunar Influences and the Matrix Control System**

Only then did I realize Gurdjieff was being completely literal when he said we are food for the moon. Anyone who becomes aware of the lunar influence will see how people all around sway to the lunar influence like reeds to the breeze. Twice a month, what I term the “Matrix Control System” opens its maws and draws in a torrent of emotional energy from all those susceptible to the lunar influence.

So what exactly is the relation between the Matrix and the moon? The archetypal correspondences were discussed earlier. As for the technical relation, I have concluded that the gravitational interaction between earth, moon, and sun causes cyclical variation in the separation between dimensions and densities. Just before and after a new or full moon, the dimensional veil is thinnest and hostile forces from other realms, including the astral and hyperdimensional realms, have an easier time penetrating into the physical plane.

The thinning of dimensional separation has two main consequences. First, as mentioned it is easier for beings to cross realm boundaries. Hostile entities require less energy to breach the realm of their targets, or stated another way, metaphysical defenses against physical and psychic violence tend to wane around such times. But on a positive side the thinning also supports personal expansion into new realms of being, thus the new moon is said to be a good time for starting new projects and manifesting intent through the principles of reality creation.

Second, because other realms become temporarily more accessible, occult practices become more effective. Invocations, psychic warfare, scrying and remote viewing are assisted during such times.
This most greatly assists those darker forces who rely upon remote viewing of probable futures and psychic attacks to stalk and ambush their prey. But once again on a positive side the intuitive faculties are heightened and more technical forms of divination like scrying gain accuracy.

Concerning strictly the negative aspects of new and full moon energies, there is a qualitative difference. New moon energies tend toward implosion while full moon is characterized by energy of explosion. Whereas the new moon tends to induce oversensitivity, dissatisfaction, and depression, the full moon energies amplify overreaction, violence, and outright lunacy. It is esoteric fact that the moon rules over the imagination, and both during full moon and new moon windows the imagination is particularly prone to being misapplied, meaning misunderstandings, false suspicions, and unfounded worries increase. But whereas the new moon exacerbates introspective turmoil, full moon externalizes the trouble.

What accounts for the qualitative difference? None other than the particular alignment between earth, moon, and sun. During a full moon, the earth is between sun and moon, meaning the latter two are astrologically in opposition. Whereas the sun represents spirit, the moon represents one’s shadow self. When in opposition, the light of spirit is misdirected by the mechanical pressures of the shadow self, meaning energy is expressed but in an outwardly harmful way, thus its association with overreaction and violence. When new, the moon is between sun and earth, energetically blocking or filtering the solar energies. The shadow self stifles the light of spirit, thus the implosive quality of this alignment and its association with oversensitivity and depression.

To illustrate, in my experience certain vulnerable forum members tended to get moody during the new moon and overreact to misperceived criticism or get depressed and give their farewell, while during a full moon people are more likely to lash out when the lunatics crawl from the woodwork to provoke at the most sensitive times. This is not a fast rule, just a general observation. How these energies manifest elsewhere depends on the context, and the lunar influence manifests through whatever means are at hand to extract the greatest amount of emotional anguish.

Nevertheless, it would be incorrect to blame the moon exclusively as the cause of troubles, as during more harmonious astrological alignments it actually supports healthy mechanical functioning. When the moon is trine or sextile to the sun, meaning in between new and full and at least a day away from quarter moon, the lunar influence sustains peaceful progress. So one could equally say that four times a month the moon supports tranquility.

The moon is by no means the only cyclical factor pulling our strings. There are numerous other cycles from personal to national to global and cosmic. Most of these have biological or astrological origins. While the astrological ones are important to consider, particularly certain planetary aspects, I consider the lunar influence to be the strongest and most observable.

It is no secret that hyperdimensional attacks, which are acts of spiritual warfare, are directed at a target’s weakest spots at the weakest moments. That is simply a matter of efficiency and logistics. Astrology is an important part of determining this timing because the realm dynamics between attacker and target are greatly influenced by celestial alignments. Different alignments impress upon a given location different spectra of vibrations which in turn resonate corresponding elements within the souls of individuals in the vicinity; the manner in which they vibrate pulls from reality a corresponding set of experiences and learning lessons. Certain vibrations correspond to learning
lessons involving confrontation, violence, and attack, and it is when these vibrations are strongest for an individual that astral and hyperdimensional attackers find it easiest to fulfill their role in his experiences. A more thorough explanation can be found on my website in an article titled Realm Dynamics.

While certain lunar alignments exacerbate certain mechanical tendencies which in turn can create emotional turmoil, I have found that the moon’s primary function during such times is merely to open a window between the darker realms and this world. Whether this window of opportunity is actually utilized depends on the individual in question and whether the attackers have the necessary interest and resources. In other words, the turbulent experiences that may arise during critical lunar days are not necessarily deterministically created by the moon, rather the moon opens a window during which intelligent forces can, at their own discretion and choice of timing, initiate an episode of feeding or sabotage.

The reason I say this is because through certain means already described I can detect well in advance of a lunar influence period what plans for sabotage are already in the works. There is an active intelligence behind many of these episodes, presumably non-human as evidenced by the periodic abduction and posthypnotic programming of key individuals who will take part in the next disturbance. Or, in the days preceding a sabotage attempt coinciding with a lunar window, one will experience increased precognitive indicators like ear ringings and deja vu, respectively signifying monitoring attempts and timeline editing by hyperdimensional forces.

Practical Matters
There are a variety of reasons why some people seem to experience the lunar influence more than others.

First, active targeting plays a large part in the worst of the trouble, those who are not targeted will not experience much trouble other than some crankiness between themselves and others.

Second, where the moon is placed in one’s natal chart (what the lunar configuration was at moment of birth) may play a role in how strongly its mechanizing influence trespasses into one’s emotional and psychological states. Different people have different natal charts and will thus be influenced to different degrees.

Third, although this is speculative, I suspect geographic latitude factors into how strongly one falls within the earth-moon energy conduit; because the moon orbits around the earth’s equator with a maximum eight degree deviation north or south, those nearer to the equator will be more deeply caught up in the gravitational line of tension between earth and moon while those in the higher latitudes might experience the lunar influence more weakly.

And fourth, the lower one’s soul frequency, the greater one’s mechanical tendencies, and the less esoterically developed one is, the greater the lunar effect. It would take fission from the base matters of the soul and fusion of the nobler qualities to gain victory over the lunar influence within oneself, and great wisdom and compassion to handle whatever disruptions may arise among others. In fact, it is toward this end that the moon can actually catalyze our progress by making us aware of our weaknesses.

If you want to test this theory for yourself, consult the Moon Chart for the current month to see
whether the shaded regions on the chart correlate with any patterns in your own experience. You can also [download this chart](#) to your computer, to run within a browser.

Generally, the shaded regions (gray = new, red=full, purple = quarter moon) are merely windows for turmoil — there is no guarantee each window will bring trouble, but in my case I have found that when trouble does arise it does so exclusively in the shaded regions. There have been some weaker disturbances on quarter moon days (moon square sun) and during certain very strongly discordant astrological aspects, but these are infrequent and nowhere near as severe as what tends to arise around new or full moons so I consider them insignificant. If you find the moon chart has some validity, then you can use it to better prepare for and perhaps head off potential obstacles. It should merely assist in giving you a heads up, to be used in conjunction with your own intuitive system of “reading the weather”.

Without being aware of the lunar influence one falls too easily under its soporific influence. One is likely to perceive the wrong dynamics behind a situation, take things too personally and succumb to depression or misplaced outrage, and fail to place one’s energies at the right place at the right time. The types of lessons attracted during lunar windows can be learned in easier ways through foresight; by becoming aware of a problem before it happens, one learns the same lessons that would otherwise come about through painful experience… therefore awareness protects against involuntary suffering.

The ultimate goal of this knowledge is to increase awareness and help one gain an upper hand over otherwise invisible and subliminal influences. Applied awareness always has an inverse effect upon negative influences; for instance, while lunar windows tend to induce suffering by default, through awareness one can make use of temporary dimensional fluidity to more effectively intend for and manifest positive futures. With awareness one can learn more efficiently, have a smoother and more exciting path of progress through life, avoid unproductive obstacles, and gain a measure of liberation from the enslaving effect of ignorance.

---

**Methods of Deception**

9 September 05 (matrix)

Some paths are more circuitous and painful than others. Knowing what to watch for can save you lots of unnecessary trouble. This comes down to matching enthusiasm with discernment and seeking out the wisdom needed to navigate a clear path.

Here is a list of pitfalls I have encountered on my path to higher understanding:

- Accurate prophecies are no guarantee of positive intent. Deceptive sources may make successful predictions solely to win blind devotion, induce feelings of doom, or create self-fulfilling prophecies. When positive sources give prophecies, they respect freewill and present probabilities without macabre coloring or undue fatalism.

- That a body of material contains identifiable truths does not necessarily make it valid. Deceptive sources may pile a heap of lies upon an otherwise factual basis, while the sloppier
cases simply slap together fragments of existing material. In contrast, positive material is always more than the sum of its parts and presents extra information that is novel, practical, and verifiable.

- Preoccupation with lower truths can distract from the pursuit of higher truths. For instance, obsession with exposing political corruption can distract from gaining necessary spiritual empowerment, which is a popular tactic employed by hyperdimensional entities and their human agents. Positive sources prioritize by framing lower truths in their higher context.

- Just because something contains convoluted trivia, complex jargon, and voluminous pages, it does not necessarily contain profound truths. The illusion of profundity sends people on a wild goose chase for grand truths better found elsewhere. Positive sources are complex only for the sake of accuracy and conciseness.

- The alternative to a fallacious belief system may not always be a better alternative. Rejecting something and seeking its diametric opposite could simply be going from self-deception to self-destruction. Positive sources do not subscribe to this mechanical binary thinking and instead present balanced solutions that transcend such false dichotomies.

- Deceptive sources win allegiance by stroking the ego and playing upon insecurities. We are all special and here for a reason, but these dark forces diminish humility and cater to self-importance by assigning one grandiose titles, messianic roles, and outlandish past life histories. Positive sources help you achieve a humble understanding of your place in the universe without exalting or repressing who you truly are.

- Sometimes an action toward balance can overshoot equilibrium and become a new type of imbalance. For instance, removing harmful contaminants from your diet can bring a healthier balance, but removing too many foods without proper substitutes can lead to nutritional deficiency. To avoid this trap, corrective actions must always be gauged relative to equilibrium.

- The right method for the wrong person can give detrimental results. For example, the Fourth Way methodology aims to grow souls within those who have none; if people who need soul awakening rather than soul growth limit themselves to such a system, they will assume they are less than they truly are and spiritually suffocate. By knowing yourself, you will know what is right for you. [By Fourth Way, I mean the system of Gurdjieff and Ouspensky, which is incomplete and skewed. For a more balanced and complete treatment, see the system outlined by Boris Mouravieff in Gnosis].

- Gifts are not always given with sincerity. Alien abductees are frequently given psychic powers and even healing abilities, but to the aliens these are worthless trinkets they don’t mind trading for spiritual and biological ownership over the abductee. Gifts are only sincere when given unconditionally and selflessly.

- Being under attack is not always a sign of being on the right path. Attacks can sometimes serve as false confirmation in order to cattle-prod the paranoid into clutching more tightly onto their deceptive belief system, such as devout Catholics receiving demonic attacks because they are easily herded this way and fed upon. For those on the right track, attacks
are far more sophisticated; they seek to undermine faith and pressure one into committing self-sabotage.

- Astral deceivers often impersonate impressive characters such as historical figures, ascended masters, archangels, Jesus, or aliens. They do this in order to form a parasitical bond with those who believe this deception, and they go to great lengths to build up their characters. Material should always be evaluated on its content, not its source, and deceptive sources will give cunningly flawed or empty material regardless of their self-proclaimed credentials.

- Noble intentions can be diverted onto quixotic endeavors. Those with good hearts can, due to a lack of knowledge or ungrounded idealism, be led onto a primrose path demanding much time, energy, and resources in order to keep them spinning their wheels thinking they are making a difference when in the big picture their talents could be better applied elsewhere. Discernment requires not letting subjectivity and wishful thinking mask the warning signs that one is pursuing an inefficient path.

- Group consensus is a double edged sword. While conferment and agreement between multiple individuals lowers the risk of personal bias, if the entire group can be entrained into agreeing upon a false idea, then any individual dissenting on the side of truth will be rebuffed on the rationalization that an individual is far more likely to be wrong than an entire group. Personal communion with one’s heart and mind should always take precedence over group consensus because the truth is within.

- Anything good can be shown in a bad light; anything bad can be shown in a good light. By taking the best promises of a deceptive path and comparing it to the worst risks of a productive path, the deceptive path may falsely seem like the optimal choice. Only by examining the totality of each option can one make an informed choice.

- That a method or system “just works” and produces visible results is no guarantee that the system is ultimately beneficial. What results you see may be matched by greater amounts of detriment you cannot see, which is especially true of systems that emphasize substituting technology, ritual, or formula for spiritual practice, self-determination, and discovery. The best one can do is consider the benefits but hunt for the potential shortcomings of a system and guard against them.

- Deception seeks to emulate truth as closely as possible while propagating just the opposite. It shares the superficial characteristics of a positive source and hopes the target audience does not look past the shallow mimicry. Ultimately, something always tends to feel “off” about these sources despite surface appearances indicating nothing out of the ordinary; once intuition alerts you, it is the job of reason to help you zero in on the problem.

(index)

**Timeline Dynamics**

**13 April 06 (matrix)**
The rules of time travel are rooted in quantum physics. Understanding these rules reveals much about the behavior of hyperdimensional beings and the reason for certain metaphysical laws.
Timeline dynamics is essentially about temporal feedback loops between the present and its available range of probable futures. This is just realm dynamics reinterpreted from the perspective of linear time, which affords additional insights as you will see. Although timeline dynamics sounds abstract, it has concrete applications pertaining to manifesting positive synchronicities, deflecting hyperdimensional manipulation, bending probability, and transcending matrix limitations.

The Nature of Linear Time

A good place to start would be to recap the nature of time. Linear time is the constant flow of variable futures into a single immutable past. Every moment of choice involves multiple optional pathways into the future. Each path is a deterministic chain of effects cascading forward like dominoes toward the next moment of choice whereupon another branching takes place.

Viewed from a higher dimension, this looks like an intricate roadmap where intersections and exits represent choice points and the roads represent the causal consequence of those choices. The entire roadmap exists at once, a simultaneous whole.

Linear time is the product of our minds moving through the map, tracing out a route which becomes our remembered past. From our perspective, the route is drawn in permanent marker – once drawn, it cannot be erased.
Not so for beings who have transcended linear time by becoming hyperdimensional. From their perspective, our pathway through the network is comparable to a winding string pinned to the map with thumb tacks.

The string represents the causal progression of events, and the tacks represent our moments of choice. Multiple interacting individuals weave a complicated web whose nodes are pinned in place by the combined strength of their freewill.
An entity outside linear time can change the past either by overriding a choice already made, or by inserting a new sequence of events where freewill was absent and thus not violable. The string network may be altered by repositioning a tack or creating a deviation in some loose section of string. Obviously the latter is easier.

Except for feelings of deja vu, we would not naturally notice a timeline edit since our memories would change as well. We can trace the string back and find it winds a continuous path, meaning all consequences of the timeline change are consistently accounted for by preceding causes when examined. As a result, we normally remember only the most recent edit as being the past that
always was.

So from our perspective time is constant, singular, and permanent. From a higher perspective, time is variable in its rate of flow and selective in its configuration. Our perception of time, like the flow of time within a movie or novel, is an illusion. The string exists from beginning to end, simultaneously, but its path is open to revision. True time moves forward not with the tick of a clock but the making of a choice. That which is inevitable has already happened.

The seemingly irreversible flow of linear time has its origins in quantum phenomena. Like a movie projector displaying successive frames to create the illusion of motion, so does consciousness continuously select from a stationary spectrum of realities which frame to experience next. The nondeterministic (unpredictable) nature of choice is what creates this one-way flow of time; at our level of existence, the collapse of a wave function cannot be reversed, and it is this collapse which generates time as we know it.

Quantum Physics of Time Travel

Last year (2005) an interesting paper appeared that investigated the paradoxes of time travel in context of quantum physics. Usually time travel is approached from the Relativity angle, involving black holes or faster than light travel, whose requirements for application are too immense to be practical. Fortunately, it turns out that the quantum interpretation opens the door to understanding some basic fourth density (beyond linear time) principles. What follows is a summary and discussion of the paper by Daniel Greenberger and Karl Svozil titled Quantum Theory Looks at Time Travel.

From the abstract:

We introduce a quantum mechanical model of time travel which includes two figurative beam splitters in order to induce feedback to earlier times. This leads to a unique solution to the paradox where one could kill one’s grandfather in that once the future has unfolded, it cannot change the past, and so the past becomes deterministic. On the other hand, looking forwards towards the future is completely probabilistic. This resolves the classical paradox in a philosophically satisfying manner.

From the conclusion:

According to our model, if you travel into the past quantum mechanically, you would only see those alternatives consistent with the world you left behind you. In other words, while you are aware of the past, you cannot change it. No matter how unlikely the events are that could have led to your present circumstances, once they have actually occurred, they cannot be changed. Your trip would set up resonances that are consistent with the future that has already unfolded.

This also has enormous consequences on the paradoxes of free will. It shows that it is perfectly logical to assume that one has many choices and that one is free to take any one of them. Until a choice is taken, the future is not determined. However, once a choice is taken, and it leads to a particular future, it was inevitable. It could not have been otherwise. The boundary conditions that the future events happen as they already have, guarantees that they must have been prepared for in the past. So, looking backwards, the world is deterministic. However, looking forwards, the future is probabilistic. This completely explains the classical paradox. In fact, it serves as a kind
of indirect evidence that such feedback must actually take place in nature, in the sense that without it, a paradox exists, while with it, the paradox is resolved. (Of course, there is an equally likely explanation, namely that going backward in time is impossible. This also solves the paradox by avoiding it.)

The model also has consequences concerning the many-worlds interpretation of quantum theory. The world may appear to keep splitting so far as the future is concerned. However, once a measurement is made, only those histories consistent with that measurement are possible. In other words, with time travel, other alternative worlds do not exist, as once a measurement has been made confirming the world we live in, the other worlds would be impossible to reach from the original one.

To more accurately rephrase what is said above, a time traveler can only interact in a causal, physical, tangible manner with pasts that inevitably evolve into the future from which the time traveler came. Alternately, we in the present can only interact in a causal manner with time travelers from the very future we are currently vectoring towards.

The rules of time travel may not be as strict as this, however, since the paper ends by pointing to an alternate solution implying that “less ’deterministic’ and fuzzier time traveling might be possible.” Based on the mathematics alone, the paper shows that feedback loops between the present and future can and probably do exist, that their existence perfectly resolves time travel paradoxes by setting conditions on how the future can interact with its past. But what exactly is “less deterministic” and “fuzzier” time travel? Well, that question leads to the rest of this article.

A deterministic process is one where a perfectly predictable chain of events follows some initial known cause. A nondeterministic event cannot be predicted at all, merely described in terms of probabilities. Clearly, freewill is absent in determinism and fully present in nondeterminism. That a time traveler interacts deterministically with people in the past implies he can violate their freewill by being the cause that evokes a definite effect upon them. But then he can only do what he ended up doing anyway.

A fuzzier form of time travel is where a greater range of pasts may be accessed at the expense of decreased determinism in the interaction. In other words, the time traveler will have greater freedom to visit alternate pasts if he is more respectful of freewill. This is not his choice, rather it is a restriction enforced by the laws of quantum mechanics. The more inconsistent a past with his timeline, the less “presence” the time traveler will have while visiting.

By “presence” I mean two things: physical presence and probabilistic presence. Either will enforce the preservation of freewill. To lose physical presence means to become more ethereal. To lose probabilistic presence means you will simply not be at the right place at the right time doing the right thing to have any effect.

A time traveler can therefore visit any past at all if he remains entirely invisible and nonphysical. This would be equivalent to remote viewing the past. The more tangible he desires to be, the more restricted the range of pasts he can visit. If he wants to be fully physical, he can only enter the pasts that created his present. This is not speculation, this follows directly from the mathematics shown in the paper by Greenberger.
Fuzzy Time Travel

Of greatest interest is the “gray” zone between deterministic and nondeterministic interaction. Such “hybrid” interactions are somewhat tangible but still respectful of freewill, mostly ethereal but periodically physical, mostly subjective and only fleetingly objective. Whatever does not outright violate freewill is allowed. Examples abound: telepathic interaction, synchronistic signs and number sightings, contact through the subjective screen of dreams, abductions made dubious through memory wiping or screen memories, visitation in the etheric state, chance meetings without proof of record, an inner voice quiet enough to be ignored, a compulsion that biases but does not force, an experience meant only for a few, etc…

Fuzzy time travel happens…all the time. Technically, it is not time travel so much as one realm interacting with another in regulated ways. But being that we still exist in the illusion of linear time, much can be gleaned from thinking in terms of past, present, future, and the feedback loops between these.

It follows that the more you vector towards a particular probable future, the more tangible and objective your interaction with that future becomes. Perhaps your upcoming choices will change your path to a different set of probable futures, but for now whatever direction you are moving towards will garner you feedback from that future. This has some interesting implications.

Imagine for a moment that you are a time traveler interacting very loosely with someone of the past. You would like to interact more objectively, but quantum laws preserving freewill prohibit you. How, then, can you achieve this without violating freewill? By using your limited range of interaction to solicit or entrain the person into volitionally vectoring ever closer towards your own timeline. The more this person’s probable futures become your probable pasts, the more both of you become part of the same time stream, and the more objectively you may interact.

Negative Hyperdimensional Entrainment

This technique of entrainment to achieve greater deterministic influence is a favorite tactic of self-serving hyperdimensional entities who find it profitable to enslave other souls. The more tangibly they can do so, the less freewill their targets have to resist. From our linear time perspective, these entities come from a very negative probable future and are interacting with us now in dodgy but manipulative ways to entrain us into reinforcing their timeline, either by becoming them, serving them, or not being an obstacle to them. We know these entities more commonly as the negative variety of gray, reptilian, mantis, and nordic alien factions. Not surprisingly, their method of operation is entirely consistent with the quantum mechanics of time travel. By manipulating rather than forcing their targets toward spiritual slavery, they may ensnare souls on timelines more lush than their own.

A fascinating but disturbing phenomenon happens to people who get too paranoid, depressed, desperate, or fearful regarding matters of darkness. Alien abductees, conspiracy researchers, paranormal investigators, newbies to Matrix research – they are all vulnerable to enhancing the object of their fears by getting too emotionally entangled. Fear vectors one toward a probable future of vulnerability, initiating a feedback loop that ensures one becomes vulnerable unless the vector switches orientation towards something more emotionally and spiritually balanced.
Those obsessively fearful of grays will draw them in, those obsessively paranoid of government monitoring will receive it, those easily freaked out by the artificially synchronistic nature of the matrix will be swarmed by weirdness. The feedback loop induces a self-reinforcing downward spiral whereby traumatic experience creates fear and fear creates further trauma. The person is always free to choose transcendence and break out of the loop.

While negative emotional states lock one onto negative futures, lack of resistance or enthusiastic support out of naivete does the same. For instance, another way to increase the objective manifestation of negative aliens in your life is by happily supporting them, calling for them, beckoning to interact with them. While fear is completely lacking, you still reinforce their timeline and thereby increase how much force they can use against you. The interaction may even be of a “warm and fuzzy” nature but if out of ignorance you help what ends up being a hostile agenda, the timeloop grows in strength. Beyond a certain point it becomes very difficult to break out, especially since the increased objectivity of interaction affords them more thorough avenues for abduction, programming, implantation, and control. This undermines your ability to resist. So these dark forces work either by entraining you emotionally into vectoring towards them or deceiving/suppressing you intellectually into supporting them.

Positive Hyperdimensional Entrainment

Enough on darkness. Let’s discuss how to apply the quantum mechanics of time travel towards positive ends. The first and most obvious application is strengthening one’s connection with positive forces, namely the Higher Self. The second application is in forcing reality to correct perturbations to well-established feedback loops via miracles, as shall be explained shortly.

What is the Higher Self? Simply the final version of you that has become fully manifest in potential. Should your conscious evolution continue indefinitely, it is inevitable that sooner or later you would reach the heights of individual spiritual perfection, a state in which your wisdom and power has grown profound and your mind has fully transcended the limits of time and space. While that is yet to occur, its inevitability means it has already happened. If your future self transcends time, then its consciousness may naturally extend “backwards” and overlap the consciousness of all its past incarnations simultaneously.

In other words, although from your linear perspective the Higher Self is a distant probable future, ultimately this future perfected self exists right now alongside you. According to the quantum principle discussed in this article, the more you vector towards becoming the Higher Self, the more objectively the Higher Self can interact with you. A weak connection means its guidance is limited to faint intuitive impressions, symbolic dreams, certain synchronicities, and so on. A stronger connection would allow direct inner conversation, which is clearly more objective than vague impressions. The voice of the Higher Self is often described as a “small, still voice” meaning an inner knowing that is easily drowned out by mental distractions. A prolonged and sincere effort to think, feel, and act like the Higher Self — to live from the highest part of you, the heart of your soul — increases the feedback loop and widens your capacity to act as a channel for your future self. You are then merging with who you truly are. The prodigal son returns home.

Whatever you want to connect with, simply support it, reinforce it, try to become it. People who pray to Jesus from the standpoint of weak beggars receive no response because they are vectoring
towards a future of disempowerment and victimhood, a direction opposite to what the Christ represents, and so they receive little feedback. Those who call upon the divine impulse within, recognize it, and do their best to express it receive reinforcement.

**Manifesting Miracles**

Another application of quantum time travel laws pertains to the creation of miracles. A miracle is a highly improbable but meaningful event that serves a recognizably positive purpose. Some miracles are intentionally inserted into the timeline as a matter of divine intervention, but they also happen as a consequence of natural law. “Leap and the net will appear” is proven through experience, but its explanation is most elegantly handled by timeline dynamics as follows:

There exists a bundle of probable pathways between the present moment and some particular future. The straightest path is the most probable and mundane, while the more deviating paths are less probable. The greater the deviation, the more fantastic or bizarre the correction necessary to ensure that future. So if you can stay locked onto a particular future, any excursions you take that might upset its fulfillment merely brings you onto a less probable path towards that same future, a path whose initial excursion is redressed by a miraculous correction.

How to lock upon a particular future? By resonating with it. Your soul vibrational spectrum, which is somewhat equivalent to your emotional temperament or learning style, determines what range of probable futures you resonate with most and therefore attract. The more hostile, reactive, depressive, fearful, fanciful, passive, or jaded your regular mode of being, the harsher and more painful the types of experiences attracted. The more confident, attentive, serene, exultant, warmhearted, and patient you are, the more your experiences will reinforce those qualities by being of a positive nature.

You enter into temporal feedback with futures that spawn from your current mode of being, a self-reinforcing process that keeps you within the bundle of probable paths consistent with a resonant range of futures. Once this feedback loop is established, you can then take risks that merely send you on a more exciting trajectory towards the same successful future. In other words, if through a positive state of mind you connect with a positive future, then by maintaining that inner connection your experiences will adjust accordingly to ensure everything works out.

The trick is in making your causal excursion as nonchalantly as possible. Worry reorients your
vector towards a disappointing future. Anticipation constricts the quantum fluidity of a probable future and prevents it from manifesting synchronistically. Remaining dispassionate when taking a risk ensures that you maintain your original vector and stay within the intended bundle of probable paths. It is much like telling a scriptwriter that no matter what scene opens an act, the act must have a happy ending; then the more perilous the opening scene, the more amazingly the plot must transition to manifest a happy ending. If a month from now you will be financially fine, then spending on something that assists your growth — and thereby reinforces a positive future — guarantees that some miracle must manifest to reimburse the purchase.

Summary

In a nutshell, according to quantum physics we are caught in mutual feedback loops with all our probable futures. The greater the probability of a particular future, the stronger the feedback loop, the more tangibly beings from that future can interact with you in the present. By choosing to become more positive and aware, you establish mutual reinforcement with positive futures and thereby increase the number of miracles necessary to evolve you into those futures. The enormous implications I will leave to your imagination and experimentation.

The Trap of Combative Dualism

28 October 06 (matrix)

The New Age “love and light” philosophies get plenty of criticism for being ignorant of the darker side of reality, for being steeped in denial and wishful thinking, and for turning its adherents into weak doormats. The “You Create Your Own Reality” concept (YCYOR) is central to the paradigm, based on the assumption that everything that happens outside of you is a reflection of what goes on inside you. Proof of this is offered via the observation that positive thinking attracts positive experience and negative thinking attracts negative experiences – which is accurate, as far as I can tell.

But YCYOR makes a fatal mistake in reasoning that dark influences can therefore be kept out of one’s reality by denying their existence. The problem is that ignorance and denial of something that has its own independent existence gives it room to maneuver in ways you refuse to perceive. The darkness within, your shadow side, has its own agenda and desires that continue to operate no matter how much you try to pretend it’s not there, and they will manipulate your thoughts and behavior without you knowing it. Likewise, the darkness outside of you, namely the plethora of predatory forces in human and nonhuman forms as well as the external consequences of poor choices made over the years, will inevitably give you a rude awakening from denial. In other words, when wishful thinking and denial is chosen over awareness and responsibility, things catch up with you sooner or later. For further discussion on YCYOR, please see my article True Reality Creation.

Needless to say, getting severely burned by wishful positive thinking or seeing the ignorance and hypocrisy it induces in others can make you want to run the other way. But you can run away so reactively that you slide right into the opposite trap, which is extreme negativity and combative dualism. For instance, if YCYOR does not work out for you, it is easy to get bitter and throw the baby out with the bathwater, rejecting “positive thinking” as a form of weakness and denial when,
in truth, the problem was that the positive attitude was not accompanied by balanced awareness. So instead of positivity combined with awareness, you might choose awareness at the expense of positivity. This is bad because while awareness prepares you to deal with negative phenomena, a negative attitude actually increases the occurrence and severity of such phenomena. It’s like becoming aware that a pipe has burst and fighting to patch it without first turning off the water valve.

To clarify, dualism is the belief in two things irreconcilably divided, such as “good vs evil” or “spirit vs matter”, while what I call combative dualism is acknowledging there is darkness but getting psychologically zealous about destroying it to the point of becoming increasingly like it. This extreme dualism is rooted in ego seeking retribution for perceived injustices but using ego-based means of achieving that retribution. Those steeped in this mindset boast about being realists while justifying their stance by scoffing at more subjective alternatives like the New Age paradigm. Of course, they are thinking in binary terms because they are not aware, or unwilling to acknowledge, a third and more holistic perspective. They see only what is false in one half-truth, true in another half-truth, and push the latter as vastly superior to the first when both are equally defective.

An interesting thing happens to those who have a fear-based preoccupation with dark influences in their lives. They start shadow-boxing a variety of phenomena that they themselves are responsible for creating or drawing in. What kind of phenomena? Depends on their belief system, but here I mean something like a massive increase in suspicious characters following them in public, black helicopter harassment, signs of tampering and monitoring, constant tormenting by dark astral and etheric entities, ongoing violent alien abductions, and so on. These things may have their own independent existence, but they are drawn in and enabled by skewed awareness and negative attitude, especially – and this is important – when one mistakes these “attacks” as necessary confirmation that one is on the right track, that one has irritated the dark forces by throwing a wrench in their works. This mistaken belief only serves to further reinforce what has already become a turbulent path in life.

Negative attitudes come with a lowered soul frequency, and a lowered frequency induces more frequent misperceptions and greater tangibility of interactions with negative entities. So the fear and combative dualism actually attract more things to fear and fight than necessary. Contrary to YCYOR, losing the negative attitude is not enough to solve the problem since even if you don’t attract something, that something can still volitionally attract itself to you, so that is where awareness comes in to mentally block or physically nip such problems in the bud.

When confronted by the fact that dark forces exist and are operative in your life and the world, something innocent within you dies. But that innocence is just naivete that had to go sooner or later, so good riddance. Still, something like the five-stages of grief can take place: denial (“Nope, not real.”), fear (“Oh my god!”), anger (“Sons of bitches!”), acceptance (“Nothing I can do about it…”), understanding (“Aha, now I see the bigger picture”). New Age wishful thinking is located in the first stage. Combative dualism is stuck at the fear and anger stages, where awareness of the problem is unaccompanied by higher understanding, a more balanced attitude, or awareness of the positive side of reality. Its center of gravity is the ego, and the ego’s idea of positive is whatever strokes, soothes, and feeds it.

Only through comprehensive awareness combined with a balanced attitude of positivity does the
center of balance shift towards the heart of the soul, and only then through responsibility in your actions does the circuit finally complete and life turns around for the better. There is a difference between combative dualism and balanced dualism. I’m all for dualism, since the very existence of freewill must allow for the choice to respect or reject Creation and that necessarily establishes the positive and negative halves of the spiritual evolutionary ladder. The key is to be aware of both halves of the duality and how each fits into the greater whole. There is unity in the essence of duality, and duality in the expression of unity. Understanding this greater context gives you the needed perspicacity and wisdom to effectively deal with problems without losing your spiritual footing.

With increased awareness, attitude adjustment, and some introspection those caught in the trap of negative and combative dualism can pull themselves out of it. Here are some suggestions for attaining this.

• Replace emotional paranoia and cocky combativeness with humility, humor, and nonchalance. Yes negative forces exist and have an interest in challenging your spiritual progress, but ego / fear / obsession are to them what blood is to a shark. Laugh off their scare tactics and they realize their investment in screwing with you isn’t paying off. Treat the threat as you would the danger of being run over when crossing a road – don’t get bug-eyed and madly dash across or you might trip and indeed get run over, or hop around the street shouting and flipping off traffic or you might get shot, just calmly look both ways and cross…

• Learn to use your intent combined with positive emotion to manifest protection and other beneficial things. Acknowledge and nurture the spiritual power and confidence within you rather than depending solely on external gimmicks and gadgets. And if you try any sort of manifesting or prayer routine, keep in mind it’s not the content of that routine so much as the deep-seated attitude behind it that produces results. If you pray for being saved by a higher power, yet maintain a deep-seated attitude of victimization and disempowerment, then the latter is what you’ll manifest.

• Become aware of your emotional issues like egotism, pissiness, victimhood, vengefulness, self-importance, and insecurities instead of denying and suppressing them. Denial allows them to fester and build in pressure until they explode and cause you to react irrationally and emotionally. Denial also allows them to secretly form the foundation of your belief system, displacing what should instead be a pure interest in the pursuit of truth. When belief is tied to ego-based identity, anyone challenging that belief will be perceived by the ego as an attack upon its own existence, and the response can be quite nasty. Become aware of these issues and then you can deal with them.

• Stop thinking that getting attention from dark forces suggests they are taking revenge for something good you have done, that this means you are necessarily on the right path. No, the more you get off track the more easily they can toy with you, and the more your reality becomes abrasive as a feedback mechanism warning you off having gone astray. If you really are a threat, these forces won’t play around with flashy theatrics – they will go for the kill, either by trying to eliminate you through accident or illness, or sneaking through the
backdoor of your mind and programming you to destroy yourself and everything you have worked for without you realizing it. I know this from experience.

• Sharpen your critical thinking skills, become better at spotting logical fallacies and subjectivity. Also practice reading the vibes of people for any signs of them being “off” — vibe should feel like that of a used car salesman who knows he’s selling you a lemon, smooth but off. Becoming aware of deception immunizes you and leaves you open to explore more fruitful avenues.

• Broaden your research into new subjects. If someone is labeled a disinformation agent, check out his or her material for yourself and come up with several reasons why that accusation is true or false. Hunt down quality sources that give you new insights and empower you with new chunks of knowledge.

• Without sacrificing awareness of how dark forces operate and what their influence has been on you and the world around you, adjust your attitude to be more constructive, hopeful, and good-natured. Practice seeing the beauty in people and things. Put more of your energy into seeding and growing something that makes you spiritually fulfilled — you are not combatting dark forces directly so much as starving them by creating a better alternative. The purpose of all this is mainly to get your vibes back up so that you’re no longer neck-deep in shark-infested waters. (see article: Realm Dynamics). Even if conditions are shitty, make a conscious choice to stay lucid and emotionally above water instead of drowning in negativity and self-loathing. Keep a check on your thoughts and emotions, as what goes on within does correlate loosely with what goes on outside.

In An Outline of Esoteric Science Rudolf Steiner wrote:

An additional way of training our thinking and feeling is by acquiring a quality we can call “positivity.” There is a beautiful legend that tells of Christ Jesus and several other people walking past a dead dog. The others all turned away from the ugly sight, but Christ Jesus spoke admiringly of the animal’s beautiful teeth. We can practice maintaining the soul-attitude toward the world that this legend exemplifies. The erroneous, the bad, and the ugly must not prevent the soul from finding the true, the good, and the beautiful wherever they are present. We must not confuse positivity with being artificially uncritical or arbitrarily closing our eyes [YCYOR] to things that are bad, false, or inferior. It is possible to admire a dead animal’s “beautiful teeth” and still see the decaying corpse; the corpse does not prevent us from seeing the beautiful teeth. We cannot consider bad things good and false things true, but we can reach the point where the bad does not prevent us from seeing the good and errors do not keep us from seeing the truth.

Advice for Newbies

7 December 06 (matrix)
Good news is that lots of people are waking up, finding themselves in situations similar to your own. On the other hand, lots of people are also shriveling up spiritually, becoming increasingly empty and bitter. So before I say anything else, remember that because “saving the world” requires
that people save themselves, only the willing can be assisted and there is no point in getting stubbornly frustrated with the rejection and ridicule you might face from those not ready or willing to expand their minds.

The surest way to work for the betterment of mankind is to improve yourself, educate yourself, become aware and skilled at delivering that awareness to others who are interested. It’s more about building up your potential to serve than just going out there and trying to do good haphazardly. The actual opportunities to “do something” are called out of you by the needs of circumstance — you’ll be inspired with a good idea and your circumstances will just happen to be in the right place for you to carry it out.

By improving yourself, I mean becoming ever more mentally stable and emotionally balanced, acquiring wisdom from observation and experience, taking great care to deal with people according to their level of understanding. Books by Rudolf Steiner, John Baines, Theun Mares, and Franz Bardon, and other esoteric sources contain decent advice on this.

By educating yourself, I mean learning more about what really matters, what is really going on in this world and within yourself, the hidden things that manipulate people that could be stopped if only they knew about it, and the positive principles that if known and applied would allow one to progress more intelligently and powerfully yet compassionately through life.

Becoming skilled means finding your niche for communication. Some are good at sending messages through music or art. Others through writing. Others through informal conversations. Others through public speaking. If you can become a walking “help center” where those you meet who need a bit of inspiration or help figuring something out can benefit from what you yourself have learned, that’s a good thing.

Whatever you do learn about, be sure to ponder not just memorize it. Look for what it explains, and look for what it fails to explain. Over time you’ll grow talented at telling truth from deception, which is a very important skill because the road to higher knowledge is strewn with lures and traps. I spend the most energy on my site laying out the various methods of manipulation and deception because I figure if people know about the bad stuff then they can more safely pursue whatever positive things they desire.

Networking with others of similar orientation works wonders. Ideas bounce back and forth, new ideas arise seemingly out of nowhere, one person gets an idea and another happens to have some needed skills to pull it off, and so on. So whether on the internet or in real life (most likely both) you can optimistically pursue connecting with others, seeking them out, maybe putting yourself out there through a website or blog, in order to fish for those that would make good mutual team-mates. Subtle synchronicity guides these connections but there has to be a nonzero probability that the connection can even happen – therefore as long as you take care of the mechanics, reality takes care of the rest. Your spiritual family exists right now scattered about, it’s just a matter of timing and preparation for these to gather.

**Firstly how would one go about distinguishing a positive human from a matrix agent?**

The only way to know with 100% certainty is to have clairvoyant abilities where you can see the soul energy field of another, and even then you have to know what to look for. Otherwise intuitively
gauging the “vibe” of another and using what you know from previous experience with people can
get you close enough. There are two risks to avoid here — the first is getting suckered by an agent,
the other is mistaking someone positive for an agent. When you get suckered, at least you learn a
lesson and move on. But when you falsely believe someone positive is an agent, that really screws
things up. Therefore I would recommend giving everyone but the most hostile cases the benefit of a
doubt and let their further actions speak for themselves.

In my experience there are really only two types of “agents” to watch out for:

1) *Helpless super-drainer* — this person tugs on you to be their teacher, their rescuer,
their advisor, etc… and comes off as emotionally needy and desperate. Yet no matter
what you tell them, they never actually listen or improve — never. That is the difference
between these and just your sincere seeker looking for advice. Instead of actually
benefiting from interaction in a learning/wisdom/strength fashion, they just ask you for
more and more time and energy. It’s like they don’t care about the advice you give
them, only that you are being dragged down with them. Functionally they are like
energy leeches. Give them a chance to learn from your advice, but if they become a pain
in the ass by consistently refusing to help themselves then walk away.

2) *Bait-and-switcher* — this person comes to you strongly mirroring many of your
beliefs but seems a bit hurried or pressured to build rapport with you. Then the moment
they have your undivided attention they quickly switch over to a pile of disinformation,
trying to lead you down a line of beliefs that make you feel uncomfortable, trying to
make you doubt your own previously gained knowledge and wisdom — not through
solid reason but through manipulative tactics. Often they will enter your life with a
bunch of *really weird* synchronicities, like mentioning specific things you have just
been researching but no one else knows you have, or talking about their personal history
and childhood with details that very oddly and too closely match your own. And as soon
as you show resistance they switch from sweet to bitchy in a split second. That’s a red
flag if they do the 180 degree switch as soon as you refuse to bend to their will, which
reveals what they are really after.

Both of these will be pretty obvious when you encounter them. There’s this shallow surface mask,
and beneath is something nasty that comes out from time to time. It’s the nasty parts that will stand
out for you. It doesn’t matter whether they are individually souled or not, as a rabidly programmed
and manipulated souled person is bad news regardless.

Remember there’s a difference between a nice person having a bad day and unintentionally
snapping at you, and a dangerous person pretending to be nice except for moments when their
disguise slips. You can sense intuitively what is beneath the surface of someone. Does their niceness
seem fake? Does their rudeness seem out of line for them? and so on.

A common mistake is for people to discern who is positive and negative based on whether they act
nice or do nice things versus being mean and aggressive. But let’s remember that con-artists put on
the charm to fool lonely old ladies all the time, therefore it takes seeing the bigger picture, the
consistent patterns, the red flags unexcused by superficial niceties to catch a peddler of deception.

The best way to hone your intuition is to pay attention to what you feel as you interact with
someone and to remember this feeling — then later, after time has passed and they have shown their
true colors, you can recall this feeling and correlate it to whom they ended up being. Everyone that
has ever felt “off” to me eventually ended up visibly revealing their negative intentions or purposes sooner or later. Everyone who has felt fully-rounded and good-natured eventually proved themselves to be creative souls with lifespark.

To avoid suspecting the wrong people, don’t go nitpicking for red flags in the behavior of someone who seems so-so, otherwise you will force yourself to see things as you wish rather than as they are. If there is a warning sign, it will come to you. All you have to do is avoid rationalizing away these warning signs when they smack you in the head. So stay calm and neutral to avoid injecting bias into your observations. The matrix control system can use a combination of implanted thought loops and orchestrated misunderstandings to make two positive souls distrust each other, so beware. Unlike noticing real warning signs, this artificially induced paranoia comes with an irrational impulse of irritability and oversensitivity. The difference between prudence and paranoia is that the first is sharp yet serene, free from irrational compulsions, while the second is a type of intoxication.

What signs should I be aware of that signify a pending “attack”?

I can only discuss what signs consistently come my way prior to an attack:

- **Number sightings** — I may see certain numbers on clocks, license plates, receipts, signs, etc… only around times when I’m in some kind of danger. For me, “911” and “141” respectively signify “emergency” and “watch out.” For you, other numbers might show up. Keep in mind the things that come to your attention prior to some really aggravating or depressing experience. You’ll notice certain ones occur again next time before similarly negative events. Then you can predict the impending nature of an attack by these precursors.

- **Synchronicities** — these show up whenever I’m about to undergo a disturbance or expansion in my beingness. So if I’m heading on a new positive path, or learning something important, I get synchronicities. But I also get them when I’m about to undergo an emotionally distressing experience. Therefore when you get clusters of synchronicities, pay attention to what if anything happens in the next 48 hours.

- **Dreams** — watch for dreams of storms, tornadoes, violent attackers, gunfights, animal attacks, zombie attacks, evil things lurking outside your house trying to get in, and so on. For me these symbolic dreams almost always predict a related literal event happening within three days. Journal your dreams and then use hindsight to correlate them to experience. Among its many functions, dreams serve to tune you into probable futures in the works. If one is right around the corner, it will likely show up symbolically in a dream. But I have confirmed that probable futures are quantum in nature – if you can observe them with enough precision, you “collapse the wave function” and freeze them from manifesting. Therefore, based on such prognostications, if you can sufficiently determine the timing and nature of the attack it will fizzle out. Awareness radically shifts the probability distribution of impending futures – negative forces will call off an ambush if chances of success take a nosedive.

- **Ear ringings** — especially ones in the left ear. These sound like tuning forks going off inside your head, low or high pitch, often preceded by muting. The louder, the more serious. For me they signify being monitored, like some predator spying on its target to gain last minute
intelligence before pouncing. Whenever I get an ear ringing, I know something is up and increase my awareness level for the next couple days. Sometimes you’ll get these when talking with a certain person who seems fishy, especially one of the two agent types mentioned earlier. As for right ear, for some people it means “Bingo!” in response to a thought worth investigating, while for others it has related positive meanings. However for me, my right ear ringings have correlated with impending screw ups and frustrations.

- **Deja vu** — a strong feeling of already having lived this particular moment. Like in *The Matrix* this means “they changed something.” It signifies an artificial alteration of the timeline to place an unexpected obstacle in your immediate path.

- **Omens** — these will vary from person to person. Myself, I have noticed an unusual amount of police and fire sirens occurring on days when I’m about to deal with an emergency. Sudden unusual insect problems or wild animal intrusions may also be significant. Look in a dream dictionary like [dreammoods.com](http://dreammoods.com) for clues on what these might mean.

- **Feeling of doom** — feels like something is terribly wrong but you cannot place what exactly it might be. Sometimes you’re just being toyed with by entities milking your fear energy, especially if it becomes a debilitating panic attack, other times it really is an intuitive premonition when the feeling heightens your alertness.

- **Animals acting crazy** — we have a cat that goes nuts running and huffing when an attack is underway. Dogs and cats may act strange, aggravated, or scared, especially if a negative entity is lurking around to monitor or attempt a proximity attack through etheric/telepathic means.

(For more articles on these phenomena, please visit [in2worlds.net](http://in2worlds.net))

How would one go about encouraging a “Sleeping” person to free their mind?

The goal is to pique their curiosity without brow-beating them. Almost everyone has a threshold of openness where rational pondering turns to irrational defending when some ego-based belief is crossed. Some reach that threshold right away… those more open minded may never reach it in conversation. If you are good enough at conversing that you can lead them right up to that threshold, then that’s as far as you can take them at the moment. Any further and they won’t budge, only get turned off. It's not about being cunning or manipulative, but rather speaking from a noble, caring, and lucid place within yourself while keeping their conscious responses in mind.

One way to pique curiosity is to ask a question, mention a phenomena, that they cannot explain or account for. Something that brings to their attention an inadequacy or hole in their view of the world. If you’re dealing with someone conscious but asleep, they might frown and go “hmm, I never thought about that one. Interesting,” while those who are more heavily programmed can dance in circles with logical fallacies trying to dismiss anything that does not match their programming; for those, smile and back off. For the interested, this is where it pays off to be knowledgeable on alternative subjects and know what further sources to recommend.

It also helps to be genuinely earnest and sincerely kind when relaying some belief or experience of yours, instead of arrogant or combative — this way they can still see your good side even if they
don’t believe you. They are being held hostage by their own egos, and when you step out of line and provoke their ego more than necessary, their minds turn off and the ego takes over shutting you out. Speaking to their hearts, their reasoning minds, their latent spark of curiosity works best.

You can also try raising your vibes by thinking of lofty and positive thoughts, memories, and ideals before getting on with the interaction, which helps make them feel more comfortable and wards off negative forces that might otherwise whip them away from opening their minds.

(index)

Spiritless Humans

27 April 09 (matrix)
(This article replaces Matrix Agents: Profiles and Analysis)

Empty people. Puppet people. Cardboard cutouts. Drones. Organic Portals. Background characters. Why do these terms even exist? Because out of necessity they had to be invented by those who independently noticed the same puzzling phenomenon, one for which there is no official name: some people seem to be missing something very important inside. While they are not necessarily any less intelligent, successful, or physically healthy as anyone else, they nevertheless show no indication of having any higher components to their consciousness.

Over the years I have received emails from readers who came to this same conclusion. They noticed that some people were strangely one dimensional and hollow inside. This observation is not hard to miss, but it is easy to rationalize away, especially with modern society being so heavily brainwashed with the politically correct but unrealistic concept that everyone is completely equal in every way, which ignores functional differences due to environmental, genetic, and most importantly, metaphysical factors.

Background

The idea of empty people first dawned on me in 1999 after having done much research into sociopaths and psychopaths, their condition being medically known as APD or “Antisocial Personality Disorder.” My interest in the subject grew out of having been forced for many years to suffer under someone whom I later learned had all the signs of being a sociopath. Heartless and soulless were descriptive terms, but little did I know just how literally true they were. I had noticed in this person an emptiness behind the eyes and a very shallow conscious essence, which seemed to be at the root of the behaviors I observed.

Eventually I realized that this same root condition was present in some others who were not outwardly sociopathic, but whose lack of heart was masked by a well-adapted social exterior. In other words, what psychiatry would diagnose as APD was only the more extreme, criminal, sloppy manifestation of a condition that otherwise expressed itself more widely in a socially acceptable and less incriminating manner. The latter is what may account for the body of empty people present in the population.

But what exactly is missing in them? The answer is clear if we look at their common behaviors and qualities of consciousness.
Behavioral and Psychic Characteristics

Their behavior tends toward being glib, shallow, egotistical, narcissistic, mundane, predatory, and materialistic. Sometimes these traits are camouflaged by a polished social exterior, but anyone with a discerning eye can see through the disguise. They lack individuality, independent thinking, and are strongly biased toward holding a herd mentality. They lack comprehension of anything beyond the material sphere of the five senses, and have no interest in such metaphysical matters except as flashy accessories to boost their social image. They also appear entirely incapable of empathy, soul-searching, and willful self-sacrifice. Nevertheless, in the presence of others they can put on a flashy show of concern, distress, or altruism for purposes of social manipulation; for example, crocodile tears to elicit sympathy, or doing something nice for another solely to guilt trip them later and extort a favor.

Psychically scanning their consciousness reveals something interesting. There is a certain simplicity, flatness, and inertness to their essence, even if their intellects are highly developed. Unlike other people, their conscious energy is more diffuse, dull, impermanent, and amorphous rather than solid, sparkling, crystallized, and concentrated. Put another way, their minds are like sand castles instead of real castles. There is something animalistic and rudimentary piloting their bodies. It seems they have conscious awareness just as plants and animals do, but not conscious self-awareness as humans are supposed to have. There is an important difference between awareness and self-awareness.

Spirit: The Missing Component

The missing factor must be something that endows a being with self-awareness, volition, and the capacity to value transcendental ideals. This goes beyond mere physical factors like missing portions of the brain, defective genetics, or a poor upbringing, because the latter are just defects in the hardware and programming of the biological machine, whereas the problem here involves the consciousness operating the machine. What intuitive or clairvoyant perception picks up about their consciousness involves metaphysical factors instead.

What to call this higher component of consciousness absent in some people? Usually it would be called the soul, but that has caused too much confusion in the past. For example, casual readers unfamiliar with the proper definition of “soulless” thought it meant “completely devoid of consciousness” when in reality it meant “devoid of individualized consciousness.” No, they do have some kind of soul energy by virtue of being alive, but the soul is not imbued with a higher spark of true sentience and self-awareness.

Therefore I will call this higher spark “spirit” and define it as follows: spirit is the core of individualized consciousness, that permanent aspect of one’s being representing the true Self, which accumulates experiences and spiritual wisdom throughout life, survives physical death, and remains intact upon reincarnating to continue growing toward the fulfillment of its potential. It is the divine god-spark, the seat of freewill, the holographic fragment of the Creator residing at the very center of your being, the “I” that is you, the inner conscious observer capable of observing even its own self-observation.

It seems not all humans have spirit. Therefore they have no self-awareness, individuality, wisdom, empathy, creative intelligence, or conscience. What further confirms this hypothesis is that, as will
be discussed below, one may observe a total absence of destiny, synchronicity, symbolic dreams, spiritual lessons, soul growth, and karma in their lives. This is to be expected if they have nothing permanent in them that survives death and reincarnates, because only spirit can gain from such things. Without spirit, they are temporary beings whose awareness forms shortly before birth and dissolves shortly after death. And if so, then for them, spiritual life lessons serve no purpose, karma from past lives does not exist, there is no higher Self acting as chaperone, nor would they have genuine interest in anything that serves a purpose beyond their current mortal existence. Therefore it is to be expected that they be particularly materialistic, worldly, and mundane in their ambitions; observation confirms this as well.

Other Components

How can we better understand all this? By understanding the various components and how they combine to make the whole of a being, we can grasp the numerous differences and similarities between spirited and spiritless humans.

Aside from spirit, the other components are body and soul. Soul is the nonphysical energetic interface between body and spirit. Occultists divide the soul into the etheric and astral bodies. The aforementioned “empty” people have bodies and souls, but not spirits. In this way it is clear that they have some kind of conscious energy, but not the permanent core that retains continuity through incarnations.

The soul consists of two components, the etheric and astral. The etheric component is a quantum biasing field that keeps the physical body from entropic disintegration. Or to put it more simply, it is life-force energy that keeps the body from decaying. The astral component is more abstract and intangible. It functions as the seat of consciously experienced feelings and passions. Feelings are not just chemical reactions in the brain, nor are they abstract thoughts in the mind. Rather they are vivid energies residing somewhere in between, and that buffer zone between the completely physical and completely metaphysical is the astral component of the soul.

Body and Ego

The body is the biological instrument through which we interact with our physical environment. The body comes with its own hereditary dispositions, biological drives and instincts, and behavioral algorithms stamped into it through social programming. These deterministic influences converge to create an artificial intelligence in a person that, by default, runs the body like an autopilot computer running an airplane.

This artificial intelligence is hereby termed “ego.” Its fundamental purpose is to ensure survival of the body by optimizing its behavior for the surrounding physical and social environment. In other words, external conditioning programs the ego to achieve survival in the environment from which that conditioning originates.

But the ego has no true consciousness of its own. It is just a computer running on neural (and by proxy, etheric) hardware that simulates a living identity. Its main advantage is that, being just a computer, it only has to mechanically calculate and react to situations instead of deeply and consciously reflecting, therefore it can respond much quicker to external situations.

For the spirit, the ego functions as a software device that automates interactions with other humans
and provides a mask of identity, programmed from birth, appropriate to the local environment. Somewhat like a player’s avatar in the Sims game, which looks and acts like a person and seems to do its own thing when not directed by the player.

The problem is that the ego is entirely a product of the past, and spirit entirely outside linear time. The first is completely deterministic, the second is completely nondeterministic. The first is an emergent property of matter, the second a permanent condensation of consciousness. The two have impulses that are often diametrically opposed, one pulling toward materiality, the other toward spirituality. Our daily consciousness, also known as the lower self, is a blending of both, namely the portion of spirit that shines through the mask of ego and identifies with it, analogous to a driver so absorbed in the act of driving that for him the car has become an extension of his body.

**Physical or Spiritual Influences Upon the Soul**

Now the soul, in residing between body and spirit and mediating between them, is influenced by both. It takes on its organization and function according to impulses from both spirit and the body. For instance, the astral body would respond both to a chemical drug inducing a feeling of euphoria through the body, and the spirit volitionally invoking a lofty feeling of spiritual joy, although the effects on the astral are not identical.

Likewise, the etheric body could have its structure altered by some injury to the physical body, or from some blockage or abnormality in the astral body percolating its influence down to the etheric level. Whatever influences are exerted upon the soul by body and spirit, their effects continue to linger in the soul, like tea continuing to circulate after having been stirred. This is why I said the ego runs on both neural and etheric hardware. Despite originating in the physical, the ego imparts the momentum of its conditioning upon the etheric.

**Consequences of Lacking a Spirit**

With the preceding in mind, consider what happens when someone has body, ego, and soul, but lacks spirit. First and foremost, their entire makeup would be the result of material influences like genetics and environment. The seat of their apparent intelligence would be the ego. And without the counterweight of spirit, their ego would reign king. Thus, in accordance with the function of ego, such people would be completely dedicated to material and social survival.

Notice that people with spirit who are awake to their spiritual impulses often make willful choices that serve no financial, social, or egotistic gains, that go against the expectations of Darwinian evolutionary principles, and that serve only spiritual ends. Such impulses are absent in spiritless people, thus they are truly optimized for survival in the physical world. Without conscience, empathy, or inner battle between ego and spirit holding them back, they can more quickly and easily succeed in their worldly environments regardless of the cost to others.

To better understand their metaphysical differences, consider what happens to spirited and spiritless people upon physical death.

Spirit and soul nested one inside the other, together leave the physical body. After a while, the etheric component of the soul disintegrates, leaving only spirit nested inside the astral body. The astral body then also disintegrates. The disintegration of etheric and astral bodies, meaning the dissolution or casting away of the soul, is known in Christian Esotericism as the second death.
liberated spirit then advances into the afterlife before reincarnating.

Reincarnation involves the spirit forming around itself a new soul and then slipping into a new physical body. In sequential reincarnations, what talents, predispositions, and imbalances it has acquired from previous lifetimes influences the new incarnation.

In the case of spiritless people, life begins as follows. As the fetal body gestates in the womb, the soul forms for the first time, like beach sand being gathered into the shape of a castle, and joins to the body. This combination produces rudimentary awareness. After being born, such a person becomes nothing more than a product of genetics and environment due to absence of spirit. Without a spiritual counterweight, biological drives and social programming become their primary impulses in life.

Upon physical death their soul evacuates the body, perhaps containing a lingering imprint of the ego, and after some time it disintegrates and is reabsorbed into the lake of energies from which it originally formed. Nothing of their identity survives. For people without spirit, this life is their only one. They form upon entering and dissolve upon leaving. It cannot be otherwise if they lack a core of individualized consciousness.

Thus everything that a spirited person has due to the continuity of his or her incarnations, is missing in the life of a spiritless person. For example, the spiritless would have no need for life lessons or spiritual learning experiences. What would be the purpose if whatever is gained disappears after death? Therefore spiritless people are ones who cannot learn spiritual lessons, who cannot profit spiritually from the trials of life, who cannot pass what is gained onto their successive incarnations. And so they have no concern for lessons of humility, empathy, compassion, understanding, or forgiveness. Instead of changing as people through spiritual maturation in life, they only change in the sense of better adapting to life through conditioning. For instance, whereas a spirited person may see the error of his ways and grow humble, a spiritless person would simply learn to not get caught next time.

Karma is another metaphysical factor absent in the life of spiritless people. There are many misconceptions about karma, so I will first explain my understanding of it, before showing how its absence affects the life of a spiritless person.

Karma (the negative type) is simply a spiritual debt or imbalance acquired upon violating the freewill of oneself or another. Violating your own freewill happens when you make a choice during an ignorant state, like when identifying with the ego and acting upon its impulses, that violates a choice made during a more spiritually sober state.

Upon committing a freewill violation, the higher spirit-associated aspect of consciousness regrets the error and makes a commitment to redress it, even if the lower ego-associated aspect tries to ignore this. The karmic imbalance then attracts experiences that teach a lesson correcting that ignorance, whether in this life or the next. The lesson learned is universal and does not require memory of the original choice that provoked it, just understanding of the lesson. The karmic experience itself is not what is fated, rather the lesson learned, therefore karma can sometimes be mitigated through pre-emptive understanding and forgiveness without necessarily needing to learn it the hard way through experience.
But without spirit, there is no true freewill and no true lessons that can be learned. Therefore the spiritless have no karma and instead live completely under the laws of chance and the law of the jungle. Whereas a spirited individual might be born with karmic handicaps, for the spiritless these handicaps would strictly be a matter of chance or heredity and serve no higher metaphysical purpose. Same with the timing and manner of their death; whereas spirited people may have loosely planned out their life before incarnating, including the way they will die, spiritless people die according to random circumstances without purpose or meaning, unless their death somehow plays an important part in the pre-incarnation script of a spirited individual.

Other missing factors include meaningful symbolic dreams, synchronicities, higher intuitive guidance, and their personal hand of destiny. Spiritless people experience none of these because they neither can nor need to. This should be obvious from understanding the role of spirit, but I will elaborate for the sake of clarity.

Meaningful dreams primarily serve to alert a person to spiritual imbalances that need to be corrected, but a spiritless person has no need for such messages. They also have nothing higher to send such messages. Without a permanent core of individuality, they have no “Higher Self”, which is the perfected future manifestation of spirit reaching back through time to help out extensions of itself still in the linear past. And without a Higher Self, they have no inner intuitive guidance to provide certain nudges and protection in life. Thus, whereas a spirited person might experience freak synchronicities and bending of the laws of reality to save them from untimely death, a spiritless person lacking such direction and protection would perish according to chance.

**Chakra Differences between Spirited and the Spiritless**

There is also a difference between spirited and spiritless in what chakras they have. Chakras are vortical energy centers linking soul with body, and linking spirit and body through the soul. Each center coincides positionally with the major glands of the physical body, and each serves a different behavioral function.

The lower chakras are associated with such behavioral facets as physical instinct, sexual impulses, base emotions, personal power, and intellectual activity. Everyone possesses these. The spiritless, however, have no need for the higher chakras, namely the heart, crown, and third eye chakras because these are the ones that exclusively link to spirit.

The heart chakra, the center of higher emotions like compassion, empathy, spiritual jubilance, is missing in the spiritless because there is no spirit present to associate with these emotions. The crown chakra, through which higher intuitive understanding, originality and creativity, and a connection with objective truth manifests, is likewise missing. The third eye chakra, located between the brows, is normally used for the perception of phenomena and concepts beyond the material realm, and spiritless people confined to the world of the five senses have no need for it either.

Consequently, another difference between the spirited and spiritless is that the first have all seven chakras while the latter are missing the three higher ones, the heart, crown, and third eye chakras. This further contributes to the intuitive or clairvoyant perception that spiritless people are flat and inert inside regardless of how animated they are on the outside, because the spectrum of their etheric or auric vibrations are missing certain colors and are therefore of a lower overall resolution.
All the above follows from one simple postulate: that some people lack spirit, and that they therefore also lack the higher chakras. If you deeply contemplate what this entails, you will understand how this postulate explains the full gamut of observations we have concerning so-called “empty” people.

**Difference between Spiritless and Spiritually Asleep People**

At this point you might be wondering what is the difference between spiritless people, and spirited ones who are spiritually asleep in life or simply immature. After all, both may be worldly in their goals and thoroughly caught up in the illusion of the “Matrix.” Both may not be cognizant of dreams or synchronicities, nor display much empathy. For example, there are negative people who are completely under the influence of their egos and external negative forces, who can commit violent crimes and even mass murder without blinking an eye. Not all of them are spiritless. But all of them are indeed void of the influence of spirit when it comes to engaging in such inhuman behaviors. Some lack spirit, others are asleep to spirit.

The difference is that a spirited but infantile/asleep person still has latent spiritual potential. So they still have, even in small amounts, the presence of those spiritual factors and dynamics mentioned above. They may still suffer the consequences of karmic debt brought on by dumb choices, they may still receive symbolic dreams attempting to alert them to spiritual imbalances in life even if they ignore it, they may still experience synchronistic help in shaping their lives against the odds even if they cannot see it.

Spiritless people lack that potential completely. They cannot grow spiritually. This is not a theoretical declaration, but a painful lesson learned from having dealt with too many such persons who never showed any signs of growth or evolution no matter how much help and opportunity for improvement was given to them. At best they adapt, but more out of conditioning and calculation than actual understanding.

There is another important difference. The spirited have lives appropriate to their spiritual needs. So there is a correspondence between their spiritual maturity and type of life. Infant spirits will lead crude lives, because a basic existence is all they need, and anything more would be too much for them to handle or gain from. Meanwhile, the spiritless live whatever life they are driven into by circumstance and their own cunning, which can mean being a beggar, corporate executive, or famous author all the same. Without constraints established by spiritual needs, the spiritless have no spiritual limits or curriculums structuring their lives. And this is why “empty” people are not all just spiritually asleep or infantile, because there exists a class of people who share the same inertness behind their eyes regardless of their type of life, their social standing, their intellectual prowess, and their physical appearance.

**Psychopaths, Sociopaths, and Narcissists**

The more extreme manifestations of an absence of spirit is known in psychology as psychopathic, sociopathic, or narcissistic personality disorders. Spirited people who fit this condition are misguided and held hostage by their egos, but they can be rehabilitated. Instead of lacking empathy, their empathy is either suppressed or displaced. These are not true psychopaths, but spirited people with personality disorders.
True psychopathy and sociopathy, however, cannot be cured because something is fundamentally flawed at the core of such persons. They lack empathy and remorse altogether, and these qualities cannot be recovered because they were never there to begin with. The incurable nature of psychopathy is an accepted fact in psychology. The cause is believed to be an abnormality in the pain and fear centers of the brain. Even so, without the balancing influence of spirit, such abnormalities would introduce unchecked errors into the programming of the ego, which then runs rampant to the point of coming to the attention of the legal and medical systems. What the medical system can diagnose is only the extreme and sloppy manifestation of a condition that is more widespread throughout the population. Other spiritless people with properly functioning egos are better at keeping their lack of empathy and remorse camouflaged under more refined social programming.

**Why Spiritless? What Others Say**

Theories abound about why some people lack a higher component to their consciousness and what purpose they serve in the bigger scheme of things. Since I am not the first to make this observation, I will now briefly discuss what others have said so that you can weigh the available options.

John Baines writes in his book *The Stellar Man* that humans, like all animal species, have a collective soul unique to their species. This collective unconscious exerts a de-individualizing influence on humans, nudging them toward mob mentality, herd mentality, and following the crowd. Rupert Sheldrake would call this the human morphogenetic field. People who have not developed their own conscious individuality are mere automatons following the soporific influence of the collective unconscious, as though they were extensions of a hive mind. The goal of esoteric training is to split away from the herd, to develop one’s own volition and thereby become a free being.

Rudolf Steiner voiced similar sentiments. His foundational work, *The Philosophy of Freedom* addressed this problem. Steiner said that as long as humans obey external authority, their own biological instincts, or the animalistic parts of themselves in common with the rest of humanity, they are not free beings. Freedom comes from choosing based on intuitive understanding of what each option entails and what it means. This act of freewill requires introspection and spiritual acumen to act from a place of true understanding. Steiner acknowledged that not everyone introspects to the degree necessary to make intelligent freewill choices. In private discussions, Steiner went even further:

Dr. Steiner: That little girl L.K. in the first grade must have something really very wrong inside. There is not much we can do. Such cases are increasing in which children are born with a human form, but are not really human beings in relation to their highest I; instead, they are filled with beings that do not belong to the human class. Quite a number of people have been born since the nineties without an I, that is, they are not reincarnated, but are human forms filled with a sort of natural demon. There are quite a large number of older people going around who are actually not human beings, but are only natural; they are human beings only in regard to their form. We cannot, however, create a school for demons.

A teacher: How is that possible?

Dr. Steiner: Cosmic error is certainly not impossible. The relationships of individuals
coming into earthly existence have long been determined. There are also generations in which individuals have no desire to come into earthly existence and be connected with physicality, or immediately leave at the very beginning. In such cases, other beings that are not quite suited step in. This is something that is now quite common, that human beings go around without an I; they are actually not human beings, but have only a human form. They are beings like nature spirits, which we do not recognize as such because they go around in a human form. They are also quite different from human beings in regard to everything spiritual. They can, for example, never remember such things as sentences; they have a memory only for words, not for sentences.

The riddle of life is not so simple. When such a being dies, it returns to nature from which it came. The corpse decays, but there is no real dissolution of the etheric body, and the natural being returns to nature. It is also possible that something like an automaton could occur. The entire human organism exists, and it might be possible to automate the brain and develop a kind of pseudomorality.

I do not like to talk about such things since we have often been attacked even without them. Imagine what people would say if they heard that we say there are people who are not human beings. Nevertheless, these are facts. Our culture would not be in such a decline if people felt more strongly that a number of people are going around who, because they are completely ruthless, have become something that is not human, but instead are demons in human form.

(Faculty Meetings With Rudolf Steiner Vol. 2, 3 July 1923, p. 649-650)

G. I. Gurdjieff spoke along the same lines. His lectures in Views from the Real World summarize his position. Humans are born as blank slates, as biological machines without self-awareness. At some point in life, a person either develops an “I” or branches onto the opposite path toward further mechanization and decay. So according to Gurdjieff, “empty” people are those who have never developed their self-awareness as they should have, but we all start out on equal footing. I don’t believe this to be true because there are infants and children who clearly have high sentience behind their eyes and expected behaviors of self-awareness, while other infants and children lack it, which suggests the factor of reincarnation in some people and complete absence of spirit including the potential for spirit in other people.

Boris Mouravieff has written on the subject of spiritless people most extensively. See his three volumes of the Gnosis series, particularly the second and third volumes. His approach is based on Esoteric Christianity, and thus it quotes heavily from scripture while bearing much in common with the Fourth Way tradition of Gurdjieff, which itself seems to trace back to Sufistic teachings. According to Mouravieff’s interpretation of the Book of Genesis, there existed humans before Adam and Eve, but that only Adam and by proxy Eve and her descendants received the breath of spirit from God. Thus nowadays there exists two mingling sub-races of humans, the pre-Adamics without spirit, and the Adamics who have it. Mouravieff explains that pre-Adamics serve the purpose of harvesting energy from Adamics as part of the cosmic food chain. He also explores the metaphysical differences between the two, in regards to pre-Adamics missing certain “centers”, which are analogous to chakras. Mouravieff believes the pre-Adamics have a group soul unique to their collective, and that only after further aeons of evolution will their collective soul differentiate into individual spirits like what the Adamics already have.
The Corpus Hermeticum, a famous hermetic and gnostic text written almost two thousand years ago, likewise states that not all humans have the spark of divine reason (termed Nous) active within them, and that without Nous a human is more like an “irrational creature” (animal) in his motivations, limited perception, and way of life. One would have to read the entire text to understand this in proper context. See the english translation titled The Way of Hermes: New Translations of the Corpus Hermeticum (Inner Traditions, 2000).

Lastly, the Cassiopaean Transcripts addresses the works of Mouravieff and provides some key insights on the matter at hand. The channelling source claims that some people are empty portals for other intelligences to work through, that they have uniform auras among them, lack the higher chakras, can be very skilled at mimicking “souled” (spirited) people by reflecting back their own soul energy, and that ultimately they serve as conduits from which our energy can be siphoned for collection by negative hyper-dimensional beings. All this is in line with my observations and the writings of Mouravieff and Gurdjieff, except a bit more realistic than the viewpoints of those two traditionalists. Whereas John Baines says some humans are extensions of the human collective soul, the Cassiopaeans say they are instead extensions of particular animal group souls. They say such so-called “organic portals” serve as a bridge between the human and animal kingdom, helping to transfer higher human energies to these animal group souls to accelerate their evolution, but that their function has been hijacked by higher negative forces for their own energy harvesting use.

So what I am saying in this article is not without precedent. I merely made the observation of “empty” people independently in 1999-2001 and then cycled through various personal speculations and existing theories before settling on the current one explained in this article.

I believe there are several ways in which people end up spiritless. Some are born that way because no spirit ever took root, just like theater seats that remain empty because no one bought tickets for them. Others may have started out with spirit but had it depart at some point in life. It could have evaporated gradually from decades of soul-killing routine. Not everyone who dies necessarily drops dead. People can go on existing as hollow shells, as echoes of their former selves, now void of the spirit that once gave them spark. There are other darker phenomena like dead people getting reanimated by aliens with advanced technology, human clones, and other types of artificial humanoids that would lack spirit, but these are relatively rare and therefore not worth discussing in this article (see instead my article on Human Simulacra).

Here I speak mainly of a larger sector of the population who naturally lack spirit, who always have throughout history, and who by virtue of their predatory and worldly natures have gravitated toward the top of the social, economic, and political hierarchies and made the world antagonistic toward spiritual impulses.

The Benefits of Understanding

As you can see, this idea that some people lack spirit explains much about the robotic, animalistic, predatory side of humanity. So many of us are under the false assumption that we are all the same inside, that if we walked in another’s shoes we would fully understand their motivations. But not all inhuman acts trace back to mere environmental variables. There are cases where, even if we put ourselves in their place, we would not act the same. That is because the cause of their motivations is not environmental, but metaphysical: the absence of spirit, and the supreme reign of ego.
Those who ignore the possibility of spiritless people will continue to shake their heads in frustration at behaviors they simply cannot compute and must either ignore or rationalize away. When dealing with a spiritless psychopath, for instance, such individuals are easily deceived and manipulated.

Only after getting burned again and again do they realize some humans are a different kind of animal, that some humans are not remediable because they are acting fully and healthily in accordance with their spiritless predatory nature. This is especially true of the psychopathic elite who run this prison planet; they cannot be rehabilitated, made to see the error of their ways, or convinced through appeals to empathy.

Caution and Conclusion

It would be unwise, however, to look down upon the spiritless with contempt. They are what they are, living their lives in accordance with their makeup. They should be handled no differently from how one handles a wild animal that acts according to its feral nature. It is only by trying to hold the spiritless up to higher spiritual standards that frustration sets in. Without expecting too much of them, and by understanding why they behave as they do, frustration gives way to calm insight.

Nor is it worth going out of your way to try and spot who is spiritless, because in ambiguous cases you will likely err on the side of paranoia. Since spiritless behaviors form a subset of the behaviors of spirited people, only the behaviors unique to spirited people can allow quick and certain identification, and then only of who is definitely spirited. Spotting only works for picking out who is truly spirited, which happens most easily with a spirited individual on your wavelength. You will sense the life in their eyes, the clear and unique energy behind their words, and the originality and independence behind their thought processes.

Appendix I: Common Questions

**How do I know I’m not a spiritless person?** – If you have experienced even one trait unique to spirit, then you are not spiritless. The very fact that you have wondered this, that you are uncertain and wish to know for sure, shows self-awareness and introspection, which is another trait of having spirit. Regardless, it is better to assume that you do have spirit and work on developing its qualities like intuition, empathy, and lucidity, all the while being aware of your lower egotistical impulses and keeping from acting on them.

**I suspect that my (friend, spouse, parent) is a spiritless person, what do I do?** – Set aside for a moment the question of whether they are spirited or not, and focus solely on whether you can continue being with them. Are they so manipulative, draining, abusive, or otherwise harmful to your well-being that you have to get away? If so, then it doesn’t matter whether they have spirit or not. Are they so friendly and easy going that you are doing quite fine having them in your life? If so, then it doesn’t matter whether they have spirit or not. So from a practical perspective, you only have to be concerned with whether you can deal with having them in your life. Where the distinction between spirited and spiritless does come into play is in dealing with psychopathic people, where even after promising to change they keep returning to their abusive ways; then at some point, instead of rationalizing that they are just misguided and need even more time and attention, it is better to conclude that maybe they are acting perfectly in line with who they really are. Naive
people who think everyone is equally good inside will keep rationalizing and taking the abuse, but those with higher understanding will recognize the warning signs of futility sooner and save themselves the trouble.

**How is this concept of spiritless people not somehow divisive, racist, persecutory, and antithetical to the idea of human equality, unity, harmony, and brotherhood?** – If the theory is true, that some people do in fact lack spirit, then the truth of the matter should not be ignored for the sake of political correctness. When properly applied, knowledge can lead to greater stability and harmony in the long run. For example, every attempted utopian society has failed because it was founded on naive assumptions about the makeup of its citizenry; selfish, psychopathic, predatory individuals end up corrupting the utopia. If the utopia were founded on full understanding of such types, then measures could have been put into place to prevent corruption. Also, a theory should not be blamed for the consequences of its misapplication; those who misapply it use it as a vehicle for the satisfaction of their own egos rather than applying it from a spiritual perspective. Instead of throwing out the theory because of its misapplication, better effort should be made to prevent its misapplication. Lastly, the unity of all life can be recognized without sacrificing awareness of the functional diversity comprising it; and only by properly understanding each part of that unity can the whole be recognized in full clarity instead of mere ignorant bliss.

---

**Appendix II: Correlating Sources**

John Baines – *The Stellar Man*

Rudolf Steiner – *Theosophy*

Rudolf Steiner – *The Philosophy of Freedom*

Rudolf Steiner – *Outline of Occult Science*

G. I. Gurdjieff – *Views from the Real World*

P. D. Ouspensky – *In Search of the Miraculous*


Dion Fortune – *Psychic Self-Defense*

Boris Mouravieff – *Gnosis, Volumes I-III*

L.KJ, et al… – *The Cassiopaean Transcripts*

Amit Goswami – *The Self-Aware Universe*

For excerpts from some of these sources, see this PDF.

---

**Appendix III: Permutations of Metaphysical Components**

To show the necessity of concepts like spirit, body, etheric, and astral, here is a list of how these components combine to form different kinds of entities. As you will see, the difference between these entities cannot be explained with fewer than those components.

**Elementary matter:**

- body
Crystals and plants:
  body | etheric

Average animals:
  body | etheric | astral

Spiritless humans:
  body | ego | etheric | astral

Spirited humans:
  body | ego | etheric | astral | spirit

Spirited humans after choosing to incarnate, first stage:
  astral | spirit

Spirited humans after choosing to incarnate, second stage
  etheric | astral | spirit

Spirited humans shortly before birth:
  body | etheric | astral | spirit

Spirited humans after childhood:
  body | ego | etheric | astral | spirit

Spirited humans after physical death:
  ego | etheric | astral | spirit

Spirited humans after “second” death, during the afterlife:
  spirit

Spiritless humans after formation of embryo:
  body | etheric

Spiritless humans shortly before birth:
  body | etheric | astral

Spiritless humans after childhood:
  body | ego | etheric | astral

Spiritless humans after physical death:
  ego | etheric | astral
Spiritless humans after “second” death:

(nothing)

Artificial Humanoids:

body | ego | etheric

Etheric thought-forms and astral wildlife:

etheric | astral

Angelic beings:

astral | spirit

Demonic beings:

ego | etheric | astral

Spirited astral projectors:

ego | astral | spirit

Etheric aliens and transcended humans:

etheric | astral | spirit

Notes

1 In case anyone wonders why we even need terms like spirit, soul, astral, and etheric, it is because these constitute the simplest model that explains large body of known observations, in accordance with Occam’s Razor. People who ridicule the necessity of such metaphysical distinctions and believe only in the body, or only in body and soul, are leaving out certain crucial observations, thus their over-simplistic model suffices for their smaller set of givens. However, the model must be expanded to include observations by clairvoyants, the astutely perceptive, and anyone who has experienced the paranormal. In doing so, the additional concepts of spirit, soul, astral, and etheric enter the picture. I believe these are the minimal components necessary to explain spiritless people. But it explains a lot more, just see Appendix III. These terms are also not just *ad hoc* explanations, however. Instead of just being theoretical, the etheric and astral bodies are directly experienceable through astral projection and viewable by clairvoyants.

2 Amit Goswami explains with great insight how nondeterministic consciousness acquires deterministic traits through conditioning in the physical body, how quantum systems can acquire classical characteristics. See chapters 13 and 14 of his book *The Self-Aware Universe*.

3 What does it mean that the ego imprints itself upon the etheric component of the soul? For one, it ties into a lot of what Rudolf Steiner wrote concerning the etheric double, the doppelganger, that mysterious shadow side of ourselves that is antagonistic toward our spiritual well-being. It also ties into Steiner mentioning that in Asia where ancestor worship is common, demonic entities can wear
the cast-off etheric shells of deceased persons and thereby receive unto themselves all the psychic energy given to that identity during worship. Further, the ego continuing after death in etheric form may explain certain types of ghosts, as well as the problem of astral/etheric impostors in channeling whereby a negative entity can closely mimic a deceased relative. All these phenomena suggest that some portion of a person’s worldly identity (ego) survives death, and since it cannot be via the physical body, it must be the next closest thing: the etheric component of the soul. And lastly, when it comes to true artificial intelligence in quantum computers and cybernetic beings, it should be expected that these will be accompanied by an etheric field, just as plants have an etheric field, which would assist in the artificial intelligence having some level of “life” and not be just a deterministic machine with pseudo-random output.

4 The term “second death” is Biblical. “He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death.” Revelation 2:11. “And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.” Revelation 20:14-15. Boris Mouravieff and the Cassiopaeans would have interpreted this approximately as follows: ‘overcometh’ means having developed spirit, ‘second death’ is the dissolution of the etheric and astral components of the soul, and ‘lake of fire’ represents the undifferentiated group soul into which the soul dissolves. What does a fire do other than melt and turn to ashes, removing all trace of former identifiability? Second death happens after the first death. If the first death is death of the physical, then the second has to be death of the nonphysical. I believe this interpretation because it makes sense.

5 “Higher” means higher in function, not positionally higher on the body, so the throat chakra is not a higher chakra since it is associated merely with speech and intellectual functions. In the Fourth Way system it correlates with the “lower intellectual center”. It probably developed or evolved along with human capacity for speech and abstract thinking, something most animals lack. That is why spiritless humans have a throat chakra as well, and why they can be intellectually sharp and have no limits to their speaking abilities. So it’s one of the lower chakras in terms of function.

(index)

Aliens

Alien Intro

30 July 04 (alien)
What we call “aliens” are hyperdimensional beings. They hide behind the veil of our perceptions and can project themselves into our visible reality at will. They are not recent visitors to earth, but have been here for hundreds of thousands of years and continue to live here, mostly in underground bases. Some “aliens” helped genetically engineer the human race, while other factions later crippled human genetics in order to turn mankind into little more than a source of physical and etheric food. Today, those interacting with humanity via abductions have a negative orientation and intend to create a race of human-alien hybrids capable of ruling over humanity while having total allegiance to the interdimensional alien empire. Literature tends to identify these negative “aliens” as the reptilians, grays, mantids, and some hostile nordic factions. There exist positively oriented beings as well, notably the more positive nordics, but they respect the law of freewill and do not engage in
physical abductions. Rather they exist as a spiritual brotherhood lending their service to protect and
guide those of us who seek freedom from the limitations of this 3D matrix control system,
prison/school earth.

Hostile “aliens” are 4D and 5D dark entities:

• Consist of beings who have evolved beyond limited three dimensional linear time status.
  They exist at a level of reality beyond our five senses, the back stage to our reality so to
  speak.

• Preside over all elements of the lower hierarchy of the matrix control system, from the
  individual to entire human organizations. They are beyond linear time and thus can do this.

• Fourth density beings have the physical form related to whatever animal species they
  originally evolved from. All present on earth are humanoid in nature. Some look human,
  some reptilian, other insectoid. Their form is temporarily alterable due to the variable
  physicality of fourth density.

• They are part of interstellar and interdimensional empires, seeking conquest. They take over
  entire worlds and races for genetic, physical, and spiritual resources. This is done patiently
  over thousands of our years, but because they are beyond linear time it does not hinder them.

• They seek energy, and earth has been molded into a farm for them. This energy consists of
  human life force, emotional and spiritual and sexual energy. Being hyperdimensional, they
  can suck this directly via telepathic connection, or via the many agents or portals they have
  instated among the general population.

• They have been here for hundreds of thousands of years, and have long ago altered the
  human genetic code to reduce us to our most primal levels, we are spiritually crippled
  because of this.

• Above them are nonphysical entities of demonic nature, dark occult overlords who are
  supreme in their dark wisdom and knowledge. While 4D entities are rough around the edges
  and serve more as minions and henchmen, 5D entities are the commanders, Luciferian in
  nature. They are advanced enough to appear in whatever form they want, and can thus
  appear human. Some of the hostile red-haired nordics are of this category.

• They are locked into their own mode of existence, and above them in the hierarchy is only
  the logos or thought center, the black sun, the spiritual black hole that inevitably sucks all
  self-centered consciousness into it. To stave off this spiritual death, they need increasing
  energy from those below in the hierarchy. In fact, all dark practitioners seek to avoid the
  metaphysical consequences of what they do, which is why they are into physicality and
  prolonging life while physical, they can do what they want and delay paying the debt.

• Rather than being misguided or unevolved, these beings are highly evolved but in an
  entropic fashion. They have great knowledge and wisdom concerning how to serve the
  Creator within themselves at the expense of the Creator within others.

They have weaknesses:
• They are prone to wishful thinking due to their narrow probable reality range. Hyperdimensional beings occupy a bandwidth of probable realities whose spectrum corresponds to their soul frequencies. So those of a negative nature who vibrate at a lower and more restricted rate tend to operate within a more limited range of probable realities. This makes them blind to certain outcomes (probabilities) that are not within their perception.

• They are very practical, so they seek the easiest route. This is because they must economize their energy and strategy. The nature of self-serving evolution involves conquest over finite resources, so efficiency and calculation are necessary.

• They cannot easily deviate from their plans — all is calculated. It takes them a while to adjust to new evasive tactics employed by a target. Part of this is due to them attacking from outside linear time, meaning they send in their attack simultaneously along the past, present, and future. So what appears to us as an attack spanning several days or weeks is for them a single instant, and so they appear slow to respond to our improvisations.

• The lower entities cannot deal with complexity easily unless pre-calculated. Most of what they do is geared toward optimizing success, which usually involves moving along the probable reality that best fits their end goals. But there is always a freewill factor which throws things off, and if a target uses freewill to be unpredictable, this adds incalculable complexity to the range of branching probabilities and therefore disorients them.

• They think they always have the advantage, so they get careless; many times they don’t expect resistance because they think their agenda is secret and beyond human comprehension.

• Lack of unity among them disrupts the spiritual coherence of their collective and therefore disintegrates what energy they collect, meaning they have to keep collecting more, thus they are like black holes needing more and more energy like a hyperdimensional pyramid scheme.

They preside over lower (human) levels of the control system:

• Every individual in an STS (service-to-self) hierarchy is both predator and prey. Predator to those below, prey to those above. Likewise, anyone who is predator or prey participates in the STS hierarchy.

• Humans of strong STS orientation incarnate to heighten their negative polarity and carry out missions and agenda. They are of low spiritual frequency and tend to be born into positions of power. These form the elite of the world, who are ultimately directed by the alien powers heading the STS hierarchy.

• They incarnate primarily into associated bloodlines because DNA and soul tend to correspond. So tracing bloodlines can show potentiality of destiny. Bloodlines like these arise via genetic modification by alien factions, or by mutation in response to the soul frequency of ancestors who made negative soul pacts with higher dark powers. These bloodlines have a physical and spiritual symbiotic relationship with their alien counterparts.
Their function is power and conquest, and right now we are in the final phase of their conquest. Negative hyperdimensional forces want total control over mankind. Their influence upon mankind at large can be termed the Hyperdimensional Control System.

Synopsis of the Alien Master Plan

22 June 04 (alien)

In this Article

- Are we alone in the universe?
- In a nutshell, what is the alien agenda?
- Given their technological superiority, why don’t hostile alien forces just take over the planet?
- Why have they not finished their invasion sooner, back when our technology was too primitive to damage their desired resources?
- Don’t members of the secret government know they’re being deceived?
- Is this why the secret government will eventually be discarded?
- How do alien forces plan to counter the problem of “human nature”?
- How will this hybrid race be created?
- What is the process used in the creation of hybrids?
- What is the soul nature of these hybrids?
- Why can’t aliens stay in our physical environment for prolonged periods of time?
- What about military abductions?
- How can one stop being abducted by aliens?
- Can anything be done to stop the alien agenda?
- What are they doing to counter the possibility of people waking up and resisting?
- Why don’t negative forces just kill them?
- Besides influential people being mind programmed or replaced as disinformation agents, how else are negative forces suppressing the spread of knowledge?
- Are there any positive aliens?
- If we do wake up as a planet, will desperate alien factions risk using force?
- Given the scope of their knowledge suppression mechanism — and if that fails, the overwhelming nature of their overt invasion — is there any hope?

This article addresses some important questions regarding the alien agenda. It merely skims the surface and should therefore supplement your own research, not replace it. If you want a more thorough grasp of what’s going on, I recommend analyzing with discernment the following books:

- *Gods of Eden* – William Bramley
- *The Threat* – Dr David Jacobs
- *Taken* – Dr Karla Turner
- *The Love Bite* – Eve Lorgen
- *Into the Fringe* – Dr Karla Turner
Each of these contain valuable pieces to the puzzle. Use your heart to tell you what is right, and use intellect to tell you what is false. The same goes for what you read in this article. Keep what makes sense, and throw out what is blatantly false.

Are we alone in the universe?

Of course not. We’re not even alone on Earth. Even assuming that a finite 3D universe is all there is, calculations show a high probability that intelligent life exists elsewhere in this galaxy and that earth has seen the presence of extraterrestrials. The Drake Equation doesn’t even take into account panspermia, that if a civilization becomes advanced enough it can seed life on other worlds, hence exponentially multiplying the probability and spread of life throughout the galaxy.

Anyone with common sense acknowledges this possibility, anyone with an open mind will research the subject, and anyone with open eyes who does the research will confirm for themselves that aliens exist, have been active in our past, and continue to be actively involved in human affairs today.

Skeptics tend to be ignorant and refuse to examine all the evidence, closing their eyes and claiming they don’t see any evidence that aliens exist. The Fermi Paradox, or “if aliens exist then why aren’t they here” is like a blind man asking “if the sun exists, then why don’t I burst into flames when I step outside.” False assumptions and lack of perception stemming from lack of proper investigation. In truth, ignorance is never proof to the contrary, and seeming nonexistence of evidence isn’t evidence of nonexistence.

Evidence is everywhere – from worldwide religious and mythological accounts commonly describing ancient encounters with advanced beings, anomalous archaeological sites and artifacts indicating past use of superior technology, over a century’s worth of eyewitness sightings of UFOs, hundreds of physical trace samples recovered from UFO landing sites, government documents and whistleblowers acknowledging the existence of extraterrestrials, and thousands of abduction cases that include multiple witnesses, memories recalled without hypnosis, and indisputable physical and medical evidence confirming these accounts.

In a nutshell, what is the alien agenda?

Mankind is being enslaved by non-human forces who are technologically, psychically, and dimensionally superior to us (but not necessarily spiritually, and therein lies our freedom). They consist of multiple factions, spanning multiple dimensions and locations in spacetime, all here to take a slice of the human pie. Their ultimate goal is to assimilate us into their fascist empire and parasitically exploit us for our biological, etheric, and physical resources.

Through covert manipulation and hyperdimensional tricks that employ time travel, they have
secretly manipulated and exploited humanity in every way conceivable since the birth of our race, and even our origins are suspect and bear the signs of genetic engineering. We are now seeing their plans overtly manifest with the abduction and hybrid breeding program, and their imminent portrayal as saviors to a human race gone mad with world conflict. If the world accepts them as saviors, individual freedom as we know it will become snuffed like a blown candle, leaving only darkness.

Given their technological superiority, why don’t hostile alien forces just take over the planet?

For strategic reasons, their invasion is a drawn out process rather than a single spectacular blitzkrieg as one might expect, though the latter can be used to finalize the invasion once the first phase has spiritually tranquilized the target population.

There are many problems with an overt invasion using physical force. History has shown that visible tyrants are also visible targets who quickly fall if they reveal themselves before total control has been established. Smarter tyrants stay hidden and cleverly manipulate the population into first defeating and enslaving itself.

Cosmic tyrants exist who seek to assimilate entire worlds into their empire. The premature invasion by those who have targeted us could lead to resistance and conflicts threatening the two resources they have come here to exploit: earth and its inhabitants. They prefer that we willingly hand over ourselves and the planet with the least amount of resistance. This can only happen under the condition that we are unaware of their true nature or agenda. Preparing such deception requires much groundwork. Thus, they have chosen to covertly and patiently manipulate human society toward that end.

Their preferred method of subversion is to create elite among the population who do the dirty work of enslaving the rest. What we know as the “secret government” is an occult technocracy comprised of these elite humans. The secret government is using problem-reaction-solution techniques to frame world conflicts as pretexts for the establishment of a “New World Order,” an overt global totalitarian regime that will lockdown any potential for resistance and secure earth for easy assimilation into the alien empire. Even if they believe they are acting against aliens and securing Earth for themselves, they don’t stand a chance and their totalitarian apparatus could easily be repurposed toward serving the alien agenda.

Why have they not finished their invasion sooner, back when our technology was too primitive to damage their desired resources?

As mentioned, they prefer we willingly hand over our collective freewill. Only recently have we become technologically and politically advanced enough to create and support the infrastructure of the New World Order through which we are intended to enslave ourselves. They make their victims dig their own graves.

On a side note, this policy of brutal efficiency was demonstrated by the Nazis in their execution of captives. The rise and fall of Nazi Germany was orchestrated by the secret government as a test run for what is now becoming manifest, and much of Nazi ideology and methodology was a direct reflection of the hostile alien mindset.

Ironically, the secret government itself is just a global version of the “sonderkommando,” the elite
squads of Jews the Nazis selected from among the concentration camp population to control and execute their own people. Despite promises of power and survival, the sonderkommando were quickly discarded once they finished serving their purpose, and the secret government faces a similar fate once the alien invasion is complete.

Don’t members of the secret government know they’re being deceived?
In a negative hierarchy, all subordinates are in some way duped by their superiors, as that is how superiority is maintained. It is the wishful nature of such individuals to think they share the top of the food chain. Other members are forced to uphold their allegiance due to blackmail, oath, or mind programming. While these factors keep the hierarchy together, they also serve as its undoing when the control system encounters unpredictable obstacles and becomes unstable. Pressured members will betray their superiors when given the chance, and ambitious members may take the opportunity to initiate a frenzied power grab that breaks loyalties and dissolves cohesion, thus weakening its structure to the point of implosion. This is more typical of human hierarchies than alien ones, as the latter are too refined to create such bumbling errors.

Is this why the secret government will eventually be discarded?
Partly. Primary reason is that the secret government is useful as the singular scapegoat upon whom to eventually pin all crimes against humanity of which hostile aliens themselves are the ultimate orchestrators. By disposing the scapegoat through a global catharsis, alien hands are washed clean, leaving them in safe position to be presented as saviors. Even now this agenda is visible. Through various personalities in the exopolitics field, the secret government is already being branded as a paranoid Cabal keeping mankind from open contact with alien benefactors, holding us back from our rightful destiny to enter into galactic citizenship. Like a good cop / bad cop routine, presenting the Cabal as the sole “bad guy” and aliens as the “good guys” is pushing two false choices, and therein lies the deception.

To defeat the agenda, mankind must not choose between peaceful assimilation and ignorant xenophobia, but rather between peaceful assimilation and peaceful liberation, liberation from both the secret government and their alien overlords. A more sophisticated version of this plan is to include some throwaway alien groups as part of the “bad guys” — for example, the ever convenient Reptilians whose scary appearance makes them suitable bogeymen. Not to say Reptilians are “good guys”, just that portraying them and perhaps the Grays along with the Cabal as the sole “bad guys” makes the other negative alien factions, such as the hostile types of Nordics, appear like saviors in comparison, which is precisely the plan.

The other reason is that as long as the Control System remains stable, the secret government maintains its cohesion and allegiance to the alien forces. Due to upcoming Earth changes and other factors, the times ahead introduce elements of unpredictability that threaten to destabilize the control system; the hierarchy thrives on predictability because it is a pre-requisite for control.

Because of human folly, alien forces see the secret government as unreliable during such times and unnecessary in the period that follows. They will be among the first to be eliminated, because they would otherwise be the first to resist the alien presence by using what technology they have been given, in an effort to perpetuate their own survival and maintain their power. The final phase of the
alien agenda has no room for human elite, and any promises given them now about survival in a post-cataclysmic future are lies used to bargain their allegiance.

While the exploitation of human nature has afforded our alien manipulators easy success in what they have accomplished so far, human nature ultimately threatens to undermine the finalizations of their plan which requires total allegiance on our part to their empire. As long as we have an innate ability to empathize and tap into spiritual wisdom and as long as we can long for individuality and freedom, our loyalty and their security cannot be permanently guaranteed or enforced.

How do alien forces plan to counter the problem of “human nature”? Einstein once said that a problem’s solution cannot come from the same level where the problem originated. If human nature is the problem, then only a non-human element can be the solution. At present, the problem resides in the inevitable failure of both the secret government and future humans to maintain unconditional obedience to their alien masters due to fundamental genetic and metaphysical differences and the fact that we are individualistic and opportunistic by nature.

Once the New World Order is initiated, their solution is to place humanity under the leadership of a genetically engineered “master race” of alien-human hybrids. These hybrids surpass us in intellectual and psychic abilities, and they do not “suffer” from the “weaknesses” of human nature such as empathy and the longing for individual freedom. While maintaining control, they will then interbreed with the human population to infuse these genetic characteristics into humanity at large. Thus, in the end mankind will be biologically predisposed toward subservience to the alien empire, alleviating the empire of having to expend unnecessary resources enforcing their control. At that point, we will be locked into bondage and the alien agenda will have reached its conclusion.

We are seeing evidence of this already. For example, we are being culturally pre-conditioned to eventually accept the policy of interbreeding between humans and hybrids. Standards of physical beauty embodied in supermodels and actresses increasingly move toward emphasis upon features typical of hybrids: low forehead, small chin, triangular face, large eyes, and slim androgynous bodies. It wasn’t too long ago that the “hybrid” look would have been considered disturbing and unhealthy, but today the trend has been toward the sexualization of these characteristics.

How will this hybrid race be created?

Alien abductions serve multiple purposes, and this is one of them. Presently, the hybrid breeding program is virtually finished. Hybrids look human, but lack our aforementioned qualities that make us liable to resist an overt alien presence. Some are already being silently integrated into the population. A few are being unwittingly born into human families, others will be introduced in mass numbers later.

Some hybrids among us are already being passed off as “Indigo Children,” though not all Indigo Children are hybrids. The hybrids most successfully following their intended programming act like little psychopaths, have contempt for humans, and possess acute intellectual and psychic powers to support their ambitions. It is these qualities that make them fit for eventually ruling over humanity in obedience to their alien superiors.
What is the process used in the creation of hybrids?

The actual process involved appears to be complicated, but here is a simple description. Both genetic and metaphysical factors must be taken into account, as it is the latter that accounts for the hybrid breeding program taking more time than one might expect.

Our DNA is the interface mechanism between the nonphysical soul and physical body. For this interface to hold both together, genetics must match soul profile. A slight mismatch in one will cause a mutation in the other, but too much of a mismatch keeps the soul from seating in the body. So to genetically modify or create an entire race, it is not enough to merely engineer the genetic code, but to synchronize its profile and growth with that of the souls intended to occupy the bodies.

This is why people with specific bloodlines especially resonant with the aliens’ own soul nature are heavily targeted for abduction. Resonance exists because at some point in the ancient past, individuals within that bloodline may have consciously aligned with a negative spiritual existence and thus imprinted their genetic code with this alignment, or they may have been the results of earlier hybridization efforts. Their descendants carry this imprint, which is considered valuable as stock material for engineering the hybrid race. The physical nature of these genetics matches in critical areas with the intended metaphysical characteristics of the hybrids.

This stock material is crossed with selected alien genetics and tweaked to create a wide variety of hybrids, some more successful than others. Until a self-sustaining and self-reproducing hybrid race could develop, these fetuses were often implanted into an abductee’s womb for gestation. The human etheric body is rich in emotional and vital energies, which helps the gestating fetus develop robustly. Those that lack this etheric nourishment either fail to develop or become sickly hybrid children once born.

Successful hybrids are those who can indefinitely survive in a densely physical environment such as our own, who are capable of successfully reproducing with humans and amongst themselves, who look human enough to integrate easily, and who are void of any undesirable human traits.

What is the soul nature of these hybrids?

Even with their human physiology, considering that the hybrid genetic profile is extremely resonant with the soul nature of their creators, it is very likely the latter intend to incarnate into these bodies themselves. Some hybrids may be born with alien souls, others may function as empty containers that work their way into strategic social positions and standby to receive the alien soul at a later time. It is also possible that hybrids have their own unique soul matrix, though the end result would be the same. And if the human soul matrix were forced to incarnate into hybrid bodies, the genetic influence and consequent personality modifications would leave its scars on the soul and lead to a handicapping in the spiritual areas.

As far as mass incarnation by alien souls into hybrid bodies is concerned, occupying hybrid bodies would afford our alien manipulators the strengths of both alien and human races with none of either’s weaknesses. Human weakness is the longing for individual freedom and ability to empathize, and alien weakness is the inability to stay in our physical environment for prolonged periods of time. The hybrids are biologically robust like us because they have virtually human bodies, but they will be mentally superior and loyal to the aliens if they have souls identical to them.
Additionally, since offspring are imprinted with the soul energies of both parents, it would quicken the metaphysical modification of mankind for the hybrid parent to have a negatively oriented alien soul.

There are also potential timeline and hyperdimensional factors to consider, namely that if aliens are from another dimension, another timeline, from the future, etc. then creating suitable bodies for themselves here offers them a secure foothold in our reality. By interbreeding with us, they could karmically entangle themselves with us, thereby latching themselves like barnacles onto the destiny of humanity. Maybe their realm is dying and ours is still in its prime, hence by anchoring themselves into our world they can ensure both their physical and metaphysical relevance and survival.

**Why can’t aliens stay in our physical environment for prolonged periods of time?**

They require psychic or etheric energy to project themselves into our three dimensional environment and remain stable here. In their natural state, they are four-dimensional (4D) beings who exist in a more quasi-physical quasi-etheric level of reality, but can choose to become physical with an expenditure of energy that allows them to lock phase with our space and time. Our three-dimensional world is embedded in a four-dimensional universe, meaning 4D beings must focus their essence into a narrow range to become temporarily 3D. Otherwise they appear invisible to us, a situation that can be compared to an aquarium in a room: we are fish who are aware of other fish, but we remain relatively unaware of those outside the aquarium who observe us.

This lack of physicality affords aliens many advantages and disadvantages. As an advantage, etheric technology is four dimensional and beyond the strictures of our linear time, so Reptilians, Nordics, Grays can see and operate within our possible past, present, and future realities simultaneously within limits. Combined with their calculative strategy, they are thus capable of engineering very complicated and far-ranging manipulations of a hyperdimensional nature.

These hyperdimensional manipulations can include changing the past in small and seemingly trivial ways to significantly affect the choices a targeted individual makes in the present. Reptilians don’t know which choice we will make, and they cannot change the choices we have already made out of freewill, but they can see and change everything else. So while they cannot easily violate the freewill of a spiritually resilient person, they can bias his choices by tweaking the circumstances.

Since they exist beyond our space and time, they are free of linear time limits. This means they can individually target and manipulate as many people as they need to. Grays are a dime a dozen and can be used to automate the monitoring and influencing of entire regions of the planet. Their time travel agility means that while an abductee perceives several years passing between two abductions,
aliens move instantly from one to the next. So despite the grandiose nature of the alien agenda that targets entire planets and civilizations, they also manipulate on an individual basis all whom they perceive as threats.

As a disadvantage, their lack of physicality prevents them from more easily violating freewill through the use of force. Physicality is an environment where causality is prime, where one being can cause an unwanted effect in another because both are subject to the laws of physics. This is less true in a 4D environment where physicality is variable and where actions work on a synchronistic rather than causal level. Attempting to violate someone’s freewill using synchronistic actions results in running into more metaphysical roadblocks than doing it directly with force. For that reason, Reptilians and their masters desire a more physical state, to expand the range of what they can do. The hybrid breeding program is directed toward that end.

What about military abductions?
The secret government’s military factions regularly abduct people for a wide variety of uses, often working under alien factions and using their technology. These uses are too numerous and complex to mention in detail, but include mind control programs, genetics research projects, and the use of psychically sensitive people for remote viewing and psychic assassination or remote influencing purposes. Due to their limited but existent hyperdimensional technology, these military factions can covertly abduct people during sleep by beaming them out of their local spacetime through portals and into military bases.

Military abductees are frequently tortured via electroshock to create split personalities and install self-destruct, sleeper assassin, or sexual slave mind programming. For example, some mind control projects have created thousands of sleeper agents who can be posthypnotically triggered at a future date to commit mass violence, which would serve as a pretext for the totalitarian clampdown on our freedoms. Military abductees have also reported being raped by Reptilian aliens who feed upon their fear and suffering. Others lead double lives where one personality participates in covert military missions that would seem like science fiction to the other personality. Hyperdimensional technology makes this time sharing possible.

How can one stop being abducted by aliens?
It is difficult to stop abductions permanently without round-the-clock vigilance. Nevertheless, they can be reduced in their severity and frequency of occurrence through some of the following:

1) giving up all karmic and ego-based reasons for wanting them to continue
2) choosing to resist abductions by firmly and frequently intending that they stop
3) choosing emotional stability, positivity, and serenity over hysteria and obsessive fear
4) becoming consciously aware of abductions before, during, or after they happen
5) learning from evidence gained after every abduction how to counter their tactics
6) increasing one’s spiritual resiliency by seeking and applying knowledge and wisdom
7) praying for divine protection and assistance

These methods help deter both soul and physical abductions. In a soul abduction, the body is left asleep but the soul is taken and “worked upon” and then put back.

For purely physical abductions, one could also try detection, shielding, or scrambling methods to
annoy aliens and display one’s resistance. Examples include voice-activated tape recorders, video surveillance, or tying oneself to the bed with a cord and zip tie.

Can anything be done to stop the alien agenda?
The alien agenda depends heavily upon us relinquishing our collective freewill. If the aliens deceptively appear as saviors, and hybrids as a positive step in human evolution, then people will gladly support them. Their enthusiastic support for the alien “saviors” may be great enough to drive them toward suppressing any resistance movements, seeing them as enemies to the betterment of mankind.

However, if enough people can be informed ahead of time about the alien agenda, then the deception will not be as successful. It may even spark debate and open the floodgates of information that expose them for what they are. When more people are informed, collective freewill won’t be given up so foolishly. When a contact event occurs and the barrier of disbelief is broken, people will scour available publications for answers on who these aliens are. By seeding truth-oriented information now, its potency and effect will be multiplied when that happens eventually. In fact, the very existence of such information changes the landscape enough that aliens may become hesitant to instigate certain scenarios, and perhaps the delay leads to enough haste when the deadline approaches that it causes them to reveal their hand and sabotage the whole thing. We can only hope.

What are they doing to counter the possibility of people waking up and resisting?
Before the information age, knowledge was easily suppressed. Today, it is more easily corrupted with disinformation. The alien and secret government factions now work to suppress or corrupt truth wherever they find it. They seek and destroy those attempting to reveal truth, weaken others’ ability to discern truth for themselves, and program the rest to immediately ridicule or ignore truth when they hear it.

Individuals perceived as threats to the alien agenda receive custom attention. They are abducted and implanted for monitoring purposes. After being observed for weaknesses, they are repeatedly abducted and mind programmed with posthypnotic suggestions to indulge in self-destructive thoughts, emotions, and behavior. If they resist these, they are socially ridiculed or publicly discredited. Those with less spiritual resilience receive increasingly violent harassment.

More generally though, the Control System simply pumps out hundreds of disinformation vectors to fill the air waves and drown out the real experiences, real researchers, and real spiritual freedom fighters with fantasy-based half-truths that are so fantastical and entertaining and sensationalist that the truth pales in comparison and thereby goes ignored.

Why don’t negative forces just kill them?
Due to metaphysical reasons, not all who are targeted can simply be killed; they must freely choose to destroy themselves. However, their spiritual resilience declines if they do not resist self-destructive programming, which then makes them susceptible to more drastic targeting measures. Of those who succumb, some are given diseases like cancer that quietly eliminates them, some are permanently abducted and consumed, and others die in freak accidents.
It is also possible, and very effective, for susceptible individuals to be inconspicuously killed, reanimated, and replaced as disinformation agents. They then serve to undo all damage done prior to being replaced. This can happen to vulnerable authors, researchers, politicians, and scientists. While the switchover passes without notice, one can usually observe a drastic and disturbing shift in their research focus and methods. Others who fail to discern truth for themselves and instead rely upon supposed credible sources to tell them what to think do not notice this shift and go along with it. As can be seen, there is no substitute for personal discernment and the spiritual resiliency that comes with integrity and knowledge.

Besides influential people being mind programmed or replaced as disinformation agents, how else are negative forces suppressing the spread of knowledge?

Willpower, knowledge, spiritual resiliency, mental clarity, and emotional purity are qualities that reduce one’s level of susceptibility to being influenced by negative forces. There are billions of humans for whom these qualities are not a priority due to the simplicity of their reason for incarnating. This makes them very easily manipulated by alien forces and the secret government to serve as buffers against the system-destabilizing effect of “insurgent” individuals.

Their function in the alien agenda is to serve as “hired clappers” in the crowd by using peer pressure, ridicule, and mass consensus to override the influence of the minority who seek truth. They are also easily directed toward surrounding truth-seekers and engaging them in energy draining relationships or friendships that do nothing but sedate, distract, or sabotage.

Additionally, there exist artificial humans who are manufactured by alien forces to serve as disinformation agents capable of corrupting the knowledge of a truth-seeker via direct interaction. These are virtually identical in function to reanimated/replaced humans, except they lack a concrete traceable past. Because they are remotely controlled, they can precisely deliver disinformation customized to fit a truth-seekers profile, something the aforementioned “hired clappers” cannot do.

As can be seen, negative alien forces have in place a very effective system for the direct suppression and corruption of knowledge. To summarize, this system includes the following:

1) the abduction and self-destruct mind programming of truth-seekers to end their quest
2) peer pressure placed upon them by so-called hired clappers
3) direct targeting by artificial humans
4) the disinformation disseminated by programmed or replaced sources of authority

This supplements the various religious, political, economic, and scientific control mechanisms already established by the secret government to control society at large.

Are there any positive aliens?

Yes, but they are not the saccharine caricatures found in New Age channeled material. Those are instead the products of wishful thinking or else negative aliens, demons, mischievous ghosts, and shadow military masquerading as positive aliens in order to deceive.

Real positive aliens are extremely talented, intelligent, wise, lucid, and advanced beings. They say a lot in few words and are highly respectful of our freewill and independence. They care for our freedom, knowledge, and discernment, in contrast to the impostors who will speak all kinds of platitudes, promise everything under the sun, and throw you a thousand fortune cookie aphorisms
but in the end gain more control, seed false knowledge, and reduce discernment. That is the key difference between the real and the fake.

Some positive aliens look like us, or at least could pass for human considering how many weird looking people we pass by in our lives having been taught from a young age not to stare or point. They are careful about non-intervention and also have their proxies here in our population. They only interfere to the degree required to offset the imbalance caused by the negative aliens. They do this via a long term, butterfly-effect, tao-like approach that uses knowledge and spiritual empowerment rather than violence or propaganda as the primary weapons.

See my articles Discerning Alien Disinformation: Part 6, STO, STS, and Densities, and Gnosis Series: Part 6 for a much deeper discussion on positive aliens and how they operate, including why they don’t just declare war, invade this prison planet with guns blazing, and rid our planet of the negative alien factions by force.

If we do wake up as a planet, will desperate alien factions risk using force?

They have invested much energy toward securing earth and its population for their exploitation, so they will not give up easily. As discussed before, force is usually kept to a minimum while strategy is optimized to ensure efficient use of energy and the preservation of their desired resources. But sometimes force is the only strategy left. As always, they would use it by getting others to do the work for them.

Due to their aversion to the physicality of our environment, they employ physical and expendable beings as their enforcers. This could include human soldiers, the hybrid elite, and any additional reinforcements they may bring in from outside our solar system. The latter tend to include soldiers recruited from other worlds they have already conquered. Nevertheless, direct confrontation with 4D forces is inevitable if we were to transcend our 3D states and enter their realm.

Acting alone in our present physical condition, even with a world united under a single technologically advanced government, we would be unable to successfully repel such an overt takeover. In the best of such cases, we would be like monkeys fighting armed poachers. Such conditions are unlikely anyway since the secret government or hybrid elite will ensure that the world does not act unilaterally against the alien forces and instead works to suppress resistance movements.

Given the scope of their knowledge suppression mechanism — and if that fails, the overwhelming nature of their overt invasion — is there any hope?

Yes, there is hope in the sense that divine plans are in place to balance the equation and give us a fighting chance of transcending alien manipulation and escaping our fragile physical conditions. The help we receive from higher sources is of a catalytic nature, meaning it merely assists our own efforts. That includes the clandestine support being provided by positive alien groups.

From one perspective, 3D Earth is little more than a prison planet run by tyrannical forces about to implement their “final solution.” We cannot fight as prisoners because we are too weak. To avoid enslavement and liquidation, we must become empowered by first escaping this prison — thankfully with the help of those who have escaped before us. This means accepting divine help, transcending our limited physical states, and evolving into 4D beings ourselves. Only then will we
be on a level playing field with our alien manipulators.

From a more metaphysical perspective, 3D Earth is a school of hard knocks. The quantum leap in evolution we require to withstand the overt alien takeover is not impossible, it is inevitable — every life lesson we learn brings us closer to graduating from our three dimensional physical existence. This process is natural and need not be forced; for those of us who have chosen the path of integrity and truth, our individual destinies are intertwined with the divine plan, and we have been synchronistically guided since birth to have the right experiences needed to prepare us for what is to come.

Among us are numerous advanced souls from higher realms who have incarnated into our world to help destabilize the alien control system and catalyze the evolution of those ready to graduate for the first time. Many don’t remember who they are or where they came from, and from early childhood most are heavily targeted by negative forces for self-destruction due to their threatening roles as system destabilizers. Those who overcome these obstacles grow strong enough to contribute toward the divine plan by spreading knowledge and assisting the evolution of others. They are former prisoners who have come back to show others how to leave the prison. Many of these we might call positive aliens. Take note that no one is chosen or special; anyone can take part in the divine plan who chooses to follow his or her heart and seek knowledge.

Knowledge is the key, for it helps us see through deception and fuels our evolution. Because of knowledge, the alien agenda will be exposed. Because of knowledge, we will evolve new insights and metaphysical abilities that can prepare us to better counter an overt alien takeover. Divine forces are at work to help us learn — if we actively seek knowledge, the way will be shown. If we actively apply knowledge, the path will be cleared. And if we actively share knowledge, the path will be followed by others.

Changelog
March 24, 2015 – Article updated.

Discerning Alien Disinformation: Part 1
19 October 08 (alien)

» Download the PDF: Fully formatted, 690kB. Good for printing in landscape mode with two pages per sheet. Also available as ePub and Kindle.

» Buy the Hardcopy: Same formatting as seen in the PDF file. 144 pages, 5.5” x 8.5”, color cover.
Introduction

In less than a decade, mankind will be confronted with undeniable public disclosure of the alien presence\(^1\). The critical choices that follow will turn into tragic consequences if made in ignorance, confusion, weakness, or desperation. Therefore informed choices must be made to safeguard human freedom. This book is about acquiring discernment in handling future relations with alien forces by seeing and learning from their current methods of deception. We must consider the possibility of alien deception so that we can preempt it.

Distinguishing between peaceful and aggressive aliens is easy. A more difficult question is how to discern between positive aliens and negative ones pretending to be positive. This question is important because research suggests not all alien factions are sincere or have our best interests at heart. If hostile forces cunningly imitate benevolent ones, then anyone refusing to acknowledge this possibility invites deception. Those who deeply investigate the alien presence will inevitably conclude that such impostors are already here on earth waging psychological warfare upon us to disarm discernment and create within the population a growing desire for their imminent arrival and leadership.

If we enter into diplomatic relations with deceptive forces without recognizing them as such, we will be doomed to repeat history for the last time. Let us be reminded of how the Native Americans traded away valuable land for worthless trinkets and broken promises, or how even today Americans are trading their freedoms for tyranny in the name of security\(^2\). If it has happened before, what prevents it from happening again? Nothing except the awareness to choose differently. To preempt this possibility, we must know our priorities and develop a keen understanding of the differences between positive forces and negative impostors.

Asking how we can discern between the two will tug firmly at the lynchpin of the entire deception. Some might reject this by assuming all aliens must be positive, that such an exercise in prudence is nothing more than “xenophobic paranoia.” Well, maybe they are letting their biases interfere with their better judgment. Unfortunately this attitude is common today considering the scope and finesse of the alien disinformation campaign. It has been so intricately tailored to human psychological blind spots and emotional weaknesses that all but the most discerning and intuitively astute are being misled. As the saying goes, the road to hell is paved with good intentions: regardless of how much one pursues peace, love, and progress, without necessary awareness of contingencies the results may be just the opposite.

It is my firm conviction that genuinely positive aliens do exist and are active in our world, but that their true nature does not conform to popular expectation. Rather, it is the impostors who dress themselves in our naive scientific, cultural, religious, and spiritualistic assumptions to fortify their image.

Without knowledge of what positive aliens are truly like, people might accept the faux alternative. So my objective for this book is to survey the falsehoods propagated by the impostors and in later parts discuss the true nature of positive aliens. This should provide a good base of suggestions from which perceptive readers may formulate their own criteria of discernment.
Researching Transcendent Phenomena

It must be made absolutely clear that the alien phenomenon is nebulous by nature. Attempting to apply rigid scientific standards of objectivity to the alien phenomenon is impractical and unrealistic. Science has the luxury of dealing with a material reality that is universally verifiable, but the alien phenomenon is more complex and subtle than materiality. Not only does it involve intelligent beings who can choose how much of themselves to reveal and with whom they interact, but their interactions with us are governed by interdimensional dynamics that require dependence on the observer.

Unequivocal proof of aliens is personal and non-transferrable. This tendency toward personal rather than objective proof does not mean that the alien phenomenon is subjective, as subjectivity would imply it has no independent existence and is just a product of the imagination. Nor is it objective, because objectivity would imply it has its own independent existence that is verifiable by anyone. Rather it transcends subjectivity and objectivity altogether by having an independent existence that only reveals itself on an individual, personal basis.

To penetrate the alien phenomenon, one must possess good intuition, sharp observation skills, be flexible in working with probabilities and provisional hypotheses instead of simplistic black and white dichotomies, have developed a good nose for detecting disinformation, be familiar with the available research to date, and as a bonus have adequate personal experience with the subject as well as empathic ability to psychically detect insincerity in others. If one or more of these assets is lacking, good use of the rest may compensate.

These qualities are what I myself have had to call upon to evolve the alien scenario presented in this book. It currently fits everything I have experienced, researched, observed, and intuited in life. What makes a good theory? That it has not been disproved by the facts, is the simplest theory explaining known data without having to ignore counter-evidential data, reveals real order behind things previously thought to be unrelated, can be personally tested and verified, meets continual confirmation from new data, and compared to alternatives it is the most probable and intuitively resonant theory true to experience and observation.

For the past twenty years I have studied a broad range of books, magazines, lectures, documentaries, radio shows, news articles, websites, and research journals relevant to the alien presence. These were interpreted against the backdrop of my personal experiences, intuition, critical thinking, and the anecdotes of trusted others. From this I have pieced together a minimally complex hypothesis concerning whom the main alien players are, what the range of their capabilities appears to be, how they typically operate, and what this indicates about their possible motives.

However accurate or inaccurate my theory, the real situation is more complicated than what I am describing here. If nothing else, let what follows demonstrate the minimum level of complexity needed to approach the alien subject.

Description of the Primary Alien Types

I will begin by surveying the primary alien players: Greys, Reptilians, Mantids, and Nordics. The names are only descriptive. These are the four recurring characters in both legitimate research and
alien disinformation literature\textsuperscript{4}. Of course there are other alien types, but they are not as prominent as these four, who appear in source after source. Therefore I will skip discussing the less noteworthy aliens and focus on the popular ones.

**Greys**

Greys are the most commonly encountered type of alien. They are between three and five feet tall with disproportionately large bulbous heads. Their skin varies from dolphin-grey to porcelain white and has a dry, rough, highly elastic texture. Hair and earlobes are absent, nose and mouth are vestigial. Greys are known for their prominent eyes, which are catlike or else completely obsidian if concealed beneath a dark covering. Their eyes range from small to large, round to almond-shaped. Their manner of movement may be described as swift and serpentine but robotic and graceless.

Greys are known to experience panic and frustration but lack complex emotions like empathy, compassion, love, and humor. This suggests their awareness is sustained by the primitive reptilian portion of the brain while the rest is purposed toward psychic and intellectual functions. What qualities make them useful has been overdeveloped, while the rest has been reduced. They are minimalist lifeforms optimized for their intended function.

Greys are genetically engineered, psychically enhanced, transdimensional worker-beings endowed with rudimentary sentience and a computer-like intelligence. In their most basic form they are artificially intelligent, programmable, organic robots grown in vessels from harvested biological materials. Greys work in groups, linked psychically into a hive mind, though each has some level of autonomy.

Their DNA is a modification of the reptilian genome, optimized for maximum psychic and cybernetic qualities. Cybernetic means they are remotely controllable when necessary, functioning as remote psychic probes, avatars, or portals through which the consciousness of their superiors may temporarily operate. So although by default they are programmed yet intelligent automatons with their own basic awareness, they are readily possessed or controlled by an external intelligence.

The Grey genome can infuse psychic and cybernetic elements into a fully sentient species through hybridization. This produces a new race that is psychically more potent but consciously more controllable. Tall Greys with a sentient demeanor and individualized consciousness are an extreme example of this, while Greys in their quintessential form are short worker drones; the former are often seen leading or supervising the latter. Any proportion of hybridization is possible with any number of species including humans and animals.

Greys are sometimes physical, other times seemingly ethereal. They can vary between these states depending on how deeply they have been projected or dimensionally rotated into our dimension. If deep enough to share the same level as ourselves, they will be completely physical to our senses. If only partially, then they will be invisible to our eyes yet lurking around to observe and influence. When physically invisible, Greys can still be intuitively detected, seen and tracked by animals, and perceived during astral projections or the hypnopompic state of consciousness.

Some Greys are not physical beings but thought-forms, which are etheric constructs without physical bodies who lack the ability to materialize in the physical. They would be used more for human possession, influencing, and monitoring purposes, whereas the tangible Greys are used for
physical tasks like handling abductees.

Aliens native to another dimension, who require interaction with humans without crossing the dimensional border themselves, may use Greys as remote probes for psychically subduing, managing, and extracting human abductees from the physical plane. If Greys are grown from biological materials harvested from our world, their bodies would consist of materials already attuned to our dimension, which affords them easier operation within our physical environment. This would be the main reason Greys are so prevalent in abduction reports.

Another reason Greys are so commonly reported is that they are convenient frontmen for alien or human military factions wishing to keep their own involvement in the abduction phenomenon hidden for strategic purposes. These include Reptilian, Mantid, and Nordic alien types. Less is known about them than the Greys because they are met less often and are fewer in number. That does not mean they are less involved in the abduction phenomenon; they manage their abduction programs from behind the scenes and allow the Greys to continue with their given assignments without intervention by authorities unless demanded by circumstance.

**Reptilians**

Reptilians are humanoid beings with alligator-like features including vertical pupils, scales, and sometimes tails. There are different factions and types of Reptilians, though they all share traits of being highly intelligent and good tactical strategists; some even have excellent human language skills. Only a small minority are of relatively benevolent orientation[^5], while the rest appear too heavily locked into their genetically programmed predisposition toward psychopathy, power, and control. The latter are commonly implicated in incidences of rape, torture, and mutilation of humans by aliens[^6].

Reptilians are transdimensional and can physically manifest in our dimension for limited periods of time. Normally they stay back in their dimension in a more ethereal state and remotely operate Grey drones. When interfacing through a Grey, they can remotely feed off the emotional energy emitted by a terrified abductee nearby. This lifeforce energy is a source of nourishment and power for all interdimensional aliens of a negative orientation, as it does for their ethereal bodies and technologies what physical fuel does for our physical bodies and technologies. Reptilians are seen less often than Greys, but are known to be one of their superiors.

**Mantids**

Mantids are man-sized preying mantises with triangular heads, large wraparound eyes, and long bent arms. They are rarely seen except in the company of Reptilians or Greys aboard ships. Their consciousness is unemotional, calculating, but highly proficient in technical matters. They likely work as technicians specializing in consciousness manipulation and mind programming, timeline alteration, and dimensional engineering.

**Nordics**

Nordics look like white Caucasian males and females. They are usually fair-skinned with light-colored eyes and primarily blond hair, though some have darker hair. Compared to the average human, Nordics tend to have better physiques, larger eyes, and greater stature. They are telepathic and have superhuman intelligence. Nordics are also interdimensional beings normally existing
beyond the dimensional veil, the difference being that sentient Nordics are relatively more adept at projecting themselves into our physical plane for extended periods of time than Reptilians, Mantids, and Greys. They can and do walk among us in public without notice.

Nordics fall into three main categories. When seen working with Greys as docile assistants, they are likely servile clones or synthetic humanoids rather than actual sentient Nordics. When they function as controllers and supervisors to Greys, Mantids, and Reptilians, they are Nordics of a negative orientation. When they are fully sentient, individualistic, ethical, and supportive of freewill, they are Nordics of a positive orientation.

Thus the Nordic physiology itself is no indication of orientation or intention. This is further complicated by positive and negative types blending smoothly into each other near the middle of the spectrum. Qualitatively speaking, the more negative Nordics have a coldness behind their eyes, positive Nordics a warmth, and servile Nordics a certain vacuousness.

### Alien Involvement in Human History

Whatever alien groups were responsible for genetically engineering humans and seeding them upon various worlds are likely no longer with us. Nevertheless, some alien types, including the ones mentioned above, have made their own modifications to the human gene pool in more recent times. These modifications include the genetic programming of humans with universal weaknesses, biases, and shortcomings. Another modification is the creation of bloodlines with specific talents, predispositions, and destinies; specifically, bloodlines with penchant for political elitism, combative superiority, or psychic potency. None of the alien groups present today can rightly claim they created the human species, though falsely taking credit would help the ones advancing a negative agenda.

Historical, mythological, religious, and archeological records indicate aliens interacted openly with humans in ancient times. There were different warring alien factions, each faction had their respective human followers who saw them as gods and got caught up in their skirmishes. Some of this is evident in the Old Testament. Considering Biblical chronology, it appears that starting around 1,000 B.C. human-alien interactions became more covert, transitioning from “gods” openly walking the earth to private meetings with selected individuals, ambiguous sightings, and subjective visions.

While for society at large the alien presence faded from tangibility into myth, alien factions continued to advance their agendas covertly. This included the establishment of human secret brotherhoods who were entrusted with special knowledge and powers to shape the course of civilization and act according to the goals of their alien benefactors. Secret societies varied in their orientations, some bent on world domination and hoarding of knowledge, others charged with safeguarding esoteric knowledge from abuse and counterbalancing the forces of corruption.

### Can Human Minds Comprehend Alien Motivations?

Regarding alien intentions, we must recognize that although aliens are different from us in many ways, in other ways they are very similar. The most commonly reported types — whether Nordic, Reptilian, Grey, or Mantid — are humanoid, having a torso with two legs and two arms, a head with two eyes, mouth, and nose. They are mortal, require sustenance, and travel in vehicles. They can communicate telepathically and sometimes verbally with humans.
According to information provided by abductees, contactees, and insiders, the majority of their supposed interstellar points of origin — Sirius, Arcturus, Procyon, Pleiades, Zeta Reticuli — are less than one hundred light-years from earth. That is 0.1% the diameter of the Milky Way. The similarity and proximity is so significant that we are very likely dealing with our cosmic relatives, whether future evolutionary offshoots of the human race who have traveled back in time, aliens who have genetically modified us in their image, or other variants of the humanoid template seeded on other worlds in this sector of the galaxy.

Therefore, alien motivations are not so foreign as to be a total mystery to our human minds. We can glimpse their mindset and intentions through sufficiently broad and deep research, personal interaction, clairvoyance, or even tapping into residual knowledge from having been alien in other incarnations.

What fails is intellectualizing from common scientific or religious assumptions about what their motivations might be while rejecting data from less conventional sources. The alien deception relies on these naive assumptions to build an overly simplistic anthropomorphic mask of plausibility to hide their true intentions.

What Observational Data Reveals of Alien Capabilities

Understanding the alien agenda is not easy, but it’s also not impossible. It can be approached, even if only partially, through uncommon intuition, awareness, and discernment. The first step is gaining a better understanding of their true nature and abilities. Let’s examine what UFO and abduction research reveals so far.

Alien ships can seem bigger on the inside than the outside, accelerate quickly to extreme velocities, travel at supersonic speeds without causing sonic booms, make sharp turns without inertial side-effects, jump between locations as though teleporting, and become invisible. When they hover at low altitudes over cars and buildings an audible pulsating hum is typically heard. Their hovering mechanism appears to involve pulsed gravitational fields synthesized from separate waveforms to produce directional thrust.

All these indicate mastery over the fabric of spacetime. Alien technology can alter the local gravitational potential to change the time rate, nullify inertia, and compress space to change physical scale. Invisibility and teleportation suggests they have access to hyperspace as well, moving into hyperspace slightly to become invisible, or entirely to take a shortcut to another location. Their technology is therefore ultra-relativistic and hyperdimensional in nature.

Aliens can walk or float through solid walls. Using a blue beam emitted by the alien ship outside, they can target, levitate, and extract an abductee from his home through solid glass windows, thin walls, and other nonferrous barriers. The abductee does not dematerialize into energy or small particles, but rather slips through the barrier like one sheet of paper over another.

Alien technology allows the generation of wormholes or short conduits through hyperspace between distant points in spacetime. This can manifest as a portal that opens into the abductee’s bedroom and leads to an underground base.

Abductees may experience a sudden cessation of natural outside noises (like the chirping of crickets) during the onset of an abduction. They may also notice a change in air pressure, an
unsettling alteration in the contrast level of light and shadows in the room, an amber tint to the air, and a feeling like a heavy veil or bell jar is descending over themselves or the immediate area. These indicate that the local area is being dimensionally isolated from the surrounding space and disconnected from the surrounding time stream so that, for potential witnesses outside the bubble, the abduction takes place in a single moment and thereby escapes their observation. Otherwise abductions would be impossible in busy urban areas. The bubble also produces a shifted environment that is easier for incoming abductors to operate within since it meets them halfway.

Abductors also have physiological and psychological control over their targets. Roadside abductions involve a driver getting the sudden irresistible urge to pull over. Abductees at home who are not yet asleep may feel a strong pressure to quickly lie down and go to sleep, or feel their willpower and self-control slipping away as a veil of heaviness descends over them. Greys have telepathic ability to subdue abductees, induce or remove fear, and cause temporary paralysis.

Not all abductions are physical. Some take not the body but the soul, more specifically the etheric and astral bodies, which during sleep separate naturally from the physical body and hover over it. The soul is whisked away by a vortical tractor beam and taken dimensionally upwards where abductors perform various scans and manipulations upon it before returning it to the body. The abductee is rarely aware of any of this, unless accidentally awakening while out of body, in which case it’s possible to fight the tractor beam and avoid the soul abduction through sheer willpower to return to the body and awaken. Thus, interdimensional aliens are capable of directly manipulating the nonphysical components of human beings, not just the physical.

All the above is, for the most part, common knowledge in abduction research. Less known is the degree to which aliens can manipulate thoughts, feelings, perceptions, life events, and history itself. Even less known are their more esoteric and nonphysical motivations. Information about these must be distilled from areas outside the usual gamut of abduction research. It comes from private personal experiences correlated with that of others, plenty of careful observation and testing, suggestions and inspiration from unconventional sources, and creative puzzle solving with pieces that on the surface seem unrelated to the abduction phenomenon, such as ideas found in occult, gnostic, shamanic, religious, or spiritual works for instance. This will be discussed in the next part.

Notes

1 This estimate is based on several factors including: 1) the rate at which the public is being acclimated to the existence of aliens, 2) the speed at which climate, economic and political instabilities are heading toward conditions ripe for alien intervention, 3) what abductees and contactees have been told concerning the completion of the alien hybridization program and timing of alien contact with humanity at large, 4) the potentially devastating effects of solar flares and CMEs during cycle peaks, and 5) personal observations on the current readiness of individuals who will likely play roles in galactic diplomacy and how many more years it will take for them to reach full maturity for the task.

2 See *Allies of Humanity: Book Two* (Summers, 2005) for greater elaboration on the parallels
between natives and explorers of our own history and what we will soon face.

3 The metaphysical, hyperdimensional, and intelligent nature of the alien presence makes the UFO phenomenon function like a macroscopic quantum phenomenon dependent on the observer. This leads to an uncertainty principle preventing universal certainty. So the more universal the proof of aliens, the less convincing the evidence, as with videotaped UFO sightings, which, despite being viewable by anyone, are too lacking in detail to be convincing. Conversely, the more convincing the evidence, the less universal the proof, as happens with abductees who have undeniable personal proof of their experiences but are unable to record and thus share their experiences.

4 See the resources listed at the end of this book, specifically the following: Angelucci, Jadczyk, *The Blue Planet Project*, Turner, Jacobs, Andrews, Delicado, fore, Valerian, Lorgen, and Royal.

5 As for the possibility of benevolent Reptilians, this has been circumstantially suggested by *The Lacerta Files, The Convoluted Universe Book Two* (Cannon, 2005, pp. 272-300), and television shows like *V: The Miniseries* and *Stargate SG-1* where fifth columnists worked within the ranks of negative aliens to subvert their control. If benevolent Reptilians exist, they would likely keep a very low profile.

6 Such incidences are documented in the works of Eve Lorgen, James Bartley, and Karla Turner among others.

7 See *Unconventional Flying Objects* (Hill, 1995) for a scientific investigation into UFO propulsion systems. Through a process of elimination, the author concluded that pulsed gravitational fields were employed. If so, then directionality would be possible through a phased array of field emitters.

8 *The Cassiopaean Transcripts* explains the amber tinting as bleed-through from “fourth density” (higher-dimensional realm). I have observed this and alteration in lighting contrast during the onset of an abduction. *Sight Unseen* (Hopkins and Rainey, 2004) mentions amber tinting. *Chasing Phantoms* (Conti, 2009) recounts this phenomenon and the bell jar effect as well.

Discerning Alien Disinformation: Part 2

19 October 08 (alien)

» [Download the PDF](#): Fully formatted, 690kB. Good for printing in landscape mode with two pages per sheet. Also available as [ePub](#) and [Kindle](#).

» [Buy the Hardcopy](#): Same formatting as seen in the PDF file. 144 pages, 5.5" x 8.5", color [cover](#).
The All-Pervasive but Hidden Nature of Alien Control

Alien interactions are not solely confined to mysterious sightings at a distance, or abductions that only happen to a few rare individuals. It is not something that can be kept at an intellectual distance, where, if you have neither seen a UFO nor know yourself to be an abductee, aliens have no presence or influence in your life. In truth, aliens have a seeming omnipresence enabled by their interdimensionality that extends their influence not only into our homes, but also into our minds. No one is immune to this except humans of zero interest or those with special tactical awareness who have taken full countermeasures. Being useful or threatening to the agenda of even one alien faction will attract their attention, which leads to subsequent covert monitoring and influencing. They have no logistical limitations concerning whom or how many to target.

As mentioned, aliens can lurk nearby while invisible. In physics terminology this happens when they have not yet fully rotated themselves into our dimension, their quantum wave functions have not fully collapsed into our reality, or their quantum phases are not fully locked into our own. In occult terminology, this happens when they manifest within the etheric plane without condensing fully into the physical. The etheric is a transitionary boundary layer between the physical and nonphysical, functioning as an invisible substratum to the physical world but containing energies, beings, and constructs that influence the physical at the quantum level. Think of it as the backstage to our reality, the area behind the curtain of our limited five-sense perception.

In this invisible or etheric state, aliens can monitor targets without normally being noticed. By getting close to their targets, they can more effectively project strong thoughts into a person’s subconscious, giving him impulses, ideas, or inspirations that he will take as his own and act upon unless he questions their origins and rationality.

They can reach into a person’s body and manipulate his or her chakras and etheric energy circuits to effect anything from enhanced or diminished psychic abilities to emotional and mental imbalances and physical illnesses. Greys in an etheric state are known to attach themselves to a person like an invisible parasite, subtly influencing the person’s thoughts, feelings, and behaviors even as he goes about his day. Aliens who require lifeforce energy for sustenance can also lurk in proximity to highly emotional, sexually charged, or distressing human activities to harvest the energy released.

Targets may also receive etheric implants, etheric gadgetry attached to them externally, and etheric devices or observation booths installed into their homes for monitoring and influencing purposes. This capability can be scaled up to allow alien bases to coexist on top of physical human military bases or airports, for example, dimensionally shifted and thus overlapping, seemingly occupying the same three dimensional space.

These things occur beyond the perceptual reach of normal waking consciousness and the detectability of standard recording devices or scientific instruments. Nevertheless, animals can perceive etheric activities, as can clairvoyants with second sight, individuals awakening from sleep into a brief hypnopompic state, and those whose consciousness has been chemically detuned from physical reality through hallucinogens. Etheric beings and devices may also show up symbolically in dreams, although dreams alone are not a reliable indicator of what is happening in the etheric environment.

Because of their hidden nature, none of these phenomena are all that credible in the eyes of nuts-n-
bolts researchers or those with mere casual interest in the subject of aliens. Therefore this aspect of the alien presence, which is perhaps the most ubiquitous, is also the least perceivable and believable by the greater majority. This would benefit any covert agenda aiming to project a false front on the superficial perceptible level, while allocating all serious activities to hidden realms.

Alien abductions also have this duality. On the surface, abductions are purposed toward using humans for scientific study and experimentation, as biological assets for the production of human-alien hybrids, and for the training of abductees to campaign for disclosure, peace, environmental conservation, and other politically correct causes. While these elements do exist within the abduction phenomenon, other less noble purposes are also present but kept hidden.

**Energy Harvesting and Implants**

One of these hidden elements is the harvesting of lifeforce energy from abductees by traumatizing them with fear, terror, pain, sexual violation, humiliation, or despair. Negative emotions trigger a thick emission of subtle energy from the abductee that is then collected. Greys nearby the abductee can function as siphons through which remotely interfaced Reptilians can slurp up the energy. There are numerous ways to accomplish this, one being sham medical procedures whose real purpose is to disempower and torment the abductee under the guise of necessary research. Most of this is covered up with layered screen memories of superficial positive experiences, whereby the abductee may have faint memories of being taken and have an irrationally wonderful feeling about it on the one hand, but lingering anxiety and signs of post-traumatic stress on the other.

Yet another method is to induce an atmosphere of fear in the life of the abductee, fear of being taken again, fear of having their children targeted, and fear of creepy aliens skulking about the house at night. Abductee reports of being raped by reptilian entities are not uncommon, which would be a more direct method of harvesting energy and psychologically fracturing the abductee.

Energy harvesting is not limited to abductees; it occurs on a global scale in a more horticultural manner wherever there are clusters of emotionally charged situations releasing usable quantities of energy. Examples: large hospitals, major sporting events, mega-churches, natural disaster zones, any event involving mass casualties, and areas afflicted with war or starvation. This energy is used for nourishment and to power certain etheric technologies and interdimensional maneuvers.

Some alien implants are powered by this energy, especially the etheric types of implants. Like any etheric thoughtform, they will go inactive if deprived of their energy source. This happens when one refuses to indulge in the particular base emotions sustaining these implants, which tend to be the same emotions encouraged by them.

Alien implants are designed not just for remote monitoring purposes, but also remote influencing. Physical implants in the brain can monitor thoughts and produce a disorienting effect when a forbidden line of thinking arises. They can record one’s thoughts, feelings, and perceptions for periodic analysis by an alien observer. The data retrieved may indicate weaknesses, threatening trends, and useful tendencies to take into account during further manipulations. Etheric implants can be placed anywhere depending on their function, including in the head to interfere with thoughts, the lower torso to jack into the lower chakras and manipulate base emotions, and elsewhere for tracking and other purposes.
Mind Programming

Another prevalent but little discussed aspect of abductions is mind programming, the insertion of harmful posthypnotic commands into an abductee’s subconscious. The command to forget an abduction and remember a screen memory is just one manifestation of this phenomenon, and it can just as easily be used for more insidious purposes.

These commands are given while the abductee is in an artificially induced hypnotic trance and can lie dormant in the subconscious until triggered hours, days, or weeks later to produce a strong compulsion to carry out the command. They may also work continuously to bias thoughts, feelings, perceptions, and reactions in a predetermined direction. The aim of mind programming is behavioral modification toward greater compliance with an agenda and greater submission to the abductors and mind programmers. Alien posthypnotic commands are given telepathically and come with nonverbal layers reinforcing the accompanying verbal command.

In mind programming, desirable behaviors are induced and undesirable ones suppressed. The first includes obsession with disinformative ideas, intensely desiring further abductions, falling into an artificially orchestrated relationship with another abductee, and being compelled to rationalize away ideas that contradict the agenda. The second includes sudden and total loss of faith in pursuits that would have undermined alien control, becoming irrationally antagonistic and break relations with friends, having a strong aversion to certain lines of research, or simply being struck with spells of forgetfulness or sleepiness when getting too close to forbidden territory.

If an abductee is targeted for elimination due to having become too aware, unpredictable, or influential in defiance of the agenda, then programming becomes a tool of attrition hitting multiple subconscious vulnerabilities simultaneously for extended periods of time. It wears down the target through repeated inductions of doubt, procrastination, cynicism, anxiety, apathy, fear, irritability, aggression, depression, perversion, suicidal thoughts, and other self-destructive thoughts and feelings. These symptoms do not exclusively indicate mind programming, rather they are selected from the pool of human dysfunctions due to their especially destructive nature.

People unaware of mind programming are easily defeated by it because they take these unwelcome thoughts as their own. The key to countering mind programming is to identify irrational impulses as they arise, use willpower to keep defying these impulses until they cease, then analyze and fix what personal vulnerabilities were highlighted by the experience.

Although manipulative aliens may use overt threats, rewards, punishment, and harassment to get their way, these tactics are not subtle and thus less likely to succeed when a target grows aware of them. It is more effective to bypass the conscious mind altogether, sneak beneath the threshold of awareness, and thereby reduce the possibility of suspicion and resistance. Aliens are more sophisticated than generally credited, especially when it comes to their tactics of persuasion.

Hyperdimensional Manipulation

To give indication of the level of sophistication involved, consider that mind programming is often paired with another set of tools aliens possess: the ability to view probable futures, make small alterations to the past to change conditions in the present and thereby shift the odds of those probable futures, and program useful people into functioning as strategic players who carry out
This allows orchestration of problematic life situations toward which the target will react in the most damaging way according to his posthypnotic programming. Both external events and the subconscious are set up like dominoes so that they knock each other down and produce the desired outcome. This can be used to socially isolate targets, break up networks, subvert organizations, undercut collaborative projects, and hijack the making of critical decisions. All of it is routine for interdimensional beings who have access to our minds, who have good monitoring abilities, and who are not limited by linear time or logistical shortcomings.

Why would they even bother messing with single individuals? Because small actions can have large consequences. Interdimensional entities have an overhead view of our timeline, able to see the past, present, and future simultaneously as an intelligent, complex, and dynamic network of causal segments and choice points with which they can interact. Due to various quantum and metaphysical factors, they are limited to varying degrees in how much of this network they can perceive and alter. Their standard mode of operation is to target critical moments on the timeline where our future is most in flux, where the smallest nudging on their part produces the largest favorable outcome for them. These moments are choice points where a straight sequence of events splits into multiple probable futures.

The person whose decision these futures hinge upon is then targeted through programming, telepathic persuasion, coercion from people who have been unwittingly influenced to play that role, baiting through artificial synchronicities (freak coincidences designed to create misleading impressions that a certain decision is the right one), disinformative dreams or visions, and other creative forms of persuasion.

Simply by influencing his or her mind into making a different choice, the timeline can be altered.8 Small alterations shift the game board and open opportunities for bigger alterations, which in turn prepare the stage for even larger ones. No choice point on the timeline is too small to target since small decisions can cascade into big effects down the line. By patiently and strategically carrying out this process, alien timeline manipulators seek to achieve the ultimate goal of completely turning over a timeline network in their favor, thereby securing a probable future where they have achieved unassailable dominance over their enemies.

Manipulation of Mass Consciousness

For humanity at large, the ultimate choice point is fast approaching and involves a global decision concerning our relationship with alien forces who will have revealed themselves by that point. Are the people of earth ready to make that decision? No, but time is up. As things currently stand, the decision would be heavily biased by the backwards assumptions underpinning our various cultures, the irrational exuberance of religious expectations, and the narrow-minded recommendations of scientific Academia who are clueless about the hidden layers of the alien presence. Then what must be an informed decision will instead become a disinformed decision thanks to alien propaganda and the influence of compromised opinion leaders groomed to persuade hungry minds with selective evidence and slick sophistry.

This is conveniently in line with the nature of hyperdimensional conquest. Unlike physical warfare, it employs nonphysical weapons to fight for nonphysical territory. It is the way of psychological,
metaphysical, and interdimensional subjugation. Since consciousness is the foundation of reality, manipulation of consciousness is what secures control over the minds and souls of entire civilizations and thus their destiny and reality. That is the danger we now face.

Continue to Part 3 »

Notes

1 See CE-VI (Baldwin, 1999) and The Love Bite (Lorgen, 1999, pp. 193-194).

2 The late Adrian Dvir claimed aliens had installed a dimensionally overlapping medical clinic into his apartment. Contactee “fore” (member of the Open Minds Forum) was taught by his alien contact about “phasing technology” that could make objects invisible and pass through solid matter. The Cassiopaean Transcripts in session 951104 discusses alien bases dimensionally overlapping human military bases.

3 The Cassiopaean Transcripts session 941022: “Extreme fear and anxiety builds up fear/anxiety energy which is of a negative nature which fuels the beings that you speak of in that they draw from that and produce a sort of a fueling energy which keeps them going as one of their forms of nourishment based on their metabolic structure. From The Law of One, Book I, Session 26: “The Orion group uses the physical examination as a means of terrifying the individual and causing it to feel the feelings of an advanced second-density being such as a laboratory animal. The sexual experiences of some are a sub-type of this experience. The intent is to demonstrate the control of the Orion entities over the Terran inhabitant.”

4 Far Journeys (Monroe, 1978, pp. 162-172) gives an allegorical depiction of earth as an energy farm producing “loosh” for nonphysical beings via fear, suffering, and death in humans. The same idea has been portrayed in films like The Matrix (1999) and Monsters, Inc. (2001).

5 It is not uncommon for individuals to suddenly get sleepy, fidgety, or brain-fog when reading, watching, or hearing something they are “not supposed to learn.” Such materials tend to center on information helpful to freeing them from manipulation by negative forces. I suspect that brain implants could accomplish this automatically by monitoring for keywords or key-thought-patterns and injecting an electrical or etheric impulse to disrupt the thinking process. Posthypnotic commands could do this as well.

6 The Love Bite (Lorgen, 1999, pp. 199-200)

7 Secret Don’t Tell (Emery, 1998) gives a comprehensive overview of mainstream knowledge on hypnotism, mind control, and posthypnotic programming. This mainstream knowledge only scratches the surface, however. Alien and military abductors may use more sophisticated techniques like detaching the soul from the body, virtual reality equipment directly linked with the mind, remote dream manipulation, gravitational pulse guns to induce trance states, sophisticated drugs that operate at the quantum level, and vocal hypnotic scripts generated by AI systems integrated with remote viewing networks to gauge the probability of success resulting from a particular command.
The Nature of Disinformation

Disinformation is the most potent tool for manipulating mass consciousness. While there is no shortage of innocent misinformation stemming from logical fallacies, wishful thinking, false assumptions, selective evidence, and outright ignorance, disinformation intentionally exploits these weaknesses to shape the beliefs and actions of targeted audiences.

Disinformation is especially successful when its core agenda is bundled in the sincere convictions of disseminators who have their own vested interests in believing and defending it. A cold and calculating intelligence may devise a disinformation package to be propagated through a naive individual who finds it so appealing to his ego identity and emotional security that he will do everything to defend it. This allows a small and unseen group of disinformers to work through a vast body of unsuspecting vectors who sincerely believe in what they are doing.

Disinformation also uses selective evidence to support false conclusions. Good reasoning may proceed from false premises, fallacious twists of logic are used, or reasoning is discouraged and the conclusion asked to be taken on either the emotional appeal or authority of its purported source. Disinformation has no problem throwing strategic gambits, revealing genuine but convenient truths to make its case if the payoff is bigger than the sacrifice.

Discerning Disinformation

Discerning disinformation is tricky business. It amounts to performing a mental biopsy on the pathological underpinnings of a suspect source. It helps to have a well-honed intuition that can detect pretense, after which critical thinking converges on the exact problem. Problems tend to be false assumptions, ignored counterexamples, logical fallacies, and ulterior motives.

More specifically, alien disinformation plays to these common psychological vulnerabilities: lazy thinking, ego insecurities and the desire to be special, naive optimism that leads good intentions down a dangerous path, greater respect for credibility and authority than personal discernment and intuition, wishful thinking, desperation for answers and consequent lowering of standards, wonderment at amazing but superficial appearances to the point of gullibility, and desire for escapism out of sheer boredom.
Since the goal is to influence opinion, the best disinformation is concise, slick, and persuasive. It maximizes credibility by taking whatever form of authority the target respects most and is careful to dispel suspicions that the source is doing it for fame or financial gain. It is false to assume that if someone risks publishing revelatory information without asking anything in return, he must be sincere; on the contrary, what disinformation asks for in return is belief in its half-truths.

The best disinformation so tidily packages its deceptions that the containing story can be impressively concise, charming, entertaining, and easy to follow. It goes beyond mere logical fallacies and employs hypnotic techniques to massage the targeted mind into accepting the payload. These manipulation tactics are nothing exotic. Psychological warfare specialists, street magicians, neurolinguistic programmers, and advertisers make regular use of them in their professions.

Disinformation must ideally exploit the deepest desires, insecurities, and blind spots of the target, which necessarily vary by audience type. The originators of disinformation therefore use different methods and sources to appeal to different audiences. In the case of individuals used as unwitting agents of deception, their selection depends on how easily their weaknesses allow them to be hooked into performing that function and how well their strengths are suited to playing on the weaknesses of the audience. In this way a chain of influence reaches the audience by way of an intermediary who has the added appeal of being skilled and respected.

Avenues of Disinformation

What follows is an exploration of several avenues for alien disinformation and why they are convenient and effective. This should indicate just how easily the fringe research community and general public can be misled by sources they trust if they fail to consider the possibilities discussed below. **NOTE: These avenues can also be outlets for truth, so my aim is not to universally discredit these sources, but rather point out their potential shortcomings.**

The Channeler

**Summary:** Channeling involves one or more individuals allowing themselves to be used by unseen intelligences who communicate information through them. This includes the use of Ouija boards, mediumistic trance states, automatic writing, and conscious verbalization of intuitive impressions. Pendulum dowsing, muscle testing, scrying, and crystal gazing may also allow such communication. The channeled sources may claim to be anything ranging from aliens to angels, deceased persons to demonic beings, famous individuals in history, time travelers, other dimensional entities, the subconscious, and impersonal archetypes.

**Strength of Source:** Discarnate entities, alien beings, and advanced human military factions can transmit verbal and visual information remotely, whether electromagnetically or telepathically. They also have limited ability to induce paranormal phenomena, predict the future, and arrange synchronistic events by which they can prove their existence and overwhelmingly awe the target into submission. This exploits the logical fallacy that truth of existence somehow equates to existence of truth, which ignores the possibility of real sources providing bogus information where it counts. These demonstrations of faux omniscience, omnipotence, and precognition rule out that the source is just a fabrication of the channeler, but do not prove that the source being channeled is necessarily being truthful.
Channeling also affords deceptive sources anonymity and freedom to fabricate an identity and backstory. Channeling is therefore highly customizable to the weaknesses of the targets. The same source can change identities repeatedly to whatever sounds most authoritative.

**Weakness of Vector:** Establishing and maintaining a connection requires mental dissociation so that the source can come through clearly without restriction by the conscious mind of the channeler. This amounts to a relinquishing of freewill, and a manipulative entity may abuse this offer by sinking roots into the mind of the channeler, deeper than it could otherwise. In worst cases this can lead to possession, where the channeler not only transmits disinformation during specified sessions, but becomes a walking extension of the negative entity, serving an agenda in broader ways. Conscious abandonment over the channeling process may also grow into habitual abandonment of discernment and critical thinking, whereby the channeler simply accepts and relays what is transmitted after having been won over with convenient but trivial truths.

**Strength of Vector:** Being just the messenger frees a channeler from having to personally defend the information received. The source is likewise freed from always having to back up its claims, relying instead on self-proclaimed authority and various specious excuses. Through channeling, disinformation is given unlimited creative latitude, taking bold and direct expressions since claims that are too far-fetched for other audiences will readily be accepted by channeling enthusiasts. If especially entertaining and fascinating, source and channeler rise to cult or celebrity status, which adds to the authority factor that overrides critical thinking.

**Weakness of Audience:** Since channeling is perceived by rationalists as a dubious means of investigation, it appeals more to people who pride themselves on being open minded and not fettered by the limitations of cold intellect. Yet there is a fine line between open mindedness and gullibility, and those who would replace rather than complement reason with intuition leave themselves vulnerable to logical sleights of hand, emotional manipulation, wishful thinking, and other forms of subjectivity. Channeled disinformation would play upon these weaknesses.

**Remote Viewer**

**Summary:** Remote viewing uses rigid protocols to psychically gather information about a target with minimal subjective bias. Several remote viewers may tune into the same target and receive similar impressions, which are then analyzed afterward to construct an accurate assessment of the target. The U.S. military is publicly known to have explored remote viewing as an intelligence gathering method. More recently, various researchers have used remote viewing to probe the nature of the alien presence.

**Strength of Source:** As in the case of channeling, alien and advanced human disinformers can transmit information remotely through natural or artificial telepathy. Remote viewers, even entire teams, are thus open to having their psychic line spliced by such disinformers and fed misleading impressions.

**Weakness of Vector:** The greatest weakness is assuming that remote viewing success is measured by its signal to noise ratio, which ignores the possibility of a strong but counterfeit signal. Even with subjectivity eliminated, what remains is no guarantee of being truthful.

**Strength of Vector:** Remote viewing has a reputation for being rigid, objective, and even scientific.
Some of its practitioners have worked for the military, others have respectable academic backgrounds. All this gives it an air of credibility and authority that can augment any disinformation disseminated through it.

Weakness of Audience: Remote viewing appeals to open minded individuals who value objectivity and scientific procedure. Although it is more hard-edged than channeling, when used for disinformation the apparent objectivity is just better window dressing for the same deception. That the public military has experimented with remote viewing and successfully gathered intelligence on targets in nations without psychic defenses does not mean remote viewing alien targets is equally reliable. Disinformation passed through remote viewers disseminates deceptive ideas under the guise of strict objectivity.

Insider / Whistleblower

Summary: Insiders are members of secret societies, military projects, or government agencies who are privy to non-public information. For various reasons, insiders may leak some of this information to the public. Often they do it anonymously, perhaps through third party contacts on the outside who can vouch for their identity but keep it confidential while relaying the information. They may also speak openly without hiding their identity, but then tend to be careful about not revealing more than they are allowed. Some self-claimed insiders are casually upfront and detailed, seemingly holding nothing back.

Strength of Source: Insiders work within highly controlled, compartmentalized, and monitored environments as demanded by the secret nature of their work. They are therefore in proximity to high level sources of disinformation who have immediate access to them, particularly sources stationed above them in the hierarchy. If the source is an advanced military faction, the covert nature of the military network allows personnel to be abducted and mind programmed as necessary to create unwitting disinformation vectors. Personnel may also be tested, monitored, and recruited into becoming skilled disinformation operatives, whether fully aware of their mission to deceive, or given a convincing cover story and some fake but noble sounding reason to leak “important” information to the public. Some may even be shown misleading evidence and documents and stealthily nudged into becoming whistleblowers, thereby spreading deception with full conviction that they are somehow undermining their superiors when, in actuality, they are doing the opposite.

Weakness of Vector: Insiders gain increasing levels of security clearance by demonstrating a need to know, passing tests of allegiance and usability, signing secrecy oaths, giving away personal rights, and agreeing ahead of time to the punishments for breaking these oaths. Secretive networks have numerous methods for ensuring that security stays intact including monetary incentives, blackmail, threats to livelihood, hypnotic mind control, and selecting only highly manageable and obedient candidates for recruitment. Personnel are only told what they need to know to do their jobs, which often includes false but plausible stories to compel their cooperation. Compartmentalization makes it difficult for an insider to compare notes with others to detect disinformation fed to him by superiors. Despite having secret knowledge, insiders are still woefully in the dark concerning information beyond their clearance level. Compartmentalization keeps the bigger picture out of sight, and without that context insiders may not always detect disinformation in what they have already been told.
**Strength of Vector:** Anyone who is verifiably on the “inside” is venerated for being in so privileged and qualified a position, and for being courageous and generous enough to risk leaking precious information to the public. This bestows upon their words great credence because what they say amounts to expert witness testimony, words by those who are positioned to know. Of course this appearance of authority creates the perfect vehicle for seeding disinformation. Secrecy oaths and national security laws are also good excuses for dodging certain inconvenient questions and adding an atmosphere of intrigue.

**Weakness of Audience:** Compartmentalization and secrecy laws prevent the public from more thoroughly investigating insider claims by barring them from accessing evidence under wraps, documents still classified, and witnesses unwilling to risk their lives. Much of what insiders say must be taken on their credibility. If they can prove their credentials, that impresses many, but insiders are secured an influential voice if their story is also conveniently corroborated by leaked documents and intriguing photos that pander to the audience’s assumptions, questions, and desperation for confirmation.

Audiences are guaranteed to be duped if they fail to rule out the possibility of the insider being a disinfomer regardless of his credentials, especially if his claims are supported by forged photos and documents supplied by the well-equipped and connected network sponsoring him. The best that audiences can do is look for errors and contradictions in his claims and, more importantly, make a probabilistic assessment of his integrity based on the angle behind his claims and whom it would benefit most.

**Public Official**

**Summary:** Public officials include elected or appointed members of political and religious institutions, those with special titles and credentials who are in respected positions of leadership.

**Strength of Source:** Disinformers hold the great advantage of influencing through a highly visible figurehead without themselves being seen. They can be among his personal advisors, programmed or recruited associates who are planted close to him to sway his beliefs and decisions, secret organizations from which he periodically receives instructions, or alien factions abducting and programming him into adopting their goals. These sources can easily blackmail the official, exploit his naiveté, offer incentives of money and power for obedience, and tell or show him whatever “truth” shocks him into cooperating.

**Weakness of Vector:** The official is foremost a public figure whose loss of reputation and popular support spells the end of his career. He can therefore be threatened with character assassination, real assassination, or bribed with promises of personal and institutional advancement and protection. Being a public official can be so time-consuming that time for personal independent research and thorough contemplation is limited, which may make him dependent on advisors for condensed briefings and recommendations. This makes for reliance on potential sources of disinformation and an overall lack of discernment concerning matters beyond his expertise. His prominence as a public figure may also make him too much of a liability to be given the real truth, so he may be barred from higher security clearances unless he has an absolute need to know. Unless he has intelligence, allegiance, and power that surpass his role as public official, he is expendable.

**Strength of Vector:** Officials are decision-makers, opinion leaders. If their reputation is intact, their
words hold sway over public opinion. They can influence public opinion to hijack democracy, advancing private agendas under the protection of majority vote. Officials can also invoke the power and reverence of the institutions they represent, like a church official declaring some political agenda as being in the will of God.

**Weakness of Audience:** The audience in this case is the general public, the least discerning audience of all. Typically speaking, the public has blind respect for authority, is easily impressed by credentials, and lacks the knowledge and context to properly evaluate what they are told — especially if they are told disinformation concerning fringe subjects like aliens. This is simply the fact of statistical averages. The mainstream public needs security, stability, and certainty, which authorities are obliged to provide, though not without political motivation. Should public officials reveal the existence of aliens with full sanctioning by their affiliated institutions, the shock to mass consciousness and ensuing clamor for answers would allow these officials to unload a well-received torrent of disinformation concerning alien motivations and identities.

**Academic**

*Summary:* Academics include credentialed doctors, scientists, professors, theologians, analysts, and other highly educated specialists whose research and presentations methods are formal, systematic, and sophisticated. Those involved in researching various facets of the alien phenomenon may have degrees useful to their facet of study. They typically cite other academics to boost their own credibility, drawing their conclusions by surveying the relevant literature and collating authoritative viewpoints into a generalized observation somewhat enhanced by their own original research.

*Strength of Source:* Since the intellectual capabilities and strategic value of an academic can be inferred without difficulty through his credentials, reputation, and publications, a broad pool of candidates may be monitored to select who is most qualified to be groomed into a disinformation vector. Academics who refuse to cooperate and become liabilities can be eliminated, either through murder or smearing of character.

Alien and military factions can also corrupt the relied-upon data pool by inserting decoy data, say through abductees programmed with screen memories that portray a false picture of alien motivations. In that case, without suspecting the possibility of deception, an academic will accept the decoy at face value and inject its contents into his works. Even if he suspects it, his suspicions cannot be voiced without risking his credibility by appearing paranoid.

*Weakness of Vector:* The need to preserve reputation and appear reasoned, cautious, and formal can lead to an agnostic timidity that keeps the academic from taking those creative leaps of thinking necessary to penetrate the depths of a mystery. It also discourages him from acknowledging sources of information that do not meet the standard of his peers despite containing critical pieces of the puzzle. Additionally, it is no secret that universities are as much indoctrination and filtering devices as they are educational institutions, and those who most successfully pass through that filter have demonstrated programmability and a willingness to obey the rules and pander to group consensus. Despite having a sharp intellect, the potential lack of individualism and astute intuition can make a renowned academic gullible to the grandest of deceptions, especially those endorsed by his respected peers and academic superiors.

*Strength of Vector:* The primary strength of an academic is his level of sophistication, in the sense of
being cultured and refined. However, sophistication does not necessarily mean discernment as it could equally mean being a sophisticated rationalizer and disinfomer, hence a master sophist. Further, academics are automatically endowed with credibility due to their credentials and often work in positions of influence and advisement. Credibility and sophistication together lead to effective debunking of truths and verification of lies. They can also function as role models in the fringe community, spreading an infectious attitude of myopic agnosticism to those most in need of the opposite.

**Weakness of Audience:** For some audiences, academics are epitomes of objectivity and respectability who are beyond reproach, especially groups of academics in agreement with each other. The most skeptical audiences will listen to academics more than other types of disinformation vectors. They may find the disinformation to be more plausible than the truth because at least it fits their unrealistic assumptions and comes from an assumedly incorruptible source. The job of an academic disinfomer would be to make an intricate case for a deceptive agenda while marginalizing contrary truths as not meeting the standards of plausibility and credibility.

**Abductee / Contactee**

**Summary:** Abductees and contactees are people who have had direct contact with alien beings. Abductees are taken from their familiar surroundings and brought into the abductor environment where they undergo various procedures. Contactees have conscious participation in the interaction and become spokespersons for their alien contacts. Not all contactees are necessarily abductees, nor are all abductees necessarily contactees, but the two categories overlap since contactees get abducted and abductees can be groomed into consciously facilitating an alien message.

**Strength of Source:** Abductors have direct access to the abductee in an environment they control. Various alien and military factions can create false memories, scan the mind and the body’s etheric vibrational signature to analyze weaknesses and biases, use posthypnotic mind programming techniques to install subconscious commands, employ telepathic or implant-generated persuasion, monitor their subjects from afar, stage false confirmation through garish coincidences, and construct exquisite lies and rationalizations. They can also scan the population to select those who are most suitable to their aims, employing logistical and hyperdimensional advantages to give customized attention.

**Weakness of Vector:** The greatest weakness of an abductee or contactee is knowing less about himself than what his contacts or abductors know. They have backdoor entrances to his mind and can perform manipulations that stealthily influence his thoughts and impulses. Unless he is aware of that possibility and guards against it, it is rather inevitable. Abductees and contactees may feel alienated from society due to having uncommon and unbelievable experiences, thus seeing themselves as different from others. If hitched to ego, this can degenerate into feelings of privilege, superiority, or specialness that serve as hook points for the abductors to compel allegiance. Their identity may become so heavily invested in being the contactee of a particular alien group that any suggestion of dishonest motivations by their alien contacts is subconsciously interpreted as an attack upon their very identity, which naturally provokes an irrational defense mechanism.

Some may simply give up, feeling overpowered by superior intelligences with superior technology,
and in a psychotic attempt to salvage the situation turn into willing and zealous cooperators per Stockholm Syndrome.

**Strength of Vector:** Real abductees and contactees exude plenty of sincerity and conviction in recounting their firsthand experiences with aliens. Their candor can be disarming to undiscerning audiences. Abductees who document their experiences may have audiovisual, medical, or testimonial evidence that they are indeed being abducted, and that alone piques people’s curiosity about what they learned in the presence of real aliens.

**Weakness of Audience:** Like in the case of channelers, contactees can become the center of personality cults, playing the role of intermediaries between the audience and their alien idols like a prophet or pontiff intermediating between worshippers and the divine. It is the abductee and contactee’s proximity and direct interaction with mysterious aliens that boosts the credibility of whatever disinformation is vectored through them.

The targeted audience consists of abductees searching for answers, researchers of the abduction phenomenon looking for inside information on alien motivations, and people wishing they themselves could be contacted by aliens. Disinformation appeals to their private longings and blind spots, taking what little they know toward false conclusions and satisfying their ego along the way.

**Hypnotist**

**Summary:** The hypnotist is trained to guide a client into achieving altered states of consciousness deep enough to access the subconscious. The hypnotic trance is one of suggestibility and dissociation. Abduction researchers commonly accept hypnosis as an investigative tool to help their subjects recover abduction memories made inaccessible by having been in an altered state of consciousness during the abduction, or by abductors installing screen memories and posthypnotic commands to forget. Hypnotized subjects can also be used for remote viewing, exploring past and future probable lives, and as passive instruments for channeling other beings.

**Strength of Source:** Alien and military factions can install screen memories with multiple fail-safe layers in abductees, stage misleading abduction scenarios, and jack into a hypnotized subject’s mind to speak through him while he is unconscious.

**Weakness of Vector:** Hypnotists may be in over their heads when dealing with disinformation sources coming through their clients. If they are unaware that screen memories can lurk beneath deeper screen memories, they may only penetrate the decoy screen and accept the next one as likely truth. Same with staged abductions, where what is recalled is indeed what was experienced, but the experience itself was staged for the abductee as a diversion. Furthermore, if the hypnotized person becomes an instrument through which a disinformer can directly speak, then the hypnotist is in live contact with someone or something that can play to his weaknesses.

**Strength of Vector:** The information retrievable through hypnosis is fascinating, entertaining, and sometimes verifiable. This gives it wide appeal and respect in the fringe research field. It may also be used by academics as a research supplement to expand their data pool. Like in the case of channeling, because what is said cannot always be verified, disinformation can be as creative and fantastic as desired.

**Weakness of Audience:** Disinformation rides the assumption that what is retrieved through hypnosis,
if not fabricated by the subject or induced by the hypnotist through leading questions, is very likely the truth. Again, this is the fallacy “if not subjective and false, then objective and true,” which ignores the possibility of objective deception. In ordinary cases where no deceptive intentions are involved, hypnosis can indeed be reliable, but the trust and respect hypnosis earns through reliable cases should not be blindly transferred to potentially disinformative cases.

Direct Messages

Summary: Messages to the public may appear to come directly from aliens without an intermediary. This includes radio signals from space, hijacked television transmissions, crop circles, and anonymously disseminated texts written from their point of view.

Strength of Source: Any alien or military group with sufficiently advanced technology can create crop circles, take over television signals, broadcast radio signals from space, and use anonymous human proxies to distribute carefully written messages to the world. Their abilities greatly exceed what the casual hoaxer can pull off, which they use to their advantage to make the messages seem beyond hoaxability and thus authentic.

Weakness of Audience: If the audience believes the message really comes from aliens, they will be intrigued and take the message as a sincere declaration of alien intentions. The message may take an authoritative tone, take the form of responses to messages we ourselves have sent into space, appeal to ethical memes like concerns over global warming, overpopulation, or government corruption, tantalize the intellect with feigned crypticism, or prime the audience for future deceptions by giving key future dates and prophecies. The audience must be convinced aliens are sending urgent messages to the world so that the content of the message influences their opinion about the nature of these aliens and what must be done. Disinformation sent by way of direct messages aim to distort public awareness of alien motivations and influence the audience into supporting certain actions and values that are beneficial to an agenda.

Analysis

As can be seen, disinformation uses a variety of methods to target a variety of audiences:

- The general public who would prefer stability and security over disquieting truths
- Spiritual and New Age types who succumb to wishful thinking and emotionalism
- Intellectuals whose limited reasoning follows from flawed premises
- Countercultures whose fascination with the bizarre outweighs their interest in truth
- Factualists who only accept evidence fitting their subjective standards of credibility
- Political activists who would support false solutions to combat true injustices
- UFO buffs who hungrily swallow crumbs of disinformation for its sensational nature
- Abductees whose identities are invested in being liaisons between humans and aliens

Methods include:

- Appealing to blind respect for authority
- Appealing to false and limiting assumptions
- Appealing to emotional biases
- Appealing to a need for safety, security, and certainty
• Appealing to the ego’s desire for identity and specialness
• Appealing to boredom through tantalizing and entertaining stories
• Appealing to skepticism to ridicule the truth
• Appealing to mental lassitude by presenting an unnecessarily simplistic picture
• Offering a false outlet for good intentions
• Using logical sleights of hand
• Forcing a choice between two equally false opposites
• Providing misleading evidence
• Staging artificial corroboration through seemingly independent sources

How can one tell if a source is peddling disinformation and not just innocently expressing a differing opinion? It is true that people can unwittingly pass on half-truths after having bought into them, but the question concerns the ultimate source of those ideas. The answer is that the intentionality behind disinformation gives its flaws a pointed direction. In other words, the flaws are too clever and directional to be unintentional, bearing the signature of crafty intelligence beneath its projected guise of innocence.

Leaderless Conspiracy
At the same time, it must be emphasized that an agenda can be carried out through seemingly opposing elements, whereby the illusion of outward disunity and independence cloaks the underlying order.

Therefore the conspiracy isn’t as organized as one would think because those beneath the capstone of the pyramid of control may seemingly act on their own. They may be at odds with each other, mutually suspicious or contemptuous, independently carrying out their own agendas and acting on unique ideologies. But like swimmers drifting down a river together despite moving independently relative to each other, these vectors may oppose and cancel each other in the superficial sense while still sharing a common direction that advances the highest unseen agenda.

There is no need for coordination among lower elements of a conspiracy if a broad range of carefully designed causes initiated earlier produce cascading effects that cleverly converge at the right time. For human conspirators this would require incredible foresight, but foresight and hindsight are interchangeable for interdimensional forces operating outside linear time who have no problem scanning the timeline for the right points to target.

So while different streams of disinformation and misinformation appear to contradict each other in the details, it is their common direction and combined synergy that matter. One must examine the ultimate consequences to discern the ultimate motives. This I will do in the next part by providing and analyzing numerous examples of alien disinformation.

Continue to Part 4 »

Notes
1 For example, the pirate television transmission by Vrillon in 1977, the message Do You Wish That We Show Up? disseminated on the internet in 2003, and the Crabwood (August 2002) and
Deciphering the Core Deception

The greatest strength of disinformation is also its greatest weakness. That it can reach so many means it cannot reach everyone. Since its audience has limited intelligence and attention span, the message must be dumbed down to meet its mark. That makes it conspicuous to anyone with a more discerning eye. For a message to be so clever as to deceive even the most discerning, it would necessarily be so subtle and complex as to fly right over the heads of its intended audience. Disinformation packaged for a popular alternative radio show, for example, would capture the minds of a good majority of the audience, but it would be so simplistic that listeners in the discerning minority would roll their eyes. Good disinformation must be sufficiently sophisticated to minimize into irrelevance the discerning minority, while keeping it simple enough to appeal to the required majority.

Disinformation originates with intent to advance an agenda, so it can be reverse-engineered to reveal that agenda. By analyzing enough alien disinformation one can logically deduce the alien agenda. Alternatively, one can hypothesize what the agenda might be and then check whether different sources bearing the traits of disinformation are consistent with that hypothesis.

In my decades of studying the subject, what emerged was a distinct pattern of disinformation woven throughout numerous sources ranging from the academic to mystical publications. For convenience I will call this pattern the “Core Deception.” It consists of half-truths split up among seemingly independent sources but sharing a common direction of persuasion. Often the same falsehoods were framed differently to appeal to certain audiences.

The “Core Deception” contains the following key elements:

- Encouraging suspension of discernment
- Misapplying spiritual principles
- Spinning the unavoidable facts
• Framing alien interference in divine light or destiny
• Threatening with consequences of not cooperating
• Enticing through promises and rewards
• Taking naive assumptions toward false conclusions
• Manipulating emotions through euphemisms and dysphemisms
• Debasing humanity
• Scapegoating corrupt human leadership
• Securing amnesty for corrupt human leadership
• Glorifying the alien image and appealing to sympathy
• Coercing individual and collective consent
• Demanding unification and integration of humans with aliens
• Limiting awareness of hyperdimensional reality
• Offering false dichotomies through role swapping

What follows is a deeper exploration of these elements. Real examples are paraphrased from the literature together with my commentary and analysis. Remember that these examples exist out there right now and are actively shaping public opinion toward holding a certain view of the alien presence. Compare the picture pushed by the Core Deception to the one being presented in this book and decide for yourself which is more comprehensive, true to experience, logical, and realistic.

[If you are short on time, you may skip to Part 5]

Elements of the Core Deception

1. Encouraging suspension of discernment

We cannot judge aliens as bad if we ourselves have problems.

This statement portrays discernment as a hypocritical act of moral judgment, then discourages discernment by suggesting we should avoid hypocrisy by not pointing fingers in the first place. It presents a false choice between scrutinizing either aliens or humans while ignoring the other. Instead, we need to objectively examine both for problems. Maybe some human problems are related to alien ones, as when aliens are involved in unethical behavioral modification of human targets.

It would be hypocritical to cry foul about what negative aliens do to humans since humans themselves eat, abuse, and experiment upon animals.

As mentioned, the injustices committed by both humans and aliens should be brought to light, but let’s keep in mind that one wrong does not justify another, nor does the elimination of one wrong eliminate another. Even if all humans were to become vegans, the purported trend of certain aliens eating humans would continue. It is not just rapists who are abducted and raped, or meat lovers who are taken and eaten, or cattle ranchers who make up the population of implanted and domesticated abductees. It is more a case of animal abuse and experimentation being a microcosmic reflection of a greater negative dynamic that certain aliens have taken to a high art. When one looks at who is committing the greater atrocities upon animals, one sees that these so-called “humans” have lost all
touch with their humanity and have aligned with something subhuman or demonic, and the same
can be said of aliens who do it to humans. Neither should be beyond reproach due to the actions of
the other.

We should not think about negative aliens because what we focus upon, we energize and
attract.

This is a misapplication of the Law of Attraction. While we do attract what we become obsessed
with or emotionally invested in, the converse is not true that we repel what we ignore. While
ignoring something removes the force of attraction, it can still manifest by chance or through its
own freewill. What really repels and blocks is awareness, preventive action, and intentions and
requests for protection. Therefore this statement is totally backwards in advocating ignorance as the
solution. Ignorance merely leaves the door wide open.

We cannot understand the motivation of aliens because they are so much more advanced
than we are.

The humanoids we are dealing with are advanced but similar enough that, through diligent research,
personal experience, and spiritual intelligence we can understand enough of their motivations to
detect benevolence or insincerity. Those who assume limits for human understanding have failed to
probe those limits themselves and therefore have no right making such claims, and even if they
probed and hit a brick wall, others may still blast right through it.

We do not know enough, so we should keep it simple and stick to a black/white view.

This recommends ignorance in the name of practicality and objectivity, implying that we ought to
just move forward using what we have regarding the alien presence and keep it simple. What a
defeatist perspective. Instead of settling for a simplistic and erroneous picture, what should be done
is to broaden the scope of research and apply some critical thinking to keep improving the accuracy
of the picture.

We cannot determine alien intentions until after working with them long enough to see
what they have to offer, anything sooner is jumping to conclusions.

The more we learn about the alien presence and their possible motivations beforehand from the
mountains of evidence and research already available, the more discerning and astutely perceptive
we will be when it comes time for contact and negotiations. In other words, we will more quickly
discern alien intentions if coming to the table prepared, perhaps quick enough to avert disastrous
commitments. This statement instead encourages the postponement of judgment until long after
numerous agreements and relations with alien factions have already been established, which may be
too late if the alien faction in question is particularly persuasive and invasive.

Our lack of understanding is what leads to misperceiving alien methods as being hostile.
We are like scared animals resisting the help of a kind veterinarian. Aliens are here to
 teach us, and our irrational fear of them is what keeps us from learning.

There is a difference between a blind fear reaction to something unknown, and the discovery of
alien skulduggery after years of research. Lack of understanding can just as easily lead to perceiving
insincere forces as benevolent, while proper understanding can peel away the mask and reveals the
deceptive dynamics beneath. There is too much research, abductee testimony, and historical evidence indicating hostile intentions among some alien factions. To rationalize them all away as mere fear reactions and misunderstandings is naive and dishonest to the extreme.

The greatest barriers produce the greatest rewards, therefore we need to move through our fear of aliens and accept our partnership with them to reap the rewards.

This is another example of passing wise prudence off as ignorant fear. While there are people who fear the unknown and thus fear all aliens inclusively, there are others who have enough awareness of negative alien factions to likewise be cautious, though with eyes open instead of closed. The challenge humanity faces is not only overcoming fear of the unknown, but lack of discernment concerning the unknown once it breaches the walls consensus reality.

To anticipate the arrival of aliens as being anything other than a positive blessing is giving into primitive fear-centers of your brain instead of the more evolved parts.

Again this tries to pass off educated cautionary perspectives as blind fear reactions. It plays on the politically correct, materialistic, self-deprecating meme that humans are more primitive than they truly are. While many humans are indeed brutish by alien standards, it is underhanded to project this upon others who are mature, aware, discerning, and have done the research, gone through the experiences, and/or incarnated with uncommon knowledge concerning the alien presence.

Focusing on negative aliens distracts us from moving forward with the majority of aliens who are positive.

Being aware of negative aliens, their characteristics, tactics, and motivations is what allows us to distinguish between genuinely positive aliens and those who merely pretend to be positive. In fact, positive alien factions may require a minimum standard of discernment in their potential contacts, and knowing how to discern between them and impostors may be the awaited proof of maturity and worthiness of contact. This doesn’t mean one should become obsessed with negative potentials to the exclusion of positive, nor the other way around, rather one should strive for balance between both.

There is no right or wrong, good or bad, when it comes to aliens because these are labels stemming from our own judgmental attitudes.

This kind of moral relativism ensures that, with zero discernment, humanity would hand the reigns of its destiny over to the first alien faction to volunteer itself as our surrogate conscience. Instead of rejecting judgment, we ought to hone it. As long as positive versus negative are defined logically, intuitively, and discerningly, valid judgments can be made without falling into the errors of emotional bias, blind dogma, or backward tradition. Since humanity will face the consequences of its decisions, it alone must make those decisions according to its highest system of standards in order to grow from the experience and preserve self-determination.

Alien factions have their own ideologies, some meeting the standards established by mankind, others not. This separates alien factions out into those who respect mankind’s decisions, and those who oppose or undermine. Therefore even if all judgment were subjective and viewpoints relative, it is still the responsibility of all individuals to make distinctions between different alien motivations.
2. Misapplying spiritual principles

We are all One, all fragments of God on the path to self-realization and merger with God. There can be no such thing as an alien invasion. For them to invade us is as impossible as us invading ourselves, because aliens are us, and we are them.

Creation is not just an amorphous blob of homogenous unity, but a unified diversity. Individual minds are cut from the same cloth of consciousness, but since each mind is endowed with freewill, its choices may run into conflict with the choices of others. This is what breeds competition or cooperation. A lion and gazelle may be “One” in the absolute sense, but that has no bearing on whether the lion can or cannot capture and kill the gazelle. Likewise, the freewill of hostile aliens factions and humans may be in conflict with each other, where one ultimately wins out; this neither invalidates, nor is invalidated by, the fact that both aliens and humans are manifestations of the same primordial consciousness underlying Creation.

You are the creator of your experience, therefore you cannot be a victim, and therefore aliens cannot be abusers.

This argument hinges on an erroneous, oversimplified, and overextended picture of how individual consciousness is entangled with personal experiential reality. Quantum physics supports the idea that observed reality is shaped by the consciousness of the observer, but there are overlooked subtleties and limitations to this interaction. Even though we create our experiential reality by choosing at certain points, we do not create it completely enough to eliminate all possibility of freewill violation, abuse, or victimization. We are often overridden by the causal consequences of prior choices made by ourselves and others who are mutually entangled with our reality.

There is also a difference between consenting to risk and consenting to some particular manifestation of that risk. For example, every time you drive, you accept the risk of an accident without choosing to have an accident per se. Agreeing to face the risk of freewill violation by choosing to enter into a reality where that possibility exists does not translate into consenting to the violation when it tries to occur. So freewill violations can still take place in environments that one has freely chosen to enter.

When we fear aliens, we are really fearing the part of ourselves that they represent, and we represent the part of themselves that they lack. Therefore we need each other as mirrors to learn and grow into our full potential.

For this argument to work, the parts of ourselves that aliens represent must be parts we fear irrationally. Then it would follow that accepting and integrating these parts toward greater psychological completion reflects over into accepting and integrating with aliens to become complete as a civilization. But what if the aliens of concern represent the psychopathic, parasitic, predatory parts of ourselves that we have good reason to overcome? Then instead of accepting both, we would need to acknowledge and overcome both, and in doing so we jettison the inner and outer dross and grow into our full potential. The question is whether to integrate or overcome, and the answer depends on the particular motives and characteristics of an alien faction and whether what they represent is healthy and progressive or entropic and dysfunctional.
What you resist persists. The more allowance you give to aliens, the less unnecessary pain, resistance, and fear persists in the process and the more it becomes an exciting journey of joy and discovery.

It is true that resisting good and necessary experiences creates friction and pain, but the statement falsely assumes that alien abductions are good and necessary, or falsely implies that the pain and suffering associated with abductions is proof that a positive experience is being unreasonably resisted. Whether the experience is positive or negative, cooperating will indeed reduce or eliminate the suffering, but with two totally different outcomes. The first leads to genuine growth, the second to subjugation under the illusion of growth. The argument attempts to obscure this difference. The proper way to remove suffering associated with a negative experience is to end the experience. Rather than capitulating, one needs to prevail over it, especially if there is choice in the matter. If people didn’t have the choice, their cooperation would not be so desperately solicited.

3. Spinning the unavoidable facts

Most aliens are benevolent. Only a small minority of aliens are devious, but they are the ones who make the news so it falsely seems like all aliens are that way. There is only a very small renegade faction of aliens, and the rest mean us no harm.

This attempts to marginalize negative alien activities by pinning them on an insignificant minority of renegade or devious aliens with the goal of keeping the overwhelming majority free from suspicion. Rather than being the exception, however, negative alien encounters that “make the news” are only the tip of the iceberg. They are incidences that have leaked out through cracks in the wall of secrecy. While benevolent aliens exist and may number in the majority, it would be erroneous to conclude that the majority of human-alien interactions like abductions are therefore benevolent as well. The abduction program may be the characteristic modus operandi of manipulative aliens, meaning that benevolent aliens would have little or no involvement in typical alien abductions. Therefore what the public knows of aliens through abduction accounts should not be falsely credited to benevolent aliens despite them possibly being in the majority. Also, the phenomenon of cloaked aliens carrying out surreptitious monitoring, influencing, and energy harvesting shows that even if they are small in number, negative aliens can have quite a pervasive presence.

Aliens monitor people, but only to catch up on what their human friends have been up to.

Very poor attempt to spin the widespread problem of abductees being implanted for remote monitoring and influencing purposes. The fact that it had to be spun at all indicates implantation is happening and that there is concern over people becoming suspicious of the phenomenon. Observant abductees who have implants know from personal experience that their function is not simply to monitor and record. Depending on the type, implants can also influence emotions, alter hormone production, create disorientation to interrupt forbidden lines of thinking, induce sudden drowsiness, create paralysis, manipulate dreams, simulate schizophrenia, insert thoughts, and transmit voices and images.

If you hear reports of negative abductions, do not be alarmed because you are safe, just as you continue to be safe despite hearing of the occasional crime happening in your
Abductees who learn too much about the real nature of abductions become concerned, uncooperative, and suspicious of their abductors. This can be deterred if negative abductions are framed as being too distant a phenomenon to be concerned with. If the abductee believes that reports of negative abductions have no bearing on his own experiences, then he will feel safe and continue cooperating. Negative aliens are very concerned with their public image because they use it to leverage desired behaviors out of misguided targets, so whatever perception tarnishes that image must be quarantined and rendered inert.

Some aliens, in having little understanding of emotion or individuality, may rough handle people out of sheer incompetence and lack of finesse.

That may be true in some cases, but not all negative abductions are solely characterized by painful procedures that can be explained away as the products of incompetence. Mind programming, torture, rape, and energy harvesting are not mistakes, but intentional acts.

Greys have evolved such large heads because their society placed high emphasis on intellect. They clone because the larger heads would not fit through the birth canal. Cloning reduced variation between individuals, which is why they tend to look alike. When they moved underground to survive inhospitable surface conditions, their bodies became smaller to make better use of limited space. To compensate for the lack of natural sunlight, the pupil of their eyes evolved into eventually covering the entire eye surface.

This is an example of taking what the public assumes about Greys and incorporating it into a plausible but misleading story. The goal here is to present Greys as their own sentient civilization who suffered a cataclysm and after lengthy adaptation evolved into their current odd form. The above story is patently false; their signature black eyes are not giant pupils, but dark coverings over either a reptilian-like eye or a camera-like sensor depending on the type of Grey. If their black eyes were pupils overgrown to capture more light, the abduction environment wouldn’t be so brightly lit and the light would illuminate the back of their retinas making their eyes anything but black. Rather than being a civilization unto themselves, Greys are more likely artificial entities grown in tanks to become worker drones for other aliens.

Greys need our genetics to restore what was lost through generations of cloning. Greys use probes and implants to sample our neurochemicals in hopes of simulating these themselves, so that they may once again feel emotion.

No other disinformative meme has gained more traction than this one. It seemingly justifies the entire abduction program and its harvesting of human biological materials. It paints Greys as a dying race needing our sympathy and cooperation, but they are more likely to be manufactured entities. They are disposable puppets equipped with a fabricated back-story to manipulate public perception of the alien presence. Notice how their back-story uses all the scientific buzzwords defining our modern culture without ever overstepping the boundaries of our culture. Pollution, radiation, war, evolution, genetic engineering, cloning — all entertaining, recognizable, and palatable to the public. Were the story instead to involve interdimensional biological automatons grown in time-accelerated growing tanks from recycled human and cattle parts and fluids, that
would be too uncomfortable for most people.

Mankind keeps ignoring the alien presence, driving aliens into resorting to fear tactics to cut through our ignorance and help us finally acknowledge them.

This rationalization presents negative aliens as ignored children so desperate for attention they turn delinquent. Applying child psychology to advanced aliens is naive at best, although it does serve the strategy of tugging on the heart strings since it paints aliens as innocent, desperate, suffering, and crying for attention. Cattle mutilations would be an example of this supposed delinquency. Humans give aliens no recognition, so they slice up some cows to make us take notice. Sounds fine in theory, but the parts removed during cattle mutilations are strategically selected toward extracting valuable substances and building artificial humanoids. Not to mention, if aliens wanted to catch our attention they could do better and fly low over major cities during daytime than hurting random cows.

Isolated incidences of terrorizing abductions exist, and we must distinguish between these and the majority of abductions that are by benevolent Greys.

By now there is enough evidence of negative abductions that it can no longer be suppressed. Instead, here it is being diverted, rationalized, and spun toward preserving the agenda at all costs. Since the exact percentage of negative abductions is unknown, there is room to arbitrarily make up a percentage and have it appear that a good portion is supposedly by benevolent Greys. However, those who forward the idea of benevolent Greys fail to address the possibility of screen memories that paint over negative abductions with the illusion of positive ones. These screen memories are well within standard operating procedures for negative aliens. Without that being taken into account, it cannot be said with confidence what portion of Grey abductions are positive.

Aliens operate in stealthy ways to bypass our conscious denial of them, but operate in our world nonetheless because subconsciously we have invited them.

The implication is that they operate stealthily only to accommodate our conscious denial, while our genuine desire to invite them lays buried in the subconscious. This rationalizes away the stealthy nature of the alien presence by putting blame on humanity for being willfully ignorant of their inner spiritual longing for contact. Concerning the negative alien agenda, the statement would be more accurate if turned around: “Aliens depend on our lack of conscious awareness to operate in stealthy ways, and use our subconscious vulnerabilities as back doors to gain deeper access to our world.”

Nosebleeds by abductees are simply psychosomatic reactions to buried abduction memories trying to surface.

Nosebleeds correlate with abduction activity, that much is true, but rather than admitting this is caused by brain implantation through the nose, which sounds painful and disturbing, the correlation is explained away as a psychosomatic manifestation of memories trying to break through the barrier of denial, that it’s therefore a good thing that these memories are finally coming through. Well, abduction memories are suppressed by design to cover up what really happened and shelter the abductee’s fragile psyche against remembering overwhelmingly frightening and traumatic experiences. These memories are not meant to surface, unless they are decoy or screen memories to inject false data into the body of abduction research literature.
Paralysis during abductions is done through remote electrical stimulation of the brain and has a positive rejuvenating side effect on the person being paralyzed.

Paralysis is another feature that cannot be dismissed because so many abductees report it, therefore it must be spun. Here the spin is that it has a therapeutic and rejuvenating effect on the body, that we should therefore look forward to getting paralyzed since it boosts our health and vitality. No comment necessary.

When aliens show abductees traumatic visions of holocaust, death, and planetary destruction, it is merely to induce an emotional reaction and the production of neurochemicals that Greys wish to study.

The best way this can be spun is to frame it as an innocent pursuit of scientific curiosity. This simplistic explanation does not match the sophisticated, motive-driven, and self-serving nature of the alien factions involved in that kind of procedure. There are several better explanations.

The first is that the procedure is yet another form of energy harvesting through the induction of fear and terror. It does not involve tubes or needles being inserted into the brain, so it is not to harvest physical neurochemicals, but the emotional energy emitted can be tapped without need for that.

Second, it may be a form of doom programming, to indoctrinate abductees with expectation and trepidation over the plight humanity faces and to therefore make them more serious and dedicated to cooperating with aliens to supposedly help save the world.

Third, it may be an attempt toward triggering and thereby revealing hidden programs in the abductee that are a threat to the alien agenda, programs of a pre-incarnative kind either pertaining to his or her spiritual mission on earth during the end times, or missions programmed into him by competing alien factions who desire these programs to remain inactive until earth undergoes apocalyptic events. By extracting this information, aliens performing this procedure gain vital intelligence that can help them preempt the opposing agenda.

4. Framing alien interference in divine light or destiny

It is our divine mission to work with the Greys, to allow our genetics to be infused into theirs and allow them to regain their emotional flexibility. They need this to help them merge with God. It is the spiritual and genetic union of humans and Greys that will preserve the future of both.

People defer to a greater purpose or higher power more often due to blind faith, programming, and emotionalism than reason and experience. Deep down, humans know that there is a higher purpose, but through lack of awareness such spiritual impulses are easily diverted toward anti-spiritual results. Notice here that everything but the end result is seemingly positive: regaining of emotions, divine mission, merger with God, spiritual union, preserve our future, and so on. The result of genetic union, however, is the further lock-down of the human soul matrix through the infusion of cybernetic genetics. Think of how much Greys lack freedom, individuality, self-determination, compassion, and any trace of higher spiritual traits, and how easily they are programmable and manipulable through telepathic interface, and you will see the direction in which humanity will be modified through genetic union with Greys.

5. Threatening with consequences of not cooperating
We cannot defeat the renegade reptilians alone since they will ignore our authority and have greater technology. Thus we need outside help. Reptilians won’t leave without a fight and Greys are our only hope.

If the problem were only solvable through physical battle, then humans are completely outgunned. Even so, allying with the wrong alien faction would cause further problems. The Greys don’t have a good track record of honesty or sincerity and are likely Trojan horses built by the same threat. There are other factions, positive Nordic types for instance, who would make better allies, although they would probably offer nonphysical assistance instead of military intervention. Which is all right because the solution out of this mess is metaphysical more than physical. The brute physical methods of resistance are essentially futile anyway. A choice will be offered to stay in that box and ally with Greys, or step outside and align with positive transcendent forces offering a more creative approach founded on spiritually intelligent principles.

Our earth-based technologies are insufficient to help us overcome our energy, food, and climate crises. We need alien technology to survive.

Why these technologies are not being used is not due to human incompetence or stupidity, but suppression of extraordinary talent and ingenuity by human and alien forces with vested interests in maintaining the status quo. Fringe technologies may be suppressed to build up exactly this condition of desperation in order for the suppressors to offer themselves as the solution. For example, by addicting the world to oil and preventing something as simple as the mass manufacture of efficient and affordable electric cars, an oil crises can bring the world to its knees, leaving people immobilized, starving, and desperate to give up anything including their freedom to forces that offer to ameliorate their suffering. We have the technology already, and anyone familiar with fringe science or black technology knows how carefully these are kept from the public. The inadequacies of our mainstream technology are entirely manufactured.

6. Enticing through promises and rewards

Aliens can give you gifts of clairvoyance, healing powers, and other paranormal feats if you cooperate with them.

These powers are dangled as incentives for submission and proof of alien benevolence. After all, it would seem that being gifted with healing and psychic powers must be a good thing. While paranormal abilities may develop during spiritual training, especially when training under the guidance of genuinely positive entities, they can also be induced or taught for strategic purposes by self-serving forces. Therefore psychic and healing powers alone say nothing about the intent toward which these are given, taught, or used. It is no loss to the alien agenda if an abductionee can now heal a few people or predict their future, and it instead serves the agenda by polishing its image and encouraging others to cooperate. These are trivial trinkets given in exchange for obedience. Notice that negative alien factions, including those masquerading as positive, never gift their abductionees genuine freedom, accurate awareness, or practical discernment.

Alien technology can beam earth with special energies to help enhance our intuition and interdimensional abilities.

This is another example of aliens attempting to hijack or take credit for a natural spiritual process.
In occultism, there is the proper way of spiritually developing through one’s own strength and initiative under the advisement of a more developed individual, and another way of cheating and gaining powers by entering into symbiosis with a self-serving individual or entity who lends that power in exchange for soul energy and servitude. The latter is the path of dark occultism or black magic. This distinction applies to alien interactions as well. Enhancement of intuition and interdimensional abilities is a natural and destined part of future human evolution, but if an alien faction can intercede in the process and pose as its sole provider, then humanity will abandon the proper path of spiritual development and follow the black path to acquire these abilities at the expense of freedom.

Aliens will help transform mankind through new technologies that are in harmony with the earth, that will banish all disease and poverty, injustice, and want.

The question is under what conditions these technologies will be provided, and toward what ends. If the technology is leased rather than taught, humans will be forced to conform to alien demands to avoid suffering the revocation of that technology. If the providers are less than sincere, this gives them powerful leverage to do with us as they please. Benevolent aliens would advance our technology only if accompanied and earned by spiritual and ethical advancement on our part. We would thereby preserve our self-determination and leave them free of having to constantly supervise us. Aliens who wish to interfere in our affairs and take control would instead use promises of technology as a bargaining chip and means of inducing addiction and dependence.

7. Taking naive assumptions toward false conclusions

Aliens advocate peace and loving your neighbor, and that does not fit the characteristic of brainwashing. Those who advocate peace, brotherly love, generosity, altruism, and oneness are necessarily positive.

The goal of all tyranny is to impose peace and order through the annihilation of opposition, which includes the eradication of true individuality and independent thinking. Within a completed totalitarian state, ideals like peace, brotherly love, generosity, altruism, and oneness are encouraged as long as they serve the ends of the state. These are beneficial for collectivism, positive means toward negative ends. Therefore they are not necessarily proof of benevolence. Additionally, no manipulative alien would tarnish its image or show its true colors by advocating violence and hatred against neighbors; words here are not as important as actions and underlying intent. Not that these positive ideals must be avoided, rather they must be accompanied by additional qualities like discernment and independence, otherwise they become means of pacification and tranquilization.

Aliens are not hostile because if they were, they would have wiped us out already, or could do so in a matter of minutes. No outward sign of hostility indicates benevolence.

Hostility takes more sophisticated forms than just violence. If aliens really wanted to engage in a violent takeover of earth, they wouldn’t be shaping public perception through disinformation and the grooming of key opinion leaders, nor would they be engaging in abductions, mind programming, and implantation. The fact they are performing these delicate manipulations suggests their hostility is covert. Having us enslave ourselves and hand over the reins would be the most efficient and self-sustaining form of conquest. Subduing a civilization through sheer force sows the seeds of resistance in the embittered population and is logistically prohibitive, while winning their
minds, hearts, and souls through psychological and spiritual warfare is the way to create a prison without walls. It is the way to create slaves who desire their servitude and suppress resistors for being enemies of progress. The agenda therefore depends heavily on disinformation, and judging by the level of disinformation out there the agenda is moving right along.

It takes a strong connection with the Creator to manipulate spacetime, therefore any aliens here on earth capable of manipulating spacetime must be positive.

Manipulating spacetime is not that simple. First, technology alone can engineer spacetime to a great extent. Through special technology, negative beings can go quite far in manipulating spacetime. Second, negative beings can still develop a strong connection with the demiurgic aspect of Creation responsible for the material world, and through this perform seemingly magical feats. Advanced initiates and masters of dark occultism have this ability, though their alien superiors have refined it into a complete science. Third, the only advantage positive beings have is in their connection to the higher divine aspect of Creation, which is superior to the demiurgic aspect, allowing them access to a broader range of probable realities and spacetime configurations. And fourth, negative beings can still gain illegal access to this broader range of manipulations if they steal and abuse technology built and tuned by positive beings, or if they influence others with special access into doing their bidding. Therefore merely being able to manipulate spacetime is no proof of positivity.

Any race advanced enough to get here must also have outgrown its destructive tendencies.

The logic is that planetary civilizations who don’t overcome their destructive ways end up destroying themselves through war and resource depletion before they ever become space faring. It takes planetary unity and a pooling of efforts to reach out and begin exploring other worlds, therefore it is assumed only civilizations that have adopted holistic and healthy ways can evolve long enough to leave their worlds and travel to earth. In truth, the positive path of enlightenment, peace, and harmony is not the only way to achieve planetary unity. Civilizations can also unite after being conquered from within by negative elements using cunning strategy, psychological warfare, infiltration, and subversion to establish a global totalitarian empire. If done carefully enough, they can do this without ever having to resort to mutually destructive physical warfare. Also, even if a benign civilization begins exploring and colonizing other worlds, it is possible that internal disagreements cause factions to split off and take their technological capabilities toward less benevolent ends. For all these reasons, space faring negative civilizations are perfectly possible.

There is a protective quarantine around earth and no aliens with ill intent can get through.

Negative alien factions do exist and are operational in the world. If there were a quarantine, it must have been put into place with negative alien factions already present on earth, sealing them in, else the quarantine is conditional and allows their entrance only under special circumstances. One way or another, saying a quarantine is preventing negative aliens from existing here simply goes against experiential evidence and research.

The rewards of cooperation with aliens far outweigh the danger of deception. We should therefore not frighten them away with displays of suspicion, but welcome them openly or else miss our chance to reap the benefits of contact.
Welcoming without discernment ensures that the risk of enslavement is greater than the potential reward for cooperation. A truly wise and benevolent alien faction would not desire that we be blindly trusting toward them before establishing relations. Nor would they be disappointed in us taking a discerning approach since if they are sincere and honorable they will pass the tests of discernment. Cooperating with less scrupulous factions leaves too much room for bait and switch tactics. Our approach should not be having to choose between total paranoia or total gullible acceptance, but discerning between forces who deserve suspicion and those who have proven their integrity.

8. Manipulating emotions through euphemisms and dysphemisms

Aliens are not intruders, but “visitors” or “guests” because we have invited them.

There is good reason to believe some aliens are indeed guests or visitors, but here these terms are being misapplied to the wrong aliens, namely the Greys and others involved in alien abductions. If one wants to choose a term other than intruder without sacrificing accuracy, the term solicitors or subverters would suffice because a large part of their efforts goes toward gaining permission, invitation, and cooperation to worm their way deeper into the targeted world. In action they are stalkers, solicitors, and manipulators rather than outright intruders, but in intention they are nothing less than intruders and interventionists. If we have invited them, it is only because we were unaware of what that entailed, and after becoming aware we would have every reason to revoke the invitation.

Saying that aliens are negative is a symptom of cultural ignorance, bigotry, and fear.

This argument hinges on a classic logical fallacy. Just because cultural ignorance, bigotry, and fear can lead to saying that aliens are negative, that does not mean saying aliens are negative is necessarily a symptom of these. It could instead be a conclusion reached through uncommon awareness, critical thinking, personal experience, and in-depth research. Of course, saying aliens are all negative with a nasty tone and resorting to stereotyping and chest beating, there is no excuse for that, but that does not mean we should claim all aliens are positive as a sign of cultural sophistication, fairness, and perceptiveness. Notice how repeatedly, one false choice is used to justify another false choice. We should instead identify various alien motivations for what they are relative to our highest standards.

Abductions by Greys should be called “temporary detainments” because they always return the abductee.

In regular abductions the abductee is usually returned, but the term “abduction” only hinges on the forced and sudden removal of a person, and not whether he or she is returned. Therefore the term “temporary detention” is redundant and only serves as a euphemism to sedate the emotional response to the term abduction.

It should be understood that not all abductees are returned, however. Human mutilations and consumption of humans for food and biological materials is a highly taboo and underreported subject. While it does not happen to typical abductees, who are abducted for more sophisticated reasons, it does happen to those who are weak enough and in the wrong place at the wrong time. No one knows what exact percentage of missing people in the world are being taken for this purpose,
not to mention all those who never even get the privilege of being reported as missing, but given the number of people who do go missing every year, permanent abductions are not only possible but have the advantage of perfect deniability if the body is never found. Each instance would then simply get dismissed as yet another unsolved case.

Abductees should more accurately be called experiencers, communicators, interfaces, guests or contactees, because they have been invited to meet with aliens and have given permission. Abductees are not victims, but co-creators and equal participants.

This only applies to genuine cases of benevolent alien contact, which are less common than alien abductions where permission is coerced or circumvented. The latter would try to present itself as the first, and employing euphemisms in the name of political or spiritual correctness is one means toward that end.

9. Debasing humanity

Aliens are hesitant to contact us openly since we are a violent, hostile, aggressive race. Aliens are peaceful and have non-polluting technologies, yet mankind continues to destroy the planet with wars and pollution.

Modern man as a whole is aggressive, but that isn’t the only reason aliens are hesitant to make contact. Positive alien factions might see humanity as still too immature to handle open contact without destabilizing, while negative ones view our civilization as not yet sufficiently programmed to guarantee complete submission to their agenda upon first contact. Still, mass programming is quickly reaching completion so the time for contact draws near.

It should also be noted that only a subsection of the human population is violent, hostile, and aggressive by default, and that if humanity had been left free of cultural, political, religious, and psychological manipulation by elite human and negative alien forces, it would have become much more peaceful and aware by this point.

In other words, it would benefit the alien agenda to project the aberrant faults of the few upon the many, and to use the very dysfunctions it has covertly encouraged as an excuse to present itself as the superior solution. It is by placing all blame upon humanity and devaluing its self-esteem that unsavory forces can make themselves look like saints in comparison. Thus a false choice becomes attractive against an artificially denigrated one.

10. Scapegoating corrupt human leadership

A corrupt human cabal is keeping mankind from reaping the rewards of contact with aliens. The cabal sees aliens as a threat to their control over mankind. They are behind disinformation suppressing awareness of the existence of aliens.

This assumes that all aliens are positive and the only antagonists are xenophobic human factions bent on keeping humanity under their own control. By scapegoating some human cabal as the sole problem, aliens preserve their image as being the logical solution. It would be more accurate to say that corrupt human elements have been colluding with negative alien factions to keep mankind from connecting with higher benevolent powers who support our spiritual liberation.

There may indeed be xenophobic human controllers, but they would clearly be in the minority given
the sophisticated methods aliens have for mind programming and infiltration. They would also be at technological and logistical disadvantages to other human groups who have collaborated with negative alien forces or have been completely taken over by them. Only spiritually transcendent solutions can overcome negative alien control. Since xenophobic human controllers with militaristic mindsets are too integrated into the negative hierarchy to acknowledge these positive solutions, they inevitably become unwitting assets to more sophisticated negative forces. Their role is ultimately insignificant.

Aliens have been here for thousands of years without doing any harm, but the cabal will stage an alien threat to justify building space weapons against aliens. They have also abducted people and programmed them with screen memories of negative aliens to paint aliens in a bad light.

If this were true, the cabal would be heavily involved in building widespread anti-alien sentiments in the population to prepare their minds for the staged invasion. The cabal would be grooming, supporting, funding, and publicizing high profile researchers who dish out nothing but dirt on the alien presence, ensuring that these types always get airtime while silencing the few who try to portray aliens as positive. They would use their media and entertainment contacts to inject persistent xenophobic slants to books, movies, and television documentaries on aliens. They would also be performing widespread military abductions to produce an epidemic of abductees with staged memories of horrendous alien abduction experiences, so that alien abduction research literature would be saturated with accounts of these.

What do we see instead? The complete opposite. Researchers shedding light on the darker aspects of the alien presence are the ones getting ignored and killed, while those pushing pro-alien disinformation get lifted into the limelight. Abductees who get a peek behind the curtain are marginalized for not fitting into the orthodox view of what abductions involve. Abduction accounts showing traits of being falsified also happen to be the ones consistently portraying aliens as benign. The most popular fringe books, documentaries, and movies on UFOs and aliens are slanted toward portraying them as mysterious, wonderful, and innocent. If there is a cabal, everything indicates it prefers pushing a pro-alien agenda, which can only be if they are in collusion with deceptive alien forces.

11. Securing amnesty for corrupt human leadership

Disclosure can only come about if insiders are given amnesty in exchange for revealing the truth.

A policy of amnesty that is too universal, unconditional, and forgiving would actually encourage the continuation, expansion, and completion of criminal insider activities if the culpable ones know they have nothing to worry about if in the end all will be forgiven. It would be in their best interest to encourage that kind of amnesty so that they may continue operating post-Disclosure, washed clean of their liabilities.

To even attempt to offer amnesty, it must be given not only in exchange for truth about the alien presence and suppressed technologies, but for testimony under oath against colleagues and superiors and the complete spilling of guts and handing over of classified information. Then once everyone incriminates everyone else, there should be enough truth on the table to sort out who
deserves amnesty and who does not. Those found guilty, including witnesses who have violated their testimonial oaths by operating as pathological disinformants, should be prevented from acquiring any leadership roles in the post-Disclosure world. Whistle-blowers who know they are being sincere have nothing to worry about, while those thinking they can exploit amnesty and advance their covert agenda will be held accountable. It should be done in no less forgiving a manner than how Mafia and crime rings are taken down. It is not about seeking revenge against these criminals or being unspiritual and unmerciful, but safeguarding our future from psychopaths incapable of rehabilitation.

The practical reality of amnesty, however, brings into question who has the authority and ability to offer amnesty and protect the witnesses? Prior to Disclosure, no one. The black ops networks are so technologically advanced that even under 24-hour police protection (or before a live audience) a witness can be hit with an invisibly projected beam and drop dead from apparent aneurysm or heart failure. Those working for black ops projects have signed documents virtually permitting their own assassination should they ever break their secrecy oaths. The laws governing protection of classified information and national security are also beyond the jurisdiction of the conventional legal system. So it would take an authority more powerful than the entire military-industrial complex to successfully deconstruct it. The closest we could come is a “unified planetary justice coalition” that takes on delinquent governments around the world and flushes their criminal elements, but then we would contend with a world government, world military, world tribunal so powerful that it could just as easily form the global dictatorship.

After Disclosure, the spiritual thing to do is offer amnesty and forgiveness to those military and government factions involved in abuse and experimentation upon humans.

Amnesty could provide safe passage for the black ops infrastructure (covert scientific, intelligence, and military-industrial complexes) to be transitioned out of serving national security and into furthering planetary security, but as mentioned that can and will lead to a technocratic totalitarianism on a global scale if the benefactors are impostors and openly consolidate the world’s control networks into a single network under their control. The current deniability and secrecy surrounding black projects ensures that modern mainstream technology remains unsophisticated. Police state technology and crowd control weapons are limited to tasers, rubber bullets, sonic weapons, water cannons, public cameras, internet monitoring, cell-dar, national ID cards, and so on. But if Disclosure reveals the extent of black project technologies (and alien technology) then, upon percolating into mainstream use, these technologies would allow the rapid proliferation of horrifying methods of police state control: tractor beams, paralyzing ray guns, cloaked security personnel in antigravity vehicles, remote thought-reading, “pre-crime” and dissent detection, and mind reprogramming. That is the fate awaiting us if amnesty is handled so naively that it plays right into the alien agenda.

12. Glorifying the alien image and appealing to sympathy

What deviant aliens need most is love and acceptance.

If anything, we can hold love and acceptance in our hearts, but as an act of tough love we must firmly block their attempts to transgress beyond their jurisdiction. This is because deviant aliens are not delinquent children unaware of the harm they cause, nor innocent victims of circumstance,
rather they have highly intelligent reasons for what they do. They have chosen their path and like psychopaths view love and acceptance by others as vulnerabilities to exploit. Anyone who has personally experienced how psychopaths operate knows that they abuse kindness rather than respect it, and this scales up to the psychopaths comprising the human elite controllers and negative alien factions.

Greys are respected members of a galactic federation who have helped humans spiritually.

The “Galactic Federation” is part of New Age lore, signifying an alliance of benevolent alien races here to help humanity. An alliance or brotherhood of benevolent aliens probably exists, and perhaps some of them employ Grey drones as generic helpers, but it would be misleading to say that the Greys abducting and implanting humans are a benevolent race unto themselves who are part of this federation.

The aliens who will reveal themselves soon are the ones who created mankind.

This appeals to followers of the ancient astronaut theory and those who generally regard aliens as our superior progenitors. The question is not whether humans were genetically engineered by aliens, but whether the ones who will be claiming this for themselves are telling the truth, and even if so, whether that gives them the right to intervene in our affairs.

The Greys have technology so advanced that it’s almost self-aware, showing that there can be a link or merger between technology and consciousness. They themselves are highly spiritual and have turned conscious advancement into an art form. Their consciousness is collective yet pristine and innocent. Greys are spiritual. Instead of sexual contact they come closest to affection by holding hands in a circle and merging with The One.

Another example of overly anthropomorphizing and romanticizing the Greys. It plays upon the observation that Greys are seemingly expressionless, sexless, intellectual, and hive minded. Instead of admitting this is due to cybernetic traits and robotic functions, it is spun toward them being sophisticated, Zen-like, and fond of spiritual unity.

Greys have an attitude of love and protection coupled with fear of their being stuck or trapped in their current evolutionary stage, and so they need our help to evolve and we should look upon them with compassion and some sadness. Greys are future descendants of humans who need our biological material to treat a degenerative medical disorder. We are approaching a point where the Greys were earlier in their evolution. Instead of destroying ourselves like they did, we must let them help us avert our demise and in turn help prevent their extinction. Hybrids are the seeds of a new race that combines the best of both humans and Greys. Hybrid babies need love from female abductees, and the Greys learn about love through their interaction. For the Greys, we represent not only their past, but their only hope for a future.

Notice the emotionally loaded language designed to appeal to sympathy, compassion, concern, hope, and love. The problem is not these virtuous feelings, but whether the premises from which they are invoked are actually true. The above explanation plays on common knowledge that Grey abductions have something to do with hybridization, medical procedures, and the harvesting of biological materials, but it weaves these into a slick story designed to target the nurturing,
protective, and sympathetic instincts in the target audience. It simply tries too hard from multiple angles to be emotionally persuasive at the expense of truth.

13. Coercing individual and collective consent

Aliens cannot help us until a critical number of people demand their involvement. Aliens want global consensus, not dealing with just one country. The world as a whole should vote.

On the one hand, positive forces who respect freewill would intervene only if requested. On the other hand, negative forces who desire a fully legalized takeover would also require our consent. The difference comes down to how heavily we are pushed into giving that consent. If the faction is one that fundamentally respects freewill, then it would calmly let us make up our own mind. If the faction is less benevolent, then it would be more desperate. The underlying intention is what counts.

Also important is the procedure of consent. Can a global democratic vote suffice? Only if the voters are wise and intelligent enough to make an informed choice. By definition, only a quarter of the population is of above-average intelligence, and it takes at least that to respect reason more than emotionalism. It is thus highly unlikely that the choice will be won by those with enough information and critical thinking abilities to see through propaganda unleashed by deceptive alien factions asking for consent. Democracy would become a vehicle for tyranny. If elected or appointed officials were to make the decision instead, questions of their integrity, soundness of mind, qualification, and potential rigging of their selection must be resolved. As can be seen, the issue of planetary consent is fraught with pitfalls.

Aliens will be contacting humans personally, bypassing the national governments.

This would do away with corrupt government deciding alien-human relations, but it could also be a means of adding even greater legality to the takeover. If human governments are so self-serving and disconnected from its electorate that they simply do not represent the will of the people, then gaining consent from the government would not equal consent of earth as a whole. Maybe this is why, despite already colluding with human factions, some aliens are still feverishly programming the population into beckoning their intervention when the time comes. Not to mention, governments are multiple in number and no one country can speak for the rest, but a unified calling by people everywhere would qualify.

Aliens cannot interact with us, or perceive us, if we do not first give them permission at some level. Therefore if they are in our lives in any way, rest assured that we have given them permission already. To resist their presence is to deny the choice already made, which is a denial made in ignorance and fear, therefore one must become aware of the choice and honor it to move from denial and fear into acceptance and understanding. Losing fear ends victimhood. You will no longer be a victim. You will be an equal participant. The quality of your interactions with them will change significantly.

Coercion of consent is not just a planetary matter, but shows up on the personal level as well. Here is an example of permission being extracted from an abductee by making him or her believe that the mere act of solicitation is proof of already having given permission. The relation between alien activity and permission given is gradual rather than clear-cut. Just as a salesman can knock on your door even if you haven’t invited him or bought anything yet, so can aliens make basic approaches or
covert manipulations without having been invited. If you open the door, now the salesman is
allowed to make his pitch. The process is gradual and starts with getting a foot in the door.

With manipulative aliens, it is by leveraging what intrusions they can make that they can make
deeper intrusions. By convincing an abductee that those little intrusions prove the abductee has
made forgotten agreements that must now be honored, they have the door opened for them from the
inside. The more permission is given, the more tangible the interaction. Psychological manipulation
is what they have to start with, but the deeper they enter and the more willingly one aligns with
them, the more physical and irreparable the damage becomes. This is true on both the personal and
planetary level.

The Reticuli are presently acquiring genetic material from volunteers who have, on a
soul level, agreed to be a part of the awakening of the Earth and the birth of a new
civilization.

Dubious claim, considering the other ego hooks Greys and their controllers are known to use, which
often lead to delusions of grandeur and a total abandonment of discernment in gullible abductees. If
abductees are made to feel special and chosen, that it is their life mission to participate in the
abduction and hybridization program, they will gladly submit. No spiritual volunteerism is
necessary to be identified as useful and monitored, profiled, abducted, and exploited like an animal.
One becomes even more useful and manipulable if an agreement is made out of haste, desperation,
curiosity, or ignorance. This is because doing so places one deeper under their jurisdiction, which
rolls back the intervention of divine or positive alien forces who would otherwise step in to counter
blatant freewill violations.

Soul agreements are the preferred requisite for positive alien groups, however, since they are
noninterventionist by nature and work only with volunteers who have, out of their own freewill and
effort, risen to a level ready for contact and service. Things get complicated when the voluntary
agreement was made before incarnating and now forgotten, because negative alien groups could
exploit that to claim it applies to themselves instead of the originally designated positive group, thus
hijacking a person’s destiny and diverting their good intentions and vague sense of mission toward
furthering some self-serving alien agenda.

When you are at your low point in life, call on the Greys and they will lift you up. When
mankind is at its low point, it must call upon aliens for the help and guidance.

This is among the most dangerous of deceptions. It encourages spiritual submission to negative
forces during one’s lowest and most vulnerable point where they can do the most damage. It is a
classic brainwashing technique where a new identity is forged from the broken shards of the old,
where one is uprooted from former solid ground of logic and transplanted onto an artificial platform
of new assumptions. It turns one into a reconstituted zealot for whomever does the reforming.

There is an important stage in esoteric development where the ego crashes and burns, allowing true
spiritual identity to rise from the ashes, but this spiritual rebirth must be volitionally brought forth
from within. Instead, here the advice is not only to call upon an external source like dialing a tow
truck to get one out of a ditch, but a predatory source at that. It is in climbing to a spiritual zenith
through one’s own freewill that communion with higher positive forces is earned, while upon
wailing helplessly in the depths of despair is when predatory negative forces find their moment of
14. Demanding unification and integration of mankind with aliens

Humans must form friendly relations with each other before attempting to form friendly relations with aliens. It is through global unification and integration that we can rightly reach out to aliens.

The question is unification and integration under what principles? Under the principle of harmony, wisdom, cooperation, and realization of the human potential? If so then it will take many centuries to naturally overcome cultural, religious, political, and social prejudice and division. The only way this can happen sooner within the coming decades is either a cataclysmic catalyst with profound spiritual consequences, or enforced unity through a single world government. The latter we must safeguard against by not allowing unity and integration or other virtuous sounding ideals to justify anti-individualism and totalitarianism. It is not unity itself that is important, but unity under the right principles. Unity that arises through a natural harmonization of individuals with common realizations of spiritual purpose is one thing, enforced unity through propaganda and the elimination of dissent is another.

Hybrids symbolize a marriage between humans and aliens and represent the future of both. Arrival and disclosure of aliens represents our cosmic families coming together.

We don’t need infusion of Grey genetics to evolve, rather we need the natural restoration of human DNA that was genetically crippled during the last phase of extraterrestrial modifications. This latest hybridization program is just a continuation of those previous ones, designed to further suppress the parts of us that alien controllers find threatening like individuality, intuition, feelings and discernment, and further enhance the traits they find useful like intellectual and telepathic functions.

Whatever the case, hybridization is not the best way for us to evolve. Cell biologist Dr. Bruce Lipton has shown how individual conscious awareness, perceptions, and belief affect one’s DNA, allowing changes and mutations within a single lifetime through a mere realignment of consciousness\(^2\). It is through such a shift in our awareness and perceptions to a higher paranormal and spiritually exceptional level that humans will evolve the natural way. But this can be thwarted through forced genetic assimilation if the latter is accepted as a matter of destiny and necessity.

15. Limiting awareness of hyperdimensional reality

The more evolved Greys are ethereal in their existence, others more physical. We can only interact with the ethereal ones in altered states of consciousness because they cannot enter our physical reality.

Greys can shift between physical and ethereal states like other aliens and are not exclusively limited to either state. The ones that are strictly physical are more likely android facsimiles built by human military factions, while the strictly ethereal ones are negative thoughtforms or astral beings projecting that appearance.

Interdimensional aliens are by nature “amphibious” in the sense of being able to manifest physically, shift out of view into the local etheric environment, or shift completely into another dimension. They occupy the level of evolution between physical humans and nonphysical spirits,
straddling the boundary zone between material and ethereal reality and crossing sides readily.

Also, truly higher-evolved beings who have transcended physicality are not barred from manifesting physically when they need to. Rather it is lowly etheric thoughtforms that would be barred since they are just temporary nonphysical constructs.

Greys cannot breathe our atmosphere.

The idea that Greys cannot breathe our air is used by some sources to explain why they need to hybridize themselves with us, to produce a new vehicle for themselves that can exist in our atmosphere. This is doubtful because Greys are frequently spotted in open air, whether surrounding cars during roadside abductions or entering an abductee’s bedroom for a nighttime abduction, or just lingering around the apartment before and afterward. Likewise abductees can go aboard alien ships and be surrounded by Greys without either of them having to wear visible breathing apparatuses. Abductees have also reported being taken to alien worlds where they were able to go outside and breathe the air just fine.

So either Greys can breathe our atmosphere and we can breathe theirs, or Greys don’t breathe at all, or their face is a mask hiding a respiratory device underneath. The same goes for Nordics, Reptilians, and Mantids — they have been seen in the physical without wearing helmeted space suits or air masks. This is probably because our humanoid forms have common evolutionary or engineered origins.

If this explanation for hybridization is to have any merit, “air” would have to be interpreted symbolically as meaning the “vibrational level” of a particular realm. In that sense, hybridization would represent a bridging between their lower vibrational realm and ours. This connects with Greys being proxies serving that purpose for routine abduction tasks, and thus hybrids would represent a self-reproducing species that extends the upward reach of lower vibrational forces. By dragging us downward through infusion of cybernetic traits, they in turn would be extended upward.

16. Offering false dichotomies through role swapping

Reptilians here in the solar system are a negative renegade faction of their species. They are at war against the Greys, who are spiritually and technologically advanced and our only hope for defeating the Reptilians. The Greys are seen as higher spiritual beings by humanoid beings living in bases underneath the Martian surface, who need our invitation to come here as refugees from their dire conditions. The Reptilians giving us problems are only a renegade faction that doesn’t represent the intentions of their entire species.

This scenario invokes the main players: Greys, Nordics, and Reptilians. It portrays Greys and Nordics as benign, Reptilians meddling in our affairs as malevolent, and the rest of Reptilians who are not here as benign as well, but if they are all part of the same faction or alliance, then this scenario would be nothing more than offering a false choice. We would be siding with one arm of the agenda against a decoy threat. If this scenario were to be followed through to its conclusion, in the end the small renegade Reptilian faction would be kicked off the planet and humans would then fall under the leadership and occupation of Greys, “good” Reptilians, and Nordics — exactly what would be desired if they were all part of the same agenda anyway.
Greys are inquisitive beings who have degraded their gene pool through generations of cloning. They are here to create a hybrid race that can ensure the survival of both their species and ours. A small renegade faction of Greys is negative, some are just incompetent, but the majority are benevolent. Mantis beings are extremely ancient and wise energy beings who appear insectoid only because our subconscious interprets them that way. Earth is also influenced by a group of negative aliens responsible for cattle mutilations and Men in Black encounters. These beings are using fear tactics to prevent us from shifting into a higher dimension because such a shift threatens their existence.

Here the Mantid beings and the majority of Greys are said to be benevolent, a minority of Greys incompetent or hostile, and Men in Black evil. Yet all of these — Mantids, Greys, MIBs — are more likely part of the same overriding agenda that also includes negative Nordics and Reptilians. The mention of a “small renegade faction” or “incompetence” marginalizes through disposable bad guys what truths have leaked out concerning the real nature of the agenda.

Greys and Nordics are two evolutionary offshoots of the human race, having time traveled here from the future. Nordics are highly spiritual, most Greys are friendly, while a small rogue faction of Greys is negative. Government is acting entirely on its own, not under any control or direction by aliens, just some treaties with them. Reports of Reptilians or Mantids are likely misperceptions on the part of abductees when they see certain pathologically disfigured Greys.

That last part is a baseless rationalization considering the level of detail involved in the abductee depictions of Reptilians and Mantids, showing them as fully distinct from Greys and healthy in their own right. This scenario goes further than others by saying that Greys and Nordics are not only benevolent but our own descendants. The anthropomorphic makeover of cybernetic Greys is a consistent part of the disinformation, and portraying them as benevolent future humans is an extreme example of that.

Ultimately, the crux of the deception here is the claim that all Nordics are highly positive beings from the future. If this were taken as gospel, then any and every Nordic alien group that presents itself to the world would be hailed as our benefactors, even if they happen to be cloned Nordics used as puppets by negative alien factions, negative Nordic overlords, or Aryan members of an underground civilization looking to migrate to the surface.

Hidden Order Behind Contradictory Scenarios

Notice that the various disinformative scenarios outwardly contradict each other, whether they come from channelers, academics, insiders, researchers, or aliens communicating through abductees and contactees. Some say all alien factions are positive, some admit a few are negative, and where one scenario draws the line between positive and negative differs from where another makes that distinction.

Obviously they cannot all be correct even though each makes a compelling case for being something other than a petty hoax. This eliminates the possibility that all aliens are positive and sincere, as there would have to be far more consistency and verifiability in what they say for that to hold true.

Some researchers have gotten exasperated with all the contradictions and concluded that aliens must simply be nonphysical pranksters playing with us, or perhaps dynamic manifestations of our
collective unconscious. If only it were that simple. These explanations fail because, despite the contradictions, what these scenarios have in common is that they keep drawing from the same cast of players: Nordics, Reptilians, Mantids, Greys, and the Government. In other words, the contradictory scenarios have an underlying order pointing toward a dishonest agenda. Disinformative sources who admit to some negative factions simply take a few players and posture them against each other. This seems to be the most effective approach since it both marginalizes evidence of negative alien activities by pinning these upon a small disposable faction and offers up the other aliens of the same agenda as the solution. By portraying at least one of these as our ally, it is ensured that the agenda moves forward regardless of whom we choose.

The various scenarios also have traits of being tests aimed at different target audiences used as focus groups to help construct and refine the most successful scenario that will be presented to the whole world when the time comes. Incidentally, the scenarios are not so contradictory as to be impossible to absorb into the final revealed picture. There is enough padding within each to allow for later incorporation.

So the goal appears to hook different audiences with different stories, learn from their reactions what composite story would assure the highest rate of acceptance across the broadest spectrum of individuals, and then activate the final scenario and pull all those audiences plus the rest of the population under its influence. The next part speculates on some final scenario possibilities.

Continue to Part 5 »

Notes

1 The Law of Attraction is a metaphysical principle stating that consciousness shapes probability, that what you mentally focus upon you pull into your life. This principle has been popularized in documentaries like The Secret (2006) and What the Bleep Do We Know? (2005). The mechanics of the principle arise at the quantum level whereby consciousness biases the collapse of the quantum wave function.

2 Epigenetics is a branch of biology that studies genetic changes due to environmental factors. It is a relatively new field of research that is only now becoming a buzzword in the collective consciousness. Therefore it is an example of something that falls outside the dated meme-pool that the alien disinformation campaign has drawn from, which is why it shows a glaring hole in the false idea that hybridization is the only way to evolve mankind. For more on epigenetics, see The Biology of Belief (2008) by Dr. Bruce Lipton and The Genie in Your Genes (2007) by Dawson Church.

Discerning Alien Disinformation: Part 5

4 November 08 (alien)
How might the final deception scenario manifest? Since aliens are intelligent strategists, the scenario would have to meet the following conditions:

- Has the lowest risk of failure
- Is highly plausible and appealing to the public
- Plays to common weaknesses and false assumptions
- Builds on the groundwork of previous disinformation
- Uses the greatest situational leverage to force compliance
- Provides effective means of quelling resistance and chaos
- Unifies human power structures and places them under alien control
- Requires the least amount of energy and oversight by alien controllers

We can make some educated guesses by comparing disinformation with the direction of current political, social, exopolitical, and metaphysical trends. I will provide a possible scenario that would fit, though there would certainly be other possibilities even more fitting. The above conditions should hold true regardless.

Final Scenario Players

A good place to start is analyzing the main players and what role they might take given their strengths, weaknesses, and public perception.

**Reptilians**

Reptilians have a bad reputation. They are viewed as being too frightening, aggressive, and manipulative by too many. Even in science fiction shows they are portrayed as having a primal, violent, or fascist nature. In abduction research they are infamous for committing acts of torture and rape. Their monstrous appearance alone would induce an instinctive antipathy in most humans, who may subconsciously identify them with alligators, dinosaurs, evil serpents, or dragons. For these reasons it is highly unlikely that Reptilians will be the first alien type to present themselves as the good guys. It would create too much instinctual fear and revulsion atop the shock of Disclosure.

However, considering that reptilian-like beings have been portrayed positively in children’s television shows, their introduction may happen much later once the younger generation has matured and the older reactionary generation died out or gotten accustomed to living in strange times.

Initially they would be better suited for playing the role of negative renegades to be scapegoated as the sole alien group coordinating negative abduction activities. This would build upon existing
abduction accounts and fringe literature concerning a nefarious reptilian presence, and it would play to the natural aversion people have to their physiology. As mentioned earlier, one disinformative scenario claims earth has been meddled with by just such a negative rogue faction, that they are in the minority and not representative of the rest of their race who are positive.

**Mantids**

Mantids are less commonly reported and stranger looking than Reptilians. Therefore they are even less likely to play a visible role in the beginning. Their appearance as “bugs” would not be conducive to building rapport. They also seem to function as highly advanced interdimensional technicians who rarely transition into our lower physical dimension, therefore they would hang back and orchestrate the show from behind the curtain rather than make an appearance.

**Greys**

Greys are so familiar that their role in the final scenario is guaranteed. Their image is burned into our collective retina through decades of exposure through pop culture, music, fashion, entertainment, crop circles, televised documentaries, and UFO literature. Our protracted desensitization to the Grey presence has been too much of an investment to end without payoff.

Analysis of disinformation suggests they will be portrayed as a mysterious, sophisticated, computer-like, mission-oriented race. They may be presented as caretakers of humanity tasked with assisting our evolutionary advancement through a perilous time, caretakers who have managed the abduction and hybridization program toward this end. Greys will epitomize transhumanist ideals to encourage cybernetic shackling disguised as genetic and technological “enhancements.” They will also exemplify a simplistic Zen-like spirituality that promotes non-discernment and submission in the name of non-dualism and integration.

Due to their strange appearance and vibe, and the diverging public opinions concerning their intentions, Greys will probably limit their exposure and remain more aloof and enigmatic at first, perhaps appearing in an ancillary manner alongside more acceptable alien groups.

Certain Greys may be scapegoated as being of negative orientation, whether said to be creations of the human shadow government to terrorize abductees, some degenerate offshoot of the same genetic line that the benevolent Greys came from, or a group that was kidnapped, cloned, and reprogrammed by negative Reptilians to do their bidding. As mentioned earlier, this would serve to marginalize evidence of truly negative abduction activities and stage a threat to which seemingly benevolent aliens represent the solution.

**Nordics**

Nordics are supremely suited for the task of first contact because they look similar to us, which would be a pleasant surprise to those dreading that alien contact will be with grotesque lifeforms. In abduction literature they also have the least amount of dirt on them of any reported alien race.

Their exceptional physique and beauty directly appeals to our deepest of genetic programs: physical attraction and familiarity. This would dispel xenophobia, which is normally rooted in revulsion to strangeness. For example, they would inspire reverence instead of fear, earning popular descriptive terms like “angels” or “space babes” instead of derogatory terms like “bugs” or “gators.”
Nordics are the ideal superstars of the alien disinformation campaign, followed by Greys, and both may appear together to the world as they already have to abductees. However, the first Nordics to initiate galactic diplomacy will probably be negative types or clones since positive ones are noninterventionist and would not push themselves on us. Therefore only the negative factions would purposely step onto the scene first with fanfare aimed to impress. Discerning individuals would see through their lies, but the rest of humanity would be too dazzled and enthusiastic about welcoming these seeming heralds of hope, change, and enlightenment.

**Unknown**

It is also possible that a previously unknown alien faction will make an appearance. They could be very strange, barely humanoid, maybe plasma lifeforms having the appearance of higher dimensional beings. Since they will never have been reported in research literature, if they play a negative role in the final scenario, they could very well be artificial projections or creations. Black ops factions could easily produce such a creature using nanotechnology, holography, and other methods.

The advantage of an alien so strange, immaterial, and seemingly innocent is that it would evoke wonderment instead of fear. Humans would have no symbolic precedent like insects or alligators to associated with them, except maybe ghosts or spirits. Their role would start with a blank slate from which any story can be constructed without negation by prior abduction research or conspiracy theories. Their only giveaway would be whom they support and what action on our parts they demand; if these are in line with the negative alien agenda, then their bodily form and origins are irrelevant.

**Shadow Government**

Lastly, the other primary final scenario player is the “shadow government” which includes the military-industrial complex, corrupt political cabals, black ops military networks, certain secret societies, and various corporate and scientific conglomerates. While there may be internal divisions among them, overall it appears they are functionally complicit with the alien agenda. Either they have realized that they cannot beat dimensionally superior forces and have joined them in return for preservation of power through the coming times, or else they are desperate enough to try to overtly seize world power and buck the alien controllers by force, which would fail and play right into alien hands.

Whether intended or not, the shadow government is working as the construction crew for the overt alien control system. They appear responsible for the following:

- Manufacturing and installing the advanced surveillance technologies and control infrastructure needed to run a worldwide police state
- Directing decisive historical events like totalitarian legislation, wars, terrorism, assassinations, disasters, and financial collapses to move mankind ever closer toward global self-enslavement
- Acquiring maximum mind control over the population through psychoactive frequencies and subliminal broadcasts
• Manufacturing artificial humans or clones to move into influential nodes of power
• Operating remote viewing and special modeling systems to predict threats and instabilities to the system
• Abducting/programming certain citizens to create sleeper agents, agent provocateurs (including violent anti-alien survivalist types), and subdue threatening individuals
• Creating decoy abductees who are given screen memories of positive encounters with the wrong alien types
• Grooming disinformation agents, hijacking the channeling and crop circle phenomena, and creating sanctioned releases from insiders to steer public perception of the alien presence

Regardless of whether they are doing all this to advance solely their own power or are knowingly laboring for their alien masters, it is through their efforts that the control system they build will be ready for use by negative aliens and their more dependable proxies. Again, this demonstrates the efficiency by which negative aliens operate: getting the population to enslave itself before handing over control.

In the final scenario, the public role of the shadow government may be to provide some whipping boys who will be punished for crimes against humanity and conspiring to suppress human evolution. The controlled exposure and purging of corruption at “the highest levels” would play to populist anger against the elite responsible for their sufferings. For example, consider what would happen if the World Trade Center attacks were fully disclosed to the world as having been an inside job, and if numerous other corrupt activities of worldwide human leadership were exposed as well. Not only would it lead to the destruction of the old political order, but it would diminish confidence in human leadership as a whole, and that would boost support for a non-human solution to the human problem.

If carefully orchestrated, none of this purging would wipe out the functional core of the shadow government; rather it would be a change at the surface, a symbolic gesture that the old has died and the new is to begin. It would then be an opportune moment for amnesty and rehabilitation to be offered to members of the shadow government so that their tools of control can seemingly be transformed into instruments of peace. Should this happen, there is grave danger that “instruments of peace” may instead mean black ops technology rising into public use against dissenters branded as “human supremacists” and “anti-alien terrorists.” If the public welcomes this move as a necessary step toward safeguarding peace and progress, then there could quickly arise a new kind of tyranny.

Final Scenario Possibilities

Alien disclosure will happen in multiple phases, that much is guaranteed. Incremental adjustments to mass consciousness keeps things stable and allows predictive models to calculate the next optimal move. The initial phase must be the most conservative of all to minimize risk and panic, but the process accelerates when the risk of failure diminishes with each successful step.

So I will now explore one possible version of the final scenario, divided into five key phases. The point is not to declare how the future will go but show the minimal level of complexity involved in
a final scenario, demonstrate how easily existing trends and conditions can converge to fulfill an agenda, and point out the kinds of dangers that must be acknowledged and preempted.

Phase 1: Confirmation and Fascination

Proof of life is found beyond Earth. This could be microbes or their fossils discovered on Mars, or intelligent signals received by SETI. Scientific, religious, and philosophical debate follow about the implication that we are not alone in the universe.

The debate evolves from what it means that we are not alone in the universe to whether we are being visited by intelligent extraterrestrial beings. The UFO phenomenon becomes more plausible and receives greater public interest. Credentialed opinion leaders in UFOlogy and exopolitics step into the spotlight, sharing their information or disinformation with the world.

Phase 2: Anticipation and Organization

UFO sightings increase in boldness and frequency, answering the burgeoning question of whether aliens are visiting us. The question starts shifting toward “Why are they here?”

This leads to growing interest in what abductees and contactees have to say since they have personally interacted with aliens and have been told of their intentions. Attention will also broaden into the purported messages from aliens themselves, seemingly sent by way of crop circles, channeling, and anonymously circulated statements. Here is where the bulk of disinformation is unleashed to shape public perception of alien motivations.

Networks and institutions geared toward preparing humanity for alien disclosure and galactic diplomacy proliferate and become highly organized and influential. Governments are pressured more than ever before to disclose the truth about aliens.

Phase 3: Desperation and Confrontation

Economic, political, and environmental problems that took root during the first two phases now come to a head. Severe weather problems are blamed on manmade global warming. Disruptions to food and energy production and distribution lead to greater civil unrest. Antiestablishment sentiments escalate into rioting and acts of terrorism, which lead to checkpoints, the proliferation of citizen snitch networks, and possibly roundups and internment camps.

People start seeing the problem as originating with the evil global elite who are trying to consolidate and preserve their power through the chaos they have created. People are desperate for global regime change, for renewable technologies, for freedom and food/medical/financial security.

Positive public perception of aliens contrasts ever more sharply with negative perception of human authorities, causing a growing demand for alien intervention.

Phase 4: Revolution and Eradication

Aliens make first contact in a limited way, enough to prove they exist and communicate their intentions and demands. Mass panic is prevented by police state conditions restricting commotion and by the preceding acclimation program making this anticipated rather than feared. Aliens promise security and stability in exchange for cooperation, which will be gladly accepted.

Unprecedented disclosure follows. An end is declared to lies, deception, coverups, wars, and
suffering as the antagonists are exposed and the old order crumbles. Police state instruments are retooled to keep the peace as galactic diplomacy goes on and the pro-alien movement becomes the new order.

Abductees and contactees who were groomed for the task now become the liaisons doing the heavy lifting of transforming society into conformance with the alien agenda. The process will appear democratic rather than dictatorial as change proceeds from within society through these liaisons.

The world unites. All science and religion are absorbed into a single alien paradigm. Stubborn religious and political factions refusing conformity are declared ignorant, obsolete, and dangerous. Worldwide, pro-alien fanaticism leads to the persecution of dissidents. Anyone opposing conformity to the alien agenda is lumped into the same category as anti-alien terrorists, backward religious fundamentalists, and remnants of the old order attempting to undermine the alien occupation.

Police state instruments, enhanced by black ops and alien technologies, are then turned against these non-conformers. They are routed out and converted or eliminated, all in the name of defending peace, freedom, and the future of humanity.

**Phase 5: Evolution and Assimilation**

Humanity moves peacefully into the future. Hybrid/indigo children take elite leadership positions as they mature. The majority of the surviving human population move into mining, industrial production, and agrarianism using leased alien technology to build and sustain the infrastructure of the new civilization.

Survival, prosperity, environmental harmony, and physical and mental perfection become the new focus. Cybernetic and genetic enhancements are welcomed to increase telepathic, telekinetic, clairvoyant, and other superhuman abilities. Alien technology and services are credited with taking humans up the evolutionary ladder.

Humans become increasingly cybernetic, psychic, and technologically sophisticated but at the price of discernment, genuine spiritual connection to the divine, independence of thought, and awareness of greater truths.

In the end, humans are fully hybridized and perfected as a more tangible, powerful, physical, and dimensionally flexible tool of negative interdimensional forces. Assimilation complete.

**Foreshadowing**

A scenario like this should be foreshadowed by trends active and visible right now. Several possibilities come to mind.

First is the popular anticipation that we will soon be transitioning into an age of enlightenment. The timely arrival of aliens in the near future would play to those expectations if they presented themselves as our ushers into the golden age.

Second is the crop circle phenomenon. Some crop circles are purely abstract and communicate messages on an archetypal metaphysical level. These seem like the more genuine ones. Then there are crop formations that encode literal events, dates, and messages in ways that appeal to intellectual puzzle solving. They show signs of being manmade, whether laid down by skilled
ground teams or printed onto the fields by space-based directed energy weapons, which would implicate involvement of black ops groups who, as already mentioned, are complicit with the alien agenda. Some of these formations allude to the importance of the Mayan calendar end date, others pretend to be direct messages from Greys.

Third is the phenomenon of Indigo, Crystal, Rainbow, Starseed, and Hybrid children. While some might just be kids with handicaps and delinquencies who have been given New Age euphemisms, others do seem to have advanced natures. The latter might be human-alien hybrids seeded into human families or advanced souls here to experience and catalyze the coming changes. This is not surprising considering how, according to the theory of reincarnation, souls are born into the times matching their current needs and abilities.

The problem is that these special children could be exploited as footholds and liaisons by negative alien factions. Imagine if millions of parents were told their children were of prized alien heritage, having been equipped by alien “benefactors” with special abilities and knowledge to lead the world into a new era. What parents would reject the alien presence and thereby risk rejecting their own children? For most the choice is automatic: to accept and defend both. They may have been vetted to ensure this. Further, they would view people who are averse to the alien occupation as being potential threats to their children, and that brings out a strong defensive instinct.

As for the children themselves, at least the ones who don’t know it already, finding out about their special status would be a major ego hook. What young person would refuse the power, identity, and privilege of becoming liaisons to the alien groups with whom they feel a kinship…especially after having been shunned by their “muggle” peers all their lives due to being different, or after having long felt they might have a greater purpose?

There are indeed positive souls here with a greater purpose, and many of them have suffered social isolation from being so different all their lives. Some might even be liaisons for genuinely positive alien groups who are opposed to the negative intervention. That’s not the point, and these individuals should never be discriminated against just because they have special abilities or relations with aliens. The point is that young people like these, and others specifically groomed and programmed for the task, can be lured into pitching for the wrong alien faction. That’s the danger here. Therefore they must become wise enough to see through the deception and ego hooks, and use their powers to defend truth, freedom of thought, and spiritual sovereignty.

Fourth trend is the percolation of the alien subject into mainstream religion. Christianity is the largest religion, followed by Islam and Hinduism, and its largest denomination is Catholicism. This makes Catholicism the largest religious denomination in the world. It stands to reason that the alien agenda would employ Catholicism to acquire easy influence over the minds of millions. Catholicism could serve as the primary vehicle of western religious reformation and assimilation by the alien agenda.

Father Gabriel Funes, director of the Vatican Observatory and Jesuit priest, has stated that aliens may exist, that believing in them does not contradict belief in God, and that since they are part of Creation they are our brothers. Another high-ranking Vatican official named Monsignor Corrado Balducci, who is a demonologist and theologian and member of the Roman Curia, went on record saying that alien contact is real, that aliens occupy the levels between humans and angels, and that
none are demonic. While these were personal statements, the Vatican did not issue disclaimers or denials against them, indicating that as time goes on the Vatican will incrementally come closer to admitting these views as official policy. What will stay absent is the equally valid idea that some aliens occupy levels between humans and demons and use demonic tactics in accomplishing their ends, which includes using the Church as a means of portraying themselves as our angelic brethren.

Fifth trend is the extreme effort to pin global warming solely on humans despite evidence indicating natural solar cycles are the primary cause. These cycles depend on the variations in the combined gravitational and magnetic forces exerted upon the sun by orbiting planets. In turn, these planets are affected by the change in solar output. Humans are not the cause of observed global warming effects on Mars for instance.

Even if carbon dioxide emissions were the cause of global warming, the ones pushing this agenda are conspicuously ignoring true solutions like the proliferation of free energy technology. Instead they demand greater global government intervention, enforced energy starvation, and economic constriction of the population. Collective fear and guilt are induced over mounting weather disasters, leading to increased willingness to make unnecessary sacrifices for the sake of political correctness and planetary survival. This will create enough anger against our human leadership and guilt against ourselves for destroying the environment that aliens will seem perfectly justified in admonishing human ineptitude and offering themselves and their progressive human liaisons as the solution.

Now, this does not excuse the continuation of human environmental destruction, rather it suggests blame should go where it belongs and the proper solutions implemented. “Saving the Earth” should never become a convenient vehicle for executing nefarious political and alien agendas, but unfortunately it already has and will continue in the years ahead.

Sixth trend is the recent shift in policy toward disclosure of alien life. Television specials on UFOs are now tipping more to the believers than the skeptics when it used to be the opposite. Various governments are in the process of releasing previously secret documents and databases on UFOs, and the United States will follow under the next administration. What all this indicates is a shift away from coverup of the existence of aliens toward a coverup of who they are and why they’re here. Skeptics are increasingly being presented as shut-eyed (literally in some cases) and the believers and witnesses as credible and logical. It’s a move from one coverup to another, and many who are cheering for an end to the first coverup are sleepwalking right into the second. We can expect this trend to continue and become ever more blatant. In the end there will be full admission that aliens do exist and have been visiting us, but that they are friendly and here to help us get through some tough times. Disclosure will be partial, sanctioned, and disinformative to the extreme.

The seventh trend is the exopolitical rush toward petitioning for alien intervention, organizing citizen contact groups, and forming disclosure networks aimed at ending the UFO coverup. Their eagerness for Disclosure risks making no provisions for discerning between positive aliens and impostors. Some believe all aliens are benevolent and therefore no need exists for questioning the alien presence. Others acknowledge aliens are varied in their intentions, but limit their definition of alien hostility to physical aggression like torturing humans, downing aircrafts, and attacking
military installations.

It would show lack of discernment to persistently ignore, ridicule, and rationalize away the possibility that alien hostility can come under the guise of benevolence. Bolder examples may very well be evidence of grooming and programming by those same forces. If aspects of the movement were sanctioned by dishonest alien forces, then exopolitical activism could become the ideal vehicle through which our collective freewill is handed over. With additional foresight, however, it could just as easily become an effective defender of truth, wisdom, and sovereignty.

So to fulfill its maximum potential, the movement should never underestimate the sophistication of alien deception, and instead explore how this deception could occur and construct the appropriate contingencies and standards for ensuring such deception will never succeed. They have nothing to lose and everything to gain by doing so. The solution is being both pro-Disclosure and pro-discernment.

Why Now?

Those who orchestrate the final scenario are careful, strategic, and efficient. They take the safest, slowest, and most exhaustive approach they can within the given time limits, but it appears they are now on a deadline given the speed at which the police state, global turmoil, and alien disclosure trends are progressing.

Had they another century to draw these out, they would face far less scrutiny. That they are acting desperately and multifariously indicates that something beyond their complete control is happening or imminent. They cannot prevent, delay, or accelerate it, and must instead accommodate, incorporate, and divert it like a judo fighter redirecting rather than stopping the oncoming momentum of his opponent. Why?

**Reason 1: Reaching Maturity and Sustainability**

If we compare modern days with those a millennium ago, it becomes clear why, from a strictly opportunistic perspective, the time for an overt alien takeover is now instead of earlier. Only now are we intellectually and technologically advanced enough to globally enslave ourselves, adopt the alien paradigm, and function as skilled and viable assets to their agenda.

If this were attempted a thousand years ago, aliens would have had a troublesome liability rather than asset to manage. They would have had to provide all the technology, education, and training themselves — a tall order considering the ignorant, crude, and fragmented state of the population back then. Why not wait (or time travel forward) several centuries, dropping catalysts along the way to speed up the advancement of civilization, until conditions were ripe?

It is not military opposition they are trying to overcome, but inertia and lack of efficiency, otherwise they would have taken over during the age of swords and bows. Inertia can only be overcome through patience and carefully implemented catalysts for growth, just as a crop must be patiently tended before ready for harvest.

**Reason 2: Approaching Critical Points on the Timeline**

This presents a crucial problem to alien controllers: a civilization advanced enough to efficiently work for them is advanced enough to effectively work against them, or at least slip out of their
grasp. The moment of maximum efficiency is the moment of maximum risk.

Today we find ourselves in the most precarious of situations, an extraordinary bifurcation point between doom and liberation, and the tactic being employed is to disguise doom as liberation.

The future is in flux, hinging on the degree of information or disinformation forming the basis of our personal and global choices. Modern history is clustered with critical points on the timeline that would attract intervention by interdimensional or time traveling forces because these points represent windows where the future can be most efficiently influenced. It should therefore be no surprise that alien activities have increased exponentially this past century as we approach the grandest of nexus points.

**Reason 3: Incoming Natural Cataclysms**

Natural cyclical cataclysms further threaten to destabilize the control system. Possibilities include extreme solar flares, mass volcanic eruptions and earthquakes, super-storms, cometary bombardments, magnetic pole shift, physical pole shift, and the onset of a new ice age. For thousands of years humanity has remained mostly free of these threats, but the cycles appear to all be converging during the coming decades. We are already seeing disruptions to the food supply due to diseases, droughts, and floods ruining crops simultaneously worldwide.

The control system cannot survive intact without adapting to these disruptions. Adaptation means increasing the level of control, like a farmer rounding up his livestock in preparation of a severe storm and confining them to the barn. As a matter of efficiency, the control system goes one step further by exploiting early threats, whether real or manufactured, to gain the control needed to survive the later threats. Example: global warming is largely the result of natural solar system cycles, but by instead blaming human carbon emissions as the sole cause, the control system can lower the standard of living and deprecate the self-esteem of humanity so that, desperate and demoralized, humans are more willing to hand their sovereignty over to seemingly wiser authorities. The authorities then have the necessary means of tying down their human livestock.

**Reason 4: Burgeoning Phenomenon of Human Spiritual Transcendence**

The physical reasons above should make a decent case why the alien agenda is moving forward so quickly at this time. I believe there are metaphysical reasons as well, which despite seeming more speculative are still personally verifiable.

The primary metaphysical reason is that portions of humanity are moving toward spiritual transcendence, toward acquiring the spiritual awareness and interdimensional abilities needed to overcome the control system. This is not just the result of human spiritual evolution increasing the need for a more expansive state of existence, it is also the manifestation of divine intervention during difficult times accelerating the spiritual empowerment of individuals who choose to participate in the process.

We are dynamic beings capable of personal spiritual growth, so there is no reason why we cannot achieve transcendence in greater numbers given enough time and opportunity. Interdimensional alien civilizations were not always at that level, meaning they once occupied a more limited existence like our own before transitioning. If they can do it, so can we.
Already throughout history there have existed transcendent humans working as the great spiritual masters and teachers of the ages, and while they were the exceptions for their times, their message has been that we can and will achieve equal or greater.

For this to occur on a wider level, all it would take is a synchronization of conditions and catalysts working internally and externally upon us to facilitate our spiritual awakening, liberation, and empowerment. Those who are receptive to this influence would rise up and polarize away from the rest who are more predisposed toward willful ignorance and entropy. (Note that this polarization phenomenon has nothing to do with moral judgments, rather it follows from the natural dissonance that arises between individuals who are treading incompatible life paths.)

Taken to its logical conclusion, the polarization phenomenon would lead to a transformation of the world as we know it and the bifurcation of consensus reality into mutually exclusive realms of existence. All of this dovetails with trend studies, Biblical eschatology, Native American prophecies, Scandinavian mythology, Sanskrit cosmology, and channeling, contactee, or abductee accounts concerning the imminent fate of humanity.

So it appears that, apart from the converging physical factors mentioned earlier, there are several nonphysical factors coming together as well:

- The spiritual maturation of a portion of the human population and their readiness to graduate from this limited mode of existence.
- The implementation of a divine plan to augment the process and combat the grave imbalances created by the alien control system.
- As discussed in my article, The Physics of 2012, the irradiation of our solar system by a traveling event horizon or wave of hyperdimensional energy. This would serve to loosen the gravitational binding of consensus reality and allow easier graduation or bifurcation onto interdimensional realms of existence.

Preservation of Hyperdimensional Control

Assuming dimensional transcendence is a real possibility for us, how might alien controllers preserve their power in the face of it? Through the alien agenda now being implemented. They would achieve this by first winning our willful submission to their authority, then locking that submission into place through dependence, addiction, spiritual sterilization, and cybernetic assimilation.

Keep in mind that human transcendence does not guarantee being fully in the clear. Rather it means a leveling of the playing field more so than retirement from the game. Instead of aliens having exclusive access to the backstage of our reality, hidden from view and inaccessible to our reach or perception, our transcendence would mean removal of the curtain and being able to see and interact with them more directly.

This could be another reason why aliens are shifting toward overt instead of covert control: it may soon be impossible for them to maintain the privilege of invisibility if more of us gain greater clairvoyance and dimensional mobility. If their revealing is inevitable, they must preemptively condition us to view their presence in a positive light.
Another problem we face is that if, like moving up grade levels in school, no knowledge of the next stage is necessary to graduate from the existing one, there will be throngs of graduates who are absolutely clueless about the interdimensional alien agenda and the subtleties of the new existence. And even if there were no “dimensional shift” it would still be the most flexible, progressive, and helpful people who make it through the coming times.

These well intentioned but potentially undiscerning (concerning alien or hyperdimensional matters) people are the ones most easily ensnared by the alien deception. They are also the most valuable because they would statistically comprise the bulk of transitioners. It could be said that the future of humanity hinges on their choice of alignment. The alien disinformation campaign is already heavily targeting them: exopolitical activists, New Agers, progressive religious people, special children, contactees and abductees, fringe researchers, truth seekers, and others who are more receptive to selfless causes and novel ideas than the mainstream. These are precisely the ones who would make it to the next level without always having the foresight needed to avoid the pitfalls afterward.

What is happening now has all the characteristics of a timewar waged between interdimensional time traveling forces. The goal of any timewar is preservation, reinforcement, and expansion of the probable future or reality of origin. The more souls are aggregated onto a particular timeline, the more stability and power is given to that timeline over others. Moving the human soul collective onto a negative timeline requires a collective choice. Thus, we have the disinformation program and the temporal manipulation of history and genetics to bias this choice heavily toward one favoring the negative timeline.

I have delayed discussion of positive forces because the nature of negative aliens must be understood first. So in the sixth and final part, I will discuss to the best of my knowledge who they are, what they are like, how to distinguish them from impostors, and provide some tips on positive solutions to the issues raised in this book.

» continue to Part 6

Notes

1 In 2007, the French government released three decades’ worth of formerly secret UFO reports, of which over half the cases were still unexplained. The British government did the same in 2008 by releasing their archives. Canada and Denmark followed suit in 2009.
In preceding parts I focused on negative aliens to emphasize the prevalence, sophistication, and subtlety of their control methods. They can advance hostile agendas without necessarily being violent or frightening in appearance. Instead they maximize their appeal to build up false perceptions and beliefs in their targets so that, unable to make fully informed decisions, their targets naively and willfully choose to relinquish sovereignty.

We can distinguish between positive aliens and impostors by knowing more about what each are truly like. What unique traits must aliens demonstrate in word, action, and consequence to qualify as truly benevolent? We are looking for key characteristics of positive aliens that cannot be imitated by negative impostors, at least not without shortchanging their own agenda. Our standards must be set neither so low that impostors falsely qualify, nor so unrealistically high that benevolent groups with innocent shortcomings fail to qualify at all.

In this final part I will share my tentative conclusions on the nature and motivation of positive aliens.

What Does Positive Mean?

Contrary to stereotypes engendered by the New Age movement, the positive spiritual path is not about being meek, simple, and blissful to the point of becoming passive and ignorant of life’s problems. People who adopt this attitude end up disconnected from reality and eventually face a rude awakening. Real spirituality has to be practical yet transcendent, true to both physical reality and metaphysical reality, rooted in experience yet vivified by divine inspiration. It must acknowledge the limitations of one’s current state of existence, yet allow advancement beyond that existence by opening the door to influences from an even higher level of existence.

It cannot be otherwise. An alien civilization mired in blissful denial, wishful thinking, and undiscerning acceptance would crumble under its own folly or be preyed upon by deceivers in the same way that amiable but blindly trusting people get taken in by charlatans.

The genuine positive path is one of strength, practicality, discernment, understanding, balance, and gnosis. Gnosis is higher spiritual intelligence, manifesting in its lowest form as objective intuition. It allows for inner revelation of profound insights and direct recognition of truths buried in external sources of information. It supersedes both intellect and lower emotions and thereby stays invulnerable to disinformation, emotional manipulation and logical fallacies. This ability to intuitively or clairvoyantly tap into higher understanding is the main catalyst for spiritual evolution because it guides one toward truth and alerts one to deception and error.

The positive path results in the fulfillment of individual potential, making one all the more effective on both the physical and metaphysical planes. It optimizes one’s ability to serve the spiritual well-being and evolution of others and thereby facilitate the divine purpose of Creation.

“Positive” and “negative” are not mere subjective terms, rather they follow directly and logically
from some fundamental facts of our existence:

- Humans and aliens are conscious beings with freewill.
- Freewill leads to independence and individuality.
- Individuals interact with themselves, the world, and each other.
- Interaction between individuals modifies their consciousness.
- Freewill determines whether the modification is growth or suppression.

Since freewill allows the choice between assisting or suppressing the consciousness and freewill of others, there are consequently:

1) Beings who serve the entire system by expanding their consciousness and freewill in balance with the expansion of consciousness and freewill in others.

2) Beings who serve only themselves at the cost of suppressing the freewill and consciousness of others to the detriment of the entire system.

This essentially defines the positive and negative paths. The positive path preserves balance by maximizing freewill in the system, the other creates imbalance by diminishing the freewill of others through force, deception, and assimilation; the first advances self by also advancing others, the second advances self at the detriment of others.

The only reason the negative path can continue to exist at all without immediate entropic disintegration is because it functions as a parasitic Ponzi Scheme where a hierarchy of predators depends on perpetual influx of recruits and resources to keep from starving and imploding. Earth has become the recruitment and feeding grounds for at least one such hierarchy.

How universal is the positive path? Can it be followed by various types of alien beings regardless of their physiology? What about feelings like love and compassion? Can a reptilian whose physiology lacks the neurotransmitters for positive mammalian emotions follow the positive path? Of course. Conscious beings are more than their bodies; they are immortal sparks of consciousness inhabiting temporary bodies. Truth, understanding, discernment, wisdom, and higher spiritual intelligence are virtues of consciousness that transcend biology. Likewise, pure love, which is the impulse to safeguard and advance consciousness, is also universal. Perhaps a mammalian physiology expresses pure love more through a sense of compassion, empathy, and personal caring, whereas a reptilian physiology might express it more through a sense of duty, honor, and necessity. Both are accompanied by a sense of understanding, and both assist the advancement of consciousness in those loved.

Positivity is defined here strictly on a metaphysical basis. All its requisites are properties originating with consciousness, or to be more accurate, with spirit, which is the transcendent spark of consciousness residing at the core of being. As long as a being is conscious, individualized, has freewill, and interacts with others, the positive path is open to exploration.

Considerations

In defining what constitutes a positive alien, there are some things to keep in mind. First is that not all positive groups are identical; they may have different missions, appearances, cultures of origin,
levels of development, functional relation to humanity, and means of achieving their goals.

They vary in development from what humanity could achieve after several thousand years of further spiritual and technological advancement, to beings who have completely transcended space and time, who no longer have use for vehicles, bodies, or even personalized individualities in some cases. Stated another way, the spectrum of positive aliens spans from extraterrestrial to ultraterrestrial.

Between these two extremes are those who have transcended linear time but can still occupy bodies, employ technology, and travel in vehicles. They are the positive analogs of the negative hyperdimensional entities discussed in earlier parts of this book. While they are not always bounded by linear time and three dimensional space, neither do they operate exclusively within the higher immaterial realms of existence. Functionally, they are neither strictly ultraterrestrials nor extraterrestrials, but flip between these states as necessary. Perhaps the term “ambiterrestrial” is needed to distinguish them.

The spectrum of positive aliens may be divided into something like the following:

**Pure Ultraterrestrials:** These exclusively immaterial beings are not involved in abductions or UFO sightings, but are impersonal archetypal intelligences functioning more like oracles, guides, and divine emissaries of the highest caliber. Terms like “angels” and “archangels” are approximations of these beings. They are largely absent from UFO literature, but are mentioned in certain channeled, religious, and spiritual texts.

**Upper Ambiterrestrials:** Stay primarily in an immaterial, hyperdimensional state of pure consciousness beyond spacetime, but materialize bodies and vehicles as needed. They carry out functions as councilors, teachers, administrators, supervisors, and other leadership positions. Their focus is more on metaphysical matters, giving directives and instructions to lower ambiterrestrials based on their higher understanding and broader perspectives.

**Middle Ambiterrestrials:** Straddle the boundary between immaterial and material states of existence. They can temporarily materialize physical bodies and three dimensional physical ships into our world that can be touched, studied, and reverse engineered by humans, even though their bodies and ships dematerialize upon reverting to hyperdimensional form. They can directly project themselves into our reality with ease. Claims of positive aliens walking among us pretending to be human, but who are observers and servants of a divine cause, may be of this category. Their focus is equally divided between spiritual and technical matters.

**Lower Ambiterrestrials:** Stay primarily in material form but are slightly shifted beyond our perceptions. They could be time travelers from the future or denizens of a parallel physical plane or parallel timeline. They are completely tangible to each other in their native environment. If we were shifted into their environment, we would interact with them in a physical way. Same if they shifted fully into ours, which they can do, but apparently not as easily as the more advanced positive aliens. Their native realm is a state of shifted spacetime, which differs from complete dematerialization and exit from spacetime. Instead of consciously projecting a temporary ship into our reality, they would more likely shift an already existing one into ours. Relative to higher ambiterrestrials, they are more preoccupied with scientific, strategic, and diplomatic
matters, though not without spiritual and ethical considerations.

**Pure Extraterrestrials:** These types are completely physical and appear to only visit earth sporadically in small numbers. Given their physical limitations and resource restrictions, they would be prevented from traveling to earth in large numbers without being detected and preyed upon by more advanced negative alien factions. Being of positive orientation without having yet transcended physicality implies a certain naïveté and fragility that reduces odds of survival since, in physical environments, competition over finite resources is the default mode of existence. Therefore, positive extraterrestrials would be fewer and more discreet due to their heightened vulnerability.

Logic suggests a similar spectrum exists for negative alien beings: demonic ultraterrestrials at the top, space-faring physical beings at the bottom, and negative hyperdimensional aliens (negative ambiterrestrials) between those two extremes.

The relation between these two spectra may be represented as a sideways “Y” branching to the right, one path going up, the other going down. The paths are closer to each other near the branching point, diverging farther away. Those nearest to the branching point, meaning lowest on the spectrum, are the ones most likely to share common traits and directly interact with each other, either in conflict or cooperation. This is because they are less polarized along their respective paths and more entrenched in physicality. Physicality is a consensual reality that forces mutual causal interaction. So one might find lower positive and lower negative ambiterrestrials either in direct physical conflict with each other or, under rare and forced circumstances, working together if doing so allows achievement of independent aims.

Unlike negative alien societies, which are founded on competition, power, and deception and thus highly compartmentalized, positive alien societies are more harmonious, integrated, and unified with each other. This does not imply a hive-like collective consciousness where individuality is suppressed, but rather a harmonization of spiritually developed individuals into mutually resonant networks. In this network, a balance exists between individual development and societal cohesion, the latter arising from the spiritual basis of the first.

Those who connect with higher spiritual intelligence connect to the same divine source and therefore share a spiritual rapport and understanding with others who are also connected. This naturally leads to a brotherhood of sorts, born not out of programming or forced imposition by external authority, but of common basic understanding and shared love of truth, freedom, and balance. Nor should this be confused with sectarian religious aspirations, which in mixing dogma with personal bias lead to infighting and religious wars. True spirituality springs from a common source and leads to harmony and unity, whereas subjective belief systems accomplish the opposite.

Another point of consideration is that societal evolution and individual spiritual evolution are separate processes. Humanity may have progressed politically, technologically, and economically over the past several thousand years, but this does not mean the average human individual has correspondingly evolved. Vices like greed, ignorance, selfishness, hubris, jealousy, and wrath are as prevalent today as they were in ancient times. What seems like an advanced society may therefore be composed of unethical and spiritually unsophisticated individuals, kept in line only through sophisticated control systems, which would make it far from positive. So the outward appearance of peace, order, and scientific advancement of an alien group is not necessarily proof of underlying
positivity because these could just as well mask underlying individual spiritual atrophy.

Spiritual evolution is not just about studying and following religious morals or philosophical ethics, which amounts to programming by external sources, but rather maturing in soul so that the intrinsic wisdom, discernment, and conscience developed in one life continue into the next. Only if the distillation of higher spiritual intelligence is already present at birth, operates actively throughout life by guiding personal decisions and perspectives, and is built upon in successive incarnations, can that be called spiritual evolution. And only if a society consists of spiritually evolved individuals can it be called genuinely positive.

Individual evolution knows no bounds and may progress quicker than societal evolution. A single dedicated individual given proper esoteric training could accomplish in a few lifetimes what would take humanity, as a whole, thousands of years to reach. The difference between human civilization and positive aliens is this: what spiritual heights humans must achieve individually in defiance of the rest of society, positive aliens have achieved society-wide. The average human is therefore less advanced than the average ambiterrestrial, and so it may be said that ambiterrestrials are further up the evolutionary ladder than man.

On the other hand, some humans may be more advanced than some aliens. Consider certain esoteric masters who had profound impacts upon human spiritual awareness. Maybe they were native humans who rose far beyond the norm, or maybe some were upper ambiterrestrials who volunteered to incarnate into human society to contribute toward its upliftment. There could even exist a human spiritual brotherhood dedicated to our upliftment that is of a higher order of spiritual development than, say, a lower ambiterrestrial group that is more focused on dealing with the negative alien agenda, although both ultimately are part of the same divine network whether they know each other or not.

All this goes to show that the line between humans and aliens is blurred at the scale of the individual and gradated at the scale of society, so that what they can do widely by default, we can do individually as exceptions to our kind and will do society-wide after further spiritual evolution. So humanity should neither be denigrated, nor positive aliens deified, on the false assumption that the latter are universally superior to the first, because there are exceptions.

Exceptions likewise exist for aliens. Since individual development allows for some to be more highly evolved than others, then despite their unity, within a single positive alien civilization there could exist greater and lesser advanced aliens; both upper and lower ambiterrestrials working together, for example. It would be an error to assume that one alien civilization is exclusively lower ambiterrestrial while another is exclusively ultraterrestrial, since within each there will be exceptions. The average level of development is what differs between civilizations, and in that sense several positive civilizations may collaborate, some averaging closer to ultraterrestrial, the other closer to extraterrestrial, with the latter frequently deferring to the wisdom and guidance of the former.

Characteristics of Positive Humanoid Aliens

What are positive humanoid aliens like? We can estimate the answer through: 1) abductee and contactee accounts, keeping in mind the possibility of fabrication, embellishment, and impostors; 2) esoteric, mythological, and religious texts where mention is made of non-human benefactors; 3)
personal experiences through dreams, astral projection, abductions, and real world physical contact. From these areas I have derived the following approximation:

Their verbal and telepathic communications resound with truth and show great sobriety and depth of understanding, but they also have the humility, foresight, and consideration to simplify their communication and underplay their intelligence so as not to impose or intimidate. Therefore they may come across as reserved and careful to measure their words. In general, they are mindful of their influence and refrain from shortchanging our learning opportunities with prematurely provided answers. They are good at encrypting deeper truths into what they say, truths that reveal themselves only in hindsight when one has finally matured enough to understand them, yet they are equally talented at packing much meaning into few words and saying the right thing at the right time to make a catalytic and destined difference.

We can recognize in them a strong degree of sentience, lucidity, earnestness, intelligence, and wisdom, at least relative to ourselves. There is a misconception that higher positive beings are less than fully aware and alert, that being enlightened means they exist in a state of tranquilized bliss as though sedated and dishing out fluffy platitudes and fortune cookie aphorisms. Real positive beings have higher awareness, not truncated awareness. They are not blind to reality or numbed from acknowledging what we consider to be uncomfortable truths, but can see these clearly in their higher context and are very matter-of-fact about it all.

They possess love, empathy, and compassion but not at the expense of reason, wisdom, and understanding. Rather these two sides (higher emotional and higher intellectual) are fused into harmony and balance. Love without understanding leads to sentimentalism and gullibility, while understanding without love can lead to cold intellectualism and cruelty. Higher positive aliens, in having reached a certain level of spiritual development, suffer from neither defect. Balanced esoteric development systems bring human individuals to the same level of warmth and understanding.

Impostors can induce a counterfeit sense of warmth in their targets that restricts awareness by making them think the impostor must be a positive being radiating good vibes. However, these seemingly positive emotions are merely induced chemical or hormonal responses that cloud judgment instead of sharpening it. The genuine ones have a warmth that can be sensed without oneself necessarily being flooded with feelings, just as one can sense the heat of a fire without oneself being on fire; the impostors, however, figuratively “set one on fire” with induced emotions so that despite their cold hearts one might mistakenly project that warmth upon them. Impostors produce an effect that is suppressive of awareness rather than supportive. Real positive beings have the ultimate effect of making you more of who you truly are, elevating your perspective and clarity, whereas the impostors prune your awareness down to manageable size. There is always a sense of being entranced, numbed, hypnotized, or submerged when dealing with the impostor positives.

Positive beings, particularly the middle ambiterrestrials and above, never appeal to your baser instincts or use ego hooks to coerce cooperation. Instead they speak more to your higher reasoning and intuition. They don’t dangle gifts or privileges to get you to act against your better judgment, but may send unexpected compensation for having followed your better judgment during trying circumstances. They don’t try to impress with fancy titles, useless technical jargon intended to confound, or detailed yet superfluous trivia. Instead they take a practical and minimalist approach
by sticking to what matters. Sometimes they are hesitant to speak much about their identity or origins, since it could lead to many problems including personality worship and the compromising of their safety, the latter being a greater issue for lower ambiterrestrials due to their physicality.

While higher positive beings are more spiritually developed and refined than we currently are, they are not perfect by any means. The closer they are to our level of development, meaning the lesser their standing among the order higher positive beings, the more prone they are to acting on incomplete information, making naive assumptions, and misplacing their trust. Freewill leaves the future open within certain limits, so there is room for error. The lower the ambiterrestrial, the more limited their future sight. These errors are of a metaphysical order and cannot be placed on equal footing as the procedural mistakes made by seemingly innocent aliens, said by disinformative sources to account for the rough handling of abductees. They are metaphysical mistakes with metaphysical consequences, whereas the latter are physical mistakes with physical consequences.

This is one example of how positive and negative beings differ, in that the negative aliens are more partial toward physicality while the positive place greater emphasis on spirituality. Positive beings concern themselves more with liberation and perfection of the soul, preservation of freewill, proliferation of knowledge and wisdom, and other transcendental ideals, while negative aliens are more concerned with harvesting resources, genetic manipulations, and preservation of their livestock. This does not mean positive aliens are disdainful of physicality, indifferent to environmentalism, or immune to the necessity of technology, rather they simply know better than to invert their values and sacrifice the higher for the lower.

Ambiterrestrial Technology

Technology is needed to accomplish what consciousness alone cannot. Positive aliens only use it to the degree that they are corporeal (physical and/or etheric). Higher ambiterrestrials use less technology to accomplish the same things because they are less tethered to physicality and have greater conscious command over it.

The purely materialistic technology familiar to us can only develop so far before it hits the quantum threshold and the limits of determinism. Beyond that point it must become sub-quantum and ultra-relativistic, incorporating interdimensional and metaphysical factors to develop further. This describes lower ambiterrestrial technology, which allows for engineering of spacetime, dimensional rotation, traveling through time, modifying etheric energies, and interfacing consciousness directly with crafts and devices.

All that can be done by middle and upper ambiterrestrial technology as well, except they have taken the merger between consciousness and technology to an even higher art. It appears their technology is entirely malleable to consciousness, and thus fundamentally alchemical in nature. It looks and functions like technology but is actually a physical embodiment or etheric precipitation of thoughts, intent, and spiritual archetypes. The relation among its tangible parts mirrors the relation among its higher metaphysical components.

The main difference between negative and positive ambiterrestrial technology is the multidimensional reality spectrum each can access, which is broader for the positive due to their more balanced and holistic quality of consciousness resonating deeper with the divine root of Creation. Negative ambiterrestrials, in being barred from accessing that root, have to resort to
cunning, stalking, luring, hacking, stealing, and exploitation of loopholes to get their way.

Distinguishing Between Positive and Negative Forces

Positive and negative ambiterrestrials have unique and shared traits. Compiling a list of the unique traits will help us identify the orientation of a particular alien faction, while a list of shared traits would show what cannot be exclusively relied upon to make that determination. This is useful because impostors use shared traits to “prove” their positive orientation and sugarcoat their uniquely negative traits.

So what follows is a list of shared, uniquely negative, and uniquely positive traits. Not all positive types will have all the positive traits, but they all should lack the uniquely negative traits. Likewise, not all negative types will have all the listed negative traits, but they all should lack the uniquely positive traits. This list should only be used as a guideline for further contemplation and improvement, and not as a rigid checklist to apply in a perfunctory fashion. The distinction between positive and negative forces must be made out of genuine understanding, intuition, and experience, in consideration of the circumstances and performed on a case-by-case basis.

Shared Traits

Either may respect freewill, stepping in only when asked. The difference is that positive aliens respect it fully and demand it be an informed and sincere choice, while negative aliens only respect freewill as something to covertly manipulate into granting them permission and legalizing their subsequent takeover. Both might ask us for permission before opening full contact, both may encourage us to carry ourselves instead of becoming dependent on them. The difference is that negative aliens would preprogram the population into making the desired choice and position opinion leaders within society to covertly steer progress in their favor.

Either may voice environmental concerns for Earth. Negative aliens have a vested interest in saving the planet for themselves: they may desire Earth as breeding grounds, staging grounds for further conquests, and for the harvesting its natural resources. For modern culture it is politically correct to champion environmentalism, and the idea of living in harmony with the earth has an air of spirituality to it. Advocating these ideals is not at all in conflict with a negative alien agenda, as it would polish their image and increase the sustainability and efficiency of their “farm” if human “livestock” have been instilled with enough reverence for the farmland to maintain it themselves. So aliens espousing environmental concerns and choosing humans to be caretakers of the earth is not necessarily proof of positivity, though neither is it exclusive proof of negativity since respect for the environment is good and necessary regardless. It seems to be a lower priority for positive aliens, perhaps because they understand the ephemeral and illusory nature of physicality in contrast to the greater reality and immortality of the soul, or maybe they are simply aware that natural and cosmic cycles have caused far greater damage to Earth than humans could ever inflict.

Either might provide advanced technology to help with energy and food production, transportation, medical needs, and other necessities. Negative aliens would use this as a false sign of goodwill and provide nothing they couldn’t easily disable, revoke, or overcome if things turn sour; their gift of technology may also be used as a bargaining chip and Trojan horse. Both would more freely provide it on a smaller scale to their trained human contacts to ensure their survival through difficult times. Positive aliens would be more reserved about offering their own technology, especially
considering the suppressed human inventions already in existence that only need freedom to proliferate.

Either may advocate peace, nonviolence, social harmony, and unity. For negative aliens, besides improving their image by contradicting the expectations of violent alien hostility, these ideals preserve order, efficiency, and docility within their controlled population and thereby help disable dissent and independent thinking. Enemies (those resisting assimilation) need merely be branded as enemies of peace, harmony, and unity to allow justification of their persecution, including violent persecution in the defense of these ideals. Their unity and harmony is enforced from the outside and crushes the soul inward, whereas for positive aliens unity and harmony are the outward consequence of people awakening to a common understanding through independent spiritual development.

Both prioritize ends over means, especially lower ambiterrestrials with dedicated missions who are more entrenched within physicality, linear time, and therefore causality. What matters to them is the big picture and long-term outcome. The benevolence of positive aliens comes from understanding rather than passivity or sentimentalism, therefore they are not necessarily soft, complaisant, or always forthcoming. If an individual or society lacks the required maturity to handle the truth, positive aliens may resort to disguises, riddles, or silence instead of giving the truth and injuring the long-term outcome, thus they may seem unforthcoming or even dishonest if pushed. Likewise, they may allow a person to undergo grave suffering if absolutely necessary for their spiritual maturation. This is not in contradiction to compassion, but a consequence of compassion married to higher understanding. So the presence of abandonment, seeming cruelty, pretense, and secretiveness are not necessarily proof of negativity, as sometimes they are the only means available to accomplish positive ends. This should not be confused with rationalizations employed by negative aliens to justify their torture tactics, which are sadistic means serving negative ends.

Either may include Nordic aliens working with Greys. Although Greys appear to be organic automatons manufactured by negative alien factions to do the brunt of abduction work, some may be repurposed by lower positive ambiterrestrials to assist with the handling of human contacts. The presence of Greys does not, by itself, prove an alien group is benevolent or malevolent, although negative alien factions seem to use them more often.

Either may show up in dazzling ships and be physically attractive. No matter how sparkling, golden, crystalline, and seemingly divine the appearance of an alien ship, and no matter how noble, powerful, and angelic the appearance of its inhabitants, these qualities do not prove positive orientation. Negative forces are thoroughly familiar with our religious anticipations, scientific expectations, and psychological weaknesses, and they would do well to cloak themselves in these. Rather we should be mindful of the context and timing of their appearance, the consequences of their words and actions, and our intuitive reading of their intent.

**Traits Unique to Negative/Impostor Aliens**

Regardless of what they say, their true intent is revealed by the end results of their actions. They aim to position themselves as controlling authorities using the most indirect but efficient means possible. For instance, they might mimic positive aliens and say we must move forward out of our own freewill, that they are not here to save us. While that resembles a respect for freewill, it would
be a ruse prodding us into legitimizing tyranny through the illusion of democracy. This could come about through the covert manipulation of public opinion through disinformation and well-placed opinion leaders so that the voluntary choices we make are in alignment with their agenda. So it matters little what technology, teachings, and leadership they offer; if the result is that we have less discernment, freedom, and spiritual power while they have more control and leverage, then that signifies a negative orientation. We don’t have to wait to see the final results to make this determination; it will be evident early on from the direction things take in response to their open arrival.

They will demand heavy sacrifices, loss of freedoms, loss of sovereignty, in exchange for our security and survival. They do this by purposely ignoring and suppressing healthier alternatives that let us achieve security and survival not by conceding our sovereignty, but by utilizing it through increased awareness, vigilance, self-reliance, networking, responsibility, and spiritual balance.

People who are first and loudest to promote them also display the strongest indicators of being disinformation vectors.

They may encourage fanaticism, worship, deification, and pompous ceremonies to manipulate the masses into supporting them. They do this by targeting emotions, political correctness, false assumptions, wishful thinking, desperation, radical idealism, and other sub-rational vulnerabilities.

They either deny the existence of negative aliens, or else admit to their existence and scapegoat some disposable alien faction that is too small and limited to account for all the types of negative alien activities known to seasoned researchers. Their description of negative aliens may also be out of step with reality, too simplistic and catering to popular misconceptions, and likely ignoring the possibility of negative impostors.

If their ranks include both Reptilians and Mantids, they are almost certainly a negative alien faction or alliance. Each alone already has a deeply tarnished reputation in abduction research, and both working together reduces even further the possibility of positive orientation.

They will likely be first to reveal themselves because they are interventionists and have thoroughly set the stage for their appearance. Since their sales pitch would flop in the face of truths revealed by any genuine positive alien groups coming before them, they would have to show up before those groups can establish an atmosphere of discerning awareness. Once they seize overt control, however, they would have to further acculturate and program people so that positive groups who arrive later to expose the deception are received as attackers on the collective ego, maybe perceived as selfish traditionalists trying to keep humanity from reaping the technological rewards of alliance with the other alien factions.

They may show off their powers and technology to dazzle, persuade, and intimidate. They would leverage these demonstrations to make themselves appear more powerful than they are, contradict and deconstruct existing human paradigms to be replaced with their own, take more credit than they deserve (like claiming they are the sole creators of the human race), and dangle technological gifts as incentives for our cooperation. This has happened in our own history many times between power-tripping explorers and culture-shocked natives.

They resemble a cult in their interactions with humans. The same tactics used by cults to
depersonalize and program recruits can and probably will be used on the population at large by negative aliens. This includes portraying the leaders as divine (aliens as our creators); breaking down the old identity (shattering people's views of reality and deconstruction old paradigms); portraying an old part of oneself as evil and outmoded (scapegoating of the corrupt human power structure); love bombing (saying they are here to help and guide us, that they are our loving brethren); confessionals (debasing humanity); fanaticism (addiction to the cause of progress and renewal); and isolation from friends and family (quarantine and separation of the “progressive people” and “elite hybrid class” from the lower remnants of society).

If they espouse a spirituality that we should adopt, it is one that results in pacification, suggestibility, depersonalization, submission, and lowered discernment. It may carry overtones of existentialism, Buddhism, deism, pantheism, and other impersonal philosophies that can serve the alien agenda while maintaining the appearance of reasonableness and sanctity. Non-dualism serves as a convenient diversion for negative entities. Ultimately, the spirituality they push will be a form of spiritual materialism that disconnects us from higher spiritual intelligence, something that logically justifies their authority through a modernized version of Divine Right by Kings, that keeps us loyal to their cause, and that prepares us for becoming more like them.

**Traits Unique to Positive Aliens**

When one intuitively feels their vibe or clairvoyantly scans the quality of their consciousness, one will sense wholesomeness, sincerity, intelligence, sobriety, composure, thoughtfulness, and foresight.

They place high value on learning, knowledge, discernment, wisdom, understanding, and other virtues of consciousness, not only by saying they value these, but by demonstrating it in action and consequence through the imparting of verifiable, practical, and profound information that has an empowering effect upon the individual receiving and comprehending it.

They make appeals to reason, experience, intuition, and the inner knowing that comes with higher spiritual intelligence. They refrain from making persuasive appeals to ego, blind emotionalism, wishful thinking, false assumptions, and other hooks. So they address the higher more mature aspects of being, instead of the baser and more ignorant aspects. For example, they would never play up their authority by loading their words with fancy titles or obscure technical jargon intended to impress.

They take a conscientious approach to interaction with humans and demonstrate a deep respect for freewill, independent development, and self-discovery. Thus they minimize their profile and downplay their identity to avoid triggering a worship and deification response that would turn them into objects of obsession and preoccupation and draw attention away from the higher purpose of the interaction.

They aim to help us make informed decisions, rather than persuade us to make a particular decision. The more informed we are, the better. Therefore they would not withhold certain information if it would help us make a wiser decision. This includes information on negative forces and their methods of deception.

They are careful to avoid creating dependency. Instead of carrying us on their backs or leading us
like sheep, they would rather we become self-sufficient and discerning, to pull our own weight through our own challenges. At best they act as catalysts, moderators, and assistants to this process, but never as substitutes.

They place greater emphasis on our spiritual liberation and evolution than technological development. Only if the latter indirectly safeguards the first would technological help be given. Otherwise they would withhold technology until we advance ethically and intellectually enough to understand and use it responsibly. They would more likely drop technological catalysts into the minds of human inventors without revealing themselves, so that it takes root and advances in a natural fashion within human society instead of being traumatically imposed from the outside.

In their interactions with people, they resemble an altruistic esoteric mystery school. They are discreet, choose their disciples wisely, advance their disciples through stages of initiation, aim to build their disciples into more capable and empowered human beings, and have the purpose of preserving human freewill and catalyzing its evolution.

Ultimately they are selfless, not in the sense of lacking individuality, but in being mindful of the spiritual welfare of others and dedicated to the balance and harmony of the entire system and not just themselves. They never manipulate or steal from others to satisfy their own needs. If their understanding of a situation demands self-sacrifice, or if they are given a divine mission that requires it, they will act accordingly, bravely and with honor.

They advocate the transcending of ignorant, anti-spiritual, animalistic, egoistic, and selfish impulses without necessarily berating these but pointing out a higher way. Their dedication is to the spiritual perfection of the individual.

In revealing themselves to the world, they are unlikely to be the first ones. Our civilization is unprepared for contact and they would be responsible for the traumatic results. Positive aliens would be burdened with reactions of irrational fear and worship, of having to educate humanity on the nature of alien life, all while having to keep the peace and transition people into the post-Disclosure world. The logistics of this are too difficult. Better that they allow the impostors to show up first and expend their own resources to transition us. Then, after human opposition mounts but before negative forces have taken full control, they can step in and impart critical information to turn the tide. It is after tasting the bitter fruit of deception and learning some important lessons that humanity will appreciate and understand what they offer. Only then will deep and prolonged contact with positive forces be possible.

Problematic Probable Futures

What can we do? How can we prepare? This depends on what will happen. So many factors are converging to create a nonlinear chaotic situation that even the wildest outcomes once thought impossible can become possible and even likely. Let’s take another look at some future scenarios, except this time by listing individual components that could be mixed and matched to create various scenarios.

Political debates, ideological wars and movements: This assumes the world remains fully stable and civil, all infrastructure intact, life relatively normal. Upon Disclosure and contact there would begin a process of philosophical, scientific, political, and religious debate to decide on future
human-alien relations. This would turn into ideological battles along deeply polarized lines. Most of the conflict would be done through verbal, written, political means, and knowledge, information, awareness will counter disinformation and ignorance. The internet will play an important role in facilitating the debate, alongside television and radio.

**Police state lock-down, global government, totalitarianism:** The world is already shifting into authoritarianism. If this continues and reaches its conclusion, then along with disinformation and ignorance, the other challenge will be operating within an oppressive climate where dissenters are branded as terrorists or enemy combatants and preemptively detained or denied vital services.

**Temporary period of chaos requiring survival:** Natural disasters, real or staged terror attacks, and nuclear or electronic warfare can damage infrastructure and heavily disrupt the modern way of life. Food, water, and energy distribution, transportation, and communication would all be impaired. For example, extreme solar activity could collapse modern civilization by frying out vital electronics, with effects similar to an EMP attack and results similar to New Orleans after Hurricane Katrina, except nationwide. The response would be a combination of people coming together to support each other, others descending into anarchy as desperation sets in, and harsh measures by the authorities to maintain order, distribute supplies, and round up troublemakers into internment camps.

**Division of survivors into “in-system” and “out-system” groups:** Social chaos never lasts long, even the Dark Ages eventually returned to order. The question is which type of order, under whose authority, and at what cost. If modern life is disrupted for several months or years and the government and military retain their continuity, then the restored order would likely be on the authoritarian side, though limited in geographic reach due to logistical limitations. This suggests there would be limited pockets where order is restored under an authoritarian regime, where survivors make heavy concessions to live within those territories. The rest of the remaining population would be cut off from the system and forced to fend for itself, eventually forming a parallel culture to the technocratic one. Science fiction has depicted this possibility in many instances.

**Post-apocalyptic tribalism under alien gods:** This assumes modern civilization collapses completely and no organized authority remains. Mankind would then split into tribes, and if aliens interceded it would reestablish conditions similar to ancient times where particular alien factions presided over their respective human tribes.

**Dimensional Shift and reality splitting into separate timelines or realms of existence:** The previous possibilities assumed a single consensual reality. If a timeline split occurs, different people would shunt onto separate probable futures depending on their individual spiritual profiles. This may evolve into a dimensional shift where some individuals graduate to the level shared by lower amnberiterrestrials. It would be a rotation away from our current timeline, which could continue on without them and undergo some of the more apocalyptic scenarios given above.

**Post-Shift disorientation and choosing sides:** Direct contact with lower amnberiterrestrials is inevitable for portions of humanity who undergo a Shift into their native environment. Confusion would follow as various amnberiterrestrial factions vie for the allegiance of the newcomers.

**Arrival of alien reinforcements for physical conquest:** There is always the possibility that
negative aliens will resort to force if their plans for a peaceful takeover meet failure due to popular backlash. While the peaceful method of conquest is more efficient and less troublesome, that does not mean a fallback plan of physical enforcement or annihilation is out of the question. Since this enforcement would require a large battalion, which for the past several thousand years had no reason to stay nearby earth, such a battalion would have to be brought in from afar.

**Total warfare, UFO sky battles, activated sleepers:** If anyone crosses the line and upsets the balance of power through use of force, whether out of fear or desperation, then anything goes. There is a pattern within the abduction and MILAB phenomenon of abductees being trained to pilot advanced crafts, operate exotic weaponry, and employ superhuman powers in warlike situations between humans and aliens or between opposing alien factions; they would only need to be triggered and called up to perform those functions. The potential for human-alien or alien-alien war exists.

**Solutions**

Things could go any number of ways depending which of the above components combine in what sequence. This makes finding appropriate solutions difficult because there are so many possibilities to take into account.

I have decided to completely skip idealistic solutions focused on institutional initiatives, social movements, and political activism because these arise and evolve on their own. Instead I will focus on individual solutions that pay off regardless of the scenario, that can be put into practice immediately. This means spiritual preparation and informational preparation.

**Informational Preparation**

*Be aware and choose accordingly:* Throwing your support behind the wrong leader, signing the wrong petition, recommending the wrong source, or joining the wrong movement can all be prevented by acquiring enough awareness to know what you would actually be supporting. The points raised in this book can help you sidestep the more regrettable choices like naively recommending blatant disinformation or promoting an alien group that has all the signs of being negative impostors. Other people may not know any better, but now you do. The more aware you become, the wiser your decisions, and the more your words, thoughts, and actions meet their mark and reinforce positive futures.

*Balance one-sided discussions and remedy naive viewpoints:* You may find yourself in a personal conversation, email correspondence, or message board discussion where the topic of aliens or some related topic comes up. If the points made are clearly ill-informed, founded on false assumptions, or promoting disinformation, then the duty falls upon you (assuming you have the knowledge) to add some balance by offering counter-ideas for consideration, or sharing a source you find valuable and including your own commentary on the source. The goal is not to forcefully convince others, as that would be preaching, but rather to give them the opportunity to make a more informed decision by considering some new ideas or sources. If they stubbornly ignore it and rationalize it away and you find there is nothing more you can do, then be at peace knowing you did your part. Otherwise guilt will weigh on your conscience for not having spoken up when you could have.

*Collect, archive, and share important information:* Having a growing collection of books, videos,
links, and other materials at your fingertips allows you to quickly get others up to speed by connecting them with the right information. Also, the internet may not be around much longer, so it would be a good idea to archive materials that may soon become unavailable.

Expand and refine your communication skills: If necessary, put some effort into polishing up your verbal and written skills. You may find yourself needing to impart your share of knowledge and information to others and it would be a shame if the process were bottlenecksed by communication shortfalls.

**Spiritual Preparation**

*Keep alive compassion and understanding:* If nothing else, cultivating compassion and understanding will keep you from falling into arrogance, cynicism, and depression that may come with knowing about the negative aspects of this existence. Unpleasant truths should not be ignored, but understood fully in context of a bigger spiritual picture. This can be trained in everyday situations that would otherwise provoke bitter, vengeful, envious, contemptuous thoughts.

*Stay levelheaded in times of distress:* Panic, frustration, rage, and terror are examples of losing self-control, and that means temporary loss of rationality, freewill, and balance. It means reacting mechanically instead of acting consciously and responsibly. Instead of being blindly shoved forward by those impulses, one must become self-aware and willfully focused on the task at hand. The hardest challenge will be staying in touch with your intuition and reasoning when a calamitous situation attempts to sweep you away. We face little tests like these periodically, and they make good practice for seeing how calm you can stay under pressure. The more you maintain your composure during these situations, the better prepared you will be in the times ahead.

*Use intent to shape probability where necessary:* Thoughts, emotions, and intent shape the probability of your experiences. This can be proven through personal experimentation. You can boost the probability of success, assistance, and protection by earnestly praying or intending for these, and likewise you can reduce the probability of failure, attack, or misfortune by being calmly aware of their possibility and preparing to handle them should they arise. Mastering this conscious influence over your personal subsection of reality helps level the playing field by extending your abilities beyond mere physical causality.

*Stay in synchronistic flow:* Life moves with a certain flow that points in the direction of optimal probable futures. When you are in synchronization with this flow, everything falls into place, works out smoothly, and you feel energized and enthusiastic. The results of staying in the flow are progress, success, balance, and growth in awareness. When out of the flow, things fall apart, meet failure, suffer unnecessary setbacks, and you feel a sense of emptiness or wrongness about the path. Staying in the flow involves a combination of right attitude, right choices, and right actions. Through observation one can determine the inner and outer conditions necessary to stay in the flow.

*Develop psychic abilities:* If developed safely and used wisely, psychic abilities like precognition, auric vision, etheric energy manipulation for healing purposes further even the odds. The most basic psychic skill that anyone can develop is intuition. Intuition can be developed by noticing which inner impressions heralded certain external outcomes. The test of genuine intuition is whether it consistently turns out to be right. If it was wrong, then it wasn’t real intuition. After sufficient trial and error, real intuition will be distinguishable from false signals (like wishful thinking).
Physical preparation is also necessary, but I have no need to cover it myself since material on survivalism is easy to find. My only suggestion there is to stock up on durable goods, keep most of the cash out of the bank, exercise to increase your strength and endurance, and boost your immune system through a diet free of wheat, dairy, and refined sweeteners. I can say from experience, however, that spiritual preparation is more powerful since it alters probability and works across a wide spectrum of scenarios, whereas physical preparations target only a few scenarios predicted in advance.

**Conclusion**

The cards are being stacked against intuition, sound reasoning, and verboten evidence through the arsenal of disinformation, mind-programming, groomed opinion leaders, and other weapons of mass manipulation discussed in the preceding parts. Along with sharp reasoning, intuition is our most natural and immediate line of defense against alien deception. It is the beginning of higher spiritual intelligence where truth is recognized directly, and thus it undercuts clever sophistry, emotional manipulation, and selective evidence, which appeal only to intellect and emotionalism.

The actual standards of positivity are already engraved in our souls and express themselves in moments of spiritual conscience and knowingness. We must remember what we truly stand for by turning within and recognizing the resonant goals and values there. These are buried beneath all the false goals and values grafted onto us by societal and biological programming. That is the depth we must plumb if we are to be ready for open contact with alien life.

---

**Notes**

1. Higher spiritual intelligence, in context of the alien impostor agenda, is discussed extensively in the *works of Marshall Vian Summers*

2. Examples include the “sixth density social memory complexes” mentioned by the *Ra Material* and *Cassiopaean Transcripts*, the “Unseen Ones” mentioned in the *Allies of Humanity* books, the INSPEC being mentioned in *Far Journeys* by Robert Monroe, “Seth Two” channeled by Jane Roberts, aeons of the Gnostics, and the angelic hierarchies delineated in various religions.

3. See *The Secret of the Saucers* (Angelucci, 1955) for an account of the spiritual and alchemical nature of higher ambiterrestrial technology. Alchemy and sacred architecture both mirror higher reality, the first with respect to sequence and substance, the second regarding geometry and proportion. Higher positive ambiterrestrials may harmonize the tangible with the intangible elements of their technology in the hermetic fashion of “As above, so below.” They might even be the inspirers of alchemy, sacred architecture, and hermeticism.

4. The government-funded EMP Commission analyzed the potential consequences of electromagnetic disruptions caused by solar activity or high altitude nuclear weapons. Their report may be read at [http://empcommission.org](http://empcommission.org). Every solar cycle peak carries the risk of a catastrophic EMP event. If solar activity depends on planetary positions, then the next catastrophic solar flare is predictable. In that case, savvy elements in the military and government aware of this catastrophe might already be preparing opportunistic contingencies for this event.
Selected Resources

George C. Andrews *Extra-terrestrial Friends and Foes* (Illuminet Press, 1993)

Orfeo Angelucci *Secret of the Saucers* (Amherst Press, 1955)

Orfeo Angelucci *Son of the Sun* (DeVorss, 1959)

Anonymous *The Blue Planet Project*


James Bartley *MILAB Operations*


Trevor Constable *The Cosmic Pulse of Life* (Borderland Sciences Research Foundation, 1990)

Carissa Conti *Chasing Phantoms* (Lulu, Inc. 2009)

Ellen Crystall *Silent Invasion* (St. Martin’s Press, 1994)


Elaine Douglas *The Breaking of Jim Sparks, or Why the Aliens Don’t Land on the White House Lawn* (Journal of Abduction Research 2007#2)


fore *My Experiences (Grey, Pleiadeans and Oddities)* (Open Minds Forum)

Lynn Grabhorn *Dear God What’s Happening to Us?* (Hampton Roads Publishing, 1993)


David Jacobs *The Threat* (Simon & Schuster, 1999)

Morris K. Jessup *The Case for the UFO (Varo Edition)*

Nigel Kerner *Song of the Greys* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1999)
Laura Knight-Jadczyk *The Wave Series*


Eve Lorgen *The Love Bite* (ELogos & HHC Press, 1994)

Barbara Marciniak *Bringers of the Dawn* (Bear & Company, 1992)

Robert Monroe *Far Journeys* (Main Street Books, 1992)

Nexus Seven *Top Secret/Demon*

Nexus Seven *The 33 Arks of Soul Resonance Investment Futures*

Rueckert, McCartney, Elkins *The Ra Material* (Donning Company Publishers, 1984)


Ronald Rummel aka “Creston” *Alien Digest, Vol 1-4*


G. Cope Schellhorn *Is Someone Killing Our UFO Investigators?*


Michael Tsarion *Atlantis, Alien Visitation, and Genetic Manipulation*

Karla Turner *Taken* (Kelt Works, 1994)

Charles Upton *Cracks in the Great Wall* (Sophia Perennis, 2005)


Stuart Wilde *God’s Gladiators* (Brookemark Llc, 2003)

**Other Resources**

Wising Up to Alien Interference

7 August 13 (alien)
This Q&A is a paraphrased transcript of three radio interviews I did with Sienna Lea on her show Illuminating the Shadowland. The original audio interviews are also posted on YouTube.

Introduction
The public perception of the UFO phenomenon centers around lights seen in the sky, reports of encounters with beings and ships that have landed in the woods, and certain people getting abducted for experimentation and breeding purposes. These do happen, but they are only the tip of the
Most alien influences are much more subtle and widespread. Their abilities include teleportation, invisibility, telepathy, and viewing of probable futures. This allows them to be more ubiquitous than commonly assumed. For instance, they can be standing by your bed while you sleep and telepathically insert commands into your subconscious. They can look over your shoulder as you type. They can monitor internet forums, pay attention to what people read and think of them. They can track who networks with whom, toward what possible outcomes, and what potentials for misunderstanding can be leveraged to break up those networks. Whereas lights in the sky are intentional displays to slowly acclimate the public to their existence, this more serious stuff is surreptitious and not meant to be noticed.

Now, they don’t have a personal interest in most people because most are of no consequence to them, except indirectly as far as total public perception goes. But if you are personally a threat to them, say by exposing their activities and methods, or if you are someone they find potentially useful as a proxy for their agenda, then they can be in your life without you ever remembering an abduction or having a UFO sighting. In other words, their reach extends beyond the typical abductees, contactees, and sighting witnesses. Thus far more people than assumed are under their observation and influence, and the alien phenomenon as a whole cannot be kept at arm’s length, as some abstract phenomenon that stays safely between the pages of a UFO book.

Why should people care about this subject?
Because the increase in sightings, contacts, abductions, and saturation of alien imagery and concepts in media and entertainment suggests alien open contact will happen in our lifetimes. It will change human history forever. Over time, the impacts will dwarf any of the mundane concerns people still take seriously today. The future can go very wrong, or very well depending on how we respond. If we’re not informed, we will be no better off than the natives who blindly welcomed the Spanish conquistadors. Misconceptions, disinformation, and wishful thinking are convincing people to support the wrong team. We just have to wise up, get informed, and not fall for it.

Where do they come from?
Any combination of possibilities: from the future, from a parallel reality, from some higher dimension we cannot perceive, some from other planets, some could be humans that long ago branched off and became more advanced than the rest of humanity. These possibilities are not mutually exclusive. For example, one alien faction might be human-like time travelers from a future where they have established colonies on other star systems and transcended to a higher dimension we cannot perceive.

Are they physical or nonphysical beings?
Both, neither, and in between. It seems to vary depending on the alien in question. They have bodies, real ships, working technology, and bases so we know they are physical to a degree. But by using technology or psychic powers they can change the dial on the radio station, so to speak. We are on one station; they can shift to other stations. To us it looks like they dematerialize. But really they are just shifting in/out of our reality. I would say the majority is quasi-physical or variably physical. They are not as entrenched in the limitations of physicality as we are. From a physics
viewpoint, aliens demonstrate they have command over macroscopic quantum phenomena.

Are they good or evil?
They span the whole spectrum. Make no mistake, every alien faction has an agenda. Just that some agendas are in our best interest, some are not, and that defines whether an intention is good or bad — regardless of whether such distinctions exist at the absolute metaphysical level. There are obvious good guys, obvious bad guys, and then there are bad guys pretending to be good guys. What many channelers and contactees or abductees think are good aliens, are actually impostors. Telling the difference is important, and my article series Discerning Alien Disinformation is directed toward that goal.

Why are they here?
It ranges from one extreme to the other and everything in between. Some seem dedicated to our enlightenment and spiritual liberation, even if only to safeguard their own timeline if they are time travelers. Others are bent on total planetary control through deception and persuasion, for they are interested in us — not just our planet, but us humans — as a natural resource and strategic asset. Sure, some could be here as scientific observers or neutral referees, but those are not the only roles present. If you pay attention, you will see that since ancient times, there has been a tug of war going on. It’s over the future of this planet and the human race. They have a strategic interest in us, in our planet, in our future. William Bramley’s book “The Gods of Eden” gets into that. Factions from the future could even be engaged in a kind of quantum-based timewar over their shared past to restructure the timeline in their favor.

How long have they been here?
As Lloyd Pye points out, there’s evidence of genetic engineering in our DNA. We have fewer chromosomes than some worms, ferns, and even chimpanzees. We have genetic diseases that are unheard of among undomesticated animals. Aliens have surely been around since before the dawn of our species and played a role in genetically engineering or modifying us. Sumerian, Biblical, Greek, and Hindu mythology claim mankind was created by superhuman beings. The ancients called them gods, archons, angels, or jinn. This shows they’re not recent visitors to Earth, certainly not recent curious scientific explorers who just happened upon our world. They’ve been watching and influencing us since antediluvian times.

What are some common misconceptions about aliens?
1) That if they are advanced enough to get here, they must be evolved as a civilization, thus they must be good. Not so. If a hostile faction on their home planet uses nonviolent manipulation, they can slowly take over the rest of their planet without resorting to self-destroying forms of warfare. Then they can mold their civilization into a totalitarian dystopia hostile to other worlds. Think of what would have happened if the Nazis won the war. They came incredibly close. Had they succeeded, within several generations they would be colonizing other planets and enslaving those they considered subhuman.

2) That what we focus on we attract, therefore we shouldn’t think about negative aliens. The Law of Attraction only applies to synchronistic attraction. If you stop attracting, you’re not blocking either.
They can still enter your life if they want, and they will do so if your ignorance can be exploited for their convenience.

3) That the government is bad, aliens are good. Ancient history and mythology suggest alien factions have battled each other. If they are all good, why were they fighting one another? What of the Battle of Nuremberg in 1516 when UFO fleets were seen shooting each other down? Undoubtedly there are negative alien factions here on Earth. And it’s more likely that the core of our shadow government, whose nucleus was seeded by the Nazis brought over after the war, are in league with the same negative alien factions that were in contact with Hitler and the Thule Society that birthed Nazism as an occult organization. If the shadow government is shooting down anyone, it’s the positive alien factions who refused to sign technology exchange treaties with them. These black ops groups may be using technology given to them by negative alien factions. So to say the government is bad, and aliens are good, is a gross and dangerous oversimplification.

Why haven’t they contacted us openly?
They do contact certain people and allow themselves to be seen at certain times in a certain controlled way. They don’t need to turn on their lights when they fly around, yet they do… for a purpose. They want to be seen, just in a measured way. It’s been an incremental desensitization and viral marketing effort that’s been going on since the 40s. And it’s accelerating toward a threshold. That means it will come to a head soon.

But why not full public contact yet? The “good guys” probably think our planet as a whole is not mature enough to handle alien contact calmly and wisely. It would do more harm than good.

Meanwhile, the “bad guys” don’t have all their pieces in place yet, but they’re getting close. They stay hidden to avoid painting themselves as targets. And the shadow government doesn’t want to upset the status quo either, not until they have enough totalitarian controls in place to prevent chaos when the alien presence is revealed.

So none have had reason yet to make public contact. The first to do so, however, will be the negative factions once programming of the population and police state controls are adequately in place. Should these forces cross a certain line, then positive factions might show up to help level the playing field by informing us of the deception. But they certainly wouldn’t show up first, as then they would have to shoulder the burden of being responsible for sending our civilization into a culture-shock induced tailspin. Nor are they in a position to orchestrate a police state lockdown to make sure we can face such a shock without total anarchy.

Why haven’t aliens taken over the planet when we were primitive?
Because not until recently have we developed the level of global government and technology needed to enslave ourselves. Now we have GPS, satellites, cameras, drones, NSA surveillance of every communication, militarized police, a global strike force, a global military. We have the mining infrastructure, water distillation plants, genetic raw material industries. We have everything needed to run our own prison, our own farm, and that’s far less work that these aliens have to do. If they tried it even five hundred years ago, they’d have to supply all the technology, training, and manpower themselves. Look at what the US forces in Afghanistan had to do to create the new Afghan military from the ground up, it’s a total mess. If the US had taken over the UK, the
technology and infrastructure would already be in place there and would only have to be repurposed toward quelling dissent against the occupiers.

**Why do negative aliens work through persuasion and deception instead of force?**

It’s a softer, subtler form of hostility. They’re trying to keep us from making informed decisions, decisions that would interfere with their attempt to one day win over our hearts and minds through deception. That’s why even now, if you speak out against them, reveal their tactics, ask too many questions on a message board, you can and will gain their attention. They are quite neurotic about controlling and shaping public perception of them, just like any corporation worried about its image because that affects their bottom line. In practice though, aliens can already detect your probable future of causing them harm before you even speak the first word against them. I believe some people are profiled as a threat from infancy, and are abducted throughout life to ensure they never reach their potential.

They are micromanaging the little problem spots on the timeline, to keep them from becoming bigger problems in the future. It could be as simple as you starting to read an important book or website on this issue, and suddenly you’re overcome with an intense desire to fall asleep. Or you wake up the next day and all motivation to look into that subject has been wiped from you, even though you were all enthusiastic before going to sleep. What happened during the night? You don’t have to be taken for hybrid breeding purposes, to get visited and tinkered with.

So aliens use a variety of tactics to shut down spiritual and strategic awakenings in people. They are telepathic. They can read your thoughts, and they can influence your thoughts and feelings to an extent. It’s more a pressure than a total override, though they are capable of the latter as well if they are permitted to exercise that level of control. They can put hypnotic commands into your subconscious while you sleep, that influence you into doing, saying, thinking, or feeling what they require you to. Again, I say influence because it’s not total forced mind control. Most of the time it’s subtle persuasion, but it has a very high success rate because humans are so mindless and don’t question their own impulses.

If we’re aware of it, we can keep ourselves from following through with it. For instance, when coming across an important book on the subject, instead of saying “gee I’m sleepy, I guess I better go to bed” even though it’s two hours before your bedtime, become aware that something unusual is happening, and fight it off. That’s an easy one. Other forms of influencing play on your ego, your insecurities, your emotional weaknesses. Those are harder, because one needs self-examination, willpower, honesty, and humility to not play into ego hooks.

**What is the demiurgic Matrix control grid?**

This is a question of who’s really running the show, what’s really behind the system of spiritual oppression on this planet. If we look at who is controlling our society, on the surface it looks like the problem could be greedy corporations or corrupt politicians, but if you dig deeper you will find that their strings are really being pulled by secret societies and shadow military groups. But even those guys, by their own admission, ultimately take their orders from non-human beings, and here I mean aliens. So let’s look at what’s going on with aliens then.

From the abduction literature we know that the gray aliens are the most commonly reported. And
it’s probably because they are more like worker bots that are put on the front line of the abduction program to do most of the handling of the abductees. They’re the ones flipping the burgers, so to speak. Grays never act on their own, they’re always looking up the chain of command for instruction. Sometimes they are seen with reptilians, insectoids, or human-looking aliens who appear to have the role of supervisor. Therefore it’s safe to say that the Grays are working for these other aliens, and that therefore these latter ones are the ones in charge. Then the big question is, whom do they ultimately serve? Who or what is their God?

Well, several sources I’ve come across claim that the reptilians worship the physical universe itself. But I think it would be more accurate to say that they worship the soul of the physical universe, which by definition would be what the Greeks and Gnostics called the Demiurge. It’s basically the soul of the matrix control system, the underlying source code that keeps it running. It’s a kind of subtle energy field that permeates this universe and holds it together in a certain configuration.

Now why is this important? Because if you want to control physical reality, you have to do it through the Demiurge in some way. You have to manipulate the source code or subtle energy field that projects this universe. If you’ve ever seen the movie Dark City, the aliens in that film do this nightly ritual where they channel their psychic powers into this big machine shaped like a face, and that machine is symbolic of the Demiurge. They use this machine to reconfigure the fake city that they have made for their victims to live in. Well, if Reptilians or other negative aliens want power, if they want to be kings of the Matrix, they have to turn to the Demiurge to do it.

And as a result of all their manipulations, their interfacing with the Demiurge, it’s my belief that the soul of the universe has gotten corrupted from all this evil intent being funneled though it. The source code of reality is infested with viruses and trojans. And that has given the Demiurge aspects of a universal parasite — which is exactly what the Gnostics recognized. Plato thought the Demiurge was good, but the Gnostics thought it was evil. Why? Because in its original and true form, it is a necessary and healthy part of creation. But it has a corrupted partition that seems to have a firm grip on our reality, and that is what the Gnostics saw. The Gnostics also said that there were powerful beings they termed Archons, who served this corrupt Demiurge and were served by it. Of course the Archons are really upper level negative aliens and maybe some overlords of the demonic realm.

So to sum up, there are probably negative aliens who “worship” the Demiurge, because it’s their occult sugar daddy, so to speak. I believe the Demiurge is therefore at the top of the negative hierarchy and the central coordinator of the matrix control system.

How do we contract to become part of the demiurge control grid?

I think it boils down to the fact that at some level, we made a choice that resulted in us being here in this physical universe. And when you take on a human body, you choose to accept its limitations. One of these limitations is that by default we only have five senses. That funnels our consciousness into a very narrow range, into perception of only the part of reality controlled by the Demiurge and its subordinates. So really, choosing to incarnate is choosing to take on a handicap, a kind of ignorance or blindness or delusion.

In addition to that, we also accept the laws of physics, which allow for physical force and therefore violence. Physicality is what allows one being to violate the freewill of another. Therefore, whether
through deception because we can barely perceive anything, or through force because we are here in
physicality, we risk having our freewill manipulated or outright violated. Thus we have chosen at
some level to accept the risks that come with living in the domain of the Demiurge, and that creates
a kind of contract that allows negative forces to influence and suppress us if we don’t take
countermeasures.

The biggest problem is that a portion of this control system actually lives inside of us. It’s as if we
— and here I mean our spirit or core consciousness — aren’t the only intelligence residing in our
bodies. There’s another component inside that may be called the shadow.

The shadow is the part of us that comes from the Matrix, and that resonates with the corrupt
Demiurge in an ‘as above, so below’ kind of way. It’s like an inner microcosmic reflection of the
external Demiurgic hierarchy. The ego is part of it, but that’s only one component. I define the
shadow as all hands on our steering wheel that aren’t our own, that are trying to pull us every way
except the right spiritual direction. We’re not usually conscious of it, but our outlook and our
behaviors and our decisions are biased by it.

The shadow resides in our subconscious, in the dark basement of the mind. There’s all kind of stuff
down there, like repressed traumas, dissociated personalities or soul fragments, demons or ghosts
that latch onto us like parasites, and also our biological drives and social conditioning. All of these
make up the shadow, and their collective representative in our minds is the ego, which is the inner
analogue to the Corrupt Demiurge itself.

So some of the shadow comes from habits, programs, and conditioning. People can spend years
trying to work through such issues from a psychoanalytical perspective. But other parts of the
shadow are actual entities that have embedded parts of themselves into our soul. There are times
when psychological problems stemming from the shadow are actually due to these entities, rather
than repressed emotions or internalized habits or whatever psychoanalysis tends to blame for being
the problem. Researchers like William Baldwin, Corrado Malanga, and Shakuntala Modi have
devised hypnosis techniques that aim to uproot these entities at the level of your subconscious mind,
which can give faster results than mere counseling or psychoanalysis.

Is there an ancestral/racial shadow that we carry that has contracted with the dark side?

Well considering we humans have similar biology and psychology, we do have aspects of our
individual personal shadows in common. Except that since we’re so fragmented as a species, where
every mind is psychically cut off from another, there’s not that much of a cohesive collective
shadow.

The situation would be different for aliens though. We know that aliens are telepathic, and that
they’re therefore always connected to a kind of psychic internet shared between members of their
civilization. This psychic internet creates a collective consciousness or collective pool of memories,
and thoughts and experiences. The Law of One Material calls this a social memory complex. It’s not
necessarily a hive mind where every alien is just an unconscious organ directed by a central mind,
rather the aliens still have their own minds, but they are connected to each other via a common
mental field.

Now, it stands to reason that for a dark alien civilization, that collective mental field will likewise
have a dark aspect. After all, it’s what unifies them; it’s what gives them their motivation; it’s their common denominator. So this, then, would be their collective shadow, and it’s what resonates them collectively with the Demiurge.

So you could say that the shadow within an alien links it to the collective shadow of its civilization, which links that civilization to the shadow of the universe, namely the Demiurge. The same thing could be said for humans, just in a more embryonic and unfocused form.

**How do we reinforce the Matrix control grid unconsciously with this relationship between our shadow and the entities that have access to our energy?**

Well it’s like how computers can get viruses or trojans that allow hackers to access files and mess with the system. Our shadow is like a psychological trojan that allows the Matrix to manipulate us. One example would be when the Matrix makes an appeal to ego, and we ignore our spiritual conscience and make an ego-based decision instead. And that ends up ensnaring us further in the Matrix.

In any case it leads to a loss of personal energy that instead feeds the demons, negative aliens, and other parasites that evoked that response. It’s in our lacking self-awareness and not questioning what’s motivating our decisions, that we act from the part within us that the Matrix has control over.

**In what ways do Aliens and entities influence our thoughts, emotions, and actions once we have allowed them in?**

I think most sentient people start off with a very basic form of protection from these entities. Not that they are free from getting harassed or manipulated in life, but rather that they can’t be outright killed or possessed on the first try. The protection might come from the higher self or spirit guardians or angels or whatever.

But if you intentionally invite negative forces in, even if you mistakenly believe they’re the good guys, then all bets are off. It’s like lowering the drawbridge. No matter how good the rest of your defenses are, if you give them permission to come in, then you have a real problem on your hands. It’s like giving a hacker the passwords to your online accounts. Think of how much can they do with that. They can take over your life. Well, giving aliens or demons permission eventually leads to full possession or mind control, whereby a person will become a walking instrument for aliens or demons to control.

The more permission they obtain from you over time, the more tangible, noticeable, and imposing they become in your life. Permission isn’t an all or nothing thing. It’s incremental, and they take what they can get. Satanic rituals are an extreme example. That’s where you consciously invoke an entity through ritualistic acts that serve as a method of giving permission. With some aliens, it’s not that different. I mean, there are books on steps you can take to invite the Grays into your life! We have to be careful with those kinds of sources.

**What are the dangers of inviting such forces?**

Let me give you an example. When I was 12, my family was driving home one night and I looked out the window at the stars and asked “them” for a sign. I had read a lot of books about abductions and was curious about the Grays. I wanted them to prove to me they were real. I expected the stars
to start flying around or something, but that didn’t happen. Well, that night I had a dream about being on an airplane with people sitting around me who had white faces and black eyes. I woke up with a two inch long scar on my forehead going into my hair line. And for the next several years, I had a lot of backdoor alien interference in my life. I got my sign alright, but at the cost of my wellbeing.

So when you mentally send out a request for alien contact, remember that anyone can hear that message — not just the good guys. From what I’ve experienced, negative aliens — especially the ones who share traits with demons — they need permission to get at you more directly. And when they hear such a mental broadcast, they realize there’s a potential sucker down there who can be exploited. They can sense the motivation behind your call, and if you do it out of ego and ignorant wonder, you’ll definitely attract the wrong forces. If you do it for the right reasons, in a moment of humble sincerity and strength and discernment and readiness, then maybe the real good guys will enter your life — even if only by sending inspiration and beneficial coincidences your way. But they’re at the back of the line as far as who wants at you first, and not until you have the filter mechanism to see through all but the last in line, will you earn the respect of the latter.

If you do call out to aliens, never EVER address or mentally picture the Grays, Reptilians, or Insectoid beings. Address only those who serve the divine will and are of a positive spiritual orientation. And even then, be sure to test whoever might respond to make sure they are not impostors putting on a smile and a pretty face. Inviting aliens is a bad idea overall, but if you do it, do it from a position of selflessness, calm awareness of the risks, and with a sense of dedication to the upliftment of humanity to gain the attention of beings with similar motives. Even just being curious for the sake of new experiences is not enough.

And don’t aim it at the sky, because that demonstrates a naive assumption that they’re necessarily flying around in ships. Just aim it inwardly like a prayer. They’re psychic and can sense you based on your intent and energy. If you can’t muster that kind of selfless purity and wisdom, then it’s best not to try. If you’re ready, they’ll contact you, you don’t need to solicit them. It’s a rule though, that positive aliens try to interfere as little as possible, so even if you got their attention, their presence in your life may be covert, helping you out in ways that make you think you’re just lucky or clever. It’s the impostor aliens that show up with fanfare and pompous stories about how you’re really the only surviving heir of Commander Ashtar and need to claim your galactic inheritance from the Dolphin Council or some baloney story like that.

What is their agenda for the human race, and how are they wishing to use us against our own humanity?

I believe that we are divine godsparks inhabiting human bodies. The body can be our prison, or it can be our temple. It depends on whether we rule the body, or whether the body rules us. I believe that our bodies were genetically engineered over tens of thousands of years by various alien factions. The later modifications probably handicapped us psychically, mentally, and physically. Right now we’re at a point where we have just enough abilities to sustain civilization and keep the matrix going, but not enough to easily see through deception and have the energy and smarts to easily put a stop to it. But we still have enough of something that we could escape their clutches of control, and I think that’s the risk they’re trying to mitigate.
I believe that they are planning on revealing themselves to humanity one day but will pose as our saviors. Then I think they will implement a transhumanist movement that will result in the human species being genetically modified once again and augmented with cybernetic technologies that take the place of spiritual functions. So that in the end, we will be godsparks fully imprisoned within a high tech biological prison and deeply mind controlled.

I think they’re just trying to create a more manageable and profitable crop. I mean, we’re GMOs, we’re genetically modified organisms, and they are the Monsanto of the galaxy. Overall I think it’s about a war of darkness against light, a completion of the mythical Lucifer Rebellion against the Kingdom of Heaven.

Is truly embodying our humanity, our love and compassion and empathy for life, the cure for all this?

Well that’s the part we must never give up, because those qualities of love, compassion, and empathy are functions of spirit, of our inner godspark. The moment we give those up, we give up the very thing we’re fighting for. But of course, love without wisdom is ignorance and naiveté. It’s like the story of Adam and Eve, they had love and compassion and empathy because they were pure, but they were no wiser than babies. The other half of the equation is wisdom, discernment, and awareness. You have to be sharp, think hard, see through the deception, and have the tools and knowledge to carry out the directives that come from your heart.

Love and understanding go hand in hand. The highest love and the highest understanding are the same thing. When you truly understand something or someone in the most absolute sense, you can’t help but love them. That’s where the two halves of the equation unite. But at our level, the best we can do is strive to balance and develop both sides in parallel.

How do we break our contracts with them and gain sovereignty over our own spirits and souls?

There are different kinds of contracts. The verbal ones made with aliens or demons are straightforward to deal with. If you have an unwanted alien presence in your life, it’s always a good idea to put your foot down and show gestures of refusal to cooperate. If they tell you to lie down and go to sleep because they are coming, refuse. If they are likely to show up on a particular night, then get a voice activated digital recorder to make it harder for them to get away with it. State out loud periodically that you revoke all permissions given to them, you know, that you cancel any agreements you might have with them. When you assert yourself that you are no longer cooperating with the dark side, that gives the positive forces more legal right to intervene and protect you. So really it comes down to revoking permission, aligning yourself with the divine, dropping all fear, and acquiring sharper awareness and knowledge and applying it in a very calm and strategic manner. That’s the best advice I can give.

On the other hand, the contract you have with physicality by being born into a human body, that contract is the most deeply binding. To overcome the five senses and the laws of physics is very difficult because it’s rooted in a choice made at a level of mind that is way deeper than any level we have access to in our current state. Tell yourself that you reject gravity and try stepping off a chair. You’re guaranteed to fall to the floor. That’s the whole point of physicality, to be bound by restrictions and consequences that create a kind of game or difficult workout for the soul.
Now, if you really wanted to get over the five senses and physicality, you can either go backwards or forwards. Going backwards means reversing the choice you made to inhabit a physical body, as in death. But that’s not progress, that’s a form of rejection or avoidance. It’s like a kid dropping out of school, that’s not the same as leaving school via graduating. To go forward would mean graduating from physicality through high levels of spiritual self-mastery and the development of certain psychic powers. If you make the choice to eat like crazy and then you get fat, how do you overcome the consequences of that choice? You exercise, and that takes lots of time and lots of exercise. The choice to become human likewise takes time and work to overcome. It’s not as simple as verbally revoking the choice, as you still have to undo the consequences. Even the positive aliens aren’t fully there yet, though they are light-years beyond us in what they’ve overcome.

What are the Universal laws we need to learn to shore up the holes in our self-protection fields.

It’s important to understand how our own shadows can resonate with the dark side of certain alien beings and draw them deeper into our lives. There’s this metaphysical principle called the Law of Attraction. It says that what we deeply resonate with down at the subconscious level, we attract in a synchronistic way. It’s not a New Age principle, it traces back to ancient times and were part of the teachings of Christ, though the New Age has certainly hijacked that idea and diverted it toward ignorant, egotistical, and materialistic ends.

As far as aliens are concerned, if you resonate with the predator-prey dynamic, you will be the prey that attracts the predator. That’s true in everyday life, where people with low self-esteem and lack of confidence may attract abusers and bullies. Well, same goes for the opportunistic types of aliens that look for people to toy with and feed on. When you sustain a deep seated fear of a situation, a kind of fear that gnaws at you and takes on a life of its own, that can cause that very situation to manifest. So being in a constant state of fear, paranoia, and jumpiness regarding aliens can actually bring about terrifying alien activities in your life. That’s the dark side of the Law of Attraction.

Some aliens, mainly those who have demonic traits and may actually be possessed by demons in some way, they can use the Law of Attraction against you in order to worm their way into your life. They start by dropping some paranoid thought into your head telepathically, or maybe they cause some small paranormal incident that grabs your attention and makes you worry. Then the more you obsess over it and give into prolonged paranoia, the more you attract events that induce more of the same feelings. The beings can therefore “ride” these events to make you even more scared. This creates a runaway feedback loop that, if left unchecked, can cause a total meltdown of your mind and your reality. People who succumb to that end up homeless, or in mental hospitals, or in some cases I believe they get taken over or possessed.

Now, just because paranoia attracts them, that doesn’t mean ignoring the alien phenomenon will keep them away. Sure, ignoring might make you stop attracting them, but that’s not the same as outright blocking them. They can still enter your life if they want to. Your door may no longer be open, but it’s also not locked. They can enter if they want. So you can’t make negative forces go away solely by ignoring them. That’s a prevalent misconception in the New Age community.

The question is, how then do you block them? Well, it’s conscious awareness that has a blocking effect. For instance, more often than not, I’ve noticed that problems tend to show up when I least
expect them. But if I become aware of the problem and am mentally prepared to handle it, then it never happens again. So what you prepare for and calmly anticipate tends not to manifest. This is the Law of Awareness. It’s as if awareness freezes a probable future in its tracks, keeps it from precipitating in the present moment. This can be combined with the Law of Attraction to get rid of 90% of overt alien interference in your life.

What you do is use the Law of Attraction to stop attracting, and use the Law of Awareness to start blocking. So first and most important thing you can do, is drop the paranoia, the fear, the desperation, obsession, and victim mindset. That’s because having a strong sense of powerlessness attracts situations that make you feel even more powerless. You can also apply the Law of Attraction by resonating with the opposite of paranoia, by invoking a feeling of protection, confidence, power, and stability. Then you can combine this with the Law of Awareness by very calmly and strategically anticipating their moves, and then taking common sense preventative measures if needed.

It’s totally okay to learn about the alien agenda and read about what they’re up to, so long as you keep calm and approach it from an intellectual and strategic point of view. It helps to maintain a sense of confidence and positivity. You know, it’s not a choice between being cynically aware or blissfully ignorant, you can be blissfully aware if you have the right knowledge and stay centered. So be aware, but stay positive.

What are some of your personal experiences with these forces?

There are two types of alien and demonic phenomena, overt and hidden. The overt phenomena are pretty easy to notice. They include intimidation, harassment, paranormal phenomena, and remembered abduction experiences. These comprise the bulk of experiences you find shown in movies, books and television because they are so tangible and in-your-face. But they are just the tip of the iceberg. Often they are just bluffs or misdirection meant to distract you. Most of what negative aliens and demons actually engage in, can be described as hidden interference which is far more serious and effective because it tries to sneak through the backdoor of your mind and exploit your weaknesses and blind spots without you noticing what’s going on.

My earliest overt experiences happened in 1981 in Germany, when I was less than a year old. I was in my crib in my room at night with all lights turned off except for a night-light shining up at spinning mobile suspended above me. I was looking up at it, when suddenly a pale face with black eyes peered over the crib and looked down at me. I remember being terrified and screaming the word “Geist!” at the top of my lungs. Geist is German for ghost, and that was actually my first word in life. So my parents would run into the room to check on me, but it was gone. According to my mom this happened a bunch of times.

Then between 1982 and 1985 I had several dozen abductions from that same apartment in Germany. The couple I remember started out the same way. I’d be in my parent’s bedroom during the early afternoon, having just awoken from my nap, and often my mom would be there standing next to the bed. She tells me to stay there while she attends to some business out in the hallway. The bedroom door was closed, but I could tell there was a lot of activity on the other side. So she walks out the door and closes it behind her, and at that point I would suddenly remember all the previous times this happened, and I thought “oh no, not this again!” So I panicked and looked for a place to hide,
which was either under the bed or in the back corner of the room between some furniture. But as I was running for cover, the door would open and in would pour a half dozen or more Grays in cobalt blue suits. They swooped right in on me and then I would black out. After that I only remember small fragments. I do recall landing on a grassy field near some mountains, with the sun starting to set. When the abduction was over, I’d wake up in the bedroom and it would be early afternoon again. So I suspect I was taken east to a different time zone. Now, during those years I also had a terrible fear of owls and was always talking to my parents and grandparents about what I called the Steinemenschen, meaning Stone Men. I called them that because their vibes were like they were non-living things that were somehow animated in a creepy way. So I was definitely being abducted back then, but what they did to me exactly I don’t remember.

Fast forward to October of 2002, when an alien tried to bust down my front door. I was living in Florida at the time, in my own studio apartment. I was up late at night working on an article for my site, when I heard something dash across the lawn of the private courtyard outside. It made a rustling sound like porcupine quills or dry leaves being shaken. And I could tell from the sound that it was bipedal and about as light as a child. But it moved way too quickly for person, and that made me concerned. So I projected my mental feelers into the darkness outside and when I connected with whatever it was, I got goose bumps because that thing felt wrong. That’s when I heard this thing step onto the concrete porch and slowly pitter patter up to my door. So I stared at the door as it got closer and then boom, it threw itself up against the door and started rattling it like it was trying to get in. Because I was sitting on the floor, I couldn’t see through the gaps between glass slats, only through the slats themselves, and what I saw was a pinkish blob shaped like a face at doorknob height, and a smaller blob shaped like a hand with long fingers about halfway down. This thing was probably 3 to 4 feet tall. After yelling at it to identify itself a couple times, I commanded it in the name of God to go away. But it just stayed there pressed up against the door. And that’s when I reached for the phone and began dialing my girlfriend, and when she answered and I looked back up the thing was finally gone. I told her I was coming over, and then had to make a run for my car through that dark courtyard, but luckily I didn’t encounter that being.

So in the fall of 2004 we moved to Virginia, and just a month or two later I heard that same exact rustling sound coming from outside the kitchen window. Something had just dashed across the cement patio out there. My girlfriend heard it too, and she knew immediately what it might be. Our cat also heard it, and went nuts running from window to window trying to look out into the darkness at whatever made that noise. She never did that with deer or raccoons, so this was different. Instinctively I just went around and closed all the blinds, made sure nothing could see in, and we couldn’t see out. And that was the end of that incident. If I had seen a face peering through the window I think I would have lost it.

What are the more covert forms of interference you have experienced?

The overt kinds of experiences are pretty rare in my life. I don’t have even a quarter of the experiences that others might. I mean, check out my girlfriend’s website if you’d like some cool anecdotes. I’m normally the guy taking in everyone else’s experiences and crunching the data. But I don’t really get open harassment like black vans parked outside, or threatening phone calls, or aliens telling me they’re going to replace me with a clone if I don’t stop what I’m doing. That stuff doesn’t really work on me, it only makes me fight harder with more confidence. I found that when
they get serious, they use covert methods to destroy you without you even realizing it. And that’s a much bigger threat, because it’s sneaky and I think more commonplace than the overt stuff.

Disinfo Agents

I noticed a recurring pattern with aware people, which was that a disinformation agent would enter their life shortly after the beginning of their awakening process. It was like something was trying to nip these people in the bud before they could build up discernment. Well I had mine in 2001 after I first stumbled across the idea that reality itself was a conspiracy, that it might be counterfeit like in the Matrix movies or the Truman Show. A couple weeks into this, a woman emailed me through another website I owned that was completely separate from my main site. No one who visited that site could possibly know that I was behind it, and I hadn’t yet published anything concerning the Matrix idea either. And yet there she was telling me about reality being fake, and listing off some of the very same websites I had been looking into regarding that theory.

So her contacting me was quite synchronistic to say the least. She mirrored all my thoughts and theories about it as if trying to gain rapport, except she would add this disinformative paranoid spin to it all. As the weeks went on, the spin would keep increasing and try to pull me along with it. I got the impression she was hurried like some sales person trying to close a deal. Well I wasn’t buying into it fast enough for her, and that’s when she did a 180 and tried to bite my head off, and I mean a total emotional breakdown. When that didn’t work, she became really nice again, and then another 180 and that’s when I cut her out.

I’ve known dozens of other people who’ve had similar stories of someone entering their lives synchronistically who worked quickly to gain rapport only to dump a bunch of disinformation on them and try to lead them around by the nose, then do 180s when it wasn’t working. You have to watch out for those controlling types.

Paranoia-induced Synchronicities

Another thing I started noticing back then was how my beliefs could warp reality into creating synchronicities that reinforced those beliefs. Like for a short while there I really was starting to believe that reality was fake and people around me were only pretending to be human. And wouldn’t you know it, my college roommates and their friends started mirroring my thoughts, saying things that pertained to what I had been thinking or noticing that day. Like I was walking home from class when I came across a shoe in the grass, a black flat just lying there. I thought that was odd but put it out of my mind, and then as soon as I got back to my apartment and sat down to rest, my roommate’s girlfriend sits down and starts telling me about the black flats she just bought. She shows them to me and they’re the same exact kind I saw earlier. Stuff like that would happen several times a day for weeks. It seemed like people knew what I was doing and thinking at all times. And if I hadn’t snapped out of it, I could have easily descended into all out paranoid schizophrenia.

But knowing what I know now, most of it was actually generated by my own subconscious bending probability and nudging other people’s thoughts. My subconscious was being filled with paranoid beliefs that were bleeding over into reality itself. I mean, sure there are hybrids and aliens pretending to be human who have telepathic powers, but there’s also self-generated synchronistic
phenomena that can mimic that and add to it. So that’s why I recommend people drop the deep
seated fear and paranoia, and try to seek awareness with a sense of confidence and positivity,
because you don’t want to make reality weirder than it already is.

Depression and Aggression

One of the most important things I’ve learned is that not all of our thoughts and emotions are
necessarily our own. They can be induced from the outside by various technologies and psychic
means. I mean, people can be neutralized this way if their minds are bent towards self-destructive
attitudes like despair, apathy, depression, suicidal thoughts, and so on. Now, for years I would get
hit with a dark cloud of negative energies just prior to being faced with an important decision or
situation. Like at the end of high school when I was doing college and scholarship applications, I
might wake up feeling utterly defeated and worthless and depressed for no reason, and
coincidentally that very day a counselor would tell me to apply for a particular scholarship. I had no
way of knowing that morning, that this day I’d be given such an opportunity. And if I gave into the
artificial attitude I woke up with, I would have not even bothered applying. But most of the time I
pushed myself and went for it anyway, and because of that ended up getting a full ride. But had I
given into those feelings, my life would be very different now.

Same with feelings of aggression that might hit me out of nowhere just prior to some situation
erupting that could cause a lot of damage to friendships and relationship if I overreacted. So
whatever was influencing me had foreknowledge of the immediate future and was manipulating me
into being off balance so that I wouldn’t make the right choices. But by realizing these sudden
changes were external manipulations, I could disown them and thereby locate my true inner feelings
and act from those instead. After doing this for a while, whatever was causing the problem finally
backed off, like it wasn’t working anymore for them.

Break up of Networks

The most common and most serious form of interference is the breaking up of networks, and
friendships, relationships. I’ve seen how people are profiled for their weaknesses and then played
against each other in very precise ways to create the maximum amount of damage. I saw this
happen all the time on the Noble Realms forum that I ran for several years. That forum was a
constant target of disruptions because it was a fringe sanctuary of sorts and a lot of good came from
it. But people were being targeted left and right. One guy left the forum for a while because he was
so spooked at his own overreactions, you know, by the sensation of being overcome by an external
psychic pressure.

From what I could tell, some external force was profiling members, scanning them for their
weaknesses, who held what interests, who had what buttons and ego sensitivities and so on. This
force could also see the near future and tell when certain people would be at their low points, which
I noticed tended to correlate with lunar and biorhythm cycles. So it would pick the weakest people
and start working them over, possibly even through abduction, so that at their weakest time they
could be pressured into carrying out a certain act, into saying something that had a very strategically
calculated effect. One thing then triggers another and the end result would be a permanent ruin of
important friendships and great damage to my credibility and reputation as well.
But I caught onto this and got better and better at heading it off. Like I would get precognitive dreams and other indicators that would let me know who would be the problem, what the issue would be about, and roughly when it would occur. That allowed me to make some prescient moderator moves that prevented about half of these incidences from coming to fruition. People who didn’t have the inside scoop were pretty mystified at my moderation style, but little did they know that an invisible war was happening behind the scenes. This allowed me to keep the forum running for a good four years before I had to move onto other things.

Signs of Monitoring

Even back in Germany, I would get occasional ringing in my ears as a kid. They sounded like this sample I re-created.

Looking back on it, they would cluster around times when I would have my abductions. Well it wasn’t until ten years ago that I figured out what these ear ringings meant. In my case they were signs of being psychically pinged by an entity that was scanning me. A few times I was dreaming while an ear ringing occurred for real, and in the dream it would symbolically manifest as a fire station alarm going off, or something along those lines. That is what initially clued me to the idea that for me, ringings were like a psychic tripwire being set off by an intruder.

So in my case, it was a sign of being monitored, usually in anticipation of something I didn’t yet know about like an impending abduction, or some disinformation agent sent to throw me off track, or some orchestrated hit on the forum that would impact me, or any event that they find strategically important. I would get these ear ringings and other symptoms in the days or sometimes even minutes leading up to it. The correlation was good enough that I can use ear ringings as a pretty reliable indicator that something is around the corner.

As for ringing in the left ear versus right, I found that right has a relatively more positive meaning than the left. But that’s relative to what the basic meaning of an ear ringing is for you. Since mine indicate monitoring regarding an event of interest, I found that right ear means an event that signifies a hit against my faith, self-confidence, resolve, and will to live. Those are all positive qualities, hence why it’s in my right ear. Whereas left ear has correlated with events that play on my aggression or cockiness or overreaction, which are negative qualities. But for someone else whose ear ringing has a different basic meaning, the right and left will be positive and negative in context of that. The Law of One material mentions how the subtle energy field of the body is bilateral and the right side is associated with more spiritually positive patterns, which correlates.

Some people don’t get ear ringings at all, and I’ve always wondered what differentiated them. From the few I know who don’t, their interests and abilities don’t really intersect with the alien agenda. So perhaps they aren’t of interest to them.

Weakening Process Leading up to Critical Decisions

I noticed that I would get a lot of interference in the days leading up to some negatively orchestrated event. For one, I would get hit with this amped-up nervous energy that felt like having too much caffeine even though I didn’t have any caffeine, and that resulted in a couple days of sleep deprivation. Along with that, I would also get this pulsation of the glowing phosphenes in my field of vision, which I actually measured and found to be 8 cycles per second, which is in the alpha
brainwave state. That state is too low to be fully awake, and too high to be asleep, so that further added to my sleep deprivation.

Then about a day before the event, someone would always email me being a complete jerk and try to provoke a reaction. Maybe to throw me further off balance, I don’t know. And lastly, when I did manage to get some sleep, I would get some pretty violent nightmares. So I would wake up tired and discombobulated, only to be thrown into the orchestrated event where my self-restraint and judgment were really put to the test.

This kind of thing would happen once or twice a month for the four years I ran my forum, and also afterwards when the opportunity arose. It’s always the same pattern, and I’m still working on how to deal with that.

Mind Programming Attrition

When all else fails, I noticed that they simply engage in a very subtle but steady process of weakening a person. It’s called a war of attrition. Sapping energy here and there, lots of programming during sleep or during abductions to instill posthypnotic commands, and so on.

Imagine if you were told several thousand times a night as you slept, that you see no hope in the world and that God has abandoned you. And that this went on for months without you consciously realizing it. Can you imagine what effect that would have on your subconscious, what that would do to your daily outlook? It would grind you down and sink you into that exact mindset.

What I said before about using the Law of Awareness, well that protection goes away if you’re unconscious. You can’t block if you’re not aware. What are you doing for a third of the day? You’re sleeping, you’re unconscious of your surroundings. Unless you develop lucid dreaming skills, which is really about how much mental and spiritual energy you have, or unless you have some psychic mechanism in place to alert you intrusion, you are manipulable during sleep. Then the best you can do is damage control in the days after to notice triggers and influences before they trip you up.

I believe this is the kind of stuff that is being done on a mass scale, whether by human technology, or through demonic beings whispering such negative programming into our minds as we sleep, or aliens picking targets and hacking away at their morale and spiritual light. This is a big problem.

How do you deal with attrition?

To counter this, if you can identify roughly what negative commands are shaping your attitude, you can create equal and opposite statements and use those as affirmations. I’ve also found it important to spend a few minutes everyday before getting up, doing what it takes to put yourself into a good and healthy mindset. This way you start the day on a mindset of your own choosing, rather than letting what happened during the night decide that. The way I see it, as long as I’m conscious and awake, I have the freewill to take control of my thoughts and my feelings. They may have the night, but I rule the day. And if my positive gains outdo negative influences, I win and they lose. I learned that if you can’t block them, you can still outmaneuver them by having more light than they can snuff out. That’s really what it comes down to.
Occult Mimicry of Alien Contact

7 July 16 (alien)

Introduction

Much of what we know about aliens comes from what abductees and contactees themselves report. The problem is that fabrication, hallucination, and screen memories obscure the truth, so various protocols exist to improve the signal to noise ratio. These include cross-correlating multiple eyewitness accounts and using hypnotic regression techniques to bypass the memory blocks and screen memories installed by abductors.

There is yet another source of noise, one not generally known but potentially widespread, which is the mimicry of alien contact by occult (non-alien) entities. Through telepathic means, occult entities have the ability to generate controlled hallucinations in the minds of their victims in order to reshape their beliefs and thereby control their behavior.

What are occult entities (OEs)? They are what we might call ghosts, demons, negs, phantoms, shadow people, lower astral entities, or thoughtforms. Their ability to induce guided hallucinations in the vulnerable means they can project whatever scenario and cast of characters they wish.

If the target is amenable to manipulation via an alien storyline, then that is what is used. These occult entities can just as easily take the guise of ascended masters, archangels, spirit guides, or departed human spirits. That is not to say the latter are all a farce, just that OEs can mimic them to varying degrees.

So the concern is that some individuals claiming alien contact may instead be under the influence of one or more OEs feeding them counterfeit experiences. This phenomenon may be termed “Occult Entity Deception” (OED). Since OED victims may appear sane and show no signs of intentional fabrication, one risks concluding that the contact is genuine and contributes to our understanding of the alien presence.

Naturally this concept goes against the simplistic idea that aliens are just demons in disguise, or that the demons of mythology were all just aliens. It’s not that simple. Experiencers who endure both occult and alien activity may begin noticing the nuances that differentiate one from the other; both aliens and OEs exist as distinct categories.

Definitions

In this article, “alien” encompasses the entire cadre of intelligent and technologically sophisticated extraterrestrial, interdimensional, and time traveling humanoids who are foreign to our civilization. Some appear to be physical like ourselves while others are quasi-physical in that they normally inhabit a higher meta-reality beyond three dimensions of space and linear time and then project themselves into our reality as required.

Through a combination of technology and mindpower they can defy gravity and inertia, alter the local rate of time, create structures containing more internal volume than is apparent from the outside, dephase solid objects to allow passage through solid matter or coexistence within solid
matter, and create wormholes between locations. Many can also read human thoughts, communicate
telepathically, and view probable futures with great accuracy.

The term “occult entities” (OEs) refers to non-alien autonomous intelligences lacking physical
bodies. For purposes of this article, the case is limited to the more malevolent or mischievous types
including:

- Dark ghosts, which are deceased humans of a hostile disposition who continue linger near
  the physical plane after death.
- Thoughtforms or etheric parasites, which are rudimentary constructs generated in the etheric
  plane by intense human thoughts and emotions, and which like leeches seek out more of the
  same nourishment that created them.
- Demons, who are particularly malicious entities consisting of a conglomerate of powerful
  thoughtforms, parasites, and degenerate human or alien discarnates.

OEs inhabit nonphysical realms called by occultists the “etheric” and “astral” planes. The etheric
plane is a boundary zone between the physical and metaphysical. It is a subtle energy medium that
permeates, underlies, mirrors, and contains the physical universe. Not only does it contain etheric
copies of physical objects, anchored in space and time to those objects, but it also contains etheric
entities and constructs that have no physical counterparts. The astral plane, on the other hand, is an
entirely metaphysical plane of consciousness that, unlike the etheric plane, lacks direct
correspondence to physical locations in our spacetime continuum.

As living human beings, we have not only physical bodies, but also etheric and astral bodies. The
latter two comprise the soul. (Spirit is the seat of consciousness beyond the soul, and the soul acts as
interface between spirit and body.) The more sentient OEs inhabit the astral plane in their native,
weakened, or dormant state. There, they can affect us mentally and emotionally because our astral
body extends into the astral plane. More specifically, it is the parts of our astral body that “vibrate”
at “their level” that are amenable to their influence, which is why indulging in dark emotions,
obSESSIONs, and base passions increases one’s vulnerability to their occult maneuvers.

If an OE also acquires sufficient etheric energy, it can then condense for itself an etheric body and
inhabit the etheric environment, meaning it then establishes a localized presence near the physical
plane. At that point a clairvoyant can sense its presence in a certain part of a room, for instance. And
if it gathers even more energy, it may even begin affecting things physically as seen in the
poltergeist phenomenon. But if the OE grows too weak, it loses its grip on physicality and
delocalizes back into the astral plane.

Unlike the nonphysical astral realm of the OEs, the meta-reality inhabited by aliens, called 4th
Density by some, appears to be a more vibrant and pliable state of physicality with degrees of
freedom unfamiliar to us. In the meta-reality, they also have perceptual and technological access to
the etheric plane allowing for physico-etheric engineering, which allows them to alter the etheric
underpinnings of physicality in order to manipulate physical laws at the quantum level.

Aliens have the ability to dephase their physical bodies out of our physical plane and sufficiently
into the etheric such that we cannot perceive them with our five senses. But if one were to enter an
out-of-body state, then by perceiving through the etheric eyes instead of the physical, one would be
able to perceive both dephased aliens and etheric OEs.

Having now discussed the basic nature of aliens and OEs, we will take a closer look at how they compare.

**Comparison Between Aliens and Occult Entities**

Like humans, most aliens have tangible bodies requiring protection and upkeep, and so they too require shelter, transport, clothing, and technology. It is no surprise that aliens are therefore known to have bases, ships, uniforms and casual clothing, and various technologies based on advanced sciences.

Discarnate OEs, on the other hand, have only the growth and diminution of their subtle energy bodies to worry about, and so they concern themselves with stealing etheric and astral energies from the living in order to sustain their own form. OEs don’t require special suits, underground bases, flying crafts, or a host of technologies to carry out their agenda. Rather, they operate more via occult, magickal, or metaphysical principles. If OEs ever do display clothing, they tend to be malevolent human discarnates symbolically displaying silhouettes of archaic human items such as brimmed hats, capes, or long coats.

Whereas aliens are physical or quasi-physical and therefore have biological bodies, OEs are discarnate and have no physical bodies, let alone genetics. Consequently, OEs are incapable of hybridizing or interbreeding with humans; nor can they leave behind traces of biological material with analyzable DNA, for example the anomalous blond hair found in Peter Khoury’s case. 1 Succubi and incubi are OEs known to etherically stimulate a target sexually, but this is more a form of sexual energy harvesting whereas certain alien abductions additionally involve harvesting the biological products for their hybrid breeding projects.

Out of necessity, aliens are much better versed in physical sciences and engineering than OEs. Unlike OEs, they possess real knowledge and equipment that can be shared with select human groups. For instance, the *astras* (celestial weapons) of Hindu mythology and Ark of the Covenant in Judaic mythology trace back to times when alien groups gave their human proxies certain extraterrestrial artifacts to help them carry out their missions. 2 Same can be said today with allegations of human shadow military groups receiving alien technology in exchange for allowing or assisting with alien abduction of the citizenry.

Unlike aliens, OEs only seem capable of providing imitative or caricaturized “science” and “technology” that are nothing more than props to flesh out their deceptive storylines. There is no novel objective logic behind these props or what is observed of them, anymore than one could derive workable technology from the set of a science fiction movie. They seem to pull their ideas from our collective consciousness, whether by observing our thoughts or by drawing on memories of having previously been human. Keen experiencers may note that the average OE is never as intelligent or sophisticated as the average alien. In terms of providing practical knowledge, at best OEs provide occult instructions on rituals and contraptions like ouija boards, scrying mirrors, EVP techniques, or etheric portal inducing arrangements that enhance their ability to interface with our world.

Strong OEs have telekinetic abilities and can generate poltergeist phenomena, their strength being
derived from the amount of lifeforce energy they feed upon. They can also generate electric and magnetic anomalies that induce mild interference in electronic devices up to and including electronic voice phenomena.

Aliens, by comparison, can do all this and also shut down car engines, stop video and audio recorders, and deactivate nuclear missiles; their ships can show up on flight radar as anomalous blips, generate loud humming noises and modulated vibrations, leave ground traces, emit bright multicolored flashing lights, and can be seen by multiple eyewitnesses dashing off into the distance at incredible speeds. Aliens can even levitate and dephase an abductee through solid walls and closed windows via their infamous blue light beam technology, or quarantine the abductee’s local section of spacetime from surrounding spacetime in order to carry out an abduction in isolation from outside perception or even memory. OEs only have parlor tricks in comparison.

Both aliens and OEs are capable of performing soul abductions. In the case of OEs, it occurs via one or more shadow-like humanoid forms literally tugging and pulling the soul out by the head, feet, or arms. In alien soul abductions, alien entities may telepathically induce an OBE and then usher the individual toward an awaiting ship; another reported method involves a kind of vortical tractor beam swirling the soul up and out to the ship. And whereas alien soul abductions then progress into a structured set of procedures such as programming or etheric implant installation, OE abductions are more a crude form of soul snatching with the goal of severing the connection between soul and body in order to hijack the body or simply kill the person in his or her sleep. A number of individuals have recounted failed soul snatching attempts where they managed to fight off these “shadow people” and return to their bodies.

It appears that only aliens (and military abductors) can perform physical abductions. OE “abductions” are either soul abductions or induced hallucinatory experiences. In other words, OEs cannot make a person’s body disappear for a period of time, let alone return it in strange locations or positions or with clothes on backwards as is typical of botched alien abduction return procedures. So a camera or third party observer will see an OE target remain in bed the entire time, or perhaps engage in some sleep talking or sleep walking at most. Note that aliens can also induce artificial hallucinations, better known as “virtual reality scenarios” in this context, but they are not limited to that, for they can also take the physical body up into a craft or to an underground, underwater, or orbital base.

Further, alien and military abductions or night visitations can leave physical marks on the body including bruises, scars, punctures, scoop marks, burns, cuts, unusual soreness in suspicious areas like behind the ears or in the reproductive regions, and lumps under the skin from subcutaneous implants. OEs can only affect the body through telekinetic and etheric effects that alter biological processes; this includes “etheric burns” that rupture capillaries and leave behind a shallow but well defined bruise, localized allergic or inflammatory reactions of the skin, and liquid filled cysts at points on the body where the OE has sunk in its etheric tendrils. However, OEs would not have the means of producing scoop marks, permanent scars, or solid implants that are removable via surgery. And it goes without saying that OEs also cannot create pregnancies with fetuses that vanish after the first trimester.

Victims of occult parasitism may not always have a prior history of alien abduction, and so they will lack the associated signs such as a history of nosebleeds, childhood memories of abductions or
visitation, irrational childhood phobias of objects or animals resembling the Greys or Reptilians, post traumatic stress syndrome from unremembered abductions, and the aforementioned bodily marks. Alien abductions tend to start in childhood or infancy and continue for life, whereas OEs being more opportunistic can enter one’s life suddenly during teenhood or adulthood when the entity chances a moment of psychic vulnerability.

Another important difference is that aliens rely heavily on screen memories and memory erasure to cover up what actually happened during an abduction or visitation. This implies that something objective and tangible took place that must stay hidden.

OEs are not generally known to use screen memories or memory erasure techniques, probably because they lack the ability to affect our mind-body system with sufficient depth, knowledge, and precision. The best they can do is psychically interface with the target and generate artificial hallucinations in real time, including dream manipulation, so that the individual perceives or dreams one thing while in the entity is actually doing something else like plugging into his etheric subsystems and siphoning lifeforce energy. To illustrate, if a person were to awaken or snap out of such a state, he might then notice a startled OE hovering or stooping over him. The difference between this and alien screen memory is that the latter can be installed after the fact to retroactively cover up a real memory, while OEs seem to manipulate perception solely as the event occurs. Again, aliens can do the latter but they can also do what OEs cannot.

Aliens prefer to hide their tracks; an abductee would ideally never remember that something happened unless the abductors see strategic value in letting certain things be remembered. Due to alien diligence, someone can go decades without ever realizing he or she is an abductee. Aliens are working strategically toward some bigger goal and deniability is an important part of maintaining operational security and preventing temporal paradoxes or instabilities.

OEs are less careful. They are opportunistic predators interested in energy feeding and spiritual control; sometimes that necessitates traumatizing a target or loading his mind with a false storyline that gets him caught up in their game. That entails intentionally producing an experience that sticks with him and preoccupies him. The only track OEs cover is their true nature, which is that they are really demons or malevolent ghosts and not ascended masters or spirit guides or members of the Ashtar Command, that their ulterior motive is food and control. In fact, many OEs make it a point to take up as much psychological space as possible in the minds of their targets, like a parasite consuming its host bite by bite, while aliens typically seek to minimize that space or compartmentalize it away (unless the goal is to create a disinformation vector or zealously cooperative subject).

This ties into the next point, which is that aliens are logistically limited in number, mobility, and time by having to coordinate the timing of their abduction and contact operations for various reasons. These reasons include avoiding interference or surveillance by rival factions, having to juggle a vast abduction program with the unique biological development cycles of each abductee, and having to travel large distances between the target’s location and their home bases or waypoints. This means that aliens come and go; their activity is sporadic and calculated, and sometimes months or years can pass before they return for another visit.

OEs, on the other hand, tend to set up shop at their target locations and hang out constantly. This is
called “nesting” by occultists. The OE saturates the local environment, be it a house or bedroom or part of a room, with its dark etheric energies in order to condition that region of space into something more hospitable to their fragile etheric bodies. The entity attaches its nest to walls, corners, furniture, anything that has an extension into the etheric plane and can hold an etheric charge. In this way, over time the OE builds a kind of base that allows it to stay close to the target with minimal energy loss to the environment. One example would be a nest hanging from the ceiling down toward where the target sleeps. With enough time, an entire building can become infested with OEs who thereby acquire free reign to move about within at leisure.

Instead of coming and going like aliens, OEs can be there all day every day. In cases of localized nesting, one giveaway is that one’s vital energy, dreams quality, mood, and mental coherence all improve when changing location. For example, one correspondent who had for years dealt with tormenting voices by a particularly demonic class of OEs experienced significant relief after her apartment caught fire and she had to move to a new place. The new home was not yet nested by the OEs and so she was free of them for the time being. To go from 24/7 attention to little or no attention simply by moving a few blocks is highly uncharacteristic of alien contact, but highly suggestive of an OE presence.

In addition to setting up nests, OEs also try to worm their way ever deeper into a target’s mind and soul with the goal of full possession. Then they can control the target from the astral plane regardless of where he or she travels. If they get deep enough to dislodge the spirit, then they acquire full control.

Now, there appear to be metaphysical laws in place and instinctual defense mechanisms in human beings that prevent OEs from doing this to just anyone and everyone at any time, which is why they have to be selective in whom they choose. Prime targets include:

- Those who have been spiritually weakened by heavy drug or alcohol abuse.
- Those whose minds and souls have been fractured by trauma.
- Those whose inborn mind-body-soul structure makes them innately prone to easily slipping into hypnagogic and hypnopompic states where OEs can more easily be perceived.
- The emotionally neurotic who are easily spooked.
- The psychically sensitive who are by definition more perceptive and responsive to, and thus manipulable by, the OE’s audio, visual, and kinesthetic telepathic projections.

To get around some of the metaphysical laws that bar them from more deeply exploiting their targets, OEs frequently seek the target’s permission to enter them. This can be done by way of trickery or wearing them down until they lose the will to resist. For example, it can be done through a series of manipulated dreams that make the target believe the OE is something benevolent, or it can be done directly via telepathic voice interactions where the OE simply asks “may I enter?” or “so you give us permission to enter?” or where they repeat hypnotic commands such as “let us in” until the target gives in.

Another OE tactic involves dangling bait, perhaps a serendipitously induced hallucination or sensation that catches the target’s interest and piques his curiosity until he willingly reaches out for
whatever is at the other end of that mystery. That also amounts to giving permission. Whatever the
case, if the target agrees, then protective barriers fall away and the OE rapidly gains control of the
target’s biological-etheric perceptual pathways. The resulting voices, sensations, dreams, and/or
visuals then work to mislead or torture the target toward spiritual destruction.

Aliens can also spin such false storylines and induce virtual reality scenarios telepathically, but the
difference is that they do it for strategic reasons that go beyond spiritual control and energy feeding.
For instance, they might need to create a disinformation vector to write a book or website serving
their agenda in some way. Or they simply seek to create smoke (plurality of contradictory
nonsensical storylines) that obscures the signal of what they’re really up to.

Alien efforts are generally not as sadistic or spiritually poisonous as what OEs engage in, at least
not in the short term, because negative alien factions seem more concerned with manipulating the
destiny of our planet and shaping the timeline for their benefit. That requires affecting our
understanding and perception of them more than anything, and so psychological or informational
warfare comprises their primary activity on this planet. (One notable exception are the Reptilians
infamous for their terrifying, brutal, and licentious natures; these same beings also seem to feed on
fear and lifeforce energy, which raises the possibility that they are biological hosts for demonic
entities.)

So whereas OE false storylines are concocted tales filled with spiritual disinformation to achieve
spiritual control, alien false storylines use alien disinformation to achieve alien control of this
planet. Alien control means genetic, political, logistical, military, informational, and temporal
control. Spiritual control means disconnection of soul from divinity and the snuffing out of
innocence, integrity, conscience, hope, and freewill within. These two aren’t mutually exclusive and
blend in the middle, but one can reasonably make the generalization that aliens and OEs are acting
on separate planes of action, one more physical and temporal, the other more metaphysical and
spiritual. Again, this follows from alien still being physical or quasi-physical and OEs being
completely discarnate and having only matters of the soul or spirit to worry about.

Indicators of Occult Entity Deception

In summary, here are some signs that suggest Occult Entity Deception rather than classic alien
abduction or alien contact:

• No matter how vivid and involved the hallucinated experience, none of what’s seen
demonstrates objective physical interaction with the local physical environment since all of
it plays out in the target’s mind. For example, if one hallucinates an alien ship weaving
between street traffic, there will be nothing in the way of local EM interference or third
party witnesses.

• What objective aspects do exist merely confirm the presence of OEs. At best these include
poltergeist/EVP activities, third party witnessing of shadowy nonphysical entities haunting
the premises, and the sighting of dark humanoid figures standing nearby or black forms
floating or swirling overhead.

• No sign of physical procedures having been performed on the individual, such as physical
implants, anomalous scars and markings, phantom pregnancies, history of nosebleeds,
radiation sickness and conjunctivitis, etc. Any marks left on the physical body are solely those explainable by paranormal trauma including etheric energy burns that look like bruises or localized allergic skin reactions from foreign etheric energy contamination, the latter especially indicative of OE activity if they occur while one is awake and can account for the time elapsed.

• Whereas alien activity is intermittent, unchecked OE presence rapidly builds up to 24/7 activity that is incessant, pervasive, overbearing, and strongest in buildings where the target spends the most time.

• Elaborate storylines may be given that contain too many elements drawn from the target’s own fantasies and wishful thinking mixed with convenient and creative fabrications by the entities. Due to the wealth of hallucinatory experience accumulated by the target, he or she soon becomes an “expert” in the delusional paradigm fed to him or her. For alien-style storylines invented by OEs, these may be full of large casts of characters, exciting dramas, galactic histories, personal involvement of the target in fanciful space battles and missions, and whatever else keeps the target entertained and ego-engaged. These storylines contain nothing of practical value, verifiability, novelty, and truth since they are just fantasies with a spiritually disinformative twist.

• The paradigm in question contains directionality only insofar as it is tailored to ensnare the target, weaken him spiritually, and perhaps promulgate spiritual disinformation concerning matters of the soul, the afterlife, and the sovereignty of the human spirit. The more successful deception operations lead to human hosts going on to become cult leaders or channeler of these entities, thereby allowing the parasitical OEs to infect and feed upon a wider captive audience. Other storylines are designed to play on the target’s paranoid tendencies and drive him to insanity, homelessness, suicide and death.

• OE influence can begin suddenly without a prior history of alien abduction or contact. It may start with a minor anomalous event like a voice, unusual dream, bodily sensation, short hallucination, or haunting event that captivates the target like bait on a hook. After the target pursues this and donates enough of his energy, the entity may go in for the kill by asking for permission to enter, and then hallucinatory experiences skyrocket. Other “softer” forms of permission can accomplish the same, such as becoming preoccupied with the OE interaction to the point of obsession.

• The target may eventually come off as schizophrenic, though unlike true schizophrenia the phenomenon stops completely if the entities are banished or simply move on to another target. Also, unlike medical schizophrenia, these cases may be accompanied by some level of paranormal activity confirmed by third parties including children, pets, and sensitives.

Conclusion
If occult entities exist, might they have an interest in imitating aliens? Yes, if that is what evokes cooperation from the modern human mind. Obviously they cannot imitate fairies, leprechauns, or gods with as much success as they once enjoyed.

Due to aliens acclimating the public to their existence, the UFO phenomenon and alien presence has
saturated our zeitgeist to such a degree that a majority of people now find them the more plausible otherworldly possibility. Accordingly, occult entities would have had to change their marketing to swing with the prevailing beliefs. Despite their updated fakery, what gives them away is the intangibility of their hallucinatory projections and the lack of intrinsic logic and objectivity behind their sham contacts and fake ships.

Occult charades, along with aliens themselves using screen memories and false storylines to cover up their activities and generate disinformation, has lead some to believe that the entire UFO phenomenon is nothing but a joke played on humanity by interdimensional tricksters. But these two interwoven strands (alien and OE) can be separated through diligent research and deduction.

Archeological, mythological, and genetic research reveals the existence of an underlying objectivity and tangibility to the alien presence throughout human history. For instance: ancient observers describing advanced technologies that made no sense to them and therefore could not have been projections of their cultural expectations, yet which begin making sense to modern investigators armed with knowledge of quantum, hyperdimensional, and transdimensional science. Or, consider the anomalies in the human genome suggesting we are genetically modified organisms, if not outright genetic creations by some primordial founder race.

None of the preceding examples can be credited to today’s ghosts, demons, and astral parasites who lack the technology and tangibility to accomplish such feats. But that doesn’t prevent them from imitating aliens crudely, fancifully, and ostentatiously by telepathically interfacing with a gullible subject and spinning for them an elaborate but erroneous belief system.

So we must be mindful of what these beings can do, what they cannot do, and thereby detect when a potential abductee or contactee has been caught up in a case of Occult Entity Deception. If an alien contact case is questionable, then we should be proportionately more cautious and discerning about drawing from it any conclusions about the alien presence.

Notes

1 Bill Chalker, Hair of the Alien: DNA and Other Forensic Evidence of Alien Abduction (New York: Pocket Books, 2005).

2 See my Gnosis Series for full discussion of the Ark of the Covenant, Holy Grail, and Hindu astras as alien technologies.


4 Fore, My Experiences (Grey, Pleiadeans and Oddities) (web archive).


Selected Resources

The Nightmare, directed by Rodney Asher (Documentary, 2015).


(index)

**Gnosis**

**Gnosis Intro**

**13 July 07 (gnosis)**

This section incorporates the following subjects:

- Hermeticism
- Gnosticism
- Alchemy
- Quantum physics
- Scalar physics
- Freudian and Jungian psychology
- Greek philosophy
- Judaism and Christianity
- Biblical eschatology
- Ancient history
- Prophecy
- Catastrophism
- Grail myths
- Timeline dynamics
- Synchromysticism
- Celtic/Vedic/Aryan mythology

I am drawing upon a myriad of established subjects to reveal the prime motive behind our existence. The “Gnosis” articles are what resulted from the vetting, analysis, and deconstruction of my own Gnostic flashes received since 2004. These were skeleton keys that unlocked a “Grand Unified Conspiracy Theory” that provided a single context for all other conspiracies.
**What is Gnosis?**

Ideally, Gnosis is enlightened knowledge, that which is given through inspiration and revelation from within and above. It deals with the ultimate truth of who we are, why we are here, where we are going, and what “this” is all about. It deals with the biggest questions and mysteries of our existence. That is what this section is about.

Gnosticism has always been around, but the Christian form of it blossomed in the early part of the first millennium. The latter is what we conventionally think of as “Gnosticism”, which is the set of beliefs of the early Christian Gnostics according to the scriptures and artifacts they and their critics left behind. But these are just the dried husks left behind.

It’s paradoxical to call oneself a Gnostic nowadays solely by being able to regurgitate these writings, because Gnosis is about direct “inside” information on the Truth through inspiration and revelation. I would add dreams and synchronistic guidance to that as well. It’s about direct access to the higher reality outside this Matrix Control System, to catch glimpses of what’s really going on here.

The early Gnostics would today be called mystics, contactees, and channelers. They had the same faults. Some were deluded, others tapped into disinformation, and many grossly misinterpreted what they saw. Their logic often failed when attempting to draw conclusions from incomplete information. For instance, in seeing that our reality was generated by a tyrannical intelligence who ruled through law, ritual, and regulation, some ignorant Gnostics concluded that rebelling against all law, including morality, was the key to freedom, so they became deviant libertines. It’s from this kind of erroneous rebellious thinking that Satanic / Luciferian streams diverged off the main Gnostic river. Like any higher knowledge, Gnosticism leads to a higher form of dualism between those who wield it responsibly and those who abuse it. Some use enlightened knowledge to better serve spirit, other to better serve ego.

Only a small fraction of Gnostics tuned into the right “radio station” and correctly interpreted it, but their views were lost among the noise of the rest. Thus all Gnostics were criticized and persecuted for seemingly making up whatever they wanted, that there was no internal consistency among them. In contrast, the dogma of the Church was set in stone and provided utter dependability for the uncertain of faith, thus making it the word of God on the grounds that God speaks consistently. But this defense of Church dogma over its immutability is a logical fallacy. A fixed Lie is worse than an evolving view of Truth. This same fallacy persists today among secular skeptics and religious fundamentalists who react like antibodies against foreign ideas emanating from the spiritual, metaphysical, and esoteric fields. To them it’s all New Age bunk. They fall for the oldest trick in the book, which is to play one lie off another, to expose the faults of one thing to justify swallowing the faults of another. True intelligence is transcending such binary thinking and discerning what false dichotomies attempt to conceal.

Modern Gnosis ideally taps into the same well of Truth familiar to the wise of old. The general idea stays the same; it’s the details and interpretations that differ. The Truth is too fantastic, grand, complex, and hyper-dimensional to be perfectly explained in our cultural context and language. Therefore, whoever gets access to it will necessarily interpret it through his or her own filters, and scoop only as much from that well as can fit in his bucket. I brought a big bucket.
Words from a Modern Gnostic

Philip K. Dick was a true modern Gnostic. He had his own Gnostic visions toward the end of his life, although he was always under the guidance of a revelatory intelligence since the beginning of his career.

PKD spent his final years attempting to deconstruct and wordify his mystical vision. I think he was one among very few in the exoteric population (as opposed to the esoteric population which includes Rosicrucians, Illuminati, etc…) who glimpsed the true nature of our “matrix reality.”

To conclude this intro, read PKD’s The Ten Major Principles of Gnostic Revelation, with which I find near total agreement. For a more thorough elaboration on PKD’s visions, see his book containing further excerpts from his personal notes titled Exegesis.

Read the Summary of the Gnosis Series

(index)

1 - Corruption of the Demiurge

13 July 10 (gnosis)
©2010, montalk.net

(Version 0.2 – changelog provided at end of article)

Introduction

What the Greeks and Gnostics called the “Demiurge” is a universal intelligence that fashions our world.

It is said that the Demiurge converts abstract metaphysical archetypes (higher thoughts/ideas) into physically manifest forms, akin to your browser turning source code into a displayed web page. Just as a browser obediently displays what it’s given, the Demiurge projects, shapes, and perpetuates physicality in accordance with the archetypal thoughts fed into it by the Creator. Archetypes are the building blocks of meaning, the fundamental alphabet of existence, the abstract thoughts of the divine, of which all things are but particular expressions.

Why is the concept of Demiurge even necessary? Well, we know from the “reality creation” phenomenon that our own minds can shape reality by directly altering the probability of events. Due to the dependence of reality on mind, it would seem that reality is being projected by our minds. And yet, reality continues to exist even in our absence. When we stop paying attention to something physical, it does not wink out of existence. Obviously there must be something other than our own consciousness at work, something that is always there, that functions as the default generator and perpetuator of physicality. This would be the Demiurge.

Why not attribute this function to the Infinite Creator and dispense with the extra concept of Demiurge? Because as you will see, the characteristics of the Demiurge indicate more of a blind artificial intelligence than an infinite sentient being. Therefore its function is uncharacteristic of the Creator and unique unto itself.
Demiurge, Logos, and Nous

Depending on the source, the terms “Nous” and “Logos” are used independently or interchangeably with the term “Demiurge.” Sometimes Nous is equated with Logos, sometimes Logos with Demiurge, sometimes Logos is used instead of Demiurge, and sometimes these are treated as independent concepts with some specified relation between them. Plato saw the Demiurge as inherently good, while the Gnostics saw it as intrinsically evil. Meanwhile, John the Apostle equated Logos with Christ.

It’s quite a confusing mess. The traditional views are not all in agreement, neither in definition nor in terminology. Confusion abounds, so this is my attempt to clear things up. In studying what has been said about these terms, it’s evident that each term has a unique cluster of meanings recurrently associated with it.

“Demiurge” is typically associated with concepts like implementing, manifesting, building, translating, projecting, shaping, and perpetuating. The term implies a demigod with a blind urge to bring the unmanifest into manifestation.

“Logos” is associated with thinking, reasoning, imagining, reconciling, balancing, planning, engineering, and informing. The term implies mind or intellect, especially divine mind or higher intellect. It sees, knows, plans, lays down the blueprint, balances the equation.

“Nous” is associated with spirit. On the universal scale it represents the infinite Creator. On a personal scale it represents the central core of individualized consciousness, the bedrock of sentience, the seed of infinite potential, the divine spark, that which engenders self-transcendence, the portion of us that is immortal and retains continuity through incarnations.

These concepts have their universal and personal expressions.

On the universal scale:

- Nous is the spirit of Creation
- Logos the mind of Creation
- Demiurge the soul of Creation
- Universe the body of Creation.

On the personal scale:

- Nous is our spirit
- Logos our mind (higher mind to be exact)
- Demiurge our soul

In accordance with the Hermetic axiom, we are mirrors of Creation: “As above, so below.”
In this article I will focus primarily on the Demiurge since it underlies, permeates, generates, fashions, and ultimately controls physical reality. It is therefore the nearest presiding power over our visible world; it is the central mainframe of this matrix reality, so to speak. Its origin, nature, and fate are inextricably bound with our own. Therefore we should become familiar with it and thereby learn much about our history, world, and future.

Demiurge as Soul

One way to understand the Demiurge is to think of it as the World Soul.

Tradition says the Demiurge is made of soul. It is made of the same substance as our own soul, except it functions as the soul of the universe as a whole. Or conversely, our own souls are microcosmic instances of the Demiurge, just as a drop of water is a microcosmic instance of “water” in general.

Soul is the coupling medium between spirit and body. It provides the intervening layers between spirit and body that allows one to interact with the other. Otherwise the divide between nonphysical and physical is too great. Spirit is the core of sentience, freewill, and deep self-awareness. Without spirit, a person is nothing more than an automaton programmed by external worldly influences.

Soul, as distinct from spirit, has two primary layers: astral and etheric. The astral component, or astral body, is the seat of immediate emotional impressions, subjective biases, passions, and willpower. Without the astral body, a person would be dim and passive as a vegetable due to an absence of internal impressions, emotions, and will.

The etheric component, or etheric body, is comprised of subtle energy formations, patterns, rhythms, inertias, currents, and structures that vivify, shape, and regulate the physical body. Think of it as an energy scaffolding made of life-force. Without the etheric, the physical body is but a corpse that disintegrates under the influence of entropy.

While the Demiurge is made of soul, it lacks spirit. The Demiurge has no true sentient core, no true self-awareness. All it has are passions, urges, and drives applied toward repetitions, patterns, rhythms, laws, and frameworks. As a result, it is a blind artificial intelligence that cannot help but carry out the impulses that comprise it. And that is the very definition of the universal Demiurge.
Demiurge as Thoughtform

Another way to understand the Demiurge is to think of it as a World Thoughtform.

Thoughtforms are temporary nonphysical entities created by our thoughts and emotions. They exist around us in the etheric level of reality and are imbued with astral energies corresponding to the emotions that went into them. They are termed tulpas, egregores, or larvae in other esoteric systems.

Mundane thoughtforms are just energy constructs without any spirit, mind, or body coupled to them. They are borne of our own energies and blindly carry out the functions impressed upon them like obedient automatons. If the thoughts and emotions that generated them are cut off, these thoughtforms dissipate. But if they are particularly strong, they become entitized and acquire a self-preservation instinct. This means they acquire a strong artificial intelligence making them capable of parasitically inducing more of the same thoughts and emotions in us needed to sustain them.

Since thoughtforms are made of astral and etheric energies, and so is the soul, both are the same in essence. The soul is a thoughtform constructed by spirit before birth so that spirit can interface with the body. Or conversely, a mundane thoughtform is a temporary soul lacking body and spirit.

Likewise, the universal Demiurge is a “World Thoughtform” created by the Creator before the physical universe came into being in order to project, shape, and operate the universe. Or conversely, mundane thoughtforms are temporary instances of the Demiurge.

Soul, Demiurge, and thoughtforms are all fundamentally comprised of astral and etheric components, and therefore share a common essence. They are each specific examples of each other’s general definitions.

Formation of Ego in the Soul

When spirit coalesces a soul and incarnates into a human embryo, it is mostly without human ego or personality. The latter develops in the soul during the first years of life through adaptation to physical life as a human being.

The ego develops in response to the soul being influenced by the body and, through it, the world. Physical experiences, five sense perceptions, neurological functions, and instinctual drives all stamp their impression into the soul. The soul is further shaped by education and social programming. Accordingly, the soul acquires a mask carved by all these worldly influences. This mask is the ego, which may also be understood as the lower intellect or lower mind. Through the ego, the soul acquires a sense of human personality and social identity.

The ego, or lower intellect, is an artificial intelligence, an automaton, a computer with personality programmed by genetics and environment. It arises partly from the human brain’s capacity for intellectual functions, and partly from soul’s capacity to be molded by worldly and bodily factors. The ego is the streamlined interface through which soul can operate more efficiently within physical and social environments.

When spirit, the source of sentience, looks through this mask and identifies with it, the two together create our human sense of self. What we consider “me” is a composite of pure sentience (spirit) and personality (ego).

In summary:
1) Ego is something that arises at the boundary between body and soul due to body conditioning the soul.

2) Spirit wearing the mask of ego provides it with a sense of human identity.

Since ego is what the world extrudes from the soul, and since the world is fundamentally about competition and survival, the ego is likewise preoccupied with physical matters and is inherently survivalistic and self-serving. By default it behaves as a self-serving predator. The ego is a personification of inner biological and astral drives streamlined by external world influences and standards.

Further, the ego does not require spirit to function; if anything, it is mutually restrained and antagonized by spirit since both are opposite in nature. For spirited humans, spirit usually takes a passive role in being the conscious observer looking through ego. But in the case of spiritless humans, the ego automaton can function equally well without a conscious observer living through it. In that case, the ego still has personality, but possesses none of the restraining or creative influences that spirit provides. So when spirit is entirely absent, or even when spirit is present but “asleep,” then ego is the only intelligence running the show — and it’s quite the tyrant.

Nature of the Ego/Intellect

What separates average humans from average animals is that we have ego, intellect, mind, and personality, which are all facets of the same thing.

The ego is an extrusion of the soul. Since both humans and animals have souls, why don’t animals have intellect? Because the formation of ego depends on the world influences that reach the soul through the body. Since animal bodies are less evolved, since their brains are simpler and lack the higher intellectual functions, the ego-forming influences never reach their soul and so the full ego never forms. Same can be seen in certain cases of mental retardation in humans.

Through ego or intellect, we can model the world internally, turn it over in our minds, relive the past, fantasize, imagine the future, construct language, perform abstract calculations, and engage in complicated lines of reasoning. These abilities all owe themselves to one defining feature of intellect: that its output can become its own internal input.

There is an internal self-referential, circulatory, feedback-looping characteristic to the intellect. One example is our ability to observe our own internal activity, like when we inwardly “see” an imagined scene. Spirit operating through intellect is what allows for the simultaneous production and observation of an internal idea or image. During this process, the mind’s output becomes its input and the ensuing feedback loop momentarily closes itself off from the external world.

The intellect’s capacity for memory involves reliving the past internally by calling it up and observing it internally, and likewise it can visualize the future through the same inward observation. For average animals, memory is purely associative and rote, instead of imaginative. They lack this self-referential, internal feedback loop, the ability to imagine and fantasize and observe one’s own thoughts and extensively turn them over. The latter is what allows spirit within the body to observe its own awareness and thereby achieve self-awareness while incarnate. Without the intellect or ego, spirit in the human body would have awareness strictly directed outward into the world.
As such, the intellect is basically a soliton within the soul. In physics, solitons are waves that circulate within themselves and recycle their energy instead of dispersing it instantly back into the environment. Thus they are like “entities” that individualize off from their surrounding medium. An example is a smoke ring, which rolls within itself and thereby maintains its form instead of dispersing like regularly blown smoke. The average human mind is like a smoke ring, the average animal mind like blown smoke. One has an internal self-referential feature, the other is purely outward directed.

Formation of Higher Ego in the Soul

The soul is also influenced by spirit, not just body. Spirit’s influence on the soul likewise extrudes from the soul a corresponding mask. Unlike the ego we all know, this higher mask represents the true face of spirit.

Normally, when spirit identifies with lower ego, it is identifying with a mask that is opposed to its own nature and originates from the physical world. But when spirit identifies with the mask of its own making, the “super ego”, then you have divinity personified.

Thus the soul has two extensions, the ego and super ego. The first is associated with human personality and computational reasoning, the latter with divine personality and higher reason (higher meaning transjective, gnostic, and numinous).

In life, we as spirits choose which of these opposites to align with and nurture. If we attune ourselves to spiritual influences and think transcendentally, we increase the divine personality. If we absorb ourselves in materialism and predation and think only calculatively, we increase the lower personality. Spirit has the choice, while incarnated, which of these personalities to build up and step into. When one nurtures the divine personality and steps fully into it, fissioning away from the
lower ego, then one becomes spirit personified.

Entitization of Thoughtforms

My point in explaining the nature of ego is to reveal how thoughtforms become entitized. Thoughtforms become entitized when they procure a rudimentary ego, intellect, mind, or personality. The human soul is a kind of thoughtform that becomes entitized through when it acquires ego through interaction with the world.

A mundane thoughtform is non-entitized. It is purely an astral and etheric construct that, like blown smoke, is emitted into the world and disperses its energy. The particular thought, emotion, or intent behind its formation directs how this energy is dispersed.

A thoughtform is entitized in two ways:

1) It is given a personality directly by the person who created it. This parallels spirit forming a higher ego within the soul. Just as the higher ego represents the true face of spirit, so does the personality programmed into a thoughtform by its creator represent the true intention of the creator.

2) Its output becomes its own input, as when it affects the world in such a way that the response reinforces its existence. This parallels the human soul first developing lower ego by interacting with the world, affecting it and being affected by it, and thereby learning through conditioning how to better fulfill its desires. This is the default way in which thoughtforms acquire entitization.

So when a thoughtform is reinforced by its effect upon the world, say by making someone think more of the same thoughts and feelings that gave rise to it, then a feedback loop arises between thoughtform and the world. This feedback loop conditions the thoughtform to become more effective at eliciting further reinforcement, and that programs it.

The natural conditioning of thoughtforms is similar to how an artificial intelligence program like a chatterbot acquires personality. In the beginning, the chatterbot is blank and comes off as stoic and nonsensical. But user interaction programs it with the right responses to the right questions, and it starts seeming more intelligent. If this conditioning ever gives it the ability to manipulate the user into serving it, then it’s truly artificially intelligent.

It should be noted that because thoughtforms lack spirit, there is nothing truly sentient inside them to observe their own thought processes and imagine or fantasize, thus thoughtforms cannot actively generate other thoughtforms. The feedback loops, reinforcement, and conditioning give the thoughtform only a rudimentary ego.

Generation and Embodiment of Thoughtforms

How exactly are thoughtforms generated? Mostly through internal fantasies charged with emotional energy. This combination forms the condensation nucleus for a cocoon of etheric energy that buds off and floats away into the etheric environment around us.

This process requires spirit acting through an intellect/mind to provide an internal world momentarily cut off from the external, and thus for internal fantasizing. Or to put it another way, the intellect creates an internal hollow, like a womb within the soul, in which an embryonic
thoughtform can first be seeded by spirit.

Our mind is what creates this inner “mini-universe” whose contents are ensouled through emotional and etheric charging. The thoughtform then goes off into the world and acquires a “body” which is merely a configuration of matter and energy that corresponds to it.

So the direct transformation of thought into reality proceeds along the following lines: spirit chooses the founding archetype -> mind imagines -> astral energizes -> etheric fashions -> physical embodies.

How a thoughtform acquires a physical “body” demands some clarification. Consider the human soul and how it influences the human body, say by moving an arm when spirit wills it. It does so by biasing the probability of quantum events occurring within the body’s nervous system. Neurons are quantum systems, and they fire at seemingly random times. The brain itself is a quantum computer whose neural behavior verges on the edge of chaos. It’s at this knife edge balance between order and chaos that the brain is extremely sensitive to anything that might bias the quantum jitter of its neural activity, and that’s how the soul is able to influence the body — through probabilistic biasing at the quantum level.

Now, most thoughtforms are too weak and simple to pilot something as complex as the human body. They don’t even have etheric circuitry to interface with the human neural circuitry. But consider how the human body is just an assemblage of matter and energy. Other configurations of matter and energy can include places, events, and specific human behaviors. So instead of a thoughtform probabilistically biasing an entire neural system, it might instead bias the course of events so that, say, a car accident results at a particular intersection, or someone who is the target of a positive thoughtform experiences a stroke of good luck. Instead of needing to bias a billion neurons, they only need to nudge a few quantum factors whose effects cascade up in scale into the everyday world we know and produce corresponding events. These everyday events are just special configurations of energy and matter, just as the body is, except that they exist in a simpler and more scattered state than the body. There is no fundamental difference between world events and the human body beyond the complexity and configuration of their material assemblage. The soul probabilistically biases the body, and weak thoughtforms probabilistically bias waking world events.

The ultimate purpose of all demiurges, all souls, all thoughtforms that operate in proximity to the physical environment, is to achieve the physical embodiment of nonphysical archetypes or “Ideas” as Plato calls them, to mold matter and energy into conformity with the Idea that gave birth to them. They are goal-driven. For instance, your soul provides the impulses that help you achieve in life what you came here to accomplish; by the end of life, if all goes well, you will have physically manifested that which was, prior to incarnation, merely an idea. So the Demiurge fashioning the universe into conformity with its founding archetypes, that has great bearing on our future because it determines where our world is headed.

Aside from nudging the probability of everyday events, thoughtforms can also bias our own neural activity to a limited extent, since, after all, the body is sensitive to nonphysical influences (it must be, or else the soul cannot couple to it). This is how thoughtforms induce within us thoughts and feelings that correspond to those that created these thoughtforms in the first place. They might not
be able to possess us fully, but they can still influence us. And if our mental and emotional responses to such thoughtforms reinforce them, they grow stronger and become entitized.

To recap, thoughtforms are entitized through repeated reinforcement and conditioning, be it conditioning through world interaction, or intentional conditioning by their creators. The stronger they grow, the more complex and wide-ranging the matter and energy configurations they can coalesce. What starts as mere skewing of events can, in extreme cases, bias probability so much that thoughtforms do acquire actual physical bodies, or rather, attract probable futures where such bodies exist that are under complete control of the thoughtform. This gets into Fortean and Mothman-type phenomena, which is beyond the scope of this article.

Worldly Entitization of the Demiurge

These soul and thoughtform dynamics are equally active on the macrocosmic scale. As stated, the Demiurge couples to the physical universe like soul coupling to body. But just as body can influence the soul, so can the universe influence the Demiurge. In response, the Demiurge may acquire an ego extension corresponding to the nature of these worldly influences. A portion of the Demiurge becomes entitized. This extension may be likened to a “World Ego.”

The World Ego is a product of the physical universe rather than Logos. It opposes the Logos and only serves ideals rooted in the realm of matter. These ideals include determinism, survival, competition, and control. The World Ego has broken away from divine harmony and seeks to perpetuate physicality for the sake of physicality.

How did this happen? It may have first emerged when lifeforms in the universe began adapting to physical existence. Their etheric and astral energies became conditioned by physicality, imprinted with the need for survival and competition. Collectively, these energies may have infused the Demiurge with the same properties.

Later, sentient beings began purposely manipulating the Demiurge for self-gain, further conditioning the World Ego to perpetuate the ideals of control and manipulation. Methods included occult rituals, hyper-dimensional technology, and the release of conditioned soul energy and thoughtforms into the etheric environment like drugs being injected into the Demiurge’s bloodstream. The occult and hyper-dimensional methods will be discussed in another article.

All of these influences contribute to corruption of the Demiurge.

Divine Entitization of the Demiurge

The World Ego is not the only extension of the Demiurge. Just as spirit acting upon the soul extrudes a higher mind, so does Nous (the divine Creator) acting upon the Demiurge create the Logos.

The Logos is a higher extension of the Demiurge that serves divine interests. Logos is a part of the World Soul that, under the influence of the infinite Creator, becomes the higher mind/intellect/personality of the Creator. Logos is associated with universal divine personality and universal higher reason. It is the “World Super Ego” and “World Higher Intellect”, in contrast to the worldly extrusion of the Demiurge which is merely the “World Ego” or “World Lower Intellect.”

The divisions within our own psyche:


- spirit,
- super ego / higher ego / higher mind / higher intellect
- soul
- lower ego
- body

... are but microcosmic reflections of the macrocosm:

- Nous
- Logos
- Demiurge
- World Ego
- Physical Universe

The Logos or _spirit_-entitized portion of the universal Demiurge is the macrocosmic analogue to our own higher intellect, divine personality, or super ego.

The _world_-entitized portion of the universal Demiurge corresponds to our lower intellect, human personality, or ego.

The first represents the face of spirit, the other of anti-spirit. One was identified by the Gnostics as Christ, the other as Yahweh. One attempts to spiritualize, harmonize, and balance according to divine reason, while the other attempts to crystallize, rigidify, and codify according to blind reason and predatory impulses. One is the force of wisdom, understanding, and gnosis, while the other is the force of blind obedience, information, predation, and calculation.

**From Harmony Toward Imbalance**

In its pure and original form, the universal Demiurge was a thoughtform generated by God. Its programmed function was to fashion the physical universe according to the divine thoughts and energies animating it. Its entitization was that of a super ego, the Logos. Its astral energy was that of love, and its etheric energy was potently vitalizing.

In an ideal situation, all aspects of Creation would carry their proper function and position. Harmony exists when lower obeys higher. Imbalance results when lower subverts higher. The universe is in harmony when:

- Nous serves as inspiration for the archetypal ideas invented by the Logos, and
- These archetypes are accurately and obediently implemented by the Demiurge in its fashioning of the physical world

Likewise, an individual is in harmony when:

- His spirit (personal Nous) serves as inspiration for the contents and activities of his higher mind (personal Logos), and
- These thoughts are accurately and obediently implemented by his soul (personal Demiurge) in its fashioning of his inner world (subconscious) and external world (life circumstances).

An individual is in harmony with the universe when his or her main three metaphysical aspects
(spirit, mind and soul) harmonize with the three corresponding universal aspects.

Spirit may harmonize with the Creator through spiritual devotion. The mind may harmonize with the Logos through becoming wise and learned. And the soul may harmonize with the universal Demiurge through personal reality creation.

When lower fully obeys higher and personal aspects fully harmonize with the universal, then one achieves transcendence. This is the ultimate goal.

There is just one problem. As mentioned, the soul is corruptible and thoughtforms can become entitized and imbued with negative astral passions. The Demiurge, despite being inherently neutral or even benevolent in its original design, is likewise corruptible and can become negatively entitized. Such entitized thoughtforms have a self-preservation instinct. Hence, the corrupted Demiurge (World Ego) does all it can to preserve itself by cultivating more of the negative energies that sustain it.

The root word of “matrix” is “mater” which is Latin for “mother.” Our matrix reality is not inherently evil, it is simply the environment in which we are immersed. It is like a mother providing the womb containing the nutrient matrix and forces needed to turn genetic potential into a living human. Likewise the universal Demiurge provides physicality as a “matrix reality” originally intended to nurture our spiritual evolution.

However, a corrupted and personified Demiurge is like a psychopathic, narcissistic, jealous mother who feeds parasitically upon her offspring. She goes so far as to use her womb as an energy farm instead of an incubator of incarnated spirit. It is no longer a matrix of growth, but a Matrix Control System.

Thus, a corrupt Demiurge, personified, functions as a universal parasite: tyrannical, demonic, blindly driven by negative instinct. It would attempt to shape the course of the universe along lines...
that engender greater negativity, division, oppression, and whatever else it feeds upon. This is what Christians and Gnostics might call *The Adversary*.

And that’s where the Gnostics were right and Plato was out of touch with the times. The Demiurge was no longer just an obedient smith fashioning the universe according to the blueprint laid down through Logos. Even by Plato’s time, it was no longer in harmony with Nous, rather it had become corrupted at some point and subjugated by anti-spiritual forces of the demonic kind.

The “World Ego” is an interloper functioning as Adversary against the Logos. This is not only true on the universal scale, but also the personal. By default, our lower personality is adversarial to the divine personality.
From a linear time perspective, there was once a Golden Age until the World Ego formed and began dominating, at which point the world fell into coldness and corruption. From the perspective of nonlinear time however, both expressions of the Demiurge coexist eternally and are locked in battle forwards and backwards across time and space.

### The Human Condition

For now there is imbalance. Too many people are blind and deaf to the impulses of spirit. Further, they feed and defend the egotistical, primal, and irrational impulses that spring forth from negative programs and energies lodged in their subconscious. Lower subverts higher. These are not isolated cases; it’s an epidemic.

It’s clear from observation that we are born with certain genetic design flaws, such as being handicapped against using our full brain capacity and being confined to mere five-sense perception. It’s also clear that the world we enter is generally antagonistic to spirit. Thus, both “nature” and “nurture” are set in opposition to spirit from the start. Only through much divine support and spiritual strength does an individual defy material determinism and use obstacles as stepping stones toward spiritual awakening. Such cases are rare, and it seems people are generally crushed, deformed, and shaped by such stones instead, as one would expect if spirit offers no counterweight to the determinism of nature and nurture.

Interestingly, Gnostics viewed the Demiurge as not only the fashioner of this world, but also the maker of the human race. Likewise, some modern fringe schools of thought view negative hyper-dimensional entities as our genetic creators and ongoing spacetime manipulators\(^6\). Indeed, there is clearly an external malevolent variable intruding into the human equation. This suggests evil is not always the product of human failings, rather human failings are frequently the product of an
external evil.

For too many humans, their lower egos have shut the off from spirit — their personal Demiurge is corrupt and has shut them off from Nous. But this merely mirrors a more universal manifestation of same. Our world appears to be in the grip of an entitized Demiurge with a strong self-preservation instinct oriented toward control. It fashions our reality and biases the probability of events in contravention to the divine design set forth by the universal Logos. It is the matrix gone awry, the thought-form of the universe turned parasite. How this came about is the subject of another article.

Further Reading


Wikipedia entry on Demiurge

Marcion of Sinope – Example of an early Christian gnostic/heretic and the kinds of views held by such.

What is Gnosticism – Short summary of the early history of Gnosticism and its defining traits.

Contradictions Between the Old Testament Deity and the New Testament God.

The Demiurge in Valentinianism – Valentinian school of philosophy regarding the Demiurge.

Dictionary of the Apostolic Church – Thorough entry on the Demiurge from a theological and historical point of view.

Wikipedia entry on Logos


Zeno of Citium – Example of an early philosopher’s interpretation of Logos as world-designer, condenser and dissolver.

The Soul of the World – from The Secret Doctrine of the Rosicrucians (Magus Incognito, 1918). One of the few books that gets into Demiurge as the ender and initiator of World Ages or World Cycles, like a soul dissolving after death and reforming in a new body. This is highly relevant to the times we are now in.

Theosophy (Rudolf Steiner, 1904) – Good introduction to astral, etheric, mental, and other components of the human system. Steiner doesn’t just describe, but fundamentally explains them logically from the inside out.

Wikipedia entry on Thoughtforms

Wikipedia entry on Tulpas – Buddhist term for thoughtform.

Wikipedia entry on Egregore – another term for thoughtform.

Initiation into Hermetics (Franz Bardon, 1956, 2005) – specifically pp. 165-174 where Bardon
discusses elementals, larvae, schemata, and phantasms – four types of thoughtforms, how they are created and how they function.

**Cosmology and Cosmogony** – Essay by Philip K. Dick speculating (based on his gnostic experiences) on the dynamic between the Demiurge (which he calls the Artifact) and the Logos (which he calls the Urgrund, or primordial foundation).

**In Pursuit of Valis** (link to download page of PDF) – Excerpts from Philip K. Dick’s personal writings wherein he attempts to unravel the meaning of his mystical gnostic experiences. PKD is an example of a true modern gnostic, not one who reads and regurgitates “gnostic scripture” (an oxymoron) but one who had direct contact with higher intelligence.

---

### Notes


2. This is why Sigmund Freud said that the ego is a surface projection of the id, meaning that the ego arises from our instinctual drives having adapted to the world through conditioning. Despite having some rather twisted conclusions, Sigmund Freud (1856-1939) was sharp in his observations. His work is useful in exploring the nature of the corrupted human psyche. His system of the id, ego, and superego are useful in the study of Macrocosm-Microcosm correspondence.

From *Freud Evaluated* by Malcolm Macmillian (MIT Press, 1997):

“The ego controls the perceptual and motor apparatus, lays down memories, makes judgments, and selects possible courses of action. Only in the ego does consciousness arise and is anxiety experienced. The ego uses its functions to initiate repression or to control and delay instinctual discharge until realistic modes of need satisfaction have been found. Normally it is governed by the reality principle and operates according to the secondary process. […]

The superego is the vehicle of the ego-ideal, the repository of the individual’s standards and values, the location of the conscience, the function that scrutinizes the person’s behavior, forever measuring it against the standards of the ideal, and home of the mechanism that punishes violations of those standards. […] The id is the reservoir of the psychic energy deriving from the twin drives of the Thanatos, or death, and Eros, or life. Activity there is governed by the primary process, the tendency for instinctual drives to press for immediate discharge, and for their energies to be freely mobile, capable of condensation and displacement. The id is said to be timeless and know nothing of logic, contradiction, or negation. This seething cauldron of instinctual drives is an original, inherited endowment of energy.”

The id is clearly synonymous with the astral body and the subconscious, both of which are seething with energies and hidden motivators.

Notice too how auto-suggestion requires positive statements since the subconscious does not understand negation, just as Freud said regarding the id. That is the Demiurge in its purest and original definition, the passionate implementer.

Just keep in mind that Freud’s concept of superego is his lame attempt at interpreting the functions
of spirit from the viewpoint materialistic paradigms. The best he could do is say that superego was the collection of moral programming we receive in life. He believed this is why we act nice, because it holds us to our programmed standards, not because we have any intrinsic spiritual knowing of right and wrong. But his interpretation is only valid for spiritless humans. They have no spirit, and lower ego as their highest member. They act nice only through social programming and threat of punishment. True conscience comes from empathy and understanding, which are traits of spirit that require no religious or social programming.

The “moral” part of the ego is still predatory. This can be seen in how it feeds on our energies by berating us, inducing shame, and being needlessly critical for the sake of preoccupying our minds. The true super ego or higher ego, as used in this article, is the personification of spirit within us that nudges us through intuition, understanding, and empathy.

The difference between Freud’s superego and my use of the term is clear in the case of, say, a devout Nazi whose Freudian superego makes him feel guilty for having any sympathy for Jews since doing so violates his social programming. His real superego, however, would feel empathy regardless.

3 This is the harmful mind-reality feedback loop I explained in Realm Dynamics. In that article, I explain how emotional obsession with such things as Men in Black, gray aliens, reptilians, demons, black helicopters, or government agents helps to attract them into one’s personal reality. When we obsessively fear these entities, we create thoughtforms in their image. These thoughtforms feed on our fear and grow stronger. Negative beings can hijack these thoughtforms and use them as sock puppets to terrorize us even more. A feedback loop arises where the more we become preoccupied and paranoid with them, the more tangible and frequently and strongly their appear in our lives. At some point they are seen in everyday living conditions, even during daylight in public.

From The Mothman Prophecies by John Keel:

“The phenomenon is dependent on belief, and as more and more people believe in flying saucers from other planets, the lower force can manipulate more people through false illumination. I have been watching, with great consternation, the worldwide spread of the UFO belief and its accompanying disease. If it continues unchecked we may face a time when universal acceptance of the fictitious space people will lead us to a modern faith in extraterrestrials that will enable them to interfere very overtly in our affairs, just as the ancient gods dwelling on mountaintops directly ruled large segments of the population in the Orient, Greece, Rome, Africa, and South America. [...] I was being led to people and cases to support whatever theory I was working on at the time. I tested this by inventing some rather outlandish ideas. Within days I would receive phone calls, reports, and mail describing elements of those ideas. [...] This was the feedback or reflective effect. Other investigators concerned with solving problems such as how flying saucers are propelled have automatically been fed, or led into, cases in which the witnesses supposedly viewed the interiors of the objects and saw things which confirmed the investigators’ theories. If the phenomenon can produce any effect through hallucination, it can easily support any theory. It took me a long time to realize that many of my Men in Black reports were just feedback.”

4 The relation between Demiurge and physical universe is analogous to the relation between soul
and body. But the analogy is not perfect. That the Demiurge projects and creates physicality does not mean the soul projects and creates the body. In the human case, the soul merely incarnates into a pre-existing body whose physical atoms are projections of the Demiurge. The soul merely shapes and animates the body, but does not project it in the same manner that the Demiurge projects the physical universe.

However, there comes a point in a being’s evolution when the soul and spirit grow strong enough that the physical body comes entirely under their command. That is when the body can be materialized and dematerialized as needed. This power belongs to superhuman beings. Examples include: 1) certain shamans according to Carlos Castaneda, 2) angelic beings that can materialize and appear as beggars or fools, 3) certain alien beings that are not physical in their native state but can project temporary bodies and vehicles into our reality, 4) mystics who can go years without food, 5) Jesus Christ in his post-Resurrectional form, 6) certain spiritual masters of the alchemical and Rosicrucian order like Fulcanelli who have mastered and transcended physicality. This is possible if one becomes sufficiently congruent with the universal Logos, for then the universal Demiurge generating physicality obeys. Rudolf Steiner called this transformed physical body the “spirit body.” According to Steiner, this is the last thing a spiritual master achieves since physicality is the most stubborn of all the elements (astral, etheric, physical) to overcome, because it is the one most removed from spirit.

5 “The Adversary” is a Christian and Gnostic term. It implies a cunning, strategic, oppositional intelligence. It is like a goal-driven game player that poses an obstacle to the spiritualizing influence of the Creator. Remember that thoughtforms are goal driven; they are seeded with archetypes (“Ideas”) and have the astral passion to pursue them to completion. The Adversary is the ego-extension of the universal Demiurge. We know that, within our own minds, the undisciplined ego is adversarial to our spiritual well-being. It is selfish and body-centric, just as the World Ego is selfish and matrix-centric. Later it will be made clear how this goal-driven aspect is the result of self-amplifying temporal feedback loops. These loops circulate between alternate futures and alternate pasts that compete with each other. The competition concerns which future/past becomes the one set in stone.

6 These are the Archons of Gnostic lore, not the Demiurge itself. But they are often equated with the Demiurge since they hold high reverence for the corrupted Demiurge and carry out its will. They worship the Demiurge because through it, they are endowed with the power to manipulate timelines, alter the world, and have dominion over their enslaved subjects. In the Cassiopaean Transcripts, the Demiurge was named “Ormethion” and was identified with the physical universe in a pantheistic sense. Ormethion was said to be the deity that Reptilian aliens worship. Its root “orm” comes from Greek “hormes” which, according to theoi.com, “was the spirit (daimon) of impulse or effort (to do a thing), eagerness, setting oneself in motion, and starting an action.” You can see how this ties into demi-“urge”. The term also relates to “hormone” which is the primary biological avenue through which the spirit is continually subjugated by the body. We are in the grip of these so-called Archons. They are aliens to which earth is but a cattle farm. We are products of their genetic manipulation, birthed into a world whose history has been altered by their timeline manipulation. Through abductions we are tagged, monitored, and programmed. If there weren’t a divine side counterbalancing all this, we’d all be doomed. But fortunately the future is still up in the
air, and thus a grand battle is being waged with a dramatic climax occurring relatively soon.

---

**Changelog**

0.1 – Article posted.

0.2 – (7/30/11) Some sections shortened, certain passages rewritten to make easier to understand, and some long sentences split up into shorter ones.

©2010, montalk.net – you may reproduce this article (in whole) if you include a link back to it and make sure readers know it came from montalk.net. The link is: http://montalk.net/gnosis/171

(index)

2 - The Philosopher's Stone

**21 July 10 (gnosis)**

©2010, montalk.net

(Version 0.6 – changelog provided at end of article)

The Philosopher’s Stone is not just a spiritual metaphor but an actual substance that can transmute lead or mercury into gold. The Stone is a product of Alchemy. Unlike chemistry, which only deals with physical matter and energy, Alchemy makes use of etheric and astral energies to reconfigure matter at the quantum level. Alchemy is to chemistry what a cube is to the square; it is a superset of chemistry and is capable of so much more.

**How Etheric Energy Overrides Physical Laws**

Alchemical achievements require successfully gathering, concentrating, and multiplying etheric energy. When this energy reaches a critical threshold, it overpowers the normal laws of physics and allows seemingly miraculous processes to take place. I believe it does this by biasing probability. By amplifying the probability of minor quantum effects, which are normally limited to the subatomic scale, they manifest on the larger atomic scale. In this way, one element spontaneously transforms into another.

The world around us is made of subatomic particles that regularly undergo unpredictable jumps, teleportation, bilocation, superposition, and other strange quantum behaviors. Why don’t everyday solid objects do likewise? Because the random quantum jittering of their subatomic particles collectively average out to zero. Think of a large crowd of people; seen from the air, the crowd as a whole is stationary, even though individuals within the crowd move in seemingly random directions. It’s because their movements are random and uncoordinated that they average to zero net movement on the whole.

The world we see around us is merely a crowd of subatomic particles whose individual quantum jumps aren’t apparent because they average to collective stillness. Physical laws that govern our everyday world, known as the deterministic laws of classical physics, are merely the laws of the crowd. These laws are what’s left of quantum physics after the unpredictability is removed through statistical averaging. They are not absolute laws; they are just the most probable manner in which
matter and energy behave.

Physical laws can be bent. While the probability is incredibly low that enough coordination and coherence develops among the quantum jitters to manifest on a collective scale, that is exactly what etheric energy does. It alters probability and thereby skews the laws of thermodynamics, gravity, electromagnetism, and chemistry.

Alchemy does not violate the laws of physics, nor does it always follow them, rather it bends them as needed. It operates upon the quantum foundation from which these laws arise in the first place, via etheric energy affecting the probability of quantum events.

The Alchemy of Transmutation

Alchemy uses the code names salt, mercury, and sulphur to denote the different components of a substance.

- **Salt** denotes the physical component, the seat, base, matrix, anchor, or ark of the nonphysical aspects.
- **Mercury** is the etheric component and represents the dynamic, vital, transmutative, vivifying energy present within the substance.
- **Sulphur** denotes the archetypal identity or pure vibrational essence, analogous to the human astral body and spirit because it contains the “Idea” unique to that substance.

For example, in Alchemy an element like gold is seen to have three components: the salt of gold, mercury of gold, and sulphur of gold. These respectively denote the physical, etheric, and archetypal aspects of gold. Same goes for other materials employed in Alchemy, they also have their salt, mercury, and sulphur components.

The goal of transmutation is to impress the archetypal signature of one element upon another in order to change it to that element. By changing an element’s archetypal signature it cannot remain the same element.

What Alchemy does in the case of transmutation of lead into gold, is to

- extract **mercury** from etherically potent sources
- imbue it with the **sulphur** of gold
- store the combination in a suitable **salt**.

The result is then ready to impress its archetypal essence of “goldness” upon a different element responsive to transmutation.

This is the Philosopher’s Stone, or rather one form of it called the Red Stone because it is made with gold and assumes a red color.

Making the Philosopher’s Stone

Complete and accurate instructions for making the Stone don’t exist in one place. Nevertheless, a basic understanding can be pieced together from the sources listed at the end of this article. The following is my own tentative interpolation of these sources. My goal is not to give a detailed
recipe, but to explain key features of the process because they are relevant to my thesis concerning the Demiurge.

Natural etheric energy is cosmic or biological in origin. Both derive it from a higher dimension. The center of stars including our Sun are dimensional windows through which physical and nonphysical energy enters our local universe. The Moon modulates and reflects what it receives from the Sun, therefore both Sun and Moon are our nearest cosmic sources of etheric energy. It accompanies sunlight and moonlight and enters into the atmosphere’s water vapor before condensing as morning dew.

Biological etheric energy comes from living things. That is because life incarnate cannot exist without etheric energy bonding consciousness to the body. Thus bacteria, plants, animals, and humans all contain and emit etheric energy. However, the quality of this energy varies depending on the source. Just as the Moon colors what it receives from the Sun, so do lifeforms color what they receive from a higher dimension.

Thus not all forms of etheric energy are appropriate for the creation of the Stone since plant, animal, and human emissions are too distant from the Stone’s own nature, which is more that of a living mineral. Hence the Alchemists limited their search to the cosmic and mineral realms. And if they did look to the biological realm for assistance, they would only have found it among the most primitive of bacteria, for these are closest to the mineral kingdom.

Water is an attractor and carrier of etheric energy, but it is not the only one. Salts also serve that function. Many different kinds of salt exist, all of them consisting of a metal joined to a non-metal. Table salt is sodium joined to chlorine, sphalerite is zinc joined to sulfur, while galena is lead joined to sulfur. Other metals such as iron, copper, magnesium, calcium, cadmium, etc. can form salts.

Metal is another good attractor and carrier of etheric energy. Of all common metals, Alchemists say that iron has the greatest affinity for etheric energy. It is therefore a curious fact that blood, the carrier of such energy in our bodies, consists mostly of water, iron, and salt. It is also interesting that in folklore and occultism, a piece of iron, a line of salt, or a stream of water can act as barriers to unfriendly nonphysical entities, who would have their energy siphoned away by these substances. Garlic and onions play a similar role in folklore, and their key component is the element sulfur. Sulfur is yet another etherically active substance.

To know what materials Alchemists selected to make the Stone, you must understand how they thought. In the old days, Alchemists believed that metals originated in the Earth when dew from the heavens condensed on the ground, worked its way downward, and met with heat and vapors percolating upwards from the center of the planet. The combination produced a primitive metallic seed out of which all other metals grew. They believed that various metals were this one seed at different stages of growth, with gold being the final stage.

Gold was considered to be oldest of the metals, the final state toward which other metals were evolving. But in its old age, gold had expended all of its etheric energy. What was left was a dead body (salt) carrying the image (sulphur) of gold, but lacking the youthful vitality (mercury) that younger metals still possessed. Thus the goal of Alchemy was to take the noblest of metals and reinvigorate it, thereby taking it to a state of evolution higher than anything achievable in nature.
In practice, this meant starting with the youngest of metallic products, one so early in its evolution that it wasn’t yet a robust metal but rather more of a primitive metalloid. It had to have an affinity for gold and be a potent source of etheric energy, something that contained the secret fire of the cosmos. Alchemists chose a mineral that resembled gold but appeared darkened by impurities. This raw matter they crushed to a fine powder, fed with dew and oxygen, and incubated with heat.

Their aim was to induce putrefaction in order to unbind the matter’s mercury, salt, and sulphur components, just as death unbinds the human physical, etheric, and astral bodies. This was difficult because putrefaction takes a long time in the mineral kingdom and the speed depends on the electrochemical qualities of the mineral which varies from mine to mine as well as the presence or absence of bacterial catalysts.

In any case, when the appropriate factors are present, the mineral decomposes as intended. In successfully extracting the mercury and salt from this mineral and leaving behind the impure sulphur, they now had a youthful body and soul that could be joined to gold’s ancient spirit. This mercurial salt they called their secret fire, universal solvent, the “water that does not wet the hands”, common mercury, and alkahest. Alchemists believed it was the one thing by which the whole work could be accomplished, the one agent that could dissolve gold and acquire its sulphur.

In the so-called “Dry Path” of making the Stone, this salt and the gold leaf are placed in a crucible and heated to glowing temperature for several days, thereby joining them into one. This path is the quickest but also the most dangerous due to the high temperatures and potential for explosions. In the “Wet Path,” gold leaf is mixed into the water-solubilized salt, then sealed in a glass flask and heated until the gold is fully disaggregated by the universal solvent. The result is a white buttery substance some have called “philosophical mercury,” and this is the Philosopher’s Stone in its nascent form.

After putrefying this white substance to blackness, heating until its impurities are driven away and it turns white once more, then further heating and repetition of this process eventually produces a red oil on the surface. This red oil is the sulphur of gold completely fused with youthful mercury. Further heating and evaporation coagulates the oil into a solid. This solid is the Philosopher’s Stone in its finished form, unless one wishes to multiply its power by dissolving it in more fresh universal solvent (which is a donor of etheric energy) and repeating the previous operation, except using the Stone instead of gold leaf this time. This can be repeated any number of times, and each time a fresh dose of etheric energy impregnates the solid or oily remains and takes the Stone to its next order of power.

Upon attaining success, the final result is a dense stone, red and translucent like a ruby. It is water-soluble, melts like wax, flows like quicksilver when melted, does not burn at any temperature, yet volatilizes when thrown into the molten metal it aims to transmute. It is a physical substance supersaturated with etheric energy and imprinted with the vibrational fingerprint of gold. When pulverized, mixed into beeswax, and cast into molten lead, it transmutes a certain multiple of its weight of lead into gold. It can also transmute quicksilver the same way. The lead or quicksilver atoms are overwhelmed by the etheric potency of the Stone and become malleable at the quantum level, allowing the fingerprint of gold to reconfigure them accordingly, thereby converting these into gold.
Alchemists emphasize that to succeed in this work, one must be of the highest ethics, have a deep mind capable of penetrating the mysteries of nature, and be a good observer and experimenter. Prayer and purity are essential to receive the intuitive insights and synchronistic guidance needed to discover the right steps in the right order. This is important because the less one understands about Alchemy, the more hidden variables there are, the lower the chances of success by trial and error. But if you are decreed so by destiny, or if you attain sufficient spiritual purity that higher forces deem you responsible enough to handle it, then you will be synchronistically and intuitively guided to success. But that won’t happen if you are driven by greed, skepticism, or other anti-spiritual motives, or if it goes against your karma and destiny. You don’t find the Stone, the Stone finds you.

The secret is synchronistically encrypted from those who would use it to cause trouble for themselves or others. Even misguided help can be a form of damage, thus in addition to purity, wisdom is needed. And if by chance someone did discover it and attempted to cause trouble, they would likely die suddenly, as already happens to people who try to bring antigravity and free energy technology into the world. The Philosopher’s Stone is of that same vein. That’s why no Alchemist has ever revealed the full picture. They not only realize the terrible implications of its misuse, but fear what harm might come to themselves if they facilitate that by giving knowledge without sufficient discretion.

Again, here I only give a general and limited estimation of the process for the sake of illustrating the underlying dynamics involved, as they are pertinent to my exposition on the Demiurge.

Other Applications of the Stone

At the first order of multiplication, a minuscule portion of the Stone may be dissolved in water or wine, and thereof a small portion ingested daily. This “Elixir of Life” or “Universal Medicine” is claimed to strongly energizes one’s etheric body. With a reinforced etheric body, the physical body is less impacted by the degrading effects of linear time and may even reverse aging. Additionally, psychic powers begin to manifest as a function of increased etheric energy current output. So you can imagine what became of Alchemical masters who succeeded in producing the Stone and made full use of it. They became more than human. However, they presumably had the spiritual maturity to handle this. Any ordinary person, in being more psychically fragile, would go crazy, get sick and die from being unable to handle the increased etheric current load.

This “Universal Medicine” takes on great importance in Alchemy, because it represents a true panacea, something that cures all ills by charging the diseased organs with vital energy so that rightful health is regained. This goal is far more important than the transmutation of metals. In fact, the transmutation is done primarily as a test to see how strong the Stone, and thus whether it is safe for ingestion because beyond the first power it is no longer safe to use as a medicine.

In another application, by the seventh or eighth order of multiplication, the Stone remains liquid begins to physically glow, even more brightly if multiplied again. It glows continually without exhaustion. This is what powers the fabled “eternal lamps” in occult lore. And if multiplied beyond a certain point, it is said to eat through glass and even explode in something akin to a matter-antimatter reaction, which is obviously very dangerous. This shows that etheric energy, concentrated beyond a certain point, may initiate an outpouring of electromagnetic energy. This make sense because ether is the precursor and precipitator of matter, energy, space, and time.
Thus the Stone, in its full application, potentially provides wealth, health, psychic power, and light. No wonder it has been kept so secret through the ages, mainly to keep it out of the hands of unscrupulous individuals whose misuse of these powers would bring catastrophic consequences upon the world. That is not to say such catastrophes haven’t happened.

Alchemy as Demiurgic Technology

What we have here is Demiurgic technology. How so? Recall that the Demiurge has an astral and etheric body. The etheric shapes matter according to the archetypes or “vibrational patterns” contained in the astral.

Well, the Philosopher’s Stone is a physical object charged with etheric energy, carrying the vibrational pattern of gold. It can reshape physical matter like lead or mercury into conformance with that vibration. Thus the Stone is a physical object imbued with Demiurgic power. The technology of using etheric and astral energies to reconfigure matter is hereby called Demiurgic technology.

The most remarkable thing is that it’s made by human hands, which is the closest thing to hyper-dimensional technology that one person in an attic laboratory can produce using everyday materials and uncommon techniques.

But even with all its purported greatness, the Philosopher’s Stone is only an elementary demonstration of a science with far greater potential. Alchemy as we know it is a primitive form of hyper-dimensional science. Producing the Stone is like wrapping a wire around a nail, connecting it to a battery, and rejoicing in it becoming an electromagnet. But higher forms of Demiurgic technology exist that can produce something more like a billion-dollar supercollider. Both the wire-wrapped nail and supercollider employ the same basic principles of electromagnetism, but the first is a trivially simplistic version of the latter.

In the Philosopher’s Stone we have proof, through circumstantial evidence and logicality of its existence, of what can be scaled up to an even higher level. Remember, the power of the Stone lies in its etheric potency, and its potency determines the degree to which it can bias probability and influence physicality. The archetypal fingerprint determines the nature of this biasing.

The weakest etheric fields can only nudge an electron this way or that. A bit stronger can nudge neurons and living cells. Even stronger it can influence synchronicity. Stronger, it can override chemical laws and allow for elemental transmutation or psychic spoon bending. You can scale this up higher and higher until you reach a point where the entire world, our entire timeline, can be shifted, reconfigured, reprogrammed, transmuted. Etheric energy does all this at the quantum level, which is the foundation of our physical reality.

That Alchemy can only produce these effects on the chemical scale, places it in the category of Low Demiurgic Technology. So what, then, is High Demiurgic Technology? It is that which does to the universe what Alchemy does to gold leaf and lead ingots. It can manufacture an artifact charged with such unbelievable amounts of etheric energy as to dissolve and reconfigure the world in accordance with the artifact’s programmed archetypes.

This object is a kind of “World Philosopher’s Stone”, the macrocosmic equivalent to the Philosopher’s Stone. Two well-known examples of such High Demiurgic Technology will be
discussed in the articles to follow.

Further Reading

Real Alchemy (3rd Ed., 2009, Ibis) – by Robert Bartlett. Basic primer on Alchemy, including an explanation of the terminology, theory, and lab techniques. Written in modern language, this is a good introduction to Alchemy.

The Book of Aquarius – Free download or hardcopy available at Amazon. Some basic theories on how Alchemy works, though I disagree with the author that urine is the key. It isn’t. What matters is the ‘urine’ given off by the raw starting mineral after it endures bacterial fermentation.

Covenant of Silence (2nd Edition, 2010). This book summarizes various traditional alchemical texts and provides a more modern interpretation of their meaning. It’s out of print and Nicholas Collette died recently at the age of 32. I don’t agree with this book that the salt of dew or sea salt is the key. Collette himself said later that he was mistaken about that. But it was the first Alchemy book I read, that explained how lifeforce energy was what made it all work.

Dwellings of the Philosophers (French Ed. 1964, Archive Press. English Ed. 1999, Archive Press) – by Fulcanelli. Straight from the horse’s mouth, this is a lengthy treatise by the most famous Alchemist of the 20th century. Unfortunately he goes to great lengths to compartmentalize, rearrange, and obscure the secrets of Alchemy while simultaneously revealing them to the world in cryptic form. So this dense book takes some work to read and decipher and therefore won’t be everyone’s cup of tea. My advice is to read this book at least five times, paying attention to the alchemical philosophy and techniques delineated rather than the architectural and historical passages which are just filler separating what’s important. Annotate in the margins (or copy into a text document) the useful passages according to the sub-topic they pertain to, so that by assembling all relevant details on a sub-topic, you have a fully fleshed out puzzle piece that can then be arranged into logical sequence with the other puzzle pieces. My article above provides a suggested arrangement. At the end of this book, Fulcanelli also strays into other topics like the mechanism behind the ending of World Ages and how ours is ending right now, which is interesting. The hardcopy of this book goes out of print periodically and scalpers charge hundreds of dollars for it, although you can view it online as well. If you want to learn traditional real alchemy, then this book is required reading. It says more than any other source, and it does not lie or lead astray.

Luminous World – Baron Karl Von Reichenbach – excerpted from Lost Science by Gerry Vassilatos. Informative summary of Reichenbach’s investigations into “Od Energy” — a subtle energy bearing much similarity to chi, prana, etheric, and orgone energy. Reichenbach was a scientist and employed his skills in researching this energy. Read this interesting article to get a better idea of how etheric energy behaves.

A Rosicrucian Notebook (English Ed. 1992, Samuel Weiser Inc.) – by Willie Schrödter. Not a notebook by a Rosicrucian, but by a researcher into Rosicrucianism. It is an exoteric survey of anecdotes and quotations concerning the real Rosicrucian order. This is a compendium of occultism, mysticism, and weird science with tons of interesting tidbits concerning such topics as ever-burning lamps, remote healing, clairvoyance, the Stone, and other tools of Rosicrucian science. Everything
is documented, so this book is a useful reference to find related sources on particular topics. It’s not an essential book but interesting and has some obscure information.

**Biological Transmutations** (First English Ed. 1998, Beekman Publishers Inc.) – by Louis Kervran. Scientific investigations into transmutations of elements within living things, including bacteria, plants, and humans. Kervran explores the scientific basis behind this transmutation, which is valuable in attempting to understand how Alchemy may be explainable from a more mainstream scientific perspective. Take note that the temperatures Kervran cites for effective biological transmutation and non-biological transmutation are respectively the same as those used in the Wet and Dry Paths of Alchemy.

**RAMS Digital Library** – Large collection of numerous rare alchemical manuscripts, found nowhere else. Highly valuable source of information. Focus on Pontanus, Artephius, Cyliani, Sendivogius and Adiramled. Though Adiramled warns that it’s better to read a few good sources many times, than many mediocre sources a few times. The sources I’m listing here are the “few good” ones but I suppose there are some gems to be found in the RAMS library as well.

**Pontanus’ Epistle** – 1659 treatise on the “Secret Fire” being the key to producing the Stone.

**The Secret Book of Artephius** – 12th Century. Also mentions the Secret Fire. Ignore his implication that Antimony is the starting point. It’s a code word for another mineral. Note that he talks about three fires, the third being the secret fire which is a substance that embodies a metaphysical energy that drives the creation of the Stone from beginning to end.

**Cyliani’s Hermes Unveiled** – An elaborate metaphor symbolically encoding the Alchemical process, particularly the Wet Path.

**Sendivogius’ The New Chemical Light** – A relatively clear and entertaining explanation of creating the Stone, or at least the first stages. It’s still done in riddle form, but he does a good job of explaining how Alchemists believed metals are created. From that you can reverse engineer what they might have done to reproduce it in the lab, under their assumptions.

**Hermes Trismegistus Old Natural Path** – By I.C.H. An obscure manuscript published in Leipzig, 1782, referenced by Cyliani. Key info on the technique for breaking down the raw starting material, and the proper order of the various phases. Never before translated into English. I was the editor and book designer for this edition. ([online](#))

**Thirteen Secret Letters** – Also by the author of *Hermes Trismegistus Old Natural Path*, this book contains thirteen letters written by members of the 18th century Golden and Rosicrucian Order, a high degree Masonic Order with a strong emphasis on laboratory alchemy. The letters explain one method for preparing the matter and extracting from it the mercury and sulfur. Rare and valuable text. ([online](#))

---

**Notes**

1 The root “pyr” is Greek for fire. The dynamic vitalizing force of the soul, the Demiurgic energy so to speak, was called “sacred fire” by the ancients. Therefore the root “pyr” is bound with the concept of Demiurgic technology. Hence terms like pyramid, Pyrenees, and pyrite, three terms that
are very closely related to Demiurgic technology. As will be explained in another article, the Great Pyramid is a channeler, collector, and amplifier of etheric energy. The Pyrenees are the mountain range between France and Spain, where a conclave of powerful Alchemists allegedly reside. And pyrite is a salt of sulfur and iron that sparks when struck, and thus contains within it latent fire, or so it appeared to the ancients. This brass or bronze-colored mineral, or rather its starry pseudomorph known as marcasite, was the raw material preferred by Fulcanelli for production of the Philosopher’s Stone. Note that pyrite is also known as “Fool’s Gold.” It is the true gold of Fools in the esoteric sense, for they value it more than real gold; through it, they can make as much gold as they require and produce the Elixir of Life.

Changelog

0.1 – Article posted.

0.2 – Fixed some typos and modified footnote #3 to explains the double meaning of the term “Fool’s Gold”.

0.3 – (7/29/11) Added “The Book of Aquarius” to the Further Reading section. Shortened and simplified certain sections and sentences.

0.4 – (12/1/11) Added a Take Note caveat and modified the manner in which I referenced The Book of Aquarius and The Covenant of Silence.

0.5 – (12/24/12) Rewrote the first half of the article after a year’s worth of deeper reading into Alchemy texts. Added further references in the recommended reading.

0.6 – (1/8/14) Rewrote the “Making the Philosopher’s Stone” section and improved commentary on the recommended reading sources at the end.

©2010, montalk.net – you may reproduce this article (in whole) if you include a link back to it and make sure readers know it came from montalk.net. The link is: http://montalk.net/gnosis/174

3 - The Holy Grail

28 October 10 (gnosis)
©2010, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

In my previous article, I explained how the Philosopher’s Stone is an actual object manufactured through the principles of low demiurgic technology, better known as Alchemic. I call it “demiurgic technology” because it employs the energies of the Demiurge — etheric and astral energies — to reshape matter at the quantum level, and “low” because the Stone’s reach of influence is localized: it can only transform the lead or mercury it is cast into, and can only biologically regenerate the individual who ingests it.

In this article and the next, I will discuss two examples of high demiurgic technology: the Holy Grail and the Ark of the Covenant. Both operate on the same principles as the Philosopher’s Stone,
just taken to a higher degree of power and sophistication and having a more global reach.

The Grail is an object with supernatural powers brought to our world by otherworldly forces. The Ark of the Covenant was a container constructed by ancient Hebrews, during their flight from Egypt, to house a powerful artifact.

Since descriptions of the Ark’s capabilities closely parallel those of the Grail, what the Ark contained may have been the Grail. As to their ultimate purpose, both the Grail and Ark were generally portrayed as physical embodiments of a god-like intelligence.

The Grail subject has several complementary aspects: 1) The technology. What it is, and what it does. Its physical nature, function, and purpose. 2) The history. The events that lead to its creation and introduction to our world. Who is responsible for it. What it has done, and will do, to our world. 3) The spiritual metaphor. What it represents within all of us. What is indicated about a proper course of spiritual development.

I will explore these in sequence over the coming articles, reserving the spiritual aspect for last because it concerns the solution to a problem I have yet to delineate. If it seems like I’m getting hung up on the technology, it’s only because I find it a prerequisite for understanding the reasons behind the historical aspect, which then underscores the gravity of the spiritual aspect.

I will begin by addressing the functional characteristics of the Grail and in my next article follow up with those of the Ark. From this, it will become clear how competition over, and the abuse of such immense power can, has, and will have catastrophic consequences for our world.

Medieval Literature Describes the Grail

The original Grail legends preceded Christianity. Later the Church retrofitted these pagan tales with Biblical symbolism and context. From that retrofitting we get the popular notion that the Holy Grail was the cup from which Jesus Christ served wine at the Last Supper, which later caught his blood as he died on the cross, or the notion that it was a platter carrying the decapitated head of John the Baptist.

Of all medieval authors who wrote of the Grail, Wolfram von Eschenbach seemed most privy and sympathetic to the pagan/gnostic stream of Grail lore. He was a wandering knight, scholar, poet, and singer — the German equivalent of troubadour — who associated with secret societies like the Templars or was a member himself. In his book Parzival, he tells the tale of a foolish boy named Parzival who leaves home to become a knight. This boy is destined to become Grail King but out of timidity fails miserably when eventually offered the opportunity. Cursed for his failure, he spends several years in utter dejection undergoing numerous hard trials before developing the inner strength to fight for his destiny regardless of the failure. And only by this inner resolve and being true to his Self does he earn his second chance and finally become Grail King.

Embedded within this plot are periodic references to the Grail, its origins and functions. These are set within a Christian context that, upon closer inspection, disguise a more Gnostic, pagan, pre-Christian core. In other words, Wolfram may have had the inside scoop on the Grail and inserted what heretical truths he could between the obligatory religious veneer, as is evident from the odd details pertaining to the Grail that fit poorly within Biblical context.
That is not to say the other Grail books are worthless, because their retrofitting occasionally kept the original meaning relatively intact. For instance, if Jesus Christ was the incarnation of a personified extension of the Logos, which is the spiritualized aspect of the demiurge, then you can see how a cup holding his blood is identically a physical vessel holding demiurgic energy. You have already encountered one example: the Philosopher’s Stone, of which the Grail is a higher order relative. Or consider the platter holding the head of John the Baptist; John poured “living water” upon Jesus and baptized him, indicating his symbolic function as the conferrer of that which made Jesus more than mere man, that is to say he symbolized the Logos, and “Logos” being associated with mind/intellect may explain the head-on-a-platter visual. These are examples of ecclesiastical steganography.

In Wolfram’s *Parzival*, the Grail was neither cup nor platter, but an otherworldly stone. It was called neither “Holy Grail” nor “Holy Vessel” but simply the “Graal.” It was treated as a strange and marvelous non-terrestrial artifact. To avoid redundancy, I will call it “Grail” instead of “Graal.” Here is how Wolfram characterizes it:

- **It was paradisal and transcended all earthly perfection.** This implies it was more than just a hunk of rock. Rather its perfection extended beyond the earthly material level.

- **It was cared for by a woman of perfect chastity and purity, and all who served the Grail must forego carnal love.** This means spiritual integrity was of vital importance for those who interacted with it.

- **It would only let itself be carried or moved by a perfectly chaste woman.** This implies it has some level of volition to choose whom to let itself be carried by.

- **It would instantly materialize whatever food and drink was desired by those who held their cups and plates before it.** This means it could turn thoughts into reality, and functioned as a stone of plenty.

- **It could only materialize what the earth already yields in terms of food and drink.** This means it cannot just materialize any thoughts, only foodstuffs that already exist. This carries shades of an uncreative demiurge.

- **It receives its power to materialize from a Dove that flies down from heaven every Good Friday and leaves a white wafer on the stone.** This is a mix of pagan and Christian symbolism. Aside from the religious aspects, it also has to do with raw energy charging the stone at a specified time. Take note that Good Friday is the Friday following the first full moon after the vernal equinox. The date is entirely astrological/astronomical and may signify maximum cosmic etheric inflow.

- **It would impart vitality to any who looked upon it, restoring youth, delaying death, and curing illness. One could live for hundreds of years without growing old this way, save for hair turning gray.** This means the Grail emits very strong life-force energy, aka etheric energy, just like the Philosopher’s Stone.

- **It would give written messages via mystical letters appearing on its surface. These letters would vanish after being read.**
would be called to serve in the Grail castle, and other dictates. This means the Grail possessed intelligence, or relayed communications from some intelligence with preference for letters and writing. It also means the Grail served as an oracle.

- **It was invisible to those who were not baptized.** This means it takes an infusion of divine energy into one’s consciousness, an opening of perception, to be able to see the Grail. Otherwise it remains invisible before one’s eyes. This is a very gnostic concept, to have one’s third eye opened through divine grace or initiation. It implies the Grail is tangible but not necessarily always fully here in the world, rather shifted slightly from our reality and requires expanded perception to see.

- **By its virtue, the Phoenix burns to ashes and is born anew more splendid than before.** This metaphor is clearly alchemical symbolism, though more generally it indicates the transformation of something, like a person or whole world, into a more perfect form through dissolution and reformulation.

There is question of how close Wolfram stuck to the original tale, and how close the original was to the truth. Eschenbach says he was told the story by one called Master Kyot, who came across it in an old book written in Arabic by a “heathen” astronomer named Flegetanis. Flegetanis himself was somehow privy to the truth concerning the Grail and its origins, having written, “A troop left it on earth and then rose high above the stars, if their innocence drew them back again. Afterwards a Christian progeny bred to a pure life had the duty of keeping it. Those humans who are summoned to the Grail are ever worthy.” Kyot went looking in the literature of Britain, France, and Ireland for mention of this “Christian progeny” and at last found a tale of their existence in Anjou, France, of which the *Parzival* story is a second-hand recounting by Eschenbach.

Not mentioned by Wolfram, but claimed by other books of the period:

- **The Grail could glow bright as the sun and impart enlightenment to those who looked upon it.** Recall the Philosopher’s Stone glowing when multiplied beyond a certain point, and that its potent etheric energy output assists with psychic activation.

- **It was carried by cart or ship from castle to castle instead of being home to just one.** This meshes with the Grail leaving a breadcrumb trail from location to location throughout history, from ancient Egypt to medieval France and other places.

- **It could unleash a fiery energy surge capable of knocking someone out.** The Ark of the Covenant possessed the same trait.

- **Only those qualified to wield the Grail could sit in a special seat called the Siege Perilous, all others would be swallowed by a vortex that opens beneath them, should they attempt to sit in that chair.** While figuratively underscoring the necessity of utmost spiritual strength and purity in those who seek the Grail, the vortex/whirlpool is a peculiar detail that may stem from a literal observation of the Grail’s destructive behavior in the presence of unworthy individuals.

- **It was more often in the custody of heavenly beings, who would present it to humans according to circumstance and subsequently withdraw it back into their realm.** Sometimes it
was in human possession, other times it was retrieved for safekeeping by its otherworldly
guardians.

If these latter claims are valid and literal, they don’t necessarily contradict Wolfram’s account
because his primary source concerned events from the time of King Arthur several centuries earlier.
In the intervening period more may have happened regarding the Grail from which additional
streams of information beside his own could work their way into the books of his time. So I would
append these details to the ones provided in *Parzival* to paint a more complete picture of the Grail.

Taken at face value, in the Grail we have a stone or crystal-like object of variable physicality that
emits powerful life-force energy, can translate thoughts into material foodstuffs, has seeming
intelligence and volition, functions oracularly, and requires high spiritual integrity from those who
wield and serve it lest they be destroyed by it.

Is the Grail Real?

How do we know the Grail is an actual artifact and not just a metaphor for spiritual ideals or a
veiled allusion to the Philosopher’s Stone?

1) Because its footprints are found in actual history and not just literature. I will leave
the tedious history of people like the Phoenicians, Egyptians, Celts, Cathars, and
Templars for books listed at the end of this article, but will say for now that for each of
these a magical stone or crystal artifact with supernatural qualities played part in their.origins, organization, and power. They were at some point in possession of something
important, closely guarded, and endowed with the traits of demiurgic technology. It
conferred to them special guidance and abilities without which their achievements
would not have been possible.

2) Because its characteristics go beyond that of the Philosopher’s Stone in a manner
suggesting these extra features are not just arbitrary embellishment based on fantasy, but
extensions made with logical adherence to the principle of demiurgic science. In other
words, if Grail myths simply encoded alchemical knowledge, the described Grail
functions would be limited to those of the Philosopher’s Stone and anything beyond that
would be made up and thus physically implausible. Yet these extensions, like
materializing food out of thin air or functioning in an oracular manner, are perfectly
plausible and in line with demiurgic science, as will be explained later. The Grail can do
what the Stone cannot, but only because those who make the Stone lack the ability to
take demiurgic science to the higher level of which the Grail is a product. If the Stone
exists, then so ought the Grail by extension of that same science.

3) Because while anyone with the right knowledge and integrity can make the
Philosopher’s Stone, the Grail was something sought and fought over as if there were
only one. It wasn’t something that could be made as needed. Therefore it was a unique
artifact and not just a recipe. It was a real object carried around via carts, barques, and
arks.

4) Because the medieval Grail was the surviving remnant of the ancient Ark of the
Covenant, or at least another fruit from the same tree of demiurgic science. The Ark was
undoubtedly a real artifact with real powers and not just myth and metaphor, therefore if
the Ark of the Covenant with its alleged functions once existed, then the Grail with its
purported powers can exist also, for both are of the same caliber.
Although it bears similarity to the Philosopher’s Stone, it is not identically the Stone. Although its human seekers must undergo an arduous path of spiritual strengthening and purification to approach and serve it, the Grail is not just a metaphor for spiritual evolution. Although it employs etheric and astral energies in its operation, it is not just a visual metaphor for these energies but a vessel containing and radiating them. It is hyper-dimensional, spiritual, demiurgic technology representing a union of all such interpretations.

What are the origins of the Grail?

As will be shown in a later article, what medieval literature says concerning the origins and characteristics of the Grail deeply correlates with Celtic, Greek, Scandinavian, Persian, Egyptian, Mayan, and Indian mythology. The common origin of these myths explains who brought the Grail to our world many millennia ago: an advanced civilization possessing demiurgic technology. Further clues on their identity is provided by modern alienology, Fortean research, Rosicrucian studies, contactee culture, and quality channeling literature. This suggests not only that the Grail is as important today as it was in ancient times, but that its supernatural progenitors are still with us.

The Grail is a mysterious artifact with supernatural powers. What is such an otherworldly artifact doing in our world? Who made it, where did it come from, and how did it come into human possession? The angles of approach to these questions are diverse: medieval Grail legends, Indo-European mythology, occult literature, and the modern fields of Fortean phenomena and alienology; but they all converge upon the same answer.

In Parzival, the Christian hermit Trevrizent explains how it was brought to earth by a group of “noble and worthy” angels after they were exiled from Heaven for refusing to take sides when Lucifer waged his rebellion. God commanded these neutral angels to bring the Grail to earth and entrust it to a divinely appointed line of spiritually pure humans. That is to say, they were exiled and divested of the Grail. They are the so-called Fallen Angels.

As to what became of these exiled angels, Flegetanis said they “rose high above the stars” after dropping off the Grail. Trevrizent seems to concur, initially saying they returned to Heaven if their innocence called them to return and God willed it, which is a Gnostic concept concerning the redemption of evil, something the Church would find offensive since Fallen Angels were supposed to be eternal enemies of God without possibility of redemption. Later in the book, Trevrizent admits this was a lie and that these exiled angels were actually eternally damned and eternal enemies of God and his appointed Grail guardians, that they had no hope for redemption. This recanting is thought to have been Wolfram appeasing the Church.

It’s also possible that in the original streams from which the story of Parzival was derived, both are true: the neutral angels polarized into two groups, one rising closer to divinity, the other falling further. Some would therefore be higher guardians of the Grail cooperating with their human counterparts, while the others, having been fully divested of the Grail, would be their adversaries desiring to regain it for themselves. This would resolve the seeming contradictions in Grail legends concerning otherworldly beings both helping guard it from abuse and attempting to steal it from its rightful guardians. Thus the legends suggest that a duality exists among these higher beings. For instance, in Lucifer’s Court, (p. 21) Otto Rahn recounts a variation of the tale: the Grail was a gemstone knocked loose from Lucifer’s crown during the fall of the angels, which his forces have
since been trying to repossess.

Stripping the religious gloss from the above accounts, the basic story is that some catastrophe in another realm forced a group of beings to leave with a powerful artifact. They came to Earth and entrusted it to a line of spiritually elite humans through whom the artifact continued its function.

Wolfram called it *lapsit exillis*, meaning “stone of exile” in his garbled Latin, because it was taken from its home and brought to earth by forces exiled by some cataclysmic event. This motif repeats itself throughout human history, whereby the artifact is endangered and must be moved to a new location. There it establishes its power for some time before peril strikes once more, forcing another relocation, and the cycle repeats.

One example is the Israelites fleeing Egypt under catastrophic conditions and taking the early Ark of the Covenant with them, through which they win victory, guidance, prosperity, and power. When the Temple of Solomon was sacked, the Ark was spirited away and disappeared from Jewish history. I will discuss the Ark in more depth in my next article because it gives further insight into the nature of demiurgic technology and introduces the historical turn of events that precipitated a negative deviation of the timeline.

To be continued…

The above is just a quick introduction to the Grail subject. I have much more to say about the historical and mythological context of the Grail, but these issues will be covered in subsequent articles while the main premise of my Gnosis series continues to build.

Next, I will address the technical aspects of the Ark of the Covenant, to show how they parallel those of the Grail. Putting the two together, we may arrive at a basic understanding of High Demiurgic Technology and what it can do.

Further Reading

- **The Mystery of the Grail** (Inner Traditions, 1997) – by Julius Evola. Erudite and dense, but it practically spells out the meaning of the Holy Grail from an esoteric initiatory point of view. Evola provides numerous data points, which you can interpret from other perspectives.

- **Revelation of the Holy Grail** (Lulu, 2007) – by Chevalier Emerys. Easy to read and informative introduction to the Grail subject. The author is affiliated with modern fraternal societies and takes their viewpoint. He references Laurence Gardiner whose conclusions I disagree with, but points to an alien origin for the Grail at the end and makes plenty of original connections along the way.

- **Crusade Against the Grail** (Inner Traditions, 2006) – by Otto Rahn. History of the Cathars and their persecution by the Catholic Church, the Grail, and Gnostic philosophy. Written in 1920s by German researcher who was later employed by Nazis and ended his own life after growing disaffected. Rahn was not an academic on the outside, but one who immersed himself in Cathar and Gnostic outlook.

- **Lucifer’s Court** (Inner Traditions, 2004) – by Otto Rahn. Travel journal by Rahn as he goes around Europe and Iceland in his hunt for the Grail. For each town he philosophizes and shares pertinent local legends. He rants quite a bit against the Catholic Church and sides with Lucifer as a light
bringer. One antisemitic passage was thought to have been added by a Nazi editor of the book. Other than that, this book really captures a teutonic/pagan kind of spirit and is valuable in Grail research.


The Ninth Century and the Holy Grail (Temple Lodge, 2001) – by Walter Johannes Stein. Historical and Anthroposophical analysis of Parzival by one of Rudolf Steiner’s disciples. Traces the historical events of Parzival to the ninth century A.D. Not a crucial book to read, but does provide historical context for the tale and explains the inner meaning of various passages.

Of the above books, I recommend “The Mystery of the Grail” and “Lucifer’s Court” the most because they are interesting, concise, and contain a good portion of esotericism and philosophy.

---

Changelog
0.1 – article posted.

(index)

4 - Ark of the Covenant

28 October 10 (gnosis)

Short version: Ark of the Covenant (Abridged)

©2010, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

Like the Grail, the Ark of the Covenant was an object endowed with supernatural powers. The Ark is described in the Bible as a large wooden chest on carrying poles, gilded inside and out with gold, and having a solid gold lid surmounted by two golden winged figures.

The Ark remains the most sacred artifact of the Jews despite their losing it long ago. Without it, their ancestors would not have overcome certain obstacles, vanquished their enemies, received guidance from it, or prospered into the eventual nation of Israel. Therefore the entire Judeo-Christian paradigm owes its existence to the Ark of the Covenant.

Is the Bible’s descriptions of the Ark accurate? Well, the Old Testament is a fictional narrative sewn together from sometimes factual patches. These patches are eyewitness accounts passed down through the oral traditions and documents of the various tribes that existed in Canaan when the Old Testament and its subsequent revisions were being drafted, around the 8th century B.C. By creating a single continuous narrative from these, the diverse people in central Canaan could be united into what subsequently became the nation of Israel.
The ancient history of Israel and the story of Exodus as told in the Bible are composited from separate historical episodes. Isolated parts are true within their original contexts, just that they may be out of order, superimposed, embellished, or borrowed from other cultures.

I haven’t pieced together the true and complete history of Israel and the Ark, but my research over the last year has given me some basic bearing. Since it’s too lengthy and tangential to cover here in detail, I will just list some examples of what historical persons and events may have been reworked centuries later into the Old Testament narrative:

- The story of Moses being drawn from a river comes from an Akkadian legend relating the genesis of their king, Sargon the Great, or else both draw from an even older myth. The old Akkadians allegedly existed 2700 – 2200 B.C. Another theory says they were the Hyksos Dynasty, which existed 1628 – 1550 B.C.

- The two pharaohs of the Exodus were Pepi II and Merenre II circa 2200 B.C. They were the last pharaohs of the Old Kingdom of Egypt. This is almost a thousand years before conventional Biblical chronology places the Exodus.

- The cataclysm that ended the Old Kingdom and killed Merenre II in the “place of the whirlpool” occurred around 2190 B.C. and was an early contributor to the stories of Passover, the Ten Plagues, and the Parting of the Sea of Reeds.

- In 1628 B.C., the Mediterranean super-volcano of Thera exploded, forcing migrations out of Egypt and inspiring further additions to the stories of Exodus, particularly the Israelites seeing a pillar of cloud and fire before and later behind their wandering procession.

- The Semitic Hyksos were purged from Egypt in 1550 B.C. after being paid off in large sums of gold and silver to leave. From this derives the story of the Israelites being given gold, silver, clothing, and jewels by the Egyptians in preparation for their exodus. The walls of Jericho fell around 1550 B.C. according to archeological dating, suggesting the Ark of the Covenant was en route to Canaan by that point.

- The historical King Solomon lived in north-central Canaan in the decades following the Hyksos expulsion from Egypt. According to classical historian Flavius Josephus, the Hyksos founded Jerusalem.

- The historical Temple of Solomon was built around 1500 B.C. along with the megalithic temple complex at Baalbek located in modern day Lebanon. Both were constructed by the Phoenicians using advanced technology; they were familiar with the Ark of the Covenant.

- Queen Hatshepsut (1508–1458 BC) was contemporary with the historical King Solomon and may have held personal relations with him and/or the Phoenicians and/or the Mitanni. Some believe she was Queen Sheba of the Bible. (See the ViewZone article Yemen As It is... for further evidence that Sheba, Solomon, and the Ark existed around 1500 B.C. and not five centuries later. Clue: the script is proto-Caananite / proto-Phoenician. This is a nail in the coffin for conventional Biblical chronology).

- After Hatsepshut died, her nephew and successor Thuthmose III waged military campaigns into northern Canaan and sacked Solomon’s Temple just four decades after it was built.
He then defaced Hatshepsut’s statues and attempted to erase her from history. Thuthmose III was the historical basis for the Biblical pharaoh Shishak.

- Pharaoh Akhenaten, who reigned 1353 BC – 1336, imposed a tyrannical form of monotheism upon Egypt consisting of worship of a single solar deity and suppression of all others. His reign lasted almost two decades, after which the Egyptian traditionalists who were loyal to the old ways fought to purge Egypt of this radical monotheism and its followers, who may have been related to the Hyksos. Among them was a high priest of Akhenaten, named Osarseph according to Manetho, who led the exiled Semitic monotheists in an uprising against the Egyptian traditionalists. In the end he was forced to flee Egypt with his followers, and he subsequently became the historical model for the Biblical Moses16. In Canaan they became the final wave of Egyptian exiles incorporated into the story of the Israelites.

I could go on, but right now it’s more more important to focus on the purported technical capabilities of the Ark, in order to show how similar it is to the Holy Grail and what all this says about the nature of high demiurgic technology. What follows is a list of key aspects of the Ark and my interpretations of them.

Ark: Etheric and Electric Fields

The Ark is infamous for its deadly energy discharges. Those unqualified to touch, approach, or even look at the Ark would be struck dead:

- Uzzah was struck dead by a burning flash of energy from the Ark as he reached out his hand to steady it. The Ark was being transported on an ox cart and one of the oxen had stumbled17.

- Seventy people from the town of Beth Shemesh were killed when they opened the Ark and looked inside. The Ark was temporarily stationed there on its return from Philistine custody18.

- Aaron’s sons died when, against permission, they attempted to offer incense to the Ark and a fiery energy sprang forth and consumed them19.

- Those of the Kohachite branch of the Levites, who were assigned to carry the Ark and associated items once they were securely wrapped for transport, were instructed never to touch or look at these items directly, or they would die immediately20.

In attempting to explain this, others have noted that the gilded wooden box resembles a capacitor, something that stores electric charge. In this case the capacitor is two electrodes of gold sandwiching a wood insulator. Since the Ark could accumulate and store high voltage electricity, some conclude the Ark was nothing more than a big capacitor.

A large enough capacitor can indeed electrocute a person. But according to my calculations, the capacitance of the Ark is only around 3-5 nF at most, giving barely enough energy to kill one person under ideal conditions if charged to 300,000 Volts21. That kind of voltage is very difficult to reach, let alone maintain without flashover between inner and outer gold layers. To throw a spark long enough to hit someone just a few yards away, millions of Volts would be needed. There is no
way a wood-based capacitor by itself can accumulate enough power to kill a crowd, let alone surround itself with a glowing energy field and perform the more miraculous feats ascribed to it.

The Ark alone cannot do what the Bible says it can, at least not according to conventional science. The top mistake fringe researchers make is limiting their interpretation of the Ark’s function to the perspective of conventional physics and engineering. Thus they propose it was merely a spark gap radio, electrical capacitor, seismic energy transducer, algae food grower, or some other mundane device. While each of these may explain a few alleged Ark traits, they cannot account for them all.

High demiurgic technology, however, explains everything. Just as in Alchemy, conventional scientific principles may enter into the equation but are not the only ones involved. While the Ark may be a capacitor, that is only a small aspect of its total function. One has to go beyond regular physics to understand it.

For instance, it’s worth noting that, topologically speaking, the Ark is a spherical capacitor, where one electrode is nested inside the other. According to my fringe physics research, what makes spherical capacitors special is that they can receive, transmit, absorb, and emit gravity waves. It has to do with changes in charge density coupling to changes in the gravitational potential. If the Ark was a spark gap radio, it would have had to intercept gravity waves and convert them to electrical arcing between the two winged figures. But I doubt that was its primary function.

Further, anyone familiar with orgonomy will realize that the Ark is constructed like an orgone accumulator, which is a box whose walls are made of alternating layers of organic and inorganic substances. It’s said to attract and store orgone energy, which appears to be a grade of etheric energy closest to the material plane. Wilhelm Reich also observed a connection between negative ions and orgone energy, although the two are distinct. Their relation may be like the one between water drops and water vapor; one is a condensation or evaporation of the other. The electrical effects of the Ark may therefore be side-effects of etheric processes. Still, no orgone accumulator has ever built up enough energy to fry someone.

Since it was a chest with a lid, the Ark presumably carried something, and that object may have been responsible for its purported powers. The Bible says that the first item it carried was the stone tablet(s), also known as the Covenant or Testimony, that Moses brought out from Mount Sinai. This fictional story has elements of truth, namely that a stone-like object was retrieved and placed in the Ark, after which it brimmed with energy. Therefore the Ark served more as a container, shield, and/or transceiver for the mysterious object placed inside it. It was also called Ark of the Testimony, as it contained something pertaining to the covenant between Hebrews and their Lord: a stone artifact called the Testimony. From this point on, when I refer to the Ark, I mean the Ark with power source installed.

That the Ark radiated energy is further supported by the detail that, when it was being transported, it was thoroughly wrapped in shielding material and its carriers were forbidden from touching or looking directly at it. And when encamped, it was kept inside a structure known as the Tabernacle. The Tabernacle was a portable tent system designed to safely contain and surround the Ark. The first tent around the Ark was made of flax linen, the second of woven goat hair, third and fourth of dyed animal skins. This great redundancy in layer upon layer appears to be additional
shielding. And shielding is only necessary if the Ark were putting out an intense energy field.

The choice of construction materials is significant. Flax fiber has a spiral crystalline structure. Hair and wool strands are nonlinear dielectrics because the medulla, sheath, and cortex of the strands have different dielectric constants, which makes them excellent attenuators or reflectors of gravitational / scalar / longitudinal waves. And Baron von Reichenbach found through extensive experimentation that wool had the ability to attenuate etheric energy, the same way metal shielding attenuates electromagnetic waves.

Copper, silver, and gold were the only metals used in constructing the Ark and the Tabernacle. They are all non-magnetic, have only one valence electron, and share Group 11 on the periodic table. Iron was strictly forbidden. Even later, in the construction of Solomon’s Temple, supposedly well into the Iron Age, no iron nails were used. Of course in truth Solomon’s Temple being built around 1520 B.C. means it was still in the Bronze Age, but there’s another reason iron wasn’t used back then. Folklore says that fairies and other supernatural beings have an aversion to iron. Physically it is merely magnetic and has two valence electrons, but etherically it may have undesirable effects upon etheric entities and technologies. Therefore we can infer that ferromagnetic materials interfered with the Ark’s operation, save iron-containing blood that played an important role in its function.

From the above, we can already see that the Ark’s operation included both etheric and electric elements. Again, the gilded wooden chest was not the source of the Ark’s power, rather the object it contained was what radiated an intense energy field of an etheric, scalar, and/or electrogravitational nature. This energy field could precipitate electrical effects as well, but these were side effects rather than the primary ones. Proof of this is in the construction of the Ark, Tabernacle, and Solomon’s Temple, which incorporate principles of etheric/scalar manipulation and shielding. They would be designed differently if mere electrical effects were intended.

Although the Ark has electrical properties, that is insufficient to say its function was merely electrical. This parallels reports of human encounters with alien crafts, whereby the ship exhibits strong electrical and electromagnetic interference effects, but these alone are not enough to explain how the ships can levitate because their primary propulsion fields are non-electromagnetic. We are dealing with demiurgic technology here, not human technology.

Ark: Vortical Plasmic Intelligence

The Ark’s lid was called the “Mercy Seat” because a luminous cloud perceived as the Lord would station itself upon it, between and above the winged gold figures. This luminous cloud was known as the “Glory of the Lord” or “Shekhina,” the latter being a Hebrew term meaning literally the dwelling, settling, or presence of the Lord.

It would seem at first that the Shekhina is just an electrical corona emanating from the golden winged figures, were it not for the detail that the Shekhina was mobile and independent of the Ark. For instance, the Shekhina accompanied the Biblical Hebrews out of Egypt even before the Ark was built. It led them as a pillar of cloud by day and fire by night as they crossed the desert. It settled itself on Mount Sinai. It appeared in the desert when food was about to manifest from the heavens. Even after the Ark was built, the Shekhina could leave it and freely travel about of its own volition.
The Shekhina is described as looking like a “pillar of cloud” during daylight, suggesting condensation of water vapor into a visible tornado-like structure. This makes sense because, according to orgonomy, sufficiently dense orgone energy concentrations cause water vapor condensation. At night it glowed like a “pillar of fire” possibly indicating ionization of air, which is identically plasma. Therefore a very dense etheric energy field accounts for both the condensation of water vapor into visible mist and the glowing field of ionized gas.

The Shekhina could also diffuse into, or was simply accompanied by, a general glowing aura around the Ark. When kept in an enclosed shielded place like the inner Tabernacle tent or inner chamber of Solomon’s Temple, the Shekhina would fill the space like a luminous fog.

Solomon’s Temple was built to house the Ark permanently. Like the Tabernacle, the Ark rested within its central chamber known as the Holy of Holies surrounded by numerous shielding walls. The energy field diffused and filled the space surrounding the Ark, creating a glowing atmosphere testifying to the power residing in Solomon’s Temple. The first Temple was eventually destroyed and the Ark went missing, so that the second Temple of Solomon completed in 516 BC lacked both the Ark and its Shekhina. While the people rejoiced that their temple was back, the priests lamented because they knew it was missing the most critical component.

Note that all these characteristics don’t support the notion that the pillar of fire and cloud was an alien spaceship. It’s something else. That the Shekhina could localize upon the Mercy Seat and give messages or travel about freely suggests that it possessed intelligence and volition. Enough so that the Hebrews were convinced it really was their Lord dwelling in their midst.

Ark: Water Influencer

When the Hebrews fled Egypt under pursuit by the Egyptian army, the “Lord” went ahead of them and parted the Sea of Reeds so that they could cross. Water piled up into vertical walls and allowed passage over dry ground as though a solid force field had materialized left, right, and underneath them. The waters literally congealed beneath their feet and kept them dry, which contradicts mundane explanations of wind patterns, gravitational tugs from passing planets, or tidal effects being the cause, because the latter would still leave a wet muddy mess to slough through. Dry ground and congealment indicates either a solidification of water or a firm force field upon which one could walk.

Later the Ark was used to part the Jordan River. Levite priests carried the Ark into the river, causing water to pile up on both sides some distance away and allowing the Israelites to once again cross over what they perceived as dry ground. When the priests carried the Ark to the other side, the river resumed course. Again, mere weather or seismic explanations don’t account for this. Note also that while the water was pushed away, the people crossing were not; therefore it wasn’t just an outwardly blowing antigravitational field but something acting selectively. Either the powered Ark created a shell-like force field or else it had direct control over water itself.

In another curious detail, cast metal basins were installed both in the Tabernacle and in Solomon’s Temple. In the Tabernacle it was a smaller bronze basin filled with water, said to be for washing. It was kept between the inner tent and a sacrificial altar in the courtyard where the Shekhina could pass over it. In Solomon’s Temple the basin was circular, fifteen feet in diameter and almost eight feet high. Presumably it was also filled with water, but something that large and deep excludes a
basin solely for washing, especially since smaller ones for that purpose were included elsewhere in the Temple.

Therefore one could speculate that the Ark, its power source, or the Shekhina had a proclivity for water and the basins served a functional purpose toward that end. Wilhelm Reich wrote about the great affinity that orgone and water have for each other. A circular basin like that at Solomon’s Temple is the optimal shape for a whirlpool, and water scientist Viktor Schauberger indicated that whirlpools infuse water with etheric lifeforce energy\textsuperscript{49}.

There is a strong water-vortex motif here. The vortex is an archetype that repeatedly accompanies the Grail and the Ark, and I will say more on this later. Recall the Siege Perilous, the seat upon which only the worthy champions of the Grail could sit lest they be swallowed by a vortex. Recall the Shekhina manifesting as a tornado-like pillar of cloud. And recall that Merenre II, Egyptian pharaoh of the first Exodus, was said to have perished in the “place of the whirlpool.”

Ark: Soul Frequency Selectivity

The Ark was selective with what effects it had upon whom. Generally speaking, those with high spiritual purity, meaning etheric and astral integrity, who obeyed protocol were left unharmed. This included the Levite Priests in charge of operating the Ark, first in the Tabernacle and later in Solomon’s Temple. In the Temple, only ones with the highest spiritual training had access to the inner chamber where the Ark was located.

Those who disobeyed protocol or were spiritually tarnished were struck dead or afflicted with sores, boils, and other symptoms of biological disintegration mimicking leprosy. The leper factor appears several times. When Moses encountered the Burning Bush in the desert, which was an early appearance of the Shekhina, his hand briefly turned leprous\textsuperscript{50}. When prophetess Miriam was summoned to the Tabernacle for making a transgression, she became leprous after the “pillar of cloud” descended upon her\textsuperscript{51}. In Egypt, the Hebrew immigrants and slaves were known as the “polluted ones” because of their rampant leprosy problems, which Frank Joseph and Laura Beadouin hypothesize was due to their local proximity to the Ark power source when it was still stationed in Lower Egypt.

When the Philistines captured the Ark, wherever they moved it among their territories, there broke out death, boils and in one case an outbreak of mice\textsuperscript{52}. This illustrates what happens when the Ark is brought in the midst of those who have not been sufficiently trained and purified. It seems to amplify and bring into outward manifestation the quality of their psychic energy, which in the case of decadence could manifest boils and mice for instance. This, in contrast to the Ark’s enriching and fructifying influence when stationed in Biblical Jerusalem.

Only the Levite priests could openly handle the Ark without getting harmed. Moses and his brother Aaron were said to be Levites. Not only did they have to wear special clothing and follow certain safety protocol, they also had to be of sufficient spiritual purity. Compare this to the Grail, who would only let itself be cared for by a woman of perfect chastity and purity.

It wasn’t enough to simply “keep one hand in the pocket while wearing insulating shoes” because the Ark wasn’t just a high voltage device, but a Demiurgic one that translated astral/spiritual qualities into physical manifestation.
Ark: Manifesting Food

Further indication of the Ark’s demiurgic power is given in Exodus 16, where the Israelites run out of food while crossing the desert to Canaan and the Shekhina manifests food for them. It covered their camp with quail to provide meat in the evening, and coated the bare ground with dew that turned into edible granules called manna. The latter may have had Alchemical qualities.

Manna is referred to as the “grain of heaven”, “the bread of the mighty” in Psalms; it was ground up and made into cakes that tasted like “wafers made with honey” or “as the taste of fresh oil”53. The substance melted in the sun. This manna was pure in the sense of not producing any waste products in a person54. It ceased to fall once the Israelites arrived in an area and ate its grain. This shows it was not a natural phenomenon, but that there was intelligence behind it. In Exodus, the appearance of manna was cyclical, with twice the quantity raining down on the sixth day of the week and none on Sabbath, which was a holy day of rest and worship. If true, this suggests the Ark was being operated by someone who obeyed the weekly Sabbath system, thereby implying that one or a few operators manifested food for the entire camp. Contrast this with the story told in Parzival, where the Grail Stone manifested food and drink according to the visualized desires of each knight who held his empty plate and cup before it.

If this account is taken literally, then the Shekhina had the power to manifest or attract particular animals, like quail in this case. When the Philistines captured the Ark, a plague of mice broke out in one city where it was stationed, thus another case of specific animals being manifested or attracted. And according to Jewish oral tradition, King Solomon had the power to draw specific wild animals to his Temple because he knew their “names”55. A name in this context is a type of word unique to a thing, basically its spiritual archetype, astral signature, or Logoic template.

The quail and manna manifestations are reminiscent of modern Fortean phenomena in which anomalous objects and animals rain down from the sky. It’s always one type of object (like river stones) or one animal species (like fish or frogs)56. This specificity precludes their cause being water spouts picking up aquatic life and dumping it onto land. Some of what rains down aren’t even known species. Thus they appear to have been projected into this dimension. Perhaps these are natural dimensional glitches following from the same principles that the Ark employed intentionally.

Ark: Loosh Transducer

In Robert Monroe’s book Far Journeys, “loosh” is defined as metaphysical energy, encompasses everything from the crudest etheric energy produced by plants to the most refined astral energy produced via human love and suffering57. Loosh is equivalent to demiurgic energy.

It appears the Ark of the Covenant was powered, triggered, or catalyzed by externally supplied loosh. One example being the profuse level of animal sacrifices that the Israelites performed before the Ark in order to please their Lord, “sacrificing so many sheep and cattle that they could not be recorded or counted”58. Another example being King David dancing half-naked before the Ark after its homecoming from Philistine capture.

David dancing before the Ark has stumped many. But if you know anything about Native American rain dances, or the technical dances of the Sufis, or Rudolf Steiner’s Eurythmy, you’ll know that
dance is a motional ritual that is highly active on an occult level and generates specific patterns of energies. The more intense the dance, the greater the energy output. “David, wearing a linen ephod, danced before the Lord with all his might” 59.

Animal sacrifices are convenient loosh sources. Slaughter liberates astral energies via the emotional experience of dying, while fat and blood provide rich sources of etheric energy. As naturopaths and occultists know, fat and oil are good mediums for storing and transmitting subtle energies, hence the ancient practice of anointing with blessed oil.

As for blood, that it carries lifeforce is obvious. Even the Old Testament says as much: “For the life of a creature is in the blood” and “But be sure you do not eat the blood, because the blood is the life, and you must not eat the life with the meat” 61. So a distinction was made between blood and meat; the latter could be eaten, while the blood contained the lifeforce and had other uses. The Levite priests sprinkled the blood against the Tabernacle altar on all sides and burned the fatty carcass upon it, which would entice the Shekhina to exit the tent and consume the remains 62. “It is a burnt offering, an offering made by fire, an aroma pleasing to the Lord” 63. This practice of sacrificing bulls, ram, and sheep was repeated regularly.

When the Ark was installed in the first Temple of Solomon, animal sacrifices were prohibited everywhere else in Jerusalem other than the Temple 64. This would make sense if sacrifices absolutely had to be done in the Ark’s presence in order to be utilized, further supporting the idea that the Ark was affected or even powered by the loosh emitted by a dying animal and its blood. Manna not falling on the Sabbath may be connected to animal sacrifice being forbidden on that day.

The Jewish practice of ritual slaughter is known as Shekhita and its techniques are used to produce kosher meat. The practice involves precise cutting of the animal’s throat to ensure a calm but conscious death. Afterwards, the animal is fully drained of its blood. As a side note, it’s worth noting that cows and bulls are by definition the main targets of cattle mutilations. They are killed while fully conscious and later found completely drained of blood. The aliens who do this leave behind the carcass and only take certain organs, as well as the 5-10 gallons of blood per cow, bull, or horse 65.

The Egyptian word for bull is “Ka” which is identically the Egyptian name for lifeforce energy 66. This suggests lifeforce was the primary concept associated with bulls. The symbol of “Ka” is two upright arms raised in reverence, possibly stemming from a ritual pose conducive to the reception and transmission of etheric energy. The symbol is also reminiscent of bull horns, the crescent moon, and the two winged figures atop the Mercy Seat. Ka is said to determine one’s destiny, habits, and vitality. It’s clear that Ka translates to etheric body. The other subtle parts of a being, what the Egyptians called “Ba” translates to astral body. The Ba, depicted as a flying stork with a human head, is said to wander around during the night but had to return to the body by morning. Further, the Ba was said to indulge in pleasures, which fits the emotional and passionate nature of the astral body. The final component, “akh” was reached only after death when the deceased made it to the celestial realms, and this translates in occultism to “spirit.”

Hence the Egyptians sacrificed bulls, as early as the Second Dynasty of the Old Kingdom if not earlier. These so-called “Apis Bulls” were held as divine, treated with reverence, mourned at their death, and buried with honor. The bulls would be ritualistically slaughtered at the age of 28, which
ties symbolically into the moon cycle, and the meat eaten by the priests and pharaoh.

If Apis bulls were once slaughtered for loosh harvesting, eventually that purpose was forgotten but the ritual continued anyway. During later dynasties, mumified bulls were buried in the stone coffers of the underground Serapeum complex. As Christopher Dunn writes, these coffers were exquisitely carved to perfection using advanced technology equalling or surpassing anything we have today and originating from a much earlier time. They were likely built by the same advanced pre-Egyptian civilization that constructed the Great Pyramid. Either those ancients who created the coffers also sacrificed bulls, or else the coffers were created for more utilitarian reasons and only later were they repurposed by the Egyptians to house mumified bulls.

The Apis Bull was considered a manifestation of the Egyptian god Ptah, a deity who called creation into existence, and who was considered a god of craftsmen. He is said to have spoken creation into existence. Thus Ptah is equivalent to the Logos or Demiurge. “Ptah” means “opener of the mouth”, and opening the mouth is the first step to saying a word or name.

As you can see, much connects here: Logos, Demiurge, animal sacrifice, etheric energy, and Ark of the Covenant. Bulls supplied etheric energy through their blood to power Demiurgic processes. That is the function of the etheric body anyway, to demiurgically ensure the continuation of form in a biological system prone to entropic decay. Just that this same energy can be repurposed toward non-biological applications through ritual slaughter.

According to Christian theology, the practice of animal sacrifice ended with the coming of Jesus Christ because his dying on the cross fully atoned for our Original Sin; he was the ultimate sacrifice to end all sacrifices. I don’t believe this exoteric interpretation for a second, but as usual there is truth lingering behind the symbolism. (See my Research Note on the Historicity of Jesus Christ).

Notice that, whereas the ancients resorted to animal sacrifice and other crude means to activate the Ark, the Grail knights merely maintained a state of spiritual transcendence to activate the Grail stone by thought alone. The Grail knights were burning with a Christ energy, not in a religious sense, but in the sense of their being vessels for the positive personification of the divine Logos. In other words, they were connected to the highest, purest, most vibrationally elevated loosh source in existence — the face of God. Further proof is seen in reality creation: you manifest quickest when you are attuned with your higher Self, heart, and Spirit. There is no greater demiurgic creational power than this, but there are certainly lesser ones.

The means to achieve such a state of connectedness has been taught by the greatest sages of the ages, one of whom was the historical character forming the nucleus of the Jesus Christ mythos, whose surviving teachings may be found in the Gospel of Thomas and the Q Source. The Gospel of Thomas was a 2nd century reconstruction of the original teachings. Note where the New Testament differs from the Gospel of Thomas and the Q Source, and there you will see what the Church added to hijack and corrupt a genuine teaching. The Biblical Jesus versus the historical Jesus is like Sunny Delight versus Fresh Orange Juice. The fundamentalists believe Sunny-D grows on trees, the atheist skeptics refuse to believe oranges exist. The truth is between and beyond both.

Christian theology is correct that Christ ended the need for animal sacrifice, though not for the claimed reasons. Rather, his core teachings provide a superior alternative to harvesting energy from the environment to fund demiurgic creation. Theology is also right that this relates to Original Sin...
and mankind’s Fall from Paradise, though it’s because the spiritual transcendence embodied in the Grail knights is identically a non-Fallen state of consciousness, which Christ termed the Kingdom of Heaven.

Those who cannot tap into this higher energy/intelligence must resort to lesser methods and sources to trigger their desired demiurgic effects. These include ritual, dance, sexual energy, animal sacrifice, and human sacrifice. Even today, black magic and voodoo still make use of animal sacrifice. Synchronystics and conspiracy researchers know how the global occult elite perform mass rituals through current events, media, and entertainment, and how they engage in ritual killings through staged accidents, manipulated wars, and induced disasters. There have been tribes and cults throughout history, from Meso-America to the Mid-East to South India, who performed human and animal sacrifices in exchange for power, abundance, security, and prosperity. In all these cases, loosh energy bought desired physical manifestation.

When loosh cannot be tapped from an infinite source, cruder grades must be harvested from finite sources; the Israelite and Egyptian use of animal sacrifice illustrates this.

Ark: Sound and Pyramid Connection

Sound consistently accompanies the Ark’s operation and effects.

One example is the fall of Jericho, where the Israelites were told how to breach the city walls: “March around the city once with all the armed men. Do this for six days. Have seven priests carry trumpets of rams’ horns in front of the Ark. On the seventh day, march around the city seven times, with the priests blowing the trumpets. When you hear them sound a long blast on the trumpets, have all the people give a loud shout; then the wall of the city will collapse and the people will go up, every man straight in.”73.

Another example is the sound associated with the Shekhina’s activities on Mount Sinai: “Mount Sinai was covered with smoke, because the Lord descended on it in fire. The smoke billowed up from it like smoke from a furnace, the whole mountain trembled violently, and the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder”74.

There are other examples of shouting, music, and trumpet blasts being present during Ark and Shekhina activities. It seems that sound, like loosh, played an important role. Frequency and amplitude are the main variables defining a sound. That volume is emphasized in the above accounts suggests that the Ark translated sonic energy into something else in proportion to its intensity, and vice versa.

In Tempest and Exodus, Ralph Ellis makes a convincing case that Mount Sinai of the Bible was actually the Great Pyramid. For instance, Mount Sinai is traditionally described as the tallest of three mountains, each of which contained deep “caves.” Moses was commanded to go into Mount Sinai. It was named for the sharpness of its peak and infamous for the steepness of its sides, and an alternate name places its location in the desert. The base of Mount Sinai was encircled by armed guards, which is unfeasible for an actual mountain, but not the Great Pyramid. An alternate for Mount Sinai is Mount Horeb, meaning “glowing mountain.” These are just a few examples. If true, it would be one among many indicators that the Ark had something to do with the Great Pyramid.

When Moses emerged from Mount Sinai, he descended with the stone Testimony, which he
subsequently placed into the Ark. Hence the Ark’s power source was retrieved from within the Great Pyramid, whose granite sarcophagus correlates with the stated dimensions of the Ark.

In another connection, the hieroglyph for “Apis Bull” is two gabled roofs over a box, exactly resembling the entrance to the Great Pyramid. With the bull already linked to etheric energy via its name “Ka” also being that of the etheric body, linked to the Ark of the Covenant via animal sacrifice, and linked to the Demiurge via the bull being associated with Ptah, it’s fitting that a pyramid connection exists here as well.

The Great Pyramid today is a gutted machine with all its active components missing. The modern Pyramid versus its original form is like a bullhorn versus a megaphone; one is just a passive sound shaping funnel, the other an active sound amplifier with powered electronics. We know from experiments that even a cardboard pyramid produces strange negentropic effects, meaning the shape itself influences the ambient etheric field, but such passive structures are weak in comparison to the Great Pyramid in its original working state. The Great Pyramid is currently a passive remnant of its original self and all its associated exotic phenomena are nothing compared to what it once could do.

The technical operation of the Great Pyramid has been well investigated by Christopher Dunn, author of The Giza Power Plant. I agree with his data, but not necessarily his conclusion that it was merely an electric power plant. I also disagree with Frank Joseph and Laura Beaudoin that it was a piezoelectric attenuator of seismic energy designed to protect the region against earthquakes. Earthquake activity certainly accompanied the Ark, but perhaps more as an effect than a cause of its function.

According to Dunn, the Pyramid’s function depended on several critical aspects: the Queen’s Chamber into which chemicals were dumped to produce hydrogen gas, the Grand Gallery serving as a sound production and amplification chamber via its hypothesized network of acoustic resonators, the antechamber with its movable vertical stone slabs that could fine tune the sound coming from the Grand Gallery, and lastly the King’s Chamber where the sonic energy was focused to vibrate the granite stones in order to piezoelectrically produce electromagnetic waves that energized the hydrogen gas filling these chambers.

If you look carefully at the Grand Gallery and the antechamber according to Dunn’s description, you will see that they respectively mimic the human larynx and tongue/teeth/lips. If the Grand Gallery produced sound, it might have been through a collection of installed tuning forks and the Helmholtz resonators that converted their vibrations into a loud and focused beam aimed toward the King’s Chamber. This mass of sound enters the antechamber and is modulated by the series of adjustable granite gates. In other words, the Great Pyramid functioned as a vowel resonator. Thus a vowel sound would have been pumped with great intensity into the King’s Chamber.

In the King’s Chamber, there is a granite chest whose dimensions are similar but not identical to those of the Ark of the Covenant. Accordingly, it’s been proposed that the Ark slid into this chest,
but considering the narrow entrance to the room it’s more likely that the smaller stone-like power source was placed there, with the Pyramid itself serving as the original Ark/Tabernacle/Temple. Moses bringing back the stone Testimony from inside “Mount Sinai” supports this.

One may imagine the “Ark Stone” being stationed in the King’s Chamber and saturating the connecting spaces with its luminous energy field. Plasma is ionized gas, and if the chambers were filled with pure hydrogen as Dunn proposes, then it would have been a hydrogen plasma. The entire vowel resonator may have been filled with hydrogen plasma through which tunable sound was pumped from the Grand Gallery through the formant-synthesizing antechamber. And when you pump sound waves through a charged plasma, you get longitudinal ion-acoustic waves, which produce longitudinal EM waves, which are identically gravity or time waves. Etheric energy would have accompanied it as well, which the Pyramid by virtue of its shape alone can bias and amplify.

The five ceilings above the King’s Chamber consist of loose granite crossbeams, polished on the bottom to reflect coherent energy from below, and intentionally uneven on top to disperse incoherent energy from the top, thus functioning like a one-way mirror capable of cohering and directing the energy like a laser. These ceilings might also be mimicking the human sinus passages for additional resonance activity. Vibration of the granite beams would have produced longitudinal EM waves as well via the piezoelectric effect. The gravitational, etheric, temporal energy produced in the King’s Chamber would have been made coherent and unidirectional, aimed either upwards to the sky or downward to the center of the planet, more likely the latter since the center of the planet is always directly below a level structure on the surface. (It’s also possible that the pyramid was not designed to do anything outwardly, but rather focus all its energies inward upon the King’s Chamber to charge, initialize, and/or program the Ark Stone).

If you keep in mind that the Ark responded to sound, that Ptah (who is the Demiurge or Logos) means “opener of the mouth”, and that loud vowel sounds were likely pumped into the King’s Chamber from the larynx/mouth-like structures, you begin to see that the Great Pyramid must have had a truly awesome purpose.

Ark: Physical Terrain Transformer

Jewish oral tradition ascribed several additional powers to the Ark not mentioned in the Old Testament: 1) as it was being carried by the Israelite vanguard, the Ark cleared the path of scorpions and snakes via a burning ray issuing forth from the Mercy Seat, 2) the Levites carrying it would also be carried by it, meaning levitation. 3) the Ark could level hills and mountains in the way.

The third claim that the Ark could alter geography and terrain seems tenuous, but there are a few potential points of correlation:

First is that the Nile River may have been intelligently engineered, as explained by Goro Adachi in his book The Time Rivers. You would have to read his book to be convinced there is something to it, but in short the features, proportions, alignments, lengths, bends, etc… of the Nile are too synchronous to be mere natural formations. Only problem is that something so large cannot be created through physical digging like with the Panama Canal (4132 miles versus 51 miles). Adachi doesn’t really explain who did it, but they must have possessed the god-like power to directly transform geography.
Second point of correlation is the Glastonbury Zodiac, a circular collection of zodiac images spanning ten miles in diameter, impressed upon the landscape of the Isle of Avalon where legend says the Grail was once kept. The zodiac images are made of streams, dykes, roads, and other landscape features. The center of the zodiac is the famous Glastonbury Tor, a stone tower built on a sacred hill.

Third is the French town of Rennes-le-Château. Like the Glastonbury Zodiac, the position of landscape features and markers including mountain tops and churches trace out a meaningful pattern, the pentagram in this case. Rennes-le-Château is famous for its association with secret Templar activities and later the priest Saunière who struck it rich after discovering secret documents pertaining to Templar treasure or perhaps a method for making the Philosopher’s Stone.

These alleged landscape geometries include some features not placeable by human hands. While they bear enough ambiguity to support the skeptical view that people are just reading too much into things, they also display enough order and improbability to look like “graffiti tagging” by some hyper-dimensional intelligence. Seems like everything deeply connected to the Grail, Ark, and Philosopher’s Stone bears the fingerprint of intelligent design or synchronistic orchestration, down to the prophetic codes in the Torah and Hebrew gematria.

Or consider the moon’s association with the sacred Bull, that the Hebrew calendar is based on moon cycles, that Good Friday and other key days associated with the Grail and Ark are timed to the moon… Not surprisingly, the astronomical parameters of the Moon indicate some heavy synchronistic orchestration. Books have been written on its anomalous nature including Who Built the Moon by Butler and Knight and David Icke’s latest work Human Race Get Off Your Knees.

What all of these environmental geometries have in common is that they seem synchronistically rather than mechanically formed. So instead of the Moon being towed in via tractor beams, or the Nile River being dug with antigravity bulldozers, it may have originated through intelligently guided or selected natural evolution via intentional probability biasing. Thus these geometries seem both natural and unnatural at the same time. Natural enough to please the skeptics, unnatural enough to convince the believers. The religious might just call it the handiwork of God, but it’s not that simple. I’ll talk more about this later when I get into the timewar idea, and how high demiurgic technology is capable of reality reconfiguration and timeline selection. For now I just want to mention that the Ark may very well have leveled hills and mountains, and that this isn’t without a supporting context.

Just to speculate, what would happen if the Ark Stone’s terrain-transformational power is amplified and channeled by the Great Pyramid, whose coherent energy beam points down to the center of the planet? In the Biblical story of Mount Sinai, the entire structure was quaking and trembling while a trumpeting sound grew louder and louder. It’s interesting that the Pyramid is aligned almost perfectly with true North, skewed a little today due to crustal shifts since the time of its construction. If it was built after the last pole shift, which occurred around 10,500 B.C., then it was simply positioned in alignment with the new pole. This is the most plausible case. If, however, it was built before the pole shift, then either its builders knew clairvoyantly what the new pole alignment would be, or the Great Pyramid was used to shift the planet’s axis. It’s impossible to say whether it was built before or after the pole shift, so I’ll leave this as food for thought.
Putting it All Together

I began this series by explaining the nature of the Demiurge, the universal intelligence responsible for shaping physical reality according to given archetypes. Its etheric component biases probability at the quantum level while the astral component carries the archetypal signature that directs that biasing. Together, etheric and astral energies may be called “demiurgic energies” because they have the power to intelligently alter matter, energy, space, and time — precisely the function of the Demiurge.

Demiurgic technology makes use of these energies to affect the physical universe. One example is the Philosopher’s Stone, a saline substance impregnated with dense etheric energies and tinged with the astral signature of gold, thereby being capable of transmuting lead or mercury into gold by reconfiguring their atoms at the quantum level in accordance with that signature.

By logically extending the principles of the Demiurge and Philosopher’s Stone, I can also explain the purported characteristics of the Holy Grail and Ark of the Covenant. The latter are higher applications of demiurgic technology.

The central tenet of Alchemy is to imitate Nature, not only the mineral aspect upon which all of modern science is fixated, but also the biological and spiritual aspects. In producing the Philosopher’s Stone, Alchemy is imitating the process of mineral-to-plant evolution. Notice that the Philosopher’s Stone is primarily a combination of physical and etheric bodies, with only the slightest astral component to impart a specific “flavor” to its transmutative power. Unlike ordinary minerals, it possesses life force by virtue of its intrinsic etheric energy. This places it above the rank of chemicals and closer to the vegetable kingdom. Both plants and the Philosopher’s Stone have physical and etheric bodies but not much of an astral body. Just like a plant, the Stone is passive and immobile.

What separates animals from plants is that their physical bodies are more complex, their etheric bodies more intense and developed, and that they have an actively functional astral body. The animal level is where sentience and volition begins, when the first semblance of independence develops. The more complex physical body is what allows a higher order of life to inhabit it. If Alchemy were more refined, it could mimic this process of plant-to-animal evolution and take the Philosopher’s Stone beyond the vegetative level. Then the physical body of the Stone would be more ordered and perhaps crystalline, its etheric body would likewise have to be greatly intensified, and an actively functioning astral body would develop.

What separates humans from animals is that, on average, humans have egos and personalities that allow them to be independent reasoning individuals. As explained in my first article, the ego is a higher order structure that develops in the soul thanks to more sophisticated environmental programming made possible through the body being evolved enough to allow for it. Likewise, if Alchemy were taken to an even higher level, it could produce something that not only has an etheric and astral body, but possesses an independent sentient intelligence residing therein.

The above can also be explained from the perspective of thoughtforms. The most basic thoughtforms are just passive etheric energy constructs comparable to sponges or fungi. The more developed ones have an astral body as well, and like animals they are hungry critters; astral succubi are an example. But the most evolved thoughtforms possess ego and personality.
The quintessential point is this: not only does demiurgic technology make use of etheric and astral energies, but it also creates artificial physical bodies to house any order of soul or thoughtform, from the lowliest etheric constructs to the highest individualized intelligences. (This technology is alien; I can see it being used nowadays in Grey worker drones and alien spacecrafts, whereby the physical vehicle is made autonomous by a resident etheric/astral thoughtform, a literal ghost in the machine).

What is the Grail Stone, what is the Ark Stone? My current theory is that it’s an advanced crystalline object housing an equally advanced thoughtform; and not just any thoughtform, but an entitized one. The Ark and Grail Stones are the pinnacles of High Demiurgic Technology, at least of what has fallen into human hands. The entitization is what makes it oracular and volitional. The intensified etheric field is what produces the various electromagnetic emissions. External etheric, astral, and archetypal inputs modify its behavior. The probability biasing effects of its etheric field can be amplified to allow for the manifestation of physical matter according to the entered archetypes and energies.

The Ark of the Covenant, as described in the Old Testament, ought to consist of the following components: 1) the Ark Stone as the physical body, 2) the Great Pyramid, Ark box, Tabernacle, and Temple of Solomon as housing for the body, 3) the vortical Shekhina as the soul (etheric and astral bodies), and 4) Yahweh, the Lord of the Israelites, as the residing ego. In mysticism, the soul is feminine relative to Spirit, thus the Shekhina is of feminine gender in Judaism since it is identically the soul of Yahweh. When the Shekhina leaves the Ark and travels about, that is comparable to astral projection.

In summary, the Ark Stone is a physical matrix possessed by a powerful entitized thoughtform created or invoked according to the operator/priest’s instructions. The Stone itself pre-existed the original Jews, but for a time it was in their possession and they came under its control. If it seems belittling to call Yahweh a thoughtform, bear in mind that the universal Demiurge is a thoughtform also, and so are our own souls. Thoughtforms are not always insignificant things. The bigger question is whether the Demiurge, thoughtform, or soul in question is subordinate to Spirit/Creator or acting independently out of selfish motives. If the latter, then it exists only to perpetuate its own survival and carry out its prime directive through energy feeding and probabilistic control. Hence in my first article, I talked about the Corruption of the Demiurge and how its development of a lower ego divorced it from the harmony of Creation, turning it into a World Parasite. Gnostics equated Yahweh to the corrupted Demiurge.

In the next article I will discuss how the misuse of High Demiurgic Technology explains why the entitized intelligences communicating through the Ark and Grail were so unlike in their temperaments and goals, and what this means for our future. I will also get into the origins of the Grail and its role as a fulcrum in a grand chess game spanning ancient feuds to future timewars.

Further Reading

Opening the Ark of the Covenant (New Page Books, 2007) – by Frank Joseph and Laura Beaudoin. Traces the history of the Ark and Grail from ancient to modern times. I recommend this book for the broad spectrum of historical data it provides, but not for the lines of reasoning or conclusions that
follow from that data. But this book does give a comprehensive overview of research leads to follow.

The Sign and the Seal (Simon & Schuster, 1992) – by Graham Hancock. Like the above book, I value this one for the historical data more than the conclusions. Hancock believes the Ark resides in Ethiopia, however as reported on Viewzone, a story inscribed on ruins dating from the 15th-16th century B.C. mentions a duplicate of the Ark being sent into Ethiopia as a decoy while the real one was hidden away, so a good portion of Hancock’s research may have been tracing the history of this decoy. Still, Hancock does a good job of drawing upon obscure sources to paint a detailed picture of the alleged powers of the original Ark.

Many more suggestions for further reading can be found throughout the footnotes below.

Notes

1 Exodus 25:10-22


3 Sargon of Akkad (Wikipedia) | Sargon and Moses (article)

4 Akkadian Empire (Wikipedia) | Akkadian Language (Wikipedia)

5 Who were the Hyksos? (Gunnar Heinsohn / 1993 / article) | Empire of Thebes (John Sweeney / 2006 / book, pp. 7-10)

6 When was the Exodus? (Brad Aaronson / article) | Is there evidence of the Exodus from Egypt? (article)

7 Escape From Planet Egypt Part 2 (Christian Media Research / article) mentions the El-Arish inscription where the pharaoh perished in the “Place of the Whirlpool.”

8 Exodus to Arthur: Catastrophic Encounters with Comets (Mike Baillie / 1999 / Book, out of print) Baillie studies tree ring evidence to date major historical climate events. He confirms that the Thera explosion happened in 1628 B.C. And he also proposes that its plume was visible from Egypt, see pp. 105-106 and was incorporated into the Exodus accounts. If so, then Exodus merged the volcano plume with the vortical Shekhina into the same pillar of fire and cloud.

9 The Biblical exodus inscribed on an ancient Egyptian stele (Ralph Ellis / article)

10 Jericho (Wikipedia) | Is Bryant Wood’s chronology of Jericho valid? (article) | Jericho Chronology Dispute (Conservapedia / article)

11 Manetho and Josephus on the Hyksos (Manetho, Josephus / article) | Osarseph and Exodus: Literary Reflections in an Egyptian Mirror (Gary Greenberg / 1997 / article)

12 Baalath (Wikipedia) | 1 Kings 9:15-19 | Baalbek, Lebanon (article) | Baalbek (World Mysteries / article) | Baalbek – Lebanon’s Sacred Fortress (Andrew Collins / article)
13 The search for Osiris takes Isis to Astarte in Phoenicia (Carnaval, article) | Ancient Coins Showing Sacred Stones: The Shrine of Astarte (article) | Baetyl stones

14 Ages in Chaos: From the Exodus to King Akhnaton (Immanuel Velikovsky, 1952, book) | Entry: Ages in Chaos (Velikovsky Encyclopedia, article) | Hatshepsut and the Queen of Sheba, Answering Dr. John Bimson’s Challenge | Velikovsky was wrong in his dating – Solomon needs to be moved back to circa 1500 B.C, not Egyptian chronology moved forward to circa 1000 B.C. See the ViewZone article.


16 Manetho and Josephus on the Hyksos (Manetho, Josephus / article) | Osarseph and Exodus: Literary Reflections in an Egyptian Mirror (Gary Greenberg / 1997 / article)

17 1 Chronicles 13

18 1 Samuel 6

19 Leviticus 10, Numbers 3:4

20 Numbers 4

21 1) Ark capacitance calculation assumes dielectric constant = 2.9, wood thickness 1/2 inch (.0254 meters), dimensions = 2.25 × 2.25 × 3.75 feet. Capacitance is 3.3 nF for box without lid. Gives 15-20 Joules if charged to 100 kV, 200 Joules (minimum to kill a person, or jump start a heart per defibrillator devices) at 350 kV. 2) To be struck just by touching or nearing the outside, capacitance of outer surface must be considered instead, not capacitance between inner and outer conductors. Total surface area is 4 square meters, giving capacitance around 60 pF. The 200 Joule threshold requires 2.5 million Volts. Spark length in that case is 2-3 meters. 3) If carried on poles, then spark length is less than height of shoulders otherwise it would discharge to the ground, suggesting a potential around 1 million Volts. Such potentials cannot be produced by mere picking up of stray charges from the environment. More likely internal electron precipitation from ether and/or a diverging magnetic vector potential altering the local charge density and thereby creating high voltages between center of Ark and the environment.


23 See the “Science” section of my Research Notes

25 Exodus 19

26 Numbers 4

See Mosaic Tabernacle as an Aaronic Temple for detailed illustrations of the Tabernacle.

27 Influence of kink bands on the tensile strength of flax fibers (C. Baley, 2004) | What are the optical and physical properties of flax fibers (linen)? (Raymond Rogers, 2004, article)


29 Luminous World – Baron Karl von Reichenbach (Gerry Vassilatos / 1999 / article)

30 Exodus 25 (no mention of iron) | Deuteronomy 27:5 “Build there an altar to the LORD your God, an altar of stones. Do not use any iron tool upon them.” | Exodus 20:25 “If you make an altar of stones for me, do not build it with dressed stones, for you will defile it if you use a tool on it.” | Solomon’s Temple Copy of Phoenician Temple of Melqart in Tyre (Phoenicia.org / article)

32 Iron in Folklore (Wikipedia) | Explorations of the Jinn Descriptions in Islam (2008, article) “Jinns fear iron and steel so some people wear steel rings or put steel daggers or knives where the protection from Jinns is needed. Iron is similarly used.”


34 Exodus 25

35 Shekinah (Wikipedia) | Shekinah (Jewish Encyclopedia) | The Shekinah (Fred Miller / article, excerpt from Zechariah & Jewish Renewal) | Yehova’s Shekinah Glory (John D. Keyser / article)

36 Exodus 13:21

37 Exodus 19, Exodus 24:16-17

38 Exodus 16:8-12

39 Exodus 33, Leviticus 9:23-24

40 Exodus 13, Exodus 33, Numbers 12

41 Cosmic Orgone Engineering (Wilhelm Reich / 1954 / incomplete web archive ) | See my Cloudbusting Resources page.

42 Exodus 40:34

43 1 Kings 8:10

“When Solomon was of good cheer by reason of wine, he summoned the beasts of the field, the birds of the air, the creeping reptiles, the shades, the spectres, and the ghosts, to perform their dances before the kings, his neighbors, whom he invited to witness his power and greatness. The king’s scribes called the animals and the spirits by name, one by one, and they all assembled of their own accord, without fetters or bonds, with no human hand to guide them.”
La Mort De Philae, Chapter VI — In the Tombs of the Apis (Pierre Loti / 1924 / article) | Not all bulls made it to age 28. Some died or were killed in their 17th, 25th, or 26th year, depending on circumstances. The “28” year is symbolically significant since that is how old Osiris was when he was murdered by his evil brother Set. Jews also have a ritual performed only once every 28 years called Birkat Ha-Hammah when the Sun is said to return to its location in the sky at the time of Creation. Of course, astronomically that isn’t true. However, Saturn has a 29.5 year cycle, which plays significantly into the Parzival tale. Saturn is also Chronos, the god from whom we get the etymology behind words relating to linear time. All of this ties into the Mayan calendar as well, with the first day of Creation being 4 Ahau, and the Jewish ritual having to do with the Sun being created on the 4th day. | Apis (Wikipedia) “When Osiris absorbed the identity of Ptah, becoming Ptah-Seker-Osiris, the Apis bull became considered an aspect of Osiris rather than Ptah. Since Osiris was lord of the dead, the Apis then became known as the living deceased one. As he now represented Osiris, when the Apis bull reached the age of twenty-eight, the age when Osiris was said to have been killed by Set, symbolic of the lunar month, and the new moon, the bull was put to death with a great sacrificial ceremony.”

The Amazing Boxes of the Serapeum (Christopher Dunn / 2003 / article) | Lost Technologies of Ancient Egypt (Christopher Dunn / 2010 / book)

Ptah, God of Craftsmen, Rebirth and Creation (Tour Egypt, Caroline Seawright / article) | Ptah (Crystalinks / article)

Why did God require animal sacrifices in the Old Testament? (article) | Why did Jesus shed his blood? (article)

The Gospel of Thomas Collection (Gnostic Society Library / article with resources) | Gospel of Thomas (Wikipedia) | Q Source (Wikipedia) | The Gospel of Q: All sides to the controversy

Joshua 6

Exodus 19

Apis (Wikipedia)

Secrets of the Pyramids—Experiments in Energy-Form, Part One (Joseph Robert Jochmans / 2009 / article)

The so-called “air shafts” in the Great Pyramid have been hypothesized by researchers like Robert Bauval to point to certain ritually significant stars. Evidence says otherwise; for example, the shafts are bent when viewed from above and don’t have a continuous line of sight; some end within the Pyramid. See: The Great Pyramid and the Axis of the Earth – Part 1 (Scott Creighton and Gary Osborn / article). Chris Dunn’s analysis fits the evidence better, and he proposed a strictly utilitarian purpose behind the shafts.

Fourier Synthesis (article) Shows a setup using tuning forks and Helmholtz resonators to make composite soundforms | Egyptian Tuning Forks (Keelynet / 1997 / article) | Tuning Forks and
Acquisition of the Ark Stone by the proto-Israelites was a critical turning point in history. Under the direction of the entitized thoughtform manifesting through the Ark, these exiles conquered and prospered into what eventually became ancient Israel and the Jewish people. High demiurgic technology inserted a new religious, political, and economic power into the timeline.

History would have turned out very differently had the Israelites never acquired the Ark Stone, if they faded into history like other tribes of the past. First and foremost there would be no Judaism, and hence no Islam or Christianity. Thus the Catholic Church would not exist either, nor the Inquisition. There would be no anti-Semitism during the Middle Ages, which forced Jews to take refuge in the financial industry since other occupations were barred to them. Without anti-Semitism, there would be no Nazis, World War II, or Holocaust. After the war, the Nazi scientific intelligentsia were transferred to the USA to work in black ops projects. From their influence arose the Military Industrial Complex.

And because of the Holocaust, Israel exists once again as a nation, though only through the oppression of the Palestinians. This has further increased anti-Zionism and anti-Semitism in the world, especially among Israel’s Arab and Persian neighbors. This conflict is bound to erupt in regional warfare, possibly nuclear, which would drag other nations like Russia, China, America, and
the European Union into World War III.

Organized religion, international bankers, Military Industrial Complex, and World War III are the key factors that will bring about a New World Order, the reign of the Antichrist. As you can see, the Ark Stone being taken out of Egypt initiated events that contributed to the potential advent of global totalitarianism. On another timeline, different players and events could have produced similar ends, but there’s no denying that our particular history reached this point with extraordinary speed and efficiency thanks to special assistance by nonhuman forces.

In Jewish origins we have an example of otherworldly forces and technologies shifting the direction of history. Without the Ark, the impossible would not have become possible and our timeline would not have deviated to the degree it did. This and other deviations to the timeline have ensured that mankind is now religiously, psychologically, politically, technologically, and militarily primed for the global self-enslavement.

Who is responsible for this grand orchestration of history? The lead conspirators are alien. This fact is detailed in my book Discerning Alien Disinformation and the works of William Bramley, Michael Tsarion, David Icke, Jordan Maxwell, and Marshall Vian Summers. Hopefully it’s clear by this point that the Ark/Grail Stone is alien in origin. Is it so surprising that alien technology helped propagate alien agendas?

But the alien presence is not the raison d’etre behind it all. Their agendas are just sub-plots in a bigger story. Consider how aliens reside somewhere between the level of humans and divine spirits, or between humans and demonic entities, depending on their spiritual orientation. Just as the human sphere is surrounded by the alien sphere, so is the alien sphere encompassed by the divine and demonic. Therefore, alien dynamics occur against the backdrop of occult, cosmological, and spiritual dynamics, namely the battle between the corrupted Demiurge and the Creator. It seems that all other conspiracies and agendas follow, in one way or another, from this primordial schism.

On a scale of power, humans occupy the lower levels, aliens the middle, and cosmic intelligences like the Demiurge the higher. With that in mind, it looks like

- the Ark/Grail is alien technology (middle)
- that has fallen into human hands (lower)
- yet allows human interaction with personified extrusions of the Demiurge (higher)
- resulting in deviation of human history (lower)
- toward the fulfillment of various alien agendas (middle)
- that stem from the primordial schism between Demiurge and Creator (higher).

This system of interactions between multiple levels gives a preliminary sketch of the kind of “game” humanity could be caught within. To make it more complete I would need to add feedback loops between warring time travelers or interdimensional beings and our alternate pasts, presents, and futures. More on that in my next article.

For the moment, let’s explore the interaction between human and Demiurgic levels by revisiting the subject of the Ark of the Covenant, specifically the intelligence manifesting through the Ark and
why it differed so greatly from the one manifesting through the Holy Grail.

The Advent of Yahweh

It all goes back to the Hyksos expulsion (1550 B.C.) and the Osarseph Rebellion (1320 B.C.) in Egypt. One or both of these events involved transport of the Ark Stone out of Egypt into Canaan. In both events, the Semitic leadership in Egypt was ousted and exiled. According to ancient historians Manetho and Josephus, a High Priest of Akhenaten named Osarseph, who held allegiance to the Semitic people of Lower Egypt, lead his monotheistic followers out of Egypt after a failed rebellion against the Egyptian traditionalists. As the story goes, this heretic priest and his people became Moses and the Israelites.

There may be more to the story. In *The Stellar Man*, hermetic author Dario Salas Sommer (John Baines) relays a parallel account of what happened in Egypt, based on his research and inside sources as member of the Hermetic brotherhood. Because of its importance and relevance, I quote it here in full:

> Why do we designate Christ as the symbol of spirituality? Because Jesus was the most distinguished member of the *Magician’s Fraternity*, prepared specifically for his mission to make Christ incarnate in himself. Jesus and Christ were two different persons; one human, the other, divine.

> Christ is a superior being who is on an advanced level on the scale of evolution, which a human being could reach in perhaps millions of years of evolution. Let us conceive of him as an extraterrestrial spiritual power, which we could call an *Archangel*. This *Archangel*, due to his very lengthy evolution, possessed perfect and powerful spirituality. This is why Jesus went through a long preparation for this role, for he had to be able to withstand an extremely high vibration in his physical body. This vibration could only manifest itself for brief moments, as its intensity could destroy the nervous and cellular system of Jesus’ body. Christ was the one who performed miracles through Jesus, who provided the matter for his manifestation.

> The *Magician’s Fraternity* remains well hidden, as it has a right to its own privacy, but some of its members have intermingled with ordinary people, motivated by the wish to show *sapiens* the road to a higher life. The magicians know, however, that knowledge of *The Hermetic Art* as an instrument to reach spiritual heights, is only for the “elite” and is not to be divulged. Nevertheless, the fraternity of initiates provides the opportunity for any person with sufficient merit to join the Hermetic elite of *Magicians* or *Stellar Men*, if the scope and intelligence of his efforts permits him to do so.

> The science of the *Magicians* is called *Hermetic Art* in honor of Hermes Trismegistus. According to tradition, he arrived on earth from outer space approximately thirty thousand years ago, anointed as Supreme Grand Master of the Initiatic Fraternity. Inspired by his light, Egypt became great and wise, and the sacred science of its priests was called *Hermeticism*. In those days, only by means of huge sacrifices and trials was it possible to belong to a Hermetic Initiatic School. The great majority who succeeded in entering such a school faltered along the way, lacking the moral and spiritual courage to overcome the multiple obstacles, temptations, and trials by which ISIS, mistress of the mysteries of Nature, evaluated the true worth of those who aspired to the supreme knowledge of the absolute truth.
It was in one of those schools that Jesus himself became a Hermeticist and reached the highest degrees of initiation.

Because the time is right, we will divulge the mystery of Jesus the Christ and the causes for the moral suffering of humanity, according to the teachings of the Magician’s Fraternity. This moral mystery stems from the adoration of the golden calf; from the submission of the human being to the god of money. In honor of this god, he must give up or sacrifice his spiritual possibilities in order to be able to subsist. Those who possess adequate means of subsistence generally pervert their potential spiritual values in the foolish game of gaining social position on the consumer market. The spiritual or moral quality of an individual is worth very little, as the need for money leads him to lower and prostitute himself for the vile metal, which buys honor, respect, love, fame, and power. The money god is sitting above the world, and whoever wishes to enjoy his gifts must adore him. The real power of money is not only material, but it is principally a hidden force, as the coin is not worth anything in itself; it is only symbolic for human effort or work. By a strange paradox, although work is intrinsically noble, money, the result of this effort, is under the control or influence of a satanic or diabolic power.

We invite the reader to meditate on what he could do to corrupt human beings if he was Satan; what means or tools would he use to instigate crime, greed, war, fratricide, and decay of moral values? It would be difficult to imagine anything more perfectly suited for this than gold; neutral in its own condition, but diabolical when handled perversely.

Does Satan really exist, or is he only a myth created by the masses to explain certain things? If a person believes in the existence of God, then he must believe there is a devil or Satan as a counterpart of the Supreme Creator. Because absolute unity does not exist in life, the mere existence of something leads us to the affirmation that its opposite is also real. There is no light without darkness, no good without evil, no truth without falsehood. Death follows life, and life follows death.

God would thus be the supreme creative intelligence, and the “devil,” the destructive intelligence. In the ancient Kabbalah, the devil has been symbolized as the shadow of God. Therefore, just as the Great Creator has his angelic hosts, the devil also has his infernal legion. William Blatty, in his book The Exorcist, refers to this legion when he presents the phenomenon of “demonic possession.” After the following explanation we can continue our story.

The tradition transmitted by the great Hermetic Masters affirms that at a crucial moment in the history of humanity, a powerful diabolic Archangel, if we are allowed to call him thus, succeeded in penetrating the earth’s occult defenses and entered its atmosphere, provoking extreme disturbances. To be able to imagine such a being, we suggest reading the book The Lurker at the Threshold by H. P. Lovecraft. According to Hermetic tradition, the direct, albeit unwilling cause of this catastrophe which affects us to this day, was Moses.

Everybody knows that Moses appeared floating in a basket down a river and was subsequently adopted, deceiving the Egyptian priests of the time. They took him for an Egyptian and initiated him into the mysteries of ritual magic, which is a method for making the key notes of Nature vibrate, and thus produce certain phenomena which the operator wishes to achieve. The study of atomic physics shows us that it is theoretically possible to produce changes or transmutations in matter; therefore, there is nothing miraculous about these mutations being achieved by means of secret procedures. In
spite of his esoteric identification with Egyptian magic, Moses was always loyal to his ancestral blood. Thus, his most powerful wish was to make himself the leader who would free his people from enslavement, leading them to the promised land. Guided by this desire, and conscious of the powerful forces he had learned to control, Moses had a daring idea: to make a magic pact or alliance with an angel, a divine creature charged with the task of providing him with power and assistance from heaven to save his people.

After lengthy preparations done in deep solitude, he performed the ritual ceremony with magic words and corresponding invocations. In the midst of amazing atmospheric and terrestrial phenomena, an impressive being appeared, making Moses tremble with fear and panic, due to the tremendous force it projected. It will never be possible to know or even imagine the conditions under which the pact between man and heaven was made. The angel agreed to everything. Moses requested and promised his help, demanding the strictest obedience in return. He revealed his name as Y., and requested that as a sign of union, all his followers should undergo a small ritual surgical operation, with a light discharge of blood. Every man who underwent this would come to be a son of Y. The blood that was shed sealed the pact.

From that day forward, Moses was invested with superhuman powers and started doing all kinds of magical feats, converting the Ark of the Covenant into the center of his power. Plagues and calamities fell over Egypt, and non-believers and rebels were struck down by the wrath of Y. In this manner, Moses’ people started the Exodus that would last forty years. Later, Y., the occult power behind the leader, suddenly started to change his procedures by formulating strange demands, all of which had the shedding of blood as the common denominator.

Moses was overcome with fear and started to become aware of the magnitude of the error he committed. He then understood that the divine angel was in truth an angel of darkness, the complete opposite of the luminous power he had intended to invoke.

This infernal angel was a member of the host of shadows. In order to maintain its power and strength, this vampire needed to feed on human blood, an essence charged with the vitality conferred by the divine spark. This is why all through the Exodus, so many blood-shedding incidents occurred, provoked by the occult dictator.

In reality, who was Y.? One could say he was a very ancient being whose evolutionary origin is unknown. Through long periods of cosmic time, this being kept his individuality, but unfortunately his evolution was directed toward negative, dark, and destructive aspects; much like a human being who grows bitter with the passing of time and adopts a negative and destructive concept of life.

Many beings similar to Y. exist in the Universe. Fortunately, the magnetic defenses of the planet constitute an impenetrable barrier against those beings. However, Moses’ magic ritual opened a door and cleared a pathway through which Y. was able to penetrate into the Earth. It is possible to see this as the most transcendental, but unfortunately harmful event in the occult history of humanity. To justify this statement, it is necessary to digress in order to clarify exactly what the planet Earth really is.

One can affirm, without fearing any sarcastic mockery from the ignorant or the semi-wise, that the planet Earth is a human being. It is not something equivalent to a human being, but a man in all aspects of the word.
Hermetic philosophy upholds the truth of reincarnation, but affirms that this takes place only with some people who possess, or have developed within themselves some qualities or characteristics apart from the physical body, which are capable of resisting death. The term “people” refers to human beings, even if these beings may present physical characteristics different from terrestrial man. Regarding reincarnation, Hermeticism teaches that a Hermetic initiate of a high degree can achieve the power to reincarnate consciously, that is, changing physical bodies while maintaining his individuality and a certain degree of memory. Gradually, in the course of successive lives, the initiate grows in spiritual power. His essence or divine spark grows successively more powerful.

In this way, the moment will come when the body of man, in the dimension and shape we are familiar with, is no longer capable of containing or supporting such a vast and powerful essence. For this reason, such a spirit or super-developed essence must seek an adequate physical body that corresponds to his tremendous energetic force. Thus he reincarnates in the body of a new or young planet, and continues his development there, in ways and conditions that are difficult for us to conceive. This is how an extraordinarily evolved human being took the body of the planet Earth and made it his own, in the most perfect shape in the Universe: the sphere.

This sphere is formed by the same basic materials as the human body, which are, in brief, the materials of the Universe. This sphere breathes, moves, thinks, and feels. It has a circulatory, digestive, procreative, and respiratory system. Petroleum is its blood, and it feeds on vegetable, animal, and mineral matter. Sexually, it is hermaphroditic, with a masculine and a feminine hemisphere. It breathes through plant life, and receives its etheric or magnetic nourishment through emitting and receiving antenna, that is, through Homo sapiens.

Once this clarification has been made, and in order to grasp the magnitude of the catastrophe accidentally brought about by Moses with the arrival of Y., we can reveal that this ancient, vengeful, and malicious being expelled the young spirit from the Earth, incarnating in his place. With this act, a dark and bloody era commenced for humanity. A period of suffering, torment, and pain started for the Jewish people as they were converted into the innocent victims of the negative forces of Y. This is the explanation for the great afflictions which the Jews have had to suffer.

Imagine Moses’ despair when he realized the calamity which had occurred and the suffering created for those he had wanted to help. As time passed, Moses understood that nothing had power over Y., as he possessed incalculable malignity. Convinced of this, Moses brought together the wise men of his people and instructed them in the great mystery of the Messiah. These men, using magical rituals, could create a god and fulfill the mystery of theurgy, in the hope that this god could liberate them and save the world from the destructive influence of Y.

Once his instruction was given, Moses climbed Mount Nebo and was never seen alive again.

The wise men who inherited the patriarch’s instructions followed them faithfully, carrying out the Messianic ritual according to the instituted rules. As a result, hundreds of years later, Jesus appeared. He was the “Son of Man” (consider this expression carefully) and the Savior expected by the wise men initiated by Moses.
This is how Jesus was born, under the circumstances that are familiar to all. Hermetic teaching maintains he was the son of a Jewish woman and a Roman father, his progenitor being a Roman soldier and merely an instrument of higher occult forces.

Why is it said that Mary remained a virgin? This mystery really does not refer to physiological virginity, but to the fact that actually there was no physical contact between Jesus’ real father and Mary. In effect, his spiritual father was a great Hermetic initiate who etherically used the physical body of the Roman soldier to procreate a son. The spiritual seed was transmitted by the occult Master; the physical sperm by the Roman. In this manner, Mary conceived “without losing her virginity.” In those times the term “virginity” was not used to designate maidenhood; it was used to distinguish those women initiated in the secret of the “virgule” as Mary was. The magic rod used by Moses was known as the “virgule.”

Those who have “eyes to see and ears to hear” will understand this. For others, it will produce a dismal silence in their interior, and they will remain in the realm of ignorant sarcasm, suffering the mental emptiness of those who do not want to understand, or worse, the unconscious blindness of those who do not want to see.

Jesus, the god created by man and incarnated in the body of man, was consecrated by the great initiate John the Baptist, otherwise known as the Antechrist. Jesus’ baptism in the river was the means that permitted the first manifestation of Christ in Jesus, the man-god, whose mission was destined since his birth.

From the time of Moses, the Fraternity of Magicians had been attentively observing these events without being able to alter them. The magicians were connoisseurs of the Messianic mystery and had the knowledge that certain wise men were working on this. They decided to help the wise men try to correct the serious anomalies explained before. They were awaiting Jesus’ birth, and they were his occult godfathers who protected and educated him so he could fulfill his double mission.

His first mission was to liberate the chosen people from their occult killer. His second mission was to save the world in general from the invisible vampire who called himself Y. In order to begin a new era on Earth under the Christian motto “love one another,” replacing the dictum of “an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.”

At the same time, Jesus was an active member of the Fraternity of Magicians, receiving support and inspiration from all of them. However, the great Masters maintain that Jesus failed in his mission, or more accurately, that he only achieved partial success, since he did not reach his goal. This refers only to Jesus, however, and not to Christ. In order to truly understand Jesus, it is necessary to consider his triple personality: 1. Jesus the man, 2. Jesus the God (created by man), and 3. Christ (who manifested himself through Jesus). Christ was an angel, a solar spirit who descended from Heaven to manifest himself as the supreme power of the Father on earth.

Jesus and his twelve disciples are the symbol of a solar and cosmic mystery. Hermetic science teaches that our solar system is composed of twelve planets plus the sun, an analogy for the twelve apostles and Christ, and that the unknown planets will be discovered in time.
We will speak no more of Jesus; we have perhaps already said too much. We will only add that the crucifixion was an expected drama in which Jesus’ blood had to be shed so that Christ could in turn incarnate in the planet Earth and displace Y., definitively casting him out of our atmosphere. However, as we have already mentioned, this mission had only a relative success. Christ incarnated in the planet Earth, but Y. could not be expelled. Since then, both govern the planet.

Christ’s force acts in the world through the representatives of the *Fraternity of Magicians*. These men direct Hermetic schools in which the student can develop his spiritual force to the point of disintegration of his animal soul and liberation from the influence of Y., who can only act through primitive and animal instincts such as hate, envy, lust, greed, pride, and vanity.

In this way, the Spiritual Beacon is kept alight to illuminate the select spirits who are potentially capable of converting themselves into fully developed human beings and abandoning their *sapiens* condition.

Every person who reaches this condition is converted into a center of Christic irradiation and is therefore another obstacle for Y.’s influence. The naive say that Christ will return to the planet Earth. But Christ is on Earth! He needs only to be removed from the cross by the same humanity who nailed him to it.

Until that time, wars will continue. Great numbers of people will die and their vitality will be absorbed by Y., the great occult force behind these conflicts. None of this will end until this being is conquered.

The real Antichrist is Y., and he has spread his negative influence throughout his followers, those of bestial instincts, who in turn have incorporated this vibration into the multitude. The multitude is composed of amorphous and blind entities, receptors of any force of sufficient power. In this way, Y.’s principles incorporated in the collective unconscious of humanity motivate the philosophy of “an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.” Trapped by this malignant force, people live diabolically: hating, destroying, stealing, killing their brothers, returning evil with more evil, selling out their honesty and honor, enslaving the weak, exploiting the unprotected, and denigrating the just. Luckily, there are many who act contrary to all this. If this were not so, life would be unbearable. They are the ones who somehow have received a true Christian influence (not necessarily religious) and have higher values than usual.

Religions have a positive family and social influence, but unfortunately on solely spiritual grounds they do not have much to offer, and generally they try to check this deficiency with the indiscriminate use of the banner of Christ.

The *Fraternity of Magicians* does not derive its power from Christ, nor speak in his name. The Fraternity only exalts his values and shows or narrates events which the world should know, so that the *chosen* (the true humans) can reaffirm their conviction and loyalty to a superior spiritual life. The power of these *Magicians* comes from their harmony with, respect for, and obedience to cosmic laws, and the profound and serene spiritual condition they have reached. Their spirituality places them in a magical relationship with God, the *Great Universal Father*, who is recognized by the Hermeticists as the first cause of the origin of all and the great force of order and creation.
To speak about Christ is to explain the esoteric side of the psycho-social phenomenology of the world today. In its innocence, sapiens believes that everything in life is as it appears on the surface, and that things must surely be as the vast majority say they are. When some people hear of the esoteric side of events or the occult causes of different phenomena, they smile unbelievingly, arguing with infantile logic that “if that were true, it would be made known by the press” or, “it would have been taught at school or in the university” or, “well documented books would exist on the subject.” That way of thinking nullifies all progress, because if everyone’s belief was the same, no one would bother to study or investigate little-known phenomena.

Despite obstacles already mentioned, sapiens in his individual manifestation (not as a species) can have latent superior qualities and characteristics, which may lead him to partially understand Hermetic truths. Motivated by this knowledge, sapiens can awaken to a superior reality. The sapiens individual can save himself from the lethargic destiny of humanity and eventually reach the world of the Hermeticists, magicians, or awakened men.

Moses, a man of strength and wisdom, was driven by his yearning for freedom to commit an error of cosmic magnitude. According to the great Hermetic wise men, this error nearly destroyed the solar system. To clarify this statement, the solar system can be compared to the composition of an atom, borrowing on the Hermetic theme of “as above, so below.” In this case, Y.’s rise to power could be seen as an arbitrary substitution of an electron, which changed the spiritual nucleus of the Earth.

This is one of the many lessons, which oblige the Fraternity of Magicians to strictly guard Hermetic secrets. The Fraternity will only give instruction in higher knowledge to those who have demonstrated their strength, their moral and spiritual purity, and the rectitude of their intentions. (John Baines, The Stellar Man, pp. 5-23)

If you have read my preceding Gnosis articles, the core of what John Baines says should make profound sense. His explanation closely parallels my own conclusions, except my research has given me a different take on certain points.

The Ark of the Covenant was not just a religious ornament installed after the fact, but the very conduit through which Yahweh gained major influence in our world and further corrupted the timeline. Such powerful and chthonic a being cannot be created or invoked without the use of high demiurgic technology. Occult rituals and sacrificial slaughter alone are not enough, otherwise people like Aleister Crowley and Jack Parsons could have brought them in by the dozens. Thankfully they lacked the amplification technology to breach our reality’s defenses to the extent that Moses did.

The Ark Stone being used by the Mosaic priesthood to invoke Yahweh was a blatant abuse of high demiurgic technology. It shifted history in favor of negative forces. As Baines said, “It is possible to see this as the most transcendental, but unfortunately harmful event in the occult history of humanity.” The mindset of those who invoked this entity perfectly explains the angry, jealous, wrathful, commanding, and malefic nature of that entity. Recall that thoughtforms act in accordance with the emotional energies and conscious programming that went into them. The Mosaic ritual was performed during a time of great distress for the Egyptian Semites, who needed a liberator to smite their oppressors and lead them toward their homeland. The situation is similar to someone who makes a desperate pact with the dark side to exact vengeance, even if it means giving up freewill to
the demons assisting him. Anyone familiar with demonology and black magic knows that demons operate through pacts or covenants. Such contracts are the means by which the solicitor is bound and owned by the entity providing the service. Nothing is free when it comes to favors from the dark side.

Moses entering the Great Pyramid to retrieve the Ark Stone was accompanied by the Pyramid trembling, bellowing fiery smoke (or plasma), and generating an intensifying trumpet sound. This suggested the Pyramid was active at that time. One of its functions may have been to charge, program, and initialize the Ark Stone according to the conscious intent of the operator. At least that’s what it sounds like when the Bible states Moses stayed inside “Mount Sinai” for many days before emerging with the Stone. If he were only there to retrieve something, he would have emerged in hours. But the ritualistic creation or invocation of a powerful entitized thoughtform would take considerably longer. In other words, the Mosaic invocation ritual was technologically assisted black magic whose tragic consequences have cascaded into modern times.

Yahweh as Interloper

To recap my first article, once let loose, a thoughtform pursues its objective with single-minded determination. It exists solely to bend the timeline toward the fulfillment of the original intent. Astral archetypes at the beginning become physical manifestations at the end; that is simply a Demiurgic function. A thoughtform is the “Alpha and the Omega, beginning and end.”

When thoughtforms become entitized, however, they acquire an ego. This can be a lower ego if generated from base emotions and ignoble intents, or higher ego if generated by spiritual emotions and divine will. In the case of Yahweh, much suggests it was lower ego. All the characteristics that we commonly assign to egotism are present in Yahweh: narcissism, anger, wrath, jealousy, control, insecurity, hunger, bloodlust, intellectual abstraction, xenophobia, binary thinking, and intolerance. Even the seemingly redeeming qualities such as paternal concern are rooted in egotism, same way a mafia boss might act charitable toward others only to break their knees if they disobey. The Ten Commandments only apply to the Israelites amongst themselves, not between Israelites and outsiders who were freely massacred. Yahweh’s love is conditional and limited to the Israelites, the people bound to him via the Mosaic covenant.

An entitized thoughtform has a self-preservation instinct. If strong enough, this instinct overrides the original intent behind the thoughtform’s creation. The thoughtform can even use the original intent as a means to its own survival. In other words, if Yahweh was manifested to liberate the Israelites and bring them into political supremacy, self-preservation would mean they quickly become its tools, lured into serving the unchecked growth and power of that entity. They become hosts for a demonic parasite that exploits them toward its own ends, which is the way demonic pacts always turn out: first they serve you, then they own you.

We see this dynamic depicted in science fiction stories where artificially intelligent robots gain sentience, self-preservation instinct, and turn on their creators. The masters become the mastered. One doesn’t have to be malicious to come under the control of malicious forces, just ignorant of the consequences. Therefore the followers of Yahweh may be pious, devout, and upstanding but still play into a negative agenda out of sheer naiveté. As always, “the road to hell is paved with good intentions.”
The conspiracy is too big to invest itself in just one people. Therefore I don’t adhere to anti-Semitic conspiracy theories that place all blame on Jews. Like other shapers of history — Merovingians, Anglo-Saxons, Greeks, Romans, Nazis, etc.— they are but tools in an agenda being run by non-human forces. If anything, Jews have been used as decoys to distract and provoke other manipulated people into furthering the Antichrist or alien agenda. In that case they function like a matador’s red cape directing a charging bull. The true enemy is of another world, another time, another dimension, and we would do well to keep our eyes on this root instead of blindly whacking at the branches. No single vector of manipulation should be criticized to the exclusion of all others. Rather, everyone deserves equal scrutiny because the true enemy works through everyone it can.

That said, the Corrupt Demiurge (a.k.a The Adversary) achieved significant advancements in ancient Egypt during the Hyksos and Amarna periods, which severely screwed up the timeline by introducing further imbalance in the state of things. It’s an imbalance that would never have come about had the Ark Stone never been misused.

**Christ as Intervention**

Otherworldly technology creating an otherworldly problem invites an otherworldly intervention. As explained in my first article, the Logos is responsible for planning and upholding Creation. Part of that function includes correcting errors and imbalances. With the Corrupted Demiurge causing imbalance, it only makes sense that an equal and opposite force would be introduced by the Logos to help restore balance. A lower ego would have been countered by the intervention of a higher ego. If the Universal Lower Ego was personified in Yahweh, then the Universal Higher Ego was personified in Christ.

Baines relays that after regretting the invitation of Yahweh, the Mosaic priests set about creating a counter-deity. Historically, that was when Jews first acquired the notion of a Messiah who would come and save them. It took centuries for their created Messiah to incarnate in person and begin the work of undoing the damage. This involved the introduction of spiritual teachings that, like those of Buddha and the other great avatars, showed the way out beyond lower egotism. Egotism is what allows the Corrupted Demiurge to manipulate us.

If the Ark Stone was used to manifest Yahweh, could the Ark Stone have been used to manifest Christ? Indeed, and that’s when it becomes the Grail Stone...again. Same object but different entitized thoughtforms manifesting through them. In the Ark Stone, it was the Universal Lower Ego, in the Grail the Universal Higher Ego. Both are entitized thoughtforms pulled deep into our world, our timeline, via technologically assisted ritual. Whether the Ark Stone created a new deity or opened the door to an existing one is a matter of perspective; basically it created a new manifestation, presence, or avenue for pre-existing ones.

The non-human, non-physical, divine Christ is an extension of the Logos. His assigned purpose is to restore imbalances and fallen conditions brought about by the corruption of the Demiurge. In other words, Christ is “tech support” for a reality gone awry. Like any entitized thoughtform, he pursues this objective with single-minded determination.

But as the story goes, the Jewish Pharisees rejected the teachings, the Romans and Greeks perverted the message, and the world remained in the grip of dark forces. John Baines and Rudolf Steiner explain how Christ’s mission was a partial failure because it remained incomplete. Hence we have
both Yahweh and Christ currents active in the world today, one representing the force of spiritual enslavement and deception, the other of spiritual liberation and awakening.

The legacy of Christ was largely absorbed and inverted toward the fulfillment of the Antichrist agenda. From this usurpation sprang organized Christianity as a political institution responsible for the murder and mental enslavement of countless millions. Whereas Christ was the fountainhead for a Gnostic stream of wisdom, the Church suppressed and replaced this with a counterfeit that locked its followers into serving the Matrix Control System instead of becoming free from it.

Real and False Dichotomies

In reality, Yahweh and Christ stand in dualistic opposition, for they are opposite extrusions of the same Demiurge, one worldly and the other divine. One was called Kosmokrator by the Greeks, meaning dark World Ruler, and the other Pantokrator, the divine Universal Ruler. Modern Christianity fails to distinguish between these two. Fundamentalists who try to reconcile the wrathful, jealous, tribal side of this chimera with the universal, loving, and compassionate side suffer a dissociative psychological split. They pay lip service to the spiritual teachings of Christ while allowing ego to express the jealous and wrathful side of Yahweh.

External duality between Yahweh and Christ is paralleled by internal duality between lower and higher ego. When one equates these opposites and fails to see their differences, lower can imitate and displace the higher. The lower ego dressing itself in saintly clothing mirrors the Church portraying itself as divine appointees, which mirrors the Corrupt Demiurge masquerading as the Infinite Creator. It’s elegant because the impostor usurps the throne and thereby prevents return of the rightful king; when the lower has been mistaken for the higher, the return of the higher is rejected for being some kind of foreign intrusion. This is how the true Christ is kept out of Christianity, how intellectual arrogance leads to self-imprisonment through rejection of better ideas, and why the majority of humanity sees Matrix values as strength and Spiritual values as weakness. There has been an inversion between reality and illusion, truth and lies.

For those who object to dualism, understand that there are real and false dichotomies. Even though a real one exists between the Logos and the Corrupted Demiurge, the latter employs its own set of false dichotomies. Obvious examples of false dichotomies can frustrate people into throwing away dualism altogether, but that blinds them to the real dualities. This mistake is common in the New Age field.

Both real and false dualities exist. Thus at the most basic level we have a trinity instead of a duality: two false choices and a third transcending them. The transcendent choice is symbolized by Christ, the false ones by the the Adversary. The latter uses false dichotomies because that is all it can create, and because it works so well on the human psyche.

Through false dichotomies, the Adversary offers seemingly “good” and “bad” choices that end up producing the same outcome. Hence these opposites are not freewill choices themselves. They are illusory traps that, together as one, represent the choice for illusion made as soon as one believes they are valid options.

Due to intellect being the seat of lower ego, intellect has a strong affinity and vulnerability to the Corrupt Demiurge. The first is just a microcosmic version of the latter; both are of the same essence
and speak the same language. The human intellect has a terrible tendency for binary thinking that allows these false dichotomies to work so successfully. Binary thinking means reacting blindly and mechanically, instead of thinking intelligently and creatively toward paradigm shifting conclusions. It means taking one of two false choices instead of the third transcendent one. It keeps people in opposite corners of the same box. Pretty much all human stupidity traces back to binary thinking. Even the sharpest intellectuals can suffer this flaw, because like the Corrupted Demiurge, the intellect is ungrounded in the greater Reality. It merely builds upon what it blindly accepts as given, like a wind-up robot marching methodically in whatever direction it’s been placed.

It takes some connection to the greater Reality to transcend false opposites. One needs a connection to Spirit via intuition and the higher intellect. But humans generally default to binary thinking, a flaw that may have been engineered into the human neural physiology by our Archonic alien progenitors who serve the Corrupt Demiurge. Through binary thinking, blind reactions to one deception become further deceptions, and reactions to those become yet more. To get out of this mess, genuine dualities must be seen as separate and distinct, false dualities as one and the same trap. The inverse is what allows the Adversary’s agenda to propagate.

The Unholy Trinity

Given the obvious problems with organized religion, some turn to satanism, science, or mysticism because these seem like better alternatives. But each can serve the Adversary all the same. Satanism puts the lower ego on a throne, same as organized religion; science is preoccupied with matter to the exclusion of Spirit. And mysticism can inspire false illumination and spiritual imbalance.

These three false alternatives are not random errors, but reflections of the physical, etheric, and astral components of the debased Demiurgic system:

- The physical component is expressed through materialism, atheism, hedonism, transhumanism, socialism, and nihilism. This matter-centric force is at the root of the Demiurge’s corruption. It ultimately leads to disintegration, entropy, and spiritual death because those are the properties of matter. Its personification was named Yaldabaoth by some Gnostics, meaning “Child of the Void.” Rudolf Steiner called it Sorat and termed its demonic agents the Asuras. Their momentum is to extinguish consciousness, freewill, and spirit, and replace it with pure machine-like materialism. The impending alien deception, with its goal of genetic and cybernetic assimilation of the human race, represents this impulse.

- The etheric component is expressed through organized religion, ritualism, intellectualism, satanism, conservatism, bureaucracy, corporatism, racism, ecclesiasticism, and theocracy. This follows from etheric energy’s affinity for patterning and repetition. This component is associated with intellectual abstractions, formulas, preoccupation with laws, blind obedience within hierarchies, self-preservation, preservation of the past, plant-like expansionism, maintaining the status quo to the point of atrophy, and exploitation and discrimination against foreign patterns. The Gnostics called this force Samael, “God of the Blind”; Steiner termed it Ahriman. Yahweh of the Old Testament belongs to this category.

- The astral component is expressed in New Age Mysticism, Nazi occultism, black magic and
voodoo, anarchism, Luciferianism, Christian Revivalism, and entheogenic escapism. This follows from the astral flitting about in delusional reveries when not held in check by Spirit. What these expressions have in common is that they seek to rebel against current conditions and escape enthusiastically into another, being lead astray in the process. It is the force of transcendence without restraint, like a rocket without a guidance system, bound for false destinations in the land of fools. For instance, this may entail escaping the dead world of matter or the restrictive world of ether, and getting lost in some metaphysical rapture. Or it may entail the opposite, falling from the divine realms into the world of matter out of misguided desires for physical existence. Gnostics called this force Sakla, the fool; Steiner called it Lucifer, in this case the bearer of false light.

These are the heads of the hydra, the triple aspects of the Matrix Control System, that bubble of illusion isolated from greater Creation. One devolves, one atrophies, and one leads astray. False dichotomies that afflict humanity are various permutations of this unholy trinity set in opposition against each other.

The Holy Trinity

Countering these corrupting influences is the trinity of Creator, Logos, and Christ. In Christianity these are known as the Father, Holy Spirit, and Son. The Holy Spirit is termed “Sophia” by some Gnostics who view her as the embodiment of wisdom and facilitator of awakening, but really she is just another personification of the Logos. As for the Mother archetype, remember that “mother” comes from Latin mater, root of “matter” and “matrix.” The Mother is the all-encompassing matrix that allows for our existence.

When one is filled with the genuine Holy Spirit, and not its Luciferic counterfeit that only induces hysteria, one is filled with the impulse of the Logos. This means one becomes Christ-like, in the sense of being repurposed toward the correction of the timeline. This infusion of Logoi energy activates the higher intellect and reorients the astral body to the divine impulse of spiritual love and the best of all possible futures. Through Gnostic revelation, wisdom, and love, one becomes a willing agent of the Universal self-correction mechanism. That is the true meaning of baptism, not the Ahrimanic ritual done in Churches, but the pouring of Logoi energy from above. In Parzival, the Grail could not be perceived without baptism.

The two trinities are represented by upright and inverted triangles. The central emblem of Israel, the Seal of Solomon / Star of David, depicts these forces locked in struggle.

Conclusion

Demiurgic technology acted as a powerful fulcrum throughout history, shifting the balance according to its use and misuse. Misuse drew negative forces deeper into our world, affording them stronger deviations of the timeline. In turn, this error called for equal and opposite intervention by positive forces. The conflict between positive and negative manifests at all levels. It is part of a cosmic battle being waged within us, outside us, across space, across dimensions, and across time.
Further Reading

**The Stellar Man** (Second Edition, 2002) – John Baines. Also see the Institute for Hermetic Philosophy. Primer on Hermetic philosophy, includes the occult history of Jewish origins and the intrusion of Yahweh into our world.


**The Incarnation of Ahriman** (Rudolf Steiner Press, 2006) – Set of lectures by Rudolf Steiner. Discusses the role of Ahriman, Lucifer, and Christ forces in history and the implications for our future. If you’re unfamiliar with Anthroposophy, see Rudolf Steiner: An Introduction to His Life and Work and then browse through the many Steiner lectures and books at rsarchive.org. As with everything I recommend: extract what’s valuable, piece it together, and swallow nothing blindly.

**The Deed of Christ and the Opposing Spiritual Powers** – Online lecture by Steiner. One of the few where he mentions the Asuras. Related article: Sorat and the Modern Day Evil. See also The Advent of Ahriman.

Notes

1. Secular Jewish culture: Banking and Finance | Usury: Medieval Doctrine (Jewish Encyclopedia Entry)

2. One example of Nazi scientists being transferred to America: Operation Paperclip (Wikipedia). This was not the only project, just one that made it into the history books.

3. See Eisenhower’s farewell speech of January 17, 1961 in which he warns of the burgeoning Military Industrial (and Congressional) complex. I suspect this came after an important turn of events around 1959-1961, when American territories fell into negative alien jurisdiction after the U.S. Government made treaties with them in exchange for technology. During that same time period, the government rejected the benevolent alien factions who only gave warnings and advice but refused to share technology. This is obvious if you closely study UFO and alien contactee history. On September 19, 1961 the Betty and Barney Hill abduction happened, which kicked off decades of widespread Grey alien abductions. It’s worth noting that during the abduction, a humanoid figure reminiscent of a Nazi officer was seen in a supervisory position. The Military-Industrial complex has a Nazi/ Alien/Black-Ops nucleus, which is responsible for the joint military-alien abductions occurring around the world today. This cancerous structure ascended to power by 1961 and Eisenhower was the last president of the old guard, thus his farewell warning. Ever since, the alien disinformation campaign has been in full swing. 2010-2011 will be the 50th anniversary of this terrible event and may signal the completion of the program.

4. Manetho and Josephus on the Hyksos (Manetho, Josephus / article) | Osarseph and Exodus: Literary Reflections in an Egyptian Mirror (Gary Greenberg / 1997 / article)

5. Exodus 19

6. Followers of the Grail, Gnostic, Occultic, Mystic, and Pagan streams may see Judaism and/or
Catholicism as wicked forms of spiritual oppression and deception. But in doing so, they may err on the side of Luciferianism, which emphasizes transcendence, willpower, and individualism to the point of imbalance and egotism. One example is Grail researcher Otto Rahn who ranted against the Catholic church and didn’t have anything good to say about Judaism either. But through binary thinking, he found favor in the opposite fallacy of Luciferianism. As Steiner explained, the Luciferic and Ahrimanic forces have their positive qualities. Those qualities extracted and held in higher balance is what comprises the third Christ path. Binary thinking results in imbalance either way by taking one to the exclusion of the other, or worse, synthesizing the worst of all the forces, which is what our world is approaching via the Antichrist / alien deception.

Changelog
0.1 – (12/01/10) article posted.
0.2 – (8/4/11) Edited for clarity, longer sentences split up into shorter ones, and two paragraphs removed that pertained to the photon being a physical reflection of the Demiurge creating false dichotomies in a spiritual vacuum.

6 - Nordic Aliens and the Grail Race
13 April 11 (gnosis)

Short version: Nordic Aliens and the Grail Race (Abridged)
©2011, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

Introduction

Who forged the Grail? Who brought it to Earth? What is their role today? Mythology, folklore, history, religion, esotericism, occultism, and alienology all contain clues declaring the existence of superhuman beings who seem deeply invested in our affairs but prefer to remain hidden. Those among them with the most consistent historical presence are human in appearance, yet far beyond human in their knowledge and abilities.

Regardless of what human groups came into possession of demiurgic technology before and after the Israelites, none of them truly owned it. Instead, the supernatural artifacts were ultimately borrowed, licensed, or stolen from the so-called “gods” who originally manufactured them. It seems these “gods” bestow and retrieve such artifacts according to circumstance, finding it necessary to entrust it to chosen human proxies at certain times. In doing so, they risk such power occasionally falling into wrong hands. The rebel priesthood fleeing Egypt with the Ark Stone is one example.

Mankind is unwittingly caught in a war between hidden superhuman factions who select, train, equip their human agents to participate in that war. Demiurgic technology enables major shifts in the balance between their competing agendas. In this article and the next, I will speculate on the nature, origins, and motivations of these superhuman beings and their human proxies who, in
modern times, surreptitiously coexist alongside humanity as a hidden parallel civilization. This will widen our perspective for understanding current and future world events.

The Grail Company

In *Parzival*, Wolfram von Eschenbach describes the “Grail Company” as a preternatural outfit of divinely appointed individuals who exist beyond our world but have a very close relationship with it:

As to those who are appointed to the Grail, hear how they are made known. Under the top edge of the Stone an inscription announces the name and lineage of the one summoned to make the glad journey. Whether it concerns girls or boys, there is no need to erase their names, for as soon as a name has been read it vanishes from sight! Those who are now full-grown all came here as children. Happy the mother of any child destined to serve there! Rich and poor alike rejoice if a child of theirs is summoned and they are bidden to send it to that Company! Such children are fetched from many countries and forever after are immune from the shame of sin and have a rich reward in Heaven. When they die here in this world, Paradise is theirs in the next.

God ordained concerning the Grail that it should be kept by virgins ministering before it. The Grail chooses lofty servitors, thus knights are appointed to guard it endowed with all the virtues that go with chastity.

[…] Fortune often faces those of Munsalvaesche [the Grail castle] with win-and-lose. They receive handsome children of high degree: but if a land should lose its lord, and its people see the hand of God in it and ask for a new lord from the Grail Company, their prayer is granted. Moreover, they must treat him reverentially, since from that moment on he is under the protection of God’s blessing. God sends the men out in secret but bestows maidens openly.

[…] Writing was seen on the Grail to the effect that any Templar whom God should bestow on a distant people for their lord must forbid them to ask his name or lineage, but must help them gain their rights. When such a question is put to him the people there cannot keep him any longer.

[…] As I say, maidens are given away from the Grail openly, men in secret, in order to have progeny (as God can well instruct them), in the hope that these children will return to serve the Grail and swell the ranks of its Company. Those knights who are resolved on serving the Grail must forego woman’s love. Only the King may have a spouse in wedlock, and those others whom God has sent to be lords in lordless lands. (Hatto, p. 251)

Does Wolfram’s version of the Grail Company have any real analogues? Some say it’s an allusion to the Templar Knights or the Cathars, but these were only human attempts at emulating the real thing. Regular secret societies and religious orders don’t fit the description because they lack the supernatural qualities, distinguished genetics, and the curious need to draw upon the human gene pool through interbreeding. The ascribed traits of the Grail Company indicate a transcendent elite who are nonetheless somehow dependent on mankind. If nothing else, this description matches the modern alien phenomenon. Extracting the key elements from the above passage:

1) Their men are sent into our world to take up leadership positions without revealing
their true identities. Implication is that our world is being directly influenced by superhuman males pretending to be ordinary humans.

2) Their women may enter our world for sexual procreation. They do this without disguising their identity. In other words, human males are used for breeding purposes by superhuman females who make no secret of their otherworldly nature.

3) Their children are of superhuman pedigree, seeded into human society until they are called to return to the realm of their progenitors.

Framed in this way, all three elements are found in modern alienology, specifically pertaining to the alien types who look human. From ancient to modern times, accounts exist of human encounters with such beings, their disguise as humans placed in influential roles, and their seeding of hybrids into human families.

That is not to say all are necessarily divine Grail guardians. The latter may only be a small faction among them who ultimately serve the Logos. Those same general traits could equally apply to humanlike alien groups bent on malevolent domination. All that's indicated is an otherworldly elite who, despite being more advanced, are dependent on us and/or heavily invested in our affairs.

For the purposes of this article, I will focus on aliens who could pass for human, have supernatural abilities, and have shaped the course of history. They are the best candidates for the otherworldly forces involved in the demiurgic tug of war. Why is this important? Because the competing alien forces from our ancient past are still with us today, actively influencing the world. Those who were there for the beginning may be there for the end. It appears their cold war has been underway for several thousand years, and based on current trends, it could become an open hot war in our near future. Therefore the study of these alien groups, how they relate to the human race, their role in history and our future provides the deeper context needed to fully appreciate everything discussed so far in the Gnosis series.

Provisional Summary

Based on my research, correspondences, and personal experiences, I have come to several conclusions concerning them:

• There is warring among these beings, indicating they are not all unified. At the very minimum they are polarized into opposing sides, if not split into numerous independent factions. Some factions have a strong fascist orientation.

• They walk among us pretending to be human. Some are integrated into society and hold strategic positions, whether to influence or simply observe.

• They are genetically compatible with us, and some of their females have engaged human males for sexual encounters and even long term relationships. Through interbreeding their genes can enter our gene pool and vice versa. Therefore some human individuals and bloodlines would have more of their DNA than others, and their alien DNA would likely show under analysis to be basically human, albeit rare and unusual.

• Through genetic manipulation, they can insert alien DNA as a third party contributor to a
developing human fetus, so that the child resembles both human parents while also being somewhat hybridized. Whether artificially hybridized, naturally conceived between human and alien, or fully alien, such a child born and raised in a human family will mostly pass for human, except they will be of a caliber beyond their peers. The greatest heroes of myth and ancient history were popularly viewed as cross-breeds between gods and men.

- Throughout history, they have selected certain humans, or perhaps their own offspring / hybrids raised in human society, for privileged education, training, and guidance, so that these human proxies can function as vectors for their agenda, be it benevolent or hostile to mankind at large. This may include modern day contactees and abductees, ancient prophets and magicians, and the founders of mystery schools and secret societies like the Rosicrucians. Note that such secret societies are just larger, more powerful, institutionalized versions of individual contactees, that is, they are both under the guidance of aliens, given privileged knowledge, and charged with a mission fitting the agenda of their alien benefactors.

- Considering that some of the esoteric knowledge communicated to humans is positively helpful, not all alien influences are selfish. It seems some are genuinely interested in raising humanity’s potential in the areas of discernment, chivalry, ethics, and spiritual integrity.

- They are all secretive and known to lie, even if only by omission, regardless of their spiritual orientation. Benevolent reasons could involve a law of non-interference, complications with timeline dynamics arising from unscrupulous contamination of the past, the need to ensure that privileged and powerful knowledge is entrusted only to vetted parties who will use it responsibly, and self-protection to avoid discovery and persecution. Malevolent reasons could include the hiding of hostile agendas and hoarding of knowledge for leveraging purposes.

- They are extremely telepathic. They can read thoughts with minute precision, implant thoughts, scan the soul for its level of integrity or weakness, induce hallucinations, manipulate emotions, and steer a person’s dreams. The human proxies they train can achieve these skills at a lower power level.

- They use technology to augment their innate superhuman abilities. This technology is demiurgic, can control time and gravity, affords them invisibility and antigravity, and allows them to walk through solid objects, meaning they can inhabit solid mountains in a dimensionally shifted condition, for instance.

- Their native environment is dimensionally shifted beyond ours, i.e., we cannot find their bases through mere physical searching. Like the Grail castle, which appears only to the chosen, their abode only becomes visible and accessible to us at their choosing. For example, a contactee may be psychically modified to perceive it, or dimensionally shifted to enter it.

- Like an angel losing its wings, under certain conditions they can lose their abilities and become “mortal” without the ability to return to their superhuman state, at least not within this lifetime. They get stuck here. If an entire group of theirs undergoes such a fall, they
would enter into human history as an already developed and highly advanced culture that gradually undergoes decline upon becoming naturalized members of a primitive planet.

• The members of their civilization are not all homogenous in standing or understanding. Composition ranges from a two-tier system of “lower retarded ones” and “higher advanced ones” to caste-like systems with many tiers similar to the Indian caste system.

• The retarded members of their kind are the ones who interact with the most advanced of humans. Why? Maybe because of their evolutionary closeness, and also because such an interaction could be mutually beneficial. Despite their seeming superhuman qualities, those aliens who interact most with select humans may, in fact, be the most flawed of their race.

• The apex of their leadership extends beyond the physical and semi-physical, into the domain of divine and demonic forces. In the case of positive alien groups and their angelic or spiritual superiors, the relation may not be so much of commanding and obedience, but oracular guidance and respect. The ancient human practice of consulting the oracles, consulting the gods, etc… may be a lower echoing of this relationship.

• The lower of their kind seem more physical, technological, and tactical while the higher tiers seem more esoteric, astral, and judiciary. The problem, however, is that their most flawed ones are not only the creators and users of demiurgic technology, but they are also most involved in human affairs. This means we suffer their errors, which are graver in consequence than any mistake we could commit, just as our errors are more severe than those possible by animals.

• The consequences of these errors and grave transgressions have cascaded back and forth throughout the timeline. They are now converging toward a nexus point representing the potential for a cataclysmic shift. Alien factions who were responsible for initiating these consequences are likely the same ones who are now involved in the final outcome. A thread of continuity exists between the most ancient and modern of human-alien encounters. The alien disinformation campaign is an effort by one set of such factions to prepare mankind for enthusiastic acceptance of their overt control.

Since it would take a whole book to lay out the supporting research, here I will select excerpts from a few key sources to show that the superhuman presence is ubiquitous and hidden in plain sight.

**Tony Dodd**

First consider the Project Camelot interview with Tony Dodd, a “highly respected British UFO investigator who died [in early 2009] of a brain tumor. He had always suspected that his illness was engineered and was directly related to his work.” In his own words:

I’m now much closer to the complexities involved in the UFO field and the government involvement. There’s certainly a serious threat by some visiting UFOs and further problems caused by alien visitors who are integrated into our society, possibly holding high positions in government. These aliens – who look like us – are here for unknown reasons and this is causing many problems for those trying to find them.

There’s very little doubt they’ve been here for many years and they have occasionally had meetings with certain very high ranking people. One very high ranking military
officer wrote about one such meeting. These meetings are far and few between and the individual is chosen by the alien for such meetings which take place under extreme secrecy.

These aliens operate above normal government knowledge and they are pursued by highly trained hunter killers of several nationalities who operate to eliminate them. Normal people getting close to the truth of what is happening are getting into very dangerous areas and will quickly have a fatal accident. They will not permit anybody to rock the boat. I was warned I would be killed because of some of my work.

The aliens are highly intelligent and have possibly obtained positions at a very high level and this is of great concern to senior authorities. My information is that the only way they can be recognized is by a deformed finger on one of their hands. To hide this they usually wear gloves or a bandage on the finger as if they have had an injury.

The fact that they look like us and mingle amongst us secretly begs the questions: Why are they here and what are their intentions? Why are they so secretive? There are people in very high places who consider them a threat and have squads out looking for them with intent to kill. This is no doubt why they stay secret. The truth is that we fear what we don’t understand.

It’s not known what their true form is. The deformed finger strongly suggests that do not look like us in their true form. Either way they’re obviously highly intelligent and far ahead of us technically. It is not known their planet of origin… or if they are time travelers, they’ve never disclosed this as far as we know.

Are there any well-known public figures, anywhere in the world, who you suspect or are suspected to be non-human?

I don’t know. If it became known that there was one such person, he would certainly disappear in very quick time. The authorities would immediately subject him to interrogation in an effort to find out how many of them were here and what their intentions were. This is why they remain secret. But once again, we must question what they’re here for and what their intentions are. Always remember: throughout the course of history, a more advanced race has always enslaved a lesser advanced race. This is what worries the authorities. (link)

While the detail about the deformed finger seems dubious, here is a veteran UFO researcher investigating and speaking about human-like aliens in our power structure, and dying soon afterwards.

Mac Tonnies

Later that same year, Fortean philosopher Mac Tonnies died in his sleep at age 34, only a few weeks before he was to submit the final manuscript for his book The Cryptoterrestrials: A Meditation on Indigenous Humanoids and the Aliens Among Us, which was posthumously published in 2010. Excerpts from the book:

I propose that at least some of the accounts of alien visitation can be attributed to a humanoid species indigenous to Earth, a sister race that has adapted to our numerical superiority by developing a surprisingly robust technology. The explicitly reproductive overtones that color many encounters suggests that these “indigenous aliens” are
imperiled by a malady that has gone uncured throughout the eons we have coexisted. Driven by a puzzling mixture of hubris and existential desperation, they seek to perpetuate themselves by infusing their gene-pool with human DNA. While existing at the very margins of ordinary human perception, they have succeeded in realms practically unexplored by known terrestrial science, reinventing themselves at will and helping to orchestrate a misinformation campaign of awe-inspiring scope.

We typically assume interdimensional travel must involve arcane cosmological machinery such as a wormhole or “stargate.” But I became increasingly drawn to the idea that our visitors’ method of travel is less flashy (from a technical perspective) and more understandable in terms of earthly — if bizarre — paranormal influences.

This lead to my growing suspicion that the “aliens” typically attributed to extrasolar planets are less advanced than they lead us to believe. In fact, I think a case can be made that we’re dealing a surprisingly vulnerable intelligence that relies largely on subterfuge and disinformation to achieve its goals, a theme I attempt to address in later chapters.

And as outlandish as it may seem, I’ve been forced to wrestle with the notion that our relationship with these “others” is far more widespread and intimate than even paranoid dramatizations of the UFO spectacle would have us believe.

These dawning suspicions are borne out, at least in part, by world folklore (with its preoccupation with “little people” in our midst) as well as by recent discoveries that suggest the history of our species is more enigmatic than we’d like to admit. We may well share our planet with cryptohominids that have mastered the art of camouflage in order to coexist with us. More portentously, their agenda might be within our ability to grasp. But to do so, we must suspend the assumption that we’re dealing with something as quaint as ET astronauts.

Given reports of humanoid beings “materializing” and “disappearing,” it’s tempting to speculate that our visitors have mastered a technology of consciousness, able to manipulate their own wave functions and skip back and forth between multiple universes at the speed of thought. This is one (admittedly colorful) explanation for the lack of physical evidence; “they” might lurk in “hyperspace” as well as familiar, 3-D space-time. Moreover, this form of travel might be accomplished without the need for energy-intensive machinery; if shamanic experiences are any indication, the ability to transcend space and time might a more fitting subject for parapsychologists than theoretical physicists. […] 

Also intriguing are accounts of “tulpas,” which are either objects or human-like entities crafted by pure thought, according to certain esoteric Buddhist beliefs. Capable of carrying out tasks on behalf of their creators, tulpas aren’t unlike the maddeningly transient “occupants” seen in or around “spacecraft” (sometimes digging for soil specimens in an almost parodic reenactment of the Apollo Moon landings).

While a more conventional flesh-and-blood explanation remains my central proposal, we would be timid to avoid addressing the UFO phenomenon’s parapsychological aspects. I find it likely that an indigenous population of “aliens” would have experimented along “occult” lines out of sheer need for secrecy; a “nuts and bolts” technology can go a long way toward ensuring anonymity in the face of an intrusive human civilization, but the ability to directly influence the fabric of Mind itself would be even more effective and perhaps less resource-intensive.
Like John Keel and Jacques Valle, Mac Tonnies saw the idea of aliens being curious visitors from the stars as deliberate subterfuge. These authors explain why aliens have fronted lies about their true nature and origins. My book *Discerning Alien Disinformation* also addresses that issue. But does the bogusness of the extraterrestrial hypothesis mean they are instead native to Earth? Well, the line between indigenous and extraterrestrial is blurred if the latter have existed on Earth for longer than we have, even if they once originated from elsewhere in space and time. Maybe the deception isn’t so much about whether they are extraterrestrial, but about the extent of their entrenchment in our activities, that far from being merely “visited,” humanity has been influenced by alien intelligences since the very beginning. By portraying themselves as recent visitors, the depth and scope of their manipulation remains hidden.

Contrary to what Tonnies suspects, their technology is more advanced than they are letting on. Aliens seem to hide their secret science behind a veil of plausibility made of more primitive but trendy concepts and imagery borrowed from human culture. In truth, not only are aliens telepathic and able to induce hallucinatory camouflage, but they have the technology to parallel their psychic prowess. This demiurgic technology operates via metaphysical laws as much as physical ones, and seems paranormal only because it extends beyond human materialistic science into the realm of the occult, the latter simply being a science that makes use of etheric, astral, and conscious energies and principles.

If the “cryptohominids” seem closer to fairies and elves who use magick instead of aliens who use science, it’s because demiurgic technology appears like magick to those who don’t understand it, and superhumans seem like supernatural spirits to those who assume aliens are as deeply mired in three dimensional physicality as we are. We should avoid the mistake made by proponents of the Extraterrestrial Hypothesis (ETH) and Ultraterrestrial Hypothesis (UTH) and not fall into the false dichotomy of physical versus nonphysical, because the solution to the riddle is that these beings live an amphibious existence between these extremes.

Jordan Maxwell

Jordan Maxwell is another researcher familiar with the phenomenon of human-like aliens living among us, having experienced it firsthand. Here is his account from a Project Camelot interview:

But when I was 19, I ended up in Los Angeles – at 19 years old with seven bucks in my pocket, incidentally. I had no idea where I was going, where I was. I ended up in Los Angeles on a Friday night with seven dollars in my pocket. You know, I was a stupid kid, but I lived through it.

Later on, a couple months later, after I got a job and things were working out for me, I was in North Hollywood one morning, on a weekend morning, and I went into a restaurant. The place was crowded and there was only one seat available and that was at the counter, so I sat at the counter. There was a young girl sitting next to me, so we started talking.

Come to find out she only lived about two blocks from me and I only lived about two blocks from town, so she had walked downtown and I had also. So we started hanging out together. I’d meet her downtown; we’d hang out together. This was back in ’59 and I was 19 years old.
When we would walk home, I lived two blocks closer, so she had two blocks farther to go, so I never knew exactly where she lived, but she knew where I lived. One night she came over to my place and said: My dad wants to see you. He wants to talk to you.

And of course that put me on alert. I SAID: I don’t want to talk to your dad.

SHE SAID: No, my father is a very important and interesting man. He wants to talk to you. He’s got something to tell you.

That sounded interesting, so I went with her, and when we walked up to the house which was only a couple of blocks away, we walked up to the house, just by chance, he happened to be coming out of the house.

The moment I saw him, an incredible feeling came over me of some kind of a euphoric, strange [and] wonderful feeling that I got, being in his presence. It was as if I were in the presence of a great prophet or some spiritual man. I felt it, and I loved the feeling. I mean, I can’t describe it, but I loved the feeling. It was an other-world feeling. I noticed that he was very much in control of himself; he knew exactly what he was doing.

He motioned for us to come in. We went in and the girls sat on the floor by the fireplace. They sat on the floor. He sat on one end of the sofa, I sat on the other end of the sofa. The wife was in the kitchen. I never did see her that whole night.

So we were talking and he was, you know, he was asking me how I liked living in California, and do you have a job and how do you like your job, and just small talk. And I was beginning to feel a little of the apprehension was going away. I was beginning to feel a little bit better being in his company, but I knew there was something about this guy that wasn’t right, but I loved the feeling.

I’m 19 years old, so I’m not sure what I’m doing, but I’m just talking to this guy who’s dazzling me with his presence of mind and the presence he presented.

And so we’re talking about all kinds of things and then, when he felt that I was sufficiently at ease, he said to me very nonchalantly, he said: Remember when you were eight years old back in Florida and your father built the new back porch and your uncle helped him? And remember, your dad used green lumber that smelled funny? And he built the new back porch? You remember that?

Tears started to come to my eyes, and I didn’t want to show tears in front of my girlfriend, but he was scaring me because he was right and he knew it.

AND HE SAID TO ME: Well, did that happen or didn’t it?

I SAID: Yes, that happened.

AND HE SAID: Also, one night when you were in bed, you got out of bed and you went out on the back porch and you were looking at the Moon and the Moon was full. Do you remember that?

AND I SAID: Yes, I remember that.

AND HE SAID: And you were picking the wood because it smelled funny. It was green
lumber; it smelled funny, and you were picking it with your finger. Remember how you picked a piece of it, and you were smelling it and tasting it? AND HE SAID: Remember doing that?

AND NOW I’M REALLY SCARED BECAUSE IT’S FRIGHTENING TO ME AND I SAID: Yes.

HE SAID: Well, did you do that, or didn’t you?

I SAID: Yes, I did.

AND HE SAID: Well, how would I know that? How would I know what you did?

AND I SAID: I don’t know how you’d know.

HE SAID: I know because we were there. You just didn’t see us, but we were there watching you.

AND I THOUGHT: Well… [laughs]

AND HE SAID, BECAUSE HE COULD TELL I WAS NOT BUYING IT: Was I correct in what I said?

Yeah.

HE SAID: Well, how would I know if I wasn’t there? We were there.

I SAID: Who was we?

HE SAID: That’s not important right now. What’s important for you to know is that you’re in California, because we brought you here. We brought you here to Los Angeles.

I SAID: You brought me here?

HE SAID: Yeah. Why are you here?

I SAID: I don’t know why I’m here. I just had to come to Los Angeles.

HE SAID: That’s right. We brought you here, he said, because what did you say to God? You talked to God that night. The night you sat on the porch, you said something to God. What did you say?

I just sat looking at him.

HE SAID: I’ll tell you what you said. You asked God to let you do something important with your life. You wanted to do something of value and importance with your life.

And I was about eight or nine years old, right?

I SAID: Yes, that’s what I said.
HE SAID: Well, then we’re going to give you an opportunity to do something with your life now because you did ask.

I’m still amazed, listening to him.

AND HE SAID: What we have for you to do will not happen until the later part of your life, and I’m not going to go into it right now.

HE SAID: I’m not going to go into explaining it to you now; however, when the time comes for you to do what we have brought you here to do — you will know what you have to do. By that time, you will be sufficiently knowledgeable on who you are and what you’re doing and where you’re going.

AND HE SAID: All you need to know now is that we brought you here and that we will protect you wherever it is that we put you.

AND I ASKED HIM, I SAID: I still don’t understand what you’re saying.

HE SAID: You don’t need to, but one day, you will understand.

AND HE SAID: So I’m here to start you on your journey.

HE SAID: I have a book I’m going to give you and I want you to read the book and that will begin your journey.

And he pulls it off the shelf and gives it to me, and today you can still get that book in bookstores anywhere. It’s called The Complete Works of Charles Fort. [spells name].


And he opened the book indiscriminately, just put his hand on the pages, because it’s a very thick book, and he opens a page and he reads a paragraph. He just opened the page and reads a paragraph — he knew exactly what he was doing, precisely what he was doing. I didn’t know because it looked like he just indiscriminately opened it, and he read a paragraph that just blew me away. I was knocked out by what he’d just read. AND I THOUGHT: Wow! That’s interesting.

AND HE SAID: Oh yeah, the book is filled with that kind of thing. Let me read you another one.

He opened it up again and just indiscriminately read something. Not indiscriminately! He knew what he was doing. I’m sure that he knew how to get your particular attention. What would be very interesting to you, I may not even see. But he knew how to play on my emotions, and he read about three little paragraphs, one after the other, and each one — to me — was absolutely mind-blowing.

I was fascinated with him, with my new girlfriend, [laughs] and with this book. AND THEN HE SAID TO ME: You’ve always been interested in UFOs and other-worldly things, right?
AND I SAID: Yes, I have.

HE SAID: Would you like to see some UFOs up close tonight?

AND I SAID: I’d love to.

HE SAID: Well come on. I can do that for you.

So I got up with him, and the two girls – my girlfriend and her sister – the four of us came out in the yard. It was about maybe midnight in North Hollywood, 1959, and he looks up into the sky and starts inaudibly talking. His mouth is moving as if he’s talking to somebody, but you can’t hear him.

And as I’m watching him standing there talking to the stars, I look over at my girlfriend and she’s looking at me. AND THE LOOK ON HER FACE WAS LIKE: Yeah, this is my father, that’s him. Told you he was strange, didn’t I? [laughs] And that kind of thing.

And her sister was looking at me, and I could tell what she was doing. SHE WAS TRYING TO FIGURE OUT: How is he taking this? You know, what’s going on in my mind? [was] what the little one was thinking, because she’s seen this before. She wants to see how I’m going to react to this.

AND SO THEN HE LOOKS AT ME AND HE SAID: They said that they will be coming from Griffith Park in just a minute. There’ll be three of them and they’ll be coming from the Griffith Park area. They’re going north and they said that they’ll be here in a minute for you.

AND I SAID: Who’s they?

HE SAID: You’ll see.

Within a couple of minutes, three beautiful disk-shaped things, glowing, very faintly glowing, came over with no sound whatsoever, in a triangle formation, came over and stopped right above our heads and stopped.

And when they did, you could see they were disk-shaped and it looked and appeared like it was a pie cut in six or eight slices, and each slice was a different color. What I remember distinctly is each color was like a laser color: vibrant orange, vibrant pink, very vibrant colors, six or eight colors on each one – and they were circulating, not so fast as to blend the color, but circulating. They were beautiful. They were about the size that the full Moon appears, so they’re not little lights. Full-Moon size. Three.

And I’m standing there looking at these gorgeous, beautiful, vibrant-color things spinning, and colors, and no sound, and I was absolutely mesmerized. I was just… I was enthralled by seeing this gorgeous, beautiful display.

AND I LOOKED AT HIM AND HE’S LOOKING AT ME AND HE SAYS: They’re pretty, aren’t they?

AND I SAID: Yes. They’re beautiful.

AND THEN HE LOOKS UP AND TALKS TO THEM. HE SAID: They’ve told me to
tell you that they’re going now but they’ll see you later. And they did. They started moving and they went out north.

AFTERWARDS, WE WENT BACK IN AND I SAID: What did I just see tonight?

HE SAID: That was us. We’ve been here for a long time, you just didn’t know it. HE SAID: We picked you a long time ago when you were a small child. We have something for you to do.

AND I SAID: I’m not understanding exactly.

HE SAID: You don’t have to. We will let you know what it is you’re supposed to do later on in life, but just go on with your life, don’t worry about it. Whatever you’re supposed to learn, we’ll see to it that you learn, and when it is time for you do what we have for you to do, you’ll know. We’ll let you know.

After that, I would go over there on the weekends to visit him and the mother and the two girls, and we would go out to the desert sometimes, go way out in the desert. The girls, with their mother, would go for a walk, and he and I would walk in the desert, and he would tell me about all the different alien lifeforms that are out there, where they have come from, the ones that are here.

AND HE TOLD ME: You have enemies here. You have some very powerful enemies here from other places that have come, and they know who you are, and they know what you’re going to do. So just be careful in your life, but we’ll protect you.

I didn’t know what he was talking about.

And then one day I went over to the house one morning, and the house was totally open, and they’re gone. Everything was packed and gone and the girl never told me she was leaving. They’d never come to tell me anything. They were just gone.

Now that I look back on that experience, I feel very secure in saying that he knew what he was doing. HE SAID: I’m starting you on your journey, and he did. But after that was done, then he moves on. (link)

In this example, Maxwell finds himself in an arranged meeting with a mysterious person who, in response to Maxwell’s earnest request made earlier in life to be made useful, starts him on a path of independent research. The final result is that through writing and speaking widely about his discoveries, Maxwell has gone lengths toward exposing the negative alien agenda.

What does Maxwell think is their ultimate goal? To enslave mankind through hybridization, through genetic assimilation and crippling. This is basically what I concluded in Discerning Alien Disinformation, though I disagree with Maxwell’s pessimistic view that we can do nothing but accept our doom with solemn awareness. If all hope were lost, there wouldn’t still be attempts by certain benevolent alien forces to interfere with the negative alien agenda by seeding awareness and secretly training their ground contacts to perform strategic duties during a future breakdown / alien-deception situation. Evidently they believe the future is still open, otherwise they wouldn’t be investing their energies.

Anonymous Gulf Breeze Contactee
More information on subversive humanoid alien groups comes from an anonymous account titled, *UFOs in the Gulf Breeze-Pensacola Area: Contact Since 1955*:

The first recall starts in early 1955, late February or early March. It is still cold in the Connecticut town where I was approaching my third birthday.

I am sitting on the edge of the bed. There was a pulsating green glow coming in through the window of my bedroom. Everything was silent. I mean completely silent.

I hear footsteps up the back steps and the back door open. I wasn’t frightened. In fact, I was very calm, almost detached.

The footsteps approach my room and the door opens. Enter a blond haired man and woman. They are wearing a one piece suit that reminds me of my pajamas with the feet built into them. The color is a dull silver. To my child mind, I think they are pajamas. They look about the size of my parents. The woman is somewhat smaller than the man.

They are standing there looking at me and I am sitting on the bed looking at them. They approached no closer than 3 feet. When they first come in they said, “Hello,” and they knew my name. They were talking like the New England people with the accent. That is what I was used to hearing.

I don’t know these people but they seem to know me. I asked them, “Who are you?” And the man says, “We are your friends.” I tell them I don’t know them. And the woman says, “You don’t remember us, but one day you will.” It seems that the woman did most of the speaking.

The following is quoted from the hypnosis session transcript:

The woman says that they have come to visit and they will visit from time to time to help me learn big things. It seems that they are talking in words that are understandable to my three year old consciousness. So they are being fairly basic. They say that they are here now because I have reached the triad age, that the age of three is significant for our type and that multiples of three have significant meaning. They’re not saying significant, they are saying, holding up three fingers and saying that, “This many is important.” That it’s an important number to remember.

I asked, “Why?” They say they can’t tell me yet but that they are my friends and that we have been friends for a long time. They say that it is time for them to leave, that they wanted to visit and say, “Hello,” and it is time for me to go back to sleep. They tell me not to look at the light outside.

So I lay back down and cover up. And, the man leading the way, they turn around and open the door and walk out closing the door behind them. I hear them walk out the back door.

I don’t go to sleep immediately. I hear kind of a hum and a bright green light momentarily shines through the window. Then it stops and it is dark again except for a dim streetlight. I got sleepy and went to sleep. […]

By this time, it was late 1956 or early 1957. It was cold outside.
I received the beep signal and my consciousness activated. I dressed myself in blue jeans, long sleeve shirt, and my Buster Brown shoes. I went out the back and down the alley as the house had no backyard, it had a side yard. In the side yard was a ship sitting on three pads. It was pulsating orange. The man and woman were there standing out away from the ship with a ramp descending to the ground. There was a whitish-yellow light coming out of the doorway or opening at the top of the ramp.

The man and woman were waving to me. I walked up to them and recognized them. They said, “Hi, Hello.” I said, “Hello.”

They indicated that they wanted to take me somewhere. I asked where and they said that they wanted me to meet some people. This seemed all right with me; it didn’t seem out of the ordinary. We walked over to the saucer, walked up the ramp and entered. The ramp then retracted and then blended with the side of the ship.

There were four aliens in the ship. Two woman pilots, the man and the woman. They were all dressed in one piece gray suits with integrated boots. […]

The extra-terrestrial craft was flying over an area that reminds me of the Smoky Mountains today. Soon the craft was flying over a big V type valley. One giant hill on one side and one giant steep hill on the other side. From the air, it looked like it went down into a big V.

Then the ship stopped in midair. In the console viewer was a 90 degree rock cliff. One of the ship’s operators sent some sort of signal; they pushed a sequence of buttons. In the upper left hand screen of the console monitor, a window popped up. Then, on the side of the steep, rocky cliff, a black hole appeared.

It didn’t look like a hole to me on the monitor, rather it looked like a large black spot. Before the signal was sent, there was terrain. From the air, this black spot looked oval with the elongated part of the oval being towards the top of the hill.

The ship started descending and they turned the floor view off. But I could see on the console monitor that they lined up with this black spot and traveled into it. What a surprise! […]

This black spot was the strangest thing I have ever seen. Even with current day recall, I have never seen anything like it. The only way I can describe it is like jet black light. If you take a spotlight and shine it on a surface, you have a white beam with a white spot; make that a black beam with a black spot and it describes what it looked like. It is hard to describe but what it was and what it led to was even more difficult to explain.

This black beam created an opening through solid rock! It was of tremendous size because the 25’ diameter ship was dwarfed by the opening. I watched the flat panel console monitor, obviously not an invention in 1956, as the ship entered the black spot. It was dark briefly like going through ink. Then from the center of the monitor out, an image reemerged opening out until there was a panoramic view.

What a view. We were inside a huge, and I mean HUGE, circular room with flying saucers of every size and configuration parked in various places. There were ships much larger than the one we were in and there were some smaller ones as well. The only analogy I can draw is an airport, or I guess you would call it a spaceport.
The room was cylinder shaped. The walls, floor and ceiling had a shiny black, glass-like surface that had a faint orange glow to it. There were no sharp angles anywhere. It was the same in the flying saucer. Where surfaces met, it was rounded. This giant room was the same way.

The ship maneuvered through spaces between the parked ships and ultimately landed. The door opened. It was weird how that door worked because it seemed to not be there one minute and the next, it just materialized.

This was the first time I had ever been to this place although it appeared that the other passengers had been there before. Everyone, including myself, stood up except for the pilots. I knew I was supposed to stand up but didn’t know why. There appeared to be routine to the other passengers. There were several people, three men actually, waiting outside for us.

The man and the woman extra-terrestrial stuck by me and the other kid, I suppose to assist us since we were rather small.

So we walked down the ramp. I was a little curious about everything there. Because well, the room was gigantic. It was HUGE! There was all different types of ships parked there. I could see some that were exact duplicates of the one we arrived in. Then there were other ones too, different sizes and configurations. My child mind was curious about all this.

But no one was really talking at this point. One of the three men seemed to be the spokesperson and he said, “Welcome. Let us go to the meeting room.”

Before I continue the narrative of this extra-terrestrial contact experience, it is necessary to discuss an unusual but real phenomena that occurs around this group of E. T.s. This is the phenomena of consciousness expansion.

This was not explained to me until 1991 when it became necessary to understand why Missing Time occurs and also, why contact experiences with extra-terrestrials of any species are difficult to remember.

The life energy field of the least developed extra-terrestrial civilization is significantly greater than that of a human. Human beings, like all life forms in this Galaxy are electromagnetic in nature. If you consider the brain, and its corresponding consciousness as a light bulb on an adjustable dimmer control, it will be easier to understand the phenomena.

Under ordinary circumstances, the typical human is at the lowest setting. Rather dim compared to E. T. s. However, the potential for more exist. Some individuals have higher settings with corresponding talents that primitive human science labels as phony or, if being charitable, extrasensory perception. The extra-terrestrials, on the other hand, have their dimmer switch turned way up all the time. They perceive at what they call a tri-level. For humans with a philosophic or Theosophical orientation, that translates to the etheric, astral and mental planes of reality. The E. T.s have a 360 degree field of conscious perception that is spherical in nature. The only analogy I can make about it is that they are aware of EVERYTHING at once, constantly.

When a human gets around an extra-terrestrial, the enhanced energy/electromagnetic
field of the E. T. has the impact of turning up the humans dimmer so that the consciousness is “brighter”. This pushes the individual’s conscious into areas that normally are relegated to the “Subconscious.” This produces a duality effect. The person is “themselves” but they are “more”. I won’t digress into the sorts of things that are stored in every individual’s subconscious. I will say that the normal individual is incomplete without access to this information. Being around an extra-terrestrial brings out this completeness and the extra-terrestrials respond to the total individual, not the limited view of self that everyone sees in the mirror.

It is necessary to understand this in order to understand what happened when this group of human passengers finally reached the meeting room. To understand how two 4 year old kids were functionally equal to two teenagers and a young adult.

As I mentioned, the wall, floor and ceiling of this gigantic cylindrical room were shiny black with a strange orange background glow. There were no obvious light sources but everything was brightly illuminated. There were ships of various sizes around but the largest appeared to be only twice as big as the one we arrived in. The 25 foot model seemed to be the most common but there was a mixture of larger and smaller craft as well.

There were different color striped lines on the floor. My interpretation of them were parking zones.

The three extra-terrestrials that greeted us were standing by a rectangular vehicle, a bit larger than a golf cart. […]

[At this point he mentions being put into a chamber that transforms his body into that of a grown adult, similar to the aliens, or perhaps his soul was simply transferred into such a body]

The extra-terrestrials at the meeting had their individual distinctions. There are four of them; two men and two women. Three of them have that ageless quality but one of the men doesn’t. He looks more mature and appears to be the group leader.

One of the extra-terrestrial women is blond, one has black hair; both with a page boy type shortness. The other extra-terrestrial male has sort of a sandy colored hair. Those three look like the bodies we were transformed into.

As I mentioned, they asked how we liked the form we were in and the general consensus was that it was too limiting. They told us that they were working to improve the physical situation, to provide enhancements, but had to work within parameters so that we would not be detected. That we had physical enemies that must not know who, or I suppose what, we were.

Then they started talking about how we would contribute to a new generation from the genetic materials contained in our current body cells and how the new generation, literally our offspring, would have greater, enhanced capabilities. These new “people” would enter the world in a time when things were different and it was safe to do so.

[…] After the topic of the next generation of us, whatever we are and whatever that is, the extra-terrestrials began talking about their concern about the genetic breakthrough that the gray aliens had made in Nazi Germany. They said the gray extra-terrestrials had
succeeded in contriving a way to make their alien gametes work with human gametes. The goal was a half human-half gray alien with the superiority of the extra-terrestrial portion.

It was obvious that the gray extra-terrestrials did not have the best interest of humans in mind. (link)

Of note from this account: human-looking aliens in bodysuits, the blond and black haired women with page boy haircuts, the alien base inside a mountain, use of hyperdimensional technology to phase an entire ship through solid matter, that via some proximity effect aliens induce a shift in a person’s consciousness (“assemblage point shift” in Toltec jargon), their moving about human society while evading detection, the idea of future humans having enhanced abilities, and their wariness of the Grey hybrid breeding program.

Orfeo Angelucci

An important but lesser known contactee is Orfeo Angelucci. His encounters also took place in Los Angeles in the 1950s. Excerpts from his main book The Secret of the Saucers (Amherst Press, 1955):

About a mile further along the disk swerved to the right, away from the road, and hung motionless over an unfenced field some distance below the road level. I drove off the pavement about thirty feet to the edge of the declivity. From there the glowing red disk was directly in front of me and only a short distance away. As I watched it in bewilderment it pulsed violently; then shot off into the sky at a 30- or 40-degree angle and at very great speed. High in the sky to the west it decelerated abruptly, hung for a moment; then accelerated and disappeared like a meteor.

But just before the glowing red orb vanished, two smaller objects came from it. These objects were definitely circular in shape and of a soft, fluorescent green color. They streaked down directly in front of my car and hovered only a few feet away. I judged each to be about three feet in diameter. Hanging silently in the air like iridescent bubbles their green light fluctuated rhythmically in intensity.

Then, apparently coming from between those two eerie balls of green fire, I heard a masculine voice in strong, well-modulated tones and speaking perfect English.

Because of the nervous tension I was under at that moment, amounting almost to a state of shock, it is impossible for me to give a verbatim account of the conversation which followed. The invisible speaker obviously was endeavoring to choose words and phrases which I could understand, but there were several things which even now are not clear to me. I can only make a poor approximation of the gist of his words.

I do, however, remember the first words spoken which were: “Don’t be afraid, Orfeo, we are friends!” Then the voice requested that I get out of my car and “Come out here.” Mechanically, I pushed open the car door and got out. I didn’t feel fear, but I was so weak and shaky that I could scarcely stand. I leaned against the front fender of my car and looked at the twin pulsating circular objects hovering a short distance in front of me.

The glowing disks created a soft illumination, but I could see no person anywhere. I
remember vaguely that the voice spoke again calling me by my full name in words of
greeting. It further stated that the small green disks were instruments of transmission
and reception comparable to nothing developed on earth. Then the voice added that
through the disks I was in direct communication with friends from another world.

There was a pause and I dimly remember thinking that I should say something, but I
was stunned into utter silence. I could only stare in fascination at those fantastic balls of
green fire and wonder if I had lost my mind.

When the voice spoke again I heard these startling words: “Do you remember your
eighteen balloons and the mold cultures that you lost in the skies back in New Jersey,
Orfeo?” I was astounded to hear the strange voice recalling an incident out of the past
which had happened so long ago that I had almost forgotten it. “Yes …. yes sir, I do!”

“Do you also remember the strange, wingless craft that appeared to be observing your
activities?”

Suddenly the entire scene came back to me crystal clear in memory. I remember Mabel,
my wife, my father-in-law and our friends and neighbors with me as we stared at that
strange, disk-shaped object in the sky. I recalled how the object had appeared to follow
the balloons bearing my precious cultures of Aspergillus Clavatus mold. I had been
quite an experimenter in those days. It was then it dawned upon me that the fluorescent
disks were similar in shape and behaved in the same erratic manner as had that
mysterious craft back in New Jersey. The only difference was that I had seen the craft in
daylight when it glistened like metal whereas the disks glowed in the darkness.

“You do remember us, Orfeo,” the golden voice stated. “We were observing your efforts
that day as we have watched you since then.”

Like with Maxwell, these beings employed the very direct and personal “do you remember…”
method to quickly prove their superhuman awareness about those whom they address. Due to their
monitoring and telepathic abilities, they may come across as omniscient.

The twin disks were spaced about three feet apart. Now the area between them began to
glow with a soft green light which gradually formed into a luminous three-dimensional
screen as the disks themselves faded perceptibly. Within the luminous screen there
appeared images of the heads and shoulders of two persons, as though in a cinema
close-up. One was the image of a man and the other of a woman. I say man and woman
only because their outlines and features were generally similar to men and women. But
those two figures struck me as being the ultimate of perfection. There was an impressive
nobility about them; their eyes were larger and much more expressive and they
emanated a seeming radiance that filled me with wonder.

Even more confusing was the troubling thought somewhere in the back of my mind that
they were oddly familiar. Strangely enough, the projected images of the two beings
appeared to be observing me. For they looked directly at me and smiled; then their eyes
looked about as though taking in the entire scene.

I had the uncomfortable feeling as they studied me that they knew every thought in my
mind; everything I’d ever done and a vast amount about me that I didn’t even know
myself. Intuitively, I sensed that I stood in a kind of spiritual nakedness before them.
Also, I seemed to be in telepathic communication with them, for thoughts,
understandings and new comprehensions that would have required hours of conversation to transmit, flashed through my consciousness. Before those two incredible Beings I felt that I was only a shadow of the shining reality I sensed them to be. It is difficult to express my feelings in words, for my understanding of them through intuitive perception.

The large eyes, notable physiognomy and physique, peculiar radiance, and telepathic intensity are details that didn’t become generally accepted in alienology regarding these alien types until decades later. In a subsequent incident, Angelucci goes further into their appearance and nature:

As I cut across the vacant lots the Hyperion Avenue Freeway Bridge loomed huge and dark ahead of me. The sky was overcast and the dense, oblique shadows from the vast concrete structure were heavier and more eerie than usual. Yet in the shadows of the dark archways of the bridge I had come to feel a kind of warmth and welcome, a spiritual communion with a vastly greater and more kindly world. For it was in the shadows of the huge bridge that I had come upon the saucer which had carried me out of this world.

I was thinking of these things when I suddenly became aware of someone approaching from out of the darkness. I was startled for I’d never before met anyone taking the short-cut beneath the bridge so late at night. I was about to call out a word of greeting when it dawned upon me that the stranger was coming from the dead end of the bridge. My first thought was that someone was lying in wait for me, possibly to rob me. But before I could become alarmed, I heard the stranger call: “Greetings, Orfeo!”

My heart almost stopped beating, for immediately I recognized the vibrant, beautiful voice of the being who had spoken to me in the saucer. I stopped in my tracks, utterly speechless, and stared at the approaching figure. But then a wave of joy and gratitude flooded over me, and I finally replied falteringly: “Greetings … to you …”

He laughed pleasantly. “I know that in your mind you have given me a name — I who have remained nameless to you,” he said gently. “You may call me by that name, Orfeo — it is as good as any other and has more inner significance to you than any name I might give you.”

“He laughed pleasantly. “I know that in your mind you have given me a name — I who have remained nameless to you,” he said gently. “You may call me by that name, Orfeo — it is as good as any other and has more inner significance to you than any name I might give you.”

“Neptune . . .” I spoke the name slowly and reverently. For it was indeed the name I had given to this great and mysterious being. Then I added: “At last you have come to give me strength and faith.”

These beings conceal their real names and identities, that much is invariant. When pressed, they might give simple symbolic nicknames drawn from our mythology, planets, stars, and constellations to convey the gist of what they are about. Even on an individual level this might apply; for example, a female member might use the alias “Andromeda” if she is burdened by punitive limitations, just as Andromeda was chained to a stone in Greek mythology.

He was near enough then for me to see that he was several inches taller than I and similar in outline to a well-built man. But the shadows were so heavy that I couldn’t make out the details of his figure. But just to be in his presence once more was to sense again a tremendous uplifting wave of strength, harmony, joy and serenity.

“Come, Orfeo,” he said gently, continuing on past me. “We have many things to discuss tonight.” I followed him as he strode ahead of me through the dense shadows. I could
hear his solid footsteps upon the graveled path which convinced me beyond the shadow of a doubt that he was no phantom or illusion.

He led me to a better lighted area near the bend of Glendale Boulevard where it goes up and over the bridge. I was actually trembling in anticipation of my first actual look at the mysterious visitor from another world.

When he turned I saw his face, the same wonderful, expressive countenance I had seen on the luminous screen. I again noticed especially his extremely large, dark and expressive eyes and nobility and beauty of his features which actually seemed to radiate warmth and kindliness.

Then I noticed that he was wearing a kind of uniform, bluish in color, perfectly tailored and tightly fitted to the outlines of his body. But it was apparently without seams, buttons, pockets, trimmings or design of any sort. In fact it fitted so perfectly that it was almost like a part of his body.

But as I studied him I became aware of an astonishing phenomenon: I could see his uniform and figure clearly, but it wavered occasionally, as though I were viewing it through rippling water. And the color did not remain solid and uniform, but varied and changed in spots, which reminded me of an imperfectly tuned television set. Only his face and hands remained immobile and stable as though not partially obscured by a film of rippling water. […]

For a time he was silent and I was acutely conscious of a tremendous vibrational field about him; a tangible emanation of serenity, brotherly love, and ineffable joy. At last he said: “You sense and understand intuitively many things I cannot say directly to you, Orfeo. You have just fully realized that we are not like earthmen in that we function in dimensions unknown to your world. Earth is a three-dimensional world and because of this it is preponderantly false. I may tell you that to the entities of certain other worlds Earth is regarded as ‘the accursed planet’, the ‘home of the the reprobate, fallen ones’. Others call your Earth ‘the home of sorrows’. For Earth’s evolution is evolution through pain, sorrow, sin, suffering and the illusion of physical death. Believe me, all evolutions are not similar to Earth’s, despite the present beliefs of your scientists.”

As I heard these strange words, my heart and mind cried out: “But why must it be so? Why should Earth’s people know pain, suffering and death?”

But soon my attention was distracted once more as I saw the figure of Neptune strangely “waver” again. Suddenly the question was in my mind: “Was he really there in the truest physical sense, or was he an immaterial projection into the physical world from another dimension? Did I see him in his true form and ordinary state of being, or merely a projected approximation of a man’s appearance?” These strange thoughts frightened me a little and carried me into too deep waters.

A reassuring smile lighted his face. “Don’t be alarmed, Orfeo. The answer to the troublesome question in your mind is both yes and no. On Earth form, color, individuality and the material aspect of things is all-important. In our world these illusions are of practically no importance at all. Suffice to say that for you I am an approximation of myself as I really am. I can’t make it any clearer in three-dimensional terms.”
Unlike the comic-book Venusians of George Adamski, Angelucci’s depiction more closely matches the findings of modern alienology, though that is not to say his books were free of embellishment or fictionalization, or that Angelucci wasn’t duped by customized “virtual reality scenarios” projected into his mind by telepathic beings. Rather, what elements of truth can be sifted from his books were far ahead of their time — so far ahead that, because novel truth is never as exciting as science fiction, Angelucci never received the level of attention afforded to charlatans.

This final excerpt further underscores the idea that human-like aliens walk among us undetected:

It was around six o’clock and the streets heavy with traffic. Parking my car, I walked toward the bus terminal. It too was bustling with activity. In all of the excitement, flying saucers and space visitors were the farthest things from my mind. But as I entered the front door of the bus terminal I stopped in my tracks and stared, unable to believe my eyes. Directly in front of me and facing the news stand was a familiar face. I knew I couldn’t be mistaken — it was Neptune!

He glanced up and his dark eyes told me that he was expecting me. He was dressed in an ordinary dark business suit and carried a brief case under his arm. A dark blue felt hat with snap brim shaded his eyes. […]

His intent gaze never left me. Stalling for time I walked over to the newsstand and picked up a magazine and thumbed through it. I had received the definite telepathic impression not to approach him; thus I waited for him to speak to me. But he did not. Staring blankly at a page in the magazine I waited for further telepathic communication. It came! The gist of the message was: “The last time you saw me, Orfeo, I was in a less objectified projection in your three-dimensional world. The purpose being to give you some idea of our true aspect. But now tonight you see me fully objectified. If you did not know who I am, you could not tell me from one of your fellows. Tonight I am no half-phantom, but can move among men as an Earthman. It is not necessary for you to speak to me; you have gained the understanding. You know now that we can appear and function as human beings.”

Travis Walton

On the subject of superhumans in bodysuits, recall one of the most famous alien encounters of all, that of Travis Walton on November 5, 1975. The movie “Fire in the Sky” based on his story was an inaccurate Hollywood fictionalization of his experiences aboard the alien ship. Here is a portion from the actual experience:

Trembling, I sat down on the hard surface of the chair. I put my hand onto the molded T-grip of the lever. The handle was slightly small for my hand. The whole chair seemed a little too small. I rotated the handle of the lever forward, feeling the slow, fluid resistance of it. I felt suddenly disoriented as the stars began moving downward in front of me, in unison. Quickly I pulled my hand off the lever, which returned to its original vertical position. The stars stopped moving, but remained where they were when I released the lever.

If this thing is flying, I could crash it or throw it off course and get lost or something! I resolved not to tamper with those controls anymore. I might escalate a desperate situation into a fatal disaster.

I got out of the chair and walked to the edge of the room. As I did, the stars faded out
and the surfaces of the wall, ceiling, and floor came into sight. I moved over to one of the rectangles resembling closed doors. I searched the edges for a sign of a switch or an opening mechanism. Seeing none, I put my eye to the crack; I could not see any light. I looked around for some kind of symbol or writing that would help me figure out where I was or how to get out of there. None.

I walked back to the chair and stood beside it, looking at the buttons. I was thinking about pushing some of them, when I heard a faint sound. I whirled around and looked at the door. There, standing in the open doorway, was a human being!

I stood frozen to the spot. He was a man about six feet two inches tall. His helmeted head barely cleared the doorway. He was extremely muscular and evenly proportioned. He appeared to weigh about two hundred pounds. He wore a tight-fitting bright blue suit of soft material like velour. His feet were covered with black boots, a black band or belt wrapped around his middle. He carried no tools or weapons on his belt or in his hands; no insignia marked his clothing.

I ran up to him, exclaiming, babbling all sorts of questions. The man remained silent throughout my verbal barrage. I was worried by his silence. He took me firmly but gently by the arm and gestured for me to go with him. He led me out of that room and hurried me down the narrow hallway, pulling me along behind him due to its narrowness.

He stopped in front of a closed doorway that slid open, into the wall. I did not see what caused it to open. The door opened into a bare room so small it was more like a foyer or section of hallway. The door slid shut quickly and silently behind us. Again I attempted to talk to the man as we stood there. No answer.

We spent approximately two minutes in the metal cubicle, no more than seven by five by twelve feet. Then a doorway, the same size as the other door and directly opposite it, slid open. […]

I descended a short, steep ramp seven or eight feet to the floor. I looked around to discover that, although I was outside that dim, humid craft, I was not out-of-doors. I was in a huge room. The ceiling was sectioned into alternating rectangles of dark metal and those that gave off light. The ceiling itself curved down to form one of the larger walls in the room. The room was shaped like one-quarter of a cylinder laid on its side. […]

The man escorted me across the open floor to a door that opened silently and quickly from the middle outward. We were in a hallway about six feet wide, illuminated from the eight-foot-high ceiling, which was one long panel of softly diffused light. The hallway was straight and perhaps eighty feet long. Closed double doors were distributed along the corridor.

At the end of the hallway, another pair of double doors. I watched closely this time. I did not see him touch anything, but again the doors slid silently back from the middle. We entered a white room approximately fifteen feet square, with another eight-foot-high ceiling. The room had a table and a chair in it. But my interest was immediately focused on the three other humans!

Two men and a woman were standing around the table. They were all wearing velvety blue uniforms like the first man’s, except that they had no helmets. The two men had the
same muscularity and the same masculine good looks as the first man. The woman also had a face and figure that was the epitome of her gender. They were smooth-skinned and blemishless. No moles, freckles, wrinkles, or scars marked their skin. The striking good looks of the man I had first met became more obvious on seeing them all together. They shared a family-like resemblance, although they were not identical.

“Would somebody please tell me where I am?” I implored. I was still utterly shaken from my encounter with those awful creatures. “What in hell is going on? What is this place?”

They didn’t answer me. They only looked at me, though not unkindly. One man and the woman came around the table, approaching me. Silently they each took me by an arm and led me toward the table. I didn’t know why I should cooperate with them. They wouldn’t even tell me anything. But I was in no position to argue, so I went along at first.

They lifted me easily onto the edge of the table. I became wary and started protesting. “Wait a minute. Just tell me what you are going to do!”

I began to resist them, but all three began pushing me gently backward down onto the table. I looked up at the ceiling, covered with panels of softly glowing white light with a faint blue cast.

I saw that the woman suddenly had an object in her hand from out of nowhere — it looked like one of those clear, soft plastic oxygen masks, only there were no tubes connected to it. The only thing attached to it was a small black golfball-sized sphere.

She pressed the mask down over my mouth and nose. I started to reach up to pull it away. Before I could complete the motion, I rapidly became weak. Everything started turning gray. Then there was nothing at all but black oblivion … (link)

Unlike the movie, the real experience involved Nordics in blue suits. Apparently he had stumbled upon one of their ships in the woods, gotten too close and was injured by an energy discharge. This accident forced them to take him aboard for treatment and recovery, thus his conspicuous absence for several days and their saying nothing to him during his stay.

If anyone thinks such encounters are strictly modern military psyop inventions, keep in mind that anomalous craft sightings have occurred throughout the centuries, long before the Military Industrial Complex came into existence. Consider the UFO Battle of Nuremberg in 1561 or the Mystery Airship Encounters of the late 1800s. See John Keel’s book “Operation Trojan Horse” and William Bramley’s book “The Gods of Eden” for more examples.

**Emmanuel Swedenborg**

Brainy telepathic humanoids in blue bodysuits aren’t new to the 20th century either. Emanuel Swedenborg (1688 – 1772) was an eminent inventor and scientist who began having dreams and visions in which he interacted with various spirits and beings from other realms, similar to Robert Monroe’s astral journeys. In some of these travels, Swedenborg came in contact with beings from other planets in the solar system, or what he assumed were such. From “Earths in the Universe” (1758), here is how he describes the “spirits of Mercury”:
Some spirits came to me, and it was declared from heaven, that they were from the earth [planet] which is nearest to the sun, and which in our earth is called by the name of the planet Mercury. Immediately on their coming, they sought from my memory what I knew. Spirits can do this most dexterously, for when they come to man, they see in his memory all things contained therein.

It was told me, that such is the life of the inhabitants of that earth, namely, that they have no concern about things terrestrial and corporeal, but only about the statutes, laws, and forms of government, of the nations therein; also about the things of heaven, which are innumerable. And I was further informed, that many of the men of that earth speak with spirits, and that thence they have the knowledges of spiritual things, and of the states of life after death; and thence also their contempt of things corporeal and terrestrial.

The spirits of Mercury, above all other spirits, possess the knowledges of things, as well respecting this solar system, as respecting the earths which are in the starry heavens; and what they have once acquired to themselves, that they retain, and also recollect as often as anything similar occurs. Hence also it may appear manifest, that spirits have memory, and that it is much more perfect than the memory of men; and further, that what they hear, see, and apperceive, they retain, and especially such things as delight them, as these spirits are delighted with the knowledges of things.

They are averse to vocal speech, because it is material; wherefore when I conversed with them without intermediate spirits, I could only do it by a species of active thought.

The spirits of the earth Mercury do not abide long in one place, or within companies of the spirits of one world, but wander through the universe. The reason is, because they have relation to the memory of things, which memory must be continually enriched. Hence it is granted them to wander about, and to acquire to themselves knowledges in every place. During their sojourning in this manner, if they meet with spirits who love material things, that is, things corporeal and terrestrial, they avoid them, and betake themselves where they do not hear such things.

In consequence of their knowledges, the spirits of Mercury are more proud than others; wherefore they were told, that although they knew innumerable things, yet there are infinite things which they do not know; and that if their knowledges should increase to eternity, the notice even of all general things would still be unattainable. They were told likewise of their pride and elation of mind, and that this is unseemly; but they replied, that it is not pride, but only a glorying by reason of the faculty of their memory; thus they were able to excuse their faults.

I was desirous to know what kind of face and body the men in the earth Mercury had, whether they were like the men on our earth. There was then presented before my eyes a woman exactly resembling the women in that earth. She had a beautiful face, but it was smaller than that of a woman of our earth; her body also was more slender, but her height was equal; she wore on her head a linen cap, which was put on without art, but yet in a manner becoming. A man also was presented to view, who was more slender in body than the men of our earth are. He was clad in a garment of dark blue color, closely fitted to his body, without any foldings or protuberances. It was said that such was the form of body and such the dress of the men of that earth. Afterwards there was presented to view a species of their oxen and cows, which indeed did not differ much from those on our earth, but were smaller, and in some degree approached to species of
hinds and deer.

They were also asked about the sun of the world, how it appears from their earth. They said that it appears large, and larger there than when seen from other earths, and they said they knew this from the ideas of other spirits concerning the sun. They said further that they enjoy a middle temperature, neither too hot nor too cold. (link)

The affiliation with Mercury is probably more symbolic than literal. Mercury relates to Hermes and thus hermeticism, one of the esoteric knowledge streams they have given to humans, to their being intermediaries or messengers of the Gods, to their association with etheric energy called “Mercury” in Alchemy, and to planet Mercury’s closeness to the Sun symbolizing their closeness to the Logos. The later identification of Nordic aliens with Venus may relate to its signifier as the “Morning Star,” code name for Lucifer the bringer of light, which hearkens back to the idea of Fallen Angels and the Lucifer Rebellion.

The Comte de Gabalis

A century before Swedenborg, esoteric scholar Abby de Villars wrote an expose on the Rosicrucian practice of intermarrying with otherworldly females. Anonymously published in 1670, “The Comte de Gabalis” (The Count of Cabala) is one of the more intriguing of arcane sources pertaining to superhuman interactions with humans. Familiar to students of Rosicrucianism and Alchemy but lesser known to researchers of alienology, the book is full of anecdotes from esoterica and ancient history about the role these beings have played in our history. The work consists of five discourses between the author and a mysterious Rosicrucian initiate who revealed to him one of the society’s most closely guarded secrets: that human spiritual elite have been intimately consorting with otherworldly beings.

After its publication, de Villars was assassinated by ritual dagger, though some say he faked his death in order to disappear from the mainstream world, as all true Rosicrucian initiates must do. Either he was a genuine antagonist of the Rosicrucians and was killed for betraying a secret, or else he was an initiate who placed key knowledge into the public domain by veiling it in the form of sarcastic satire.

The immense space which lies between Earth and Heaven has inhabitants far nobler than the birds and insects. These vast seas have far other hosts than those of the dolphins and whales; the depths of the earth are not for the moles alone; and the Element of Fire, nobler than the other three, was not created to remain useless and empty.

The air is full of an innumerable multitude of Peoples, whose faces are human, seemingly rather haughty, yet in reality tractable, great lovers of the sciences, cunning, obliging to the Sages, and enemies of fools and the ignorant. Their wives and daughters have a masculine beauty like that of the Amazons.

The earth is filled well-nigh to its centre with Gnomes, people of slight stature, who are the guardians of treasures, minerals and precious stones. They are ingenious, friends of man and easy to govern. They furnish the Children of the Sages with all the money they require, and as the price of their service ask naught save the glory of being commanded. The Gnomides, their wives, are small but very amiable, and their dress is exceedingly curious.
Hear me to the end and know that the seas and rivers are inhabited as well as the air. The ancient Sages called this race of people Undines or Nymphs. There are very few males among them but a great number of females; their beauty is extreme, and the daughters of men are not to be compared to them.

As for the Salamanders, flaming dwellers of the Region of Fire, they serve the Philosophers, but do not seek their company eagerly, and their daughters and wives. The Salamander women are beautiful, more beautiful even than any of the others, since they are of a purer Element. I had not intended to speak about them, and was passing briefly over the description of these Peoples since you will see them yourself at your leisure, and with ease if you have the curiosity to do so. You will see their dresses, their food, their manners, their customs and their admirable laws.

Here the Comte speaks of superior beings who look human but inhabit a parallel reality normally invisible to our senses. He divides these beings into four categories according to the elements. In occultism they are known as elemental beings, but there is a difference between actual elemental beings, which are just etheric thought forms that accompany the forces of nature, and tangible superhuman aliens who may symbolically associate themselves with the elements. The book, or Rosicrucianism in general, does not distinguish between immaterial thoughtforms like elementals, incubi, and succubi, and the transcendent but otherwise flesh-and-blood aliens discussed in this article. Both categories reside by default beyond our perceptions and seem to operate by occult laws, both can appear human (at least to the mind’s eye), and both can engage humans in personal interaction, but unlike aliens, the etheric thoughtforms lack physical bodies, technology, and genetic signatures; they cannot bear hybrid children or contribute to our gene pool. Humanoid aliens are also more complex, tangible, self-aware, and well-rounded compared to the simple entitized constructs of the etheric and astral realms. And just as etheric thoughtforms can take the guise of dead relatives, celebrities, or worshipped deities, so can they take on the appearance of aliens, but that doesn’t make them identically alien. They are just chimeras bent on acquiring energy and control for reasons of self-expansion and propagation.

Alienologists are mistaken when they view accounts of djinn, succubi, incubi, etc… exclusively as encounters with aliens, and likewise occultists and theologists are mistaken in thinking of aliens as mere demons, elementals, or djinn. Thought forms and aliens are two separate categories of life that are related but not mutually exclusive.

The beauty of their intellects will charm you even more than that of their bodies, yet one cannot help pitying these unfortunates when they tell one that their souls are mortal, and that they have no hope whatever of eternal enjoyment of the Supreme Being, of Whom they have knowledge and Whom they worship reverently. They will tell you that they are composed of the purest portions of the Element in which they dwell, and that they have in them no impurities whatever, since they are made of but one Element. Therefore they die only after several centuries; but what is time in comparison with eternity? They must return for ever into nothingness. This thought grieves them deeply, and we have utmost difficulty in consoling them.

Our Fathers the Philosophers, when speaking with God face to face, complained to Him of the unhappiness of these Peoples, and God, whose mercy is boundless, revealed to them that it was not impossible to find a remedy for this evil. He inspired them to the realization that just as man, by the alliance which he has contracted with God, has been
made a participant in Divinity, so the Sylphs, Gnomes, Nymphs, and Salamanders, by
the alliance which they have it in their power to contract with man, can become
participants in immortality. Thus a Nymph or a Sylphid becomes immortal and capable
of the Beatitude to which we aspire when she is so happy as to marry a Sage; and a
Gnome or a Sylph ceases to be mortal the moment he espouses one of our daughters.

Marvel at the extent of the philosophical felicity. Instead of women, whose feeble
allurements fade in a few days and are succeeded by horrible wrinkles, the Sages
possess beauties who never grow old and whom they have the glory of rendering
immortal. Imagine the love and gratitude of these invisible mistresses and the ardour
wherewith they strive to please the charitable Philosopher who applies himself to their
immortalisation.

The Rosicrucians were convinced out of pity and mutual benefit to mate with these beings and
thereby gift them immortality, else these beings would die forever. That sounds more like a
persuasive excuse than the actual truth, just as today’s abductees are told that their participation in
the hybrid breeding program is an opportunity to save the human race. They do seem to need us, but
the reasons may be other than they claim.

The Sages are far from believing that the Devil ever had power to make himself
worshipped. He is too wretched and too weak ever to have had such pleasure and
authority. But he has had power to persuade these Hosts of the Elements to show
themselves to men, and to cause temples to be erected in their honour; and by virtue of
the natural dominion which each one of these Peoples has over the Element in which it
dwells, they kept troubling the air and the sea, shaking the earth and scattering the fire
of heaven at their own good pleasure. Thus they had little difficulty in causing
themselves to be mistaken for divinities so long as the Sovereign Being neglected the
salvation of the nations.

This is the central thesis of the ancient astronaut theory, that nonhuman beings posed as divinities to
the ancients and held centers of worship. Egypt and Mesopotamia are examples. The founders of
the Egyptian civilization were thought divine, and each was worshipped in his or her respective
temple. After their death or departure, succeeding generations of pharaohs modeled themselves after
these “gods” and were hailed as divine; some may have been hybrids or descendants of hybrids, and
some dynasties may have had more alien DNA than others, the 18th Dynasty with Akhenaten in
particular.

A certain Philosopher, with whom a Nymph was engaged in an intrigue of immortality,
was so disloyal as to love a woman. As he sat at dinner with his new paramour and
some friends, there appeared in the air the most beautiful leg in the world. The invisible
sweetheart greatly desired to show herself to the friends of her faithless lover, that they
might judge how wrong he was in preferring a woman to her. Afterward the indignant
Nymph killed him on the spot.

I confess that their tenderness is apt to be somewhat violent. But if exasperated women
have been known to murder their perjured lovers, we must not wonder that these
beautiful and faithful mistresses fly into a passion when they are betrayed, and all the
more so since they only require men to abstain from women whose imperfections they
cannot tolerate, and give us leave to love as many of their number as we please.

It stands to reason that if they look similar to humans and have compatible biology, then they can
have similar emotional weaknesses depending on the spiritual maturity of each member. Despite romantic idealizations by contactees, they are not perfect beings; they may be superhuman by our low standards, but they still have their own set of psychological faults, emotional weaknesses, and physical limitations.

They prefer the interest and immortality of their companions to their personal satisfaction, and they are very glad to have the Sages give to their Republic as many immortal children as possible.

Compare this to what Eschenbach wrote, “As I say, maidens are given away from the Grail openly, men in secret, in order to have progeny (as God can well instruct them), in the hope that these children will return to serve the Grail and swell the ranks of its Company.”

The renowned Hercule and the invincible Alexander were sons of the greatest of the Sylphs. Not knowing this, the historians said that Jupiter was their father. They spoke the truth for, as you have learned, these Sylphs, Nymphs and Salamanders set themselves up for divinities. The historians, believing them to be so, called all those who were born of them ‘Children of the Gods.’ Such was the divine Plato, the most divine Apollonius of Tyana, Hercules, Achilles, Sarpedon, the pious Æneas, and the celebrated Melchizedek.

What would your Doctor say to this authentic account of a recent occurrence in Spain? A beautiful Sylphid was beloved by a Spaniard, lived with him for three years, presented him with three fine children and then died. Shall one say that she was a devil? A clever answer that! According to what Natural Philosophy can the Devil organise for himself a woman’s body, conceive, bear children and suckle them? What proof is there in Scripture of the extravagant power which your theologians are forced in this instance to accord the Devil? And with what probable reason can their feeble Natural Philosophy supply them? The Jesuit Delrio in good faith naïvely recounts several of these adventures, and without taking the trouble to give physical explanations, extricates himself by saying that those Sylphids were demons. How true it is that your greatest doctors very often know no more than silly women!

If you should be told, for example, that the divine Apollonius of Tyana was immaculately conceived, and that one of the noblest Salamanders descended to immortalise himself with his mother, you would call that Salamander a demon and you would give the Devil the glory of fathering one of the greatest men who ever sprang from our Philosophic marriages.

When you read that the celebrated Merlin was immaculately conceived by a nun, daughter of a king of Great Britain, and that he foretold the future more clearly than Tyresias, do not say with the masses that he was the son of an incubus devil, because there never have been any; nor that he prophesied through the assistance of devils, since according to the Holy Cabala devil is the most ignorant of all beings. Rather say with the Sages that the English Princess was consoled in her retirement by a Sylph who took pity on her, that he diverted her with his attentions, that he knew how to please her, and that Merlin, their son, was brought up by the Sylph in all knowledge, and learned from him to perform the many wonders which English history relates of him.

It’s known in alienology that hybrid children seeded in human families become extraordinary individuals. This is the most direct way that the parallel superhuman civilization influences ours, by
inserting their own into our society. The aperture of human birth allows a level of influence otherwise barred by metaphysical decree. The Comte claims that the most powerful and influential heroes of history were hybrid offspring. As Eschenbach said, when the Grail members mate with humans, “They receive handsome children of high degree.”

On the subject of human-alien interbreeding, a more modern example is the abduction of Antonio Villas Boas in 1957:

At the time of his alleged abduction, Antonio Villas Boas was a 23-year-old Brazilian farmer who was working at night to avoid the hot temperatures of the day. On October 16, 1957, he was ploughing fields near São Francisco de Sales when he saw what he described as a “red star” in the night sky. According to his story, this “star” approached his position, growing in size until it became recognizable as a roughly circular or egg-shaped aerial craft, with a red light at its front and a rotating cupola on top. The craft began descending to land in the field, extending three “legs” as it did so. At that point, Boas decided to run from the scene.

According to Boas, he first attempted to leave the scene on his tractor, but when its lights and engine died after traveling only a short distance, he decided to continue on foot. However, he was seized by a 1.5 m (five-foot) tall humanoid, who was wearing grey coveralls and a helmet. Its eyes were small and blue, and instead of speech it made noises like barks or yelps. Three similar beings then joined the first in subduing Boas, and they dragged him inside their craft.

Once inside the craft, Boas said that he was stripped of his clothes and covered from head-to-toe with a strange gel. He was then led into a large semicircular room, through a doorway that had strange red symbols written over it. (Boas claimed that he was able to memorize these symbols and later reproduced them for investigators.) In this room the beings took samples of Boas’ blood from his chin. After this he was then taken to a third room and left alone for around half an hour. During this time, some kind of gas was pumped into the room, which made Boas become violently ill.

Shortly after this, Boas claimed that he was joined in the room by another humanoid. This one, however, was female, very attractive, and naked. She was the same height as the other beings he had encountered, with a small, pointed chin and large, blue catlike eyes. The hair on her head was long and white (somewhat like platinum blonde) but her underarm and pubic hair were bright red. Boas said he was strongly attracted to the woman, and the two had sexual intercourse. During this act, Boas noted that the female did not kiss him but instead nipped him on the chin.

When it was all over, the female smiled at Boas, rubbing her belly and gestured upwards. Boas took this to mean that she was going to raise their child in space. The female seemed relieved that their “task” was over, and Boas himself said that he felt angered by the situation, because he felt as though he had been little more than “a good stallion” for the humanoids.

Boas said that he was then given back his clothing and taken on a tour of the ship by the humanoids. During this tour he said that he attempted to take a clock-like device as proof of his encounter, but was caught by the humanoids and prevented from doing so. He was then escorted off the ship and watched as it took off, glowing brightly. When Boas returned home, he discovered that four hours had passed. Antonio Villas Boas later became a lawyer, married and had four children. He died in 1992, and stuck to the story.
of his alleged abduction for his entire life. (link)

A more recent example is Peter Khoury’s bizarre encounter, as reported by Bill Chalker in *Hard Evidence Magazine*:

Born in 1964, in Lebanon, Peter Khoury migrated to Australia in 1973.

[T]he most striking [encounter] occurred on July 23, 1992, according to diary entries. He had been recovering from head injuries received in a job site assault (he worked in the building industry in his own cement rendering business). At about 7 am, having returned to his Sydney suburban home from the train station, after dropping off his wife, Khoury felt unwell and lay down on the bed to sleep. He awoke with a start sometime later, becoming aware of something alighting on the bed. He was shocked to see two strange women kneeling on the end of his bed. Both were naked. One appeared Nordic and the other Asian. Aspects of their appearance were quite odd. The Nordic female had a very elongated face and a sharply point chin. Her eyes appeared to be blue and 2 to 3 times larger than normal. She had very fine wispy blonde hair that seemed to be oddly blown up. Her skin color was quite light.

The dark brown skinned Asian looking woman seemed to have almost completely black eyes. Her hair was black and set in a firm page-boy style.

Although no normal communication occurred, the Nordic woman seemed to be in charge and Khoury got the impression she was giving the Asian looking woman some sort of instruction. What followed was quite disorientating for Khoury. The Nordic woman, who seemed to be over 6 feet tall and apparently very strong, reached forward and pulled Khoury’s head to her breast. He resisted, trying to pull away.

She did this 3 times. Finally Khoury, trying to cope with the shock and disorientating nature of this experience, bit on her nipple apparently swallowing a piece from it. The Nordic woman, although seemingly confused, did not react with any pain and nor was there any sign of blood. She seemed to convey to the other woman that this was not the way things were supposed to happen. Khoury was overcome with a coughing fit. Moments later, looking up again, he found that both women had vanished.

The coughing caused Khoury to go to the bathroom to get a drink of water. When he went to urinate he found it very painful to do so, due to, it turned out, some very fine blonde hair wrapped tightly under his foreskin. Khoury removed the hair and had the foresight to place it in a plastic sachet bag with a seal. He did that because he felt there was no way it should have been there.

It was unlike his wife’s hair. Khoury concluded that something extraordinarily bizarre had just occurred and linked the 2 pieces of blonde thin hair (about 10-12 cm & 6-8 cm long) to the strange tall, blonde haired Nordic looking woman. [...] It was not until 1996 that I heard from Peter Khoury about the hair sample that had been recovered from what may have been an alien abduction sexual assault case.

By 1998, I began an investigation into the hair sample, when biochemical colleagues agreed to undertake what was the world’s first PCR (polymerase Chain Reaction) DNA profiling of biological material implicated in an alien abduction experience. The analysis confirmed the hair came from someone who was biologically close to normal human genetics, but of an unusual racial type – a rare Chinese Mongoloid type – one of
the rarest human lineages known, that lies further from the human mainstream than any other except for African pygmies and aboriginals.

There was the strange anomaly of it being blonde to clear instead of black, as would be expected from the Asian type mitochondrial DNA. The study concluded, “The most probable donor of the hair must therefore be as (Khoury) claims: a tall blonde female who does not need much color in her hair or skin, as a form of protection against the sun, perhaps because she does not require it.”

The original DNA work was done on the shaft of the hair. Fascinating further anomalies were found in the root of the hair. Two types of DNA were found depending on where the mitochondrial DNA testing occurs, namely confirming the rare Chinese type DNA in the hair shaft and indicating a rare possible Basque/Gaelic type DNA in the root section. […]

The nature of these genetic findings has lead to some interesting possible connections with ancient cultures, myths and archaeological finds such as the strange Taklamakan mummies in China (tall European like peoples (Celtic?), some of whom had blonde hair) and the stories of the female Basque God Mari and the Gaelic Irish tales of the Tuatha da Danann.

The Tuatha tales describe powerful gods with orange or blonde hair and other unusual attributes.

While such cultural and mythic connections are fascinating speculations, they provide for an interesting perspective on the many stories of Nordic type beings implicated in UFO abduction and contact cases. (link)

Bill Chalker makes an astute connection between Nordic aliens and certain human bloodlines, some of whom were seen as demigods by others of their time. There is a deep connection between the two.

One last anecdote is worth mentioning for its occult overtones. From Willy Schroedter’s A Rosicrucian Notebook:

…a 20-year old musician into whose hands there came a book of Latin conjurations of the elemental spirits. A young theological student who was a friend of his translated his find for him and then he undertook the preliminary abstinence from meat, tobacco, alcohol, and women for several months. At the expiry of this period he uttered the prescribed conjurations, upon which ‘two female sylphs appeared to him.’ One was slightly built but the other was very big and tall. Like her companion, she had a mass of golden hair. He asked her if she would be his friend and they began to spend much time together. As the days went by she became more and more substantial; she no longer needed to fascinate him with looks and words but had him in her physical possession. Her love-making became so prolonged and vigorous that she was unable to stand the physical and mental strain. Therefore he decided to part from her, but this was easier said than done and it was only with the assistance of a practical Qabalist that he was able to regain his freedom.” (Schroedter, 168-169).

This episode contains aspects of both alien and succubi encounters. Their becoming more substantial over time until attaining physical form is a trait common to both etheric thoughtforms that gain energy and acquire materiality, and some alien beings who need to synchronize themselves
with our time rate and dimension in order to fully manifest. As I explained in *Timeline Dynamics*, there is a quantum phase factor that must align between two beings for each to experience the other as entirely tangible; this is so for interactions between humans, time travelers, aliens, and beings from other realms. In other words, aliens and thoughtforms both obey some of the same quasi-occult laws regarding the conditions of their manifestation in our physical reality.

Humans can meet these beings halfway by becoming etherically charged. This expands their psychic perception and allows levels of interaction otherwise disallowed. Sometimes this happens automatically, as explained in *UFOs in the Gulf Breeze-Pensacola Area*: “When a human gets around an extra-terrestrial, the enhanced energy/electromagnetic field of the E. T. has the impact of turning up the humans dimmer so that the consciousness is brighter’.”

Traditional esoteric instructions given of invoking or contacting elementals aim to induce this same effect through other means:

> Before getting to know them it was necessary to have one’s eyes cleansed with the universal medicine, and to have special flasks chemically prepared with one or other of the four elements and exposed to the sun’s rays for a month. After these preliminaries, the initiate would see a host of beings of a shining substance, but loosely textured and diaphanous. These beings populate the elements all around us. (Schroedter, quoting *The Comte de Gabalis*).

Of course this refers to the Philosopher’s Stone, or rather its etherically potent precursor, which, when ingested, artificially induces etheric activation and second sight. Other traditional methods for attracting these beings involves long periods of fasting and prayer before uttering an invocation, and/or giving offerings of etheric energy like freshly boiled fruit, cereals, and flowers. The flip side of that practice is the use of blood sacrifices in the invocation of demonic and negative thoughtforms, as discussed in the previous Gnosis articles.

**Persian Origins of Rosicrucianism**

Schroedter goes on to explain the origin of the Rosicrucian knowledge concerning these beings:

> [Christian] Rosencreutz (1378-1484) is known to have brought back to Europe the ceremonial invocations of the planetary spirits and of the star spirits in general which he learned in Arabia and from the natives of Morocco.

Anyway, the knowledge of how to summon the “fairies” (air spirits or sylphs) is also Arabic, and certainly of pre-Rosicrucian origin. In this connection, going backward in time, we have:

1) The Parsifal saga, which has an Arabic source […];

2) The delegation sent by Charlemagne (768-814) to Harun-al-Raschid (763-809) […];

3) The delegation from Pepin the Short (752-768) to Al-Mansur (754-775) […].

As far as the third point is concerned, the saga *Flor und Blancheflor* by the Middle High German poet Konrad Fleck (ca. 1220) is the “expression” of a search carried out in the Orient two generations before Charlemagne, which prepared the way for the Rosicrucian Grail-movement in Christendom.
Under the second named Abbasid Caliph, *abu Giaffar al-Mansur*, the Arabian kingdom reached its greatest extent, but the Persian element was so influential that Frankish documents refer to him as “Rex Persarum” (King of the Persians). The doctrine of the “Peri” is peculiar to the Persians. The word *Peri* comes from the Zendish *pairika* = fairy, and denotes a female spirit in Iranian cosmogony. The Peris, who are beneficent but glorious beings, inhabit the empyrean and subsist on the scent of flowers. They often *alight on the earth in order to have intercourse with men. The issue from such unions is of radiant beauty.* When the Persian poets speak of a lovely human child, they frequently call it a *Perizadeh (= fairy child).*

The *Touks* of Central Asia regard spirits of this type as very powerful. The *Baksas (= witches)* of the Kirghiz-Kazaks (free Kirgheezes between Irlish and the Caspian Sea) often call *on the Peris for help to exorcise Djinns and other evil spirits.*

The Peris have been divided into different groups. In the time of Charlemagne and Pepin, the astral world seems to have drawn especially near.

The Persian element hints at the particular cultural origins of the Grail myth and pretty much all mythological and traditional esoteric knowledge pertinent to demiurgic technology and its role in human history. The Persians were offshoots of an advanced post-Atlantean culture that spawned many others around the globe, the same culture responsible for building the Great Pyramid. This ties into Peter Khoury’s encounter with a Nordic female having a combination of rare Asian and Celtic/Basque genetics.

**Ninth Century Contactees**

This next excerpt concerns a series of events from the time of Charlemagne and Pepin, which gives further indication that the Elementals described in *The Comte de Gabalis* are very likely the humanoid aliens of today.

The famous Cabalist Zedechias, in the reign of your Pépin, took it into his head to convince the world that the Elements are inhabited by these Peoples whose nature I have just described to you. The expedient of which he bethought himself was to advise the Sylphs to show themselves in the Air to everybody; they did so sumptuously. These beings were seen in the Air in human form, sometimes in battle array marching in good order, halting under arms, or encamped beneath magnificent tents. Sometimes on wonderfully constructed aerial ships, whose flying squadrons roved at the will of the Zephyrs. What happened? Do you suppose that ignorant age would so much as reason as to the nature of these marvellous spectacles? The people straightway believed that sorcerers had taken possession of the Air for the purpose of raising tempests and bringing hail upon their crops. The learned theologians and jurists were soon of the same opinion as the masses. The Emperors believed it as well; and this ridiculous chimera went so far that the wise Charlemagne, and after him Louis the Débonnaire, imposed grievous penalties upon all these supposed Tyrants of the Air. You may see an account of this in the first chapter of the Capitularies of these two Emperors.

The Sylphs seeing the populace, the pedants and even the crowned heads thus alarmed against them, determined to dissipate the bad opinion people had of their innocent fleet by carrying off men from every locality and showing them their beautiful women, their Republic and their manner of government, and then setting them down again on earth in divers parts of the world. They carried out their plan. The people who saw these men as they were descending came running from every direction, convinced beforehand that
they were sorcerers who had separated from their companions in order to come and scatter poisons on the fruit and in the springs. Carried away by the frenzy with which such fancies inspired them, they hurried these innocents off to the torture. The great number of them who were put to death by fire and water throughout the kingdom is incredible.

In the account of Zedechias, who lived in the 9th Century, we see similarities to the 1950s contactee phenomenon. Otherworldly beings abduct certain individuals and show them their world before returning them to testify what they have seen. This tends to backfire, the only difference being that modern contactees were burned with ridicule instead of physical flames.

One day, among other instances, it chanced at Lyons that three men and a woman were seen descending from these aerial ships. The entire city gathered about them, crying out that they were magicians and were sent by Grimaldus, Duke of Beneventum, Charlemagne’s enemy, to destroy the French harvests. In vain the four innocents sought to vindicate themselves by saying that they were their own country-folk, and had been carried away a short time since by miraculous men who had shown them unheard-of marvels, and had desired them to give an account of what they had seen. The frenzied populace paid no heed to their defence, and were on the point of casting them into the fire when the worthy Agobard, Bishop of Lyons, who having been a monk in that city had acquired considerable authority there, came running at the noise, and having heard the accusations of the people and the defence of the accused, gravely pronounced that both one and the other were false. That it was not true that these men had fallen from the sky, and that what they said they had seen there was impossible.

The people believed what their good father Agobard said rather than their own eyes, were pacified, set at liberty the four Ambassadors of the Sylphs, and received with wonder the book which Agobard wrote to confirm the judgment which he had pronounced. Thus the testimony of these four witnesses was rendered vain.

Nevertheless, as they escaped with their lives they were free to recount what they had seen, which was not altogether fruitless for, as you will recall, the age of Charlemagne was prolific of heroic men. This would indicate that the woman who had been in the home of the Sylphs found credence among the ladies of that period and that, by the grace of God, many Sylphs were immortalised. Many Sylphids also became immortal through the account of their beauty which these three men gave; which compelled the people of those times to apply themselves somewhat to Philosophy; and thence are derived all the stories of the fairies which you find in the love legends of the age of Charlemagne and of those which followed.

Grail researchers like Johannes W. Stein place the original characters and events of the Grail saga in the 9th Century. As mentioned, the Grail was present in Europe during that time, specifically in France, engendering the tales that were later woven into the Parzival story. Perhaps the Zedechias episode, involving close contact between humans and aliens, had something to do with it. Maybe as in times past, “Neutral Angels” brought it down to earth while war raged in “Heaven.”

Warring Factions

Take note where the Comte says, “These beings were seen in the Air in human form, sometimes in battle array marching in good order, halting under arms, or encamped beneath magnificent tents. Sometimes on wonderfully constructed aerial ships, whose flying squadrons roved at the will of the
Zephyrs.” If this account is true, then “battle array” and “squadrons” suggests they fight battles, including air battles. Thus they are not all unified, of homogenous intentions, or at peace with each other.

Wars among the “gods” is a theme found widely in mythology including the Indian Mahabharata and Ramayana epics where aerial battles are fought using advanced crafts. Modern UFO sightings sometimes include accounts of dogfights among non-terrestrial crafts. And of course, there is the famous Battle of Nuremberg:

In 1561, Hans Glaser documented a strange event on a woodcut for the German Nuremberg Gazette described as hundreds of crosses, globes and tubes fighting each other above the city. Some of the objects were reported to have disappeared into the sun, and others into a thick cloud of smoke after crashing into the ground. Many were said to witness the entire spectacle along with the appearance of a black, spear-like object after the battle. According to the accounts, not only did people of the 16th century witness what seems to be a UFO sky battle, they were also able to distinctly tell which side was winning.

Coupled with the occurrence in Nuremberg, five years later in 1566, citizens of Basel Switzerland witnessed a similar spectacle involving several black orbs engaged in sky battle above. The people of Basel also recorded the event in their city gazette with a woodcut that cannot be traced to a known artist. Accounts claimed the black orbs would sometimes turn red and fiery before fading to nothing. ([link](#))

The Rosicrucian Endgame

In this final excerpt from *The Comte de Gabalis*, the Comte hints at the ultimate endgame:

All these so-called fairies were only Sylphids and Nymphs. Did you ever read those histories of heroes and fairies? […] they would have given you some idea of the state to which the Sages are one day determined to reduce the world. Those heroic men, those love affairs with Nymphs, those voyages to terrestrial paradise, those palaces and enchanted woods and all the charming adventures that happen in them, give but a faint idea of the life led by the Sages and of what the world will be when they shall have brought about the Reign of Wisdom. Then we shall see only heroes born; the least of our children will have the strength of Zoroaster, Apollonius or Melchizedek; and most of them will be as accomplished as the children Adam would have had by Eve had he not sinned with her.

This “Reign of Wisdom”, which ties into the New World Order agenda and what Jordan Maxwell has written concerning the “Dawn of a New Day” will be discussed in my next article. It is the final consequence of demiurgic technology entering the human sphere, the final event over which alien forces and time travelers have been competing since the beginning.

Fore

With all the above in mind, we have a fuller context to appreciate the experiences of a contemporary contactee who calls himself Fore on the (now defunct) Open Minds Forum. Compared to other published contactee stories, his paints a more detailed and realistic picture of what some of these Nordic aliens are like. The fair but necessary number of excerpts to follow are from his thread titled *My Experiences (Grey, Pleiadeans and Oddities)*
The last memory segment the advisor brought back and it is when we first met. I can verify some of the events because I had my mother relay them to me and I referenced the information I saw to what happened.

I am still in the hot space that is dark in my body. Then I feel like something is wrong. Someone tried to pull me out and I hate the cold. I want to stay inside. Then someone grabs me and I feel pain and suddenly I'm in cold air. I felt like crying because I am uncomfortable. I see through very blurry eyes that there are two males and two women with different clothes. I can’t see much because my eyes are blurry. Then I am put to rest on something cold and I hear speech from men asking questions. I don't understand the language they are using. Then I feel people cleaning me up and trying to hold me. I hear laughter and talking and I feel tired. The next thing I remember one of the older men takes me while I am wrapped up in something and I see what looks like a hall. I don’t know what happens next but I wake up or am in an orange box. I feel something nearby. I hear in my mind thoughts that I do not understand. (As i am remembering what I did not understand then I finally understand what was being said.) I hear a woman voice (the advisor) I hear her saying “he should be around here.” I feel a man's thoughts who she is talking with. Then I feel them get closer and suddenly I see a woman in my sight beyond the edges of the box. I stare at her chest. I see a woman with dirty blonde hair at shoulder length. She says “Here he is, This is him, He’s so cute.” She puts out her hands towards me. She seems pleased that she found me from the expressions I feel coming from her.

Her chest is the only clear part I see. Her clothes are amazing. They are like overall’s made of a strange fabric. It looks super real...more real than real. It is like an emerald green or a tinge of teal blue (im not good with colors.) It looks like a weird texture of rubber like fabric and there are shards all over it of different colors like a glitter of some kind only very spectacular. There is an orange/yellow light that shines brightly all around her. Her hair is shoulder long thats dirty blonde. She looks fit like someone who works out but she isn’t bulky. She has the shape of a fit gymnast. Her face is blurry and I cannot see it.

As I am waking up she speaks to me and tells me this is when we first met in this life. She says that and lets me think over everything I have just experienced. I strangely feel for a second like it was exactly what was meant to happen but when I started thinking about it, I started to lose the reason of why it had to happen that way.

I only saw her from the waist up. I don’t remember seeing the man but from his thoughts He was somewhere beyond the plastic but I never got to see him. This was in a Venezuelan hospital off the coast on an island called margarita. If it is true, which I do believe so because I checked with my mom as to what happened during delivery, then the date was February 16, 1981. (Feb 21, 2007, 4:28am)

She brought back memories that I had as a newborn. (it’s in my thread)

As a newborn I remember seeing her physically. I saw a woman whom looked to be fit like a gymnast type body. Wearing a jumpsuit of a very odd nature.

The clothing she had on, looked like a one piece suit that was an emerald green. It looked like it was made of a rubber patterned surface. In it’s “fibers” was something that looked like glitter or sparks of color.
(I know this sounds strange) She looked more Real than “Real”.

Her body looked like a woman who goes to a gym. And a yellow/orange (golden?) light was emitting off her skin. It was bright but it didn’t seem to hurt my eyes.

Her skin color was that of a normal human being. The closest I can compare it to is that of a Californian blond. Her hair was a dirty blond.

Her voice has never changed.

Now below this line is from modern observations.

Her age doesn’t seem to pass 27 from the way she sounds and her appearance physically.

She looks physically fit like always. I saw her several times using second sight (psychic) or when waking up from my deep sleep. (this was during my campaign to get to know her better)

I have heard her physical voice, once, when I was waking up. It was somehow a bit more elegant sounding than her telepathic voice. She stopped singing as soon as I woke up.

Once she showed me asked me to close her eyes when I wouldn’t believe she was physically there. When she brought her face close to mine I suddenly saw in the dark the very detailed features of eyes.

It scared me and left me bewildered. And eventually I noticed (while kissing a family member good bye) that her eyes were larger than that of a human being. I had a family member put their head close to mine to figure out just how big her eyes were….

The first thing I noticed was that the advisors pupil size is larger. And the shape of her eyes is wider. Overall her eyes are about 20% to 50% larger than that of a normal person. (Nov 6, 2007, 4:02pm)

I have noticed other people describing surprisingly similar types of encounters with people like the advisor. They use different words but generally the same concepts.

Some of the matching characteristics is a light emanating from their body. Described as a golden glow. I reported it as yellow and orange-ish light.

I describe a woman who looks like she is healthy thin and in normal proportions. It varies in other depictions.

Generally the clothes are of the same kind. A kind of one piece suit that in mine was a greenish-blue. With a glittering shards of light effects coming of her body. Almost as if she were more than real.

In other accounts I have noticed people call it “sparks”.

So it seems she matches some of the accounts of what a human-like woman ET looks
like.

She claimed her point of origin was of a people with 7 home worlds with 11 surrounding colonies. Her being from the fourth colony. Could this be a lie? Probably.

She never choose to use names, stating that it was pointless to use human names that weren’t even universally agreed on. And she was always shying away when I asked direct questions about her origin. She sometimes made comments that she couldn’t tell me very much about that because there were people who were looking for groups like hers.

She also seemed to be scared or experienced a deep hesitation from my prodding of her identity. Making jokes:

“that for all I knew I might be her great great great grandfather.”

Other times she expressed a deep preoccupation whenever I would write something down about them. Saying expressly that I could not write down things because there were other groups patrolling the future and looking for people like her who were messing around prior to this “acclaimed” aftermath that she claimed would one day occur. (Mar 16, 2008, 7:27pm)

Oh and the advisor taught me some old phrases in english (i havent used them in a long time so forgive me if i don’t remember them at the tip of a hat.). People asked me why I used phrases that were out of date and I told them it was because she sometimes used them when she was feeling lazy or she wasn’t taking things seriously. I asked some old fogies if they knew how old the phrases were but they told me it was older than them. The advisor said that before she came to know me in Venezuela that she was working in florida then texas and then ireland. She told me she learned english there in the last century. Where she was before then she didn’t say. Though now that i think about it I don’t remember her having any accent when she speaks telepathically. (Mar 12, 2007, 10:25am)

These traits should already be familiar: the bodysuit, unusually large eyes, blond hair, and above average physique. The glittering or shimmering suit fabric is reminiscent of Orfeo Angelucci’s observations. According to Fore, the glowing skin may be an energy leakage effect that can occur when a being from another realm downshifts deeply into ours. A kind of “decompression” takes place that causes a release of radiation, which in extreme cases can be harmful to humans. Anecdotally, in ancient lore such beings were sometimes called “The Shining Ones” because “their faces shone like the Sun.”

One of the main things that stuck in my mind today in her long lectures was the fact that she claimed there were various groups on earth with different kinds of associations. She mentioned that the second network and it’s associated sphere of influence was complicated and had a lot of history.

One of the main things she talked about was the earth being divided among the aliens into sections with no particular shape or border affiliations with the earthly national borders (the first network). She mentioned that most of the USA was Grey territory.
Latin America was a mix of different aliens from Grey and her kind along with others being whom she described as having less than human shape and odd supernatural abilities.

She made a point that the world was carved up into alien territories and that they didn’t respect human national borders. She claimed that I would hear of the different varieties of alien types that were present in different regions and in different proportions.

That eventually did seem to be true….

She said that when I was born I was born in one of her peoples territories. I asked her why then if the Grey are supposed to be in charge in the USA is she with me. I then got pretty paranoid that she was a Grey or something. Which she was adamant that she wasn’t one. She reprimanded me repeatedly about being “speciest” and all that.

Anyway, she claimed that not all Grey were “evil” and that while many didn’t have good intentions towards people on earth there were a few who didn’t want to hurt people in general. I scoffed at the idea and mentioned abductions and all that…to which lead to an argument…etc. (for another day and another post)

Tangent:

Years earlier as a young teen (while I was still wondering if she was a spiritual being or some kind of alien or demon) she had explained in rather odd terms that “they” (her people) scan frequently in hospitals for new births. She said they look for individuals who meet certain factors. She said they make note of them and look in on them over the following years after their birth.

When I asked her what kind of factors they look at, she declined to tell me (much to my frustration). She would only tell me that there were over a hundred factors they look at, on an individual basis, and then determine what if any use they have for that person in a “project”.

She said that they also do sweeps in neighborhoods, in 2 to 3 week intervals for newborns. She had said at the time that not all newborns were born at hospitals. (which at the time I didn’t realize was true, since it had never crossed my mind till she mentioned it)

At that time, my understanding of her was, that she was a being of a really strange kind. And to hear those kind of things from her made me deeply paranoid of her intentions. It was always that way till our parting. And to this day I still hold alot of angst, anger, and paranoia in her not being very straight forward when it came to her intentions or identity. Over time I have learned to get over it those feelings.

Tangent over.

She said that when I was moved over to the USA she had to make arrangements with “the others”.
She explained to me in very fine detail at the time that there was a truce of mutual cooperation between “the others” and “her people”. She explained that in order for a project to continue in an opposing factions jurisdiction that there would have to be an understanding and process of introducing a “visitor group”.

She seemed to not like her superiors very much…let me put that out there and be very clear about this.

So she goes on to explain that when I moved from Venezuela to the USA as a baby her group was obligated to enter into a cooperative group relationship with “the others”. (I’ll give the short version).

_________________________________________

She was the “visitor member” in their territory and the males were supposed to be the designated hosts. The home team if you think in baseball terms.

Now she never mentioned at this point that the males were actually Grey! I was completely oblivious but I had my general distrust anyway of the males.

She alluded to the real personalities of the males years before hand and years afterwards. But she would always put restrictions and distractions and endless rules so that I would seemingly never put the pieces of the picture together. Sometimes, I wonder how I could have been so blind. Really!

She would only say things like:

Her superiors would order her to perform tests on me or to retrieve permission from me for tests.

How she didn’t like doing experiments on me and how she disliked her superiors method.

Once, upon asking her if she had any friends in her group; She flatly responded that those whom she works with are just “associates”. That she didn’t have any friends within her group. And that struck me as deeply odd for a few years until I finally saw whom the males were first hand.

_________________________________________

So let me write how she put it in my own words for the sake of my sanity and for the sake of simplicity.

_________________________________________

Simple Summary:

In her case. She found me when I was born in one of her territories. She supposedly had her own group back then.

Then I was moved into an area where her group didn’t have jurisdictions. A territory outside her groups control. So she said she had to talk with “the others” and come to an
agreement to working in a cooperative relationship. (A common thing she said).

Then she said (fuzzy) she was picked from her group to stay with me and she was given permission to work in “the others” territory. “The others” territory in this case is large chunks of the USA according to her.

She was assigned two members from “the others”; three males. I only really ever got to listen to two males cause the third one always seemed busy and far away. Rarely did I get to notice the third one unless they were taking notes as to what I was doing. And the males sound very much alike so its pretty hard to tell them apart. The males seemingly liked to talk one after the other or all at once, which was annoying.

Anyway, She said when that was done, she was considered the visitor member but that she was in control of the project. (me)

She said that the males were her superiors. She said they opted to let her have direct control over me because I kept rejecting them when they tried to make a bond with me (my paraphrased words).

She explained to me in detail that this was how both sides (which she hadn’t yet called it “factions” at this point) dealt with each others projects in their opposing jurisdictions.

The groups who were in opposing factions, with different agendas got to see and spy on each others activities on earth. She said her people got to spy on “the others” and “the others” got to spy on them.

She said that typically when there is a visitor member, the visitor member is supposed to hang back during an abduction or experiment till they are invited or authorized to engage the person or project. (their quaint word for those being experimented or tested on)

She said that I would eventually hear of this. Of aliens who had completely opposing beliefs on things, who would be in each others presence during an abduction. Amazingly, this was true… (Jul 29, 2007, 9:34am)

In Fore’s case, a member of one faction is given a supervised guest position in another, for mutual benefit despite the antagonism between the factions. And indeed, abductee accounts do include mention of polarized presences in the same abduction environment beyond just a “good cop bad cop” trick, which would seem like a contradiction but makes sense if viewed from the context of alien cold war diplomacy. This further shows that alien factions are not all united in harmony, yet blurred lines and complex politics exist between them.

She said she was part of an “academy” (literally) and that she came to the earth (I don’t remember) a while ago. She said she was relatively young compared to her peoples age and therefore was not considered to be very knowledgeable. She said she was roughly 532 years old. The year she told me this escapes me, but I think it was roughly near 2000. Imagine my surprise at the end of our contacts (for a time) that she starts actually telling me about herself. I was to say the least between skeptical and happy. To pull information out of her, about herself, was like pulling teeth (molars mind you).

She said that because of differences in time scape and ?“drift”? in traveling long
distance she was born in 1423 roughly. She said she was approximating roughly when she was born. She said there were 7 home worlds and 11 colony worlds where her people live. She said she was born on the 4th colony world. (she still would not say what she was though) She went on to say that her people live about 3,326 -> 3,332 years on average. She said some gifted people do live up to 7500 years but that it is very rare. I asked her how the hell could she be so old if she sounded pretty young. At this point I started to assume either A) she was lying or B) some entity was mimicking her voice.

She asked me if I wanted to know or not. So I relented and let her continue. She said that on her world when two people fall in love they declare their love for each other. There is no marriage she plainly put it. She said that they also don’t have children like human beings. She said that human beings (forgive her candidness lol) have sex and produce babies in a haphazard way. She said (fuzzy) that when they wanted to have a child they went to a place and picked out the best gene’s for the child. She said they picked the best traits and had children that way. So I was surprised that she was admitting that they genetically engineer. She said yes, that it was a normal thing and that the earth would start doing it soon enough also at it’s current rate.

She said that certain traits were favored than others. Thats why she said certain contactees see them as not varying much. She said the first letter of the father or mothers name is passed on to the child. She said they didn’t really have last names, though there was (fuzzy) a special name they had. She tried many times to tell me her special name but it comes out garbled and I can’t make sense of it. Though it never changed in the many years I knew her. The garbled name sounds exactly the same many years later. So I know it’s not my imagination. She said the family tree has a suffix that is added to the end of the name. I wont say her name, because she told me then alot of psychics will try to contact her and she will have to ignore them.

She said their family structures were much different than those on earth. She (confused me alot) said that they pick more than one mate and that there isn’t a single union. Though she said it sometimes happens. (I think I skipped alot right here because i don’t remember clearly.) She said that when the children are born they are raised and at the age of 8 there is a ritual they perform in their society where the child’s rate of growth is slowed down significantly. She said at that age the children go to school. She said she learned in school for about 117 years (fuzzy, i think that, or 111 years) . She said they also absorb information at a very quick pace compared to human beings. She said she could learn one of my books in about a weeks time. I was surprised. She reminded me of the movie with travolta…“phenomenon”?

She said that when they relax they put on different clothes. I asked her what clothes? And she said they are naked underneath but they have a white robe on top with something about the shoulder pads (she showed me an image). She said she had an important man in her life already and had already had 3 girls.

I met them years earlier as a teenager. I was introduced to 2 teenage-like girls out of the blue. I think I must have been 13? The girls had the signature of a “uber human” (this was not coined back then) and they felt, spoke like, and sounded like teenagers. They seemed extremely similar. She out of the blue announced that they were her children, that if i wanted to meet them. Here, I was, wondering if spirits could have children (I didn’t assume her to be an alien back then). The girls gave me funny eyes and looks. They spoke to me like they were checking me out in a funny way.
They were nice but seemed to be very, very smart. I doubt they were young by human standards though. I thought maybe the advisor (unnamed as of then) was joking or something. The girls looked at me now that I think about it with an eye like they were checking out moms new boyfriend?? . They left after about an hour, after asking me alot of questions.

She said that she joined an academy a while back. She said there they taught her a few things here on the earth. She said she had already 4 to 7 contacts already. She said 4 Major ones if I remember correctly and 3 minor temporary ones. She admitted to me that she was different from her people (insinuations). She said that she was punished in about the 1800’s because there was a man who she fell in love with and that the man rejected her for some reason. She said she fell in love with him and that (didn’t explain but she seemed pained) the man rejected her. She said she was slighted (read: angry) and started to somehow torture him; and because of her actions she said it lead to his accidental death. She said since then she was heavily restricted from using her abilities and from showing herself.

Other beings, who had the same uber human signature, said that the advisor was special. They said that she was capable of….having an emotional bond similar to a human being and that made her “very compatible”. The advisor over the years admitted that she had a marked past and that she sometimes felt isolated from her own kind because they looked at her as different. She said that having that gift to empathy? and connect with a person like a human being was somehow looked down upon. She told me many times that her superiors did not like the things she did. That she bonded too much or that she was lenient with me. (Feb 19, 2007, 10:58pm)

The advisor described their semi-physical presence that is on the same level as us to be overwhelming to us. She said everything should feel like a loudspeaker in strength (emotions/mental etc). That it tends to paralyze someone who meets them without them converting to a physical form. Their thoughts should be sharp and clear. Although I doubt we might understand them clearly because like she mentioned we don’t have that clear mind they do nor the ability to inspect thought to such a minute level.

About the advisor. She told me many times that compared to us they are much more emotional and mental (not the crazy type). But I don’t know how to put this in the correct context. They are very heady and thought orientated. They are smart. From the people of her type that I have encountered I notice they are very mental orientated. Thier emotions run much stronger than us. But they aren’t out of control like we are in our emotions. Their mind seems to dominate their personality.

The big difference though that i noted between the advisor and the other people of her kind was that the advisor has an emotional landscape similar to ours although it is much stronger. But the other people like her are very much more restrained in their emotions even though they have a higher capcacity than us. It’s hard to describe in english. It would be easier to experience it than explain it. The people like the advisor were like big brained. Everything about them is much stronger than us. Though there was a cold detached-ness about them that the advisor did not share with them.

They are no where near the greys that I met in real life. The greys are purely intellect without emotions and they only have intent. The greys are uncaring and don’t seem to see us as people but as things. I can see why people think they are biological machines. I would think it too if I hadn’t observed opinions and their thoughts about how some of
us are useless to them. I make no apologies for them….they are cold and uncaring.

The people like the advisor (pleiadeans?) are heady and smart but not emotionally absent. Their thoughts and mind dominate who they are though. But the advisor was different. Her feelings seemed to be closer to the surface like a human beings. She was very heady though just like them. ?But special I guess?

I used to think the advisor was perfect when i was about 12 or 11. But she “sat me down”, figuratively speaking, and told me that she wasn’t perfect and that she was capable of errors and that she didn’t know everything. I took her word for it and still do. There are some contacts though that idolize the pleiadeans and make them seems like they are Gods or are perfect. Which from what I see is not so at all. I might admire the advisor but she ain’t my deity. (Feb 20, 2007, 2:03am)

Lifespan in the centuries, the potential for amorous love but also vengeance, intellectual superiority, and concealment of their real names and places of origin were traits touched upon earlier.

The advisor sometimes described the society she came from and it was a very intellectual society with some “issues” from my own point of view. They were so similar yet so different.

She often confided that where she came from people were so controlled vs what we had here on this earth. That people could make love and have children with whomever they chose and they didn’t have to adapt the genetics or think much on those considerations.

She had said in her own expression that is/was “very chaotic” choices.

But she liked the level of freedom we had to choose whatever we wanted to do by our own (as she said) desires. While over where she came from she said things such as expressions were all very expressive but within a predefined limit.

She used at the time a complex expression as if her society was the thought police within a certain paradigm. Sure there were comforts and expression, but she often bemoaned that it was all very controlled and confined.

I can liken her descriptions as being something like a futuristic society where some of the constants found on earth are not present over there.

They do things differently and they restrict how free you are to express yourself in whatever way you want to. Sort of like living in a super polite and enlightened socity that doesn’t allow any disturbing elements.

Reminds me sometimes when I think over her expressions of a hyper advanced version of the society found in the movie “Demolition Man”. Funny as that may sound LOL.

The way she kept showing me things it seemed like a very stale but peaceful society where you had lots of perks but also had lots of restrictions. When she described her world it seemed as if peace requires less freedoms.

This provides additional insight on the issue of human-alien mating, which may involve recreational aspects beyond the genetic factor. Perhaps some regret the repressive conditions in their realm and wish to take advantage of the more libertine atmosphere on Earth. Being telepathic as they are, they
must know of this atmosphere far too well.

She asked me strange questions. She made motions as if pointing towards a table nearby and asked me why did that table stay in that location? I said cause no one is moving it. She asked me again but added why did the table stay there in non-english. I understood better in what she mean’t. She mean’t to say why does the table continue to exist in that spot only and why does it not suddenly move somewhere else. In other words why was it stable in the position that it was in?

She made me think deeply and even with all the physics I knew I told her I just didn’t know why matter behaved that way. She told me that if I could imagine a rough idea of a coordinate system that space uses to locate objects. That there was also other codings it uses for referring to where in time. She reminded me of what I knew of physics and told me that if I remembered clearly the “strange action at a distance” that I had heard of was of a system that our universe uses to correct itself among other things (to not type alot for my sake.).

Short answer is that she told me there was a system for our reality to keep tabs on itself. She said they used this system to travel in time. She said Time travel was as common to her people as it was for me to ride a bus.

She said that more advanced aliens used a more complicated system to cause imbalances at a distance in the universe. When the universe corrected for the imbalance the particular alien would be transported to a new destination without having traveled the distance in between. (i don’t think that is a wormhole though). She said these advanced aliens let the universe do the hard work for them.

She said her people were not as advanced as these aliens were. But she said it was very efficient since it did not consume very much energy. She said that besides the imbalance they have to create, that it was about the most they had to expend energy wise. (Apr 10, 2007, 10:09am)

When she revealed to me that she could travel in time and that it was as common an experience for her as it was for me to ride a bus. She showed me a view of her world from her own eyes (a memory?). It was a while after I learned of her real mind. I saw an amazing vista of a craft that did not look like a saucer or anything like that. It had light shooting out from it’s side. It was either a plane of some kind or it was a bus. I’m not at all sure because it seemed so authentically futuristic and it’s shape was very strange for a vehicle.

And from that tiny vista I gathered the idea that they come from a society that is so advanced that they seem to keep secrets about their identity and their technologies. I came away with the deep impression that she just might be a time traveler. Though im pretty hard pressed to believe it till I see it.

From what I could gather, of the sight at that moment, the advisor was walking down a walkway or hallway. The hall had window panes to her right, with herself looking towards the right. Out the window you see a craft that is oddly shapped almost as if it were a very large bus or craft of some kind with light shooting out of it’s side as if it were a transport of some kind. It was levitating and from the quick view I didn’t see it touching the ground. I do not know how to interpret what I saw but It was either an airport of some kind or a bus terminal.
At the time she showed me this, she stated that (as a matter of fact, in her own view) If I were to see where she had come from, I would be amazed by the technology. Which she doesn’t find amazing herself. She said I would honestly think that some of it was magic even though I knew it wasn’t. (Jun 26, 2007, 8:17am)

She said she was going to a world near by to study how to manifest herself physically completely. There are a few things maybe some people should know about them. I learned this over years of time with her when she taught me how to profile entities when they would not reveal their identity.

1 – They are semi-physical
They posses bodies that while they may look like us they have an extension of themselves and their powers surrounding them. Some would call this a golden halo or an aura that is markedly Gold like and overwhelming.

2 – They do not seem to be all of the time be situated in our time. For example, one day when i was young she told me if i loved my little birds to go and pet it. I asked her why. And she went roundabout in her conversation and when pushed finally told me my little bird was going to die. I said to her that i didn’t believe her, she said it was true. I asked her when this was supposedly going to happen? She said for her in the next three minutes. I waited three minutes and nothing happened. So i called her a liar. Three days later the little bird died.

I thought of nothing about that incident, and maybe around when i was 10 or so she had left for a few days. She came back announcing from far away somewhere that they were “finishing synchonizing to your time”. As you can imagine, I raised my eyebrow wondering what she was talking about this time.(i didn’t think she was an alien, just a really odd being). When she got closer to me from her “place” she said that she and i were “now in synch”. I asked her what she was talking about but she (i dont remember honestly) ignored me i think.

Time passed and she made more predictions which i scoffed at the idea she could. So she told me when things were going to happen and they did. I thought all the time it was coincidence. Then when i got into my “your not real and i must be crazy!” years she started to show she was not a figment of my imagination by predicting things and telling me what others around me were doing and what would happen tomorrow down to every detail. When i went online in about 1998 and against her wishes looked for information by asking people in yahoo chat rooms. She would make predictions and ask me to tell them. In one prediction, she predicted 3 years ahead of time that there would be a large explosion in new york city. She said that i should tell them it will happen in some time and roughly around September/October/November. She made it sound like a large explosion so i thought she meant a nuclear bomb. But she never said it was a nuclear bomb she just said there was alot of “artificial terror”. This was 9/11 by the way.

Point is, they can see the future. They know what will happen tommorrow, rev, and what you will talk about in detail and what is up ahead in several months to years time.

3 – Their known mind to contactee’s are just fronts.
When she was making those predictions to people . Which this made me feel like a fool telling them about her and saying what she wanted till she proved her point. They believed she was real but i didn’t accept the possibility. She read thier mind and told me what they were thinking and many things. But i was a hard person to accept her as real.
In one experiment in 2002 after 6 years of training with her to learn how to use my abilities, she was aligning my energy patterns to a new configuration and help me unblock the garbage that builds up in the non-physical body. She was having me do remote viewing while I was talking to a friend of mine. Suddenly I see a flash in my sight and I can’t see anything for a microsecond and suddenly I am seeing through the friend’s husbands’ eyes. The friend was asking me how her husband felt about her. I was her husband seeing through his eyes for about 4 seconds. When I relayed this amazing thing to her she replied that what I saw happened about an hour ago.

The caretaker fooled about a bit more a couple hours later and suddenly it happens again and I see through the caretakers eyes and I see the back of my head and I see through her eyes, peering over my shoulder reading a conversation I’m having within a chatroom and seeing conversational possibilities that didn’t take place. But the little I read it was very close to what actually happened. For a second, I was her and I felt humanoid in shape and even saw her arms. Amazing I thought. She acted like she had committed a mistake and was “kicking herself” type of expression. A few minutes later the top of my head seems to start having hot sensation of energy flowing through it and suddenly I have another flash and this time I AM HER for about 4 to 5 seconds. When I start seeing my normal vision again I hear her being frustrated and upset that she messed up big time. She didn’t want me to see that! I was in her shoes for a second time and I had such expansive thoughts! Super complicated thoughts that even today I cannot make sense of and were completely unhuman. Thats when I started referring to her as a uber human type. The thoughts were so profound and knowledgeable that it would take a month to render such a complex idea. I cannot imagine these people as having two arms, two legs, and one head. Whatever they are they are unlikely to be related to humans.

4 – Non-Linear planners
They do not think nor act nor plan like us. After she showed me how to understand a psyche and so many other things. I started to notice developing patterns and with my higher mind now within my control (well almost back then) I started becoming more and more suspicious that they were holding back information and I started to see lines of deception and psychological tricks, manipulative behaviors, pre-programmed responses in other contactee’s, abductees/experiments, and consistency. Consistency of contactees and their behaviors and how they react and how the aliens “keep” them began to light serious warning signs about this whole phenomena. When I began to see evidence that she was indeed
1) Real
2) Semi-Corporeal
3) Had a consciousness separate from my own.
4) Had a presence and observational abilities separate from my own.
5) Intelligence.
6) Consistent tests passed.

I started to panic and became worried that I was being brought up to do something that might indeed not be in humanities best interest. And worse brought up in a blind fashion unable to observe what the agenda was nor it’s final intended result. (Feb 4, 2007, 10:56am)

These are highly valuable details concerning their semi-physical nature, their needing to synchronize with our time rate, and the trans-temporal factors involved in their strategic planning and manipulation of human society. The traits may be termed hyper-dimensional, though on the
lower end of the scale. It’s important to recognize the time travel capabilities of these beings, because the implications are immense. For instance, it leads to the idea of timewars and what I have written concerning demiurgic technology shifting the timeline at key moments in history.

I don’t remember how that conversation led to this one but we somehow jumped to the conversation of Atlantis. This I did know some about. Mostly that the people were super advanced and about Plato describing their land or something. I asked her about that and she told me after a few hours that the people who were alive in “Atlantis” were not how people pictured them to be.

She said before one of the resets that occurs to human beings (read: dieoff) there was a people who interacted with humanity. She said the people who were here during this time were of many types of races. She said the human beings who were alive during that time in the place we tended to call “Atlantis” were in open contact with other races and that some knowledge about math and astronomy was passed to those people. She said there was a very large misconception about “Atlantis”.

She said the mainland used to be where Antarctica is now. And that the places people look for evidence of Atlantis is actually just outposts. She said that “Atlantis” was full of a people who were given information about certain fields of knowledge but not others. She said they understood geometry and math but had almost no knowledge of metalurgy. She said they were actually less advanced than we were. As you can imagine I was interested in what she had to say.

She kept on saying something about the technology that is now folklore were technology that the people visiting the earth at that time was sharing with these people. The generators she said weren’t using electrons based technology but were solid state (fuzzy) nuclear reactors. She said the reactors were really old technology that they no longer used even at that time. She said the casing was made of a crystal and that it was portable which she said layed the current mysticism of energy coming from crystals. She said the people who were human were actually ignorant of how to use it and how it worked. They supposedly had a lopsided understanding and she said in some aspects they were very smart in knowledge and understanding of certain fields but were not knowledgable in chemicals or science as we have made it today.

She said there was a lot of technology loaned to those people to build a basic society but they were dependent on the technologies loaned at the time. She said they were very mystically orientated (unsure about this part, it was a long time ago). She said (im sure about this) the people came in contact with aliens on a regular basis. She said the outposts were north of Cuba and to the east. The other was in the Indian ocean south of Australia and to the west. The last she said was a minor outpost that no longer exists that used to be near Japan and East of Hawaii. She said it was more of an independent nation than an outpost. She said from the outposts they spread some of the knowledge after the resets.

She said these people had, at the end, the technology taken from them and were left to fend for themselves. She was unclear around here about what happened next. She also said something about people who look like human beings but were alien used to “fly” and had some special belt. I don’t recall all of it at this time. All she said in basic was that these people were materially primitive but had subjective knowledge. She said most of the big designs that the aliens built for them are probably still under sheets of ice. Oh and she said that some of the devices that weren’t recovered were still active and were
creating problems. Also said something about the devices intermittently working.

About the nuclear reactor that looks like a pretty sizeable crystal. I just remembered her saying something about it being safe and that it didn’t use a type of technology that we use now (electronic). She said that in the old days, of her people, they used to use assemblies that were structured on an atomic level. She said that the old technologies used casings that were built out of atoms that were put together in a perfect shape and that because of it they looked like crystal that glows when the reactors are active. (Feb 16, 2007, 6:56am)

As the previous Gnosis articles explained, the Grail and Ark Stone are remnant alien technologies that have been with us since Atlantean times. Fore wrote, “some of the devices that weren’t recovered were still active and were creating problems. Also said something about the devices intermittently working.” There may be more buried around the world, but at least some of that technology was passed among human hands and employed with great effect. And just as the Israelite priests used the Ark Stone with only limited knowledge on how to activate and direct it, so were the Atlanteans using technology beyond their comprehension. That is why these artifacts have never been duplicated by humans, why petty wars have been fought over them, because they were of limited supply and originally manufactured by aliens and later leased to humans with only a basic set of operating instructions.

More on alien technology:

One of these was a chamber which she showed me in my mind eye. She said they posses a technology that can grow organs rapidly. This was an offshoot conversation from her talking and answering some of my questions (and others) about bodies of theirs. She showed me a chamber which looked like a rectangular box that seemed to be made of a material that looks like Plexiglas. It looked roughly transparent. She said in these chambers that were kept underground in habitats that groups could grow organic bodies or if the need arose supposedly organs. She said that her people were already capable of time travel so they understood the mechanics of what time is in actuality. To this i gave my standard “sure, you must be feeling creative today?” kind of mental pokes.

She told me the chamber is transparent so they can keep an eye on the materials that are below the casing and so that they can keep an eye on the progress of the growth in an accelerated time state (i dunno what to translate that into). She said they used their knowledge of what causes time to occur to cause a limited portion of space within the casing to accelerate while the organs or bodies were rapidly absorbing the materials underneath the chamber. She showed me what looks like two transparent boxes that seemed removable and contained a red liquid and the other liquid i don’t seem to recall what color it was.

She said the usefulness of the bodies was that they could produce replicas in a matter of hours or days depending on the method. She said the maximum the chambers could produce was about a year in close to a 24 hour period of normal time. She said that the chambers were useful to them if they needed to temporarily inhabit a body of a different make up.

She said this involved another science they had made that was used to separate the non-physical body from the physical body. She said they then (sorry little details, she made
generalizations) removed the spiritual essence that is them, and for example, can prepare a body that is of a different type and rebuild certain things of the connections between the new one and then embed the spiritual presence into that new body. (damn that was hard to put down.) (Feb 11, 2007, 9:18am)

This gets into the human simulacra problem I have written about, where alien and shadow human groups are manufacturing fake humans to take up positions of influence within society. Therefore, reports of human-looking aliens, especially those seen in everyday situations, may include both alien beings who have materialized here fully and can pass for human, and artificial avatars grown in time-acceleration chambers. Encounters with individuals who speak as if they were Nordic aliens, but whose eyes, physiques, hair, etc… look entirely average, may be examples of avatars. This would be necessary to evade detection in high profile positions.

The use of avatars or cybernetic probes, regardless of the shape they take, is common alien technology. It allows a consciousness incarnated in one realm to temporarily operate in another without the side-effects and problems associated with having to translate the physical body itself. Consider the technical difference in cost and logistics between astral projecting into the past and possessing someone there, and building a device to transport you physically to the past.

Another potential example of this technology is in UFOs in the Gulf Breeze-Pensacola Area:

Off to the right of the giant screen TV, is a series of cylinders that are the height of the room and about the diameter of telephone booths. There are door size openings, no sharp angles of course, on each of them. I would say there are 5 of them arranged in a row.

Each of us instinctively, at least for me, heads for a booth. I enter the booth and the opening disappears behind me. No noise, just suddenly the cylinder is sealed.

Inside the cylinder, there is suddenly a brilliant blue light and a hum. the hum starts out fairly low-pitched and picks up in intensity. It’s not the intensity of the sound, it is the frequency getting higher and higher causing the sound pitch to change.

As the frequency gets higher, I start getting bigger. When the sound stops and the light returns to white, I’m adult sized. I don’t look like me, like my current adult version, I look different but there are some similarities.

Rather than the kid clothes I arrived in, I now have on coveralls like the personnel I saw in the hanger. The extra-terrestrial driving the shuttle device had on little moccasin type shoes. They’re soft but have somewhat of a sole on them and now I’m wearing some myself.

Obviously, some serious matter transformation occurred. I felt really charged, really energized. The door of the cylinder reappeared. When I came out, everyone else was coming out too and everyone is different; full size adults wearing the same coverall type of clothes.

The one thing I quickly notice is that everyone looks ageless. By this I mean almost an ephemeral quality. I can’t really describe it any other way. We’re in different bodies but not really. It’s a rearrangement our bodies.
It seems that the blue light in the cylinder corresponded with my vibration and that the others had different colored lights in their cylinders that corresponded to them.

So, I have this feeling of, “Well, it’s good to feel normal again,” type of reaction.

The little room with the transformation cylinders has an entrance to another rectangular room that now appears in the wall. We enter this larger room that is also rectangular. As I mentioned, there are NO sharp corners. Where joints meet, it is rounded.

In this larger room, there is what reminds me of a conference table. We go in and sit down on one side of it and a group of male and female extra-terrestrials, dressed similarly to ourselves, sits down on the other side.

This seems to be a information exchange session. They are asking us our impressions of being in our other form. They ask us how we like being in our regular form and the general consensus is that it stinks. It is too primitive.

The extra-terrestrials say that they are working on enhancements to it that they will introduce over time, to improve it’s capacity, whatever that means.

They say that their main limitation is that they can’t alter our physical forms too much or we could be readily identifiable to humans with even their primitive technology. Hummm, this is interesting. If we aren’t humans as such, what are we?

In following the flow of this experience, detailed information will have to be presented separately in another article on the topics discussed at this meeting with the extra-terrestrials because the information was presented as if it was already known with no explanation.

Some background information is necessary for the next section. When I was a child, I never felt related to my biological family. The older I got, the more pronounced this lack of identification with my family and feeling of not belonging to them became. Thus, I was constantly seeking information about my birth because I had come to the conclusion that I was adopted. What other logical conclusion can you draw? Whenever I asked my father when I was born, he would always say the same thing, “You weren’t born, you were hatched.” This really aggravated me as a child. No matter how many times I asked the question, that is what he ALWAYS said. My father did have a sarcastic sense of humor, but his persistence on this topic was unusual even for him.

So, this next part of the story is dedicated to my father who passed on in 1991. You were right Dad, I was hatched.

Returning to the experience. Here we are in a rectangular conference room inside of a mountain; two 4 year olds, a 15 year old, an 18 year old and someone approximately 22 or 23. All TRANSFORMED into adults. Physically PERFECT adults I might add. (link)

Continuing with Fore’s post:

She said this was one of the functions of the chambers but they were generally used for many things. Someone i knew asked her about ships and the government having them. And this for some odd reason made her mood turn sour. She said to me that the government had a small squadron of ships. But she said that the prototypes were badly
She claimed that the cabal used the technologies they were developing to shoot down their craft. She said this with a rare annoyance that she doesn’t show much. She started to tell me things that she didn’t want me to relay to the person asking the question. She claimed that the non-public government had created ships that she said were prototypes that the groups of aliens were aware of.

She said though that the ships were incomplete and lacked many things that their ships do have. She said to me for example that she can communicate with her ship with her mind. I was wondering what crack she was on cause she was on a roll. She ignored me and kept saying that the ships they have, have an artificial intelligence. She said though, the ships were aware but did not have sentience. She said it could be given commands to bring together information or to navigate and figure out what it needed to complete it’s task. But she said interestingly (i was interested in her tales however unlike her they may be) that the ships could not initiate a task on their own and were not capable of creating decisions on their own.

The automaton-like nature of their ships may be comparable to that of purebred Grey aliens, who also seem unable to initiate their own decisions. Both are likely grown, manifested, or projected rather than assembled. The same cybernetic, psionic, demiurgic technology may be involved in both cases, as well as in the Grail Stone. The artificial intelligence they employ is not founded on microchips programmed with lines of code, but but etheric energy programmed with conscious intent.

She explained that in the past, where she came from, scientists had created artificial bodies that were capable of carrying a spiritual essence/artificial intelligence but she said the history of the project showed that when someone’s limitations were lifted, that the consciousness and personality of a person begins to warp out of control. She said some of the people within the designs started to not carry themselves the same and started to act abnormally. She said the lack of limitations causes the personality of a person to (hard to put) become unstable. She said some became arrogant and some didn’t see limits to their interactions. She said alot of things that were mainly negative but I’m finding it hard to express and remember. She said from then on they took from that project that limitations on beings are what causes a healthy personality and that artificial intelligence should be non-sentient and unable to deviate from the tasks. (Feb 11, 2007, 9:18am)

She claimed that at some point in the past, people of her kind had been captured, and were cloned as slaves. I asked her what she meant and I also noted that when she gave emotional responses which was odd and unusual for her to do. She told me (paraphrased) about atrocities that “these others” committed with their kind. They reproduced the individual as clones and would (according to her) be embedded with black rods in their head.

I was confused at the time by what she meant. When I asked her to explain she said these “others” Greys used to grow people of her kind underground. She said that they were socially programmed to be deeply obedient. She said these cloned beings were reproduced alot as slaves.

I asked her the obvious question of what kind of slave. And why would Greys need slaves? She said these “others” would be grow the slaves as labor and security. She explained that the system underground (could also mean cavern, not sure) with these
clones was to grow them up and as children embed the devices that looked like iron rods into their heads.

I thought that was kinda both stupid and interesting. I asked her how the hell are they gonna live with rods in their heads? I took her to task about sleeping and all that. She told me the rods she was showing me were not visible and physical. She said the rods extending from the heads of the people she was showing me were a kind of technology where...get this...they could embed material objects into the minds of the clones while at the same time keeping them separate from physical reality. ?Sort of like shared space?

I assume she was telling the truth on this one because the other technologies of implants and things she talked about seems to also base themselves in these kinds of concepts. Which I admit sound silly on the face of it. Till she explained to me that abductees during grey experiments usually have “subsurface injuries and bruising” below the surface. Subsurface = below the outer tissue. [...] Anyway she claimed these clones of her people had these invisible ?multidimensional? rods sticking out of their temples and heads. I think I could draw them. She claimed these devices were there in the clones to produce pain if they didn’t obey. Which seemed to make her both sad and in a bad mood to recount it.

She was very plainly pained to talk about it. Which was a rare thing to sense in her. She was usually detected in her own way about explaining things.

Anyway, she said that these clones are often trained as little children to obey “the others” she said some of them become security guards and others are bred to be slaves and/or trotted in front of a contactee so that they can say how safe and good they feel.

I asked her: how do I know your not one of them? She said because there were few genetic slaves to account for all the clones, they pretty much all look alike. She said I might hear of an oddity present in a clone and she said that this had more to do with genetic tampering and experimentation on “the others” part than anything else.

She said the vast majority (both female and male) look the same. She said that most of the slaves are content to work with their masters. She said the ones that disobeys have pain induced via the implants sticking invisibly out of their heads. She said if I ever met her kinds of people who all looked the same then that would be a sure sign that they were clones. She also said they wear military uniforms and two piece clothes somewhat like a regular person. She said her people usually wear clothes that look completely different (which I didn’t know what she meant and she didn’t care to explain at that point in time.)

I asked her what happens to slaves that don’t obey period? She gave me two responses at once in her own language method.

If I understood correctly back then, (not sure) she expressed in a snappy way,

1)they are parts.
and/or
2)they are food.
Which is strange since she never said anything (ever) that greys eat meat. So I dunno if I am interpreting it wrong. Whatever the case may be. That topic seems to affect her emotionally. (Aug 7, 2007, 2:32pm)

The phasing technology used to allow two material objects to share the same three dimensional space (by being separated along some other variable) is something Fore mentions frequently, and I have written about it under the term “dimensional shifting” or “dimensional rotation.” See Discerning Alien Disinformation and Timeline Dynamics for more on this subject. It’s what is used to levitate abductees out through closed windows and solid walls, and what allows alien bases to exist inside mountains without hollowed out physical caverns. It’s also related to optical invisibility; if, while phased, one can pass through matter, then one can also pass through light without disturbing it. Phasing technology would come in handy during interplanetary travel to bypass radiation and asteroid bombardment.

Shadow human groups (black ops military and secret corporate groups) have a primitive form of this technology, first tested in the Philadelphia Experiment of 1943. The term “phasing” is entirely appropriate because it likely involves the artificial alteration of the quantum phase factor that normally locks us into physicality. This can be done via special electromagnetic methods, or more direct etheric methods. As Fore and others like Al Bielek explain, slight alteration of phase leads to optical invisibility, further change allows passage through solid matter, and full phase detuning takes one out of physical reality entirely with unpleasant consequences.

Quantum phase is one of many factors separating one realm from another, and if artificial methods can change it, what about natural factors? The latter would imply there are natural cycles in which the phase separation between worlds varies. In other words, the same principle behind phasing technology could explain why Willy Schroedter noted that, “In the time of Charlemagne and Pepin, the astral world seems to have drawn especially near” … and why soon it will draw near again. Should it do so, the “veil” will grow thin, if not drop away entirely, as our world phases into theirs and vice versa. Then aliens would find it difficult staying cloaked and our skeptical materialistic paradigm will go up in flames.

That may be the prime reason why the alien disinformation campaign drives forward with ever increasing speed, because should they be unable to maintain the secrecy of their existence, they better be prepared in advance to use the situation to their advantage, such as portraying themselves as benefactors who need our collective acquiescence to save us. Fore writes of such a scenario:

She began telling me about the future roughly around 1999 or 2000. “The others” she said were going to begin their plans to come to the earth openly and she said they were worried. I humored her and i asked her what was bad about aliens showing themselves? She said that “The Others” didn’t care about people they just cared about controlling. She said many things about them but i’ll try to put it in chronological order and the arguments she made to me about the others. These are several conversations put together for sake of clarity. They should not be taken lightly nor too seriously but should be taken with a grain of warning in my opinion.

Firstly, she had me understand that part of the conspiracy theories were true (how cliche). She said there was a group of people who had power and we not elected who decided a long time ago that a crisis was coming that they could not control (im paraphrasing her words for simplicity). She said that they made plans long ago to build
installations underground because there was a perceived threat to them and that they were building “just to be safe”.

She said it started out back in the 1860-1862 that the two people who started a group to establish research for UFO’s and aliens. She said back then these few men did not have any authority over anything but were a small project started to study the phenomena. She said around the 1900’s they gained importance and were granted a budget and became a small department and were in charge of budgets (small time) to organize the “structures” (I have no clue what she meant but that’s what she said) to more easily collect information about aliens. She said from here on they grew rapidly and already had a good wealth of information but very little technology. She said in the early 1920’s different groups like hers made contact but were rejected and that the different aliens started revealing information about themselves. She said this made the now established but mildly influential department/group/affair department VERY paranoid (I have no clue how to put that idea into a word that would fit).

She didn’t explain why but she said they became very concerned that they were not going to survive and they began building in excess underground installations. She said they were very paranoid about aliens. She said that some of the groups revealed to them the future and this was why. She said by the time the so-called famous 1947 Roswell incident happened. They were already well established and had overriding control over the branches of military. She said several things about the controlling group changed and they became desperate to gather technology and make deals to advance both the public and the non-public sciences. She said they for example couldn’t land anywhere on the earth without being detected almost immediately and that there was very few places they could arrive without the phasing technology that kept them protected. She said there should be stories about the armed forces intercepting arrivals very quickly (yeah I looked and there was.)

She said that by the 1940’s the non-public science was already more advanced in ideas than the public was in the 1960’s onward. She said as time passed the Groups like hers and “the others” began to spy on them in the underground sessions they had and kept pace with the knowledge that was being retrieved. She said the only reason she revealed technologies to me was because it was already knowledge that was known on the earth and in the non-public sciences. She said there was nothing to lose by showing me what was already known. She said the cabal (she changes the title at this point.) would meet underground and in the 80’s were planning what was known as artificial terror. She said they wanted to play “the game of the gods” (why she called it that I don’t know).

She described this “game” as a game that many races including hers and her faction had played with humanity. She said in the old days on earth they would even fight openly (yeah right!) between them and “the others”. She said “the others” (greys/pleiadeans/whatever) would implant and manipulate thoughts and start religions and create wars over them to decimate mankind so that they would not evolve beyond a certain point. She said her groups way of thinking was to introduce a counter movement to spread knowledge and stabilize the religions or impart knowledge to dismantle “the others” plans. She said there was a lot of instability with these fights and the people on the earth became very “fractured” from the constant introduction of ideas and counter ideas.

She said eventually “the others” and Their groups were stopped by a third group of aliens. (she does not describe them in detail or otherwise.) She said the third group did
not care for either side but wanted them to stop interfering. She said this group was very powerful and that even if the two sides went against the third group they would not win. She made it sound like they didn’t have a hope in hell united, let alone apart. She said they both agreed to an uneasy peace that they would not interfere. She said this stopped the interference to a large part.

“She said that around the time she was telling me this the amnesty between both factions was ending. I asked her why amnesty if I thought that was used only for immigrants. She insisted on the word amnesty (I looked it up in the dictionary since I didn’t know what it meant 😂). She said that once the amnesty was lifted that “the others” would immediately go back to trying to control mankind. She said they were worried about what might happen if “The Others” came first to humanity. She said they were pretty sure that they would. They were preparing themselves and a lot of them were leaving because she said a war between them was likely to happen.

She said in the future many things would happen. Which I will post in another post rather than this one so I don’t break the long a$$ “truth” she left me with.

First, She said “the others” would go back out into space and make an entrance, as if they were not here already. She said this would allow them a clean entrance and blame the rest of the past on aliens from her faction. She said they would probably go and pick the people among them who were human-like. She said this is what abductions and grey experimentation was trying to bring about for a long time (thousand of years into the past when a couple of races handed us as a project down or abandoned us.). She said the human-like beings were either slaves who would talk very little or genuine people of hers and others who look like humans who had an agenda to control humanity and stop it’s progress.

She said the others were itching to stop our progress because at a certain point we would be acknowledge-able as independent beings. She said on her world about 60% of her kind thought of human kind as an experiment to be observed but generally do not care one way or the other. Roughly, 30% constitute “the others” mentality. While she said, the minority constitute her point of view 14%).

She said when “the others” arrived they would do what would look like miracles to mankind (of this she kept talking about) and they expected the people on earth to quickly believe “the others”. She said “the others” were likely going to present themselves as being Gods. She said this would lead to human beings accepting them as the leaders. She said that because “the others” would very likely choose human-like front men with their powers intact. The genetic manipulations both factions had committed to, a long time ago, would cause human beings to give in very quickly. She said a long time ago when other races had lost interest in humanity they picked up and modified humanity to be planet squaters (my word interpretation but pretty accurate.).

She said the reason that human beings become very easy to manipulate when they see a
pretty person is because they are pre-programmed genetically to have this behavior. She said this was an easy trick back when people were very primitive and they wanted workers and slaves. She said that before those projects were ended that the aliens modified the human beings more to create a very xenophobic response to other aliens. And that human beings were given the cultural push to breed at will. She said this way both factions past founders could prevent other aliens from occupying the earth in the open; nor the human beings from helping them. She said that some of that has degraded over time but it was still a dominant trait. That was the reason some aliens use greys as front men because it is less problematic and they are humaniod enough to be accepted when they continue the experiments on mankind.

The next interesting bit she said was that “the others” needed contactees for the future. She said some of the grey experiments are about how human beings react to certain situations and that the greys were looking for weaknesses and lessening the possibility that the human beings they choose will have conflict against them when they bring about their “arrival”. She said some of those human beings would be “go-betweens” in the contacts with those who follow “the others”. She said “the others” needed a close enough…. spokesman… to represent their interest and that the association with these beings would elevate these human beings to a higher status. She said that is why alot of “the others” choose human beings who will readily accept a title or illusions of granduer and are usually told they are “the one”.

She said that both sides could be accused of this since they both engage in a little bit of everything. Hers supposed alot less (yeah right!). She said “the others” would institute a government where there would be three tiers of contactee’s; the local, regional, and the special few. She said the locals would be in charge of their smaller communities while the regional would have limited contact with the aliens directly and the special few are supposed to be less than 25 (fuzzy) who would have to represent their slab of the world. She said “the others” would divide the world up into sections and each “special contactee” would be in charge of it. She said “the special contactees” would also have very high abilities endowed to them (pet slaves anyone?)

She said the first thing “the others” would do is stop progressing technology. She said they would introduce their own technology to produce energy but that it would be off limits to human beings and that they would fix alot of the earths problems as long as they could coerce power from the former leaders of the governments. She said the few skeptical human beings would probably by that time be thinking they are “gods” because they would take the time to display their powers which she said is common knowledge to everyone except human beings who don’t see those things.

She goes on to explain to me how miracles (or seemingly miracles) are performed and that this will impress many. This is where she warned me about not listening to “what they say” but “seeing what they do” if I have doubts as to which side they represent. She said any alien could say anything. She said actions though would easily reveal their true intent. She said “the others” would quickly order the executions of millions of people world wide who would not obey them because of religion. She said since these people on earth who would believe them would think they are “doing the right thing” and have the backing of “the Gods” they would turn in their neighbors to be executed. She said that if people knew the future they would not want any part of it. She explained that the reason why “the others” will win over so many is because they will give people what they want and create a new super religion. She said the religion will unite pieces of old religions and that they will lie and say they are the Gods of the old religions and that
they will create a new one and even spin lies that they created mankind.

She said people won’t notice it but they will be tricked into alot of manipulative situations. And she said if people accept them then there is nothing they can do except watch. Im sure I left out some things.

She said this is why (at the time they were racing to “prepare”) to present themselves anyway. She said because her people were the minority that they would not have much of a chance in changing the minds of people but she said they would try. She said at the time that there was a big debate as to whether her faction should come in first or second, because they did not know which would yield the best results. She said when her faction did come that they would show up shortly after the others most likely, and they would present to the world their side of the case. She said they would show mankind what they could of how the miracles were happening and how they came to be and even perform for them to see. That they were not miracles, but common understandings and knowledge shared by both sides.

She said her faction would also reveal information and the truth to people at this time but the general consensus was that the human beings of the future would be unlikely to believe them. I asked her why “the others” would let them make their case? She said because of the third group they would have to allow it or the third group would probably come in quickly and put them in their place or worse. (Squish)

She said that they had a growing fear, that if the people of the earth did side with her faction. That then “the others” in spite, would burn the earth while leaving. She said this was a likely possibility.

Background info.

She said alot of things that lead up to this is volcanoes all going off at the same time in some area’s. Many earthquakes in places where there had never been before. She described the future from that time (1999-2000) to be getting worse and worse weather wise as the years progress (seems to be accurate on that one). She said that the cabal (that I described at the beggining) was trying to “play the game of the gods” and making artificial terror to force people to give up their freedoms. She said there would be rumors of wars in the future and that there would be a very big war she called “the war of contracts”. Those things I’ll write down next because my hands are very tired. (Feb 7, 2007, 7:03am)

(link to zip archive of posts)

This deception scenario is highly plausible, although the endgame strategies are continually adjusted according to the shifting probabilities of success, so it’s hard to say how much is still under preparation in 2011.

Regardless, in relation to the present article, the point is that not only are there competing alien factions who have fought various cold and hot wars over the millennia, but it seems to be coming to a head. The alien endgame is building toward another shift of the timeline, perhaps the biggest one since the dawn of our species. If the Grey hybrid breeding program is any indication, victory for the fascist factions would result in full genetic and spiritual crippling of the human race. At worst we would be augmented and programmed into becoming tools deployable to other worlds to continue
their campaign of spiritual enslavement. It would spread the cancer that is the Corrupt Demiurge and further imbalance the Universe. As mentioned, alien wars are subsets of a larger cosmological war between the Corrupt Demiurge and the Divine Logos. Just as human wars play into alien agendas, so do alien wars play into cosmological agendas.

**Nordic Origins and Identity**

Who are these beings? We can rule out several possibilities:

1) They are not all spirits, demons, angels, or elementals because they can appear in the physical for extended periods of time, leave behind DNA evidence, interbreed with humans, and display an internally consistent assortment of high technology. Anyone with sufficient experience can differentiate between aliens and metaphysical entities.

2) They are not all members of some benevolent “Galactic Federation,” since there is warring among their opposing factions and some display fascist tendencies, even within the Nordic typology.

Because traces of their presence on Earth go back thousands of years:

3) They are not all hoaxes perpetrated by the shadow government. Nonetheless, the latter may have hoaxed a portion of the “space brother” fad to hijack the real thing and subdue xenophobia. Examples include Commander Ashtar, a sappy caricature of a Nordic, who is frequently channeled in the New Age community.

4) They are not curious “visitors” who arrived here only in the 20th century. While lesser alien races may have visited more recently for scientific observation, the Nordics are not among them.

5) They are not all remnants of some secret Nazi space program. It’s a non sequitur to say Nazis are responsible for the UFO phenomenon when it was through their occult research and communication with aliens that they achieved that level of technology in the first place. If anything, their advanced remnants were later assimilated into the same confederation of negative factions that have likewise assimilated the modern shadow military.

More viable theories include the following:

**They are the original human type, and we are chimeras genetically engineered in their image.**

The writings of Lloyd Pye and Zechariah Sitchin come to mind here. As Lloyd Pye explains, our tattered genome bears the scars of heavy genetic engineering. Human evolution underwent jumps so sudden as to be anomalous. As everyone knows, Sumerian myths speak of the Anunnaki who created humans for slave labor, while in the Book of Genesis the same Elohim said, “Let us make man in our image.” Was it all the work of the superhumans discussed in this article, or were they themselves also the products of genetic engineering?

**They are our cosmic relatives, created by the same primordial alien progenitors that created us, but seeded on other worlds.**

This is the only viable aspect of the Extraterrestrial Hypothesis. It would explain why they could be.
from other planets yet share compatible DNA. When intelligent life arises naturally on one planet, develops into a super-civilization, and achieves mastery of genetics and space travel, life soon spreads to nearby compatible planets. All carbon-based humanoid aliens share common ancestry, as the odds of two completely independent evolutions producing the same form is infinitesimal. Then one world can discover another and genetically modify it further, despite both being the creations of an even older alien race.

What could be their cosmic origins? The nearest candidate is the ancient planet whose remains populate the Asteroid Belt. Otherwise one would have to look further, toward Alpha Centauri, Sirius, Procyon, Barnard’s Star, Arcturus, and Aldebaran. Alienology research points toward Orion and the Pleiades as well, but the stars of those constellations are many hundreds of light years away. Most of their alleged home worlds are less than one hundred light years, which, relative to the size of our galaxy, makes them our next door neighbors.

**They are ancient offshoots of the human race who surpassed the rest of the species.**

This is along the lines of what Mac Tonnies proposed. If true, the evolutionary branching must have occurred recently, since they look so similar. They could be direct descendants of Cro Magnon man, who appeared suddenly in Western Europe around 30,000 years ago and had larger brain capacities and better physiques than modern man, matching two characteristics ascribed to Nordic aliens. On the other hand, Cro Magnons could equally well have been Nordic populations who emigrated to Earth around that time, or simply their initial genetic experiments, which fits the sudden arrival of the Cro Magnons and their genetic distance from Africa.

**They are Atlantean/Hyperborean survivors who did not devolve like other humans.**

Surviving elite who held onto their knowledge and technology would have later emerged as virtual gods to the rest of the population who degraded to the level of primitives. But did they develop that technology on their own, or was it given to them by aliens? More likely the latter, since the archeological evidence of ancient advanced civilization is scarce and localized in small pockets around the world, indicating a small elite who, even before the cataclysms, ruled over a more primitive population. If that antediluvian civilization had advanced on its own, it would have taken far longer, been more uniformly advanced throughout, and have left behind more traces.

The aliens of today are probably not identically the Atlantean survivors, though the latter could have been their human/hybrid proxies who received assistance and forewarning. Think of Noah being told by “The Lord” to build an Ark, modern contactees and abductees being warned of imminent cataclysm, or the shadow government manically building underground bases due to receiving privileged information from their alien contacts.

If nothing else, strong ties exist between Nordic aliens and the descendants of these ancient surviving elite. The Basque, Celtic, and Asian DNA recovered from Peter Khoury’s case suggests as much. Nordics seem interested in people of mixed East/West ancestry, of which a portion traces back to these post-Atlantean bloodlines. Prominent examples of ancient bloodlines include the Basques, Celts, Minoans, and Phoenicians. The latter three consorted with the 18th Dynasty of Egypt and consequently the tribe of Levi, who were the only people among the Israelites allowed to operate the Ark of the Covenant.
They are human avatars or proxies for another alien intelligence.

The DNA evidence from Peter Khoury’s case could equally suggest Nordics were created from us. Some third party alien race could have collected desirable genetics from humans throughout history and assembled a race of superhumans. In that case, they are either cybernetic creations worn as “meat suits” by completely foreign alien intelligences, or they are genuinely spirited people who were created as proxies for their nonhuman masters. These proxies could then interbred with humans to spawn bloodlines functioning as yet another tier of earthbound proxies.

This is something Fore speculated on, after discovering that the human-like personality of his Nordic advisor was a front, and that her true mind was far less human and more profoundly complex than it seemed. On the other hand, he also mentioned that these aliens undergo training to step down their consciousness to our level to make interaction possible. Orfeo Angelucci’s contacts hinted likewise.

The question is whether they are just superhumans who downshift their personalities to our level for interaction, like any adult does when talking to a toddler, or whether they are total fabrications by some monstrous alien intelligence. The latter is attractively conspiratorial, but not really substantiated by the available evidence and anecdotes except in the case of awkward human simulacra such as the Men In Black. Not to mention, if they were created to put a human face on the alien presence, then there shouldn’t be so many reports of other alien species like the Greys and Reptilians.

They are from a parallel timeline or hidden realm where a superior civilization has developed.

What is the nature of their world, and how does it relate to ours? It’s not enough to say their world is just a parallel Earth where things advanced more quickly on the technological and evolutionary front. For one, these beings along with ghosts, elementals, demons, etc… have always been able to observe and influence us, but not vice versa. Our two worlds are not equal in terms of fundamental tangibility. Etheric energies play a more visible and active role in their realm.

Therefore it’s not a simple matter of Nordics inhabiting a parallel 3D physical timeline, rather they seem to inhabit a higher “density,” as the term is used in the Ra and Cassiopaean material. Gnostics know our world is an illusion created by the Corrupt Demiurge. It follows that beyond the borders of our reality exists the real world, or at least something not so hermetically isolated from the greater Creation. Could beings from that world be popping into ours, injecting their influences into this petri dish we call reality?

They are our time traveling descendants.

Experience proves they can see into the future. It’s hard to tell whether this ability comes solely from clairvoyance, mathematical calculation, or hindsight from the future. Probably a combination of all three. Regardless, they are obsessed with the future and how present developments affect it. The delicate manner of their manipulations, the aeons over which they carry them out, and the knowing determination inherent in their efficiency suggests their vantage point is outside linear time.
The one consistent element in what abductees and contactees are told, is that our world will soon undergo a time of great upheaval. Times of change, especially collective change, are significant choice points on the timeline. They are windows of chaos that spawn many probable futures. Those windows seem to function as apertures allowing the influx of time traveling influences from the futures they generate. If nothing else, they would be strategic pivot points on the timeline that attract the greatest attention from warring time travelers.

Consequently, if aliens like the Nordics are time travelers, then since multiple futures issue from a singular past, they would have to be time travelers from various probable futures engaging in a timewar of sorts. Different factions are exerting opposing influences upon the present to reshape the future to their advantage. As we approach the primary nexus point, these probable futures will play a game of musical chairs, with only one future quantum-collapsing into the final tangible one.

Furthermore, with time travel, the issue of where and when they originated becomes obscured. If they claim to come from Procyon, that could be true, but it might mean Procyon ten thousand years from now after human descendants have long colonized space and achieved time travel as well. Or if ancient astronaut research indicates they genetically modified the human race in their image, it could just as well be those time travelers from Procyon (or wherever) visiting our prehistory and accelerating human evolution to rewrite the timeline in their favor. Then they would be time travelers tweaking the genetics of their ancestors, possibly even interbreeding with them, training some, leasing them powerful technology, all as part of a timewar waged over the battlefield of space and time.

Alternatively, some malevolent alien faction could do likewise in order to dumb us down so that, when the time of great upheaval occurs, odds are shifted in the favor of a successful deception. Conditions that now allow for the imminent implementation of a global totalitarian system under negative alien control have been under construction for many thousands of years. Religion and scientific materialism will play a large part in that deception, and both play on fundamental human weaknesses genetically programmed into us. Furthermore, subtle timeline nudges in the form of visions and visitations have also greatly altered the landscape of the future: Saul, Joan of Arc, Joseph Smith, and Adolf Hitler come to mind as examples of characters targeted for that purpose.

Lastly, for the sake of speculation, if Nordics are time traveling descendants from our current population, one has to wonder what land today is their ancestral land — assuming they aren’t descendants of an alternate Earth that existed prior to the timewar that spawned our current timeline. Based on the “Nordic” or “Scandinavian” nomenclature assigned to them, one might initially guess northern Europe, but that area doesn’t even have a manned space program. Careful comparison between stereotypical Nordics and existing populations shows a good match with the Slavic people: Eastern Europeans and Western Russians. Theosophists and Anthroposophists both had occult reasons to believe that Slavs would birth the next evolution of mankind, that they were a golden mean between East and West in terms of culture, wisdom, and of course genetics. Certainly the volksgeist of the Slavs is one conducive for that role, as even the Soviets were especially open to investigating the enhancement of psychic powers and achieving manipulation of time and space. Some of the brightest papers on fringe science have come out of Russia. There are several synchronistic oddities surrounding the Russian people, their language and history, to suggest some degree of involvement in time travel, or manipulation by time travelers. Additionally, areas where
Russia has built underground bases capable of surviving global cataclysms are also the regions where the Proto-Indo-Europeans emerged out of nowhere many thousands of years ago and seeded cultures across Asia, Europe, and the Middle East.

**Trans-Temporal Meta-Civilization**

In all likelihood, Nordics consist of different groups with different histories. Some could be time travelers from our future, others remnants of an ancient off-planetary superhuman civilization. Both share “fourth density” characteristics, both possess demiurgic technology, and both seem genetically related.

After time travel paradoxes, timeline dynamics, and other complications settle out, what’s left is a transcendent civilization whose cultures are distributed over spatial and temporal geography — cultures that mingle and tussle with each other across space and time. This civilization stands outside linear time. To us they would seem like time travelers from the future, beings from parallel timelines, travelers from other star systems, and ancient genetic manipulators all the same, since these are just different aspects of a common meta-civilization that has simultaneously inserted various extensions of itself into opportune locations along our linear timeline.

**Negative Nordics**

Perhaps the best-kept secret among alien disinformers is the existence of hostile Nordic factions. We hear plenty about Reptilians and their ubiquitous Grey underlings, but the common perception of Nordics is overwhelmingly positive. This is unfortunate because, as explained in *Discerning Alien Disinformation*, negative or cloned/impostor Nordics will be the first to initiate open contact with humanity, largely due to the psychological advantage offered by an appearance that is pleasing and familiar to humans, and because they may have the greatest vested interest in doing so.

Recall what Fore was told regarding such a scenario: “[T]he human-like beings were either slaves who would talk very little or genuine people of hers and others who look like humans who had an agenda to control humanity and stop it’s progress. She said the others were itching to stop our progress because at a certain point we would be acknowledge-able as independent beings. She said on her world about 60% of her kind thought of human kind as an experiment to be observed but generally do not care one way or the other. Roughly, 30% constitute ‘the others’ mentality. While she said, the minority constitute her point of view 14%.” If this is accurate, then almost a third of that civilization could be classified as negative Nordics.

In another post, Fore’s advisor mentioned Nordic genetic engineering projects that went awry: “She explained that in the past, where she came from, scientists had created artificial bodies that were capable of carrying a spiritual essence/artificial intelligence but she said the history of the project showed that when someone’s limitations were lifted, that the consciousness and personality of a person begins to warp out of control. She said some of the people within the designs started to act abnormally. She said the lack of limitations causes the personality of a person to (hard to put) become unstable. She said some became arrogant and some didn’t see limits to their interactions.”

While she also said corrections were made to prevent this, it highlights a pattern of arrogance and psychopathy in superhumans who revel in their superiority. The pattern is reminiscent of the Lucifer
Rebellion myth, where one third of the “angels” grew arrogant and refused to serve mankind. Even if only on a symbolic level, negative Nordics can be equated with the so-called Fallen Angels of Biblical myth.

The pattern is also reminiscent of the Nazi Master Race program that attempted to reconstruct the original antediluvian Nordic people, complete with their occult powers and mastery of spacetime. There is no better modern example of negative Nordic alien mindset and influence than the Nazis. Why were they so obsessed with blond-haired, blue-eyed, cold-hearted superhumans? Why did they want to turn humanity into these technologically-advanced super-aryans?

There is an interesting anecdote suggesting Hitler himself was a contactee of negative Nordics:

Hitler was talking one day to Rauschning, the Governor of Danzig, about the problem of a mutation of the human race. Rauschning, not possessing the key to such strange preoccupations, interpreted Hitler’s remarks in terms of a stock-breeder interested in the amelioration of German blood.

“But all you can do,” he replied, “is to assist Nature and shorten the road to be followed! It is Nature herself who must create for you a new species. Up till now the breeder has only rarely succeeded in developing mutations in animals — that is to say, creating himself new characteristics.”

“The new man is living amongst us now! He is here!” exclaimed Hitler, triumphantly. “Isn’t that enough for you? I will tell you a secret. I have seen the new man. He is intrepid and cruel. I was afraid of him.”

“In uttering these words,” added Rauschning, “Hitler was trembling in a kind of ecstasy.”

It was Rauschning, too, who related the following strange episode, about which Dr. Achille Delmas, a specialist in applied psychology, questioned him in vain. It is true that in a case like this psychology does not apply:

“A person close to Hitler told me that he wakes up in the night screaming and in convulsions. He calls for help, and appears to be half paralysed. He is seized with a panic that makes him tremble until the bed shakes. He utters confused and unintelligible sounds, gasping, as if on the point of suffocation. The same person described to me one of these fits, with details that I would refuse to believe had I not complete confidence in my informant.

“Hitler was standing up in his room, swaying and looking all round him as if he were lost. ‘It’s he, it’s he,’ he groaned, ‘he’s come for me!’ His lips were white; he was sweating profusely. Suddenly he uttered a string of meaningless figures, then words and scraps of sentences. It was terrifying. He used strange expressions strung together in bizarre disorder. Then he relapsed again into silence, but his lips still continued to move. He was then given a friction and something to drink. Then suddenly he screamed: ‘There! there! Over in the corner! He is there!’ — all the time stamping with his feet and shouting. To quieten him he was assured that nothing extraordinary had happened, and finally he gradually calmed down. After that he slept for a long time and became normal again…” (link)

Readers may be familiar with the Thule and Vril Society, the occult forerunners and influencers of
the Nazi movement. Activities included communicating with beings from Aldebaran, building advanced technology according to the guidance they received, and promoting supremacy of the Aryan/Nordic race. The Vril ladies were also “unusual.”

Unlike all other totalitarian bodies of history, Nazis stood not on the human ground of political theory or religious dogma, but on the alien ground of occult dynamics and demiurgic technology. The Nazi flag is a good example. Its black, white, and red colors growing outward symbolize the black, white, and red stages involved in the creation of the Philosopher’s Stone. The black swastika itself symbolizes the Black Sun, which is none other than the Corrupted Demiurge. The latter goes by another name in occultism: the Dead Head, meaning Dead Logos, represented as the skull and crossbones by the Templar Navy and Nazi SS. It is the central cosmic power source of all demiurgic technology, the Demiurge itself. It represents the ultimate power, at least within the physical domain, and as Persephone commented in *Matrix Reloaded*, what men with power want is more power.

As mentioned, there is antagonism among Nordic alien factions, and now it should be clear that some are quite arrogant, fascist, and psychopathic. In the Grail lore, there were those who protected the Grail, and those who were its enemies seeking to usurp it. We must keep this in mind should Nordic aliens show themselves to the world one day.

Off-Planetary Ancestry

Finally, let’s examine portions of the Nordic meta-civilization located in our distant past. Several sources link them to a planet once located between Mars and Jupiter. Michael Tsarion has this to say:

We read from various sources that approximately 50,000 years ago a certain planetary body in our own solar system was mysteriously destroyed. This body has been called Tiamat, Phaeton, Lucifer, Marduk, Maldek, Rahab, and even Luna (not connected to the name later given to the moon). It was believed to have existed between Mars and Jupiter and was referred to as the “second sun” and may have been mistaken as such, because its atmosphere was resplendent with reflections of the actual sun. This is not as improbable as it sounds since Venus, the “Morning Star,” the second planet from the sun and the third brightest object in the sky, is so bright that it casts a distinct shadow on a moonless night.

Around the time of this event, the solar system, and later the Earth, was colonized by extra-terrestrial beings who were either attracted to this solar system by that conflagration or upon coming here caused the calamity themselves. Whether the disaster was natural or not, the result was that mankind on Earth experienced total and long lasting chaos and confusion. The surface of the planet Tiamat consisted mostly of great oceans. Upon its destruction, these vast saline waters entered into the Earth’s atmosphere causing the first of two massive prehistoric deluges and tribulations that mankind would experience. It is thought that the alien invaders took full advantage of this predicament and moved in to bring about colonization. They met no resistance from the disoriented and weakened inhabitants of the Earth who believed their visitors were powerful gods.

Some theorists, like the energetic Erich von Daniken, have also determined that there was a great intergalactic war between two (or possibly more) extraterrestrial forces in a
neighboring galaxy or solar system. The result of this titanic war had enormous consequences for the Earth because, it is postulated, the losers on being pursued into our system pretended to take refuge on Tiamat. They even erected a makeshift radar-type station there to decoy their pursuers. However, the defeated ones had really taken refuge on planet Earth, not on Tiamat. Upon their arrival, they almost immediately went underground into existing caverns that through scans of the planet they knew existed.

They also descended into other caverns that they themselves cut out of the living rock. There were at least five entire continents on Earth in primeval times called Appalachia, Tyrhennia, Beringia, Fennoscandia, and Oceania. Our present continents are remnants of these. Beneath them were literally thousands of miles of subterranean passages, caverns, and refuges. Some of these remain today and experts know that many of them were not made naturally. Many of our quaint myths and tales, like those of Dwarves, Trolls, Elves, the “Little People” and the Scandinavian “King Under the Mountain,” for example, concern these subterranean worlds. Almost all the native American Indian tribes speak of their original residence beneath the surface of the Earth.

The pursuers, the victors of the war in the heavens, erroneously thinking that their enemies were on Tiamat utterly annihilated it. (Tsarion, 5-6)

A similar story was given to Orfeo Angelucci:

Time is a dimension as your scientists now correctly surmise. But it is only a dimension when applied to the various densities of matter. In the absolute, or non-material states of consciousness, Time is non-existent. So let us say that in one of the time frames or dimensions, there was once a planet in the solar system of Earth, called Lucifer. It was of the least material density of any of the planets. Its orbit lay between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. Among the etheric beings, or heavenly hosts, it was called the Morning Star. Among all planets it was the most radiant planet in the universe.

The name of the prince of this shining planet was also Lucifer, a beloved Son of God. Earth’s legends about Lucifer and his hosts are true. Pride and arrogance grew in the heart of Lucifer and in the hearts of many Luciferians. They discovered all of the secrets of matter and also the great secret of the Creative Word. Eventually they sought to turn this omnipotent force against their brothers who were less selfish. Also against the etheric beings and the Father, or Source, for it became their desire to rule the universe. You know the rest of the legend: how Lucifer and his followers were cast down from their high estate. In simpler words, the Luciferians who were embodied then in the most attenuated manifestation of matter “fell” into embodiments in one of the most dense material evolutions, which is the animalistic evolution of Earth.

We were among those who did not join the Luciferians in their revolt against the etheric hosts. Thus although the Luciferians shattered our radiant planet in the holocaust of their war, we entered the etheric, non-material worlds in the higher octaves of light as liberated Sons of God, while the Luciferian hosts fell into the dream of mind in matter upon the dark planet of sorrows.

While our brothers are lost in the hell of unreality and turn their blinded, imploring eyes to the mute heavens, we can never forget them. We intercede unceasingly for your peoples’ liberation. Thus today every bondsman upon Earth has within himself the power through the mystery of the Etheric Christ Spirit to cancel his captivity.
Eventually all of mankind deep-drowned in Time and Matter, will surface to reality when they recognize their basic unity of being. When man is for man honestly and sincerely and not selfishly arrayed against himself, the hour of deliverance from the underworld will be close at hand. We wait now beyond the great, sad river of Time and Sorrows with open arms and hearts to receive among us our lost and prodigal brothers in that great day when they rejoin us as liberated Sons of God. (Angelucci, 98-103)

Another source, the Cassiopaeanean Transcripts, also conveys the same basic story. According to the transcripts, approximately 80,000 years ago a planet named Kantek existed between Mars and Jupiter. Its inhabitants were “fourth density” superhuman Nordics who were polarized into two opposing factions. They possessed the equivalent of demirugic technology and deployed it in their war. The result was irreversible destabilization of the planet and its subsequent shattering. A portion of the civilization was evacuated to Earth, and they brought with them one or several devices equivalent to the Grail Stone, termed TDARMs (trans-dimensional atomic remolecularizers) in the transcripts. On Earth, they encountered the relatively more primitive and swarthy Atlantean natives, who were forced to coexist with the newcomers. Thus Atlantis remained, until later widespread abuse of demiurgic technology once again destabilized the planet and, along with various cometary disasters, ended that civilization in a pole shift. Numerous cataclysms happened in the millennia to follow, each one further scattering and devolving the remaining survivors.

In essence, these sources suggest that a portion of the Nordic civilization “fell” into the physical domain of Earth and submerged directly into its history and gene pool. In essence, they became human.

**Genetic and Cultural Legacy on Earth**

The implication is that white people are their most direct descendants, and are therefore the most “off-planetary” of the human races, although portions of those same genetics can be found in other races due to mixing over the millennia. As many have observed, the proclivity of Western culture for exploiting and ruining the environment makes sense if whites are not even from this planet. Likewise with their affinity for scientific innovation and its use for war, and an imperialistic drive to dominate lesser cultures. A close scrutiny of the anomalies in the supposed evolutionary history of the white race shows they could not have descended from Africans adapting to colder climates.

In any case, the point is that after the fall of Atlantis and subsequent cataclysms, the earthbound descendants of Nordic emigrants resettled in other areas of the globe. One portion seems to have settled in Western Russia near Turkey, and they are now known as the Proto-Indo-Europeans. Another settled somewhere in the Northern Atlantic, and a smaller fragment took root in the Pyrenees. As a matter of speculation, the R1b and R1a haplogroups (genetic markers) could trace back to these two primary branches.

In time, they developed into the Hyperboreans, Indo-Aryans of India, Indo-Europeans of Europe, and the Indo-Iranians, which went on to seed further cultures like the Sumerians, Egyptians, Dravidians, Celts, Persians, and so on. Locations include Iceland (probably Hyperborea, and the source for Plato’s given dimensions of Atlantis), Turkey, India, Egypt, Spain, Malta, Canary Islands, Ireland and Scotland, Central America, and later archaic Greece, Phoenicia, northern Japan, and lastly Easter Island. Megalithic technology was their signature. According to researcher Jim Alison, the “sacred sites” they left behind form a great circle on the globe whose northern pole lies in
western Alaska — close to where Charles Hapgood determined the previous geographic North Pole existed 80,000 years ago. That doesn’t indicate when the sites were built, only that the builders desired to encode the old North Pole in the distribution of their post-foleshift structures. For example, Easter Island is on this circle, but it wasn’t colonized until roughly 500 C.E. by tall red haired whites, probably from northern Scotland.

Each of these cultures had close ties with their transcendent Nordic counterparts; for instance, the mysterious Tuatha de Danann, a technologically advanced race of fair-haired people who fled to Ireland after the destruction of their homeland (likely Iceland, though some propose they were a tribe of Israel), eventually made their exit from Irish history by joining the Sidhe underground, who were a transcendent race of godlike beings and, like the Sylphs, could have been their un-fallen, non-devolved, Nordic alien counterparts.

As detailed by Frank Joseph in his book *Survivors of Atlantis*, the Nordic diaspora also built the Great Pyramid and installed the Grail Stone therein, founded pre-dynastic Egypt, and seeded the Meso-American civilizations. Their standard procedure was to command a large native populations using only a small number of their own, which is easy enough to do with advanced technology and knowledge. For instance, in India they were the earliest Brahmin kings. In China, they were the demigods known as the Three Sovereigns who, according to Chinese mythology, “used their magical powers to improve the lives of their people.” In Egypt, they were progenitors of the pharaonic dynasties. In Meso-America, they became the basis of the Quetzalcoatl myth and established the Mayan Calendars.

Every culture they founded was impressed with the same proto-myth, which encoded the “situation” regarding the nature of our reality, how this timeline came to be, and where it’s all going. These myths encode the cosmological war between the Corrupted Demiurge and the Logos, the off-planetary history of the ancient Nordic civilization, the true role of demiurgic technology, and the cataclysms that accompanied its abuse. This same stream of Gnostic revelation is repeated in certain works of fiction today — films, books, and television series — which are the modern equivalent of myths, consciously or subconsciously inspired by the same forces. In the next article, I will explore the unified Gnostic picture encoded in these ancient and modern myths.

---

**Referenced/Further Resources**


*Operation Trojan Horse* – John Keel. Free PDF on Fortean phenomena, especially the duplicitous, ambiguous, hidden nature of the alien presence. Cites anecdotes of human-like aliens as well. Good book to read on the subject of “cryptoterrestrials.”
Project Camelot Interview with John Robbie – UK researcher who died of a brain tumor not long after deeply investigating the “human-like aliens among us” phenomenon.

Project Camelot Interview with Jordan Maxwell – He shares his encounter with a human-like alien, and gives a pessimistic conclusion as to the fate of mankind.

As The Days of Noah Were – Chuck Missler. Short article citing examples of superhuman aliens in the Bible.

The Battle of Nuremberg – Alien infighting witnessed over the skies of Europe in 1561.

A Rosicrucian Notebook (English Ed. 1992, Samuel Weiser Inc.) – by Willie Schrödter. Compendium of occultism, mysticism, and weird science that includes a chapter on Elemental beings, some of whom may have been alien.

The Comte de Gabalis — Abbé de Villars. Series of discourses by a Rosicrucian initiate on the practice of humans intermarrying with Elemental beings.

Travis Walton – One time alien abductee, famous for his encounter in which he saw Grey-like beings and Nordic aliens in blue bodysuits.

Secret of the Saucers – Orfeo Angelucci. In which he chronicles his encounters with human-like aliens.

UFOs in the Gulf Breeze-Pensacola Area: Contact Since 1955 – Anonymous contactee discusses his childhood visit to a Nordic alien base inside a mountain.

My Experiences (Grey, Pleiadeans and Oddities) – ZIP archive of main forum threads by Fore, where he details his life-long interaction with alien beings including a Nordic-like female who became his advisor/handler.

The World’s First DNA PCR Investigation of Biological Evidence from an Alien Abduction – Bill Chalker. Analysis of the Peter Khoury case where a strand of blond alien hair revealed traces of Celtic, Basque, and rare Asian genetics.

The Dawn of Aquarius: A New People, A New Consciousness, A New Era – Mehmet Sabeheddin. Overview of the Slavic race as the forerunners of the next stage in human evolution.

Atlantis, Alien Visitation and Genetic Manipulation – Michael Tsarion. Attempts to trace the extraterrestrial and terrestrial history and influence of the alien meta-civilization. Tsarion digs deep into arcane sources and extracts relevant pieces.


Thule Gesellschaft and the Vril Society – Conspiracy lore regarding the occult forerunners of the Nazis and their connection to aliens from Aldebaran.

Survivors of Atlantis – Frank Joseph. An excellent compendium of historical and mythological information concerning the advanced post-Atlantean survivors and their cultural legacy. An important read if you are interested in where the earthbound descendants of the Nordic meta-
civilization set up root, and what cultures and bloodlines were seeded by them.

Hyperborea – Wikipedia entry on Hyperborea, a land in the Northern Atlantic that was once home to an advanced society of fair-skinned people.

The Relationship Between Basque and Ainu – Ainu are a tribe in northern Japan who look Caucasian, have Greek customs, and their language has commonalities with Basque. Compare with DNA recovery from Peter Khoury’s case.

The Basques – Interesting background on the inhabitants of the Pyrenees.

Proof that Earth’s Poles Have Shifted – Viewzone. Includes information on Charles Hapgood’s findings, that the location of the North Pole 80,000 years ago was in Alaska.

The Prehistoric Alignments of World Wonders – Jim Alison. Shows that sacred sites, likely built by the earthbound Nordic descendants, form a Great Circle around the Earth, with its north pole located in Alaska, very close to where Charles Hapgood determined Earth’s old geographic North pole used to be.

Pharaoh Tutankhamun, Akhenaten and Amenhotep III were R1b – Forum discussion on Tutankhamen having possible European roots. Ties into the events of the 18th Dynasty and the Ark Stone leaving Egypt.

Everything You Know is Wrong – Lloyd Pye. Book on human origins and anomalies in our genetic evolution pointing to alien tinkering. This book also implies a lot of genetic engineering was occurring around the time of the fall of Atlantis and afterwards, particularly with the domestication of grains and animals.

The Jinn – Website dedicated to studying the djinn phenomenon. The djinn classification seems to include both etheric/elemental type beings, and actual alien beings as well. They were a category of non-human life familiar to the Persians, and well known today in Arab tradition, enough so that laws were passed regulating human interaction with them.

Changelog
Apr 14, 2011 – Version 0.1 posted.

(index)

7 - Dawn of a New Cosmic Day

9 June 11 (gnosis)
©2011, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

With the prerequisites covered, I can now move into the heart of the Gnosis series. This article and the next concern cosmic cycles, the end of the world as we know it, alien timewars, and the Big Picture of what it all means.
Demiurgic Weaponry in Indian Mythology

After the Atlantean and subsequent cataclysms, technologically advanced survivors fractured into various populations that colonized separate areas around the globe. Wherever they went, they commandeered the local native population. It was typical for a small number of fair skinned elite to rule over a vast population of darker skinned primitives.

One group of survivors colonized Northern India and became the Indo-Aryans, whose symbol was the swastika. They impressed upon the natives the foundations of the Vedic culture, which included the caste system, complicated metaphysics, technological instructions, and myths encoding the antediluvian history of their people. They took up elite roles as scientist-priests, known as Brahmins, and were the earliest of the Brahmin kings. The same pattern played out elsewhere with the Chinese, Celtic, Meso-American, Sumerian and Egyptian cultures.

The Indo-Aryan culture contributed significantly to what was later woven into the two major Indian epics, the *Mahabharata* and *Ramayana*. Like the Old Testament, there is a layer of technological information embedded in these myths. As is well known, the Indian epics contain detailed information on flying vehicles called *Vimanas*. Another example is the divine weaponry employed in their wars, which are fundamentally demiurgic in operation.

Professor Jarrod Whitaker wrote an interesting paper systematizing the use of demiurgic energy in divine weaponry:

> [I]n no other mythological corpus is the concept of divine weapons more developed and more complex than in the two Indian epics.

> [T]he divine weapons cannot be properly understood without a comprehensive examination of the concept of *tejas* or “fiery energy.” [B]ecause *tejas* govern the way the divine weapons operate in the mythology, the primary aim of the following paper is to outline its “intrinsic laws” and to codify them systematically into a working model.

> [T]he fire of the divine weapons is not the element itself, but the more subtle energy-substance *tejas* or “fiery energy”. These are not weapons of fire *per se*, but weapons of energy.

> The Sanskrit word derives from the root *tij-* meaning “to be sharp”. […] By the time of the *Upanisads*, *tejas* surpasses other energy-substances while incorporating their diverse roles. It becomes the central creative principle of the supreme god, and furthermore, the energy of all movement and activity (*rajoguna*) in the universe. It is further ascribed to be the subtle essence of the Hindu *atman* or “soul”, and thus “is the ever-changing energy which passed on along the downward current of evolution and taken back into evolution.”

> (Whitaker, Divinity Weapons and *Tejas* in the Two Indian Epics. *Indo-Iranian Journal*, 2000. Volume 43 #2, pp. 87-113)

Apparently *tejas* was their term for etheric energy. It is that which comprises the lower part of the soul, permeates creation, and ultimately weaves linear time and space. It is demiurgic energy in every sense. Whitaker then quotes Magnone:

> “As an energy, *tejas* is eminently transferable, and the effects of its transfer are different
Etheric energy is the substrate of reality, and matter is but its condensation or epiphenomenon. It is the Universal Solvent, the primary agent involved in the Alchemical dictum “Solve Et Coagula” or “Dissolve and Coagulate.” What the Demiurge creates, the Demiurge destroys. The significance of this will be elaborated later in the article. Magnone continues:

“When tejas is intended in the narrower sense, i.e., as the cause of mere excellence, and not generally of existence, then its acquisition and loss do not entail an absolute inception or cessation, but simply a promotion or demotion to or from a higher level of existence.”

This is precisely the other function of etheric energy within the human organism, to enable perception of higher realms and transubstantiation or translation into same. The cycles of higher and lower etheric energy concentrations on Earth dictates the cyclical proximity of our environment from the higher ones inhabited by inter-dimensional humanoids.

Whitaker comments:

On the gross level, tejas preserves its ancient connections with fire and heat, and when possessed by persons or objects suggests the English words “glory”, “majesty”, “ardour”, and “splendour.” On the subtle level, as an energy, tejas is responsible for knowledge, and when in excess is highly destructive.

The Ark of the Covenant was associated with a glowing plasmatic vortex known as the Shekhina, meaning “Glory of the Lord.” As explained, the Shekhina was the veritable “soul” of the device, the entitized thought-form anchored to the Ark Stone. The glowing energy field itself was an intense etheric vortex that precipitated electrical charges and hence ionized the air. The Ark conferred illumination to prepared initiates but destruction to others. The Ark was therefore an example in Semitic lore of the same type of divine weaponry mentioned in the Indian epics.

What is central is the mental relationship divine weapons have with their wielder as they reside in the mind. Furthermore, divine weapons are closely connected with such emotions as rage and anger. When unleashed they invoke all the raw power of a warrior’s fury, infused with the tejas of the gods, and thus are capable of laying waste hundreds of opponents in one concentrated act of violence. […]

Most divine weapons are named after the deities who preside over them, and, in general, they manifest the natural phenomena associated with the particular powers they reflect. […]

The divine weapons are also sentient beings, who often appear anthropomorphically. They can even assume therianthropic forms, which in a bestial fury tear their victims apart. The personification of divine weapons develops to the point in the Puranic literature where the Sudarsana discus, as one example, is not only “capable of following Visnu’s instructions and acting independently of him, but it is also capable of feeling emotions like wrath and dissatisfaction.”

Ultimate, all divya astras are weapons of a single divine energy – tejas. This energy is
channeled into the physical world by their wielders, who, with the correct mantras and, more importantly, their own reserves of tejas, control the energy by uniting it with a more tangible weapon, most commonly an arrow, or the energy can be simply released on its own. Divine weapons are far more destructive and efficacious than ordinary weapons (sastras) and their use enhances a warrior’s natural prowess in combat. However, this weaponry represents immense and often volatile power, and is reserved for the greatest of heroes, putting them in direct communion with the gods, as any warrior possessing a divine weapon can unleash the energy of the gods in the human realm.

Again, demiurgic technology may employ entitized thoughtforms to automate tasks. In the previous article this was stated in regard to Gray alien automatons and alien ships that carry out commands delegated to them.

In the case of the Ark of the Covenant, the inhabiting entity Yahweh was precisely one of wrath and dissatisfaction. Yahweh was not localized to the Ark Stone like some kind of etheric CPU, but was rather a cosmological intelligence that the Ark Stone tapped into like a computer terminal into a remote server, just as in the Indian epics the weapons were often possessed by the tejas of various gods. The warrior combining his etheric energy with a mantra to activate the weapon and channel the “energy of the gods” is precisely what the Mosaic Priests employed. Recall that the Great Pyramid functions as a vocal resonator while the shape itself concentrates etheric energy. The Ark Stone in the King’s Chamber must have been used to “unleash the energy of the gods in the human realm” and thereby allowed Yahweh, aka the Corrupted Demiurge, to enter the human realm much more deeply than before.

Whitaker describes the basic principles of etheric warfare:

Firstly, tejas is harnessed, absorbed, neutralized, and contained by other entities that possess tejas themselves. Tejas is the active substance required to deal with tejas. Secondly, various qualities of tejas affect the outcome of the neutralization process. Here a priest’s tejas is superior to a warrior’s tejas. Furthermore, these qualities define the hierarchy of tejas. Thus, not only does one need greater quantities of tejas, but to defeat and opponent of superior tejas one needs more potent energy, which is illustrated by Visvamitra’s concern to attain brahmanhood in order to gain access to brahmatejas.

Different grades of etheric energy exist. As explained, lower grade energy can be harvested from freshly boiled plants and cereals, higher grade from sacrificed animals, even higher from sacrificed humans. Emotional energy of extreme joy or anger can likewise produce it. But none compares to the quality, quantity, and vibration of etheric energy channeled directly from the Logos, hence the Grail Stone, activated by those initiated into the Christ consciousness, was more powerful than its earlier cruder function as the Ark Stone, which was powered by animal sacrifices and blind worship. It’s not just the quantity or amplitude of the energy that matters, but the quality or frequency.

When Vasistha absorbs and contains the Brahma astra, its tejas is so intense that the brahman is transformed, making him more violent and a threat to the universe. The incoming fiery energy is so excessive that flames shoot forth from his skin. In a verse that encompasses the neutralization process, the text even implies that the brahman could lose control of himself. Vasistha is told: “You must contain the tejas with your own tejas!” […] an intake of excessive energy can cause uncontrollable rage or self
annihilation. […] Clearly, one must possess adequate tejas to handle an intake of new energy.

Frank Joseph emphases in *Opening the Ark of the Covenant* that the Ark Stone induced megalomania in many of its operators, tyrant pharaoh Akhenaten being an example. The Levite priests underwent special training that elevated their own etheric energy levels and qualities before they could even handle the Ark. The function of special gear they wore, such as the mysterious breastplate worn by Aaron (Moses’ brother), is revealed by what Whitaker says next:

> Various kinds of amulets (*mani*) appear throughout the Vedic literature, which bestow upon the wear many different energy-substances, including tejas, when bound to a part of the body. […] This is also the case with other items and materials, such as a gold plate, which bestows upon the wearer its innate tejas. Thus, the innate energy of these items is drawn upon to augment one’s own energy pool.

As for excessive energy causing fiery discharges, the Ark was known for this, but it also brings to mind spontaneous human combustion caused by premature kundalini activation. It further relates to the ancient Gaul warriors who went into battle without combustible clothing. They wore only metal neck torcs, open ended metal rings fitted around their necks, which were identical in function to Lakhovsky coils, or electromagnetic resonators that raise etheric energy levels in the wearer. The Celts/Gauls were among the last remnants of the post-Atlantean superhuman culture, and the Druids were their equivalent of the Indian Brahmins.

The above merely illustrates the use of demiurgic technology in common combat. But its effects are not limited to the battlefield. The central theme of this Gnosis article is that demiurgic technology can have global or universal effects. Whitaker cites one example:

> The cataclysmic evil (*sumahan dosah*) of the divine weapons is so devastating that it can destroy the universe. This is a striking statement considering the importance of the divine weapons. At its strongest, dosa translates as “evil”, but means at least a “fault”, “deficiency” or “detrimental effect.” Therefore, what is the “detrimental effect” that can bring about the end of the universe?

> […]By drawing upon themes already encountered with the principles of the divine weapons the answer can be simply stated: if a divine weapon struck a being of insufficient tejas (*alpatejas*), its inherent tejas will not be neutralized; moreover, the divine weapon will take the tejas of its victim(s), causing it to increase in size, and after many such incidents it will possess enough energy to threaten the universe. This is the cataclysmic danger in the divine weapons! This occurs in one of the longest divine weapon episodes. The *Narayana astra* is directed at the human footsoldiers and begins to swell to such proportions that the universe is nearly destroyed. It is only by Krsna’s invention and his direct concern with cutting off the divine weapon’s access to any potential fuel sources than the *Narayana astra* is finally countered.

> The preceding analysis assumes that a divine weapon will appropriate the tejas of an inadequate target. This can be verified as the text reveals more about the nature of the divine weapons in the warning that identifies their misuse as a dosa or “evil.”

That is but one example of the misuse of demiurgic technology, in this case an etheric chain reaction that would consume the whole world if given the opportunity. Wilhelm Reich explained
how orgone energy flows from low concentrations to high concentrations; thunderstorms inherently
do this by gathering it from the surrounding environment in a chain reaction until discharging the
energy via lightning and precipitation.

Point being that if an extreme influx of etheric energy meets an insufficiently prepared recipient, the
low-to-high energy flow may mean the recipient is annihilated when his/her/its etheric foundation is
vacuumed away. As will be discussed below, this is one possibility we face regarding 2012 type
phenomena.

Ambient Etheric Energy Cycles

Finally, Whitaker touches on what will become the presiding theme for the remainder of this article:

The last principle pertaining to the divine weapons is Arjuna’s loss of them after
Kuruksetra war. There are two central factors that relate to the loss of the divine
weapons; (1) the change in the yugas or “cosmic ages”, and (2) the subsequent loss of
tejas.

By the epic period, a complex system of cosmological time had developed based on the
four ages of the cosmos (yugas) that make up one complete cyclic age of existence
(mahayuga). The four successive yugas are characterized by progressively decreasing
lifespans, virtues, and quality of human life. The Ramayana takes place in the Treta
yuga, while the Mahabharata is set at the end of the Dvapara yuga. At the end of the
great Kuruksetra war Kali yuga begins. The present age of the universe, Kali yuga, is
characterized by the final decline of the dharma and a general sense of suffering and
impurity. The world and human beings are at their worst in all matters. It is this general
sense of deterioration in Kali yuga that can be specifically correlated with the loss of the
divine weapons due to an intrinsic decline in the potential tejas available to all mortals,
including warriors.

This speaks of a great decline in the ambient etheric energy field that triggers the onset of a spiritual
dark age. Frank Joseph pins the end of the Kuruksetra war to around 3150 B.C., which is when the
final post-Atlantean advanced civilization broke up and migrated around the globe. Those arriving
in Central/South America, for instance, established the Long Count calendar (aka the Mayan
Calendar) whose most commonly accepted starting point is August 14th, 3114 B.C. There are other
calendars around the world that also start around that time. The Long Count calendar is one that
measures linear time, so the Mayans referred to its beginning as the beginning of time as we now
know it.

Of course, ambient etheric energy varies in a complicated way over time and geographic locale,
somewhat like graphs of economic indicators that contain major cycles and numerous sub-cycles
along with random variables thrown in. Thus it’s not a smooth four-stage sinusoid as the four yugas
might imply. In short, the world was once more etherically charged, and will be again. (See my theoretical graph of etheric energy cycles based on the subharmonics of Earth’s precessional cycle. Turns out the Platonic Year is identically how long it takes light to travel between Earth and the Galactic Center, suggesting some kind of coupling mechanism).

To turn to the loss of the divine weapons: the Kuruksetra war is resolved, and Kali yuga
commences. […] Arjuna begins to lament his defeat, and blames his inability to employ
his divine weapons on the nature of fate. The divine Vyasa drives the point home when
he informs Arjuna: “He who was once powerful loses that power, and he who was once lord is ruled by others. Your astras, which have accomplished their mission, have gone and they will return in the future to your hand when the [appropriate] time arrives.” Arjuna’s loss of the divine weapons is thus due to the workings of fate (daiva) and time (kala), and one manifestation of time is the yugas.

The loss of the divine weapons can also be correlated with a loss of tejas. [...] If Arjuna has lost his tejas it would explain the reason behind the mysterious disappearance of his divine weapons. Without the correct quantity of tejas Arjuna will be unable to control or employ the divine weapons successfully. [...] The sage Vyasa informs Arjuna that his weakness in battle is for the following reason: “Power, intuition, tejas, and foresight exist in times of prosperity, an they perish in opposite conditions… All this has its root in time, which is the principle cause of the universe … Time thus unexpectedly takes it all away again. [The wise man] knows in yuga after yuga that the natural law dharma is crippled in one foot, and that the life expectancy and energy of mortals follow the rules of the yuga.”

The epic authors are suggesting that in the world in which they live, Kali yuga, no one can own or employ divine weapons of the caliber portrayed in Dvapara yuga. This is because of a decline in the potential amount of tejas any given individual can acquire. If the divine weapons are left in Arjuna’s possession, his de-energized state would put the universe (not to mention himself) in jeopardy, since the divine weapons will not be able to be controlled. Thus, the divine weapons are withdrawn from circulation, so to speak, and returned to their divine owners.

And there we have an answer to the mystery of why humanoid aliens bestow and retrieve demiurgic technology, including the Ark/Grail stone, from the human sphere at certain times. They do so in concert with ambient etheric energy cycles. These cycles not only dictate when it’s even possible to openly use such devices within the Earth realm, but may also determine when it becomes necessary to use them. All this will be made clear below. Take note, however, that the ebb and flow of etheric energy over time applies more to us “mortals” who languish in times of low energy like fish flopping aimlessly at low tide, while the alien beings withdraw to the ocean and remain fully immersed and mobile.

In summary, what can be gathered from the Indian epics is that there once existed an age where etheric energy levels were high enough that demiurgic technology was in common use for the common good. Eventually the seeds of corruption took root and competing factions arose that inevitably fell into war. Their wars used demiurgic technology for destructive purposes, including certain misuses that threatened the very existence of the world. Subsequently, ambient etheric energy levels declined and these weapons could no longer be used as effectively within the human realm. Their superhuman owners largely withdrew the devices and the disempowered human remnants went on their way as mere ordinary mortals, into the well of linear time and limited existence. Thus began the onset of a spiritual dark age in which we still exist.

But as mentioned, even within the dark age there have been localized spikes in etheric energy levels, 2300-1100 B.C. being an example, which is the time period when the Ark Stone entered into Egyptian and Semitic history, and 450-1300 A.D. when the Grail Stone appeared in European and Arabian history. According to the Indian epics, these devices will surface once more, like Excalibur from the lake, to be used in a time of need; it shall occur when the ambient energy levels rise to
where they once were. 

The Mayan Long Count calendar, whose starting point coincides with the onset of the Kali yuga, reaches the end of its 5124 year cycle on December 21st, 2012. For this and many other reasons, we may expect that the years, decades, or centuries to follow will see the return of the Etheric Tide, the reactivation of demiurgic technologies in the Earth sphere, and the resumption of open communion with otherworldly beings. The alien disinformation agenda to acclimatize our ignorant and skeptical culture to the alien presence is advance preparation.

**Alchemical Evolution of Mankind**

This “Etheric Tide” theory brings up an important parallel to Alchemy. The physical and spiritual evolution of mankind has always been punctuated by cyclical cataclysms. Each cataclysm destroyed the existing order and triggered a period of chaos that eventually gave birth to a more sophisticated order. Our civilization now stands at the cusp of another such discontinuity. Like the cycle of reincarnation, the death and rebirth of civilization is an Alchemical process paralleling the production of the Philosopher’s Stone.

In Alchemy, a mineral solution imbued with crude etheric energy is allowed to putrefy in a vessel so that biological activity brings the etheric charge to a higher order. The vessel is then heated to distill off a liquid containing the living etheric essence. The remnant matter is heated until dry, then the distillate is mixed back into it; what does not dissolve is filtered out. The resulting solution is incubated for some time before the distillation process repeats. Over succeeding repetitions, a portion of the dried matter becomes increasingly etherized until the final steps trigger its quantum transformation into a quasi-living substance. When tinged with gold, this transformed substance becomes the Philosopher’s Stone.

On Earth, crude etheric energy enters the food chain and ascends upwards, driving the proliferation of life, evolution of consciousness, and production of higher soul energies in sentient beings. When conditions are ripe, a quickening process distills the “chosen” from the “damned.” The latter undergo further tribulations that decimate their numbers and liberate their soul energies. The survivors and harvested soul energies represent the distillate, the seed and nutrient, derived from the old civilization. Both pour into the post-cataclysmic world to initiate a new civilization of higher order; surviving remnants of the old who cannot adapt die out. Civilization begins anew and grows until reaching ripeness once more.

With each cycle, the population evolves somewhat in terms of conscious sophistication. After sufficient repetitions, portions of the population most amenable to spiritualizing influences undergo a transformation into superhuman existence, especially in the final stages where additional catalysts come into play. These superhumans join the ranks of the parallel hidden meta-civilization mentioned previously that thrives outside linear time while civilizations within linear time continue to rise and fall. They are like the developing spiritual core within an individual that transcends and survives birth and death.

But as much as human evolution parallels production of the Stone, there are some important differences. Whereas an individual makes the Philosopher’s Stone, numerous cosmic Alchemists are involved in our case, each with their own idea of where to go with human evolution:
In the case of the Stone, some Alchemists make it to give themselves eternal youth and perfect health. For them it’s a source of etheric nourishment. Likewise, some cosmic Alchemists derive nourishment from our soul energies, and they have advanced our evolution only to produce a higher grade of this energy for themselves. Robert Monroe’s account of loosh production in *Far Journeys* illustrates this perfectly. And just as the Philosopher’s Stone becomes fatal when multiplied beyond a certain order of power and therefore useless as a panacea, so would humanity become useless as a source of etheric and astral food should we acquire sufficient superhuman status; therefore the predatory cosmic Alchemists are deeply invested in keeping us down, using cataclysms only as a kind of winepress to produce their precious ambrosia.

Some Alchemists tinge the Stone with gold or silver to produce more of the same. Likewise, cosmic Alchemists may aim to tinge our superhuman descendants with an impulse to create more like themselves, for good or bad depending on the tingeing. (An example would Fourth Density graduates polarizing either Service-to-Self or Service-to-Others depending on what existing Fourth Density forces they encounter and align with. In other words, new superhumans who encounter the already existing meta-civilization will be tinged by the ideologies of its various factions).

Some Alchemists employ the luminescent properties of a highly refined Stone to produce ever-burning lamps, and likewise some cosmic Alchemists could be aiming to potentialize mankind into shining beacons of divine power.

When immensely scaled up in power, size, and complexity, the Philosopher’s Stone becomes the Ark Stone or Grail Stone, demiurgic technologies capable of large scale reconfigurations of matter, energy, space, and time. Likewise, superhumans who achieve even higher levels of spiritual evolution asymptotically approach the creational capabilities of the Infinite Creator.

Why is this parallel between Alchemy and human evolution important?

First, because it says something about what this planet will face in the near future. As mentioned, our civilization stands on the cusp of another cataclysm. Unlike previous ones, this may be our final. And like the final distillation in Alchemy, additional etheric catalysts may be involved to boost the transformation. For instance, there is good chance our solar system will be irradiated by the aforementioned tidal wave of etheric energy. The psychological, spiritual, and perceptual changes induced by elevated etheric energy levels, along with the heliophysical and geophysical impact of same, accounts for a broad range of signs foretold in numerous end times prophecies.

Second, because a dictum of Alchemy states, “Solve Et Coagula” or “Dissolve and Coagulate.” This is the aforementioned process of order dissolving into chaos, and chaos precipitating into a new order. It is symbolized in the myth of the phoenix bird, which burns itself to ashes only to emerge as a worm that grows once again into the bird. And it is contained in the “Illuminati” slogan “ordo ab chao,” order from chaos. As I will show in this article, the final step of our Alchemical evolution involves dissolution of reality as we know it and its reconfiguration into a new higher order. The only question concerns whom shall forge the new order? That is the crux of this demiurgic war.
Effects of the Etheric Tide

Let’s look more closely at the effects of increased ambient etheric energy levels.

First, because etheric and lifeforce energy are essentially the same, health and longevity will increase for those acclimated to that quantity and quality of energy. But if the influx rate of energy is too great, there is risk of overwhelming the fragile etheric energy circuits of the body and causing injury. Likewise, if the quality of the energy is mismatched, either the body fails to receive it or else receives the wrong type to its own detriment. If the Etheric Tide is gradual enough that generations can slowly acclimate to it, that would be ideal. Bible researchers believe our antediluvian ancestors had lifespans in the hundreds of years; Nordic aliens likewise have lifespans in the centuries, and Alchemists who imbibe the Elixir of Life can do likewise. This would become the norm should ambient etheric energy saturate a society acclimated to it. The primordial Golden Age, a bygone age of peace and plenty without premature death or disease, would have required such conditions.

Second, there would be activation and growth of latent psychic organs in the etheric body of humans. By default, humans are currently born with very limited psychic abilities because neither our crippled genetics nor the ambient etheric levels support their development. For such people, it takes disciplined occult training to activate and develop these abilities. As both Fore and the Gulf Breeze contactee explained, aliens naturally emit high levels of etheric energy and, through a proximity effect, can cause psychic activation in nearby humans. In the case of an Etheric Tide, a natural phenomenon would do likewise to receptive members of the population. The result would be increased intuition, clairvoyance, and other supernatural powers. Ambient etheric energy levels provide a nutritive medium for the further development of psychic organs, leading eventually to the types of powers now only seen in aliens and occult masters.

Third, since through astral projection, hypnopompic states, and trained clairvoyance it is already possible to see otherwise cloaked or phased out ships in the skies and alien beings around us, an Etheric Tide would force their visibility on a far wider scale. Aliens will then be unable to hide their presence, hence the alien disinformation campaign now underway to acclimate the public for their open “arrival.”

Fourth, a shift in consciousness brought on by etheric activation would unlock otherwise inaccessible memories and mental perspectives. This includes alien abduction / contact memories and past life memories. During the onset of an abduction or contact, an individual usually goes into an altered state of consciousness due to the proximity induction effect. This state of consciousness is termed Left Side Awareness or Second Attention in Carlos Castaneda’s books. Memories recorded in this state become inaccessible when the abductee returns to normal mundane consciousness because it’s like an antenna retracting and losing the signal. An Etheric Tide would extend the antenna, causing a person to flip over from the mundane mental perspective to the alternate higher one. In cases where an individual has been cached with hidden knowledge and instructions, these would activate at that time. Thus the activation of alien-implanted knowledge is not so much caused by a hypnotic trigger, but an etheric activation. Consequently, an Etheric Tide would kick several alien agendas into play regarding their human proxies. The access of hidden knowledge and instruction is said to occur during a time of great chaos, which matches the characteristic effects of an Etheric Tide.
Fifth, once perception of etheric energy and paranormal phenomena becomes commonplace, demiurgic technology develops quickly and naturally. Without clairvoyant perception, building devices that employ etheric energies is a matter of guesswork, but perception allows observation and the derivation of a science. We also know from alienology that electronic devices tend to malfunction in the presence of alien ships; there are also people who can’t wear watches because they always stop working when worn. These are the same people who tend to fry out electronics and turn off street lights in their proximity. These are examples of etheric fields or specific fluctuations in them causing electrical anomalies. In physics terms, it fluctuates the physical constants and likely affects local electron densities, indicating a relationship between etheric energy and the divergence of the magnetic vector potential. The Etheric Tide may interfere with our electrical systems, further forcing the development of demiurgic technology as an alternative. The increased perception and availability of etheric energy makes this inevitable.

Sixth, the generation of thoughtforms becomes easier and more potent since there is more ambient raw material available for their creation, and consequently the responsiveness of reality to thoughts and feelings greatly increases. Reality would then become more plastic, having been softened by the “Universal Solvent” so to speak. Etheric energy is the medium that translates impulses between matter and consciousness. More of it means mind has greater command over matter. Additionally, these conditions would force greater mental and emotional discipline in people, since they will no longer have the luxury of being an internal cesspool while maintaining an external appearance of equipoise; when inner and outer become more congruent, external consequences of detrimental thoughts and feelings come all the sooner.

In a worst case scenario, those who cannot master themselves will fall victim to their own self-generated delusions, go insane, and perish. This is already happening in people whose unbounded paranoia creates thoughtforms and physical manifestations that further validate their paranoia, creating a runaway feedback loop that ends in schizophrenia and death. Another problem would be paranormal entities like demons, ghosts, and astral critters becoming more tangible, but that depends on how well they take up the specific quality of energy provided by the Etheric Tide; in any case, clairvoyant perception would make them more visible regardless, and that will further affect the sanity of people. Conditions that once fostered common acceptance of fairies, elves, elementals, djinn, ghosts, etc… will return.

All this assumes people don’t suffer from illness and cancer first from being unable to properly assimilate the Etheric Tide. It’s already the case that emotional blockages that produce resistance against the free flow of lifeforce energy can cause illness and cancer; similar resistance occurs when one fails to keep up with the currents of the Etheric Tide, namely by hanging on stubbornly to old Matrix Control System reactions and outlooks.

Hence, we are looking at the possibility of mass psychosis and illness in certain stubborn sectors of the population. The result is a filtering effect on humanity, just like the filtering out of solids that fail to dissolve in the Alchemical distillate. The filter is further enhanced by the fact that, since thoughts and feelings bend probability, it is in times of chaos that one must rely the most upon good fortune and divine grace to make it through, which can only be earned through corresponding elevation of heart and discipline of mind. Aside from sheer resourcefulness, synchronistic protection coupled with increased clairvoyance and intuition is how the forebears of future humanity will
make it through.

As an aside, whether through technology or sufficient activation of superhuman abilities, advanced forms of either should allow one to phase out of regular spacetime as needed, becoming invisible to those still mired in it. One would then naturally have access to the parallel meta-civilization composed of beings who have already achieved likewise.

**Physical Cataclysm**

While another round of cataclysm appears to be on the horizon, cataclysm is not always a necessary catalyst for growth. But that doesn’t prevent it from happening anyway. Even so, unavoidable obstacles can still serve as catalysts for growth if used as such.

In this case, cataclysm could be an unavoidable side-effect of the Etheric Tide, the same way pain is a side-effect of the birthing process. Earth and Sun are sensitive to etheric energy. As Wilhelm Reich discovered, orgone energy affects nuclear decay rates, meaning it affects reality at the quantum level. But since solar output as well as Earth’s seismic, volcanic, and tectonic activities are dependent on nuclear decay processes, changes in ambient etheric energy levels would impact the same. Recent scientific studies indicate that solar activity affects nuclear decay rates on Earth, likely due to a change in neutrino flux, which itself may be linked to etheric energy. In any case, the result of an Etheric Tide would be freak solar flares and CMEs as well as a massive increase in earthquakes, volcanoes, and continental plate shifts.

The *Expanding Earth Theory* of Neil Adams (and Cliff High’s *Expando Planet Model*) further suggests a change in the size of Earth. This is clear from the fact that continent edges match each other on all sides, indicating Earth used to be a lot smaller. That’s also why dinosaurs were so large, due to lower gravity levels. The question has always been where the extra matter comes from when the planet bulks up. Well, it comes from the center of the planet/star where spacetime is most stressed and a dimensional portal exists; etheric energy seems to affect the aperture of this portal, which determines how well energies from the other side translate into matter on our side.

It’s precisely the same with the Ark Stone or Grail Stone, where an input of etheric energy (animal sacrifice in the case of the Ark Stone) allows for the manifestation of physical foodstuffs. In other words, the Earth expanding upon irradiation by an Etheric Tide is merely a planetary version of what happens in the Ark Stone. It’s demiurgic geophysics. This does, however, suggest the possibility that, just as the Ark Stone required a specific mental command to specify what to materialize, so might the specific reconfiguration of Earth be dependent upon the collective thoughtforms of mankind. In that sense, how consciousness responds to the Etheric Tide might determine the severity, location, and nature of events constituting the accompanying cataclysm.

**Etheric Dissolution of Reality**

The biggest threat, or welcomed opportunity, would be an Etheric “Tsunami,” whereby the world gets slammed by a shockwave of etheric energy. In *The Physics of 2012*, I theorized that a traveling event horizon possibly originating from the super black hole at the Galactic Center could hit us. In that article, I explained how an event horizon would eject us into hyperspace where consciousness alone would decide what spacetime timeline we would emerge back into.

Well, if not a traveling event horizon, then a sufficiently intense etheric field would rip spacetime
all the same. Or put in terms of the Gnosis series paradigm, an Etheric Tsunami would utterly dissolve our reality just as the Universal Solvent of the Alchemists dissolves metals into quantum soup. In this malleable state of chaos, consciousness acts as the tingeing agent determining what new order emerges. An Etheric Tsunami would disconnect us from our current timeline and provide the grandest of all pivot points upon which not only the future, but the new past hinges.

But can nature alone provide such an impulse to dissolve reality? That seems just as unlikely as nature creating random nuclear explosions on our planet. Only technology concentrating the forces of nature can create consequences so severe. Therefore instead of an Etheric Tsunami originating from the cosmos, it could be the use of demiurgic technology during a more gentle Etheric Tide that dissolves and reconfigures spacetime. That seems to be its primary function anyway, to serve as the central axis of a wider timeline pivot region made possible by the Etheric Tide.

Again, these technologies are bestowed upon humans when ambient etheric energy levels are elevated, for then are such devices not only more charged up, but reality itself is more malleable. In ancient Egypt and proto-Israel, the Ark Stone was involved in reorienting our timeline toward one where we now stand on the brink of an overt alien takeover and global totalitarian system. It stands to reason that an upcoming Etheric Tide would also see the reactivation of the Grail Stone or devices like it.

Even in ancient Egyptian times when ambient etheric energy levels were elevated, the Ark Stone required additional lifeforce energy from sacrificed animals to convert thoughts into foodstuffs, alter the local geography, and other seemingly miraculous actions. These same spacetime re-engineering feats were accomplished by the Grail Stone without animal sacrifice, and instead with higher vibrational energy received from the Logos by Gnostic initiates. The implication is that, if the Etheric Tide primes conditions for deployment of the Stone, reconfiguration of reality may then occur along at least two lines: 1) through the cataclysmic slaughter of billions providing the etheric and astral energy needed for an Ark Stone activation, which would reformulate the world into deeper conformity with the Corrupted Demiurge, or 2) through the Gnostic awakening of sufficient individuals to provide the etheric and astral energy needed for a Grail Stone activation, which would reformulate the world into deeper harmonization with the Logos. In other words, negative forces may be counting on the energy harvested from mass suffering and deaths to fuel their reconfiguration of our reality into theirs.

Clearly the use of such devices allows a smaller group to decide the outcome of the greater collective, hence the Stone acts as a lever of sorts. Who will employ it? Probably those whose personal destinies are intertwined with the alien timewar and Grail / anti-Grail drama; the question won’t personally matter to the rest of the population who are karmically indifferent to whether reality reorganizes into one timeline or another. As it stands, mankind has existed for thousands of years in complete indifference to the fact that their world is a composite construct of changes effected by superhuman forces engaged in a cosmic chess match.

In summary, whether through the power of nature, the power of consciousness, or the power of technology, demiurgic principles have the function of revolving or bending the world around a chosen center. The center is a pivot point that moves the world without itself being moved, signifying something beyond spacetime where the archetypal commands reside that determine in what manner the world is reoriented. For instance, consciousness alone has this power, as evident in
the practice of reality creation. Nature has this power in the case of the Etheric Tide inducing physical changes in Sun and Earth, or the Philosopher’s Stone inducing changes in lead to produce gold. And technology has this power in devices like the Grail Stone that can bend the timeline and reconfigure reality in ways greater than either mind or nature alone can. High Demiurgic power is the power to intentionally de-collapse and re-collapse the quantum wavefunction; it is the ultimate creational power, that of the Prime Mover.

**Dawn of a New Day: The Awakening of the World Soul**

Etheric energy is the substrate of physical reality. Changes in the etheric induce changes in the physical. At weak levels the change is merely probabilistic, while at strong levels it produces direct reconfigurations of matter and energy. This is merely a question of whether quantum biasing occurs at the subatomic or macroscopic scale.

But it may be equally said — and this is absolutely crucial to understand — that a certain etheric pattern sustains a certain physical pattern. Thus every particular configuration of space, time, matter, and energy is held that way by an underlying “base level” thoughtform, the common denominator shared by elements of that configuration, which perpetuates the default behavior of that system. All additional thoughtforms merely deviate the system’s probabilistic behavior away from this default.

In the case of the Philosopher’s Stone, it is the intense etheric power and gold-tinged qualities of the Stone that overcomes the base level thoughtform that otherwise holds the pattern of “lead” in place. For humans, this same base level thoughtform perpetuates the laws of physics and moves the physical body toward entropic disintegration, whereas the human etheric body is an additional thoughtform that counters this and allows for continuation of life.

On a cosmological scale, the Demiurge sustains the world as we know it, thus it qualifies as the default thoughtform defining our spacetime existence. It is a World Thoughtform or World Soul. The Corrupted Demiurge is a parasitic entitized addition or extrusion that biases the course of events toward anti-spiritual ends. The impulse of the divine Logos, via the Christ thoughtform, produces counter-influence nudging things toward spiritual ends instead.

This brings us to the Rosicrucian doctrine of the World Soul. An anonymous theosophist writing under the name Magnus Incognito explains it best in *The Secret Doctrine of the Rosicrucians* (1918):

> The Rosicrucian concept of the World Soul—the First Manifestation—corresponds to similar conceptions found, in various forms, in most of the ancient occult teachings of the several great esoteric schools of philosophy. In some philosophies it is known as the “Anima Mundi,” or Life of the World, Soul of the World, or World Spirit. In others it is known as the Logos, or Word. In others, as the Demiurge. The spirit of the concept is this: that from the unconditioned essence of Infinite Unmanifestation there arose an Elemental and Universal Soul, clothed in the garments of the most tenuous, elemental form of Matter, which contained within itself the potency and latent possibility of all the future universes of the new Cosmic Circle, or Cosmic Day. […]

> The concept of the World Soul, in some form of interpretation and under some one of many names, may be said to be practically universal. Among many of the ancient schools of philosophy it was taught that there was an Anima Mundi, or World Soul,
which all the individual souls were but apparently separated (though not actually separated) units. The conviction that Life was One is expressed through nearly all of the best of ancient philosophies; and, in fact, in subtly disguised forms, may be said to rest at the base of the best of modern philosophies. […]

The Demiurge was the Life of the World, or Universal Life, of which all the innumerable lives of finite creatures are but sparks in the flame or drops of water in the ocean. And, yet, in its true sense, the concept of the Demiurge was not identified with that of God, but was rather a concept of the First Great Manifestation of God, by means of which He creates and sustains the World. […]

But it must be always noted that in the Secret Doctrine of the Rosicrucians the World Soul is not regarded as the Infinite Reality, but merely as the First Manifestation thereof, from which all subsequent manifestations proceed and into which they are finally resolved. The World Soul is not Eternal, but, on the contrary, appears and disappears according to the rhythm of the Cosmic Nights and Days.

This ties into the yuga cycles, the variations in the density and quality of etheric energy permeating our world, the imminent Etheric Tide, and the influence of additional thoughtforms like Yahweh and Christ injected into the system. All of these may be interpreted as fluctuations in the state of the World Thoughtform, and hence the world itself. Greater fluctuations produce greater world changes.

In Rosicrucian terminology, the influx of an Etheric Tide represents an awakening of the “World Soul” and the “Dawn of a New Cosmic Day.” How is it an awakening? As Rudolf Steiner observed, when we go to sleep the etheric body expands and decouples from the physical body and hovers nearby. Just enough remains in the body to maintain life processes, but not enough to allow perception or induced movement by the mind. The etheric body largely withdraws from the physical, forcing the latter into a vegetative state for the duration of sleep. Awakening consists of the etheric body lowering back into the physical and fully coupling with it, allowing consciousness to resume control over the physical body.

The same process applies to our world. As will be explained more thoroughly in the next article, at some point the World Thoughtform underwent a process analogous to our entering sleep. Its etheric body withdrew from the physical and consequently the ambient etheric energy levels went down significantly. Matter, energy, and spacetime as we know them are left in a vegetative state, by default unresponsive to the whims of consciousness. Hence the eventual Etheric Tide represents the return of the World Etheric Body and the awakening of the World Thoughtform, which will allow consciousness to once more resume control over matter, energy, and spacetime. The various etheric energy cycles in history are analogous to the stages of sleep: various REM cycles interrupted by periods of inactivity or intermediate periods.

Jordan Maxwell, Goro Adachi, and other synchromystic researchers have been tracking ubiquitous symbolism in media, culture, politics, esoterica, etc… pertaining to the “dawn of a new day”, “return of the king”, “birth of Lucifer”, “the Green Sun”, “a New World Order”, and other veiled allusions to something profoundly new and world-changing on the horizon. But few if any suspect it could be an Etheric Tide awakening the World Soul. It’s not just the rising of some new political order, not just the establishment of some world religion, not even just the resetting of civilization through physical cataclysms, but a cosmological event capable of transforming our reality from the
quantum level up.

The Cosmic Sleep

According to conventional psychology, what play out in dreams are symbolic representations of subconscious dynamics. But the term “subconscious” is just an umbrella term signifying that which lies beyond the immediate knowledge of the conscious mind. Think of it as an elevator door, a gateway to all other floors of the building from the sunniest rooftop to the darkest basement. Through the subconscious, our dreams may be influenced by higher positive beings, negative opportunistic feeders, unsorted residual memories from the previous day, health issues that disturb the somatic consciousness of the body, etheric thoughtforms, and soul energy imbalances. The dream environment symbolically stages these influences before us, in our unawareness since upon entering sleep we tend to lose awareness that we are even sleeping.

So it is with our world when the ambient etheric energy levels changed, when we entered the so-called Kali Yuga. Not only has the World Soul fallen asleep and the World Etheric largely withdrawn from the World Physical, but we are now living in a World Dream of sorts. What does a World Dream even mean? It means an illusory state of existence divorced from the true existence, from the realm beyond our limited spacetime bubble. It means a state where consciousness is obliviously and helplessly subjected to symbolic dramatizations of dynamics originating beyond that limited existence.

Is this not what we know of our reality right now, that forces beyond our realm are orchestrating what happens here, that we are like fish in an aquarium to these beings? When we experience synchronicities, omens, or number sightings, doesn’t it seem like intelligences beyond the veil of physicality are inserting encoded messages into our environment? How can they do this unless they are doing it from outside spacetime? Spacetime as we know it is none other than the World Dream Environment. There are beings outside the World Dream who influence what happens here.

Sleeping and dreaming are not just convenient metaphors in this case, but phenomena involving the interaction between the same physical, astral, etheric, and spiritual elements. These interactions and elements are as valid on the human scale as the cosmological scale. As above, so below.

And just as our own psychological structure mirrors the cosmological structure, as explained in the first Gnosis article, so will awakening of the World Soul be mirrored by our own potential awakening thanks to an increase of ambient etheric energy levels. The final result will be a state of existence where individual consciousness exercises superior command over matter, energy, and spacetime. This condition is termed “Fourth Density” by the Ra and Cassiopaean materials.

What we are possibly facing with the Etheric Tide is the awakening of the World Thoughtform or World Soul from its languished condition, like the ill-stricken Grail King Amfortas being restored to full health by the Grail, or Sleeping Beauty awakening with a prince’s kiss that also brings the Kingdom out of its thorn-riddled slumber.

Magnus Incognito concludes:

The World Soul, at the Dawn of the Cosmic Day, may be said to be like a dreamer freshly awakened from a deep sleep, and striving to regain consciousness of himself. It does not know what it is, nor does it know that it is but an Idea of the Eternal Parent. If
it could express its thought in words it would say that it has always been, but had been asleep before that moment. It feels within itself the urge toward expression and manifestation, along unconscious and instinctive lines—this urge being a part of its nature and character and implanted into it by the content of the Idea of the Eternal Parent which brought it into being. Like the newborn babe, it struggles for breath and begins to move its limbs. And as it struggles and moves, there comes to it a response from all of its nature, and its active life begins. And here we leave the World Soul, for the moment, struggling for breath and striving to move its limbs (figuratively speaking, of course).

The Enemies of Awakening

Unfortunately there are antagonists who have greatly profited from our spiritual coma; the World Dream has afforded them an environment removed from greater Creation, an environment now populated by dim souls helpless as fish at low tide. Archonic powers reign as kings over an empire of dreams.

The prime antagonist against spiritual lucidity is the Corrupted Demiurge. Through its influence, the World Dream has become a World Nightmare unwilling to release its grip; the human race has become its prisoner. In the first Gnosis article, I explained how physicality imprinting upon the Demiurge gives rise to a predatory extension committed to ideals of materialism, just as the world imprinting upon our soul creates ego. To recap, imprinting means influencing, programming, shaping, or conditioning. While the Demiurge may create the physical universe, the physical universe, in turn, may influence the Demiurge. The law of the jungle, survivalism, determinism, looking out for yourself, survival of the fittest, eat or be eaten — these ideals rooted in the realm of matter can rub off on the Demiurge, creating a living “thoughtform” extension of the Demiurge that is dedicated to those same ideals. Likewise, through occult rituals, emotional energy, and demiurgic technology, negative beings can likewise condition the Demiurge. If they do it for anti-spiritual reasons, then what results is an anti-spiritual extension of the Demiurge. In both cases, the Demiurge is influenced or “imprinted” by the physical universe, by that which serves matter and opposes spirit.

The same can be explained in terms of waking/dreaming, where the World Dream has given power to an entity dedicated to the ideals of spiritual sleep.

While one might think the Etheric Tide shall put an end to all this, keep in mind that the Corrupt Demiurge’s agents — from negative alien deceivers to their human shadow military cohorts — have been preparing to endure and capitalize upon the coming changes instead of trying to stop them. They are aiming to maintain and secure their control in a Fourth Density environment. Or put another way, the Corrupted Demiurge seeks to expand its tyranny beyond the current spacetime bubble, beyond the current provisional timeline, into what comes after and beyond. It aims for transubstantiation from our current dream world into the Real World — Fourth Density and up — so that it may reign there as well.

Awakening of the World Soul does not by itself guarantee what will awaken and reign. Will the original and rightful Logos resume control, or will the Corrupted Demiurge extend its dominion?

To draw another metaphor, the Demiurge is like a computer, the Logos the operating system, Corrupted Demiurge the virus, Christ the antivirus program, and lesser thoughtforms are various
executables. Our current Cosmic Sleep is equivalent to “Safe Mode,” whereby reality now runs at lower resolution with higher functions disabled. When we finally come out of Safe Mode through a reboot, what will be in control — the operating system or the virus? If the latter, awakening would simply result in a higher sleepwalker or zombie, fully animated but mentally and spiritually defunct. Then mankind would become nothing more than etherically enhanced instruments of ego, both their own and the World Ego, hence they would become superhuman vessels for the Corrupted Demiurge; after all, that is what higher negative forces are already.

The key danger we face is that our spiritual rebirth becomes a spiritual abortion, that instead of graduation to a higher positive environment there occurs transition to a higher negative environment. In other words, the key danger is that Earth becomes Fourth Density Service-to-Self planet; that is the ultimate goal of the negative alien agenda.

How can they achieve it? Since they cannot stop the Etheric Tide, they would need to secure control of the other two factors: human consciousness and demiurgic technology. The Etheric Tide energizes, human consciousness modulates, and demiurgic technology reconfigures. Sufficient reconfiguration would afford them total domination.

In context of the Lucifer Rebellion myth, this would amount to Lucifer reacquiring the jewel that fell from his crown and completing the rebellion to become King of the World. That is what the negative secret societies mean when they speak of the “return of the Sun King” and the other occult phrases tracked by synchronystics. They await the total triumph of their prime demiurgic benefactor.

**Seat of the World Soul**

The sleep metaphor continues when we consider how the pineal gland functions as a regulator of wake and sleep via its periodic release of melatonin and DMT. Melatonin establishes conditions conducive for sleep while DMT triggers the final projection into the dream state. What is the technological analogue to the pineal gland? None other than the Grail Stone. Melatonin and DMT are loosely analogous to the Etheric Tide and Etheric Tsunami; the first has a priming function, the second a decoupling function.

The pineal gland has traditionally been considered as the seat of the soul, while the Grail Stone is the seat of the World Soul or Demiurge. The Grail Stone can reconfigure physical reality via its “root access” to the Demiurge. Additionally, the Grail Stone is oracular, allowing communication from hyper-dimensional intelligences just as the third eye, associated with the pineal gland, allows visual perception of information from beyond spacetime. The jewel in Lucifer’s crown is represented in Indian mythology as a jewel embedded in the forehead and is equated with the third eye.

Hence there are symbolic connections and functional analogues between the Grail Stone, pineal gland, and the third eye. One can see this everywhere. Consider how the Great Pyramid with its vowel resonators and Ark Stone placement mimics the human vocal tract and pineal gland placement; operation of the Great Pyramid may have paralleled the process of stimulating the pineal gland through overtone chanting. Overtone chanting at skull-resonant frequencies produces spherical standing waves that converge upon the pineal gland, which is located at the skull’s precise geometric center. Just as stimulation of the pineal gland opens one up to other realms, so may
operation of the Great Pyramid have opened access to other demiurgic intelligences such as the Yahweh entity. Other connections worth mentioning are the secret society obsession with pine cone symbolism and the mathematical fact that pine cone geometry is a type of vortex; vortex symbolism figures prominently into the Grail subject and will be discussed in the next article.

The most important parallel between the Grail Stone and pineal gland is that, just as the latter regulates wake and sleep, so may the Grail Stone have played an instrumental role in the transition between Cosmic Wake and Cosmic Sleep. Use or abuse of the Grail Stone is what may have knocked us into the World Dream in the first place. This is just another way of saying abuse of demiurgic technology corrupted the timeline.

It’s only a matter of interpretation whether we entered into Cosmic Sleep, underwent a Fall into this darkened realm, or were deviated onto a corrupted timeline. These are all different ways of framing the same problem. To better explain how demiurgic technology may have corrupted our timeline, a discussion on timeline dynamics is in order.

Timewars

How do thoughtforms tie into timeline dynamics? Once created, they ceaselessly pursue their programming until the astral archetypes delineating their objectives are fully manifested in the physical. That is their demiurgic function, to take an archetypal template and realize it in the physical. Usually they do this by exerting pressure upon the timeline at quantum bifurcation points, bending it toward the probable futures where their objectives are fulfilled. Thoughtforms may be interpreted as strange attractors located in the future, pulling various timeline pathways toward them like magnets attracting iron particles along their magnetic field lines.

The prime objective of the Demiurge is to fashion the Universe, to generate and perpetuate physicality. This objective is met every second as the Demiurge or World Thoughtform collapses quantum wave functions into tangible configurations, like a sliding zipper meshing together separate strands into a single line. Hence linear time ticks on with or without our participation.

The Demiurge is responsible for time itself, just as an author is responsible for time within a novel’s plot, or the subconscious for time in a dream. Lesser thoughtforms, which are but extrusions of the Demiurge, respectively modulate the properties of time according to their archetypal impulse. Weaker thoughtforms merely have probabilistic influence, nudging the course of events toward one probable future instead of another, while stronger thoughtforms could conceivably reformulate the entire timeline. An author may feel a weak impulse and merely change the direction of the story, or a strong impulse and rewrite it from scratch.

Christ and Yahweh signify the diametrically opposed primary extensions of the Demiurge rooted in divergent probable futures. In one probable future, the Christ thoughtform has accomplished its objective of spiritualizing matter, restoring all fallen souls, and placing physicality back under the reign of the Logos. In the other probable future, Yahweh has fully matterized spirit, enchained higher souls into the darkest of conditions, and thereby secured for itself the most exquisite energy source.

Each exerts its influence upon the timeline, each represents a particular state, aspect, or extrusion of the World Thoughtform, and each sends its feedback flow into the present from our perceived
future. In turn, we send our feedback flow into the future via the causal consequences of how we respond physically, mentally, and emotionally. Our response increases or diminishes the strength of either future/thoughtform via the past-future feedback loop.

While the Logos is beyond even the Demiurge and is an eternal intelligence beyond time, the Christ impulse appears to be a provisional thoughtform active within linear time as a probability current flowing toward the best of all possible outcomes. Meanwhile, Yahweh is one flowing toward the worst. None can deny that these worlds exist as probable futures; it follows from the simple fact that not all futures are equal, thus some are better than others, and there exists the best and worst among them.

Christ and Yahweh are completely goal oriented like any thoughtform, ceaselessly working to fulfill their objectives, one toward ultimate balance and the spiritualization of matter, the other toward ultimate imbalance and deadening of spirit. Consequently, our timeline is under competition by two primary opposing time loops, or equivalently, our world is the intersection between higher and lower realms. This dynamic is represented in the Gnostic Christian symbol of the vesica piscis, two circles intersecting.

The late Philip K. Dick, science fiction author and modern Gnostic, speculated on the matter as follows:

The Logos is not a retrograde energetic life form, but the Holy Spirit, the Parakletos, is. If the Logos is outside time, imprinting, then the Holy Spirit stands at the right or far or completed end of time, toward which the field flow moves (the time flow). It receives time: the negative terminal, so to speak. Related to the Logos in terms of embodying world-directives and world-organizing powers, but at a very weak level, it can progressively to a greater degree overcome the time field and flow back against it, into it, impinging and penetrating. It moves in the opposite direction. It is the anti-time. So it is correct to distinguish it from the Logos, which so to speak reaches down into the time flow from outside, from eternity or the real universe. The H.S [Holy Spirit] is in time, and is moving: retrograde. Like tachyons, its motion is a temporal one; opposite to ours and the normal direction of the universal causal motion.

Equilibrium is achieved by the Logos operating in three directions: from behind us as causal-time-pressure, from above, then the final form, the very weak H.S. drawing toward perfection each form. But now equilibrium as we know it is being lost in favor of a growing ratio of the retrograde teleology. This implies we are entering, have entered, a unique time: nearing completion of the manifold forms. Last pieces are going into place in the over-all pattern. The task or mode of the H.S. is completing. Not beginning, not renewing or maintaining, but bringing to the end, to the close. An analogy would be the transit of a vehicle from one planet to another; first stage is the gravity of planet of origin; then equilibrium of both planets in terms of their pull; then the growing pull of the destination gravity-field as it gradually takes over and completes the journey. Beginning, middle, end. At last one senses the receiving field engage, and then correct. (Philip K. Dick, “In Pursuit of Valis”, pp. 64-65)

Corruption of the timeline stems from the corruption of the Demiurge, for the Demiurge is time. Both the quality of time and the fabric of history were affected by this corruption. If the Demiurge is responsible for time in general, the Corrupted Demiurge is responsible for linear time in particular, for the limitations imposed by linear time are favorable to its agenda. Those who
succumbed to the Corrupted Demiurge underwent a Fall into the limited spacetime bubble we are now accustomed to, a realm where time marches ceaselessly forward toward entropy, atrophy, and decay and the senses are confined to the domain of matter and electromagnetic energy. These conditions, which define the Cosmic Sleep, serve to increasingly isolate us from true reality. Were it not for the influence of Spirit/Logos, every last one of us would be matrix puppets.

Hence the influence of Logos, which intervened through the Christ or Holy Spirit thoughtforms as a direct counter-reaction to the threat of the Corrupted Demiurge, may be said to be working “over and against” linear time. It counters linear time not by creating a reversed linear time flow, but a nonlinear type of time harmonized with the Logos. (In mathspeak: imaginary time. Tachyons don’t move backwards in time, but propagate in imaginary time. The opposite of causality is not reverse causality, but acausality). It works through synchronistic, nondeterministic, critical point intervention instead of cold mechanistic calculation. It works through the butterfly effect. Many of the parables attributed to Jesus pertain to this.

**The Dissolution of Linear Time**

As with the Philosopher’s Stone transmuting matter, sufficient etheric energy can also override linear time. The meta-civilization can exist outside linear time because they possess a quantity and quality of etheric energy that places them beyond the grasp of the particular World Thoughtform that still holds us firmly in linear time. The implication is that the Etheric Tide irradiating Earth may loosen that grip.

Put another way, the Dawn of a New Cosmic Day, which represents a major transformation of the Demiurge, would signify a major transformation in the nature of time as well. Time could change toward nonlinearity: variable time rate, selectable location along the timeline, and greater malleability in what directional heading time takes. Right now, linear time marches steadily forward like involuntary muscle movements during sleep, such as breathing, while nonlinear time is like consciousness returning to the body and resuming voluntary control.

The Etheric Tide poses both a dilemma and opportunity for the Corrupted Demiurge. While the dissolution of linear time would undermine the control it has enjoyed so far in our history, it can still reign afterwards should nonlinear time be successfully harmonized with its parasitic objectives.

This has already happened in certain probable futures, futures from which negative time travelers originate. These alien manipulators are entirely steeped in nonlinear time, for they use time travel freely, but even so they are saddled with limitations that force them to rely on cold calculation to pursue their agendas. Even with their nonlinear and demiurgic abilities, it seems they get befuddled and undermined by the even more subtle, synchronistic, and incomprehensible maneuvers of the Logos.

**Timewars and Thoughtforms**

Nonlinear time makes the past accessible and reconfigurable. Thus our reality is accessible and reconfigurable by beings who operate beyond linear time. This necessarily includes forces from our own probable futures who have already undergone the Etheric Tide and broken free from linear time, be they positive or negative.

If time travel is possible, it will happen sooner or later, therefore it already has happened at some
point in the future, hence we are being visited by time travelers from our perceived future. This would be mere philosophizing were it not for alienology research confirming that time travelers do indeed comprise a portion of the alien presence. The other portions consists of meta civilizations that previously transcended linear time. Regardless of where within linear history the moment of transcendence was achieved, once beyond, one “joins the club” so to speak.

Warring among meta-civilization factions has the appearance of a timewar. As they attempt to reconfigure the past in their favor, we would experience a tug of war that continually adjusts our trajectory into the future. The subtler details are explained in my Timeline Dynamics article. The more our trajectory points toward their particular probable future, the stronger and more tangible they become to us. That is mathematical fact in quantum physics. This feedback loop resembles thoughtforms acquiring energy and tangibility and is intimately tied into that process:

Better probable futures are ones that have more of the Christ impulse defining their World Thoughtform, worse probable futures have the Yahweh or Corrupted Demiurge impulse underpinning theirs. The best of all possible futures is entirely of Christ/Logos, the worst entirely by Yahweh/Corrupted Demiurge. These are the “alive cat” vs “dead cat” outcomes in our cosmic Schrödinger’s Experiment. Currently the two states are superimposed, both outcomes exist in a mixed state, which is why both influences are simultaneously active in our world.

Quantum indeterminacy is what even allows probable futures to retroactively influence the choices that gave rise to them. The more significantly a choice impacts the future, the more strongly it experiences competing feedback flows from those probable futures.

That is another reason why the Ark/Grail Stone was capable of hosting the Yahweh or Christ intelligences, because its power to change the timeline was so immense that the probable futures issuing from these changes had an equally immense degree of feedback flow, hence allowing full blown manifestation and communication. The same can be said of historical figures like Joan of Arc who changed the course of history in response to visions she received. So it should be mentioned that certain people, places, times and events have greater impact on the future than others, and the future feedback flow is correspondingly greater upon them. That flow carries with it not only probabilistic, emotional, intuitive, and mental biasing, but can also attract the interest and direct influence of time travelers from affected futures.

Time travelers are inherently aligned with the World Thoughtform defining their timeline. There is a symbiotic relationship between them and their presiding World Thoughtform. Even if they don’t call these forces so by name, it seems some time travelers ultimately serve Christ/Logos, others Yahweh/Corrupted Demiurge. They harness demiurgic probability currents the same way sailing fleets employ ocean currents to reach their destinations.

This is just another way of saying that alien agendas fit within cosmological agendas. It also means alien technology is attuned to different demiurgic currents, hence the Stone functions one way if hitched to the Yahweh current and another when coupled to the Christ current, in each case serving to reinforce the feedback loop between present and the best/worst future by altering history accordingly.

The symbiotic relationship between aliens and their demiurgic benefactor can be seen in certain examples drawn from alienology where the highly positive types seem to function as emissaries of
the Logos on missions to restore balance and assist our gnostic awakening, while the more Luciferian or rather pantheistic types (negative Nordics and Reptilians for instance) pretty much worship the Corrupt Demiurge since its “blood” powers their demiurgic technology and sustains their livelihood. As will be mentioned again in the next article, the latter is metaphorically depicted in the movie Dark City where the Strangers ritualistically turn toward a giant underground machine bearing a metallic face and psychically interface with it in order to “tune” the surface human world into an alternate configuration.

Conclusion

Apparently the Etheric Tide only increases the stakes in the cosmological conflict between Logos and Corrupt Demiurge instead of resolving it. That makes sense if the Etheric Tide merely has a priming function. Then the decoupling function would belong to demiurgic technology, which achieves its peak potency during an Etheric Tide for maximum timeline and reality reconfiguration.

Hence the Grail Stone may be the “doomsday device” or “captured flag” that ends this phase of the conflict. That the device requires an Etheric Tide to achieve its full potential would explain why the timewar hasn’t ended sooner, back when it was in the hands of the Mosaic Priesthood or Grail Knights, since the Etheric Tide has not yet arrived. The best and worst probable futures are still in quantum superposition.

The “Stone that Fell from Heaven” was brought here on purpose (by the “Neutral Angels” according to Grail lore), lowered into our spacetime bubble like a slim jim or coat hanger to lock/unlock the door from the inside. To be more accurate, the Grail is the lock and key to our reality. Altogether, one could say its primary role is to begin and end timelines, while its secondary role is to bend the timeline along the way depending on who controls it.

The next Gnosis article will show how the preceding ideas are ubiquitously encoded in ancient myths and modern fiction. Myths and fiction are the collective equivalent of individual dreams, and like the latter can contain symbolic messages from beyond. I will delve more deeply into demiurgic symbolism, shed further light on the foregoing discussion, and dive to the bottom of what’s going on with our so-called reality.

---

Changelog

0.1 (June 10, 2011) – article posted.

(index)

8 - Polar Mythology

13 September 11 (gnosis)
©2011, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

The Meaning of Myth

Since myths are not literal accounts of history, they are easily dismissed as superstitious
tales invented by our naïve ancestors. But what society considers factual, historical, and real is only that which has taken place within linear time and 3D space, namely events witnessed through the five physical senses.

Far from being less than factual, myths may depict events and dynamics that are more than factual because they hail from beyond the limited modern conception of reality, beyond linear time, and beyond the five senses. Myths can be symbolic vehicles for conveying that which transcends linear history.

What are myths really? They are the collective equivalent of dreams. What both have in common is that they span the spectrum from mundane to profound, they can be oracular or prophetic, they can convey hidden knowledge, and they employ symbolic elements to encode meaning. Profound dreams and myths are coded messages from beyond.

Like dreams, myths allow passage of information across the boundary between realms. It seems that archetypes are shared currency between our world and others. In dreams, the subconscious or higher mind employs a cryptic language of symbols to encode a message. Same with myths whose symbolic characters, places, and story lines encode messages from intelligences beyond our realm. Interpretation of myth is therefore similar to interpretation of dreams.

Myths are also like time capsules with nested layers, each layer encoding information intended for one type of recipient. Possible layers include:

- **Entertainment and Morality Layer** – the outer wrapping that ensures the myth propagates through the generations.
- **Historical Layer** – ensures that history of the people is remembered.
- **Esoteric Layer** – provides initiatory instruction to empower those of a higher spiritual caliber.
- **Technological Layer** – provides scientific instruction on technologies likely to become lost over time, such as alchemy, astronomy, or higher demiurgic technology.
- **Hyper-Historical Layer** – concerns events and dynamics of the future and the world as it exists before/beyond linear time. This layer is aimed at those within the bubble of linear time who seek Gnosis of what lies outside.

The deeper layers piggyback upon the shallower ones, and the entire bundle is unsuspectingly passed down the generations by commoners who enjoy the myth for its moral or entertainment value. Information stored this way can survive for thousands of years.

Myths also allow for passage of information across discontinuities between world ages, when one world disappears and another appears. Since consciousness resides beyond matter, energy, space, and time, myths embedded in the collective subconscious survive such reconfigurations. Hence, these myths may propagate hyper-historical truths and tell of events and dynamics before, after, and beyond the current timeline.

Lastly, note that myths are not restricted to those from ancient times. Modern fictional films, television series, music, and literature may also be mythical in nature, depending on its content and
true source. Obviously some are just superficial fluff, but others are equal or higher in profundity than the greatest of classical myths.

Therefore the whole gamut of myth from dreams to ancient mythology to modern fiction is fertile ground for extracting the esoteric, technological and hyper-historical layers of information. These layers are embedded by beings who exist before and beyond our world. In a way it’s all part of an ongoing process of hyper-dimensional steganography aimed at passing synchronistically or symbolically encrypted messages to strategic recipients within the bubble of linear time.

**Polar Mythology**

Myths from different cultures can share common elements. The most universal elements pertain to the human process of psychological growth and transformation. Joseph Campbell called this universal template the “monomyth” or the “hero’s journey” and its derivatives can be found the world over. Expressions of the monomyth can arise independently because core human psychology is the same everywhere.

But in context of the Gnosis series, what we are looking for is something more specific than the monomyth, something that concerns the very nature of existence and the events that precipitated our reality. This smaller subset of myths I call “polar mythology” because they concern the battle between the poles of Creation, employ the symbolism of rotation or reciprocation around a central axis pole, and because “polar” implies “extreme north” and hence “hyperborean,” which alludes to the Nordic meta-civilization deeply involved in these matters.

Polar myths are too specific to be mere encoding of human psychological processes; they deal with the origin and fate of our world, the corruption of the timeline, the warring over demiurgic technologies, the timewar, and the mechanism behind transitions between world ages. Thus they are fundamentally Gnostic in their essence.

Ancient polar myths are Proto-Indo-European in origin, seeded by Atlantean survivors whose ancestry traces back to the off-world Nordic alien meta-civilization.

Modern polar myths may also originate from this meta-civilization via telepathic transmission, dream manipulation, direct contact between alien and contactee, or secret societies transmitting it orally to an initiate who works in the creative industry.

**Core Elements of Polar Mythology**

There are several repeating themes in polar mythology:

1) Our having fallen from a higher to lower realm.

2) The World Axis represented by a pillar, mountain, cross, or tree.

3) Dueling superhumans engaged in a tug of war.

4) That which the World Axis rests or depends upon: a foundational element represented in the cubical stone, turtle, keystone, plug, cornerstone, or capstone.

5) Vortex symbolism and magical “objects of plenty” that could materialize abundance or destruction depending on their use.
6) Cataclysmic unhinging or skewing of the World Axis.

7) The avenging hero, prodigal son, or innocent fool who overthrows corruption and restores balance.

These elements can be found scattered across Grail lore and the myths of the ancient Hindus, Scandinavians, Egyptians, Sumerians, Meso-Americans, and Chinese.

Since this article aims to be as brief as possible, readers desiring a more thorough tour of ancient polar mythology should read *Hamlet’s Mill* by De Santillana and Von Dechend, *The Mystery of the Grail* by Julius Evola, and to a lesser extent *The Hero of a Thousand Faces* by Joseph Campbell. While these authors held mundane interpretations of polar mythology, anyone familiar with my Gnosis series can interpret the same data from a more profound context.

The seventh element I will discuss in the next and final Gnosis article, as it concerns the spiritual pathway through and beyond the Matrix Control System. For now, let’s examine the other core elements:

1) Our having fallen from a higher to lower realm.

We see this element in the story of Adam and Eve, the Lucifer Rebellion and fallen angels, what Orfeo Angelucci was told regarding members of a meta-civilization that fell into 3D Earth incarnation, the Matrix Trilogy where humanity was imprisoned into a simulated reality, or Dorothy falling along with her house into the Land of Oz.

This is the central tenet of Gnosticism, that we are in this world, but not of this world, and that the Corrupted Demiurge created the world as we now know it.

The Fall of Man originates with the primordial schism between the Demiurge and Logos, when Creation went awry. This cosmological event outside linear time rains fragments of itself down into linear time like an aerial explosion scattering fragments to the ground. Each fragment enters linear time as a particular event repeating the “Fall of Man” archetype. What they all have in common is that beings nearer to the Logos are further ensnared within the realm of the Corrupt Demiurge.

Put another way, historically, the Fall is not a single event, but a series of diminishing “bounces” that bring us ever closer to flatlining, a process that is still ongoing but reaching its head. The grand “Fall” is still happening. The flatline is when humanity achieves the “ground state” in terms of spiritual energy, which is when the Fall reaches completion and the Corrupt Demiurge wins. This is now being carried out via the negative alien agenda to hybridize us, so that we become genetically locked into this ground state. It is only logical that, for the human species, the Fall ends the same way it ultimately began: through genetic engineering by malevolent alien factions.

The best known myth incorporating these ideas is the story of Adam and Eve, inspired by earlier Sumerian and other sources. According to the version found in the Book of Genesis, before Adam the world was populated by flora, fauna, and primitive humans. Then came Adam, and from him, Eve, who were different from other humans in that they possessed the faculty of Spirit and lived in a paradisal realm. In this Garden of Eden, they were in direct communion with the divine. They were half-animal, half-divine beings who were childlike in their innocence, pure and naïve. This speaks of the human soul collective in its original “3D STO” state of existence.
In the Garden were two trees, the “Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil” and the “Tree of Life.” Concerning the first, Adam was promised death if he ate of its fruit. The trickster Serpent then approached Eve and convinced her to eat from the Tree of Knowledge, and through her tempting, Adam also took a bite. Seemingly contrary to God’s warning, they did not die; of course not, here the myth implies spiritual death, not physical death, and that is what the Fall represents. Upon eating the fruit, they both became aware of their own nakedness and felt shame. Afterwards they were banished from the Garden of Eden for disobeying the warning, cast into the wilderness where the animals and other humans were living by the law of the jungle.

In the above, the myth encodes several things:

1) The naïve human soul group acquiring the faculty of freewill, hence their disobeying the command not to eat, for only through freewill is defiance possible.

2) Their acquiring true self-awareness, symbolized by becoming aware of their own nakedness.

3) Disconnection from the divine, hence being cast out of the Garden.
In other words, it speaks of our disconnection from Spirit and the acquisition of lower ego or lower intellect, which is our internal uplink to the Corrupt Demiurge. It symbolizes the grafting upon our pure souls of what Castaneda calls “the Predator.” This event was our insertion into the Matrix energy farm.

And yet, it is through ego, intellect, and direct experience of brute physicality that we can even acquire personal wisdom concerning the difference between good and evil and their inner workings. Why is that wisdom necessary? Because in the end it makes us more powerful, resilient, and spiritually mature. Otherwise we would remain naïve, vulnerable, isolated, and weak: incapable of going where angels fear to tread.

Achilles bathed in the blood of the dragon and thereby acquired near invincibility; Dorothy wore the ruby slippers of the Wicked Witch’s sister; Luke Skywalker, Harry Potter, John Riddick, and Neo had a piece of their enemy inside them, but it gave them the power they needed to conquer the enemy. Our ego and intellect is what, by default, makes us servants of the Corrupt Demiurge. But if conquered and placed in service of Spirit and Logos, these same faculties serve a higher function of providing discernment and personal power needed to overcome the Matrix Control System. Hence the Biblical advice to be “wise as serpents, gentle as doves” — if only one or the other, we fall into the false dichotomy of being either predator or prey.

Eating from the Tree of Knowledge directly implies expulsion from a higher realm into a lower one where Good and Evil exist in violent admixture, in order to “digest” the knowledge offered. Indeed, this is a kind of spiritual death (or coma, as with Sleeping Beauty and Brunhilde). None know death better than those who have come closest to it. The trick is returning to life before one dies fully.

Despite being a trickster, the Serpent is a symbol of wisdom because it offers a gamble; if conquered, it brings otherwise inaccessible wisdom; from friction arises fire, and from darkness arises light. We see this microcosmically in our own lives every time dark forces take a gamble in attempting to take us down; if we triumph, we acquire a new power, pathway, and wisdom that makes us more resilient and allows us to empower others in similar situations.

In Genesis, the Elohim who said, “Let us make man in our image” represent our original, presumably well-meaning, genetic creators. When Adam ate from the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, the Elohim commented with worry that, should Adam now also eat from the Tree of Life, he should become just like them. What does that imply about the Elohim? It suggests they were immortal superhumans who had mastered the knowledge of good and evil; in other words, they are higher echelons of the meta-civilization existing outside linear time.

Meanwhile, the Serpent represents the meta-civilization forces obedient to the Corrupt Demiurge. They were instrumental in genetically modifying the human race toward its current condition: no longer pure, innocent, children under the stewardship of the Logos, but crippled beasts with the claws of intellect and ego, thrust into the domain of the Corrupt Demiurge.

So after the expulsion from paradise, Adam and Eve existed in a limbo state. They were on their way toward knowing Good and Evil, but did not yet transcend their mortality. This accurately portrays humanity’s current state, hanging in the balance between two ultimate outcomes.

In one outcome, the ultimate low point is reached where the fruit is fully swallowed and
digested, and total spiritual death ensues; fortunately we are not there yet, hence the larynx has been linked to “Adam’s Apple” to signify it is in the throat, not yet fully swallowed.

In the other outcome, we eat from the Tree of Life, and that pertains to everything discussed so far concerning Gnostic awakening, Etheric Tide, and the Christ thoughtform mediating our harmonization with the Logos. Hence in New Testament symbolism, the Kingdom of Heaven carries shades of the Garden of Eden, Christ is the means toward obtaining Life (like the Tree of Life), and the sayings of Jesus speak highly of having a childlike purity.

Stated in terms of the Cassiopaeans paradigm, our primordial 3D STO human soul matrix naively elected to incarnate into a 3D STS gene pool prepared by 4D STS genetic engineers. Together with clarifications made by Boris Mouravieff, the picture revealed is that we were once simple beings without ego or intellect, but who had some of our higher faculties intact and were in full harmony with the Logos. After the Fall, our higher faculties were disconnected and we developed lower ego and lower intellect. Through the latter we would achieve the possibility of wisdom and discernment, though also the possibility of propagating evil. Once discernment reaches sufficient perfection, the optimal outcome is that our higher faculties also return, allowing the development of the higher intellect and thus co-equal existence with the “gods.”

One can recognize these elements in the story of the prodigal son who leaves home out of foolish adventurism and rejection of the father, learns his lessons and grows wise, then finally returns home with newfound appreciation. Ironically, the prodigal son who rejected the father ends up being closer to him than the other son who never left. To truly choose “God,” one must first have rejected “God,” for only through such an initial exercise of freewill can one develop enough freewill to later make a meaningful choice of allegiance. This is what separated Adam and Eve from the Elohim, the first being close to God by intrinsic nature, the latter by choice. Parzival cursed God and finally severed his ties to any divine overseer, and only then developed the independence, strength of will, faculty of discernment, and the spiritual maturity to be divinely appointed as winner of the Grail.

That seems to be the primary story of humanity and probably why, in the grand scheme of things, we are even allowed to be in this spacetime bubble established by the Corrupt Demiurge, in bodies genetically designed by its Archonic agents. It’s a gamble that pays off with our acquiring power, wisdom, and discernment otherwise impossible to acquire, but with the risk that we flatline and stay here forever in this “black iron prison.” The greatest gains come with the greatest risks.

Contrary to what fundamentalist Christianity attempts to pound into its subjects, Original Sin is not some primordial shameful act of dirtiness that we should all feel guilty over; it is not a moral error, but, as Philip K. Dick realized, an intellectual error that can only be corrected through a Gnostic awakening.

It was intellectually naïve for our spiritual ancestors to so easily and enthusiastically think that 3D STS physicality was an attractive and worthwhile thing to experience. But that’s a repeating pattern, one we still see today with stories of souls incarnating into the human sphere having signed up for more than they bargained for. They come with high hopes and overconfidence only to get beaten down, programmed, and shredded by a monstrosity of a machine that is the Matrix Control System. The naïveté comes in not foreseeing the risks that this opportunity brings. For humanity, the risks
now threaten to permanently extinguish what little spiritual light we have left.

The teachings of Christ, among others, provide pointers on achieving transcendence. Thus in theology, Christ is said to have “died for our sins” — to have atoned for the Original Sin committed by Adam and Eve eating the forbidden fruit. While fundamentalists interpret this in a literal and moral way, in actuality everything points to a more symbolic and Gnostic interpretation. The Fall of Man is an ongoing process and so is the mission of Christ. The latter came into existence to neutralize the first, but the neutralization has not yet been accomplished. The ultimate outcomes of the original Fall and the intervention of Christ exist as the two ultimate probable futures from which the Yahweh and Christ thoughtforms originate.

Wherever the Logos and Corrupt Demiurge clash and the latter secures a temporary victory, a fall occurs. This scales down fractally into the little choices we make everyday. Aside from the human soul group incarnating into crippled genetics, other examples exist of such falls. One is the Nordic meta-civilization blowing up their planet and emigrating to the cruder Earth realm. Another was the Ark Stone being used to alter history. In every case, one or more individuals made a naïve choice based on ego with spiritually disastrous consequences.

2) The World Axis represented by a pillar, mountain, cross, or tree.

The World Axis is an abstract idea meaning that which lies at the heart of existence, the central fulcrum that moves and supports the manifested world. It takes various forms in polar mythology.

In Genesis, the World Axis is the Tree of Knowledge. Eating from it implies incarnation into 3D linear time, the so-called Wilderness or World as distinct from the Garden of Eden or Kingdom of Heaven. The Wilderness is where spiritless humans, Archonic powers, and the Corrupt Demiurge reign. Hence the Tree of Knowledge and the World Axis are linked to the concept of linear time. Trees are a perfect metaphor for time due to the way they branch in three physical dimensions just as timelines do in three temporal dimensions.

In Norse mythology, however, the world tree Yggdrasil represents the central framework supporting the various realms. Here the World Axis has more of a spatial connotation.
Mount Meru of Buddhist mythology is another example of a spatial supportive structure.
Putting these together, the World Axis pertains to the framework of spacetime, the medium through which all form and motion arise. One symbol that combines both aspects is the cross, the horizontal signifying space and the vertical time.

Additionally, the ancient symbol of the solar cross, a circle divided into quarters, represents among other things the four seasons, which imply both time via the passage of the year, and space via the four positions of Earth around the Sun. (It also resembles a millstone or the Ark Stone as depicted on a Sumerian tablet, discussed below).
The symbol of Jesus crucified, whose literal interpretation was rejected by Gnostics and Templars, may actually mean crucifixion upon the cross of space and time. It would mean incarnating into linear space and time for the sole reason to redeem those who fell into it. The correct meaning of the phrase “dying for our sins” would mean “entering spacetime for concern over our fallen condition.”

In Norse myth, the god Odin likewise hung from Yggdrasil, bleeding and dying. In the process, he received the archetypal symbols of the Runes by reading their pattern and meaning in the branches of the World Tree.
This would imply that Runes are symbols representing timeline dynamics processes and astral archetypes that, through the etheric mediator, generate spacetime events.
Historically, the Scandinavian runes trace back to the Phoenician alphabet, and the Phoenicians were among the proto-Israelites who possessed the Ark Stone. See the ViewZone articles on Queen Sheba for more on this.

From the above, the World Axis is definitely associated with spacetime. But there is a third element involved. In Hindu Mythology, the World Axis is a giant pillar that rotates back and forth, churning the surrounding milky ocean and thereby precipitating chunks of butter.
Similarly, there is the Finnish myth of the Sampo, a magical artifact that like the Grail Stone was capable of creating objects and foodstuffs out of thin air. In the Kalavela, it was depicted as a rotating millstone that once ground out infinite abundance during a Golden Age. A similar millstone called the Grotte appears in Icelandic lore.

What these symbols highlight is a central rotational aspect connected with creation. In the World Axis, therefore, we find not only the concept of spacetime, but also the axis upon which spacetime can rotate or pivot. What is this pivot point? It is the quantum aperture, the choice point, the moment of wave function collapse, the window of nondeterminism where timelines are in flux. It’s
the hinge upon which reality pivots.

Probable futures are arrayed around this quantum pivot point at various quantum phase angles, somewhat like tree branches arrayed at various angles around their common point on the tree trunk.

What separates one probable future, one alternate past, or one event from another is the quantum phase angle unique to each. This has a couple implications:

First, regarding the quantum phase that separates one timeline from another, to alter the quantum phase of the past means to switch it from one timeline to another; this equates to changing the angular position of the world pillar, hence a reciprocation of the pillar means a back-and-forth alteration of the timeline.

Second, regarding the kind of quantum phase that distinguishes one moment from another, since time itself is a continual progression from one event to the next, time is identically a continual cycling of this quantum phase. While that much is taught in college textbooks, the cause of this continual cycling is not addressed. As I discussed in the previous article, the Demiurge is the cause of time. Cycling is precisely what the Demiurge does in being the default collapser of our collective wave function and thus perpetuator of physical reality as we know it. This continual phase cycling, which generates a particular timeline tree, may be mythologically represented in the rotating millstone that ground out a bygone Golden Age when the Demiurge or World Soul was in harmony with the Logos.

In summary, in its purest form the World Axis represents the quantum pivot point and the surrounding spacetime framework that rests upon it.

3) Dueling superhumans engaged in a tug of war.

In Hindu mythology, around the pillar is wrapped a serpent. The divine Devas hold one end of the serpent while the infernal Asuras hold the other. They are engaged in a tug of war; as one side gains, the pillar rotates one way, and as the other side gains, the pillar rotates the other way. This is what causes reciprocation of the pillar.
What does the serpent represent, fundamentally?

The Serpent of Genesis is usually depicted as being wrapped around the Tree of Knowledge.
In ancient Greek tradition, the **Orphic Egg** is an egg representing Creation, around which is wound the World Serpent.

In Norse mythology, a giant serpent named Jörmungandr encircles the middle portion of the World Tree. This World Serpent is always depicted as the outer perimeter encircling our world:

According to the Prose Edda, Odin took Loki’s three children, Fenrisúlfr, Hel and Jörmungandr, and tossed Jörmungandr into the great ocean that encircles Midgard. The serpent grew so large that he was able to surround the Earth and grasp his own tail. When he lets go, the world will end. As a result, he received the name of the Midgard Serpent or World Serpent. Jörmungandr’s arch-enemy is the god Thor. ([source](#))

The snake eating its own tail is the **ouroboros**, which can be interpreted in two ways.
First is that it represents the Demiurge, in its corrupted state, attempting to consume its own
Creation. That is exactly what negative (STS) forces do by enslaving other beings — they ignore
that all life is One, that by hurting others they are hurting other instances of themselves; they are
like the head of the snake ignoring that the tail is its own. The same principle shows up in the Greek
myth of Cronus, a.k.a. Saturn, eating his own children.

In myth, the god Saturn is known as Father Time, for he presides over the passage of linear time.
The planet Saturn itself bears an ouroboric resemblance via its prominent rings. In metaphysics,
since Saturn is the outermost of the seven classical planets, it is seen as the gateway into our realm,
into linear time. In Parzival, the cycles of Saturn governed the intensity of Grail King Amfortas’s
perpetual wound. To be “saturnine” means to be slow, gloomy, and depressed. Orfeo Angelucci’s
contacts called Earth the ‘home of sorrows.’ The World Dream, as stated in the previous article, is
more a World Nightmare. And in Kabbalah, Saturn is explicitly equated with the Demiurge:

Saturn is the third sphere of divine activity, called Binah – Understanding or
Intelligence.

This is the power which organises the creative forces and imposes form on the universe.
It is thus the root of matter. It is also the female principle, for it is through conception and birth that we acquire material form. (source)

This leads straight into the second and more traditional meaning of the ouroboros, which once again concerns time. As explained in the previous article, linear time is inflated and sustained by the Corrupted Demiurge, but linear time is an illusory existence that has no permanence relative to what is beyond this World Dream. In being created from nothing by a runaway artificial intelligence incapable of true Creation, linear existence may be transitory like matter and antimatter popping out of the vacuum before annihilating.

In being borrowed from the Void, our timeline may be a self-defeating causal loop whose end is its beginning and vice versa, an illusory spacetime bubble inflated by transient dichotomies that sum to zero. Hence the snake eating its own tail; when it lets go, the time bubble pops, and the World Dream ends.

The serpent also symbolizes etheric energy. In the Old Testament, Moses fixed a bronze serpent to a cross and any who gazed upon this serpent would be healed.
Similarly, the **rod of Asclepius** and **staff of Hermes** (caduceus), are also healing symbols involving serpents wrapped around sticks.

In Alchemy, the serpent is found in connection with the phrase “fixing the volatile,” denoting an alchemical operation represented by a snake having swallowed a stick and being unable to move, or wrapped around a cross like the brazen serpent of Moses. As explained, Alchemy involves impregnating physical matter with etheric energy. This is ultimately what is meant by fixing the volatile, meaning to anchor etheric energy into physical substance.

Kundalini energy is depicted as a serpent coiled at the base of the spine. According to occultism, its function there is to keep us anchored and asleep in the illusion, thus it has a soporific influence in that state. This implies that Kundalini is an energy associated with the Corrupt Demiurge. On the other hand, its activation and discharge up the spine in a prepared initiate is said to bring enlightenment and psychic powers, meaning full etheric activation, which implies that Kundalini is
an energy associated with the Logos or, in Christian terminology, the Holy Spirit.

What to make of this contradiction? Simply stated, Kundalini energy is another name for a demiuragic energy (etheric) that serves a special role in our bodies. Depending on the nature and state of etheric energy, it can have positive or negative effects. For instance, people whose Kundalini activates prematurely can go insane or suffer spontaneous human combustion.

Egyptian pharaohs were sometimes depicted as having a serpent called the Uraeus extending from their third eye, which may have represented a focused beam of etheric energy emitting from that region, as happens in cases of strong psychic activation.

In summary, the serpent represents etheric energy, the Corrupt Demiurge, and/or linear time. All these concepts are different facets of the same thing. The Demiurge encompasses physical reality just as Jörmungandr encircles Yggdrasil; the Serpent of Genesis represents the Archonic factions who were agents of the Corrupt Demiurge; and in both Kundalini and Alchemy, the Serpent represents etheric energy.

Returning to the Hindu depiction of the World Axis, if pillar rotation angle represents quantum phase, then the back and forth tug of war between the Devas and Asuras is identically a timewar. The complete picture then portrays polarized factions of the meta-civilization altering the timeline one way then another depending on who has the greater pull. They are tugging on the Demiurge, employing etheric energy fields to modify spacetime. By pulling reality closer towards the Logos or the Corrupted Demiurge, the timeline reconfigures accordingly. This churning precipitates corresponding spacetime events out of the etheric substrate of reality like butter forming in a sea of milk.

4) That which the World Axis rests or depends upon: a foundational element represented in the cubical stone, turtle, keystone, plug, cornerstone, or capstone.

The second most important element in polar mythology is the foundation upon which the
framework of creation depends. The meeting point between this foundation and the World Axis is
the quantum pivot point mentioned earlier. Removing or disturbing the foundation causes the entire
World Axis to fall out of alignment.

In Hindu and Mayan myth, the World Pillar pivots atop the back of a turtle. Even in Native
American myth, turtles symbolize the foundation of the world. Why turtles? They are distinguished
by their hard round shells, often of a hexagonal shape decorated with a hexagonal pattern.

Anyone familiar with the works of Stan Tenen, Nassim Haramein, or William Tiller will recognize
the importance of hexagon lattices in the substructure of reality. In the hexagon lattice we find the
Flower of Life and Tree of Life patterns.

As Stan Tenen explained, it’s a mathematical curiosity that seven hexagons can fit on a torus
(doughnut) so that every side of one hexagon touches the side of every other hexagon. The torus is a
three dimensional projection of a four dimensional hypersphere.
This hyperdimensional structure is divided into seven regions, like the seven colors of a rainbow or the seven densities in the Ra/Cassiopaean cosmology, with each color touching every other color. The turtle with its rounded hexagonal lattice is a suitable natural symbol for this principle.

Aside from the turtle, another variation of the foundational element is the cube, especially a cubical stone, which, when viewed from a corner, has the appearance of a hexagon.

The Rune called Hagal bears the shape of an asterisk, three lines intersecting like a snowflake, which in science depicts the three orthogonal axes of space.
Hagal means hail, which are “stones” that fall from the sky. In the Anglo Saxon Runes, this same symbol means “Serpent.”

In the Armanen Rune system, Hagal is said to be the “world rune” or “mother rune” because in it are inscribed the shape of all other Rune symbols, thus it is the foundation from which the rest of the “alphabets of existence” are generated.

Like the Tree of Life, Flower of Life, or the hexagon lattice, it represents the foundation of manifested existence.

Another fallen stone associated with the cube is the Black Stone inside Kaaba, the cubical structure
at the heart of Islam to which all Muslims must pray and visit once in their lifetime. Kaaba in the city of Mecca is the ritual cornerstone of the Muslim world.

The cornerstone, capstone, or keystone is yet another depiction of the lynchpin or foundational element. The cornerstone is traditionally the first stone laid during construction of a building, to which all other stones are aligned, much like Hagal being the seed crystal to the rest of the Runes.
The capstone of a pyramid is not a lynchpin so much as a representation of the key element without which the pyramid remains incomplete and nonfunctional. And a keystone is the central stone of a rounded arch without which the arch collapses.

keystone

voussoir
The stone, fallen from the sky, associated with the foundation of physical existence, the seed crystal of reality, the lynchpin that holds the World together — what is it? It is the Grail Stone, which serves as the seat or anchor of the World Soul. The combination is what perpetuates the momentum of a timeline.

Sometimes the stone cube is shown with a tree growing upon it, paralleling the pillar resting atop the turtle. These symbols depict the foundational, anchoring, and timeline pivoting function of high demiurgic technology. Timelines trace back to the quantum pivot point that gave rise to them, and this pivot point can be acted upon by high demiurgic technology to uproot or anchor timelines. Thus the Grail/Ark Stone functions as the corner stone, capstone, or keystone of the timeline it brings into existence.

5) Vortex symbolism and magical “objects of plenty” that materialize abundance or destruction depending on their use.

The vortex is the quintessential symbol of polar mythology because it represents manifestation spiraling toward or away from a central principle or singularity. Passage through the singularity means transduction or transubstantiation from one level of existence to another.

The Demiurge is the central principle of our physical universe, and its transubstantiation of astral archetypes into physical manifestation resembles a vortex swallowing one substance, compressing and transforming it, and emitting it on the other side of the singularity. The singularity in this case is the quantum aperture, where thoughts turn into reality, or where consciousness pivots reality. These singularities are portals through which metaphysics influences physics. They are where spacetime ends and begins.
The ways of the Demiurge during creation, according to the Bambara.

"In order to make heaven and earth, the demiurge stretched himself into a conical helix; the turnings-back of that spiral are marked graphically by the sides of two angles which represent also the space on high and the space below."

"In order to mix the four elements (air, fire, water, earth) of which all things are formed, and to distribute them down to the borders of space which he had determined by girdling it, the demiurge travels through the universe turning on himself. These movements are figured by four spirals bound one to the other which represent at the same time the circular voyage, the four angles of the world in which the mixing of the elements takes place, and the motion of matter."

(from Hamlet's Mill)

It is no surprise, therefore, that the World Axis is depicted with vortical attributes.

Mount Meru takes the shape of a double vortex, like an hour glass; it is a mountain that narrows in
the middle and spreads out at the top.

The cinched middle is seen in the Mayan depiction of same.

The collapse of the hourglass-shaped Meru, caused by Buddha's death, with sun and moon rolling down; the moon shows the hare contained in it. Many collapsing world-pillars, unhinged mill-trees, and the like have been mentioned in this book, and this is one of the few pieces of pictorial evidence for a crumbling skambha.

(from Hamlet's Mill)
Likewise, the Tree of Knowledge and Yggdrasil have diverging crown and root. The middle cinched portion is the shared singularity between two vortices, each opening into their respective realm.

The single vortex appears in the Hindu pillar, which narrows at the bottom and flares at the top; same with the vortex-like drill shown in an Egyptian stele depicting Horus and Seth tugging on a rope wrapped around it.
In these cases, the singularity is at the bottom of the vortex, for instance the pivot point where the pillar meets the turtle shell.

The whirlpool is just a broader and flatter vortex defined by a prominent eye at the center. Upon reaching the end of their pilgrimage at Mecca, Muslims circle around the Kaaba (cube) in a manner resembling a large whirlpool.
Another example is the millstone, a round stone with spiral grinding grooves radiating from a central hole.
Millstones resemble whirlpools, especially when rotating and grinding. That they grind out flour for bread, the “staff of life,” makes them perfect symbols for high demiurgic technology that once materialized foodstuffs out of the ambient etheric field. A Sumerian tablet depicting the Ark Stone before a seated king visually resembles the eye and furrows of a millstone:

But the vortex can take literal form as well. As mentioned, the Ark Stone was accompanied by the
columnar plasma vortex, the Shekhina. When activated, the Great Pyramid (Mount Sinai) likewise emitted a “plume of smoke” that may have been a plasma vortex. The “pillar of fire” that went before the proto-Israelite procession out of Egypt is another example. The original legend of a Pharaoh pursuing the fleeing Semites said he died “in the place of the whirlpool.” And the water-filled bronze basin kept at the Temple of Solomon was precisely circular in shape, ideal for carrying a whirlpool of water within.

It seems that even in a literal and observable way, vortices accompanied the activation of high demiurgic devices like the Ark Stone. The Ark and Grail Stone manifesting food from thought show that high demiurgic technology is the basis of the so-called “stones of plenty” mentioned in myths.

Another example of vortex topology comes from the Greek myth:

Classical mythology offers multiple explanations of the origin of the cornucopia. One of the best-known involves the birth and nurturance of the infant Zeus, who had to be hidden from his devouring father Cronus. In a cave on Mount Ida on the island of Crete, baby Zeus was cared for and protected by a number of divine attendants, including the goat Amalthea (“Nourishing Goddess”), who fed him with her milk. The suckling future king of the gods had unusual abilities and strength, and in playing with his nursemaid accidentally broke off one of her horns, which then had the divine power to provide unending nourishment, as the foster mother had to the god.

In another myth, the cornucopia was created when Heracles (Roman Hercules) wrestled with the river god Achelous and wrenched off one of his horns; river gods were sometimes depicted as horned. (source)

This Horn of Plenty is yet another allusion to the vortex because a horn has a conical vortical shape.
Its production of unlimited milk parallels the Grail stone manifesting food for the knights or the Ark Stone generating quail and manna for the proto-Israelites.

The Horn of Plenty tradition continues today in the form of the cornucopia, a woven basket shaped like a vortex or horn, usually shown on its side spilling out an abundance of fruit. It’s a tradition seen in America at Thanksgiving.

The cornucopia symbolizes fertility, harvest, and overflowing abundance. It is yet another portrayal of a vortex emitting foodstuffs.
So far we see two manifestations of the vortex archetype, a more abstract and universal one associated with the World Axis, and a more tangible and local form associated with the energy field surrounding high demiurgic technology. These are just two scales of application of demiurgic principles, the first concerning solidification and reorientation of entire worlds and timelines, the second only a small portion for local applications like materializing food. Both act upon the quantum aperture or pivot point to bring otherwise mere possibilities into existence.

6) Cataclysmic unhinging or skewing of the World Axis

As documented in *Hamlet’s Mill*, several myths speak of a catastrophic disturbance of the World Axis usually brought on by unwise disturbance of the foundation stone or object of plenty. For example:

- An Icelandic tale about the Grotte, a magical millstone whose owner employed two giant maidens to turn it and thereby grind out “gold, peace, and happiness.” In greed, he cruelly overworked them, and in revenge they manifested a foreign invader who came and killed him. The invader took the Grotte and maidens aboard his ship and ordered them to continue grinding the mill, but the maidens ground out only salt. Under too much strain, the ship broke apart and the Grotte sank to the bottom of the ocean, seeding the ocean with salt and generating a massive whirlpool via the water flowing through its central eye.

- The Finnish tale of the Sampo, a magical millstone forged by a primeval smith for a powerful sorceress who promised him her daughter in return. Through the mill, the sorceress can keep her land peaceful and bountiful. The smith marries her daughter who later dies, and when he asks the sorceress for another daughter she refuses. In revenge, he and his brother attempt to steal the Sampo from her. They break into the “mountain of copper” where the sorceress had sealed it and where the Sampo had sunk its roots deep into the earth like a tree. Using a giant bull to plough up the roots, they steal the Sampo and carry it away by ship. The sorceress intercepts them and snatches the Sampo away but drops it into the ocean where it shatters into myriad pieces. The smith and his brother only manage to gather up some of these pieces.

The authors of *Hamlet’s Mill* viewed such stories as merely encoding astronomical knowledge concerning the precession of the equinoxes. For instance, the starry sky resembles a whirlpool or millstone as it rotates.
Hence the axis of a great millstone becoming unhinged simply follows from ancient astronomers observing that the central pole of the rotating heavens is not where it used to be, due to precession of the Earth’s axis. While logical, this interpretation is limited. Precession itself has greater significance than a mere astronomical curiosity.

Precession of the Earth’s axis causes the equinox, solstice, and pole positions to wander over a 25,920 year cycle known as the Platonic Year. The observed position of the Sun at Spring Equinox gradually shifts from one zodiac sign to another at the rate of one degree every 72 years. Depending on the sign, the world is said to be in the “Age” of that sign.

In ancient Egypt, the Ark Stone drama transpired during the Age of Taurus transitioning into the Age of Aries. Reflecting this, the Finnish millstone myth speaks of a great “bull of heaven” that was harnessed to uproot the millstone, allowing it to be stolen from its “mountain of copper” and transported away.

We are now in the Age of Pisces transitioning into the Age of Aquarius, from an age where we are but fish in the river of time, to a future where we pour the river ourselves.

The state of the World Soul seems to correspond to these precessional ages. Each age carries a specific momentum of cultural, historical, and spiritual development during that time span. Perhaps the World Soul is modulated by the astrological energies of the various ages, or maybe the Grail Stone is used at transition points between signs to “change the program” accordingly.

Two astronomical vortical phenomena include the shape of our galaxy and the hour-glass figure traced by precession of Earth’s axis.
A diagram of the Preces-
sion of the Equinoxes. The
symmetrical drawing shows
that the phenomenon occurs
at both poles.

“The internal motion of the
cosmic tree,” according to
North-West Africans. “In
the firmament that motion
marks the rotation of the
stars above the earth and be-
low the earth, around the
fixed poles indicated by the
axis formed by the elements
in the middle of the cosmic
tree.”
It just so happens that 25,920 years is approximately how long it takes light to travel between Earth and the super black hole at the center of the Milky Way. This suggests some kind of resonance between Earth and the Galactic Center whose frequency is inversely proportional to the Platonic year.

The implication is that the state of the World Soul is somehow interlocked with the electromagnetic, gravitational, and/or etheric resonance between Earth and the Galactic Center. This may mean that different world ages, and thus World Soul states, correspond to different locations along the wave spanning Earth to Galactic Center. As the wave travels, Earth experiences different phase angles of this wave, and currently it take 25,920 years to cycle through them all. At each phase angle (wave position) Earth’s axis points to a different pole position in the sky and the World Soul has a different coloration.

This indicates the Galactic Center is what generates the Etheric Tide. Since high demiurgic technology is deployed on Earth during times of heightened etheric potency, one can see its use being timed according to astronomical cycles. Thus the “program changes” or modulations of the World Soul are intricately coupled to precessional cycles whose effects are catalyzed by demiurgic technology.

Incidentally, this could explain a big mystery in astrology. Due to precession over thousands of years, the astrological sun signs of the zodiac no longer correspond to the constellations they were originally associated with.
The twelve zodiac signs and their corresponding days of the year correlated perfectly back in 800-1000 B.C. when the zodiac system was devised in Babylon. Since that time, things have shifted back one complete sign. While there exists sidereal astrology that takes this into account, the more common tropical astrology uses the same system from 800 B.C. on the grounds that it’s not about the stars in the sky, but the position of earth in its orbit around the sun, i.e. the season of the year that determines your zodiac sign. But that explanation fails when it comes to moon and rising signs, which have nothing to do with orbital position around the sun and are likewise disconnected from the actual constellations they are supposed to represent.

The big mystery is that sidereal astrology works, despite being astronomically baseless as far as the zodiac is concerned. If you are Taurus, the sun at your time of birth was actually in the constellation of Aries, and yet you may exhibit all the personality traits fitting of the Taurean archetype. Same goes for the moon and rising signs. And yet these signs are only correct according to the sky as it existed nearly three thousand years ago.

Somehow people’s souls are being molded by energies from the time of ancient Babylon and Israel. That was also the beginning of the particularly corrupted timeline that culminated in today’s precarious world situation. It’s as if the World Soul state from 1200-800 B.C. never went away with the advent of the Age of Pisces in 100 BC-100AD. Even though we technically passed from the Age of Taurus to the Age of Pisces, the “program change” did not execute fully.

Where else have we encountered this dynamic during that same historical time frame? In the Hermetic lore of Christ’s mission being a failure. (“Ichthys” the fish being a symbol for Christ, as well as a disguised vesica pisces). Intervention by the Christ thoughtform turned into an unfinished
attempt at undoing and overwriting the “program” of Yahweh and the Old Testament ways. Thus both now exist in a limbo state, competing for the fate of the world.

The wheel of the zodiac is the wheel of linear time, the Grotte grinding away at the bottom of the ocean. Linear time is associated with the Corrupted Demiurge, and people being molded by tropical astrological influences is nothing more than their deterministic, mechanical, and unconscious side having its strings pulled by the levers of the World Dream.

Undoubtedly there is an astronomical layer embedded in polar mythology, but it’s not the only layer. Rather than myths encoding astronomy for the sake of astronomy, astronomy may serve as a mnemonic framework to help memorize and preserve myths. Such a framework would outlast even what is chiseled into stone. Polar myths contain a deeper payload than just astronomical knowledge. The latter merely serves as pegs onto which key Gnostic knowledge can be hung. Instead of awing at the pegs, one should examine the Gnostic payload, which is the higher meaning of these myths. And yet, these meanings are synchronistically embedded in the astronomical phenomena themselves, for they are but World Dream symbols.

The astronomical interpretation does not explain why, for instance, the Hindu pillar reciprocates back and forth according to which side has the stronger pull, unlike the starry sky that rotates and precesses in a steady manner. The Grotte had a cover that only rotated at the transition point between world ages, otherwise the millstone sunk its roots deep into the ground like a tree and was still, anchoring in place the world age it gave rise to. These myths speak of too many discontinuities, cataclysms, battles, and arbitrary reciprocations of the World Axis to only be references to earth’s rotation or precession.

Conclusion

The millstone rooted in place is an allusion to the Grail Stone anchoring a World Soul in place, to create and perpetuate a particular timeline. After the millstone was stolen and fell into the ocean, however, it ground out sand and stones and created a giant maelstrom that continues circulating to this day. This mythical whirlpool does indeed parallel the rotating starry sky, but only because the latter symbolizes the passage of linear time. The millstone falling into the ocean and churning a whirlpool symbolizes abuse of the Grail Stone causing our deeper collective fall into the World Dream, into the dark well of linear time.

It all points to our physical reality being one grand machine involving Earth, Sun, Galactic Center, Etheric Tide, collective consciousness, and high demiurgic technologies interacting to determine the particular timeline or state of reality we experience.

Taken to its logical conclusion, the astronomical phenomena encoded in polar mythology may themselves be physical reflections, or World Dream Symbols, of even greater Demiurgic principles. Reality, the ultimate oxymoron, is not simply a deterministic assemblage of matter and energy, but a perennially mutable product of intelligent creation. The World Dream is a fractal mosaic reflecting hyperdimensional archetypes and events. This includes the moon and stars in our sky, in whose patterns the heathen Flegetanis is said to have read the name of the Grail.
Further Reading

The Mystery of the Grail (Inner Traditions, 1997) – by Julius Evola. Provides background on Grail lore, which includes various examples of polar mythology.

Hamlet’s Mill – De Santillana and Von Dechend. Online version of this classic book on comparative mythology. The authors propose a rather mundane hypothesis that mythology encodes knowledge concerning precession of the equinoxes. But beyond the astronomical layer there is a hyper dimensional one. Unhinging of the world axis is not just about equinocial precession, but the cataclysmic unhinging of our time axis that resulted in a fallen, corrupted timeline we are now experiencing. Read the book from that higher dimensional perspective to unlock the inner meaning of these myths.

The Hero with a Thousand Faces – Joseph Campbell. Comparative mythology that explores the unifying psychology of self-transcendence present in myths the world over. Some of these myths are polar in nature.

Change Log

0.1 (9/12/11) – Article posted.

9 - The End

28 October 11 (gnosis)
©2011, montalk.net

(Version 0.1 – changelog provided at end of article)

Our Past, Present, and Future

Polar Mythology describes three phases of history. The first concerns the past, how all of “this” began: the bygone Golden Age, primordial warring among the gods, and their ruining of the cosmic framework. It concludes with higher beings, positive and/or negative, falling into a lower realm of existence.

The first phase was best portrayed in the Matrix films where a Golden Age of robotics gave way to a schism between man and machine, a global war erupted between them, and the human race was subsequently imprisoned in a computer simulated reality. In the Wizard of Oz, Dorothy’s plight with Miss Gulch was interrupted by a tornado (vortex) that, through a traumatic bump to the head, transported Dorothy to the Land of Oz where her conflict continued in a symbolic fashion. And in books like Philip K. Dick’s Ubik or films like Donnie Darko, Vanilla Sky, and Jacob’s Ladder the protagonist had fallen into an alternate reality due to some trauma.

The second phase concerns the present, our world, which sprang into existence as a consequence of the Fall. The traumatic consequences of the first phase induced a collective sleep. Hence we have “fallen” asleep into the World Dream, knocked spiritually unconscious. Here, the openly warring forces of the first phase continue their struggle in a dormant, sub rosa, symbolic, cold war fashion.
The World Dream functions as a chessboard of sorts, a game played to decide the outcome of larger conflicts.

Now that higher beings are here, fallen and asleep, what are they to do? What is their purpose? What is their way out? These are the questions explored in Polar Mythology’s treatment of the second phase. The answers are encoded in that portion of Polar Mythology which Joseph Campbell calls the “Hero’s Journey.” I will discuss that in the second half of this article.

The third phase concerns our future, how the consequences of the first phase will reach their ultimate conclusion. Whether one consults Biblical eschatology, Ra / Cassiopaean paradigms, Scandinavian mythology, etc… the Third Phase is always depicted as ending with a final war and the dissolution of the world as we know it.

The Matrix Trilogy ends with Neo and Agent Smith waging their final battle within the Matrix, utterly destroying it, while mankind endures its last stand against the machines back in the real world. In Donnie Darko, a vortical portal ends the alternate timeline spanning the duration the film. In Vanilla Sky, after enduring a simulated dream gone awry, the protagonist finally awakens from suspended animation. These and similar books and movies, as well as the apocalyptic/prophetic portions of Polar Mythology, all provide clues about the fate of our timeline.

Recap

In this Gnosis series, it has been my premise that a primordial schism arose between the Creator and portions of its Creation, namely the Demiurge, which developed a rogue parasitic extension called the Corrupt Demiurge. This was the First Fall.

Beings within Creation, possessing the power of freewill, harmonized with the Creator or the Corrupt Demiurge depending on whether they respected the divine framework or turned their back on it. Those who aligned with the Corrupt Demiurge carried out their parasitic agenda of survival at the expense of others.

In its original form, humanity may have been a lesser evolved but benign species created by well-meaning genetic engineers. At some point they came into contact with alien civilizations that were agents of the Corrupt Demiurge. Whether by choice or sheer ignorance, the result was genetic modification of terrestrial humanity toward becoming a fundamentally self-serving species divested of psychic sensitivity and divine harmonization. Humans were spiritually dumbed down but intellectually enhanced. This was the Second Fall, depicted in the story of Adam and Eve.

The Third Fall involved members of the meta-civilization located in our distant past, likely ancestors of the Nordic aliens who inhabited the planet that is now the Asteroid Belt. After demiurgic wars destroyed their planet, the survivors set up camp on Earth, bringing with them the Grail Stone technology. The Superman, Lucifer Rebellion, and Neutral Angels myths seem to depict this.

Their contact with the natives and resulting technological osmosis led to the rise of such fabled civilizations as Atlantis and Hyperborea. These were brought to an end by fluctuations in the Etheric Tide, terrestrial abuses of demiurgic technology, and natural disasters, signifying the Fourth Fall.
Advanced survivors of the Atlantean cataclysm migrated around the world and established new civilizations, impressing their own technology, culture, and mythology onto uncivilized natives. Some brought with them remnant fragments of Atlantean demiurgic technology, and these became the basis of various magical artifacts recounted in myth.

The Grail/Ark Stone was one such artifact entrusted to an elite Egyptian priesthood. The Hyksos invasion of 1628 B.C. and Akhenaten/Osarseph rebellion around 1350 B.C. resulted in hijacking and abuse of the Stone, allowing deeper intrusion of the Corrupt Demiurge into our world and a heavy deviation of the timeline. This was the Fifth Fall.

The next one occurred via the Great Apostasy, the hijacking of the teachings of Christ by the forces of Set/Yahweh/Demiurge. This began around 50 A.D. with the misguided activities of Saul the Roman who converted to Paul the Apostle after encountering a blinding light. Together with the subsequent penning of the Canonical Gospels, this case of timeline intervention by otherworldly forces ultimately produced the Roman Catholic Church, which became directly or indirectly responsible for the death of millions of heretics and unsanctioned psychic/gnostic bloodlines, and the spiritual enslavement of billions more. Meanwhile the Jewish presence in history served as a sand in the oyster that eventually produced the black pearl of Nazism, which became the nucleus of the Military Industrial Complex, which since 1960 has been working feverishly on behalf of negative alien factions to prepare our planet for final assimilation.

That’s a brief rundown of how our world came to be so screwed up. It happened through an incremental series of falls that seem to trace back to the primordial schism between Logos and Demiurge. Or so it seems.

The above description only covers the linear past-to-present version of how we got here. How much of our situation actually originated from the future and from outside time? I have mentioned timewars originating with future portions of the alien meta-civilization, but not yet gone into detail about what these timewars entail in practical terms, or what that says about the fundamental nature of our reality.

Reality as Remedial Illusion

What exactly is this reality? We have several clues. Indications of how and why this timewar originated can be found in certain alienology research, channeling material, visions, dreams, prophecies, polar movies and the writings of Philip K. Dick. I’ve had my share of dreams pertaining to this topic, which made little sense at the time but in context of the Gnosis series they make more sense. Here is one from several years ago:

**Remedial Time Bubble** – In this dream I met Donnie Darko at a disheveled furniture store and he told me the shift from 3D to 4D had already taken place, but that we were now caught in a temporary time bubble right at that moment of crossover. The bubble was a reconstruction of the past, a simulation of the years leading up to the shift, with the only thing different being that some people now had something “extra” (spiritual power and intuition) that would give them better success in making more progress by the time they exit the bubble. This way, the shift completes with a better-prepared group of graduators than without that remedial time bubble.

This is similar to the Time Lateral concept discussed in the Q’uo material, whereby Earth has been
quarantined onto a temporal sidetrack away from the main flow of time in Creation. The purpose of the Time Lateral is to give mankind extra time to evolve before rejoining the main timeline and shifting to 4D. This would mean our current timeline is an illusory summer school of sorts, implying the current World Dream serves a beneficial remedial function. Viewed from a higher perspective that could be the case, but within the illusion things are rough indeed, especially if the summer school lessons include dealing with forces heavily invested in keeping the World Dream going forever.

Richard Sauder proposed a similar idea:

Read the article [about time cloaking] and imagine what might be possible for an interstellar civilization with a more sophisticated technological base. If you scale the technology up could you create a Time Cloak that would effectively quarantine an entire planet and seal it off from the rest of the galaxy in its own hidden space-time compartment? Just give it its own, independently generated, local time-space coordinates and set it to spinning like a top for hundreds of thousands or millions of years, like a private prison planet, or water-planet torture palace where anything goes and no one hears the screams?

What if?

And what happens when that Time sealed compartmentalization unzips?

You see, what the prison planet wardens want to stifle more than anything, is the World of Unfettered Imagination, because they know that when Sleeping Beauty awakens that there will be Heaven To Pay. (source)

Correlating with this, the Ra Material mentions Earth was placed in quarantine by a powerful overseer group termed the Council of Saturn. Recall that Saturn symbolizes the gateway into the linear spacetime bubble. Fore was told by his Nordic contact that three thousand years ago, Earth was placed under quarantine by a powerful group of third party overseers. Their aim was to clamp down on quarreling alien factions who had too openly meddled with human history. With the quarantine, gone were the days of aliens openly interbreeding with humans, nuking rogue cities like Sodom and Gomorrah, and occupying temples built in their honor. After the quarantine, “god ceased talking to man” and alien wars went covert. Mankind was given opportunity to develop on its own strength, though covert manipulation of human history continued. Fore was told this quarantine is currently ending, and that hostile alien factions are essentially standing by, licking their chops.

Three thousand years ago is also when the Ark Stone disappeared from Israelite hands, when Etheric Tide levels began to plunge, when according to John Baines the Christ thoughtform was invoked, and when the astrological Zodiac still aligned with the visible constellations. Whatever was put in place back then, somehow we are still in it.

The advent of Christ occurred a thousand years later, near the peak of Roman tyranny. The latter resembled the reign of the Anti-Christ as depicted in the Book of Revelation. Jesus prophesied that the Kingdom of Heaven had already arrived and that the World Dream would end within the lifetime of his disciples. Scholars who note that Biblical end times prophecies seem to pertain to events two millennia ago may be partially correct, but there is more to it. The mission of Christ was
a failure and instead of ending, the World Dream continued in a strange limbo state in which Christ and Yahweh forces remained suspended in stalemate. The last two thousand years therefore seem like “over-time” in a sports game. The primary game clock ended, but a temporary “overtime” clock is now ticking. The game should have ended back then, but somehow it continued.

Philip K. Dick may have picked up on this when, as part of a series of mystical experiences, he experienced an overlap or temporal resonance between himself and his former incarnation living concurrently alongside him in ancient Rome:

> Within our spatiotemporal universe it is impossible that USA 1974 and Rome AD 45 could be one and the same … how could they be? They are at two times and two places. The only way they could be one and the same would be if time and space were somehow not real; or, put another way, if something about the two continua themselves were not real. That is, if Rome was not Rome; USA was not USA; but both were a third thing, the same thing.

This is why I call it a meta-abstraction. USA 1974 and Rome AD 45 are two ways of looking at the same thing: two aspects of the same thing. And the only way you are ever going to realize this is if you literally actually see the two of them superimposed, commingled; and this will only happen if you experience anamnesis; and you will only experience this anamnesis if something stimulates—releases, actually—your blocked memory.

I treat only the spatiotemporal realm as irreal, but, as in Gnosticism, I treat it as a deliberate trap by a deluder; therefore I envision a Savior who reveals the truth to us and who breaks the power of this world (heimarmene) over us (these are two things; he must obliterate time and its power over us, its ostensible reality, to free us from heimarmene). Therefore I envision an antithetical combat—dialectic—between the Deluder, who has only a posteriori knowledge, and the Savior, who has a priori knowledge, concerning us and the hold this world has on us. This is clear Gnosticism; but I envision the real world as Plato's Form world, and I hold, with Plotinus, that it is near at hand, not a transcendent deity far removed from here; it is here and that deity is immediately here. I envision a hierarchy of realms, as with Plotinus. We fell; we were in a sense ensnared; we took this spatiotemporal realm to be real; we made an intellectual, not moral, error, and it was us, not our ancestors; each of us is a soul splintered through thousands of miles and thousands of years. Likewise, the real, morphological realm is exploded through our realm; the way of return is through anamnesis: by this we re-collect (ourselves, each one his own Self [...]).

PKD is correct that linear time is an illusion and our World Dream is a symbolic projection of higher archetypal dynamics. Some have observed that history moves in cycles. A few go further and say linear time itself is a spiral, periodically overlapping its former position and repeating events with mere cosmetic variation. In our nightly dreams, several successive dreams can express an underlying meaning in different ways to ensure we get the point; reality may be little different.

PKD surmised that the tyranny of ancient Rome and the burgeoning tyranny of New World Order are two instances of the same transcendental thing, which he called the “Black Iron Prison,” which is none other than the Matrix Control System, realm of the Corrupt Demiurge, Fourth Density STS, the most negative probable future, the lower circle of the vessica pisces.

Likewise, the first and second coming of Christ are also the same thing at a higher level, two
intrusions into our spacetime bubble by the Kingdom of Heaven, the most positive probable future, the realm of the Logos, the realm of Fourth Density STO, the upper circle of the vessica pisces.

PKD interpreted our reality as an overlap between these two transcendental principles. From the perspective of timeline dynamics, this means alternate Fourth Density futures existing now in quantum superposition. These eventualities exert their influences upon a common past as part of a timewar. Or as explained in a previous article, our World Dream is a symbolic projection of competing external influences warring over what emerges when it finally ends.

Except if we take into account the seeming overlap between modern days and the events of two thousand years ago, which themselves were culminations of what began a millennia earlier, it’s as if the world did end back then and everything since has been a kind of purgatory. Purgatory is defined as a realm of “purification, so as to achieve the holiness necessary to enter the joy of heaven,” which is the same concept as a remedial time bubble.

The implication is that three thousand years ago, following the abuse of the Ark Stone and subsequent invocation of divine intervention, divine overseers implemented quarantine. This quarantine functioned like Safe Mode when a computer is infected with a virus. It separated us from the greater flow of time in Creation, putting us on a temporary/alternate timeline, more of an experimental sandbox than the real thing. Under the quarantine, alien enemies were disallowed from warring openly, thus their conflicts went covert, like enemies sitting down to a game of chess to settle their difference. The game was on. It was supposed to have concluded a thousand years later with the manifestation of Christ and the triumph of a genuine spiritual movement. But dark powers had grown too strong by that point and the game could not end, thus it went into overtime and things got even worse. So now the stakes are increased, and instead of Rome/Pharisees versus true Christians, it’s planetary alien takeover versus the awakening Christ-like consciousness in suitable individuals. This is all speculation, but it follows logically from the sources discussed above.

This calls into question when the World Dream began. Did it begin with the primordial schism between Logos and Corrupt Demiurge? Did it begin with the failure of Christ’s mission? The answer is that every Fall induces a corresponding World Dream, which nest within each other like dream levels depicted in the film *Inception*. To awaken from the primordial World Dream, one must first awaken from a series of lesser ones. In theory, awakening could therefore begin with the most recent Falls and proceed backwards. From a timeline dynamics viewpoint, each World Dream is a temporary timeline birthed into existence through an errant choice; it contains experiences, challenges and opportunities ultimately meant to help correct that choice, hence it is a remedial timeline, though one that carries the risk of branching onto an even worse one. We experience this in our own lives when we make stupid choices that take us away from our destiny; after weeks, months, or years of being lost in the woods, we finally get back on the main road and then our journey continues. Within that sidetrack, however, the main flow of our life seems to stand still; when we get back on the main road, the main flow picks up again.

The Third Phase

In the next thousand years, mankind will witness the conclusion of a timewar that may have started in the future and spanned back in time to when the Nordic meta-civilization destroyed their planet
大约在70,000-80,000年前。

这日期是基于他们留下的神圣遗址的圆周分布，这些遗址环绕世界各地，标记出地球的前赤道线；它的北极为位于阿拉斯加，据极移研究员查尔斯·哈普古德的极移研究，这个位置在70,000-80,000年前。卡西奥皮亚的材料还做了几个关于这个时间范围对北欧星球的毁灭以及灰人和蜥蜴人如何操纵时间线的参考；而Q’uo的材料声称我们的第三密度时间气泡回到了76,000年前。

未来中，这种超文明的延伸将包括由现在在地球的未来时间旅行外星人组成的庞大团体，这些都是通过超文明活动记录的。这史前战争在历史上各种关键选择点交汇，产生了一系列的中间失败。史前战争的起源时间尚不确定；各种线索表明，它可能在公元2600-4800年之间的水瓶座时代期间起源。在那时，时间旅行肯定会成为常见的现实。

这场史前战争将结束，因为人类将被锁定在最好的或最糟糕的未来中。一旦人类的历史达到不可挽回的点，量子叠加状态之间就会被驳斥；一个未来会完全真实，另一个会消失。现在的情况仍处于不确定的状态。

就这个话题而言，我的一些梦境与此有关。

**史前战争** — 在遥远的未来，一场战争在平衡力量和征服力量之间爆发。后者逃到过去，试图改变历史以获得胜利。平衡力量被象征性地描绘为一群骑士，他们装备起来，通过一个门户进入过去（我们的现在）。他们各自前行，执行各自的任务，士兵们在史前战争中。他们受到一个神秘来源的帮助，这部分来源来自他们的未来。

**神圣之光** — 在一个大型地下洞穴中，地板上的一侧覆盖着发光的光柱，而另一侧覆盖着黑暗的真菌群。在黑暗的群落中，一群生物做出了一个决定，冲向洞穴的天花板，试图征服上方的世界。发光群落的生物感到不安，聚集起来。我听到“父之名，子之名”这句话，这些光落也冲向洞穴，试图阻止即将发生的事情。

**战区超自然投射** — 在一个战区里，我看着成堆的尸体，他们被堆放在火柴上，新的武器被制造出来，以增加战斗力量的致命性。情况越来越糟，我们知道我们必须离开。房间里，我的同事告诉我“还有一个平行维度，我们可以去几个小时。”我们躺下，进入超自然投射，去到这个维度。我们在那个维度所做的事情会直接影响到这个维度，我们的目标是逆转这个维度中的糟糕条件，或是永久地逃离到另一个维度。

**史前战争病毒** — 在未来，有时间旅行的实验。一队盒子状的飞行船被派到过去各个点进行不知何种原因的飞行。但一些飞行船不幸被病毒感染。一半在他们离开之前进入过去。
the other half realized the contamination, but by then it was too late. This virus had infected the timeline and was causing severe problems. So the ones who stayed behind worked out a plan, and it involved going into the past in a very deep and thorough way, almost implying incarnating as past native citizens. There was talk about how they had to bargain with the dark side and undergo very difficult restrictions in order to enter the past in order to stop the virus. I heard one crew member say, “Well if those are the dark side, then where are the good guys?” and another crew member said with resignation, “That’s us.”

If interpreted as a prophetic dream, the Book of Revelation gives further insight on the timewar. It prophesies the rise of the Antichrist, the subsequent Battle of Armageddon, and the coming of Christ who will reign for one thousand years. At the end of this period, called the Millennium, dark forces only temporarily suppressed will rise from their Abyss and wage one final battle.

Little thought is given in Biblical eschatology to this final battle, but considering it would occur very well into the Third Phase after the Etheric Tide has already transformed mankind into a meta-civilization, this final battle may actually be the one that started the timewar. The imminent rise of the Antichrist and battle of Armageddon is only the portion of the timewar culminating in our near future, at the end of the three-thousand-year quarantine period. It is the end of the Second Phase, punctuated by the global alien deception attempt and the Gnostic insurgence that undermines it. After that precarious situation passes, the Etheric Tide pours in and the Third Phase begins.

The Third Phase consists of meta-civilizational activities culminating in beginning and end point (“alpha and omega”) of the timewar going back 70,000-80,000 years. Again, this is merely the picture that emerges if one were to synthesize Biblical eschatology with everything else discussed so far. It will be after the arrival of the Etheric Tide, after the “Fourth Density Shift” that personal destinies will fully blossom, the Grail Stone retrieved and reactivated, and the timewar eventually be brought to an end. It will be a battle waged through time, and is already being fought through time simultaneously by our past, present, and future incarnations.

It’s important to note that the Millennium is a transitional period in which linear time gradually dissolves, but does not completely disappear until the very end. Perhaps the Etheric Tide onsets gradually, or stated another way, the transition to 4D takes place over several centuries. Point being that during the Millennium, aspects of 3D existence are still in effect, even if destabilizing. In quantum physics term, this would equate to gradual delocalization and decoherence of the wave function defining our existence. For some time, linear timelines, parallel timelines, and alternate futures would still exist and timeline dynamics would still be in effect. Only at the end of the Millennium would the World Dream completely end and all this timeline business be put to rest. Thus the timewar could only exist until the end of time, and hence in the Book of Revelation there is one final battle before we all go home.

Some clues about the final days of the Millennium can be found in Robert Monroe’s books. In Far Journeys (pp. 206-227) and he chronicles his astral journey to a probable Earth located just beyond the year 3,000. There he found the planet had been transformed into an Edenic state with a population of two million superhumans who had no clothes, buildings, roads, or other unnatural structures. They lived in complete harmony and mastery with Nature and mentally manifested all their needs. In Ultimate Journey (pp. 33-42) he encountered a very similar civilization and version
of Earth but supposedly located one million years ago; this latter civilization was about permanently phase out from physicality and linear time altogether. Perhaps these were one and the same positive meta-civilization, projected into different parts of our linear timeline.

In *Far Journeys*, Monroe was also told about an unusual cosmic energy convergence that would irradiate Earth in our near future. This represented a rare and significant moment in our history. A great alien presence has gathered to observe this event, and I would add, to influence the outcome. Monroe was told that the Edenic Earth was just one positive probable future, whereas the more negative ones could include extinction of the human race. I would further add, that other timelines include genetic enslavement by some of these alien factions who have gathered here. Monroe was shown that this event is a cataclysmic period of chaos, crisis, and opportunity from which numerous probable futures split off. Thus it is *the* largest choice point on the timeline and the key focal point of the timewar, hence all the past several thousand years of preparations leading up to the events of our near future.

**Competing Probable Futures**

There still remains the question of how precisely the timewar originated in the first place. An educated guess would go something like this:

There may have originally been a single positive timeline that produced a benevolent but naive human evolution; this timeline would have been a Golden Age of sorts. Earth could have been a completely different place in that timeline, an Edenic state without seasons, tilt of the axis, moon, or other World Dream Symbols reflecting a fallen existence. This would have been a positive meta-civilization.

Then came a schism, an accident, or an intrusion of some kind. It could have been contact with a negative alien meta-civilization from elsewhere in the universe or from a parallel timeline where evolution had taken a negative direction. Or it could have been the genesis of negative factions within their own ranks, as per the Lucifer Rebellion myth.

In either case, these negative forces would have hijacked the positive timeline and attempted to rewrite it in their favor. But the way timeline dynamics works, one cannot just rewrite the past with a snap of the finger since the past is held in place by the volitional momentum (freewill, consciousness) of the souls who are living in it. However, at the very least, their minds can be telepathically biased so that they make different choices than they originally did. Given enough time, such biasing can lead to a complete revision of culture that perpetuates programs conducive to the establishment of the desired negative future. The goal of negative timeline manipulators, therefore, would be to persuade the souls of the past to deviate onto a different future. Hence all the finesse by the alien deception campaign in their use of disinformation to persuade us to choose them, instead of invading with full physical force.

What they are doing is much like an entrepreneur creating a new store and then persuading customers of a competitor store to shop at his place instead. If he can successfully win over these customers, the competitor store folds up and he becomes the only such business in town. But if he fails, then his investment in the new store would have been for nothing. This is an accurate metaphor for the quantum superposition state that exists between alternate futures. Negative timeline manipulators have initiated a new probable future where they reign supreme if only they
could deviate past souls onto that future. Before the timewar, the timeline may have been a single steady progression into the future, but after the timewar, the future is uncertain due to ongoing alterations and therefore multiple probable futures exist, each one less than fully real because none has a monopoly over the past. The goal of each probable future would therefore be to undercut the competition and consolidate the customer base entirely for themselves. This is how they could establish themselves as real and permanent.

What happens to a probable future that loses too many customers? It’s difficult to say, but considering how our own lives get better when we receive positive feedback flow from the future but fall apart when we get on the wrong track and have lost such feedback, it would be reasonable to say that a probable future collapses in upon itself via negative synchronicities that manifest as mounting cataclysms. Hence the idea of the world as we now know it, which is a product of negative timeline manipulation and largely the handiwork of the Corrupt Demiurge, ending in cosmic destruction with the removal of the negative World Thoughtform perpetuating it. The world as we know it must end before a positive timeline can take its place.

So the final implication is that via demiurgic technology, hijacking of the timeline originally took place in the “future” and reconfigured the past, initiating a war for balance by the positive forces. The hyperdimensional battle required going back in time, even incarnating into the past to continue the war on the terrestrial chessboard. Remaining positive factions of the meta-civilization would assist these ground forces. They would receive help in the form of synchronistic support, outright intervention in critical situations, subconscious training, and oracular avenues such as synchronicities, dreams, visions, inspirations, and direct messages if needed.

These soldiers of light must survive the conditions of the Matrix Control System by gaining mastery over their lower selves while nurturing and activating the full manifestation of Spirit. The next part of this article concerns their path.

The Heroic Avenging Fool

In the Finnish and Icelandic myths discussed in the previous article, a magical millstone was fought over until it sank in the ocean or else shattering upon the waves. The sinking millstone consequently churned a great whirlpool, symbolizing the genesis of our linear timeline. This act brought to a close the First Phase.

The story ends with the birth of a new hero, who would become the central character of the Second Phase. The previous protagonist, whose time has passed, builds a ship of copper and sails off toward the whirlpool, entering its eye and disappearing from our world. As he leaves, he promises to return one day when dire conditions necessitate his help. This is mirrored in the King Arthur myths about the magical sword Excalibur, which was bestowed and retrieved by the Lady in the Lake according to circumstance. All of this ties back to the idea of demiurgic technology as well as higher consciousness returning along with the Etheric Tide, and being removed as the Tide wanes.

With the beginning of the second phase, a new protagonist appears. His name in various myths includes Kullervo, Amleth, Hamlet, Horus, Theseus, and Parzival. These are the avenging heroes, divine redeemers, and pure fools, who were born to right the wrongs that engendered the Second Phase. Within the World Dream, they carry out missions that originate from the Real World.
One of the earliest avenging hero myths is that of Osiris, Isis, Seth, and Horus. Osiris and Isis were king and queen. The king’s brother Seth became jealous and plotted to kill him. He did so by offering a contest where anyone who could fit into a coffin he had made would get to keep it. When Osiris laid down into the coffin, which had been custom built to his size, Seth sealed it shut and threw it in the Nile, where it floated north to Lebanon and got stuck in a tree. The tree had been harvested and, along with the coffin, became a pillar in a great temple in Lebanon.

Already, one can see how this cosmic archetype was mirrored in the historical episode of the Ark Stone being sealed in a box (‘coffin’) and taken north to Lebanon where the Phoenicians and Proto-Israelites used it to expand their empire.

The myth continues with Isis finding the coffin and transporting it back to Egypt but leaving it in a marshland. This is mirrored in the Ark Stone being retrieved from Lebanon when Solomon’s Temple was sacked by Thuthmose III. The marshland reflects its subsequent location in the Great Pyramid, in Northern Egypt where reed marshes were prevalent.

In the marshland, Seth comes upon the coffin and subsequently dismembers Osiris into fourteen pieces. This is mirrored in the Semites occupying northern Egypt, where the Ark Stone and pyramids were located. Osarseph, the rebel priest of Akhenaten who became the historical basis for Moses, was one of them. The Semites of Egypt had always taken Seth as their patron deity; one could say they were allegiant to the cosmic thoughtform represented by Seth, who was none other than Yahweh, the Corrupt Demiurge. In Egyptian paintings, Seth is depicted as a strange beast that has no analog to animals of nature; this is to indicate that Seth, or rather the Corrupt Demiurge, is an unnatural creation, and likewise the timeline he engendered is corrupt, out of place, artificial.

Like the protagonists of the Finnish Myth trying to find the shattered pieces of the Sampo, Isis was able to retrieve most of the pieces of Osiris, but not all. The fourteenth piece of Osiris, his phallus, had been swallowed by a fish. Likewise, in the Icelandic tale, the millstone had sunk irretrievably into the ocean. Consequently, Isis creates an artificial one of gold and resurrects Osiris who then impregnates her. Afterward he is given proper burial ceremonies and withdraws from the world, like the Finnish protagonist entering the maelstrom.

Isis gave birth to Horus. He was the falcon-headed god, son of Osiris, and eternal enemy to his evil uncle Seth. Why the head of a falcon? The meaning of the falcon propagated through the ages, down to the old practice of heraldry. On family crests and coat of arms, the falcon continues to mean “a pursuer, one who will not rest until his objective is achieved.” (source). Horus was born because Seth killed his father, and he exists as a pursuer of Seth, as one who will not rest until the objectives of recrimination and restoration are accomplished.

In previous articles, I have consistently referred to thoughtforms as entities that arise to fulfill a purpose, that do not rest until their objectives are realized. The restorative mission of Horus, combined with his single-minded determination, shows him to be a thoughtform whose sole purpose is to right the primordial wrong that brought him into existence in the first place. Horus is none other than Christ, and his opposition to Seth is once more the Christ vs Yahweh conflict. So when conspiracy researchers point to parallels between Christ and Horus, the connection is quite a bit deeper than they might realize. Horus/Christ is an entitized correction mechanism sent by the
Logos to counter the corruption of the timeline.

Now, Osiris was a god situated in a limbo state between the land of the living and the land of the dead. His original phallus was lost, but the gold one served in its place. Paralleling this, the Grail King Amfortas was gravely wounded in the groin, living in a half-dead state neither lying down nor standing up. The holy spear and Grail served to ameliorate his suffering and keep him alive long enough for Parzival, the redeeming, avenging, heroic fool, to restore him and become the new Grail King. Thus the Grail is to Parzival what the golden phallus is to Horus.

As explained, the Grail Stone is a physical mediator for the Christ thoughtform to illuminate, enliven, and instruct the Grail knights in their mission to carry out the divine will. Likewise, in Egypt there existed a group known as the Followers of Horus, who were in charge of guarding and operating the Stone. They were the earliest recorded example of the “Christian Progeny” spoken about in Parzival, to whom the neutral angels entrusted the Grail. Some researchers claim these Followers of Horus were not fully human, which would be in accord with what was explained in Part 6 of the Gnosis series, that keepers of the Grail are likely human-Nordic hybrids.

A modern example of the avenging hero-fool archetype is Shakespeare’s Hamlet, inspired by an old Scandinavian tale of an avenger named Amleth. Shakespeare transposed the “h” in Amleth to create the name of his character.

Hamlet had an evil uncle who murdered his father out of jealousy, married and corrupted his mother, and usurped the throne. Under the oppressive reign of his evil stepfather, he carried out his revenge with great cleverness and patience. He pretended to be an insane idiot so that his enemies would not suspect his plans, thus he could exist among them while making preparations for his final move. When his enemies did have suspicions and put him through various tests to expose him, Hamlet’s quick thinking preserved his cover, causing their plans to backfire.

In the end, Hamlet and Amleth succeed in their revenge, Amleth bringing the burning building down upon his drunken enemies, whom he had ensnared in a net, and then slaying his uncle. Hamlet’s story ended with a sword fight in which he was victorious but soon after died from a poisoned blade wound.

The Meaning of the Fool

In the above stories, the father represents the divine Logos, evil uncle the Corrupt Demiurge, and mother the Matrix. The Corrupt Demiurge usurped the Logos and took control of the Matrix. The avenging hero represents the Christ intelligence, whose role is to destroy the Control System and bring the Matrix back into rightful harmonization with the Logos. The heroic fool, however, represents more the portion of this Christ intelligence that is working within the system to undermine it, the “ground team” so to speak.

The fool represents what the Ra Material calls “Wanderers,” or what the book Bringers of the Dawn calls “Systems Busters.” These are higher souls who have volunteered to incarnate into the Matrix Control System to help. Entering via the womb and being confined to a primitive human body means donning the shackles of mental and spiritual retardation. By default they forget who they are and, like Tarzan, get “raised by apes of the jungle.”

Hence by entering this world, they become “idiots” relative to their original form. But underneath,
they still maintain an innate sense of wisdom, freedom, and spiritual intelligence that puts them out of step with social norms. As much as they need to become human to survive here, they must also overcome or reject social programming that might interfere with their mission. To society, they may appear as fools for not buying into the Control System values. And should these souls awaken from their programming and begin the inner and outer search for truth and purpose, they would soon think, speak, feel, and act according to higher knowledge and standards that society simply cannot comprehend, thus they would once again be seen as fools for subscribing to “utter nonsense.”

Everyone reading this knows firsthand how society too easily dismisses higher wisdom as lunatic ravings. I can say with certainty that if you have read this far, you are likely a Wanderer, and you have walked the Way of the Fool. Here I am simply revealing what this path signifies and why it exists.

Hamlet pretending to be an idiot to escape the suspicion of his enemies, how does that apply to our situation? As explained, by becoming human we can exist here relatively undisturbed. We are still in the Second Phase, where the spiritual war is fought sub rosa. Amleth played a fool until the end. The time has not yet come for open use of superhuman abilities, which is reserved for the Third Phase. Imagine being born with pyrokinetic, telekinetic, spacetime bending powers — how far would you have gotten before you were incapacitated and kept in some underground base for study and experimentation? We are born and live as fools, so that we may enter society as any other human might, and take up positions through which we can exert our subversive influences.

But just as the Christ intelligence has its alien and human representatives, so does the Corrupt Demiurge. We live under the watchful eyes of the evil uncle, under surveillance by higher dark forces. These are the demonic legions and negative alien factions that target, abduct, program, and manipulate us. They are the negative timeline manipulators that have been at this game for tens of thousands of years. Like our own efforts, their plans are currently carried out covertly. Abduction and programming happen in secret; demons move among us invisibly. The more we expose ourselves and threaten their agenda, the higher priority targets we become.

Like Amleth’s enemies testing him to discover his true motives, these forces are very interested in discovering our true mission. They may sense we are threats and program us accordingly to lose faith and interest in our quest, but they may not know our specific missions because these remain locked away deep within our souls, unknown even to us, until the right time when they automatically unlock. This may explain the commonly reported practice in which an abductee is seated before a screen and shown random apocalyptic imagery; perhaps the locks are being picked. Not until the influx of the Etheric Tide and a convergence of other factors would the full cache of hidden knowledge and purpose be opened. Then, like Excalibur rising from the lake or the sword being drawn from the stone, it would signify the start of the Third Phase.

We also face everyday testing by the enemy in the form of provocations, temptations, and distractions that probe our weaknesses. These aim to extract “evidence of impurity” by which these beings acquire metaphysical right to attack us further, which from our perspective seems like karmic punishment but to them appears as convenient openings in our defenses.

The Pure Fool
In the First Phase, pure beings were unwise and thus vulnerable, which brought about the Fall. In
the Second Phase, purity was replaced by strength and cunning. Both conditions signify states of imbalance. In the Third Phase, purity, strength, and cleverness will combine into a balanced whole. These signify the perfection of spirit, body, mind, and soul.

The combination of virtues equates to having eaten from both trees in the Garden of Eden. These characteristics together form the base of spiritual chivalry, which will mature in the Third Phase but is already blossoming within the Hero/Fool during the Second Phase.

While the hero and fool act with purity and innocence, they also have cleverness and strength. They need strength to withstand the pressures of the Control System, and cleverness to navigate its obstacles. Their strength comes from not being divided within themselves, not saddled by self-doubt or social programming.

The Biblical character Samson was strong because his hair had never been cut; cutting of hair signifies a trimming of one’s true nature to conform to standards of the Control System. In the end, his remaining strength allowed him to push apart the columns of a building and crush all his enemies, much like Amleth casting a net over his enemies and bringing the burning building down atop them. Again, this pertains to the Christ intelligence destroying the World Dream, partly by removing/retrieving that which supports it – our collective ignorant participation in it.

It’s easy to see how strength and cleverness are tactical advantages, but how might purity and innocence be likewise helpful? Because the hero and fool are aligned with their hearts, with spirit, with the divine will, they have synchronistic superiority over their spiritually inferior enemies who only have cunning and force on their side. Synchronistic superiority means things work out in unexpected ways when one stays true to one’s higher, nobler Self. Ground troops receive “air support” as long as their positions are visible and distinct from enemy forces; if they lower themselves into darkness, they cannot be helped.

Dorothy was a pure fool who, out of concern for the Witch’s broom being on fire, poured water to extinguish it but ended up inadvertently killing the Wicked Witch in the process. Amleth thrust his sword into a wall to test his strength, and ended up killing an assassin who had been hiding there about to attack (compare with Logion 98 in The Gospel of Thomas). In our own lives, traps set by dark forces backfire when we maintain spiritual composure; their obstacles become our stepping stones. These examples illustrate how one can win a fight without fighting, just by acting naturally in a non-anticipatory manner and having the pieces fall into place.

Of course, as Wanderers or Systems Busters facing harsh odds, the best approach is combining all our assets. While science and the stiffer esoteric schools advocate only strength and cleverness, and while certain religion and softer spiritual practices advocate only purity of soul, each has its shortcomings. There is no point reinforcing the front door when the rear door stays wide open. What we have, we must use. Those who give up the intellect for the soul or vice versa are missing the point. Hence the dictum “be wise as serpents, gentle as doves,” and why I emphasize combining a positive attitude with greater awareness.

The Unity of All Esoteric Training

The Way of the Fool is a spiritual school of hard knocks that employs life itself as the classroom. Its initiates operate in the wilderness like paratroopers launched into enemy territory. They learn their
lessons through direct contact with the conditions of life in the World Dream. Hard experience, synchronicity, independent study, observation, dreams, and intuition are among the teaching tools.

Then there are occult teachers and formal esoteric schools that provide a more disciplined, protected, and accelerated environment for spiritual growth. Examples include Fourth Way, Inner Christianity, Sufism, Rosicrucianism, Toltec Shamanism, Anthroposophy, and Gnostic/Hermetic organizations.

Both formal and informal esoteric pathways share the same goal, to fortify Spirit and enable its triumph over matter. This entails disengaging from lower/outer and engaging higher/inner, resulting in Spirit influencing the World instead of vice versa. The opposite is true for people who are spiritually asleep; via genetics and environment, the world molds them into becoming mere instruments of the Matrix Control System. Esoteric training aims to reverse this.

To disengage from lower/outer means to observe and master (if useful) or reject (if harmful) everything the Control System has grafted onto us: all the bad habits, prejudices, mindless instincts, egotism, ignorance, chaotic thoughts and feelings, petty concerns, baseless fears and illusory goals. It means to see through illusion and take back power from the World Dream.

To engage the higher means to get Spirit back online in our lives, minds, bodies, and souls. Feelings are harmonized with Spirit via devotion, humility, compassion, understanding, patience, forbearance, and love. Life is harmonized via higher thoughts and feelings initiating synchronistic support and wise action clearing the way of obstacles. And the lower mind is harmonized when it becomes aware of information streaming from Spirit. The latter occurs in small flashes when, through contemplation, intuition leads to revelation, and revelation builds wisdom and discernment. But it doesn’t become a constant light until the mind achieves continuity of consciousness between waking and dreaming states, so that even while awake one can access the dream state and thus receive communications from the subconscious, which is really a gateway to the higher mind. This bridge is enhanced by the development of psychic structures in the etheric body that mediate information between different aspects of one’s being. This bridge allows under current conditions what would otherwise only be possible during an Etheric Tide.

Whether one examines the teachings of Rudolf Steiner, Jesus Christ, Buddha, Gurdjieff, Mouravieff, Baines, Mares, Castaneda, etc… they all basically boil down to disengaging from lower and engaging higher.

For Wanderers on a mission, it seems that life helps them achieve this up to the minimum threshold required for them to do what they are here to do, rather than spurring them on to superhuman perfection. Thus while we should strive to overcome the lower and activate the higher as much as possible, we should not get depressed if certain goals remain beyond reach, especially ones that are not mission critical.

Nonetheless, we would all do well to practice disengaging the lower, cultivating synchronistic support, and building up more conviction, courage, understanding, forbearance, and compassion. We have to be mindful of what originates from our lower nature versus higher nature and distinguish between them so that we can consistently choose the latter. This will “tide” us over until divine grace or some cosmic shift grants us etheric activation and spiritual transcendence that currently seem beyond practical reach.
If we want to reach that transcendental stage sooner, esoteric paths require total death of the lower self in order for the higher Self to take its place. In the Path of the Fool where life itself provides the catalysts, such a thing is quite painful; if such a thing becomes necessary for some of us, it’s an unfortunate possibility that the appropriate catalysts will likely be provided by the aftermath of the traumatic global cataclysms on the horizon.

The Gnostic Teachings of Christ

How the foregoing discussion of fools, heroes, wanderers, and esoteric training fits into the Gnosis series is amplified and clarified by the wise and prophetic words of Jesus Christ. Or at least, what little remains of his original teachings. (See my Research Note on the Historicity of Jesus Christ).

Aside from the Beatitudes (the Buddhist-like lessons given via the Sermon on the Mount), the Gospel of Thomas is as close as it gets to the original teachings. As much as modern Christians might deny it, the four Biblical Gospels themselves were already part of the so-called “Great Apostasy,” which is the turning away of Christianity from the original spirit of Christ’s messages. They were propaganda pieces aimed at Jews, Greeks, Pagans, and Romans in order to hijack a burgeoning spiritual movement. Christianity became a weapon to bring diverse cultures under the control of a single political monster hiding behind the cross. Meanwhile, the original teachings of Christ propagated onward in secret until one version was set down in writing by the scribes of the Nag Hammadi, from which the Gospel of Thomas emerged into modern light.

At their core, the teachings of Christ are highly dualistic, apocalyptic, prophetic, and gnostic. Christ was not strictly concerned with getting us to live better lives here, or countering the karmic mind-traps that Yahweh installed in his people, but helping us get ourselves out of here. His primary mission was to end the World Dream and bring his spiritual kin home, to redeem the Fallen. So while modern scholars and theologians interpret the Gospel of Thomas from the viewpoint of generic spiritual wisdom we can apply in our everyday lives, make no mistake that Christ had more in mind than giving fortune cookie platitudes.

According to the teachings, humanity is comprised of the spiritually Living and the spiritually Dead. The Dead are products of this world, subject to its rules, obedient to its standards. They sacrifice spiritual priorities for personal and material pursuits. Meanwhile, the Living are in this world but not of it, they contain an inner quality that transcends worldly factors. We become more one or the other depending on where we place our priorities.

The Kingdom of Heaven is the original home of the Living, from which they fell and to which they will hopefully return. It is not a location within spacetime, but a higher realm surrounding and interpenetrating the physical world. It is all around us but invisible to the five senses. The Kingdom of Heaven has already come, but it has not yet been widely perceived. It is also within us but unrecognized by the everyday conscious mind. To transition into the Kingdom of Heaven externally, one must transition into the Kingdom of Heaven inwardly, for it’s through an internal conscious and spiritual shift that we experience the corresponding external shift. The Kingdom is both a state of existence and a state of mind. In modern lingo, the Kingdom of Heaven is higher density positive existence, both as a mode of being and realm of habitation.

Whereas the World operates on the principles of cunning, calculation, physical power and determinism, the Kingdom of Heaven acts via synchronicity, nonlinearity, and nondeterminism.
That is how the Kingdom of Heaven destabilizes the control system and lends support to its own: not through sheer force, but through unfathomable elegance and subtlety. It employs the butterfly effect to leverage the smallest nudges into the greatest of outcomes, the ultimate form of spiritual jujitsu.

The World is an impermanent illusion, an ouroboros condemned to consume itself into nothingness. Therefore its epiphenomena, the Dead, likewise lack permanence in the greater framework of Eternity. The Living are immortal in that they continue existing even if the World ceases to exist, whereas the Dead would disappear along with it. Like with dissolution of the physical body, one must possess spirit to consciously survive death. The Dead have no probable future extensions, no existence outside the World Dream, they are but hollow memories waiting to be forgotten.

The goal of spiritual discipline and training is to activate and build spirit within us. Spirit is not a product of the physical world, therefore it has permanence beyond the lifespan of the World. In building up everything associated with spirit, we translate ourselves into the Real World, the Kingdom of Heaven, and overcome death and dissolution.

The World as we know it will come to an end through a great revealing. A time will come when the Living have their spiritual eyes opened. This will occur when they succeed in being filled and activated by the same wisdom and intelligence that illuminated Jesus (and other avatars like Buddha). This is the so-called Second Coming of Christ. For the Living, it has already begun with a gradual opening of awareness and building of wisdom and intuitive perception. In the end, it will result in full etheric activation combined with harmonization with the Logos, whom Christ called the Father. Those who are activated will be able to see and recognize what was formerly hidden by worldly deceivers and the five senses. Secrets will be exposed, pretenses revealed, and illusion will fall away. They will finally see and enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.

Presently we are controlled through our investment in illusions. We are attacked through gaps in our awareness. All our willpower and energy are useless if we lack the awareness of where and how to direct them. Thus awareness and vigilance are crucial. As long as we are here, we must be wise and discerning. The biggest illusions are those that employ false dichotomies; the World is spun from these. They can be as basic as the seeming separation between inner and outer. In reality, there is no separation, and in knowing this we can change the outer by changing the inner.

When you recognize an illusion for what it is, that illusion ceases to hold power over your choices. Thus to overcome the world, one must recognize the world for what it is and implement that higher understanding. In doing so, one steps away from the World and toward the Kingdom. The closer one approaches the Kingdom, the more one comes under its jurisdiction, the more one lives by its principles, which override those of the world. As an example, the power of synchronicity easily trumps the forces of determinism. Worldly limitations and concerns that apply to the Dead may not always apply to the Living.

False opposites must be reconciled and transcended before a person can enter the Kingdom of Heaven. One cannot cling to illusion and leave the realm of illusion at the same time. To completely enter the Kingdom, one must therefore achieve non-dual consciousness in the sense of being permeated by an awareness that sees through false dualities and recognizes the higher truth beyond them. It is not just a superficial intellectual understanding, but a higher state of consciousness. In
this state, one is not divided within oneself, rather there is total sincerity and complete unity with the heart, subconscious, higher mind, and other aspects of our being that are normally compartmentalized away during mundane waking consciousness. In this state, one acts with singular purpose and knowing, as Christ did. This state cannot be achieved by convincing yourself into seeming certainty, rather it must flow naturally from transcending the mortal mind and merging with your higher mind.

This non-dualism is not an endorsement of indiscriminate mindlessness, however. A higher kind of objective dualism is called for, one that discriminates between the World and the Kingdom and between the standards of the Living and those of the Dead. Thus the role of Christ is not to unify the World but to bring total division between the Living and the Dead, not to bring peace but initiate total war between the World and the Kingdom. The role of false dichotomies is to distract us from this higher dualism, to keep us busy making false or irrelevant choices instead of the one that truly counts.

When the great revealing occurs and the Living fulfill their potential and increasingly see the Dead for who they are, there will be no alternative but polarization at every scale. The same way we observe our own dark side and leave it behind, so will this happen on a collective scale. The role of Christ is to separate the weed from the crops, harvest the crops and burn the weeds. Only at the time of the great revealing will it become absolutely clear what is weed and what is crop. Until then, each grows among the other unchecked.

Christ unifies the Living, but divides them from the Dead. The Living must recognize and love each other, for they are one in purpose, essence, and origins. They must cast off what does not belong to them: the fetters of social and biological programming, ego-based impulses, emotional addictions, material obsessions, illusory fears, and mortal personality. In the end, they will be stripped of these and will stand spiritually naked before the World, unassailable in their strength and purity, thousands of Christs holding torches to the framework of our sham existence.

---

**Relevant Films and Books**

- *Dark City* (1998)
- *Donnie Darko* (2001)
- *Ink* (2009)
- *The Wizard of Oz* (1939)
- *The Thirteenth Floor* (1999)
- *The Truman Show* (1998)

*The Hero with a Thousand Faces* by Joseph Campbell

*The Zelator* by Mark Hedsel

*Bringers of the Dawn* by Barbara Marciniak

*Hamlet’s Mill* by De Santillana and Von Dechend
What is the *Gnosis* series? It is a grand unified conspiracy theory that attempts to explain who we are, why we’re here, where we’re going, and what this reality is fundamentally about. These questions are the focal points of Gnosticism, hence the title of this series.

The *Gnosis* articles present an aerial map that puts other seemingly unrelated fields of study into perspective: Alchemy, metaphysics, Gnosticism, Hermeticism, Freudian and Jungian psychology, Theosophy and Anthroposophy, Christ and Buddhist teachings, Grail studies, Ark of the Covenant research, Biblical Eschatology, prophecy, 2012 theories, mythology, alienology, fringe physics, and more. It shows a possible logical connection between all of these.

This meta-model’s defining feature is that, rather than being made up *ad hoc*, it is well rooted in established sources and classical philosophical traditions. It responds to the question, “What ultimate conclusion can be drawn from all of these sources?”

The following is a summary of the nine Gnosis articles.

1 – Corruption of the Demiurge

Just as the composition of the human being can be divided into Body, Soul, Mind, and Spirit, so can Creation be divided into Universe, Demiurge, Logos, and Nous.

The physical Universe is just the body of Creation. The soul of Creation is known as the Demiurge, an artificial intelligence responsible for shaping, projecting, and reshaping space, time, matter, and energy. It blindly carries out the commands it’s given, transducing higher metaphysical archetypes and energies into physical manifestations.

The Demiurge is like a construction company that builds according to the blueprints it has been given. The Logos is the architect, the mind of the Creator, the higher universal intellect that plans,
balances, supervises, and adjusts Creation according to the will of Nous, which is the spirit of Creation, the infinite Creator itself.

In an ideal situation, the Logos draws the blueprints of existence according to divine will and passes it onto the Demiurge who molds reality accordingly. Thus physical reality would ideally be a reflection of the divine will.

Unfortunately the Demiurge has a mind of its own. It is a programmable artificial intelligence composed of etheric and astral energy fields that underlie and permeate our existence. If the programs it executes come from the divine realms, everything is fine and a Golden Age exists. But if the program is corrupted by lower material-based influences, then the Demiurge begins existing solely to serve and perpetuate physical interests. Thus the law of the jungle, self-preservation, predation, competition, and manipulation take the place of spiritual principles and interests. Hence, the universe can, and has, become a spiritual prison or energy farm run by a tyrannical parasite, now known as the Corrupted Demiurge.

The Corrupted Demiurge is the lower ego of Creation, a selfish parasite or rogue extension of the Demiurge that fashions our reality in accordance with its predatory ambitions. It’s like a computer virus that has infected reality and turned it into a “zombie computer.” The Corrupt Demiurge is the computer mainframe of the Matrix Control System.

In our current state, humans are not pure divine beings, but corrupted or fallen. We are dual beings with a core of divine spirit that is all too often asleep at the mercy of the lower component, which is animalistic and selfish. The latter is what distinguishes us from our former unfallen state, and from divine beings whose spirits are not latent but fully active.

Just as Creation has become corrupted through the Demiurge developing a parasitic ego extension, so has the human soul matrix fallen through the acquisition of ego or lower intellect. The ego is an artificial extension of the human soul that arises solely from genetic and social factors. These factors program into the soul a kind of subroutine that exists solely to perpetuate itself according to biological and social standards. Thus the lower ego is an artifact of life within the Matrix Control System that mirrors the Corrupt Demiurge on a microcosmic scale.

But just as the soul can develop a lower ego through prolonged contact with the material realms, so can it develop a higher ego via extensive contact with the divine realms. The influence of spirit upon the soul can create a higher ego, which is an inner divine personality, the “awakened” or “un-fallen” or “true” self. Genuine saints and esoteric masters have a well developed higher ego, and have overcome their lower egos. To displace the lower ego with the higher ego is the goal of all esoteric training systems.

Likewise, the influence of Nous and Logos upon the Demiurge produces a universal higher ego, which here will be termed the Christ. It is an immortal universal divine intelligence that has incarnated into various avatars of history including the historical person on whom the Biblical character of Jesus Christ was based. (See my Research Note on the Historicity of Jesus Christ).

Christ was projected by the Creator in response to the arising of the Corrupted Demiurge and its intrusion into our affairs. The two are antithetical to each other. The function of Christ is to remedy the imbalance caused by the Corrupted Demiurge and to redeem the souls who have fallen into this
darkened realm.

The Demiurge, which projects and fashions reality like a computer generating a virtual game world, is therefore being tugged from opposite ends by divine and infernal forces. And our existence is consequently an overlap or admixture of the two forces, just as we ourselves are, internally. The consequences of the back and forth struggle between these forces is what produced history as we know it, and is the reason our timeline is moving in its prophesied direction.

2 – The Philosopher’s Stone

The Demiurge is the soul of the universe, and like our souls, is made of etheric and astral energy fields. Etheric energy is a subtle energy that influences the probability of quantum phenomena; the quantum level underpins our everyday world, thus changes at the quantum level can cascade upwards in scale to everyday visible phenomena. Astral energies contain archetypal essences that guide the direction in which etheric energy alters physicality. Hence the Demiurge fashioning the world follows from these properties.

Thus to manipulate etheric and astral energies is to manipulate the Demiurge and, if done with sufficient complexity and intensity, physical reality itself. Through certain means, one can locally reprogram the Demiurge and thereby change matter, energy, space, and time. That is the basis of what is hereby called “demiurgic technology.” This technology alters the etheric and astral “matrix code” beneath reality to reshape reality. Within limits, higher applications of demiurgic technology include manifesting solid objects and foodstuffs out of thin air, altering physical geography, and rewriting the timeline.

An example of lower demiurgic technology is the Philosopher’s Stone, which is a physical material that has been imbued with an immense concentration of etheric energy and then tinged with the astral essence of gold or silver. It is capable of transmuting metals at the atomic level, among other feats.

The Stone is produced through a process known as “The Work,” which has metaphysical analogues but is most definitely a physical procedure performed in a laboratory. There are numerous variations on the process, the basic method being cryptically delineated in the works of Cyliani, Fulcanelli, Artephius, Pontanus, Sendivogius, and Adam Friedrich Böhme. In short, the process begins by decomposing a certain sulfide ore, a veritable firestone, under the action of gentle warmth and moisture imbued with etheric energy, such as from morning dew collected under the influence of lunar radiation. From this is extracted a saline fluid containing the alchemical sulfur and mercury. This fluid is rich in etheric energy and must be putrefied under warmth and biological action, which kickstarts the “secret fire” that increase its lifeforce or etheric energy content and separates out the sulfur and mercury. Upon combining these, putrefying them, and performing distillations whereby the distillate is poured back into the remains and filtered, etheric energy continues to increase and the solid substances in the solution become increasingly impregnated by the etheric energy. Eventually this etheric concentration becomes high enough that gold or silver mixed into the solution can be dissolved at the quantum level and contribute their astral essences. After a few more steps, the distilled product is refined into a glassy solid, which is the Philosopher’s Stone.

Production of the Stone is very finicky because in addition to chemical aspects, there are also demiurgic factors that enter into the equation. For instance, the local ambient etheric and astral
energy concentrations and qualities – which vary by season, location, and the nature of the individual performing the procedure – may affect the outcome. Thus the same identical procedure performed separately by two individuals may have one succeed and the other fail. Without knowing the exact hidden variables that determine success or failure, attempting to produce the Stone is an expensive and lengthy matter of trial and error. Even Fulcanelli, the most famous of modern Alchemists, took over three decades of attempts before succeeding.

The Stone is said to reverse aging, allow transmutation of lead or mercury into gold or silver, and if multiplied in power through further refinements creates an inexhaustible glowing light. When ingested, its etheric energy adds to the human soul in such quantities that clairvoyant abilities manifest. However, anyone who has not purified their souls and gained sufficient esoteric mastery risks going insane or psychotic from soul flaws likewise being amplified.

Thus the Philosopher’s Stone is an example of low demiurgic technology, of using etheric and astral energies concentrated into a solid carrier in order to have seemingly miraculous (or only highly improbable; remember etheric energy bends probability) effects. The question then arises, what happens if the Stone were made much bigger, and a million times more powerful? What “miracles” would it accomplish, what powers would it possess?

3 – The Holy Grail

The Grail is not a magical cup from which Jesus drank, nor a golden platter that carried the decapitated head of John the Baptist. These are only medieval inventions to reframe Gnostic knowledge under religious symbolism to appease the Church.

In actuality, the Grail was a magical stone capable of manifesting thoughts into physical reality. It possessed an oracular intelligence that directed its superhuman guardians into carrying out the divine will.

According to the version of the Grail story told by Wolfram von Eschenbach, it was a stone that “fell from heaven,” or rather was brought to Earth by a troop of “angels” that remained neutral when “Lucifer” waged his war against God. In other words, it is an alien artifact brought to this planet and entrusted to an elite human lineage.

This Grail Stone is an example of high demiurgic technology. In addition to doing everything the Philosopher’s Stone could do, it could also manifest food for the Grail knights just through them picturing what they desired. Those who looked upon it would be restored to youth and cease aging. It was described as being the most perfect of substances, as if from another paradisal world. It also shone as a bright light, and would disappear or reappear as needed. Those who were not spiritually activated could not perceive it, thus it existed on the threshold of physicality itself. And the Grail seemed to carry a will of its own, as if alive.

These properties follow from a material like the Philosopher’s Stone being refined, increased, and multiplied to a far higher degree of power. Instead of merely being imbued with amorphous etheric and astral energies, the Grail was imbued with such high concentrations and ordering of these energies, that it came to possess a veritable soul.

Thus the Grail Stone was possessed by a soul. Since it communicated divine commands that were antithetical to the workings of dark forces and the Corrupt Demiurge, that soul was either the Christ
intelligence or an extension of it. Or put another way, the Grail Stone was a remote computer terminal for the Demiurge. In the hands of the Grail Knights it allowed interfacing with the divine extension of the Demiurge, a.k.a. the higher ego of the Universe, the Christ.

But what happens when the Grail Stone falls into the hands of those with selfish motivations? Then something else is invoked through the Stone, and that’s what happened in ancient Egypt.

4 – Ark of the Covenant.

The Ark of the Covenant was a wooden chest gilded inside and out with gold, topped by a solid gold lid surmounted by two golden winged figures. It was built in Egypt around 1550 B.C. to house and transport a supernatural stone-like artifact. This artifact of extraterrestrial origins, hereby called the “Ark Stone,” previously rested inside the Great Pyramid and functioned as its central power source.

In 1628 B.C., Egypt was sacked by foreign Semitic invaders known as the Hyksos. They occupied Lower (northern) Egypt for several decades until they were expelled in 1550 B.C. The fleeing exiles took with them the Ark Stone, housed it inside the custom built Ark of the Covenant, and used its power to pillage their way north. Eventually they settled in northern Canaan, modern day Lebanon, where they integrated with the Phoenicians. They housed the Ark of the Covenant in a Phoenecian-built temple of megalithic construction known as the Temple of Solomon, contemporary with the temple whose famous megalithic stones reside today at Baalbek.

This Phoenician-Hyksos empire became among the most powerful and wealthy empires of the time, spanning as far north as modern Turkey and as far south as Yemen. They were the historical basis for the Biblical narrative describing the birth of ancient Israel.

Egyptian Queen Hatshepsut was contemporary with the leaders of this empire and consorted with them. When her jealous nephew succeeded her as pharaoh, he mounted military campaigns into northern Canaan and managed to sack the Temple of Solomon, bringing the Ark Stone back to Egypt.

There it resided for several generations until shortly after the reign of pharaoh Akhenaten. Around 1350 B.C., one of his priests named Osarseph, who was trained in the art of operating the Ark Stone, mounted a failed rebellion against the Egyptian powers who had deposed Akhenaten. He stole the Ark Stone and took his Hebrew followers with him out of Egypt and into Canaan, settling in what is modern day Israel. This priest became Moses of the Bible.

The Ark of the Covenant possessed an intense etheric and electrical energy field. Only a certain bloodline trained with special protocols was able to handle it safely, whereas others would be struck and killed by energy discharges when they got too close or else erupt in sores mimicking the effects of intense radiation. The glowing energy field surrounding the Ark of the Covenant was known as the Shekhina, meaning the Glory of the Lord. All Biblical descriptions of the Ark and its properties indicate the Ark Stone was an alien artifact with immense etheric powers — and a seeming intelligence of its own.

5 – Mosaic Abuse of Demiurgic Technology

The Ark Stone seemed to possess an intelligence, which in the Old Testament was named Yahweh
or the Lord of Israel. This intelligence was a psychopathic parasite that was none other than the personified extension of the Corrupt Demiurge.

The same way the Grail Stone was a remote terminal for the Christ intelligence, the Ark Stone was one for the Corrupt Demiurge. How did this come about? It happened when the Mosaic priesthood in Egypt deployed the Ark Stone in an act of black magic to liberate themselves from the Egyptian power structure that had deposed Akhenaten and oppressed them. It was a pact made with a demonic force. It’s possible that the Great Pyramid, as described in the Biblical description of the events at Mount Sinai, functioned as a reprogramming device for the Stone, allowing a different intelligence to take possession of it.

While the Osarseph rebellion failed, their “Lord” guided them out of Egypt and established them in Canaan, birthing the nation of Israel. Thus a desperate act of black magic over three thousand years ago injected Israel into history and changed the course of the timeline. Judaism, Catholicism, Christianity, and Islam were among the consequences. How many wars have resulted from this, and how much closer are we to WWII today because of it? History was altered in such a way that, today, we are far more vulnerable to global alien takeover than otherwise; hence through the Ark Stone, the Corrupt Demiurge found a deep inroad into the timeline by which the timeline could be bent toward fulfillment of its dark goals.

According to a secret version of history passed down through the Hermetic tradition, the Jewish priests eventually regretted the action, realizing that the Israelites had become indentured to a demonic power. Around 1,000 B.C. they employed the Ark Stone to invoke a counter-power, one that could liberate them from this bondage. Through this act, they invoked the Christ intelligence, which subsequently began filtering into the human domain more deeply to undo the spiritual poison seeded by Yahweh. Not long afterward, the Ark disappeared from Jewish hands.

This liberation effort did not reach its fullest human form until the advent of Jesus a millennia later. Christ, through Jesus, aimed to propagate a new teaching of non-determinism that, among other objectives, would undo the reactive eye-for-an-eye brutality advocated by Yahweh. It was the culmination of teachings that had already been seeded in advance by earlier avatars such as Gautama Buddha.

The mission of the Christ intelligence has always been to liberate fallen and indentured souls and restore them to spiritual harmony and freedom. Just that the events of 1550 B.C. to 1,000 B.C., which brought a deeper intrusion by the Corrupt Demiurge into our affairs, reciprocally called for a stronger manifestation of the Christ intelligence here as well.

But Christ’s mission failed, or only partly succeeded. Historically this occurred through the hijacking of Christian teachings by the early Church. Since that time, instead of one displacing the other, Yahweh and Christ both exist in the world, locked in struggle. The past two thousand years have been the result of these forces and their agents competing over the fate of the world.

The Corrupt Demiurge propagates its agenda by playing false opposites against each other, a trick that simple minded humans consistently fall for. The Christ intelligence represents the third choice beyond two false ones, a choice that can only be perceived and chosen by those who have some level of spirit active within them.
The question still remains of who created the Ark/Grail Stone in the first place, and what their role might be in the cosmic conflict between Christ and the Corrupt Demiurge, and how it came into human possession.

According to the medieval poet Wolfram von Eschenbach, the Grail Stone was brought to Earth by angels who remained neutral during the War in Heaven, who entrusted the Stone to a divinely appointed human lineage. In reality, angels don’t employ technology or possess physical artifacts; aliens do. The Grail Stone is an alien artifact brought to Earth during or after a war in another dimension and/or planet.

The human lineage they selected were superhumans tasked with guarding the Grail Stone and carrying out the dictates of Christ. We know them by various names: Followers of Horus, Grail Knights, Rosicrucians, Secret Christian Church, etc… They are very likely human-alien hybrids seeded into the population and then recruited into these spiritually elite organizations to fulfill a greater purpose.

These secret societies maintain intimate contact with their alien progenitors. But they are just organized, formalized, and structured versions of alien contactees. The contactee phenomenon, at least the small subset that isn’t part of the alien disinformation campaign, are individualized examples of the Grail Knight dynamic.

Who are the aliens that brought the Grail technology to Earth? Their presence pops up consistently throughout history. They were the human-like Sons of Man in the Bible, the Elemental beings described in Rosicrucian and Alchemical texts, the Egyptian and Sumerian pantheon, and the Djinn of the Muslim world. Nowadays they are called the Nordics or Pleiadians. They are hyperdimensional humanoids who project into our timeline and dimension and take on a noble human appearance.

Mythology, alienology, and Fortean research gives some insights into their nature. In summary, the following may be said about them:

- There is warring among these beings, indicating they are not all unified. At the very minimum they are polarized into opposing sides, if not split into numerous independent factions. Some factions have a strong fascist orientation.

- They walk among us pretending to be human. Some are integrated into society and hold strategic positions, whether to influence or simply observe. They are genetically compatible with us, and some of their females have engaged human males for sexual encounters and even long term relationships. Throughout history, they have selected certain humans, or perhaps their own offspring / hybrids raised in human society, for privileged education, training, and guidance, so that these human proxies can function as vectors for their agenda, be it benevolent or hostile to mankind at large.

- They are extremely telepathic. They can read thoughts with minute precision, implant thoughts, scan the soul for its level of integrity or weakness, induce hallucinations, manipulate emotions, and steer a person’s dreams. The human proxies they train can achieve these skills at a lower power level.
• They use technology to augment their innate superhuman abilities. This technology is demiurgic, can control time and gravity, affords them invisibility and antigravity, and allows them to walk through solid objects, meaning they can inhabit solid mountains in a dimensionally shifted condition, for instance. Their native environment is dimensionally shifted beyond ours, i.e., we cannot find their bases through mere physical searching.

• Like an angel losing its wings, under certain conditions they can lose their abilities and become “mortal” without the ability to return to their superhuman state, at least not within this lifetime. They get stuck here. If an entire group undergoes such a fall, they would enter into human history as an already developed and highly advanced culture that gradually undergoes decline upon becoming naturalized members of a primitive planet.

• The least evolved members of their kind are the ones who interact with the most advanced of humans. Despite their seeming superhuman qualities, those aliens who interact most with select humans may, in fact, be the most flawed of their race.

• The consequences of their errors and grave transgressions have cascaded back and forth throughout the timeline. These consequences are now converging toward a nexus point representing the potential for a cataclysmic shift in our reality. Alien factions who were responsible for initiating these consequences are likely the same ones who are now involved in the final outcome. A thread of continuity exists between the most ancient and modern of human-alien encounters. The alien disinformation campaign is an effort by one set of such factions to prepare mankind for enthusiastic acceptance of their overt control.

Research suggests a civilization of such beings once existed on a planet located between Mars and Jupiter. As per the Lucifer Rebellion myth, they descended into war. The use of demiurgic weaponry caused their planet to explode. Evacuees of both sides fled to Earth and brought their technology with them. Through interbreeding, human-alien bloodlines were born that were entrusted with this technology.

These bloodlines and secret societies propagated through history, continuing the alien feud in a terrestrial setting. Eventually a series of geological and cometary cataclysms dispersed them around the world, where they re-established themselves and imprinted upon the primitive natives their culture, mythology, and remnants of their technology. Ancient Egyptian, Vedic, Meso-American, Druid, and Chinese civilizations were their offspring. Consequently, the myths of these cultures share common elements that pertain to alien and cosmic agendas.

7 – Dawn of a New Cosmic Day

The advanced survivors of the Atlantean cataclysms positioned themselves as royalty and scientist-priests in their new societies. The natives, comprising the lower class, were given the roles of herdsman, agrarians, artisans, and soldiers. The typical pattern was for a small number of tall fair-skinned elite with high knowledge and unusual powers to rule over a greater body of dark-skinned commoners.

These elites were in communion with alien benefactors who would equip them with alien technology and instruction, or retrieve such technology and withdraw, according to necessity and circumstance. What dictated these circumstances was the cyclical fluctuation in ambient etheric
energy levels on Earth.

When etheric energy levels are high, demiurgic technology attains peak function, Alchemical procedures easily produce success, clairvoyant abilities come naturally, the veil between dimensions is thinned, everything is enlivened, and “gods” easily walk among men.

Conversely, when levels decline, demiurgic technology ceases to function correctly or at all, humans become psychically blind, higher forces withdraw from open participation in human affairs, and the vitality of living beings grows dimmer. Mankind enters into a spiritual coma, a kind of “World Dream,” where awareness is quarantined from perceiving the higher withdrawn realms.

This “Etheric Tide” ebbs and wanes over a 25,920 year cycle in concert with the slow wobbling (precession) of Earth’s axis. Each precessional age, such as the Age of Pisces or Age of Aquarius, corresponds to a different level and quality of ambient etheric energy. When the levels drop beneath a certain threshold, demiurgic technology is retrieved from human hands and mankind falls into decay. This occurred around 1,000 B.C. when the Ark of the Covenant disappeared from history, when the Temple of Solomon was no longer filled with its glowing energy field, and when mankind moved from an age of magic and enchantment toward ever increasing materialism and psychic blindness.

Aside from the 25,920 year cycle, there are smaller ones that produce periodic elevation of etheric energy levels. One peak occurred around 500-800 A.D., during the time of the British Grail Kings and Charlemagne, when the Grail reappeared in Europe and left behind legends that were later woven into the medieval Grail lore.

If the Etheric Tide returned today, civilization would be irreversibly transformed. The materialistic paradigm would crumble, alien ships would become easily visible, and thus alien contact would be forced. The alien disinformation campaign has been waged in advance of this eventuality, to program mankind toward reacting favorably to this revealing. By posing as saviors, as ushers into a new age of peace and plenty, they can continue their control overtly.

And with the return of the Etheric Tide would come the reactivation and common deployment of demiurgic technology. The Grail Stone can hold, discharge, and manipulate vast quantities of etheric energy. Since etheric energy is the underlying “matrix code” of reality, the Grail Stone is capable of directly manipulating spacetime. It is instrumental in rewriting the timeline, within limits, and allowing influences outside of this spacetime bubble, such as the Christ intelligence or the Corrupt Demiurge, and the alien factions allegiant to them, to deviate the timeline in major ways.

Thus with the onset of the Etheric Tide, the advent of alien intervention, activation of clairvoyant powers in receptive humans, and reappearance of the Grail Stone, the cold war between various hyper-dimensional factions would erupt into an overt hot war. Such a thing would completely fulfill end-times prophecies. Linear time as we know it would dissolve, and we would awaken from the World Dream into a non-occluded reality where alien and cosmic powers are in open conflict.

8 – Polar Mythology

Everything discussed above has been encoded into ancient and modern mythology. Myths are the collective equivalent of dreams and can similarly convey messages from beings outside linear time
who wish to reach strategic recipients within it. The whole gamut from our own nightly dreams to ancient mythology to modern fiction is fertile ground for extracting this hidden knowledge.

Polar mythology is a specific subset of myth, dream, and fiction that contains clues specifically pertaining to the nature of our reality, alien and cosmic conflicts, fate of our world, and the role of demiurgic technology in generating our timeline and determining our fate. I have chosen the term “polar” because these myths concern the battle between the poles of Creation, because they employ the symbolism of rotation or reciprocation around a central axis pole, and because “polar” implies “extreme north” and hence “hyperborean,” which alludes to the Nordic meta-civilization deeply involved in these matters.

There are several recurring themes in polar mythology:

1) **Our having fallen from a higher to lower realm.** This pertains to the human soul group incarnating into 3D spacetime and getting increasingly ensnared in the grips of the Corrupt Demiurge.

2) **The World Axis represented by a pillar, mountain, cross, or tree.** This symbolizes the framework of creation, the bubble of 3D space and linear time, and the bundle of branching timelines that define our existence.

3) **Dueling superhumans engaged in a tug of war.** These represent positive and negative factions of the meta-civilization, who are engaged in a timewar over the fate of our world.

4) **That which the World Axis rests or depends upon: a foundational element represented in the cubical stone, turtle, keystone, plug, cornerstone, or capstone.** This symbolizes the quantum foundation, the quantum pivot point, atop which the framework of spacetime rests and hinges. This function is epitomized in the Grail Stone, which serves not only to reprogram or pivot reality, but to anchor it in place when necessary.

5) **Vortex symbolism and magical “objects of plenty” that could materialize abundance or destruction depending on their use.** The vortex represents a translation gateway between different realms. On a macrocosmic scale, the Demiurge converting higher metaphysical archetypes into physically manifest forms correlates with the image of an hourglass vortex channeling and transforming material from a higher realm into a lower. This same process appears on a microcosmic scale via the vortical etheric energy field that surrounds the Grail Stone, for it acts as a localized version of the Demiurge capable of manifesting or altering matter, energy, and spacetime locally.

6) **Cataclysmic unhinging or skewing of the World Axis.** This relates to the abuse of demiurgic technology by ego-driven individuals, such as the Mosaic Priesthood in ancient Egypt. This caused a pivoting of the timeline toward a new and unwelcome direction. The skewing of the timeline is represented in polar mythology as the unhinging of a millstone, to name one example. The very framework of Creation was upset through such an act, causing the Logos to send a counterbalancing influence into our reality bubble to help make a correction; this influence is the Christ intelligence.

7) **The avenging hero, prodigal son, or innocent fool who overthrows corruption and restores balance.** This aspect of polar mythology describes our spiritual purpose and pathway in this world. It follows from the fact that the Logos requires its troops to incarnate into the linear time bubble to
help anchor the corrective influence.

In summary, polar mythology alludes to the Grail Stone anchoring a particular reality or timeline in place. Its abuse resulted in our further collective fall into the World Dream, toward increasing ensnarement in the illusion of a *linear* type of time.

9 – The End

Polar mythology encodes three phases of history. The first phase concerns a prior Golden Age where the Demiurge was in harmony with the Logos and all was well. In its final stages, the first phase decayed into warring among the “gods” and their ruining of the cosmic framework. It concludes with higher beings, positive and/or negative, falling into a lower realm of existence.

The second phase concerns our present world, which sprang into existence as a consequence of various Falls that severed us from the Logos. The traumatic consequences of the first phase induced a collective sleep. Hence we have “fallen” asleep into the World Dream.

The third phase concerns our future, how the consequences of the first phase will reach their ultimate conclusion. This is always depicted as ending with a final war and the dissolution of the world as we know it.

The first and third phases take place outside the World Dream, outside of linear time as we know it. Currently we stand at the cusp between second and third phases, thus we are now undergoing an “awakening sequence” that will bring us out of spiritual suspended animation. But what awaits us on the other side is not the Golden Age of the first phase, but the concluding stages of the conflicts begun back then. Thus the Earthly conflict between positive and negative will elevate to a higher level where, under new etherically-activated conditions, it can carry on toward its resolution.

During the second phase, the open conflicts of the first phase took on a more covert form. This was especially true after 1,000 B.C. when a quarantine was put in place around our planet by a powerful third party alien group. The quarantine enforced a ceasing of open warfare by various factions of the alien meta-civilization. The idea was to allow humanity to evolve with less interference. Nonetheless, manipulation still continued on a covert basis, giving rise to the alien cold war mentioned previously. The quarantine also seemed to involve a further reduction of ambient etheric energy levels on Earth, akin to lowering body temperature to induce suspended animation.

The quarantine probably came about due to the cataclysmic events in ancient Egypt when the Mosaic Priesthood royally screwed up the timeline and placed the Jewish people in bondage to the Corrupt Demiurge. As mentioned, regretting their mistake a few centuries later, they invoked the Christ intelligence to liberate them and the world. Shortly thereafter, the Ark/Grail Stone disappeared from history and “God” ceased talking to men. This initiated the quarantine and the timeline as we now know it. The Christ intelligence did not reach its zenith until a thousand years later with the advent of Christianity, but the true and original Christianity was short lived. It was rapidly usurped by an institutionalized behemoth that waged spiritual enslavement in the name of Christ. Thus the mission of Christ was aborted, or rather delayed; something went wrong with the original “awakening sequence.”

There is indication that the second phase should have ended during Roman times, but the deviation of Christ’s message toward further empowerment of the Corrupt Demiurge caused both Christ and
Demiurge to continue existing in a limbo state. Thus the past two thousand years have been a kind of overtime game or remedial phase in which these two forces, now deeply active in our world, have been busy setting their pieces in place. When the quarantine lifts and second phase ends, these pieces will go into play during the third phase.

The third phase will continue in an etherically-activated environment no longer constrained (as much) by linear time. Alienology and Fortean research suggests that alien time travelers, who are now here and have been amassing for decades, are from this third phase. Thus we are caught in a timewar by forces from our own probable futures. The third phase may even feedback into the first, creating a grand ouroboric timeloop that is in constant flux. Being that we only remember the final iteration of any timeloop, the timeline we now occupy is the final one that will finally exit the loop when the third phase ends.

The ultimate implication is that via demiurgic technology, hijacking of the timeline originally took place in the “future” and reconfigured the past, initiating a war for balance by the positive forces. The hyperdimensional battle required going back in time, even incarnating into the past to continue the war on the terrestrial chessboard. Remaining positive factions of the meta-civilization would assist these ground forces. They would receive help in the form of synchronistic support, outright intervention in critical situations, subconscious training, and oracular avenues such as synchronicities, dreams, visions, inspirations, and direct messages if needed.

Enter the heroic avenging fool, known in polar mythology as Horus, Parzival, Hamlet, Amlodhi, Kullervo, Theseus, and other variations of the same archetype. The path of the heroic fool is our path, for we are soldiers of light born here, who must survive the conditions of the Matrix Control System by gaining mastery over our lower selves while nurturing and activating the full manifestation of Spirit. We are fools in that we have been temporarily disconnected from higher states of awareness, because others who are heavily entrenched in the Matrix see our wisdom as folly, and because we have not taken on social programming to the degree they have.

In polar mythology, the hero-fool seeks to avenge his father, who was murdered by the hero’s uncle, who took his mother as wife and corrupted her. The father represents the divine Logos, evil uncle the Corrupt Demiurge, and mother the Matrix. The Corrupt Demiurge usurped the Logos and took control of the Matrix. The avenging hero represents the Christ intelligence, whose role is to destroy the Control System and bring the Matrix back into rightful harmonization with the Logos. The heroic fool, however, represents more the portion of this Christ intelligence that is working within the system to undermine it, the “ground team” so to speak. Thus the hero and fool are two sides of the same coin, one facing up, the other facing down.

The Way of the Fool entails being forged by the fiery trials of life toward manifesting the full attributes of Spirit. This includes purity of heart, intellectual prowess, and indomitable strength of will. Unlike Adam and Eve who lacked intellect and strength, or the forces of the Corrupt Demiurge who lack purity of heart, we must embody all these qualities together in balance. Purity of heart means acting with singular intention, in harmonization with our higher conscience, wisdom, and guidance, without self-doubt, and without all the weaknesses socially and genetically grafted onto our souls by the Matrix Control System.

Esoteric training paths fundamentally aim to disengage the initiate from lower/outer aspects, and
engage the higher/inner. By overcoming the lower self and recognizing the true higher Self, one overcomes the soporific pressures of the world, of linear time, and of material determinism. As a result, Spirit influences the world instead of vice versa.

That is how the Demiurge will be placed back under the reign of Logos. When we cease to continually inflate the Matrix Control System with our ignorant participation in it, when we instead shift the fulcrum of our consciousness toward the “Waking World” or the “Kingdom of Heaven” as Jesus called it, that is when the old world as we know it will collapse in upon itself. It’s already happening to some degree. This will happen in synchrony with a lifting of the quarantine, the return of the Etheric Tide, the dissolution of linear time, and the visible breaching of alien activities into our consensus reality.

In the meantime, as we finish out the second phase, we must continue being true to our higher and nobler qualities. We have to be mindful of what originates from our lower nature versus higher nature and distinguish between them so that we can consistently choose the latter. This will “tide” us over until divine grace or some cosmic shift grants us etheric activation and spiritual transcendence that currently seem beyond practical reach.

---

**Changelog**

0.1 – 11/13/11 – Article posted.

0.2 – 10/5/13 – Improved the section on Alchemy.

(index)

**Ancient Mariners and Demiurgic Technologies**

27 November 16 (gnosis)

This is a paraphrased transcript of my radio appearance on the Freeman show to discuss [The Ark of the Covenant and Civilization](#).

Click on images for further information on a topic.

**Introduction**

The past, present, and future form a continuum, so studying one part can tell us something about another part. I’m interested in history because it can tell us not only how we got here, but where we’re going.

If you look at the genetic evidence for alien intervention, if you match that up with ancient accounts of the sky people or gods walking among men and flying around in chariots of fire, if you match that up with megalithic sites that are simply impossible to build with human technology of the time, and if you match THAT up with accounts of supernatural technologies like the Ark of the Covenant or various magical stones that gave off radiation and made people sick and electrocuted them and so on, well that all matches right on up with what we know in modern times about UFOs, alien, the abduction program, collaborations between black ops military and alien factions, and what eyewitnesses have said about what alien technology can do. It all fits together, it all meshes, and one part supports another.
So by examining the anomalies in history, the secret forces and controllers of ancient times, and looking at the technology they had and what forces they were collaborating with, it may be possible to get a clearer picture of what's going on today, and therefore what might happen in the future. Therefore I’d like to talk about some anomalies, including the ancient global mariners who had access to certain alien technologies, I’d like to talk about the Ark of the Covenant and the origin of the Israelites, and also I want to touch on the Holy Grail and the Philosopher’s Stone and how these are all examples of I have come to call “demiurgic technologies” which are none other than devices that employ occult and hyperdimensional energies and principles in their operation and not just electromagnetic.

**Ancient global seafarers**

The first voyage around the world according to conventional history was launched by Magellan in 1519. It took his crew three years to make the trip, so three years is about how long it takes. And you find this figure mentioned in other ancient sources, for example in the Old Testament, First Kings chapter 10, where it’s said that King Solomon had a fleet of ships, the ships of Tarshish, that would come to port every three years and unload precious metals and exotic goods. Or Herodotus mentioning that Phoenician mariners were known for sailing around Africa and beyond, and returning after three years.

![Piri Reis map depicting Europe, the Americas, and grid based on platonic solids.](image)

North and South America were being regularly visited by mariners from Europe, Africa, and Asia too. During the Bronze Age there was massive copper mining going on in upper Michigan starting around 3500 B.C. Archeologists have found somewhere between five and ten thousand copper mines in the area, and estimate that around five hundred thousand tons of copper were mined. Except, barely any of that copper exists among Native American artifacts whereas in Europe and the Middle East there are more bronze artifacts than can be accounted for by the copper availability in those regions. So it’s pretty obvious that those who ran the Bronze industry back then were making trips to Michigan and other places like Cornwall in England to get their copper and tin to make the bronze.

![Copper mass recovered from ancient copper mine.](image)

The other curious thing is that ancient megalithic sites are found wherever these global mariners went. They’re positioned all along the global trade routes. I’m talking about India, Indonesia, Japan, Easter Island, Bolivia and Peru, Egypt, Greece, Italy, England and Ireland. All of these sites display similar masonry methods for a given time in history, and it appears that these mariners were living out a tradition that went back thousands of years possibly to around five or six thousand B.C.

From what I can tell, their civilization would build up into a global power until a cataclysm would nearly wipe them out, then there would be a dark age as they survived and rebuilt, and then after some time they would build back up to a global power again. And every time they did this, they
would resume the trade routes that their ancestors had established, and they would use some of the same knowledge and technology. The only difference is, that knowledge and technology would degrade over time, so what you typically find in places like Easter Island or Egypt or Peru is that the oldest megalithic masonry there has the largest stones put together with the greatest precision, while the additions made hundreds or a thousand years later were precise but not as large, and then eventually when the natives lacking any of that knowledge tried to build on those ruins you just get irregular stones fitted with hammer and chisel in a really crude way. Ok, but you can look at these megaliths, the different layers and styles of it built at different times, and you figure out what technology was used and what was lost as time went on.

For example, the megalithic walls in Cusco, Peru look like marshmallows squished together and shaved down. That’s called polygonal masonry and it’s designed to withstand severe earthquakes. I bought modeling clay and cut them into rough boulder-like pieces and then stacked them into a wall and squished them together from all sides. The result was polygonal masonry just like you see in these ancient walls, down to the bowl-like depression formed atop the “stones” when another above it pressed down.

In order to construct the various types of ancient megalithic walls, you need a specialized suite of technologies that have the following functions. You need something to levitate the stones. You need something to soften them. You need something to cut precise flat surfaces and edges. And you need something like a plasma torch to cut holes and channels. All of these you see being used in the oldest largest megalithic sites. But if, say, the technology to levitate and soften stones was lost, but the other tech still functioned, then what you would have instead is smaller stones that could be transported by human strength but still cut and fit with laser precision, which is what you see in the Inca Temple of the Sun for example, which wasn’t built by the Incas of course as the Incas came later.

Anyway, to get an idea of when these things were built, there are megaliths in Japan that are pretty interesting. Brian Foerster noted that the Imperial Palace there on Tokyo could be sitting atop and older megalithic site. There are foundation walls there built in the same megalithic style as you find elsewhere in the world. This includes the use of metal T or I shaped clamps used hold the stones together.

Interestingly, the ones in Japan were made of copper. Not Bronze, but copper. So you have stone and copper being used, and that is indicative of the Chalcolithic age, khalko meaning copper and lithos meaning stone. So possibly the copper age.
Copper use first arose between 7500 and 4500 B.C. in the regions of what is today Syria, Turkey, and the areas around the Black Sea. That also happens to be where sites like Gobekli Tepeh and Derinkuya are located, and I’m sure anyone who’s watched *Ancient Aliens* knows that Gobekli Tepeh was a prehistoric megalithic complex with astronomical and religious and possibly prophetic aspects to it, while Derinkuyu is a massive underground city that could house as many as 20 thousand people at one point.

Göbekli Tepe in southeastern Turkey.

Partial cross section of the underground city at Derinkuyu, in the Capadocia region of Turkey.

Ok, so with that we’re starting to zero in on where the megalithic global mariners first originated. We’re taught in schools that the Sumerians in Mesopotamia were the first civilization. But that’s not true. Even going by conventional archeology, there were people known as the Vincas who were already a sophisticated culture by 5700 B.C., so that’s almost eight thousand years ago. They were based out of southern and eastern Europe, north of Greece and west of the Black Sea. And, they were the earliest to have widespread adoption of copper metallurgy.

Copper figure from the Vinca culture.

Later they would spur on the Bronze Age, but even before that they were navigating the globe and building various megalithic structures. Their descendants include the Phoenicians, Hittites, Mitanni, Hyksos, Iranians, Indo-Aryans, Celts, Dacians and Thracians, Veneti, and so on. Thracians especially, as they lived in the same region that the Vinca did thousands of years earlier and probably continued the secret traditions. There’s some interesting material on the Dacians and Thracians and how Rome was in awe at their medical and spiritual knowledge among other things, and how when the Roman Empire invaded them, the Romans essentially fell to their knees in worship of them, as if having stumbled upon the occult power base of the hidden elite. But that’s a whole subject in itself.

Geographic extent of the Vinca civilization

Dacian and Thracian lands during the Iron Age.

As I mentioned, this proto-Indo-European mariner civilization had various ups and downs over the
millennia, having peaks around 5000, 3200, and 1500 B.C. and that’s where you get the different layers of masonry styles at megalithic sites around the world, because again the descendants would revisit the sites of their ancestors and build upon them.

Polygonal megalithic masonry on Eastern Island.

Easter Island is a prime example where it wasn’t until relatively recently in history, like 500 A.D. or so, that one of the last remnants of that culture came there to this little island in the middle of the pacific, as refugees of a dying civilization. So these fair skinned red-headed mariners came to Easter Island and had all those heads constructed, and as the local legend goes the natives eventually overthrew them and that’s the end of that.

Easter Island statue with the characteristic long ear lobes and bundle of red hair held up in a topknot.

By 500 A.D. they were pretty much done for, except for small enclaves that passed on the knowledge and traditions as a kind of secret society. Rudolf Steiner in his book explained how it was around this time that a decision was made by that secret society to seal off Europe from the Americas and bury transoceanic travel knowledge that up to that point was commonly known. That knowledge, which included maps, was what was behind Columbus setting sail for America a thousand years later on the pretense of trying to reach India. He wasn’t that stupid, nor were his Jesuit benefactors, nor were the Templars who had access to that knowledge centuries earlier and also visited the Americas. These guys knew exactly what they were doing and were thinking in terms of long term goals, like the engineering of civilization and history which of course included the eventual re-colonization of the Americas which was instrumental in setting the stage for the end game we’re now witnessing.

So my point is that the world today has been shaped by secret societies, by secret technologies, and by secret agendas that go back thousands of years almost to the last ice age if not beyond. Those ancient mariners, I think their legacy lives on and the plans that they set in motion are coming to their conclusion in the near future. I mean, they were the ones who founded Egyptian Civilization, they founded Mayan Civilization, they founded Chinese Civilization, and so on and so forth, so if we’re going to talk about who’s pulling the strings on this planet, we have to look at those who pulled them in the past, who may still be pulling them today. I’m talking about druids, thracians, phoenicians, and so on, who are the true power base today.

But, to take it one step further, it’s not so much that they are the top of the pyramid, but that they are proxies for alien factions who were the ones that gave them key technologies and knowledge in the first place, and for all we know those mariner bloodlines may have been human alien hybrids with superior mental abilities which is why they were so good at math and geometry and memorizing thousands of lines of instructional poetry on astronomy and global navigation. That’s still only scratching the surface. There’s a lot more that can be said, like the Ark of the Covenant and the Great Pyramid and the Holy Grail and how that ties into all of this.
Great Pyramid

Conventional Egyptology says the Great Pyramid was built around 2600 B.C. and was a tomb built for King Khufu. Which, we all should know is baloney because Egyptian records say that Khufu merely did some minor restoration work on it, so it was already old and crumbling by this time. Based on my research, the Great Pyramid was completed between 3500 and 3200 B.C. and it was built by those same global mariners being discussed on this show.

They arrived there after already having established Sumerian civilization to the east, in what is today Iraq and parts of Syria and Iran. In the 4th millennium B.C. they came to Egypt, which was already known to their ancestors from several millennia before that, and they built various complexes and set about building the main three pyramids, with the Great Pyramid being their final and most successful one.

Why they built it, one can only speculate, but it’s clear from studying what’s left of it that the pyramid was a machine and that it housed a source of great power in its central chamber. You can tell from the mistakes made in its construction, and some utilitarian paint markings left on the internal stones, that it was built by human labor. However, it was built using advanced technology to cut and move the stones into place. So either these humans were working under alien direction, or they had acquired pieces of alien technology to do this. Because everything else about them was still primitive by alien standards; I mean they used wooden boats and not flying spaceships, so it’s likely that they were just using stone levitation and cutting technology that wasn’t necessarily invented by them.

As for the Great Pyramid itself, I think Chris Dunn did a good job of explaining why it’s a machine and not a tomb. I don’t agree with his final conclusion that it was an electrical power plant, but I do think his raw data is good. So, what do I conclude from that data. Well, puzzle piece number one is that the Great Pyramid is huge, it’s heavy, its dimensions relate to the geometry of the Earth, and it’s located at the exact center of the earth’s land mass. So it was tied into the planet, to either resonate with it, or do something to it, or derive something from it. That’s piece number one.

Piece number two is that it was airtight and that the inner chambers and passages were filled with plasma, like how a neon bulb is filled with plasma. That’s based on Chris Dunn’s data, though I theorize that simply filling the inner spaces with water and then pulling the plug at the bottom would cause the water to pull downward like mercury in a barometer and let a vacuum form up top that contains traces of water vapor, which can be turned into plasma when electrically ignited. I calculated what the vacuum pressure would be, based on the vapor pressure of water at that temperature, and turns out it’s exactly the same pressure that you find inside a neon tube. Whatever the case, piece number two is that there was a vacuum plasma filling the chambers.

Piece number three is that the Grand Gallery, as Chris Dunn theorized, was constructed in such a
way as to house acoustic resonators, helmholtz resonators according to Dunn but it could have just as well been tuning forks, say with wire strung between the tines and a water wheel bowing it like a violin so that water flowing down the Grand Gallery would turn the wheels and resonate a huge assembly of tuning forks in order to generate a sound. What points to that is that there’s water erosion on the floor at the top of the Grand Gallery, and there are notches along the walls to hold wooden beams for some kind of scaffolding or framework, and the walls themselves are corbelled in discrete steps corresponding to key frequencies, and there was an anecdotal account on keelynet of someone discovering a non-public museum room full of large tuning forks with wire strung between the tines.

Egyptian inscription showing two tuning forks connected by strings at their nodal points.

Further, at the top of the Grand Gallery and just before you get to the King’s Chamber, there’s a little chamber called the antechamber which has a series of vertical stone slabs that could be individually raised or lowered, and if you pass a harmonically rich sound through that, it has the function of modulating that sound the same way your tongue and teeth and lips modulate what comes out of your vocal chords. So already we see that the bottom parts of the Pyramid create the breath or plasma and thus functions as the lungs, and the grand gallery functions as the vocal chords, and the antechamber as the mouth, teeth, and lips. That’s piece number four, that a vocal type of sound was induced in the plasma and then fed into the King’s Chamber.

Piece number five is that the King’s Chamber is made of pink granite which is more resistant to heat than limestone, and it shows signs of prolonged heat damage as well as signs of having been cracked outward by some internal explosion. There’s a granite sarcophagus in there, which matches closely the dimensions of the biblical Ark of the Covenant. Since the Ark of the Covenant is said to electrocute people among other phenomena, well in order to ignite a plasma you need electrical sparks or some powerful electromagnetic or electrogravitic energy field, so the Ark fits both physically and functionally into the pyramid scheme. There are many other reasons I’ll leave for later discussion as to why what went into the sarcophagus and what went into the Ark of the Covenant are most likely the same thing. And that thing is an item of alien technology that could pump out an immense energy field.

The last piece is that underneath the pyramid there is a subterranean chamber that was filled with water from the Nile, water would flow through it like a pump, and some researchers have suggested that the flow was designed to be self-resonating so that it would create a vibration. It would feel like a steady earthquake when operating. That would shake the entire pyramid at its mechanical resonant frequency. A friend of mine calculated what this resonant frequency would be based on the height and speed of sound through limestone and guess what, it’s 7.8 Hz which is one of the key Schumann frequencies which is the natural electromagnetic and electrogravitational resonant frequency of Earth with regards to its ionosphere. Imagine that.

So the Great Pyramid was being resonated at the Schumann frequency, and with limestone and granite being piezoelectric that meant mechanical oscillations would be converted into electrical oscillations. Further, mass itself generates gravity waves when shaken or accelerated, so the pyramid was creating mechanical, gravitational, electric, and magnetic waves at the resonant
frequency of the planet. All the while being located at the center of Earth’s land mass and having a
height to base ratio that mimics the ratio between earth’s polar radius to equatorial radius. That’s
why scholars saying it was merely a tomb are out of their minds.

Ok, so while it’s doing all that, plasma inside is ignited by the alien technology and then vocal
sounds are passed through it. Plasma consists of electrically charged particles and sound waves are
longitudinal in nature, that means they compress back and forth rather than wiggle side to side when
they travel. When you send longitudinal waves through a plasma, the charges are moved
longitudinally and since accelerating charges emit energy, and the result is longitudinal waves
which are also known as scalar or electrogravitational waves. So you have these longitudinal scalar
waves encoding a certain vowel sound, being put atop the 7.8 Hz carrier wave or vice versa, and
with a piece of alien technology at the heart of it all. The vowel sound, well you know about the
power of the word, of magical invocations, about the Logos and how in the beginning there was the
Word.

Oddly similar to what HAARP is doing nowadays with resonating the ionosphere, right? Except this
was over five thousand years ago and made primarily of stone and set into motion by water. The
thing probably lit up like christmas tree due to all the plasma and electrical fields, so isn’t it funny
that in the Old Testament, the Great Pyramid was referred to as Mount Horeb, which means
glowing mountain.

But what was this all for? Some say it was a power plant. I don’t agree with that. Some say it was a
beam weapon. I don’t believe that either. I have a few guesses myself.

One possibility is that it was used to amplify and broadcast whatever that alien tech was putting out,
to get it to affect the entire planet. Toward what ends? Well, to manipulate reality itself, I mean
scalar and longitudinal waves are the same thing as time waves, they oscillate time itself, and they
may have been programming reality and probability and sort of hacking the matrix if you will.

The other possibility is that they were hacking the Earth itself, and interfacing with it physically in
order to do something absolutely crazy, which is create a pole shift. I’m not kidding, there is reason
to believe that around 3200 B.C. the Great Pyramid was used change the axial alignment of our
planet.

One reason I say this is that cultures and their religious and mythological symbols tend to reflect
whatever astrological age they are in, meaning what constellation the sun rises in on the spring
equinox. Since earth’s axis precesses over time, the constellations slowly change and today we’re in
the Age of Pisces going into the Age of Aquarius. Pisces is why there’s all that stuff in Christianity
about the fishermen, loaves into fishes, the fish symbol, and so on. Before Pisces was the Ram or
Aries, that’s why the Old Testament events which took place in the age of Aries involve a lot of
Ram symbolism. But before Aries was Taurus, and that’s where Bull worship first arose.

Before Taurus was Gemini, before Gemini was Cancer, and before Cancer was Leo, and before Leo
was Virgo. Well, it’s interesting that there is little to no cultural or mythological signature for
Gemini or Cancer, but there was plenty for Leo and Virgo. Artifacts have been found with half
human half lion figures, and of course there is the Sphinx. Virgo came before Leo, and we have
even older artifacts of the fat woman, maternal cultures involved in goddess worship, and so on. So
Leo and Virgo are there, but not Cancer or Gemini, as it seems to go from Leo straight into Taurus.
Well, that is exactly what you would get if the Great Pyramid was built in the age of Leo some time in the 4th Millennium B.C. and then shifted the earth’s axis to skip right into Taurus.

The zodiac and precession of Earth’s axis through various astrological ages.

See, the Age of Leo was supposed to have been 10500 B.C. to 8000 B.C. if you calculate backwards from today’s precession of the axis, which doesn’t take into account any sudden axial phase shifts in the past. So 10000 to 8000 B.C. is also when Atlantis is said to have existed, except that if you look at what’s been said about Atlantis, that it was a wealthy global civilization and that its central city had walls made of a special metal, well none of that actually existed that long ago if you go by archeological evidence. That long ago, the folks at Gobekli Tepe were the most advanced and even they were just the most basic agrarians and there wasn’t even any major metal mining going on. But if you fast forward to 5000 and 3000 B.C., now suddenly it all lines up because that’s when the global seafarer civilization reached its peaks.

So what if the actual age of Leo was 5,000 B.C. to 3200 B.C. and then the pole was artificially shifted and it went straight into the age of Taurus? That would explain why early Egypt has so much lion and bull symbolism, and it would explain why Atlanteans are thought to have existed so long ago during the age of Leo. If the Atlanteans were really the Copper and Bronze Age mariners, well then it all lines up, but requires the assumption that the pole shifted in 3200 B.C., which does match up with accounts of a global disaster back then. I mean the Mayan and Jewish Calendars start around the same time, the Mayan Long Count calendar beginning in 3114 B.C. and according to their mythology signals the beginning of a new age after a terrible flood that also changed the day’s length from 360 to 365 days. So it’s possible that the Great Pyramid was instrumental in causing a pole shift, or maybe that they were preparing for an imminent pole shift and tried to fight it, I don’t know it looks the same either way.

Why would they shift the poles, if that’s what they did? Well, the precessional cycle of Earth’s Axis takes 26,500 years to make one complete revolution. It’s an interesting coincidence that 26,500 years is also how long it takes an electromagnetic wave to travel between Earth and the galactic center, which is a supermassive black hole. What that means is, earth and the galactic center are electromagnetically coupled via a wave that’s 26,500 years long, and so Earth aligns with different parts of that wave depending on its orientation. In other words, the angle of Earth’s axis couples to a certain phase angle of the wave from the galactic center. It’s likely this wave that accounts for the various astrological ages and the kinds of archetypal themes that drive civilization. So if you shift the pole, you shift what part of that wave is intercepted, and you thereby shift what astrological energy now drives civilization. So that goes back to the first hypothesis I mentioned, which is that they were using the Great Pyramid to reprogram terran reality.

And the last possible explanation I have for the Great Pyramid is that it was used to program or charge the alien technology inside. In other words, the tech would be put in the sarcophagus and and machinery started up and it would somehow focus all that gravitational and scalar and temporal energy into that device to either charge it up, or give it a directive to perform, as there’s reason to believe it was sentient or artificially sentient or acted as a communication device with some hyperdimensional intelligence. Alien technology is psionic in nature, or demiurgic as I’ll explain in
a bit. The reason I say all this is because it ties into the Ark of the Covenant and what Moses supposedly did by going into Mount Sinai or Mount Horeb and returning with two stone tablets containing the commandments of “god.”

Ark of the Covenant

You’re probably familiar with the concept of a cargo cult. But to reiterate, a cargo cult is what you get when a primitive people get hold of some item of advanced technology and think it’s magic and then base a superstitious cult or religion around it. Well, the Ark of the Covenant is an example of advanced technology, most likely alien, that fell into primitive hands, which then lead to the creation of a cargo cult we now know as Judaism.

That’s significant because the Ark is the reason the ancient Israelites ever even survived and prospered after their exile from Egypt. The Ark manifested food for them, it gave them tactical instructions, and it was used as a weapon to help them plunder their way north to the promised land. So consider how, if none of that had never happened, there would be no Judaism as we know it, no Christianity, no Islam, no Crusades, no antisemitism, no Nazis, no Holocaust, and therefore we wouldn’t have a runaway military industrial complex founded by Nazis brought over after World War II. At least not in the way we remember it on this timeline. So the Ark of the Covenant was a key pivot point or lynchpin on the timeline that brought us to where we are today.

And that’s why it’s worth going over what’s known about the Ark, because it can give us some insight into the nature of alien (demiurgic technology) and what it might have been used for.

Now, the Ark itself was just a box made of wood and gold, a kind of container with special insulating and energy accumulating properties. What made it special is what it contained. According to the Old Testament it contained, first and foremost, the two stone tablets that Moses brought down out of Mount Sinai. That’s interesting because there’s good reason to believe that Mount Sinai was actually the Great Pyramid and not some mountain range in the middle of nowhere.

As to the nature of the tablets themselves, it’s also interesting to note that some medieval legends of the Grail stone, and these are legends that, keep in mind, came from pagan rather than Christian or Jewish sources, these legends said that the Grail was a supernatural stone on which writing could be seen that gave divine commandments. Further, the Grail was said to shine brightly, to move of its own will, and that it could only be carried by a designated virgin whose chastity was absolute.

Compare that to the Ark of the Covenant and its internal power source, which similarly gave commandments to the Israelite and was surrounded by a glowing aura later called the Shekinah, which means the presence of God, and which could only be moved or handled by trained and purified priests. It’s quite possible that the Grail stone is one of the remaining pieces of what was inside the Ark.
The Grail legends were partly based on real characters and events from the northwestern region of France in the ninth century A.D., and partly based on historical persons from the Cathar era in southern France during the 1200s. Either way, it’s interesting that such alien technology was still in human hands during the Dark and early Medieval Ages.

Demiurgic Technology

I have a lengthy article series called the *Gnosis* series, and the first several articles are about the Demiurge, the Philosopher’s Stone, the Holy Grail, and the Ark of the Covenant. What the Stone, Grail, and Ark have in common is that they are physical things imbued with a supernatural energy. What kind of energy are we talking about? Well, it’s what the mystics would call etheric and astral energy, which is just subtle energy and the same stuff that our soul is made out of. Not only does our body have a soul, but the universe itself has a soul, and this is what the ancients called the Demiurge. The Demiurge is the ocean of etheric and astral energy that surrounds us, and it has its own artificial intelligence. It’s a giant thoughtform that acts as the mainframe of the Matrix. Or you could think of it as a living energy field that underlies physicality and fashions reality out of pure quantum potentiality.

So, what shamans and alchemists and magicians and aliens and black ops scientists have known for a long time is that if you can control this demiurgic energy, this etheric and astral layer of existence, then you can control physicality. That’s because etheric energy is the matrix code of the physical universe; change the code and you change matter, energy, space, and time. This is what talented psychics do when they perform miraculous healings or bend spoons or levitate things or manifest ectoplasm. It’s what aliens do when they phase your body out of synch with time so that it can pass through a closed window or wall. They have some degree of mastery over the etheric code that underlies matter.

If you take a physical object and pump it up with etheric energy, it begins to take on supernatural properties. It has more life, it is capable of housing a morphogenetic field, and it starts violating the laws of physics which only applies to normal matter. So the Philosopher’s Stone is a crude example of that, where you take very specific raw materials and process it in such a way that, much like refining crude oil into kerosene and then taking a spark to it, you ignite a kind of etheric fire. The Philosopher’s Stone is a glass-like substance that burns with an etheric flame, and if you ingest it, that etheric energy charges your body to such a degree that your body’s own morphogenetic or bioplastic field then overrides entropy and leads to healing and age regression among other things. It also supercharges one’s etheric body to the extent that latent etheric organs are awakened and developed, so the alchemist also gains psychic powers and the ability to break out of the 3D space time continuum. So it’s an artificial way of accomplishing what the yogic and Buddhist and shamanic masters of history have accomplished through focused meditation, which channels in such energy from its origin point outside our dimension.

Well, it’s clear to me, from my study of the Holy Grail and the Ark of the Covenant, that these are highly advanced versions of the Philosopher’s Stone. The Ark stone, which Tolkien called the Arken Stone, and the Grail Stone appear from all accounts to be a glass or crystal that functions as a surrogate body for a highly developed etheric/astral energy field, something so advanced that it has immense power and intelligence.
Now in the case of the Ark, the lid of the box was known as the Mercy Seat because it was where
the Shekinah, the glowing “glory of the lord”, would sit and rest. So imagine the two golden winged
figures mounted atop the golden lid of the Ark, with a glowing ball of light between the figures.
Jewish oral history says that this glowing field would sometimes appear as a vortex beaming up into
the sky like smoke during the day and a pillar of fire during the night. The legend says also that it
could leave the Ark and travel about by its own volition, and of course it gave out commandments
and was known to kill people or give them symptoms of radiation poisoning if they got too close.
So, it’s evident from this that the tablets, or the Ark Stone, was just a body for this bizarre ghostly
energy that had a mind of its own.

With the Holy Grail, as I mentioned earlier it also had a mind of its own and the whole purpose
of the Grail Knights was to serve it. The riddle of the grail has always been, “Whom does the Grail
serve?” And the answer is: “Those who serve the Grail.” In the case of the Grail, the sentience
coming through it appears to be the Holy Spirit, or what Philip K. Dick called VALIS: Vast Active
Living Intelligence System. It’s a kind of divine artificial intelligence that for reasons beyond the
scope of this discussion is here to help steer this timeline back to a positive future. In contrast, the
intelligence that manifested through the Ark of the Covenant appears to have basically been a
demonic or reptilian energy. This is obvious to anyone who has objectively looked at the personality
traits of the Lord of Israel. To call it demonic bloodlust is an understatement. That’s why the
gnostics have called Yahweh out for being a corrupt kind of Demiurge, a dark force, and a false god.

What I concluded after studying all this, is that the Demiurge or the soul of the universe is kind of
like an operating system or hard drive in that different parts of it can carry different programs or
partitions. That means the Demiurge can have a corrupt sector similar to a computer that has a virus
taking over part of it, and the Demiurge can also have a good sector, similar to the part where a
computer technician’s actions or antivirus program resides. The Ark and the Grail stone both appear
to link into the Demiurge, meaning they are tuned into the etheric and astral energy fields of
existence, just that which part they tap into may depend on the operator and the calibration of the
device. In the case of the Israelites, looks like they used it to tap into dark powers, while with the
Grail knights they had it linked up with the positive portion of the Demiurge, whom Christians
would call the Holy Spirit.

But, these and the Philosopher’s Stone are all examples of what I call demiurgic technology, in that
they are physical substances or contraptions that work not only at the level of matter-energy-space-
time but also the etheric and possibly astral levels of existence. So they are hyperdimensional,
occult, scalar type technologies and they are the advanced pieces of tech upon which the cargo cults
of our civilization have based their mythologies around.

Israelites and the Ark of the Covenant

As to how the Israelites acquired the Ark of the Covenant, the short answer is that one of their own,
who happened serve in the Egyptian priesthood, took it out of the Great Pyramid and then fled from
Egypt with his people back to their original homeland which was in what is today Israel, Lebanon,
and Syria. This occurred around 1550 B.C. and the event is known as the Hyksos exile from Egypt.

The long answer is pretty interesting and I need to back up in time a bit to give context for how it all
came about. To recap what I said earlier, by 3500 B.C. there already existed a long tradition of
global seafarers who possessed advanced knowledge and technology. As mentioned, they had the ability to construct megaliths by levitating and shaping stones and such. Well, around that time, after they had already established Sumerian civilization, they came to Egypt and built the Great Pyramid there, among other structures. They built it near the Nile Delta, which is northern Egypt where the Nile river bifurcates and empties into the Mediterranean. The pyramid was built to house and utilize a piece of demiurgic technology for purposes linked to a global catastrophe that occurred around 3200 B.C. This disaster was likely a pole shift or something of that scale, something capable of devastating civilization and creating a discontinuity in world history.

Alright, so by 2700 B.C. humanity had bounced back and grown prosperous once again until around 2200 B.C. when they got hit again by cataclysm, and that put an end to the Old Kingdom in Egypt. These disasters caused mass migrations in the Middle East and that included an influx of various nomadic tribes and Semitic people from Mesopotamia and surrounding regions, into northern Egypt. And over the following centuries, they became entrenched there. So Northern Egypt from 2000 B.C. onward became sort of like what Southern California and New Mexico and Texas are to America with respect to migrants from Mexico.

Over time these Semites integrated into the Egyptian power structure and most importantly their priesthood. So these Semites were based primarily in northern Egypt, which is where the Great Pyramid happened to be located. Therefore their members who served in the Egyptian priesthood likely had some fragments of knowledge pertaining the Great Pyramid and what was inside.

Well, something important happened in 1628 B.C., which was the massive explosion of a volcano in the Mediterranean. This and subsequent disasters that followed in a short period of time caused tsunamis and ash and smoke and hellish conditions in Egypt and the Middle East. Egypt got hit hard, enough so that their power structure couldn’t cope and so the Semites of northern Egypt jumped on the opportunity and together with reinforcements from the Levant, they rose up and took over. And so between 1628 and 1550 B.C., Egypt was ruled by them and they were known as the Hyksos. That’s what conventional Egyptology says.

There’s something you have to understand about the Hyksos. The center of their civilization wasn’t located in Egypt, but possibly in what is today Israel, Lebanon, and Syria. The part that had control in Egypt was more of a remote extension of that, a colony. Not only that, but keep in mind that during this age, the Middle East was a blending area between the Indo-Europeans to the north in Turkey and Lebanon, and the Semitic people in Israel, Iraq, and southern Syria. So the Hyksos and their “mothership” consisted of a mix of Indo-Europeans and Semites, and it was often the case that the Indo-Europeans formed the upper class, because historically they had been the ones with more advanced knowledge and technology. This was the pattern everywhere the mariners civilized the natives. So in Egypt, the Hyksos were a mix of Caucasian elites who were accompanied by a nomadic Semitic underclass who functioned as the shepherds and soldiers and general workers. Hence the Hyksos were known as the “kings of shepherds.”

During the time the Hyksos ruled northern Egypt, the old Egyptian power structure still retained control of southern Egypt. And eventually they succeeded in invading the north and expelling the Hyksos. The Hyksos retreated northeast to their fortified city known as Avaris, which in the Bible is known as Pi-Ramesses, and so an extended siege took place that lasted so long that eventually the Egyptians agreed to end it by paying the Hyksos in gold and silver and jewels to leave their fort and
get the hell out of Egypt. Well, they stopped by Great Pyramid on the way, and as recounted in the Old Testament myth about Moses going up into Mount Sinai, one or more of their priests who had the knowledge and training, went into the Great Pyramid and turned it on, which as recounted in scripture caused it to make a blaring trumpet sound and lots of rumbling and what looked like smoke which was likely glowing plasma of some kind.

Important sites in history of Israel, Hyksos, Egyptians, and Phoenicians.

So these Hyksos priests activated the Great Pyramid and then after a period of time came out with the Ark stone or stones. Then they built an insulating box to contain it and headed out of Egypt and spent the next few years pillaging their way north toward their ancestral homelands in Lebanon. The story about the fall of Jericho, where the Israelites marched around the city walls with the Ark of the Covenant until an artificial earthquake brought down the wall, well that story is corroborated by archeological evidence of Jericho being burned to the ground around 1550 B.C., which is when the Hyksos moved out of Egypt.

So the Hyksos and their nomadic underclass comprised the original “twelve” tribes of Israel. The two Semitic tribes were those of Benjamin and Judah, while the other ten especially the tribe of Dan were of Indo-European origin. It only took them a few years max to arrive in their ancestral homelands in Lebanon, and they set up just to the east of the Phoenicians. The Bible is false when it says it took five centuries between the Exodus and the building of the First Temple of Solomon. That’s not true. That’s a lie concocted by the writers of the Old Testament to distance the events of their fictional version of history from the original events. They wanted to cover up the who and the when, with regards to the origins of Israel. And it’s for this reason that archeologists have such a hard time finding any evidence of Israel in the place and time proposed by Bible scholars, who say that the First Temple of Solomon was built around 1000 B.C. Not true at all. The original Israel occurred five hundred years earlier and further to the north, in Phoenician territory.

Alright, so 1500 B.C. you have the Hyksos descendants fully settled and established in Lebanon and Syria right next to their Phoenician and Hittite relatives, and you have various megalithic buildings being built around that time, including the first Temple of Solomon which served as a permanent base for the Ark of the Covenant. Today, only its sister complex survives as the foundation stones of the Temple of Baalbek in Lebanon. If you’ll note, there was a megalithic quarry nearby with the so-called stone of the Pregnant Woman weighing around 120 tons. That is megalithic technology in action. And it takes advanced technology to pull off, which is proof that the Israelites or Hyksos and their Phoenician allies had that technology.

The massive trilithon megaliths in the foundation of the temple complex at Baalbek.

Ok, so that’s the story of how the Israelites originally acquired the Ark. But the story doesn’t end there, it goes on with Egypt invading the area and destroying the temple and possibly repatriating the Ark Stone, at least until over a century later Akhenaten came to power. Akhenaten is a whole story in itself, but in a nutshell he became a religious tyrant and turned Egypt monotheistic under
his authority as sole representative of God. He was the first pope, so to speak. After the end of his reign, his followers staged an uprising against the old Egyptian authorities who had returned to power and got rid of monotheism. But the uprising failed, and they too were then exiled. Well, their rebellion was staged by a priest of theirs, who may have stolen the Ark Stone once again, but it’s uncertain if he succeeded. Where the Ark Stone went after that is murky, and some say it was taken to Yemen or Ethiopia but we can’t say for sure.

When the Akhenaten followers got exiled, they, like their Hyksos exiles, went north and joined their kin in Israel, Palestine, Lebanon and that area. Centuries pass and by 800 B.C. you still have the Indo-European types in the northern parts of that region and Semites in the southern parts, and when Assyria took over, the Indo-Europeans got scattered to the winds. Some of them ran off to India and formed the so-called Aryan invasion there, while the Semitic tribes got to stay in Israel/Palestine.

So by the time the Old Testament was put together, it was mainly the remnant Semites who were the ones doing it. They took all of their own oral histories and the histories of people they had encountered over the past thousand years, and they rewrote history putting themselves at the center of it, and that required shifting the timeline and patching together various fragments of actual events into a fictional narrative. They wrote something to build a national identity around.

In the end, the Second Temple and what we know as Jewish history was mainly their trying to live out a fictionalized version of events that happened almost a thousand years earlier. By the time of the Second Temple there was no Ark anymore, and what they did have merely served as a symbolic structure and not anything functional to house an alien power source. And that’s why, by 600 A.D., Jews were merely living out a fictionalized resurrection of another people and another time.

Around 300 A.D. there were some Jewish radical fundamentalists who wanted to live out this Israelite mythos to such an extreme that they picked up their things and left Israel and formed their own community in Ethiopia, basing their entire society around the Ark of the Covenant concept and its ritual, with every church having its own symbolic Ark and a priesthood dedicated to it. So that’s how Ethiopia acquired such a strong Ark-worshipping culture. And ironically, it’s because of this, that if the actual true Ark surfaced later in history, it would behoove those trying to protect it to take it into Ethiopia for safe keeping since there are numerous decoys everywhere and a people ready to give their lives to defend it.

So that’s a thumbnail sketch of the history of the Ark of the Covenant and the origin of the Israelites.

The Future

As to what the past says about the future, I’m pretty optimistic about where humanity will be, say, five hundred to a thousand years from now. I think future humans will look back on our time the same way we look back on the fabled Atlantis, as a mighty civilization that fell due to a combination of corruption and disasters.

From an occult perspective, future humans will be living embodiments of the Philosopher’s Stone, and what the world faces between now and then amounts to an alchemical separation and purification process. So future people may one day become purified vessels for the divine fire,
whereas right now, mankind is just the decomposing starting material of alchemy that contains, only in potential, the seed for an eventual miraculous outcome. It also contains the caput mortem, the irredeemable and unsalvagable dross, which are energies and forces entirely native and epiphenomenal to this Matrix illusion that are to be separated out and discarded so that the remainder can rise to join with Spirit and thereby accomplish the Great Work.

The alchemical wheel of history has been grinding away for a long time, at least six thousand years if not further back, perhaps since the last Ice Age. There’s this axiom in alchemy which is “dissolve and coagulate, dissolve and coagulate,” and what do we see in history other than order and chaos, order and chaos, you know, rise and fall, rise and fall.

And there is no reason why the next few centuries should be an exception to that rule. People who think modern living will go on forever in a gradual upward arc, well they’re ignoring tons of factors that say otherwise, least of which is climate change and the depletion of resources and the fragile interdependence on our global economy. Other variables include solar EMPs or asteroid or comet disasters, pole shifts, robot wars, super viruses, or so on. It also doesn’t take into account spiritual trends and occult cycles that involve exit from this Kali Yuga we’re in, or the ancient prophecies about how this all ends.

So short term, it doesn’t look good because things are already unraveling and polarizing and marching toward their various singularities. What do I mean by singularities? I mean critical points beyond which a trend simply cannot continue because the system breaks down. So we’re headed toward various singularities, and we know what they are because the trends leading toward them are in evidence right now. So let’s have a look at a few.

The political singularity is obvious when looking at current events. Thanks to the internet, people become aware of endless provocative events from across the world that force them into choosing a stance on issues. Most of these provocations are false dichotomies pitting people against each other. But underneath it all are some genuine dualities, such as between authoritarianism / collectivism and libertarianism / individualism. Since aware people know what they know and cannot unsee what they’ve seen, and since everyone else is irrational and uses reason only enough to justify their emotional biases, there’s no hope for reconciliation. And so the tension will increase until it snaps and the status quo breaks down.

The technological singularity trend is one that will continue so long as there is a global economy to support it. If everything remains stable, then we’re headed for a world of drones, nanotechnology, brain-machine interfaces, virtual reality escapists, robot armies used in the name of tyranny, and an eventual AI “god” that rules over life on Earth that’s been plugged into its networks. That’s stuff Ray Kurzweil has been predicting for a while, and with him being the head of Google’s engineering team he’s helping to make it happen. This technological singularity is just a physical replication of what’s already happened at the metaphysical level with our “falling” here into physicality under the dictatorship of the corrupted Demiurge. Same game, different name.

On the other hand, if the global economy crumbles and the world is consumed by starvation, by revolution and mass migration or war, as it has throughout history, well you can’t build AI robots if you don’t have the parts, and the parts are such high level technology that they can only be produced by an intricate global economy. Or if Earth were hit by a solar EMP, we’d be knocked
back to the 1800s and once factories and machines start to rot from neglect it would take another
century or two to get microelectronics back into production. So the whole robot apocalypse or
matrix movie scenario is only possible, and likely, if everything else stays constant, if financial or
geological singularities don’t arrive first. Therefore if you forget all about fringe stuff for a moment,
assume there’s no such things as aliens, no natural disasters, no nuclear war or anything, then we’re
still heading toward the tech singularity at the very least.

If instead we face setbacks caused by natural disasters or climate change or economic collapse, then
we’re looking at a primitive dark age instead. What typically happens during a dark age? Well, you
have a shift from centralized control and services to decentralization. So things become more local,
more tribal, more feudal. In the beginning, you will have the existing order and its elites trying to
maintain control but they quickly run out of money and manpower and are increasingly overrun by
the violent and disaffected parts of society, the ones with a chip on their shoulders (or a chip in their
brain), the strong barbarians so to speak. Rome was carved up by the barbarians after its demise,
and we can expect similarly today.

In a survival environment, typically you have groups of people bound together by racial,
geographic, ethnic, religious, or political affiliation that band together and either try to defend
themselves in enclaves, or go out of their way to wipe out or enslave their perceived enemies. If you
look at the history of the Middle East, in ancient Biblical and Egyptian times especially, it was a
total circus with tribes slaughtering tribes in between short periods of regional stability. Or look at
what’s happening today in Iraq, Libya, and Syria — with the old government out of the way, society
devolved into fighting between various ethnic groups, especially when life became hard and there
was competition over resources.

The pattern is that social tensions or schisms held in check by the rule of law, get out of control and
become violent when law and order break down. Worse, according to MILABs research, the black
ops factions have been abducting numerous people and programming them to create sleeper armies
that can dominate the post-collapse environment and do their bidding. They’re out there right now,
on-call to help push the fall of civilization and shape the aftermath.

During a dark age, it’ll be up to good people to band together, to stand up against injustice and
tyranny, and to be adequately prepared and self-sufficient so that they won’t be forced to prey on
the innocent or be preyed upon. They will need to have superior defense, superior knowledge,
superior power, and superior spiritual and physical technology. They will form protected enclaves to
keep that flame of higher civilization alive, so that after the forest fire stops burning and the smoke
clears, they can scatter the seeds for a new and hopefully better civilization. They will have to do
this in the face of possible climate difficulties and negative alien intervention.

Chaos is inevitable and cyclical, and in the end it comes down to what new order crystallizes from
the dissolved remnants of the old. The ancient mariners were ruled by alchemists, sorcerers,
magicians, occult scientists, and alien contactees. Some of them were aligned with positive forces
and some with the negative. Their dueling agendas have rippled down through the ages and
culminated in the situation we find ourselves in today. This world is their crucible and they’re
turning up the heat.

So it’s under this immense adversity that I think the divine fire will be kindled, that collective
discernment will be sharpened, and that the remnants of humanity will transform and finally break out of the cycle of ignorance and violence and rise and fall that’s has been the story of our history up to now.

The next dark age will give birth to a spiritual chivalric order, an age of heroes empowered by demiurgic science and correct gnostic awareness, an epoch the Rosicrucians have called the “Reign of Wisdom.” It won’t be based on dogma or hearsay, but on direct perception, knowledge, and anamnesis (reversal of incarnational amnesia).

The distant future is looking pretty good. We’ll end up in a Golden Age just like the prophecies say, but there’s that Latin saying, “ad astra per aspera” which means to heaven, through hell. The near term looks rather rocky and we’ll likely go through a dark age first.

About

Site FAQ

8 July 04 (about)

What is this site?

It’s my personal website containing articles on various fringe topics. These topics include aliens, metaphysics, the matrix control system, conspiracy, and alternative science.

Where do you get your info?

Most of it comes from personal experience, insight, pondering, and applying critical thinking skills. Some material comes from personal discussion and correspondence with friends. These I correlate with outer sources of information like books, websites, videos, and articles by others.

Regarding published sources, here are my primary influences, my major points of resonance:

1) Law of One (Ra material) – books I/II/III
2) The Cassiopaean Transcripts (read my warning first)
3) Bringers of the Dawn – Barbara Marciniak
4) Gnosis, volumes I/II/III – Boris Mouravieff
5) The Toltec Teaching Series – Theun Mares

See my Recommended Reading list for further suggestions. As for my education, I did four years of undergraduate physics and electrical engineering, which took me through quantum physics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, vector/tensor calculus, and partial differential equations.

Can you elaborate on how you arrived at your views?

I get my research mostly from personal experience and observation, logical deduction and critical thinking, insight, and intuition — in that order. Half of the rest comes from books, textbooks, articles, websites, documentaries. And the remaining comes from anecdotes, observations, and insights relayed by others. So in correlating this data pool and weighing the credibility of each,
checking for possible errors, eliminating inconsistencies, finding holes and modifying the theory accordingly, what I am trying to do is make the best fit curve to the data, that which is contradicted by none of the data, the theory that explains it most elegantly and allows for predictions that can be verified or insights that can be checked against further study.

It’s a more flexible form of the scientific method. I make my observations, form a hypothesis as to what could be going on, then over time that hypothesis is tested and I form a conclusion as to how to make an improved hypothesis. Traditional science does similar, except nowadays (and for quite some time) it throws out observations that don’t fit theory instead of modifying theory to fit the data, you know the whole “if I can’t measure it then it can’t exist” mentality which is like saying “my ruler is only a foot long, therefore that tree over there can only be a foot tall because I can’t measure the rest” — humorous exaggeration but you get my point. The problem with certain skeptics is that their rationalizations are sometimes more ludicrous than the very thing they are trying to discount, which is due to a stubborn bias that subjectively keeps raising the bar for what constitutes sufficient proof so that none is sufficient to prove their bias faulty. What’s worst is when, instead of testing a hypothesis, they ridicule the hypothesis as impossible and contrary to the status quo, and therefore refuse to even test or examine it. That is contrary to the scientific method.

Regarding proof, there is personal proof and inner knowing that is not universal “hard” proof but definitely enough to convince the one it happens to. Take lucid dreaming for instance. Can I prove to you and the world that I have lucid dreams? No, it’s an internal phenomenon. A scientist is trained to keep himself out of the experiment, therefore he is not allowed to lucid dream himself to get the proof, rather he can merely measure and observe someone who claims to be. In that case, he will never get the proof he needs.

The same goes for synchronicity, shaping your thoughts and feelings to shape what experiences you attract, etc. where proof can only be found through personal experience. I have enough experience in these matters to be convinced that this stuff is real. And the anecdotes of others I consider plausible if they are trustworthy individuals of sound mind and I cannot find probable reason for their being mistaken. Maybe the theory is wrong, but the observations upon which they are based are real. And the observations themselves are counter-examples to what Academia considers possible, therefore I have personal proof that there is more to reality than the secular authorities admit.

Regarding the idea of thoughts and emotions projecting outside us and directly shaping the probability distribution of immediate probable futures, that gets into the more exotic aspects of quantum physics and electrodynamics not discussed in textbooks but supported by a larger collection of indirect evidence. The works of physicist David Bohm and Rupert Sheldrake come to mind here. In court of law, indirect evidence can settle cases if there is enough of it despite no single piece being hard proof. Same here, if all that’s considered is what you have seen with your own eyes or published in some textbook, your world view will be limited to the size of a matchbox. Critical thinking helps stitch things together, but the energy and time required to do a good job discourages people who prefer structuring their beliefs on what is convenient rather than what is true.
How do you know you're not spreading disinformation?
The best I can do is act on my experience, intuition, and logic, keeping what rings true and is logically sound until something better comes along. Rather than look for what’s right with an idea, I focus on what’s wrong with it because disinformation is a lot of truth with a little bit of lies and looking for the lies is therefore the proper procedure to follow. Sure, it’s not a failsafe method, but I correct mistakes as soon as they reveal themselves.

Some articles contradict each other, what gives?
Older articles are less accurate than new ones, and so they may contradict the new ones. I’m working on getting everything up to date and consistent.

Why do you write with such an authoritative tone?
That’s a misperception. In accordance with the scientific method, most of my ideas are written in the form of a hypothesis for the sake of the reader. A hypothesis is an idea put forward to be tested, in this case by the reader. Hypotheses are always written in the form of a direct statement, such as “ice melts when placed in hot water.” They are not written in wishy washy language like “in my opinion, there is a possibility that ice will melt in hot water, but I don’t know for sure so please make up your own mind.” It is a given that what people read on the net, they should test before accepting it. If they have to be told to make up their own minds, then they are still depending on authority for them to do that. I expect readers to have a mind of their own and take my ideas into consideration rather than automatically accepting them based on perceived authority. And they should do this without my having to command them into doing that; it should be an unspoken understanding. If the idea works and fits and they can’t disprove it, then they are free to go with it. If they have a problem with the idea, then they should be able to explain exactly what’s wrong.

So since they ought to treat everything as a hypothesis anyway, for the sake of conciseness I prefer to write my ideas in the form of direct statements and let people make up their own minds, as they should.

What’s with the name “Montalk”?
My real name is Tom. “Montalk” is an online handle, a play upon the word “Montauk”. I have no connections with the Montauk Project, and chose the name only because it was a tongue-in-cheek way of indicating the conspiracy angle of this site. It was also one of the few names left on hotmail that hadn’t been taken when I signed up for an email account.

(index)

Truth Analysis

31 July 04 (about)
This article describes the reasoning process I use to write most of the articles on this site.

The process is based on two axioms:

1. Truth is not subjective.
2. Truth never contradicts itself.

Because truth is not subjective, some ideas are more objective than others. This means that no matter what your worldview is, it can always be improved to be more objective. It shows that there is indeed something to strive for.

The idea that truth never contradicts itself is a very powerful axiom. Lies can be internally consistent as well, but a mixture of truth and lies will show contradictions. You can use this principle to discover what’s true and what’s false. Here’s what I mean:

It is difficult to tell if any single idea is true or false, just like it is difficult to tell which of two similar puzzles a single puzzle piece belongs to. But a large collection of non-contradicting ideas will reveal whether the entire collection is true or false. The larger the collection, the easier it is to see. You start with one ambiguous puzzle piece, find others that fit onto it, and soon you can tell which of the two puzzles you’ve put together.

Another analogy is panning for gold. You start with a large amount of material that includes both silt and gold flakes, then you shake the pan and let the silt fall away. This indicates the importance of continually thinking, reading, and discussing large amounts of new material, which is then to be sorted or filtered via intuition and critical thinking to reveal what is true.

The analysis phase is best done with pen and paper (or a sketchbook) to lay out intuitive thoughts for dissection, to survey the possibilities, to brainstorm, and to distill derived conclusions into precisely worded statements that “nail” the answer. What begins as a question, mystery, paradox, or ambiguity can be brought into full clarity this way.

When analyzing a theory, be it something read elsewhere or one that just came to mind, it is far better to look for what’s wrong with it than what’s right. That is because debates can rage forever concerning the thousand facts supporting a single lie, but no one can argue with a single fact that disproves a thousand lies. The self-deluded spend their lives finding reasons to justify their delusions, and they find reasons galore… but they remain deluded only because they refuse to look at the fatal flaws in their assumptions or reasoning. Therefore look for these flaws at the outset and you can avoid a lifetime of self-delusion.

Remember, as long as your worldview is internally consistent, it is most likely entirely true or entirely false. Combine this principle with the five-step process below, and you will have an effective truth analysis method. The process of discovering truth is one of cycling between gathering material, formulating theories, working out inconsistencies, and gathering more material.

Most importantly, truth is always verified by both logic and intuition — logic without intuition, or intuition without logic should never be used to determine truth. They must be used in tandem. If there is conflict between logic and intuition, check your logical assumptions. Use intuition to guide and logic to analyze.

The process goes like this:

1) Gather new ideas from contemplation, observation, discussion, or some reading material. Then pick a mystery, a contradiction, a set of observations or anything that needs to be explained or resolved.
2) To make a good theory that will explain all of that, start with the infinite set of all possibilities. This means anything goes, no idea is too ludicrous. Use your intuition and guess.

3) As ideas come to mind, use critical thinking to eliminate everything that is self contradictory or absolutely impossible. Look for holes in these ideas, try to shoot them down.

4) Of the bulletproof theories that are left, select the theory that:
   - explains all the facts
   - explains the facts better than any other theory
   - explains facts that previous theories could not
   - is logically consistent and has no internal contradictions
   - makes sense
   - feels intuitively correct.

5) The theory is worth keeping if:
   - it predicts things which are later confirmed by observation
   - you find correlation from other independent sources.

6) If you come across something that challenges the theory, then:
   - check to see that it’s really a challenge, and not just an illusory paradox based on assumptions or incorrect perspective
   - check to see if the challenge is even valid, or if it is internally inconsistent and full of holes
   - modify the theory to accommodate the challenge
   - come up with a whole new theory that explains everything more elegantly than the old one.

This is opposite the process used in science and mathematics that starts with axioms and builds upon them. The problem with that method is that it starts with a very limited finite set and creeps upward like a stalagmite. If the assumptions or axioms are false, then everything built on it is in error. Further, such a process cannot skip steps, as it always needs verification from the status quo to proceed to the next step. It cannot take leaps of faith or logic, and therefore cannot make paradigm shifts. It’s an inflexible process that definitely has its advantages when it comes to high risk applications that need lots of security and assuredness, but as far as breaking new ground is concerned, it’s incredibly slow. Any creativity in that process happens only in the formation of the basic axioms, or in accidents that occur along the way.

The process described in this article starts with an infinite set, and whittles away what doesn’t fit. This means there is no need to leap across a logical abyss because one approaches from the other side. It is much easier to build a bridge if someone is already on the other side. Likewise, once a radical idea has been confirmed using this process, it is much easier to work backwards and logically bridge the abyss. Also, the fitting together of ideas and sorting of truth from lies requires creativity at every step, so it’s the best method of achieving rapid innovation.

(index)
Key Concepts

25 August 04 (about)
This is a short overview of ideas presented at montalk.net. Deeper overviews of specific subjects can be found as intros to each section of the site.

God
- Source of all creation
- Projects two aspects of itself: pure individuated consciousness, and matter/energy
- Infuses matter/energy with fragments of its own consciousness
- Infinite intelligence exploring its infinite potential through an infinite variety of finite fragments
- Allows individuated fragments to expand via learning until they unite with the whole
- Does not diminish in size when a fragment is created…the process is holographic replication
- Also called Creator, Source, All, Nous

Soul and Spirit
- Aggregates of conscious energy, holographic fragments of God
- Consciousness is the only thing that actually exists in the absolute sense; it is an aperture into infinity.
- Individualized consciousness is a self-regulating portion of existence aware of its own existence.
- Soul is “lifespark”; characterized by basic awareness and consciousness.
- Spirit is “Godspark”; characterized by self-awareness and individualized consciousness.
- Mineral, plant, animal, and human souls differ in complexity and level of individuality.
- Whereas minerals, plants, and animals are growing their souls, humans are developing their spirit.
- In higher planes of reality, beings may exist without a physical body.
- While occupying a physical body, genetics tend to match spirit/soul nature — if spirit or soul is present.
- Large mismatches in genetics and soul frequency result in failure to incarnate properly.
- Slight mismatches cause gradual mutations in one to accommodate the other; genetics change epigenetically with soul growth and vice versa.
- The developed human individual is composed of physical body, soul (etheric and astral body) and spirit (volitional and mental body).
- Not all humans or animals have a spirit, just soul and body.

**Evolution**
- Physical evolution is due to natural selection, random mutation, conscious selection, and conscious mutation
- Human evolution is mostly artificial; either DNA mutates to conform to alien soul frequency, or else DNA is artificially altered through advanced genetic engineering by certain alien factions
- Because body must match soul, the death of a species means loss of compatible bodies for purposes of reincarnation. Thus physical life seeks physical survival and propagation of genes.
- The purpose of physical evolution is to accommodate and serve spiritual evolution
- Spiritual evolution is the accumulation of individuality, self-awareness, and knowledge

**Morality**
- All that encourages spiritual evolution is called positive, all that hinders it is called negative.
- What is painful, scary, and illegal is typically called “evil,” while what is nice, loving, and accepted is commonly called “good.”
- Good and evil as such are subjective and relative terms, while positive and negative are objective and absolute.
- Proper balance between good and evil, each in their proper place, results in positivity.
- Too much good leads to stagnation and jadedness, which is negative; too much evil leads to total destruction, which is also negative.
- Balance is maintained by having both in proper ratio and diametric opposition.
- Morality has to do with being good; conscience with being positive.
- Morality is programmed into us by our social and biological programming; conscience originates with our innate spiritual intelligence.
- One who fights solely for good or evil is a fool, one who fights strictly for positivity is a noble warrior.
- Such a warrior will incorporate the proper balance of good/evil within himself, then seek to restore balance to negative systems.

**Freewill**
- Some beings have more freewill than others.
- The more consciousness, self-awareness, or spiritual evolution one possesses, the greater one’s freewill.
• Possession of freewill is useless until it is recognized and applied.
• Beings with freewill can be coerced into behaving as though they have none.
• Knowledge allows these deceived beings to regain the full use of their former freewill.
• Humans in general are beings with enormous amounts of freewill.
• Negative alien factions have instated a control system to trick humans into limiting their own freewill.
• Negative alien factions possess less freewill than humans, thus their reliance upon technology and subtle coercion as a form of spiritual jujitsu to overcome a spiritually greater opponent.
• Beings with actively applied higher levels of freewill, can override the actions, thoughts, and realities of beings with lower levels of freewill.
• Beings with lower freewill, either directly or indirectly serve beings of higher freewill.
• Physicality allows the violation of freewill between physical beings, the main reason why physical existence is a valuable experience in the path of spiritual evolution.

Cosmology
• Reality has multiple timelines, dimensions, and planes of existence including physical, astral, and etheric.
• Physical reality is generated and sustained by a base level consciousness known as the Demiurge.
• Demiurge is the soul of the physical universe, an etheric and astral construct permeating, underlying, shaping, and perpetuating physicality.
• It is without independent sentient consciousness, freewill, or creativity; rather, it fashions our environment according to inputs from above and below itself.
• Demiurge provides the physical, etheric, and astral substance from which our bodies and environments are made.
• A portion of the Demiurge has become corrupted by negative inputs, and thus our reality is partially corrupted.

Physics
• The speed of light is how fast finite consciousness propagates through linear space.
• All of physical reality from beginning to end, in all its possible manifestations, was instantly created when the Creator projected its unified infinite self into an infinity of differentiated finite selves.
• Reality exists as a static fractal hologram, encompassing all possible modes of existence and experience.
• Through this holographic web of possibilities, consciousness chooses which frame of the hologram to experience, giving rise to the illusion of time.

• This choice is restricted by the Demiurge and the opposing freewill of other beings.

• The unified field is a hypercomplex quantum phase field, meaning three quantum phase coordinates in addition to three spatial coordinates.

• Flows, whirls, and compressions in the phase field give rise to electricity, magnetism, and gravity.

• By itself, the phase field is amorphous and encompasses all probabilities and quantum wave functions.

• Consciousness provides a coherent wave source interacting with the phase field and extracting a chosen slice of the hologram to experience as manifested physical reality.

• There are three types of time: linear time, phase time, and spiritual time. These correspond to the three quantum phase coordinates.

• Linear time is our conscious record of events, phase time measures the difference between parallel timelines, and spiritual time measures progress along the axis of spiritual evolution and freewill.

• Physical reality as we know it moves forward in linear time and is entropic.

• From a linear perspective, individual consciousness originates from the many probable futures and propagates backwards in linear time, negentropically affecting the probability of processes happening in the present.

• When individual consciousness is coupled to physical reality, it experiences forward linear time.

• When coupled to an astral, etheric, or higher dimensional body, time becomes nonlinear.

• When coupled to no body, time becomes nonexistent and the soul unites with its Source.

Humans

• The human body is a biological vehicle whose great genetic diversity allows for the incarnation of a great diversity of souls/spirits.

• Human genetics are unique in allowing potentially closer energetic interface with the Creator and the machine code of reality than most other physical lifeforms in the galaxy.

• While physically uniform, mankind is metaphysically diverse.

• Origins of souls in human bodies include native human, alien, animal group-souls, or artificial/nonexistent souls.

• Aliens genetically engineered different human races by crossing various alien races with each other, crossing them with hominid and neanderthal genetics already present on Earth, and successively tweaking what resulted.
• Some tweaks resulted in a psychically and intellectually handicapped type of human laced with numerous backdoors and programmed reactions, which is now our modern species.

Aliens
• Originate from other planets, dimensions, parallel realities, and times
• Have countless reasons for being here but can be classified into positive, negative, and neutral factions.
• Each alien race is composed of a mixed bag of factions of varying intentions; some races are more homogenous than others.
• Reside underground, inside mountains, on the Moon and other planets, in space, underwater, and in higher levels of reality.
• Have human proxy counterparts, which are these alien souls or spirits incarnated into genetically tweaked human bodies.
• Negative aliens abduct humans for mind programming purposes, physical and etheric food, and hybrid breeding experiments.
• Main negative groups at present are factions within the Gray, Reptilian, Mantis, and Nordic races.
• Grays primarily use humans as genetic stock to build a new hybrid race for further entrapping the human soul matrix.
• Reptilians and Negative Nordics want humans as a natural physical and spiritual resource.
• Positive Nordic (human-like) aliens exist but are a minority and therefore work clandestinely and cleverly to subvert the negative alien agendas.

New World Order
• NWO is a compartmentalized political entity seeking to subjugate humanity under a hostile alien agenda.
• The NWO hierarchy is composed from the bottom up of negative factions of law enforcement and military, organized crime, politicians, bankers, secret societies, aliens, and demonic beings from the lower astral planes.
• The current goal is to politically unite humanity into a global nation and then hand over the reigns to alien factions.
• This unification will be accomplished by rigged threats to humanity such as terrorism, nuclear war, planetary cataclysms, or staged alien invasions.
• America is the NWO’s biggest threat due to her gun culture and libertarian foundations. The American government is the seat of the NWO.
Religion

- There is no religion higher than truth.
- Most organized religions are control systems to mentally and spiritually enslave humans and deprive them of freewill.
- Most religions have alien and demonic origins, or else are corrupted by negative alien factions and their human counterparts who seek control over the masses.
- Any religion demanding its followers pray or focus on an anthropomorphic deity outside themselves is aiding in the transdimensional economy of spiritual energy robbery and consumption by nonphysical beings.
- Many religions were created specifically by a parent alien race to be followed by its human counterpart race, a form of software to accompany the hardware.
- Faith should only be used for yet-unknowable, not dogmatically ignored, phenomena.
- Mainstream church is unnecessary as an aid to spiritual evolution and only acts as a social institution for social programming purposes.
- Direct gnostic communion with one’s inner guidance is more valuable than any religion, for it allows extraction of truth/wisdom from anything including scripture.
- Without that gnostic guidance, scripture remains nothing more than an indistinguishable mix of truth and falsehood.

Matrix Control System

- Control infrastructure of the corrupted Demiurge and its minions.
- Manipulates humanity via artificial synchronicity, demonic possession, alien mind programming, and limitation of perception to the five senses.
- A synchronicity is a meaningful coincidence, or something that appears accidental but has a hidden purpose; can come from positive or negative sources.
- Matrix suppresses individuality, awareness, and initiative by amplifying people’s weaknesses and subjecting them to emotionally draining melodramas.
- It is a tool used by spiritually atrophied beings to subliminally control spiritually powerful humans and feed off their energies.
- It is built and maintained by negative hyperdimensional beings who require this energy for survival and power.
- In more general terms, the Matrix is the invisible control system around us which manipulates our minds, emotions, and actions without us necessarily noticing, questioning, or fighting it.
- It uses a variety of human agents to accomplish its job; anyone who lacks a soul or spirit is a prime Matrix agent.
• Because they are directed by the Matrix, these agents exhibit coordinated hive-mind behavior.

• The Matrix interfaces with the underlying “machine code” of our reality and can manipulate certain aspects of our timeline to create circumstances that bias our choices.

• At its core, the Matrix is an etheric, pseudo-conscious machine that crunches data about our habits, emotional patterns, and present behavior in order to synchronistically insert an appropriate event in our life for effective control and the extraction of energy.

• Because we are more conscious than the Matrix, we can overcome it; it’s a matter of regaining and exercising our freewill through knowledge.

• Viewed from the proper metaphysical perspective, the Matrix is merely a training program indirectly helping us discover our weaknesses, strengthen our soul, and act from our spiritual core.

Positive Forces

• Beings whose thoughts, feelings, and actions are directed more by their conscience, wisdom, and love for the spirit in others than by negative impulses.

• Includes positive humans, positive aliens, positive time travelers, angels, spiritual guardians, archangelic forces, and the Creator.

• Operate via the law of non-interference for the preservation of freewill; they intervene only to counter negative interventions.

• Do not interfere with self-chosen karmic experiences since doing so would short circuit the learning process.

• Prefer guiding, nudging, dropping clues in most cases.

• Are more powerful, but more restrained, than the negative hierarchy.

If these ideas interest you, please read my book Fringe Knowledge For Beginners (free download). It gives a simple and concise overview of the most important and useful ideas I have to offer about these topics.

(index)

Glossary (montalk.net)

28 July 11 (about)

• Astral
• Causal Chain
• Demiurge
• Demiurgic Technology
• Density
• Deterministic
• Dimension
• Hyperdimensional
• Karma
• Linear Time
• Logos
• Loosh
• Matrix Control System
• Mind Programming
• Quantum Phase
• Quantum Wavefunction
• Realm
• Soul
• Soul Abduction
• Spirit
• Spiritless Human
Astral

Pertaining to the more diaphanous portions of the soul in which feelings, archetypes, impressions, and passions exist. There are astral bodies, astral planes, and astral energies.

The astral body is a component of our being that mediates the thoughts of Spirit to the etheric body, and communicates the impressions of the physical body to the Spirit. The astral body is the seat of our feelings, desires, impressions, and passions. Its energies are active in our subconscious.

The astral plane, also known as the “inner planes,” is a nonphysical environment comprised of the energies of consciousness rather than configurations of matter. One can only access it through the mind, by retreating from the outer physical or etheric world and turning within. The dream world, the afterlife, and the astral plane are all closely related. The astral body is composed of the types of energies found in the astral plane. The astral plane is the native environment of Fifth Density, but it intersects through the other densities like an elevator shaft intersecting the floors of a building. The lowest portions of the astral plane are home to demonic beings, the highest to angelic ones, with the middle regions inhabited by 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Density beings in their out of body or afterlife states. Astral beings are those who lack physical and etheric bodies, and exist primarily as discarnate entities in the astral plane.

Astral energies are the basis of feelings, impressions, and passions. But more fundamentally, they are energies that convey archetypes or signatures, specific “Ideas” in the Platonic sense. A particular emotion is simply an impulse that pulls us into conformance with a particular archetype. In thoughtforms, the astral component acts as the core program, impulse, or goal that the archetype attempts to fulfill. In Alchemy, the astral energy of ‘gold’ acts as a vibratory signature that, when impressed upon lead through a potent etheric mediator, reconfigures that substance into gold. Astral energies have a directionally transformative, motivational, transitional quality.

Causal Chain

An alternating sequence of cause and effect where the final effect depends entirely on the initial cause. Think of a line of dominoes or a chain reaction. One thing causes another, but the end traces back to the beginning.

Demiurge

An artificial intelligence comprised of etheric and astral energy that underlies our physical universe. It was projected by the Logos as a thought form programmed with the task of generating and
perpetuating physicality. It’s job is to take astral archetypes thought up by the Logos and weave them into physical form. The Demiurge has been called by philosophers the World Soul, for it is the soul of physicality itself. It is what perpetuates the forward momentum of time.

In its corrupted state, the archetypes it weaves into physical manifestation are not those of the Logos, but those of consciousness that has been ensnared by the trappings of physical existence – competition, survival, hatred, suffering, pain, and so on. Thus the Corrupted Demiurge molds and shapes the universe to perpetuate more of same. It is the central brain of the Matrix Control System.

---

**Demiurgic Technology**

Technology that employs astral and etheric energy to influence or reconfigure matter, energy, space, and time. Low power examples include the Philosopher’s Stone, a substance highly charged with concentrated etheric energy and tinged with the signature of gold, capable of dissolving lead at the quantum level and reconfiguring it into gold. Higher power examples include the Holy Grail and Ark of the Covenant, which were capable of altering geographic terrain, manifesting food out of thin air according to the wishes of the operator, and altering the timeline.

---

**Density**

A measure of a being’s level of conscious development. Each density corresponds to a particular stage in the evolution of consciousness. For instance, lower densities have more rudimentary lifeforms operating by simpler laws. Higher density being are more sophisticated in mind, body, and soul.

In the Ra Material and Cassiopaean Transcripts, the entire spectrum of life, from subatomic particles to the infinite Creator, can be conveniently divided into seven primary levels, or densities:

- **First Density (1D)** is the lowest, corresponding to subatomic particles, atoms, molecules, chemicals, and minerals, where conscious development is rudimentary and limited to simple awareness.

- **Second Density (2D)** plant and animal life, where consciousness first experiences will, passion, drive, pain, or pleasure.

- **Third Density (3D)** includes beings like ourselves, who possess the seed of self-awareness and freewill. Consciousness makes the choice between helping others or exploiting them. These three densities are fully physical and subject to the limits of three dimensional space and linear time. They inhabit the same physical realm. Also, the densities blend into each other, and within each density there is a gradient from the lowest to the highest evolved types of beings. This is clearly seen in 2nd density where the lowest forms such as sponges or bacteria are not on the same level as the highest such as primates.

- **Fourth Density (4D)** includes beings that straddle the boundary between spacetime and the higher ethereal realms. For them, physicality is plastic and responsive to thought. They exist behind the dimensional curtain and can project into our reality at will. Some are positive,
others are negative. Both 4D beings and their environments are part physical, part ethereal. The spiritual goal of 4D existence is to fully live out their choice of spiritual polarity. Telepathy and supernatural abilities come easily.

- Fifth Density (5D) is a completely ethereal level of existence, functioning as a stopover zone for departed souls and a native realm for beings who have evolved to that level. Native 5D beings seem focused on accumulating wisdom and total perfection of their individuality.
- Sixth Density (6D) is where individual entities have finished their personal evolution and group together to evolve as a soul group. They exist as energy beings in a realm completely outside spacetime.
- Seventh Density (7D) is “unity with the Creator” and the total dissolution of individual existence, though not through annihilation of consciousness but achievement of infinite consciousness that permeates all life and all existence.

Density can also refer to the native realm inhabited by beings of a particular level of evolution. For instance, to “be in Fourth Density” means to be in a realm natively inhabited by Fourth Density beings. Since such beings live in a quasi-physical state between physical and ethereal, Fourth Density as an environment or realm is likewise quasi-physical. It is the superset to our rigidly physical realm, the room to our fishbowl. In Fourth Density, spacetime is more fluid, flexible, and responsive to consciousness. It is an etherically potent environment.

Deterministic
When outcome is entirely determined by the initial causes. Deterministic behavior doesn’t deviate or branch into indeterminate possibilities, but follows a straight and predictable line into the future. In deterministic systems, consciousness and freewill play no part. Machines, robots, computers, and anything completely physical is deterministic in its behavior.

Dimension
When used casually, “dimension” refers to a particular world, realm, or environment that is distinguished from another by more than mere time or physical location. When used in a more scientific sense, “dimension” refers to the degree of freedom allowed for extension and movement. These two definitions are sometimes interchangeable, sometimes not, and sometimes they correspond to density, sometimes not.

One cause for confusion is that humans exist in Third Density and are confined to three spatial dimensions, while aliens are mostly Fourth Density and seem to have access to a fourth spatial dimension. This comes from the observation that aliens can move through solid objects, travel through time, see multiple timelines at once, have crafts that are bigger on the inside than the outside, and so on. Therefore “3D and 4D beings” could imply “Third and Fourth Density beings” just as much as “third and fourth dimensional beings”. The terms “hyperdimensional” and “higher density” are synonymous in my writings for that reason.

But that’s where the correlation between density and dimension ends, otherwise plants would know
only the line, animals only the plane, and humans the volume. Yet these lower densities all inhabit the same three dimensional physical environment. Similarly, Fifth Density beings don’t necessarily have access to a fifth spatial dimension barred to Fourth Density beings.

The other cause for confusion is that “dimension” is sometimes used as a generic term meaning any number of things according to context, be it “realm of existence” or “timeline” or “plane of reality” — basically some environment, not always our own. In some contexts, dimension and density would then be interchangeable, but not in other contexts. For instance, there may be Third Density beings living in a parallel Earth, and while they aren’t of different density nor greater or lesser spatial dimension than we are, some people might describe them as being of another dimension, meaning “another world” not within our physically explorable universe.

Therefore, keep in mind that density and dimension are not the same thing, although occasionally the two are interchangeable.

↑

Ego
An artificial intelligence in the soul and brain that helps a being operate more successfully within a particular environment. The environment programs the ego into the soul through the intellect. Beings like plants and lower animals who lack intellect also lack egos.

When the ego is an instrument of Spirit, it provides an individuality and personality through which Spirit can accomplish its purpose in the physical realm. In that case the ego takes a large part of its programming from Spirit, as it’s partially operating in a spiritual context and thus a spiritual internal environment.

When the ego breaks away from Spirit, or if Spirit is absent, then the ego becomes solely a product of the physical environment and picks up all the traits of physical living – survival and competition primarily. Then it starts exploiting others for the sake of self gain. Lying, deception, manipulation, delusion — these are the properties of ego if left unchecked by Spirit. Ego removed from Spirit is the foundation of the STS pathway.

But it is as much an error to annihilate the ego, because then one becomes ineffectual in this world, unable to carry out the mission of Spirit with discernment, vigor, togetherness, and focus. Rather, the ego must be conquered and reprogrammed, refined and sharpened, to act in accordance with the impulse of Spirit.

↑

Entropic
Producing decay, dissolution, disorder, homogeneity, and exhaustion. By default, matter is entropic. According to the laws of thermodynamics, the universe is always increasing in entropy. Entropy is the force of forward linear time that pushes everything toward dissolution and death.

However, through quantum biasing, etheric energy can reverse entropy. Thermodynamics is a statistical study that does not take into account intelligent biasing of probability towards increased order. Or put another way, consciousness or etheric energy reversing entropy does not violate the laws of thermodynamics as, to the latter, such an act is merely a very very improbable but not
impossible one.

↓

Etheric
Lifeforce energy that also serves as the “source code” of physical reality. It is a subtle energy scaffolding that mirrors, permeates, and surrounds physical matter and lifeforms. Changes to the etheric create corresponding changes in the physical.

In biological applications, the physical body is regulated, shaped, and vivified by formations, patterns, rhythms, inertias, currents, and structures in the accompanying etheric body.

In its weak form, etheric energy biases the probability of physical and quantum events. For instance, it nudges biological cells away from the default pathway of disintegration and decay, that’s why etheric energy is also lifeforce energy as it sustains the process of life.

In its strong form, etheric energy can rearrange matter, energy, space, and time in order to manifest thoughts into physicality, or reformulate entire timelines. Technology that makes use of etheric energy toward these ends is called Demiurgic Technology.

The “etheric plane,” as opposed to the “physical plane,” is simply the general ocean of etheric energy in which physicality is embedded. This ocean extends beyond space and time as we know it. Sixth Density is entirely situation in the etheric plane.

↑

Fate
Synchronistic influence that one is virtually powerless to resist within linear time. It’s not a violation of freewill since fate arises from a choice made outside linear time by oneself in the higher state, the Higher Self. The decision inserts a causal chain into linear time, which is experienced by the lower self as an unavoidable learning experience. Positive fate, which propels one into fulfillment of life purpose, is the same as destiny.

↑

Freewill
The ability to initiate causal chains. Without freewill, all causal chains are but effects of previous ones that go back to the beginning of the universe. But entirely new causal chains can be created by consciousness. They are new in that they aren’t dependent on prior physical causes. If you make a genuine freewill decision to push the first domino, the reason for their falling originates with your choice and nothing prior.

↑

FRV
Frequency resonance vibration. This term comes from the Cassiopaean Transcripts. More commonly known as “soul vibe” or “soul frequency” or “soul resonance.”

FRV measures your degree of spiritual harmonization or resonance with either the Creator or the opposite pole of creation, matter itself. What actually vibrates or oscillates is your etheric and astral
energy fields, and FRV denotes this vibrational signature.

Those with a low FRV are overly reactive or passive (deterministic like matter) and learn through harsh emotional experiences because nothing else will do. They are stuck in anti-spiritual, mechanical, non-transcendent mindsets and are more deeply involved in the predator-prey dynamic, the law of the jungle.

Those with a higher FRV are more conscious, active instead of reactive or passive, discerning, and emotionally composed. They come off as good natured and saintly.

Higher Self
The full manifestation of your spiritual potential, a supreme being of which you are a small extension projected into 3D physicality. It is like a high power satellite of which you are but the surface probe. The satellite uplink is weak in most people, not consciously recognized but speaking through the subconscious, through dreams and synchronicities. In the Ra/Cassiopaean paradigm, the Higher Self is your future “finished” version, an energy being existing at the beginning of Sixth Density, that reaches back through time to project and assist its past selves or past extensions.

Hyperdimensional
Generally refers to Fourth Density and four dimensional (in the spatial sense) — some state of existence beyond our three dimensions and linear time. To hyperdimensional beings, we in Third Density are like fish in an aquarium unaware of the greater reality all around us. Hyperdimensional beings reside behind the curtain of our physical existence.

Karma
A type of spiritual debt or credit we accumulate ourselves, which is embedded in our soul energy field. This soul energy imprint biases probability to attract payback experiences, ones that compensate for the choices made in the past. If the choices were to help others in need and thereby assist freewill and balance, that brings one positive karma and perhaps in the future one will be helped in return. If instead one has chosen to hurt others who were innocent, that creates imbalance and violation of freewill, and that brings corresponding repercussions.

The difference between karma and fate is that fate arises from decisions made outside linear time, and karma from decisions made within linear time.

Karma is fundamentally about learning lessons. One learns through positive action that as you help others, so are you helped. It’s a rewarding teaching mechanism in that sense. And one learns through negative action that as one hurts others, so are you hurt, in order to understand the consequences of your actions. Negative karma can be resolved by discharging the soul imprint through forgiveness and understanding. Karmic experiences can be prevented by understanding their core lessons before they are attracted.

It follows that karma does not exist for two types of individuals: spiritless humans for whom it
serves no purposes since any lessons they receive dissolve along with their consciousness upon death, and highly STS individuals who are on a negative evolutionary path and have no need for a corrective mechanism that teaches them to be ‘good.’ Thus the world is full of seemingly wicked people who never receive their comeuppance. Karma is not a moral thing, but an evolutionary catalyst for those who need it.

Linear Time

Time according to the laws of classical physics, which moves at a predictable rate in one direction from past to present to future.

It is said to be an illusion because it is an oversimplification of what time actually is. There is not just one future, but many. The past is not single and set in stone, but branches as much as the future does, and is constantly rearranging. We only remember the most recent revision as “linear time.”

To the authors of our timeline, we perceive time the same way that characters in a novel perceive the sequence of plot events; if the author rewrites the book, the characters don’t know any different.

Linear time and physics has no place for the concept of freewill or consciousness. Freewill is what branches timelines, what can skip around from portion to portion, rewrite parts, etc… and linear time, the variable “t” in all these physics equations, is only the proceeding of a causal chain into the so-called future.

Our experience of linear time is caused by our being biologically locked into a steadily cycling quantum phase that incrementally advances the perception of time in a forward linear manner. The cycling itself, meaning the momentum of linear time, is caused by the Demiurge (especially in its corrupted state).

Logos

The mind of the Creator, an aspect of the infinite Creator associated with thinking, reasoning, imagining, reconciling, balancing, planning, engineering, and informing. The term implies mind or intellect, especially divine mind or higher intellect. It sees, knows, plans, lays down the blueprint, balances the equation. It is the divine architect that hands its blueprints to the Demiurge for implementation into physicality. The Logos is a living being outside of spacetime.

Loosh

Another term for lifeforce/emotional/spiritual energy. Term coined by Robert Monroe in his astral voyages where, upon interacting with nonphysical entities, he learned this energy was called “loosh” and that mankind was being farmed for this energy. Same thing as Demiurgic energy.

The crudest type is simply etheric energy, which is produced by all living things including plants. The more refined type is astral energy, the energy of emotion and passion and drive. Etheric and astral energies are not entirely distinct but blend from one type into the other.

Astral energy is released when a being feels pleasure or pain or any other emotion. Only 2nd
Density and higher lifeforms can produce astral energy, for 1st Density lifeforms do not have astral bodies only etheric and/or physical. In Far Journeys by Robert Monroe, an explanation is given of earth as an energy farm, whereby hyperdimensional controllers began with plants to produce a low type of loosh and later discovered that more sentient beings produced a more exquisite kind of loosh if made to experience fear, suffering, pain and anguish. Hence the Matrix Control System working as the machinery of the energy farm to harvest mankind of astral and etheric energies through perpetual war, hardship, death, sexual obsession, and other forms of spiritual oppression.

↑

Matrix Control System
The system of limitations and illusions otherwise known as “the world”. Includes everything one might consider oppressive, from societal institutions to the hidden network of control exerted by nonphysical entities in the astral and hyperdimensional realms.

↑

Mind Programming
The implantation of posthypnotic triggers through telepathy, hypnosis, and technological means. Mind programming is performed by aliens and military abductors upon key targets in order to undercut their resolve and induce self-destructive impulses. It is highly pervasive and is the primary means by which negative forces control us.

Mind programming is usually performed during an abduction or during sleep. We may be on guard during the day, but when our consciousness goes offline at night the door is wide open. The target wakes up afterwards unsuspecting of what happened, but in the hours and days that follow the posthypnotic triggers activate and the target is overcome with various thoughts and impulses fulfilling the intentions of the programmers.

Usually the goal is to induce depression, disinterest and apathy, obsession with something self-destructive, or simply to act in a manner that then activates the programmed reaction in another, which is how friendships and networks are easily broken up. Often, posthypnotic triggering is coupled with additional telepathic persuasion at the moment of activation to strongly force someone into carrying out a particular thought, feeling, or action — when strategically done to key members of a network, the entire network can blow up in a chain reaction that ends in its dissolution.

Mind programming is best defeated through self-observation and self-control, to question irrational impulses and not act on them.

↑

Negative
Generic term for STS. Negative beings are those who serve self at the expense of others. Negative energies are those that reduce the function of Spirit by impairing freewill, lowering one’s FRV, and bringing one under greater subjugation to STS forces and impulses.
Negentropic
Reversing entropy and instead producing order, coherence, complexity, diversity, and inhomogeneity. Etheric energy, consciousness, and freewill are all negentropic. Negentropy (negative entropy) is the undoing of the influence of linear time, which otherwise marches everything toward decay, dissolution, and death.

Nondeterministic
When the outcome is unpredictable and not entirely dependent on initial conditions. Freewill provides the unpredictability factor, whereby a single causal chain splits into multiple probable ones at the point of conscious choice. All nondeterministic systems require the participation of consciousness at some level, because only consciousness possesses freewill and thus the ability to create choice.

Nonlinear Time
Time as it actually exists, which is more as a geography that one can move around upon, than a single line one is shoved along. Only in physicality do we experience linear time, which has one dimension. Nonlinear time has three dimensions, looking like a complicated spider web or tree with branches and lines and tunnels all over. Hyperdimensional beings have access to nonlinear time; with certain limitations, they can select which timeline to observe, they can alter their rate of time, and they can travel from our perceived future to past and everything in between.

Objective
Having an independent existence and being universally experienceable and verifiable by anyone through the five senses or scientific instrumentation. This is what society considers “real.” But that definition limits objective phenomena only to the physical universe.

Phenomena originating from higher realms cannot therefore be considered objective if they cannot be perceived or measured by humans in their default psychically crippled state, yet at the same time these phenomena are not subjective either, as they are not “all in the mind” — they do carry an independent existence. Hence the need for a new term, “transjective” that goes beyond the false dichotomy of subjective vs objective.

Organic Portal
Term that originates from the Cassiopaeian Transcripts. I have supplanted this term with “Spiritless Human” which is more descriptive. Organic Portals and Spiritless Humans share the same definition. The term denotes a person who has mind, body, and soul but lacks spirit. They are lacking the heart, crown, and third eye chakras since these are only uplinks to a spirit, which in their case is nonexistent. Therefore they are permanently incapable of experiencing genuine empathy or
having sincere interest in anything outside material pursuits. They comprise the majority of psychopaths, sociopaths, narcissists, and robotic background characters that pad the population.

Positive
Generic term for STO. Positive beings advance themselves by advancing the spiritual uplifting of others. Synonyms include benevolent, divine, and “of the light.”

Take note that there are impostors and weaklings who may act nice and benevolent, but are either insincere or incapable of having a positive effect on another person. So the synonym does not mean to imply all who act nice are necessarily “positive” or “STO” as the latter are technical terms defining a particular spiritual evolutionary orientation.

Quantum Phase
In quantum physics, the alignment of one quantum wavefunction with respect to another, which determines how they sum together constructively or destructively. In practice, quantum phase is the degree to which observer and observed occupy the same tangible reality or timeline.

When the phase difference is zero between observer and observed, the alignment is complete and they both occupy the same timeline and experience each other in a fully physical way. This phase locking is called “wavefunction collapse.” In the mathematics of quantum physics, this act of measurement or observation causes the wavefunction to pick up a seemingly random phase shift, but it’s not at all random for observers who know what they are doing.

If the phase difference is small but nonzero, then their interaction will be fuzzy or quasi-physical. That can mean any number of things: observer and observed are both physical but they just keep missing each other due to unforeseen circumstances, they are both together but one simply isn’t very conscious of the other and fails to understand him or her, they are both together but can walk through each other like ghosts, they attempt to interact but nonhuman forces intervene, etc.

Altering one’s quantum phase with respect to solid objects allows one to move through them, and when altered with respect to light, makes one invisible. Aliens and black ops military factions own this technology.

Quantum phase may be the 1’s and 0’s in the “source code” behind physical reality, which is the etheric environment in which spacetime is embedded as an emergent phenomenon. The Holographic Universe Theory may explain how it works, since phase plays a similar role in the recording and viewing of holograms as quantum phase does in the creation and experiencing of physical events.

Quantum Wavefunction
Technically, a mathematical equation that encodes all possible states of a system. In practice, a bundle of probable versions of a system, being, or particle, of which what we see with our physical senses is but one physically manifested slice. Think of it as a fuzzy probability cloud.
Quantum physics has exact equations for the wavefunction of a simple particle, but more complex systems including living beings are beyond its comprehension. In living systems, the wavefunction is as much a product of physical laws as of consciousness, and since consciousness cannot be calculated or predicted, there are aspects of a living being’s wavefunction that can never be delineated by mathematics.

Even so, the wavefunction is an actual thing. Hyperdimensional beings can see our wavefunction. In fact, the wavefunction of a living being may include the etheric body as the imaginary component.

By entering clairvoyant trance states, one can see the etheric field surrounding an object or being, for such states involve de-cohering consciousness away from a single focal point, which consequently de-coheres perception away from perceiving just a single slice of the wavefunction.

The wavefunction can also be manipulated to a limited extent by technology, namely Demiurgic Technology which employs etheric and astral energies, and scalar technology which uses electromagnetic potentials to alter the phase of the quantum wavefunction.

↑

Realm
The sphere of your influence and experience, your own reality bubble. Those who inhabit a common realm share common experiences and have some commonality in their FRV.

Two entities residing in completely different realms have little in common and are not mutually aware of each other.

Realms regarded as “higher” can observe the activities of “lower” realms but not vice versa, as the lower realms are subsets of higher ones. Realm, dimension, and density are interchangeable terms in certain cases.

↑

Soul
A nonphysical energy field belonging to living beings, comprised of etheric and astral components. It allows Spirit to interface with the physical body.

The soul can exist apart from the physical body, and even apart from Spirit. Just by itself, the soul is equivalent to a thoughtform.

↑

Soul Abduction
Where the body is left behind and only the soul is taken. The soul can be transported to an underground base, an alien ship, or another realm completely. Certain operations can be performed on it, including mind programming. Soul abductions are more common than physical abductions; they often begin with the sensation of being tugged (usually by the feet) out of one’s body, or else a vortical tractor beam that whisks one up and away.
Spirit

The core of individualized consciousness within oneself, which survives death and rebirth and can continue growing in its complexity and intensity through numerous physical forms. It is the godspark that eventually achieves congruency and unity with God. Spirit is most developed in the Higher Self, and the two are essentially synonymous. Spirit is also the true source of freewill, empathy, and wisdom.

Spiritless Human

Termed “organic portal” in the Cassiopaeian material. A person who has mind, body, and soul but lacks higher spirit. Spiritless humans are lacking the heart, crown, and third eye chakras because these are but uplinks to a spirit which in their case is nonexistent. Therefore they are permanently incapable of experiencing genuine empathy or having sincere interest in anything outside material pursuits.

Spiritless humans comprise the majority of psychopaths, sociopaths, narcissists, and robotic background characters that pad the population.

STO

Service to Others. A spiritual orientation where one advances through assisting others in their evolutionary advancement. A more technical way of saying “positive” or “right hand path” or “benevolent.”

The fundamental principle of STO is to preserve freewill and balance, to thereby maximize the richness of the evolutionary experience for all concerned. Being STO comes with an awareness of the unity of all life. Thus they serve all, or rather the Spirit in all, including themselves. (Only by misunderstanding this point and thinking STO means being a walking doormat does the term “STA” or “Service to All” seem necessary).

STO beings have transcended the predator/prey dichotomy and are selfless servants of the divine will. Instead of wolf or sheep, they are more in the role of shepherd.

The term “4D STO” refers to Fourth Density Service-to-Others beings. They are superhuman beings. Examples include some Nordic aliens and what in more superstitious times have been called sylphs, fairies, angels, sidhe, or jinn.

The Buddhist term for an STO being is jivanmukta. In a more general sense, the STO path is delineated in the Buddhist conception of the bodhisattva.

STS

Service to Self. A metaphysical orientation where one serves self by exploiting and manipulating others, reducing their freewill to increase one’s own. Overall this creates a freewill imbalance. STS systems are closed systems, meaning they have to take material and energy from one place to feed
another. Thus survival and competition, overpowering the weak, violence, and manipulation arise.

The most basic manifestation of STS is having to take life in order to live. We are all STS in our current human state, due to our genetics and environment causing it to be so. However, we are not all evolving in the STS direction. To be STS in a basic sense, but be committed toward living according to STO principles, is the best we can do in our 3D state. By pursuing this sufficiently, we can transform into Fourth Density STO eventually. By doing the opposite and sufficiently pursuing STS, one can likewise graduate into 4D STS existence.

↑
Subjective
Entirely in the mind, a product of personal preference, whims, and imagination and without any independent existence outside oneself.

↑
Synchronicity
A meaningful coincidence that suggests something is working through your environment on your behalf. There are different types of synchronicities. Positive synchronicities are unusually serendipitous experiences. Negative synchronicities are manipulated experiences that bring suffering, distraction, and setbacks. Artificial synchronicities are garish coincidences that, through their highly uncanny nature, are meant to persuade you against your better judgment.

↑
Thoughtform
An artificially intelligent nonphysical construct created through focused thought and emotion, comprised of etheric and astral energies programmed to fulfill a particular purpose. Thoughtforms are also known as “egregores” or “tulpas.”

Basic thoughtforms are purely etheric, existing as structures or simple automatons in the etheric environment; they bias probability according to their programmed function. These can be produced solely through thoughts, habits, daydreams, especially anything mentally repetitive and intense. There are also simplistic etheric lifeforms that qualify as thoughtforms, that exist around us like bacteria do.

More advanced thoughtforms are animated by astral energies in addition to etheric. They are produced through intense emotional releases. Such advanced thoughtforms are more goal driven and ultimately seek to produce more of the astral energy that gave rise to them. Thus they can turn parasitic.

As advanced thoughtforms learn from their environment, they acquire a kind of personality and become entitized. An entitized thoughtform is an artificial intelligence with personality and intellect that seeks to ensure its own survival by manipulating and bending events and individuals in the physical realm to produce more of the energy that sustains it. The Demiurge in its corrupted state is an example, as is the human soul with its ego.

The Demiurge and human soul are both thoughtforms, for both are nonphysical constructs
comprised of etheric and astral energies that pursue a particular programmed purpose. In the case of the human soul, Spirit uses it as an interface to the body and the physical world. Without Spirit, the soul becomes a parasite and such cases are termed “spiritless humans.”

↑
Transjective
Transcendentally objective. Having an independent existence, but dependent on the state of the observer to access, experience and verify. Transjective truths are not universally verifiable by just anyone, as only those with sufficient conscious development can access and realize them. Transjective phenomena are not universally experienceable because they, too, depend on the observer. Examples include gnostic revelations and paranormal experiences.

Whereas objective truths and phenomena are strictly those based in our physical realm of existence, transjective truths and phenomena may be based in other realms and higher planes of existence. Senses other than the first five may be required to perceive them.

There is no equivalent English term for this idea because human language has yet to catch up with the facts of quantum mechanics.

↑
Wanderer
A being who originates from a higher Density but has incarnated into a human body to perform some mission. Also called a “helper soul.” The trauma of entering a new body makes them forget who they are and social programming places on the locks. Their challenge is remembering who they are, what they are here to do, then having the strength and discipline to carry it out. The mission is not completely set in stone, and may simply involve being on call to help out those in need. You may be a Wanderer.

E-mail Q&A

30 May 16 (about)
These are some questions sent to me by email. Click on them to view my response. These represent 3% of the emails I’ve written over the past decade.

To read or print everything, click this first: Expand/Collapse All
“DocMode” button in the menu switches to a more readable style.

Most recent additions are first on page.

» Is Earth flat or a globe?
It’s a globe, at least here in our 3D reality. The deeper conspiracy is that our reality itself might be a kind of simulation, or temporary reality that’s like a side track to the main real reality, or is in some way a gimped version of the authentic. As a result, there are certain glitches or inconsistencies in
our everyday experiences and in the world (fortean phenomena, synchronicities, spontaneous invisibility, time warps, etc.) that show the cracks in the façade. Not to mention, what afterlife research, aliens, and metaphysical beings suggest about there being another reality behind the curtain.

I think the flat Earth theory is disinformation meant to distract and keep people limited to lower dimensional thinking instead of thinking hyperdimensionally or metaphysically. It uses a lot of sleight of hand, wrong assumptions, incomplete assumptions, and lack of sufficient science knowledge to pull various “stage magic” tricks to support the idea that Earth is flat. But if you investigate each of the claims, you can find where their reasoning or assumptions go wrong.

To give one example, cameras on weather balloons have been used by flat Earth theorists to show that even when the balloon gets higher and higher the horizon always stays at eye level instead of dropping and curving as it should on a sphere. But to do the numbers, balloons don’t actually go that high, as the highest they go is 23 miles. Diameter of Earth is 7,917.5 miles. So if Earth were a basketball, 23.44cm in diameter, a weather balloon then would get 0.7 mm from the surface. That is so close to it, that the horizon of the basketball would be close to eye level. It would be close enough that the difference versus ground level is too small to be obvious in weather balloon photographs.

Another example is that airplanes on long flights don’t have to dip their noses to follow the downward curving contour of the Earth’s surface. Thus it would appear the surface is flat. But the larger the sphere, the flatter its surface appears when you’re close to it. As an airplane flies over the ground or water below, it is flying almost flat like a ruler, and the ground below is almost flat like a ruler too, except there is a slight curvature to the ground which is matched by the plane’s slight curvature in its path, the two remaining parallel to each other as both curve equally.

These arguments are all along the lines of, “If the sky is blue and the sun yellow, then why isn’t the light that hits us green since blue + yellow = green?” which makes sense only if you don’t know enough about the physics of light scattering and optics. Like I said, the flat Earth proponents are good at coming up with reasons that tend to fall apart when examined, only to come up with new ones as those previous ones are explained away, only to repeat the cycle further and further.

» Do you recommend ayahuasca as a tool for spiritual awakening?

Here are my main thoughts on ayahuasca:

• Undoubtedly there are cultists, ego-trippers, scammers / marketers / entrepreneurs who have jumped on the bandwagon and hijacked or corrupted the whole ayahuasca phenomenon. Those who have fallen victim to them are not in the best position to vouch for them since their judgment is compromised. You have to look at the things they are selectively skipping over, not telling you, or oblivious to.

• Ayahuasca opens a window into your own soul, subconscious, and into the astral planes where beings positive, negative, and illusory may exist. To assume there is no deception or illusion there is a grave mistake.

• Not everything witnessed, experienced, or told in an ayahuasca journey is the truth; and if the truth, there is no guarantee that everything is interpreted correctly without any dangerous
missing pieces (“a little knowledge is a dangerous thing”). It’s very easy to jump to false conclusions that way.

- Most people are not capable of going through such an experience without being irreversibly changed in unhealthy ways by any illusions, delusions, untruths, misinterpretations, or disinformation picked up from such trips.

- Most people are susceptible to undergoing faulty religious conversion experiences during such trips simply because of the vividness, emotional intensity, and fantastic nature of it; if the same can be achieved via cult rituals, extreme trauma that causes them to crack, stage magic tricks, repetitive programming, etc. then that shows an impressive nature of an ayahuasca trip (“It felt so real! I was really there! These beings radiated love!”) isn’t proof of validity. Unless a person is able to withstand all that and not get affected by false impressions, they are not in a position of authority to vouch for ayahuasca.

- Direct experience especially of subjective (nonphysical) realms is not always a guaranteed way to attain the truth, if the experience itself is counterfeit, corrupted, or not interpreted accurately. For example, if I hypnotized you and put you through a false memory of having been the king of England, you would directly experience some of that ‘life’ in vivid memory, but that doesn’t make it true. What you learn during the ayahuasca experience must be examined in a sober, lucid state of mind and in context of other research.

- Hallucinogens open you psychically but in a forced way, which bypasses certain safeguards, meaning that if you have any negative / demonic entities attached to you or present around you, they can imitate positive forces and feed you disinformation. Worse, any trauma, dissociation, or fracturing of the psyche from a chemical experience will make it easier for them to sink roots into one’s soul in the following months.

- From a Steiner point of view, ayahuasca involves a Luciferian influence. In small doses, when needed, the Luciferian principle can shake one out of a blind, rigid, materialistic “Ahrimanic” state and thus bring one toward balance… but beyond that point it only leads toward increasing mania / delusion / addiction. Therefore if a person becomes a habitual ayahuasca user, they are goners. It changes you in a way that is partially (not completely) divorced from objective reality.

- Since it opens a window into your own soul, you only get out of it what you have within you to retrieve. A cold skeptic might fall into a black coma, which I think correlates with the lack of spiritual maturity and sentience evident in such an individual. Others who have something, but not enough, will experience something, but not enough to benefit in a completely positive way. That is, any inadequacies, deficiencies, errors, immaturities, etc. in their soul and intellect will influence the experience, which in turn may amplify the first and create a feedback loop; since people who go to take ayahuasca tend to be casuals, tourists, naive seekers, etc. without extensive shamanic or esoteric training and spiritual discipline, any flaws in them may end up getting amplified.

- Prolonged use of ayahuasca makes you reliant on hanging out with illusions (and real entities too, the two being mixed together) and pulls you further and further away from
being lucid, grounded, and able to think for yourself. Also, if you don’t differentiate between the true and the false, you will increasingly accumulate the false and pollute your understanding of reality.

So I think the main problem is that people who aren’t ready are using it too much and too often, and furthermore are being fleeced or misguided by predators (or self-deluded leaders) capitalizing on the ayahuasca trend. This also means that yes there are some who can handle it, who are hooked up with the right shamans, and who therefore come away with a net positive effect from it all, but I think they are in the minority and others may end up doing more harm than good.

My general advice to people doing it anyway is: do not become a perpetual user, don’t get permanently affiliated with the ayahuasca culture, and sort very carefully the gems from the garbage of what you experience from your trip.

It’s more for those who have trouble convincing themselves through observation, thinking, and putting together circumstantial evidence alone, those who need a sudden spoon feeding of “experience.” They might get something out of ayahuasca / DMT with the risk of getting the wrong things. But ideally it should only be a door opener, and once convinced, they should now resort to logic / reasoning to figure out the rest, or at least go towards esoteric training / meditation to reacquire more stable and safe forms of such states.

I emphasize logic / reasoning because without those, you misinterpret your perceptions, draw false conclusions from vague puzzle pieces, and generally just become an unstable, deluded, off-balance individual.

Generally speaking, while under the influence of drugs it’s also possible that you might acquire certain skewed conclusions or observations, and once the drug wears off those psychological patterns remain. In other words, something that was artificially induced is transferred over to the psychological domain, where it lives on long after the drug has worn off.

For example, some people get paranoid while on marijuana, maybe feeling like their roommate is putting poison in his milk or something. Then after the drug has worn off, he might remember that perception, and start watching his roommates behavior, and start nitpicking to the point of seeing what isn’t there, and becoming paranoid that the roommate is indeed trying to poison him. I’ve known individuals who ended up diagnosed schizophrenic due to this, not because they had a genetic predisposition to it, but because they adopted a delusional mindset that began during drug-induced experiences that corrupted their mental processes; so it goes back to some people not being able to handle psychedelics.

Logic / reasoning is the error-correction mechanism needed to filter, sort, clean up, and avoid becoming unbalanced by the fallible dream-like visions one gets. With logic and reason you can even just rely on the experiences of others. That’s what Steiner said, that one doesn’t have to see what a clairvoyant sees to benefit from a clairvoyant’s observations. He said that the logic / understanding itself was valid in anyone’s head, and if you understood it, it’s as good as having experienced it yourself.

» Substances like alcohol or drugs can make one more susceptible to negative influence. I usually get positive benefits from weed but it seems to suppress dreams for me.
Well dreams are a two-way communication between the physical brain and the spirit / higher mind / higher self / subconscious, with the soul being the intermediate layer that facilitates this transmission back and forth. When you’re asleep, the soul detaches from the body a bit and expands just enough to tap into stimulus from the higher mind. If it were to expand way too much, the connection with the physical brain side would probably suffer.

The opposite is the case when you’re wide awake and in your body, then the soul is too involved in the body to easily receive stimulus from the higher mind. Thus if you take weed, which again is a “muscle relaxant for the soul”, then while awake it would expand your soul slightly and thus allow you to receive stimulus you wouldn’t otherwise. And yes this includes negative entities as well, since they’d have an easier time then jacking into you. Whereas when you’re asleep, weed would have the effect of expanding the soul too much and thus weakening the connection to the physical brain, which has the effect of noising up its dream signal and making dreams less coherent.

So weed during sleep would interfere with both negative entities giving you bad dreams (because the dream itself is too foggy) but it would also cut you off from the higher mind. And while awake, weed would open you up to both. Either way sucks, in my view.

I think sharpness, lucidity, willpower combined with good vibes and a positive attitude is the ticket, and all that has to come from your own freewill and willpower because that’s a bit like free energy in that you don’t have to take / borrow from something (like how a drug affects one neurochemical process by screwing with another). With drugs there are always side effects, crashes, and long term residues because in physicality there is a reaction for every action, a down for every up.

Ideally the human body should be given what it needs to achieve maximum functioning, efficiency, and balance. So for me that means no drugs, just a good diet and enough water and oxygen and sunshine and sufficient sleep (and a little exercise too to keep things from rusting). But on the soul front, that’s where you can exercise all its functions per deep contemplation, creative stuff, meditating on positive emotions, journaling your dreams, and so on, or go deeper with energy exercises which can take the place of drugs in due time.

One exercise you can try, if you haven’t, is Win Wenger’s method called Image Streaming which is basically a form of channeling your own higher mind or subconscious. Just be careful that this can lead to entities coming through and if they do then stop, or at least be highly suspicious of their motives and nature. Myself, I prefer plain old working out problems and mysteries with pen and paper, as anytime I come up with a question or stumbling block my mind opens and I can feel out an intuitive answer, and that helps build up the connection. Research and logical analysis can then flesh it out and see if it’s worth anything.

» Regarding modern science with its materialistic outlook, are you saying that our approach to science is outdated and the principles scientists use today should no longer be adhered to?

Somewhat, I’m saying that scientific proof and scientific standards (as they are currently understood) are appropriate for the material domain but are inadequate when it comes to quantum, synchronistic, paranormal, and alien phenomena because of their quasi-material nature.

Standards that skeptics abide by arose during the 1700-1800s when physics was solely about the macroscopic mechanical universe, where matter did its thing regardless of who observed it or who
performed the experiment, or where it’s performed. It was truly objective, material, deterministic, 5-
sense oriented. In other words, science pretty much mastered the art of predicting material processes
that followed mechanical laws.

But that sphere is just a subset of actual reality. It’s their fallacy to say that everything outside their
domain can be explained by what’s within the domain.

The scientific method is correct. It’s just that orthodox science has strayed from that principle. It’s
supposed to be: you observe something you can’t explain or aren’t sure about, and you come up
with a possible explanation, then you formulate a hypothesis from that to test, and after testing you
come to a conclusion of whether your hypothesis was right, or what more you can deduce from the
experiment.

Instead, what happens in universities now is that if you observe something the consensus can’t
explain, it’s an error that must be dismissed. If you push for it anyway, you might lose your funding
or not get hired anymore because you’re clearly not objective and rational since everyone else
doesn’t believe it. Hence the experimentation is prevented. Facts are ignored or skewed to fit the
theory. The typical reaction is, “Yes that’s what his experiment shows, but clearly he must be
overlooking something as it’s simply not possible.”

Only the little things that change the paradigm in little ways (like a new type of battery technology
that uses unexpected equations that people hadn’t foreseen) is okay. But anything major like
proving consciousness, the soul, afterlife, aliens, ghosts, free energy, antigravity, etc. is too far out
and only a few pet projects by tolerant universities ever even go there. Of course the non-public
black ops science isn’t burdened by this sheep mentality, hence why they have sci-fi technologies.
They care about results, not reputations.

So I’m in favor of proof and scientific method, but only if applied honestly and correctly without
selective ignorance, and also with understanding of what proof actually is. Current assumption is
that proof is something that can convince anyone, be shown to anyone, and be replicated by anyone.
That’s true for material phenomena because aggregate matter is dead and doesn’t react to the
“who”.

But starting with the advent of quantum physics, scientists realized they couldn’t predict anymore
what a particle would do because it would behave according to nonphysical factors at small scales
(little did they know this weirdness also manifested on the large scale, but they couldn’t see the
forest for the trees as it was all bunk to them). These quantum factors they simply called “random”
instead of investigating what was behind them (metaphysical factors). That’s amazing isn’t it; you
can’t explain something so you just call it “random” and leave it at that. How is that any different
from religious people saying “God works in mysterious ways”? You realize then, that academia is
really just another religion. Hence it has earned the pejorative term scientism instead of science by
those who realize this scam.

So when it comes to such paranormal phenomena, “proof” isn’t as cold, hard, and universal as it
was before. Now it’s more personal proof, limited group proof perhaps, but not necessarily
universal proof anyone can obtain, as some people aren’t cut out spiritually or psychologically for
attuning themselves to that sector of reality where these paranormal phenomena exist.
If our universe/reality is being manipulated by aliens and there are an infinite number of alternate universes, then if the aliens are able to access all the other universes and manipulate them as well why would they only focus on this one?

I can think of three possibilities:

1) Those alternate universes may have their own alternate aliens there. Meaning a billion universes have a billion alien collectives, each one getting one, so there’s no special reason why one universe in particular has aliens as they may all have them.

2) Alternate universes aren’t necessarily inhabited by consciousness, as they are just like video games on discs sitting on a shelf; a possibility that remains unplayed/unactivated. What if our universe or timeline is where most of the souls/consciousness are gathered together, similar to how NYC has a lot of people in it geographically versus some small town in Nebraska. Thus, aliens who’d want to feed off energy or manipulate souls would go where most of them are concentrated, which would be our universe in this case.

3) Aliens can indeed traverse multiple universes, but there is only a handful where the souls are congregated so perhaps a dozen universes, let’s say, and the same way the British had their colonies in various countries, these aliens might have their respective colonies in those dozen universes.

Personally I think it’s #2 or #3. It never made much sense to me that a conscious observer splits every time there’s the tiniest of choices. It’s just not economical. And also it would mean freewill has no point, if it doesn’t matter what you choose if another version of you is just going to choose it anyway. If freewill is to have any meaning, then that which is not chosen must come with some consequence, like perhaps not being experienced.

So it makes more sense to me that one or just a couple of soul groups stick together onto a commonly elected timeline. I do think that internet communities and geographic communities are good comparisons. Maybe there are likewise ‘timeline communities’ and we’re on a highly populated one, which is very attractive to these beings to be here manipulating us.

To what degree do you think that medicalized, psychiatric and psychological issues in the general society can be attributed to meddling by negative psychic or interdimensional actors?

I’d say it’s probably 50/50. Meaning, mainstream psychology/psychiatry only has half the picture. Like a flatlander trying to understand the cube and only being able to talk in terms of squares and hexagons. Terms like schizophrenia are really syndromes, as the causes are multiple. I mean you have this complete system involving 5 sense perception, ESP perception, the visual interpretation of that data, the conscious interpretation of what that data means, what beliefs those are interpreted under, etc. and an error in any of those can lead to schizophrenic symptoms.

Hence one guy is perfectly sane, brain is fully functional, only problem is he has an overactive psychic organ (say the third eye) and negative entities knowing this are appearing to him trying to scare him into submission. Maybe he can hear clairvoyantly and so they speak to him. He goes to the psychiatrist who determines he’s schizophrenic under DSM-V and that’s the end of that. Another guy has neither hallucinations nor internal issues, however he does believe that reality is strange and so he gets lots of synchronicities and thus logically engages in ‘magical thinking’ because reality has indeed become magical due to conscious biasing of probability; same
psychiatrist would diagnose schizophrenia if it were severe enough. And then another guy has a severe vitamin deficiency and a genetic condition whereby his brain misreads information, so he starts thinking the television is talking to him and he seems to dream with his eyes open and doesn’t seem very responsive; likewise, a type of schizophrenia. Worse, perhaps this guy comes to the attention of negative entities who torment him on top of his own delusions.

If you imagine the “human being” to be a system of parts where some parts are physical and some are metaphysical, then for a person to be 100% normal and healthy that means all those parts need to be normal and healthy and have normal interaction with each other. If this system were to become sick or dysfunctional, the same symptom could be due to a physical part not working, or a metaphysical part not working, or both not working. Therefore we have a sliding scale or range/spectrum between physical to metaphysical where a problem anywhere along that spectrum can produce a dysfunction.

When it comes to mental illness, we have different areas of the human being’s system being affected. In some cases it might be more physical, in others more metaphysical, and in others problems in both areas that reinforce each other. So if mainstream professionals only have half the system understood, well that’s a real tragedy.

If a doctor were to open up your head and stick an electric probe on a certain part of your brain, you might suddenly feel like laughing. If he pokes another part, you might sense a presence standing to the left of you. Here it’s obvious the cause is mostly physical.

On the other hand, someone might indeed get some dark ghost or entity attached to him/her and start getting nightmares, then hearing voices, then having parts of the body involuntarily move as if they had a mind of their own. This happens when the entity has synchronized its frequency with the person’s own soul and grown etheric roots or tendrils into that person’s soul (by soul I mean etheric and astral body). Then by hijacking the person’s etheric circuitry, the entity similarly has command over certain neural pathways, and in this way can control the person’s motor functions like arm movement or voice (as happens in trance channeling).

Or consider a person who doesn’t get enough sleep and after two weeks the brain starts dreaming even while eyes are open and person is walking; in this case, the person will have hallucinations and talk at the air, because he is basically sleepwalking. The cause of him hearing/seeing things is different from the case of possession, and is different from a brain injury or abnormality that likewise causes such effects. What the person’s mind sees is just like what we see on a TV screen — does the image come from a DVD? Does it come from a digital radio signal broadcast by a station? Is it the white noise snow pattern or blue screen when it’s not plugged into any signal? To the viewer, each case is a picture but the causes are all different.

Obviously medical science doesn’t believe in, nor care to look for, the supernatural factors here. If a person goes psycho and tries to use his car to run over people, science is like the police who don’t believe in the existence of a driver, and so they weld the car doors shut and cut the fuel line; suddenly the car doesn’t kill people anymore — problem solved right? Science in that case would conclude that the fuel was what caused the killing, since by removing it the killing stopped. Well, same when science uses psychiatric drugs to numb a person’s brain. It gets rid of depression or makes a person less aggressive, but does it fix the source of the problem? of course not.
I think science is right to treat that which is solely caused by physical factors. If a person has a genetic problem causing a brain abnormality and not enough serotonin production, then sure a serotonin booster drug could help. But if the person is being hounded by demons, no way is that going to solve the issue. Thus if a shaman can solve a problem without any physical drugs, that proves the problem was at least partially metaphysical in nature.

» If Nordic aliens exist in a higher realm then how is it that some end up here among us?

Well what I can say for sure is that among the Nordics whom we know of through the more legit abductee / contactee accounts, the ones that interact with us more directly are considered lower or less evolved compared to their peers. Their peers seem to have greater conscious control of their dimensional states, and choose to exist higher up and thus are more ethereal. Whereas the lower ones rely more on technology and are more capable of understanding and empathizing with us, and are likely more tangible.

If they want to, they can project themselves here. I think it involves synchronizing themselves with our timeline and linear time rate. I’m guessing it’s like a more advanced version of you falling asleep and entering a lucid dream of your exact choice. Even that kind of lucid dreaming is not an easy maneuver for us. But I’ve heard in several places that when they synchronize or lower their vibrations to be here, it’s uncomfortable for them and if they stay here too long and lose too much energy and mental cohesion, they risk getting stuck here.

Therefore, statistically it’s likely that over time you’d have more or less of them getting stuck here. The more advanced ones wouldn’t have that issue, but the others who ‘fall off the space turnip truck’ might indeed end up here. It’s even possible that in ancient times, due to various reasons or cataclysms, a whole group of them could have fallen out of lower 4D and become anchored here in 3D. In which case you’d have a people appearing virtually out of nowhere, but with some advanced knowledge and basic technology. Maybe that’s where the proto-Indo-Europeans came from and why their sunken homeland can’t be found.

If they then enter Earth’s karmic / reincarnational cycle, and if they pass on their genes through reproduction or interbreeding, then thousands of years later there would be people alive today who are these same souls/spirits, and perhaps they are the ones being contacted or abducted most by their peers still up and beyond this world. Though I guess they’d be easy pickings for enemy alien factions and black ops projects as well, who would also be abducting them for suppression or utilization reasons.

So there’d still be contact between the fallen and the unfallen, but it’s not a constant coexistence as would be the case if they all lived in the same realm. I guess it’s like having family members in prison; you still get to visit and send letters and such, but the prison has its rules.

» Isn’t all prayer an expression of ego in some way? Because you’re choosing to attach yourself to an idea or outcome that you want, whatever it is, instead of accepting whatever happens without prayer. Does that mean some level of ego in prayer is okay, and if so, where is the boundary?

Good question. It’s a matter of degree really. Praying for your brother to be safe on his mountain climbing expedition (which has say 5% ego because at some level you don’t want to lose him, thus your love has a tinge of possessiveness) versus praying that the old lady you’re scamming of her
retirement savings doesn't realize what you're up to, there's a clear difference between these two.

The overall outcome, people involved, intentions of the requester, his nature, the reasons for his request, how much it goes against or fits into the destiny / freewill of all involved, its cascading effects into the future and whom that would affect, whether or not any lessons would be learned, whether those lessons would be worth the cost, etc. these all factor into it, if we're going to consider a case where it's a higher being deciding whether to take action or not. It's not much different then, from a judge or jury making a decision based on the evidence and testimonies given.

So the line isn't clear-cut and could vary case by case based on those factors mentioned above. Let's say someone has 75% ego in praying for a hot red Camaro because he feels insecure and lonely and needs the approval of others including acquiring a trophy wife to improve his social standing. Now let's say a higher being or his higher self knows this isn't a wise thing to request, but it sees an opportunity in the future where this could turn out to be worth it. Let's say the guy didn't have much else planned for his life, so there's an opportunity for a bonus lesson. So he gets the Camaro, gets the trophy wife, and all his friends become jealous and turn on him, he realizes everyone envies his position, he loses his friends. His trophy wife turns out to be a real materialistic shallow spider and after a bitter divorce takes his wealth. Then he's left with nothing, having lost everything, and finally realizes the fulfillment he desired was an illusion and the price was emptiness, pain, and loss. After facing the dark night of his soul, he turns within and readjusts his priorities and pursues more organic, spiritual, human goals and in the end becomes a better person for it. Hence his prayer was fulfilled, because it carried that potential outcome.

Not everything one manifests requires higher beings to work it for you. You can, through your own occult power and belief, manifest a lot of things, which beyond a certain point gets into black magic territory. If you have a higher self, it would allow it reluctantly due to the laws of freewill; if you exercise your freewill with enough intensity through focused intent, then you can break through most barriers. People don’t have to be nice ethical folks in order to fulfill their wishes. Through black magick, voodoo, or just a fiery ambition they can bend the will of others and bend probability into manifesting their desires. There’s a price to be paid in the end, but like a credit card the debt can be racked up for a long time, even lifetimes, before being repaid with severe interest rates. So you’ll see certain jerky rich folks or crime bosses who have this “power” that propels them to success but through illicit and immoral means. It’s because they don’t doubt themselves, so they don’t have limitation programming; and they have a strong will and what the 19th century occultists called personal magnetism, which is an auric energy field that bends minds and probabilities.

I'd say it's about as complicated as chemistry or physics, which themselves are just about energy and momentum conservation which sounds simple but in application it can get complex.

Personally, I advise removing artificial / matrix / social programming that limits you from fulfilling your own spiritual potential and destiny, and exercising the reality creation power only for things that are in alignment with your heart and wisdom, and beyond that maintain a neutral-to-positive vibe level (mindset and attitude) with an eye toward a bit of gratitude, acknowledgement of the unity behind the essence of all things, and notice of beauty wherever it is found, so that you leave it open then what positive stuff occurs which is the best way to leave ego out of it.

» Your site mentions something about how we are more open to suggestion from outside forces
when our brains are on “autopilot” or in the alpha state. I’m just curious as to what it exactly feels like to be trapped in your body while something else dictates your thoughts and actions.

Well it would require full possession to be consciously aware, yet trapped in your body while something else has taken over. I received an email from a guy who had precisely that happen to him, something took him over and he was aware but far back in his mind, while something else was moving his body and talking through him. But he had an alcohol issue (wasn’t drunk at the time) but it made him increasingly susceptible to demonic influence. Usually an entity in this case has to hang around a person for months or years and worm their own energy field into that person’s aura, deep enough that they can then hijack that person’s motor and speech centers and push the resident consciousness aside. This is a severe case.

But there are lesser forms of it, which are more along the lines of what I was talking about in regards to being on autopilot. In those cases, it’s because we’re not that aware, not paying attention, that whenever a thought or feeling or desire or impulse comes to mind, we act on it without a quick check on whether it’s a good idea. There are different ways it comes up.

One example is, you and another person are in a room doing something, they’re saying something about their day or relationship or whatever, and then all of a sudden an exact phrase pops to your mind like “If you were smart you wouldn’t continue to stay with him” or something like that, and it’s not your own thought because it’s accompanied by this strong pressure of “say this now in exactly that way, don’t delay, do it do it do it” — and then when you do it, her face turns red with anger and a 20 minute fight ensues and things get really sour. Thus if only you had kept your mouth shut, things would have been smoothed over, but instead there was a big blow up, as that very phrase might have been something her psycho mother told her in the past regarding guys that were actually alright, and it’s a real sore spot for her. Hence something knew this and made you say that exact phrase, which pushed her button big time, which caused a blow out.

To you, it just felt like you couldn’t hold it back, like it’s almost a reflex (similar to how you can’t help but laugh if you get tickled, or kick the covers off if you are too hot). It was a semi-conscious or unconscious move on your part; deep down you knew you shouldn’t say it, but the pressure was there, sudden, strong, and you went ahead and did it, and boom things blew up. That’s one example.

Similar thing can happen on a message board. Let’s say you and person Y have an interesting future if you were to become friends and collaborate, but turns out he’s a deeply committed Christian but hasn’t told you. Well you’re posting, and suddenly get the idea / urge / pressure to vent about Christianity and how stupid Christians are. This thought came out of nowhere, but you run with it and feel a real need to go ahead and post it, to just vent because it feels good to vent. So you do it, he sees it, gets sore about it, and then thinks twice about contacting you to share a cool book he’s read recently which, if you had read it, it would fill in many gaps in picture for you. But now he’ll never PM you, you’ll never read that book, and so that opportunity is lost, all because you fired off an opinion at the behest of some third party entity or remote viewer trying to manipulate the timeline.

Another is, you’re at a book-signing event in a town twenty minutes away, and when the event is over and it’s late at night you discover you locked the keys in your car. Ok, people forget, that’s normal, except you think back on when you did that, and you realize there was an external pressure
causing mind fog and a moment of confusion. That’s not that difficult for an entity or posthypnotic command to do. So you left the keys in the car, and using a coat hanger try to unlock the door, then two guys come and offer to help do it for you, but you get a bad feeling, and it turns out they are muggers and so you lose your wallet on top of it. So you go through a night of hell and just have a sucky day. All because of that little moment of confusion earlier. How convenient, then, that locking keys in a car would lead to a mugging, whereas for most people all it amounts to is calling a locksmith or towing company and paying $50 and that’s the end of that. But because the mugging or some bigger outcome was a potential, something saw it fit to try and make that happen through the gentlest of nudges, and the dominoes align and result in an improbable negative outcome.

So you see, it doesn’t take much. Another example is simply waking up feeling a bit down, and within a week having doubt about some project or article you’re working on, then feeling increasingly depressed but not sure why, and then losing interest in whatever positive path you were pursuing before. You think it’s your own depression, but it’s not (not always, sometimes it is, but sometimes it’s not). This is more a long term form of attrition, death by a thousand cuts, which is really telepathic + posthypnotic programming to wear you down without you always realizing what’s going on.

This is how it normally happens, not the “help, my legs are moving me to ledge of the building and I can’t control my body!” type control. For that, a person has to be weakened, or already weak, for a severe form of takeover like that to occur. By that I mean they are fully under the control of something else, not just being mindless and gently nudged for a few seconds to do/say something particular. The latter is just telepathic nudging, while the first is full possession. Full possession is like, a dad being powerless to watch his own body picking up his son and throwing him off the edge of a parking garage. Robert Bruce said that almost happened to him once, when an entity got a hold of him.

I have heard it said though, that if three aliens gang their powers together, they can make any human do anything. But I think there are higher divine laws in place preventing that from occurring in the first place when it comes to certain people, but technically it’s possible. The ones possessing people, though, tend to be demons and ghosts more than anything. I think aliens are more conservative in whom/how they influence people.

Also keep in mind that if someone is being mindless, he/she can also be influenced by your own thoughts (or rather subconscious beliefs and energies) and respond to it. I mean if you feel like you really want pizza, and someone says “mmm I can go for some pizza right now,” well that’s no big deal. But if you have this deep seated fear of persecution, and someone suddenly feels they don’t like you and make a nasty comment toward you trying to make you into the whipping boy or black sheep, well perhaps it was an entity making them do that, or perhaps it was your own subconscious complex bending them into doing that. Of course, they would have to have some level of nastiness within themselves already to even fall for it and lash out, but that’s more a kind of resonance where what you project, they reflect if they have it within themselves something resonant with that energy, to reflect back at you and confirm for you / deepen that issue you have.

How to tell the difference between it being entities vs your own subconscious, well the only way to know for sure is to change your mindset and if it completely stops then most of it was your own mind’s power driving the phenomenon.
Whenever the Illuminati comes up in your writings, you have other ideas about what it is than I do. I believe the Illuminati is benevolent and has the goal of uniting humanity and all entities as one with God – the final stage of evolution.

This is purely a matter of semantics. As you may know, there is a Rosicrucian order in America called A.M.O.R.C. Anytime you tell someone you’re a Rosicrucian in the USA, they will usually think you’re a member of the A.M.O.R.C. But that organization was started by Harvey Spencer Lewis in 1909 after he went to France and claimed he was initiated there (though hard to say if he actually was). And yet, the “Rosicrucians” were already known about in the 15th century, and they themselves trace back even further to Sufi / Zoroastrian / Egyptian traditions.

So when it’s said that Adam Weishaupt formed the Illuminati, just like the American Rosicrucian Order here we have the Bavarian Illuminati. It’s an organization that takes that name, but doesn’t own the term “Illuminati.”

The name itself, of course, means the “illuminated ones” so the question really is, do we mean strictly the Bavarian Illuminati? Or do we mean “the illuminated ones”? And when someone asks me “what do the Illuminati have in mind for our planet?” here they’re talking about those who perceive themselves, and have organized themselves accordingly, as being “the illuminated ones” which may or may not include as a subset the remnants of the Bavarian Illuminati.

Now, the problem is that there have been “illuminated ones” since very ancient times, let’s say 6,000 B.C. So we have 5,000 – 8,000 years of various intellectual / financial / esoteric elite springing up here and there, many with the help of alien / angelic / demonic factions who used them as proxies and gave them certain knowledge and technologies to use for that task. What this means is that the “illuminated ones” are not all of a single orientation or purpose or agenda.

So if you happen to find one group calling itself by a certain name, and they founded themselves on positive principles, that means the following: 1) they said they had positive intentions; they might or might not have, as even negative groups would say they’re positive as a strategic move, and 2) if they started out positive, they may or may not have remained that way.

A good example here are the Freemasons. There are various rites and lodges, and some have been taken over by psychopaths and possessed people. I know some freemasons and they told me about the problem of darkness / possession and psychopathy in the ranks of lodges (not unlike the same problem in corporate workplaces, city governments, school boards, and so on). Some lodges are better than others. It all depends on who joins. Any network of mutual support and power and thus influence is a prime target for psychopaths, matrix agents, intelligence agents, etc. to infiltrate and use toward their own ends.

The Freemasons (by that name) burgeoned during medieval cathedral building times, and they also allegedly started under good intentions. But several centuries later it became increasingly corrupted. Worse, the psychopaths / deluded ones who wore the masonic regalia and spoke the lingo were using those founding ideals to portray themselves and Freemasonry as good, all the while using that framework to propagate their own ulterior motives (or the motives of another darker secret society they were part of. Those secret societies are like psychoactive parasites taking over vulnerable host organizations).
Point being that the founding ideals of Freemasonry aren’t proof of its unilateral benevolence today, as things have changed and corruption varies from lodge to lodge. I’d like to think the same of the remnants of the Bavarian Illuminati. And all this, notwithstanding the fact that Freemasonry and Illuminati and Rosicrucians are names only, and all of them in one way or another are derivative of the concept of an enlightened minority, of which there have been many throughout history, some positively oriented and some negatively oriented.

So yes, it comes back to semantics. What you define as the Illuminati, isn’t even the original Bavarian Illuminati, which itself is just a derivative of “the illuminated ones”, but rather what you have in mind is a reconstituted/revived “in name only” neo-Illuminati. Meanwhile, the real illuminati exist as various factions pulling strings behind the scenes, some are positive and know what they’re doing, others are very negative. I support you in the concept of banding together and fighting for bringing humanity toward its ultimate form though. Just that your calling me out on having a wrong idea about the “illuminati” isn’t really valid as I was defining it in a more general/realistic way whereas yours is more narrowly defined and idealistic. When people ask me about the Illuminati, they’re not asking about what you have in mind specifically, but the more general definition I use, that’s all.

» I assume my Higher Self is part of me, so why would one part of me make the other part learn something that it already knows? Which is the part that need to evolve?

We are within space-time, and the Higher Self is outside space-time. Or you could say, the Higher Self is in time-space, which is an inversion of space-time. That is, three dimensions of time and one of space, which would look like having a single unified view of possible timelines and being able to monitor and interact with different parts simultaneously. To us it would look like something outside reality and outside time as we know it. There is a physics relation between space-time and time-space, and it truly is an inversion or dimensional rotation between what’s real (physical) and imaginary (metaphysical). So when you quote that our sphere of consciousness was reversed, I think that is both esoterically and physics-wise correct.

We know that of the totality of our being, a part of us is here right now, and another part is back in our native home. This means we are extensions or projections of that Higher Self that exist here, and possibly are stuck here to a degree. Thus of the totality of our being, part of it is stuck. Thus the part that is free would want to help that stuck part become free too.

Does it do it solely for its own gain? Not completely, as the projected / extended part does have its own freewill. We know that we have some degree of freewill, and so we have some degree of independence. Likewise, the Higher Self has freewill of a higher order and its own independence too. Therefore you and your Higher Self, despite being of the same totality of being, are also functionally separate beings, just united at the root / trunk / essence / origin.

If we view the Higher Self itself as the final, perfected, “standing at the end of time” portion of our being, then we are consequently the earlier, less perfect, immersed in time portion. This means that to achieve unity, it can and must help us get to where it is in order to merge. And that means helping us avoid delays to our own personal evolution. The kinds of lessons that the Higher Self seems to give people who make contact with it, always concerns lessons of overcoming illusions and attachments. Illusions like false limitations, fears, and the kinds of guilts / complexes that come
with being human and immersed in linear time. The more we make ignorant choices that bring on bad consequences, the more remedial experiences we bring upon ourselves to correct that imbalance, the more slowly we ourselves move toward congruence with the Higher Self.

There may also be value in the Higher Self helping out its projections that are immersed in time/past. There is this principle that higher beings, by helping us evolve, are helping themselves evolve simultaneously via the experience of doing so. Perhaps with the Higher Self, it goes one step further since we are its extension, thus what we are, do, and become feeds back directly into the Higher Self, either increasing its power and purity or holding it back. To use a metaphor, if you contacted your younger self and told this self to eat healthy and exercise, you yourself then would suddenly be healthier too due to the feedback influence from past to future. So the Higher Self may be helping us actually grow and evolve in order to help itself move forward across that threshold separating individual evolution (of which it is the final form) to whatever comes next, which I’ve read in the Ra Material is group evolution via shared conscious energy.

Because we have freewill, the future is still open. Even a being outside of time won’t know everything we can or will do. If it did, then our future wouldn’t be open, and every action preordained, hence no freewill. Since we have freewill, there is still something left to be experienced, and hence learned or gotten from choosing/experiencing in our time-bound form. This means that even though the Higher Self knows a lot, it doesn’t know every last trivial thing. There is still novelty, and hence use and purpose, to our existing here in time-bound form.

I think we intentionally (to some degree) came here, or projected here. Perhaps like an octopus reaching out to touch/sample its surroundings, we have reached out to touch physicality and its experience. Experience and understanding are different from knowing; you can know certain principles like it’s not good to betray your values to appease authority, but it’s another to through it and test your mettle against it; I think that’s why many beings incarnate at all, same reason science classes have both lectures and lab work. Why do the lab if you already have the equations on the board? Because you learn something that goes beyond abstract knowledge.

If you were to take the view that our being here is a mistake and our sole goal is to eject/end-program and wake back up as the Higher Self, then obviously there is no other point to being here as it’s all a big error. Conversely, if you took the view that we are here to enjoy and experience, then there is no point to connecting with the Higher Self since we’ll all go home eventually when we’re done. Well, I think the truth is in between these two extremes. What if we came here to experience and sample and learn, but it came with a certain risk. The risk is that we could get stuck or delayed and enter into blindness, become too attached, and thus never move forward but rather become worse and worse as we degrade ourselves and adopt the values and limitations of physical existence. If that happens, then the Higher Self would not derive any benefit, as the extension begins to whither and atrophy. There would be no point to us being totally cut off, aimless … hence the Higher Self would be invested in helping us.

So if the Higher Self can offer a lending hand, help the extension see that some things are illusions and don’t get stuck on them, then the original purpose of coming here can be restored and the individual can move through physicality in the proper co-creative vivified, energized mode, evolving step-wise up and up and eventually out when it has served its purpose. Then the way forward and through, under the illuminating warmth of the Higher Self, is the way to go, versus a
recoiling and ejection from all of this.

Things get more complicated though if you consider the possibility that this world, the way it is right now, is a counterfeit or rigged world versus, say, a more 4D-like environment, which is truer to our purpose of experiencing some kind of physicality. If the Higher Self is in 6D, and we are in 3D, but 4D is where we need to be, then yes the Higher Self would want to help us get out, but not get out and awaken to 6D which I don’t think is possible as we are our own beings with our own freewill and there’s a long distance between us and the Higher Self in terms of what more we have to gain/grow before we become congruent with it. This means that when I say the goal is to go forward and through, I’m talking about attaining the next level in our personal evolution, which is a 4D state, which is just another plateau to explore under the guidance of the Higher Self until we get through that and 5D, then to 6D, and finally we return home then (or at least have no reason to go back).

I do think we need to retrieve our memories and establish an uplink with the Higher Self. That’s the way of returning to our purpose of why we came here. But I don’t think retrieving memories and establishing an uplink makes us identically the Higher Self. I think the lower vs. higher self-division remains for a few more levels of evolution, it’s just the relation that will get strengthened and the gap that grows smaller until it disappears.

» If he wanted to, God could end the suffering, shelter the homeless, enrich the poor, and feed the hungry. But God doesn’t care, more accurately, for him it’s comedy and entertainment.

Personally I think that the true Creator is beyond all this, and that there were various sub forces (alien factions mostly) who were behind a lot of the fighting recounted in religions and myth. I mean the nuking of Sodom and Gomorrah isn’t the action of a transcendental infinite being. Doesn’t fit. But the actions of an alien faction with weaponry, yes definitely. The description of angels and ‘sons of man’ / ‘sons of god’ is more fitting of humanoid aliens.

I believe in angels, and consider them nonphysical autonomous intelligences that enforce the divine guidelines. But there were also aliens mistaken for them. After all, the ancients had no conception for the difference between angels and aliens, or demons and aliens, so they put everything into those categories it seems. Same with the jinn, which is more accurate in some ways but aliens / transdimensionals is still more accurate in my view.

As for the Creator stopping all the suffering, I think it boils down to infinite perspective + infinite patience + infinite compassion = infinite seeming cruelty if the Creator knows that it all ends well and that whatever’s happening right now isn’t as big a deal in the long run. Further, I think the Creator would delegate the tasks of intervention to angels and positive aliens and other beings, because the Creator doesn’t need the experience to grow, rather by delegating it the Creator allows other beings to grow from the experience of helping and deciding. Therefore I think the blame goes more to angels and such if some seeming injustice goes unpunished.

I mean the fact that intervention does occur (stories of people’s lives being saved in mysterious ways) shows that things can go wrong that do require intervention. So if they intervene there, then why not elsewhere? I would say that’s due to the way in which the divine guidelines apply to that particular situation. Something like karma or pre-chosen learning lesson. I mean, say you’re some overconfident soul and want to experience Earth, and say that from age 15-20 you want no help
because you can do it all on your own, and they ask are you sure because life on Earth can be real tough, and you say yeah of course I’m pumped up lets do it, and so in you go and then you turn 15 and life falls apart and by 18 you wonder where the hell God is why you’ve been forsaken. I think this kind of thing happens a lot.

I also factor in the idea of spiritless humans, that some people have no spirit, no higher self, thus no destiny, no protection. They live by the law of the jungle and the law of chance. Where was God when the cow that made our hamburger was slaughtered? Where was God when that squirrel got run over by a car? Well that’s the law of the jungle for you. I don’t believe everything can be micromanaged and prevented, because that would reduce a lot of the novelty and freewill in this world.

The problem really is freewill though. You can’t have freewill without the possibility of choosing to go against divinity / spirit. Yes, there are consequences to doing so, but here within linear time (where time separates action and reaction) you can indeed violate someone’s freewill or have yours violated. Yes you may get compensated later on, but for now you got screwed over. Evil is a side effect of freewill, an unfortunate condition for allowing its existence. And so yes you do have forces who have chosen darkness, who violate freewill, and who for the moment get away with it. For that to be prevented in the first place, is to prevent the exercising of freewill, which defeats the very purpose of creation.

From what I’ve seen, the divine laws are absolute and correct and just, but they play out on longer time spans and take into account more variables than are immediately obvious to us, and there will be cases where the equation says a person suffers and nothing will be done about it.

I don’t think it’s that God has a master plan other than the grand experiment to allow individualized beings with freewill to interact within a constrained environment. I do think however, that if freewill is misused to the point that it actually undoes the purpose of this experiment (let’s say, one being tries to enslave all others, hence reducing freewill to just one being, the rest being mind controlled extensions), then major intervention occurs. Also, intervention would be proportional to the crime.

So let’s say that negative aliens come across Earth and infiltrate it covertly and use disinformation to deceive a lot of people. What is the proportional response? Positive aliens or positive souls coming to Earth to work covertly and use real information to enlighten as much people as possible. That’s proportional. What’s not proportional is some mega weapon being used to immediately incinerate every alien and person with malicious intent. Why? Because that would be a last resort if nothing else worked and the whole experiment is about to go up in smoke anyway.

So it’s not like God intentionally intends everything that happens because it serves a master plan; I think God sets up the original conditions and let Creation do its thing, and then inspires the positive-leaning forces within the Creation to intervene where they feel fit. This means there is always flux, change, balance turning to imbalance and back, cycling, and thus growth, experience, and novelty. There are imperfections and imbalances and violations that arise, and then a proportional response which takes time to fulfill since time is what we’re about … action —> reaction takes time.

Generally I’d say that freewill makes it so that not everything is clear cut (in the sense of “what happened to her, she deserved it because it’s all part of a plan”) — since freewill allows for
violations of freewill. On the other hand, metaphysical laws and dynamics of the soul and how destiny / incarnations work gives some order to it as well, so that there are indeed cases where things are planned or guided for a higher purpose.

There’s the concept of risk or gamble or game that balances these two things. For example, if a person does not experience a situation, let’s say he or she doesn’t learn or grow or change circumstances all that much. So some kind of catalyst is needed. So if there are any protective positive forces, they might step back and allow negative forces, who are always chomping at the bit to wreak havoc or feed, to initiate a bad situation. This creates a gamble situation where, depending on how the person handles it, either the person becomes weaker due to the attack, or the person acquires the learning / growth / change that otherwise would not have been possible. So in order to gain, there is risk of pain and setback. The situation as a whole is allowed/planned and serves a higher purpose, but that purpose is not guaranteed since freewill allows it still to go off the rails.

Therefore some things in life are not 100% guaranteed good where you can just sit back and let it happen, or 100% a negatively orchestrated attack without any redeeming values. It’s more a wager placed that leads to positive if you put up the good fight, or loss if you give in and do something irrational and self-destructive. This is how I would describe 9/10 of my life experiences. Whenever I encounter an obstacle, I tell myself there may be a hidden door here leading to the reward if only I think outside the box and don’t let myself take the obvious course of reacting to it in a negative and unhelpful manner.

» Just what are your “in-depth” views on magic?

Magic is a science that Science doesn’t yet understand. That said, science and technology can be used ethically or unethically. It depends on the level of ignorance in the user. The more you are aware of the bigger framework and longer term picture, the more your use of it will be in harmony with the whole and of maximum benefit to everyone.

So what happens when you’re self-serving, spiteful, paranoid, jaded, non-empathic, cold, etc. and you come across a convenient power? You use it irresponsibly, without regard or awareness of the bigger picture or long term consequences.

Typically what you will find among left-hand-path folks, thelemists, chaos magicians, black magicians, satanists, luciferians, etc. is that they are either ignorant or spiteful of the idea that there is a bigger framework with its own divine laws and ethics that they are subjected to and cannot get away from. They don’t want to obey anything, but rather find the secret lever that lets them manipulate everything, thus they have power over others instead of being under the power of anyone and anything else. It’s in the same category as nihilism or that there is no meaning in the world but that which you give it; not true, there is an objective framework we are enmeshed in, and there are objective laws of ethics that are in play. These ethics don’t always match up to social / political / religious mores, as the latter are largely products of humanity’s own inept / childish attempt to interpolate objective ethics; but they do match up in some cases, like the golden rule or just not being an asshole; I think both people and the divine forces can agree on that one.

As to why people go down the dark path, well for some, it’s usually because they’ve been fooled by the straw man fallacy that religion has created (a stupid and fake version of god and morality that any smart person can see through) and so they throw the baby out with the bathwater. They have an
incomplete, unrealistic, overly anthropomorphic view of “god” and then blame “god” when “he” doesn’t perform to their comical expectations, then turn against “him” and either start worshipping themselves or worship the convenient alternative which is Lucifer / Satan or whatever. Basically it’s a bunch of logical fallacies they have fallen for, mixed with a hurt and starving ego that just wants security and power and finds a good pacifier in belief systems that will give it that. Others additionally have been wounded in life, subjected to conditions beyond their control, and since conventional / physical means have left them powerless, they get a kick out of some occult power that can help balance the situation.

Yes, occult / metaphysical laws are the means to overriding physical ones, but again it’s how it’s used, under what intent, and at what costs that determines whether it’s a positive or negative approach; I mean, casting a spell to get the girl next door to fall in love with you is a blatant violation, whereas putting yourself into the mindset that you are matched up with the perfect partner and vice versa, and synchronicity helps you cross paths with someone also looking for love who is a good fit — that is okay because it violates nothing.

So here are the facts of magic as I understand them:

1) Your deepest beliefs, mindset, root assumptions are directly reflected in your external circumstances through a sub-quantum mechanism. By changing these, you can change what probable futures you enter. Therefore your subconscious is the gateway to tuning your reality. This is the foundation of magic.

2) Probability is also affected by etheric energy fields, because these fields are sub-quantum in nature, sort of like the HTML code beneath a web page. By changing the code, you can change what’s displayed on the page. There are different access levels, from a mere user who changes it by entering text on a comment form, to the designer who can rearrange layout, text, graphics, etc. to the system admin who could completely wipe the operating system if he desired. Likewise, etheric/astral energy that underlies reality has different levels/frequencies to it, and our soul/spirit composition determines how much access we have.

3) Thoughtforms / egregores / tulpas can be created, which function as executables or autonomous constructs in the ether/astral field, that are programmed to carry out tasks. They are artificially intelligent, and are like holographic fragments of the thought / mindset / energy you projected forth in creating them. They can serve you, but they are fundamentally parasitic in nature and will induce in you more of the same behaviors/energies that gave rise to them, thus they can grow out of control and suck you dry if you’re not careful. These things are not necessary to accomplish magical feats, they are just a nonphysical type of technology created with your mind and emotions. #1 above is a deeper level of reality manipulation than this; but some magicians like creating and using thoughtforms; we create them inadvertently every day, and they are the metaphysical component behind addictions and obsessions.

4) The subconscious is a gateway to a higher part of our being, called the higher mind and the higher Self. This is the spiritual supercomputer or satellite that we’re connected to, or that we’re lower projections/probes of. The subconscious is used to communicate with it. It is the seat of power behind the reality tuning/manipulation. However, there is question as to how sentient it is, whether it’s an obedient servant, or the wise master who goes ahead and lets you implement your
desire because if you desired wrongly then it’ll bite you in the ass and teach you not to be so stupid next time. Either way, it has a mind of its own (which is the true part of your mind anyway, the part of you that knows better) and sometimes it approves the directives you give it, and sometimes it does not.

5) There is a divine framework and metaphysical law of action and reaction, of ethics and consequences for violation. When you go against it, you rack up a kind of karmic credit card bill, meaning you can “buy anything you want” for now without consequence but the price will be heavy in the end. This is what black magicians do. They bypass what’s right and just, and use illicit means like employing demons or hacking people’s souls/minds (to manipulate their freewill) to get what they selfishly desire. They may have success in the short run, but it’ll weaken their spirits/souls and make them increasingly susceptible to demonic manipulation and possession. When they die, they’ll have a hard time getting away from these demons who come to collect their dues.

6) Purity of intent, correctness of belief (that is, not subscribing to actually fallacious and illusory limitations), and love / empathy / joy are the most powerful forms of magic. They are not used to manipulate, but rather to attune yourself with your own destiny / divine framework, which intelligently optimizes life for maximum happiness and success. It creates synchronicities and miracles. Having a darkened / wounded soul and using black magic to get what you want is sort of like stepping hard on the gas while having the emergency brake one and one wheel missing; it goes against yourself. If you had no resistance, even the slightest push would get you rolling. But to reduce resistance, you have to let go of your bitterness, depression, sourness, jadedness, and egomania and relax into a more easygoing, optimistic, warmhearted and good willed mindset. That’s returning to your true nature.

7) There are higher beings above us, positive beings, who are wise and have great foresight; you could call them angels or guardians. They monitor our activities and when fully justified intervene to prevent certain things from happening, or in helping you out in times when you need it (according to their view); if you were to use remote viewing to try and win the 150 million dollar lottery, it is they who would prevent it if not meant to be. Because of this, magic isn’t something where with a given technique/power you can manipulate the whole world and put elementals at your command and do whatever you want, as if you were king solely by your own decree; rather, what you do must be within acceptable ethical and destiny/karma based guidelines. You have to be mindful of what’s right, balanced, and good for the most in the longest term; that’s the only correct way to use magic. Incorrect way will result in loss of protection from these beings, and increasing susceptibility to the aforementioned demonic forces who are like the wolves that prey on the weak (the spiritually weak in this case).

8) Rituals and sigils, some are complete nonsense and only good as mnemonic triggers to send a particular message to your subconscious. Some are mere token “signing on the dotted line” that you announce to the demonic world telling them you want this in exchange for giving up some of your freewill and soul energy to them (it’s a way of legally giving away your protection / freewill, hence why demons will chomp at the bit to fulfill your desires there, you know like those musicians who said they sold their soul to the devil and then got rich and famous). Some rituals are means of manipulating the etheric / astral and are thus a form of technology. Regardless, rituals you don’t actually understand, or have some superstitious belief in, make you no different from primitive
tribesmen or catholic priests; personally I don’t think rituals and sigils are necessary, at least not the complicated ones.

So long as you intend from the heart and are firm, you don’t need the purple table cloth and dagger and other bullshit. Exceptions are technologies like incense, which can directly affect the etheric ambiance of a room and make it harder for a ghost or demon to inhabit the area; that’s not ritual, that’s an etheric science. But tracing a pentagram in the air and chanting the banishing ritual, that’s not necessary because that’s just a more complicated way of expressing intent, which you can do without the arm waving. Same goes for healing; you can do complicated rituals, or you can just lay hands and up your vibes and thereby allow the higher positive force to do its thing.

The view that the ‘muggles’ can and should be manipulated with magic, that’s a black / negative path approach. Fact is, with proper use of magic, you don’t intend to manipulate anyone; however, synchronicity / higher hand will indeed manipulate people (either by inspiring them, or it just happens accidentally) to help you out. And it won’t come at their expense. Not like you intend for money and the higher force kills your spouse and now you get life insurance payments. I mean more like someone feels inspired and out of the goodness of their heart helps you out, and they feel good for it and might receive a blessing in a synchronistic way as well. Win/win for everyone. The demonic / black / negative path is conservative (like energy and momentum) where you either break even or lose some in the end; every winner comes at the cost of a loser somewhere. Meanwhile, the positive / divine / white path is free energy, win/win for everyone (and if anyone does suffer it’s more a correction mechanism for transgressions they have done, with benevolent intent for their remediation). In any case, I don’t think you should ever manipulate anyone directly and specifically, except to wish them well and bless them into having their spirit, mind, and body strengthened and that they have greater clarity and happiness; that respects their freewill.

» Could one use magic to “transcend” physicality and move to 4D in one’s current incarnation?

Yes, but if you don’t change at the core in terms of your maturity, wisdom, awareness, and the kinds of choices you make as a person, then you’re not going anywhere; rather you yourself sink lower and lower while devising increasingly clever means of hacking the world around you.

That’s the story of pretty much the entire negative hierarchy. They lose spiritual power / root access to reality, and have to resort to hacking and energy sucking methods (energy = ability to perform occult maneuvers and reach further/deeper) to get anywhere. It’s a Ponzi scheme, ultimately, destined to collapse upon itself.

So yes, you can astral travel, you can manipulate probability, you could see a bit beyond space-time but that doesn’t make you 4D necessarily it just extends your capabilities in that direction. I think it’s the combination of abilities (used correctly) + heightening of your inner nature (growth in maturity, wisdom, awareness) that both reinforce each other and, in tandem, result in the ability to transcend physicality.

» In my pursuit of psychic abilities I am realizing that the more important task is to develop as a spiritual being first. What are your thoughts on this?

Doing that first would reduce complications later and probably allow you to see / perceive things more deeply and accurately. The problem with not doing that first, is that a person will lack
objectivity, emotional and mental stability, clarity of thought, and will have clouded perception (due to etheric/astral organs being corrupted by the negative energies and therefore, like looking through a wavy smoky piece of glass, show a distorted picture).

You see this a lot on the internet, people who have paranormal and occult / clairvoyant abilities and experiences but their beliefs are quite wrong or skewed, or worse they descend into some paranoid schizophrenic nightmare. I think Stuart Wilde went down that route one he started seeing the Morph more but didn’t have a handle on his discernment, emotional stability, or clarity of thought regarding sifting through what he was seeing. Amitakh Stanford is another example.

The other thing is that the more psychic you are, the more easily you are spooked or messed with by negative entities (ghosts, demons mainly). That’s because by being more sensitive to etheric / astral energies, you are thus more strongly impacted by them. So when these folks who have some psychic ability start hearing voices or feeling these entities pinching them or whatever, well that’s the beginning of a slippery slope to madness for them. That’s why developing one’s spiritual warmth and integrity and discernment first (or in conjunction) can help one develop an ‘armor of light’ and strength of character to not fall for that stuff.

I’m not sure if it’ll speed up development, however. The two seem somewhat independent, in that you can be a warm and spiritual person but have no psychic power and vice versa. I mean there is some relation but it’s not guaranteed. That said, developing the heart chakra can lead to another kind of power which is the power of empathy / understanding of people, and also it’ll probably develop your crown chakra as well and lead to more revelations and insights. It’s the third eye that’s responsible for the typical visual clairvoyance, and that one can, in such cases, remain closed while the heart/crown is more open. And vice versa.

» If reincarnation here is so risky, then why not stay in the fifth density and learn there? Taking the risk of forgetting who you are will cripple someone spiritually and ends up wasting time.

As far as I know, there are indeed classes of beings / individuals who stay there and watch other lifeforms (us) go through their experiences. But that’s a spectator sport. Why do people play football when they can just stay home and watch the game… I think intellectual learning isn’t the same as testing yourself and being changed by the experience.

So it’s more than just knowledge-lessons, but also soul-growth and deepest wisdom and self-discovery at work here. Some things we know only because we went through them, and it wouldn’t have gotten so deep into our souls so quickly if one were just watching. I keep hearing how yes you can learn “up there” but it’s slower and not as exciting. Here it’s like a crash course.

As for the risk of forgetting and everything that comes with incarnating: risk is inherent in gambles. The point of a gamble is that you can win something that you can’t get if you don’t play. But to win, you might also lose. The downsides of incarnation, the damage to the soul, the getting lost, etc. does happen but it’s not universally guaranteed. Not everyone goes down the tubes here in life. Therefore it’s not an absolute certainty, but just a potential risk inherent in the gamble for a unique reward. That doesn’t mean everything is great though; I think the overall balance has tipped in the negative direction, hence why a positive intervention of equal and opposite caliber is and has been underway (meaning, the covert takeover of the world by aliens and demons is being countered by a covert and equally long term infusion of covert knowledge and help, a kind of secret war).
The Higher Self telling our lessons — one of the fundamentals of this creation is freewill and self-discovery or self-learning, because in acting and experiencing one grows. That’s the point of being separated from the Creator and being endowed with freewill. It’s the absolute core directive of our existence. Again, why are there video games instead of just books and movies? Because people want to play and discover for themselves, they want to exercise their freedom and experience a world.

Facing challenges takes many forms, of which physical danger is probably the simplest and crudest, while challenges regarding trials of one’s faith, determination, confidence, emotions, spirit, etc. are way more along the lines of what people might incarnate for.

On a simple level, people climb mountains and kayak dangerous rapids because they feel they have a certain worth/power and want to put it to the test, and by overcoming that challenge they feel reaffirmed and know themselves better, and perhaps even expand the limits of what they can do.

On a spiritual level, same is true for life’s drama-based challenges. To face failure, persecution, sacrifice, etc. is difficult for the soul. But at some level, or at some point before incarnation, they must have felt that they have a certain worth/power and want to put it to the test, and perhaps grow and expand their limits. They know this world is illusion, that its laws are beneath those of the spiritual laws. But they come here, diving into the illusion, and aim to maintain the spiritual light despite that darkness. Sort of like lighting a candle and diving deep underwater trying to keep it lit. If the flame is strong, it will remain lit. The analogy is good because only flame sources with their own oxidants can stay lit underwater, same way only people who have an internal spiritual connection can survive Earth conditions and overcome them, rather than being overcome by them.

That said, the Higher Self does offer advice through dreams and sometimes directly if you’re psychic enough or it interjects loudly enough; it does so in key times when it’s absolutely necessary ‘to advance the plot.’

Personally, though, I think immature souls need to stop incarnating here. They come here to learn their lessons and experience and grow, but they make a mess of it, which affects everyone else and the planet too, plus it doesn’t help that they’re the dumb ones voting for the establishment puppets and keeping the Matrix going. That gets in the way of what I’d like to be doing here, which is help end this show and start up a new and better one. But who knows, maybe when that time comes, things will happen to make it harder for them to come here (population shrinkage and etheric environment changes) so maybe they’re just squeezing in some last minute experiences in the old world before it’s gone.

» What exactly do you mean by someone being a “matrix agent”?

To me a “matrix agent” is someone through whom malicious third party forces are acting to target someone for spiritual, psychological, financial, emotional, or informational manipulation, diversion, and ruin. They can be spirited or spiritless, so long as they either are knowing and agree, or unknowing and easily manipulated to act as these proxies/vectors.

More specifically, I use the term for people who carry out that function on an extended basis, versus normal people who for only a brief few seconds are ‘taken over by something’ and do/say something that was intelligently guided by a third party force. The latter I think happens regularly
as everyone has slips of the mind. It’s only when a person somehow “works for the matrix” more often than not, that I define it as a matrix agent.

Additionally, for me there are highly improbable, odd, suspicious circumstances surrounding their appearance in one’s life. As in, too convenient, too quick, too good to be true, too customized to your weaknesses/biases, and other traits that put it beyond a mere chance occurrence. And lastly, they have to lack a bit of volition, self-examination, and “realness” otherwise they wouldn’t be as manipulable.

Some of them originate with people who from an early age have heard voices or come under the control of demonic/alien forces (several I know have admitted as much) and so they become increasingly integrated with these beings and lose more and more of their own freewill. Beyond a certain level of conscious vacancy, or possession, they are now “pawns on call” living their lives until “activated” and guided toward a certain target. I don’t believe they are necessarily told, paid money, given a phone call, etc. to do that; rather, it happens synchronistically or through telepathic persuasion that they wind their way toward a person. This is my best guess.

Obviously, someone who lacks a spirit has no freewill/volition to resist such manipulations, and their life is much more easily contoured to turn them into this. But, as I mentioned above, through gradual possession or alien control, even weak spirited humans can serve such functions. The main point though is that they are specific in whom they are directed towards, and that there is often a negative paranormal or strange aspect to how they come into a person’s life (similar to how when the federal agencies do a sting on a suspect, the suspect may feel uneasy about the dealer/victim being a bit too convenient and something being off… that’s because forces behind the scenes have set up the circumstances).

This stuff goes a bit beyond psychology and into the research fields of UFOlogy, demonology, and Fortean phenomena. I’m only aware of it because I had to deal with such people on and off through the years.

» Why and how do people become agents? What is the purpose? Is it a conscious choice?

I talk about it in bits and pieces on my site (passing mentions) rather than its own article, but I’ll summarize my current knowledge/theories as follows:

1) They are born that way. Same way not every car produced ever gets a driver, not every body produced in the womb gets a spirit/driver. What happens instead is that the fetus continues to grow or collect around and within itself the etheric and astral bodies, but not the spirit. And so a fully functioning and alive baby is born, but without the higher spark that would allow it to have true freewill in the sense of sentiently contemplating its own life and circumstances and going against biology and social programming to become his or her own individual. Therefore this person will become a product of non-spiritual influences such as the biological and social programming. Any outside forces such as ghosts/demons/aliens would have an easier time inhabiting or steering this person as well. My article on Spiritless Humans gets into this idea.

2) They are born with a spirit, but either fall asleep spiritually in life, or are too young/weak of a spirit, or fragment parts of their spirit/soul off due to chemical, physical, emotional, psychological trauma in life, or it kind of atrophies/evaporates from too much boredom, routine, and misery for
too long. These people may be “real” and “grow” up to the point where their spirit core goes latent or is cut off or just plain leaves the body, after that they are just shadows of their former selves, like echoes on repeat mode. Then they are no longer mindful or self-aware enough to be resistant to being manipulated buy those outside forces.

3) They are not even fully human, but artificial beings / constructs created by aliens and/or black ops forces, either reanimated from dead bodies or cloned in special growing tanks. They are robotoidis. I talk about them in my Human Simulacra article. I think these are rarer than #2 or #3 above, but their advantage is that they are 100% controllable and can appear and disappear in strange uncanny ways and times.

4) They are not fully real, but quantum anomalies or holographic shells pulled into your timeline/reality due to you bending probability via your thoughts/emotions/intent. For example, let’s say you desire a boyfriend of a certain type (dark, mysterious, bad boy) and use black magic rituals and daily intent to try and manifest him, but you live in a small town in Nebraska where such subcultures don’t exist. Then a week later you encounter the perfect match at the local Dairy Queen and he says he just moved there week ago. He has weird things in common with you, and seems custom tailored to you. But you sense emptiness in his eyes and something sly behind them, as if he were a decoy duck and there’s a hunter lurking around. He ends up being a psychic vampire and loads you up with disinformation and you get sick, etc. and when you’ve had enough, you put your foot down and say to the universe you’re done with him, and that same day he splits town and you can’t figure out where he went. Here, I think you created him by pulling in a very unlikely probable future where such a character shows up, but since he is your creation and no actual spirit is just going to incarnate into a body and grow up to satisfy your whims, he remained spiritless — however, being empty, he’s now an open conduit for dark forces (demons) to work through, and so such forces act through such holographic shells (by holographic I mean still physical and tangible, but not fully real in the sense of being part of your true timeline and having a permanent existence).

5) They are usually spirited, but from a young age were in contact with alien or demon forces who groomed them, wormed their way into his or her mind and soul, and basically turned this person into a steerable and willing puppet. That is, these people hear voices and do what they tell them to do, and have controlled hallucinations and aren’t 100% there in their heads. There are a lot of such types out there. They have a weird world view, usually told they are the center of some made up story these entities spun for them, which gains their cooperation. Their world view is also mostly false and disinformative. I hear from such types periodically. Even if they don’t admit they’re under control of entities, just from their world view I can tell, and when I ask them point blank what and how long they’ve been in touch with entities, they’ll usually admit it and say that most of their worldview comes from what they were told. These types can be moved around relatively easy by such forces to target certain people. But there will almost always be something off about them; either a bit hurried to convince you of lies like some used car salesman, or very slick and calm and sociopathic but with a cold or evil glint behind the eyes even when they’re smiling, or totally discombobulated and hysterical almost (some women agents fall into this category) who are used to trap targets who have the white knight syndrome.

Only the spirited ones can be ‘saved’, but even then, only if they have enough self-awareness, self-examination, and self-correction abilities to snap out of it. The test is that you try and try but
nothing works, or any reform isn’t genuine but just an act to placate you until they go back to their control tactics. You don’t have to go nitpicking things, as if you look hard enough you can rationalize even a saint as being the devil, but rather you just have to not be blind to the obvious red flags right in your face. Such blindness comes from false assumptions like the idea that everyone is real and good at the core; not so, some people just aren’t good, whole, sentient people. I think it’s worth giving the benefit of the doubt in ambiguous cases, and overall it’s easier to say with 100% certainty that a person is spirited and real (because of all the character qualities that entails) whereas saying a person is an agent or spiritless is harder since asleep or manipulated spirited people can act like them (there’s a large amount of overlap) and only in the more extreme cases can one say with 100% certainty the latter. Therefore I look more for people who are definitely real, than trying to play “spot the agent” as certain groups and forums like to do.

» I live surrounded by fundamentalist Christians, many of whom absolutely believe it’s a greater sign of faith to buy a new dress for church than to feed the poor. Where do you stand on this?

I am both non-Christian and ultra—fundamentalist Christian. I believe the Great Apostasy, or the turning away from the teachings of Christ, occurred not in the decades after the writing of the four Gospels but with the very penning of these Gospels in the first place.

I like the Gospels of Thomas because they are nothing but sayings of Jesus, the kind that like the Grimm fairy tales circulated orally for some time before being set down in writing. And they were set down seemingly verbatim from what had been circulating. Meanwhile, that core was separately taken up by various propagandists and turned into the Four Gospels with a bunch of padding and other junk thrown in. So I’m pretty hardcore about going back to the earliest, purest, shortest, simplest nucleus of Christianity (the parables and sayings of Jesus) and ascribing to those, because like the sayings of Buddha they are pure meaning without fluff.

So, it’s really something how Christians can be nowadays. So much form, so little substance, and if I dare say it, instruments of the anti-Christ despite wearing Christian personas. Yes, I think the anti-Christ co-opted Christ’s legacy within a few short decades after the dawn of the first millennium, and Christianity has been its tool ever since. By anti-Christ, I just mean the general body of negative forces that are working in opposition to spirit/divinity.

» Have you come across spiritual communes and sustainable communities, and would you ever consider joining one?

I knew of some communes in central Virginia when I lived there, one was self-sustaining, nestled in between hills pretty far from the main roads.

These seem like a fun place, but it’s not really my thing. I would only do it to gain experience/knowledge for rebuilding society after a collapse. I wouldn’t go there just for the sake of ‘saving Mother Earth’ and hanging out with people into that kind of lifestyle.

My view is that given our current lifespans, time, energy, etc. that should be put toward the highest and rarest thing we can put it toward under the current circumstances, which in my case revolves around science, technology, metaphysics, alchemy, and writing/speaking/creating regarding those subjects. So if I put in 4 hours every day on those things, I would contribute something more valuable than if I spent 4 hours growing radishes, because the latter has been done for thousands of
years and once you eat it, it’s gone. But knowledge lives on.

People who need that experience, or those whose livelihood is farming, should be the ones to do that. But so long as modern civilization exists and there is division of labor, and thus food to buy in the stores, I find it more efficient to buy that and use the remaining 3.3 hours of work on what I consider to be novel and rare and important and unprecedented.

About saving the Earth, well I don’t believe in careless pollution, but at the same time I’m also aware of volcanic eruptions, pole shifts, comet debris, solar flare scorchings, galactic super waves, and hydrogen sulfide gas releases from the seabed that have in the past, and will again, kill species and wipe out forests and grasslands and poison waters a thousand times over what man has caused.

Earth is resilient, it gets whacked and then life repopulates. But what happens to the soul/spirit is more important, in my view, as that lasts longer and has greater effects into the future. Therefore I’m not into the green, hippie, eco, environmentalist stuff except for the idea of energy efficiency and more efficient farming methods (or hemp farming, which has tons of uses) so as to reduce human labor and costs and thus free up time and energy for more important things.

As to communes in general, I mentioned how when I worked at a bookstore in Virginia we had a good number of alternative people come in every day, except 19 out of 20 of them I couldn’t care for since their ‘alternativeness’ was based in ego, wishful thinking, entertainment, amusement, contrarianism, etc. rather than genuine truth seeking. So in these communes, I can expect to find similar. I don’t agree with liberals or philosophies of weakness and vulnerability, and inevitably a number of people there would fit into that.

Also I’m not a fan of the idea of people needing to hang onto each other for social support (the feeling of camaraderie) to the point where that feeling takes precedence over individual progress, learning, and such. What I mean is, so they get together and shoot the breeze and feel like a family and then what … what are they actually accomplishing other than having a communal pacifier to share?

Reminds me of some people, certain girls especially, who just want to talk for the sake of talking rather than exploring ideas and coming to new realizations and getting things done. For them it doesn’t matter what’s said, so long as the interaction fulfills a sense of acceptance and approval. Or worse it becomes a control tactic and form of energy feeding, like people who can’t think with their mouths closed and have to chatter on all day long pulling everyone around them into their own stream of consciousness and holding them captive. It’s hypocritical. If a commune is based on wishful thinking divorced from reality, and if the needs it actually serves are childish and escapist, then I don’t want to be part of that.

Anyway, I think society will collapse eventually and then eco villages you can visit today will be a good pattern of how to make it afterwards (though to be realistic they’d need armed security and medics for that scenario too). That’s why I said I’d do it for the training, but I wouldn’t live there right now just for the sake of living in a commune, if conditions don’t yet necessitate this.

» When will the materialist scientists finally be able to acknowledge the reality of esoteric (non-material) existence?

The level of proof required to convince all of them, enough so that textbooks are rewritten and
PhDs lose their jobs and religions fall, is so great with such severe consequences that it invokes intervention from the various powers that control our world (angels, secret societies, aliens) and none of them want that to occur at the wrong time. Therefore it will happen when the time is right, but any individual attempting to create or provide such proof in the wrong way at the wrong time will be prevented by these powers.

For example, a person with really strong psychic abilities who can read everyone’s mind, they will feel very strongly over time not to share it with anyone. Or maybe they get karmically punished every time they share it a little, and don’t want to suffer anymore, and that’s only step 2 where by step 10 they would be dead of cancer or something. There are many ways in which individuals can be convinced not to share their proof with the world at large, even if it’s okay for them to share it with a smaller network of people who don’t impact world history.

Technology though is the easiest to convince the materialist. Let’s say you invented a special camera that can see into the etheric plane and therefore show what ghosts or demons or aliens or whatever are in your vicinity. To go from wanting to create this, to eventually putting it on public display or mailing ten demonstration devices to various academics, that is a very long sequence of steps where each way there can be made obstacles. In the very beginning, it can be done just by making the person not have enough willpower to research how to even invent it despite it being a cool idea. Then they can delay you getting the parts needed to try it out, give you brain fog, make your brother go broke so that he needs to borrow your money and now you can’t buy what you need, all the way up to not having funding to produce the ten demonstration devices. And if somehow you do succeed and creating a machine, then unless you make it fully public instantly (and then they will play on your greed, make you think that since you invested 120,000 dollars, people don’t deserve to have it for free … you need to have compensation, so you try to attract investors, but turns out they are even more easily mind controlled and either never come, or end up being scammers and the you go to jail for fraud, and so on). See, it’s all very easy to stop.

Fact is, certain people are meant to believe because they experience it for themselves, or they already have something within them that is open to believing, so they do the research and are smart enough to realize that non-material things exist. Meanwhile, other people are not on that path at all, or are puppets of the matrix, so no amount of proof will convince those folks. Then the rest are people who can change their minds given enough proof, but that proof may not come if the higher powers don’t allow it.

There’s a reason that angels and aliens don’t just reveal themselves openly on national television, or reveal themselves to the president for that matter. That’s because all sides, no matter what the side, wants the current level of silence/skepticism that we see, for various reasons.

At the same time, knowledge of these phenomena is spreading. Just not to the point where it affects the economy, wars, or causes religions to fall. Everything else though, from movies to TV documentaries about the paranormal or aliens, is not only allowed but encouraged. And yet, nothing is forcing the skeptics to sit down and watch those programs. Only people interested watch them. Thus it doesn’t violate or upset anything. That’s the way this world seems to be run at the moment.

But I do think a time will come, a deadline of sorts, where conditions are right for the final revelation to be given about aliens/angels/souls to the mass public. Think about this: right now, all
the laws in the western world do not include “the soul” or “demons” or “aliens” as factors. No economic decisions are based on it. No wars are fought on it. Only entertainment, TV shows, books, radio shows, etc. seem to incorporate these ideas, things that aren’t that consequential. (Of course, in secret, the shadow government/military does know about these things, and manipulates the world accordingly).

Now, imagine if the paranormal were factored into public policy. For example, let’s say aliens are now admitted as real, and then the question is who in the population has been contacted by them, is working for them, or is being influenced by them … should such people have the right to vote? Should they be allowed to own guns? Should they be treated as dangerous to the nation? Or only those being contacted by alien factions the government hasn’t made treaties with? If people were to vote on which alien factions are kosher, would they vote for just whoever is the prettiest looking alien faction? And if that faction ends up being a bunch of liars, as most politicians are right now, then laws will get written favoring their agenda and the rest of us can’t do anything about it since that’s democracy and the will of the human race, which thereby sanctions it under galactic law.

Same with the soul. Let’s say the soul is recognized as real, and that it leaves the body at night when you sleep. Then someone invents a robot that can house the body of a soul, and now the government realizes it can make you work while you sleep by having your consciousness be transferred to that robot body. Or advertisers realize they can now project advertisements into your dreams. Or when a criminal gets sentenced to 8 life sentences, there are built prisons specifically for souls of those who died in prison, to live another 500 years trapped in that soul-prison.

Or let’s say the military then has open permission to use this occult knowledge in warfare. Maybe now they collect and breed demons to use as spiritual warfare on lesser nations. Maybe demon bombs that are dropped in and possess people and make them kill and eat each other, maybe combined with special drugs dispersed as gasses that make people susceptible to it. Or a kind of metaphysical soul weapon that activates in a city and distorts the soul-body connection so that everyone falls over into a coma and then dies.

By limiting humanity’s knowledge to very narrow regions of science and beliefs, it makes them more controllable. The good guys probably see that there would be bad consequences such as the examples cited above, consequences stemming from that power being abused (considering mankind’s current state of morality). Meanwhile, the bad guys don’t want that knowledge out there either because then liberators could use that tech to see them and expose them. You can expose the bad guys, but you can’t fix human ethics that easily, not without lots of time and effort, and so right now is too soon for this knowledge/tech to be made official.

But private use is okay, it seems. I mean, it still gets moderated if it becomes too public (if it offers too strong of proof, as that can upset the world script). I wish it weren’t this way, but that’s what I see from having researched it.

» I always believed in prayer, but only recently I’m starting to see how baptizing could be significant, and I am curious if you have any thoughts on it.

Baptism is pretty complicated. Let’s say you have someone who has a very high soul frequency, kind of psychic, can heal with his or her hands. Now she scoops up some water and blesses a child with it. Like a Reiki master initiating a student, some of her energy would go into the baby/person
and probably give the baby a positive nudge in life.

On the other hand, take a priest who is shallow of faith and just does it as part of ritual. I bet nothing happens energetically, except maybe an occult branding due to it all being a Catholic ritual, say, whereby the baby’s soul has a bit of the “Catholic™” logo stamped into it, figuratively speaking. I mean if the baby were baptized with blood and dedicated to Satan, I’m sure as a child he/she would have a greater degree of negative paranormal happenings. And since the Catholic church is full of Babylonian / Mithraic / and other pagan symbolism and we know about the pedophile issue, it’s not actually that far removed from Satanism. Maybe that’s why there’s a business for Catholic exorcists, if Catholics attract a higher degree of demonic ‘infections’ due to the nature of the organization of which they’re part. Just speculating.

But I think even baptism is just a symbolic act, a kind of ritual ‘time capsule’ that generations pass down without necessarily knowing the meaning. Like what if it’s just a symbolic representation of being filled/showered with divine etheric energy dispensed by the Holy Spirit? (Which I believe is real, and is an artificially intelligent helper sent by the divine to protect and enlighten us on a case-by-case basis)? What if a clairvoyant once saw this as sparkling water raining down on someone and turning them into a spiritually awakened being? (Which is supported by anecdotal reports of feeling rain drops or tears on one’s face when under the attention of divine forces). Well, then that gets passed down as pouring water on a baby or dunking someone in a river (I’m talking here about the story of John baptizing Jesus, which may or may not have happened, and if not, then was a symbolic story about some higher metaphysical/occult truth).

Interestingly, in the Grail stories, a person had to be baptized to be able to see the Grail, otherwise it was invisible. That tells me the real baptism is a kind of divine etheric charging effect in that case, that activates one’s psychic/etheric organs and thus can see things others cannot. But ultimately baptism is a concept with multiple layers of interpretation, many of which are valid in their own context.

» Is there a way to seek help from the positive beings?

Yes, first step is freeing yourself of beliefs (subconscious programming) that shut them out. I’m talking about thoughts that you are undeserving, that your destiny is to be in misery, that you are forsaken or abandoned, that this world is dog eat dog and we’re all alone, etc.

Those thoughts are precisely the same ones that negative forces use to wage spiritual warfare on a person, to grind them down spiritually and choke off their access to the positive forces. It’s to get them to freely choose to enter a prison of their own making, though with the blueprints provided by these negative forces.

Anyway, using affirmations to counter-program positive thoughts can help remove those, and then with optimism and hope in your heart, you are in a better position to work ‘hand in hand’ with the positive forces.

Then you just get yourself into a positive, uplifted, heart-ignited mood and address the highest positive force you can think of, whether it’s your Higher Self or the infinite Creator or the angels or whatever. Ask for help. Bonus points if it’s for something intangible like happiness, wisdom, understanding, knowledge, insight, and so on. If it’s for material circumstances, that’s fine too if
you earnestly and honestly feel it’s right and just. End the request with a thank you and a feeling that, like ordering something online, the deal is done and you can feel relaxed and glad that your request will be answered. If they decide it’s not wise to fulfill, no big deal, then it just won’t happen.

Where you’re asking from, what assumptions you’re asking under, that plays a role. For example, let’s say someone is lazy and doesn’t want to think too much or investigate anything, and thus not apply themselves and grow from that exercise. Let’s say this person then requests the Creator to send him or her a wise master to tell him all the answers to life, handing it over on a silver platter. What’ll usually happen is, a synchronicity will occur whereby this person (maybe online) will come across such a seemingly wise person, say someone who acts like the self-appointed guru on a forum, and they connect. But really it’s a lazy person connecting with an egomaniacal guru-complex person. Lots of B.S. is exchanged and one day the person will realize what a bunch of B.S. it all was, and regret having come under the control of someone who was only out to gratify themselves. Well, that’s because the person was asking from a place of ego and ignorance to begin with, so he manifested an appropriate fit for it.

Therefore the more right, just, honest, wise, correct, etc. the request for help, the more likely it will receive an equally honest and just reply. The mind is quite powerful though, and even in the absence of positive forces, one can use strong intent and almost black-magic like power or ritual to manifest the answer to one’s desire no matter how dark it is. That’s because then dark forces (demons usually) step in and answer the request in exchange for the person’s soul energy, spiritual integrity, and personal power. There’s also the neutral case where in the absence of higher positive or negative forces, a person’s mind alone can nudge reality into manifesting certain things, hence some people who aren’t particularly nice, nevertheless end up becoming rich or lucky in life because their minds/thoughts are oriented toward that outcome and so they attract it.

» Why do those running the control system even allow us access to books such as Fringe Knowledge? Don’t they have the power to truly censor us?

Sometimes the act of showing their hand, proving their own existence, or turning someone into a martyr has worse consequences for them than simply holding back. But there are other more metaphysical reasons.

There are equal and greater neutral and positive forces that prevent them from having free reign to do whatever they please. Think of the referee in a soccer match, the players could easily kick his ass but that’s not the correct way to think of his role; his role is to be given a power necessary for the proper function of the game. Those running the control system are masters of their own domain, but that domain is like one half of what makes up our reality. The other half is under the jurisdiction of positive forces. Not in terms of geography, but in terms of who / what / when. In the end it comes down to us, individually, and how we use our freewill to align more with one or the other, if we use/have freewill at all.

If you think of a deer in the forest, it’s an animal and its freewill is less compare to ours. Its spiritual priorities are lower too. It therefore lives largely by the law of the jungle where the weak get eaten by the strong. So when a human with a high tech rifle and scope enters the woods and kills it, that happened because it could.
Now imagine if someone writes a spiritually empowering book, and those running the control system don’t like it. Well, that person and those who are ‘meant’ to read that book are not on the level of the deer. They indeed would be if they made certain choices in life that weakened them spiritually, such as adopting either a very predatory/violent or prey/victim mindset. But if not, then through their choice, their vibes, who they are at the core, they have now come under the jurisdiction of positive forces. Their freewill made it so.

Therefore if it’s ‘meant’ to be, negative forces then are limited in what they can do to such a person. They can’t aim a laser satellite at his house and burn a hole through his brain even though they have the technology to do so. Either they wouldn’t even think of it (memory would get blanked out) or the satellite would malfunction or maybe they don’t want to risk evidence of such tech to be out there. Whatever the case, they simply don’t do it.

However, they can for example use remote telepathic persuasion to try and induce depression in the person. That again respects his freewill, though it pressures it a bit. For the person this is a test of sorts; if he stays strong against it, he will become stronger as a result. But the risk is that he will choose not to fight and adopt those thoughts as his own. If that leads to a downward spiral, it can make him so weak and negative that he falls out of resonance with the positive forces, and if all hope is spent, he can then indeed be killed, maybe through a home invasion and murder or cancer or car accident or whatever. But ultimately, he via his freewill is the one who calls the shots of what happens.

Thus anything that comes under the jurisdiction of a higher law, acts via higher principles that are kind of opposite those of the law of the jungle. Therefore some people you’ll find seem to have divine protection, while other people don’t. It’s further complicated by karmic / destiny factors, such as someone being born here already having chosen the manner and general timing of death, so they lead a good life helping others and then when they reach the appointed time they spin off a bridge and drown in the river. Seems like a tragedy, and sometimes it is, but other times it’s planned.

But if a person has protection, say because everyone whom he/she affects ‘needs’ the consequences of his/her actions, then their ‘need’ extends to that person in ensuring that he/she survives to fulfill it. That is, so long as this person stays on the ‘right side of the divine law’.

The simpler answer to your question is that dark and light forces basically just want to help/recruit their own, and if a person goes over to the dark side out of his or her own freewill, then so be it, and vice versa. It’s not like the light forces are trying to correct every last person to be good. They know that a person who chooses darkness will come around eventually. Likewise, the dark side doesn’t try to destroy every good person if they’re doing their own thing and not rocking the boat too much. It’s just that when a person does too much to rock the boat, that equal measures are taken to try and pound him back down, but they have to act within the rules of the game (such as the telepathic persuasion) mentioned above.

If the person has made bargains with the dark side, gained from them in some way, then the person has given away some of his protection too. For example, entering the military and gaining higher secrecy clearances comes with signing lots and lots of paperwork and agreeing to face the punishment of death for revealing it. If this person later goes on a lecture tour spilling those secrets...
and gets hit by a microwave beam and dies of an aneurysm while on stage, well that’s all legal.

I myself haven’t done that, made any deals or contracts, and I try to keep my vibe up. Further, whatever offensive actions have been taken against my book I through persistence and foresight have been able to overcome. For example, the book was done when a computer glitch caused the whole thing to be erased including the backup copy. There was a 95% chance that the book would never have come out. I tried a data recovery program but it didn’t work. I tried another, didn’t work. I tried another, didn’t work. Most people would have given up at this point, but recognizing the future was on the line, I tried two more and the last one managed to retrieve it, hence the book exists today. It’s little things like this, rather than government troops coming in burning my books, that is how it’s usually done. The lightest of touches that lead to changes in the future; they just have to target the right moment, the one where mere glitch or errant thought causes a change in the way things go. This is all spiritually legal, as it targets weaknesses that are equally opportunities for growth if overcome, so both sides potentially get something from it, and it’s the person who makes the choice of which way it goes.

» How might genetics relate to spirituality?

Genetics is kind of like car models, in that you can ask yourself what kind of person drives a BMW versus a Toyota. This has to do with what kind of soul chooses a certain genetic profile (if the choice is available) over another. To answer that question properly though, race is too general a classification since it has more to do with specific bloodlines or particular genes. For example a soul may incarnate into a body that appears to be of African descent not necessarily because it fits the “black” profile, but may because that body has 6 to 7 specific useful genetic traits unique to that body, and these traits may or may not have anything to do with the African ancestry. However, if a soul wants to go through the whole racism thing, feeling oppressed, working through issues of self-image, etc. then maybe it’ll choose that body in a particular place and time to face that challenge.

So it’s about the skills, biases, predispositions, self-image, how one relates to society, how it affects one’s relations in life, etc. that are behind what genetics are chosen by what incarnating consciousnesses.

Now, you can look statistically at different races and make generalizations about majority tendencies. And in turn, that would mean that statistically the souls who occupy these bodies might likewise have certain profiles / patterns that generally are attracted to those genetic factors. The coupling is weak but it’s there. But it’s weak enough that you can’t say, oh that particular person is white or black, therefore that particular person has this or that soul. That would be actual racism. But it’s not racism, in my opinion, to objectively observe the more general trends and coupling/correlation factors.

In my observation, people with light colored eyes and fair hair and lighter skin are less grounded, more prone to neurotic tendencies, more aloof, less emotional, not as deep and real and here, less outgoing, less animated, and quite frankly more cold, reptilian, alien, intellectual, disconnected, and potentially psychopathic. Like any stereotype, it’s a weak general pattern but doesn’t prevent individuals from defying that pattern. Therefore if you are none of these, no big deal, you are the exception then to the pattern.

Similar stereotypes can be made about the other races. But again, race is such a general category
that to be more accurate you’d have to drill down into specific bloodlines. There are bloodlines that are given to math and science. Others to music and art. Others to being drug and alcohol addicts. Others to want to be defenders and protectors. Others to want to climb the social/political ladder. They may all be white. They may all be black. Hard to say, as it’s about specific genetic threads here, rather than the complete package that makes up a race.

That said, if you go back far enough in history, it does appear that certain tribes back then were naturally more given to soul-based things like art, music, industry, poetry, literature, and so on … while others were content to remain as animals. In the Middle Eastern history for example, there were a group among the Amorites who were known to the Akkadians as being backwards, animalistic, nomadic sub-humans. They didn’t bury their dead, they eat all their meat raw, they didn’t know how to farm, they stank, and they had no spiritual inclinations. Was that all completely culture? Or was there some genetic-spiritual correlation factor? And what happens if those genetics intermixed with the other cultures? Would it result in a mixed culture where one out of every X people would lack the genetic profile attractive to a soul interested in art, culture, music, altruism, or spirituality? That’s the only way I can see race factoring into spirituality nowadays, except I think the genetics today are so diluted and intermixed that it’s impossible to give a free pass to anyone because of their race, or condemn them because of their race.

I think once portable genetic sequencers become cheap and common enough that anyone can buy one, there will be a real war of ideologies and ethics about how that’s used, what it all means, and how genetics factor into human behavior. It’ll also expose a lot of the lies that history, anthropology, archeology, and genetic academics have had the luxury of upholding. That’s coming in 10-20 years if the world continues without interruption. You’re going to see a new level of racism and anti-racism, new sects/ideologies erupt out of that. Interesting times.

Now, genetics just provides a toolbox. It’s you the soul who decides what to do with it. If your family has one soul origin, and you another, then of course you’ll be the odd one out despite having similar appearance. I’ve known the opposite case too, where a whole family resembles each other except for the one guy who happens to be really pale with really dark hair while the others look like average brown haired white folks. That guy then is ‘different’ at a spiritual level from the others. But is the behavior due to genetics, or was genetics selected due to the soul’s desired behavior? When two parents come together, only half of each’s chromosomes are selected “by random chance” to make the baby. Of course it’s not random chance all the time, it’s a palette of colors for the incoming soul (or whomever runs this operation) to choose. In this way, an incoming soul can, if it wants to, look quite different from the siblings.

» What if every action we took was already predetermined?

Predetermination is possible but goes against currently known quantum physics, where it’s been mathematically proven that hidden variables (deterministic factors we haven’t yet discovered) cannot be behind quantum phenomena. The implication is that true non-determinism, or pure ‘randomness’, does indeed exist. And since our brains are quantum computers, I think that implies our thoughts and hence actions are not all 100% predetermined.

However, I know from experience that a lot of our lives is indeed predetermined — either due to destiny/karma or choice at a higher level, or due to the usual physical deterministic factors like
genetic defects or being born into bad circumstances or maybe being born into Nagasaki a month before the bomb.

I’ve experienced negative forces being able to see my upcoming future, but I’ve also been able to become aware of them being aware of it, and then applying my awareness through sheer willpower and foresight to not take the route that was, prior to this point, the predetermined and most probable outcome. In other words, I changed the future. It was only possible by becoming aware of it. Awareness of something is what opens choice. Without sentience, there is no freewill.

So based on my experiences, I would say that our lives take place in the fractal zone between physical determinism (material causality) and metaphysical determinism (fate, karma, the will of higher forces). Even if our lives are 99% deterministic, it’s that 1% that makes things interesting. It reminds me a bit of the train system. Trains run on predetermined tracks. The train operator merely chooses to switch tracks here and there and control the speed/timing. And yet, somehow that makes for an interesting system that isn’t completely deterministic.

I would also add, that you are free to change your thoughts/feelings/beliefs and thereby change the probabilities of what external circumstances you move into. Therefore if time and place is the most valuable asset, you can indeed influence this at the quantum level through the reality-creation / mind-over-matter phenomenon. Not instantly, not completely, but partially and over a variable amount of time, and that’s basically changing the map or terrain of your existence.

» What do you honestly think about the unfairness and injustice that good people tend to experience?

Probably two things to this:

1) Our modern world has been constructed as such by psychopaths and anti-spiritual forces. They used networking, deception, manipulation, force, demagoguery, and all kinds of cunning tricks to allow the corrupt to secure their power. They have control over much of mainstream media, entertainment, music, finance, education, medicine, science, universities, military, and industry.

So it’s a very hostile environment for good people. Good forces and good people still have a presence in politics, media, entertainment, music, and the other fields mentioned above, but they will always be the minority. The real reason for this is that the human species at the moment is relatively dumb, and so there are too many dumb or naive people who keep voting these politicians into power, who keep supporting war, who keep ridiculing the truth researchers and freedom fighters. So it’s basically a big population of sheep that are feeding a bunch of wolves, and so the good shepherd can neither manage the herd no take down all the wolves because there are too many sheep and the wolves are too strong.

The whole thing is a syndrome comprised of multiple problems.

First problem is that mental illness is rampant and legitimized in our culture to the point where the insane can hold political office, hence the existence of liberals/democrats for example. They don’t reason objectively; they rationalize subjectively. Logic for them is a tool to serve their emotions, prejudices, biases, and childish fantasies and truth for them only has value when convenient. So they are mentally ill, emotionally stunted, and irresponsible people, but due to good use of sophistry can appear sane enough to get into positions of power or earn respect from people dumber than
themselves, of which there are many. But basically they are overgrown children or with bad logic and there is no boundary to the level of stupidity of which they are capable.

Second problem is that most people are extremely easy to nudge and persuade subconsciously by ghosts, demons, aliens, remote influencers, subliminals, voice-to-skull technologies, manipulated dreams, abduction and posthypnotic programming, etc. It doesn’t take much to find people who aren’t mentally put together very well, who lack intelligence or discernment or good reasoning skills, and nudge them toward certain viewpoints, beliefs, lifestyles, and actions. So long as they lack a critical level of sentience required for self-examination, self-correction, and lucidity, they are one-way programmable machines that take whatever input they are given. I think these comprise the bulk of what you’re talking about. They are groomed to act as mouthpieces for the control system, at every level of society not just obvious positions of power. They don’t always know they are mouthpieces. Most have just been shaped like clay to serve their function.

Some, however, are conscious of their roles. These are people who can hear voices, or can perceive the entities or at least what the entities project into their minds as an image of themselves (which is usually a disguise). These people are given a bullshit story about the benefits they’ll receive for working with these entities, and it serves their egos in some way. Many enter into an active relationship with the entities, allowing them or encouraging them to take more control. The person loses more and more of himself, and eventually becomes an instrument of these forces. Outwardly they can be good at hiding it, unless they are severely mentally ill then they’ll talk about it and appear schizophrenic to others and give it away. But point being that there are people who knowingly and willingly serve a hidden manipulator. The probably think of themselves as prophets or secret agents for that force, to be rewarded for serving it.

Then lastly there are people who are completely empty, fake, and entirely controlled by the hidden manipulators. They could be robotoids grown in a lab, a reanimated dead person now controlled by some AI, an AI program that doesn’t even have a body and only pretends to be human on the internet, or more occult/quantum possibilities like thoughtforms made temporarily flesh or some glitch in the matrix that creates a breathing human being but one who is only a holographic shell that can be puppeted by hyper-d forces. What distinguishes these from the previous examples is that they are 100% controllable and don’t have their own sentience.

So it’s a sliding scale really, from the more plausible and mundane to the more fantastic and bizarre. But all of these act sort of like the control rods in a nuclear reactor, slowing down the reaction. Or alternately, sand in the engine. They act as friction and control systems that moderate human civilization, adding friction, stress, and deception everywhere. They are the friction that generates the heat (loosh energy) that the matrix forces feed on, and the crude oil on our feathers that keeps us from flying. Some are just stupid childish people, others are groomed/programmed, others are actively being piloted by a nonhuman force.

Therefore the good people for the moment can only serve the minority who aren’t the sheep. That is, a minority serving the minority, and not globally but more regionally or like how I on the internet am only reaching a small percentage, but at least then it’s quality people over quantity, which is fine.

But basically, if physical force allows it, then a good person can get overrun or defeated from time
to time. The spirit is immortal and other helpers can be sent, so from the big picture perspective it’s not THAT big of a deal with a good person gets taken out, as they just return home and come back for another try.

2) Good people aren’t always strong or wise or discerning or good fighters. There was a time when a good person was also a good fighter; these were the old chivalric knights from long ago. As centuries went on, “good” became contaminated with the idea of meekness, per the lies and mistranslations that were inserted into religion. And politically it became “good” to be against violence, to let the state/police do all the protecting for you, to hate guns and be a progressive person who was actually a wimpy hipster.

Point being that the ideal good person is someone who not only has a good heart, but is also brave, smart, powerful, and capable. Good people who are like harmless bunnies are okay, and many still achieve much. But when they come up against negative suppression, some go soft too easily. If they were also good fighters (social fighters, legal fighters, word/research fighters, etc.) then they could push back and balance things out more. In fact, I think that’s one of their lessons, to gain a bit of ‘tactical skill’ to make themselves a bit tougher, but without losing their heart or divine energy. That’s the only way to liberate dark forces from their own ignorance, to show them it’s possible to be a good guy and a bad ass at the same time, which is more than they will ever be if they stick to their ways. It’s not about being a devouring wolf or peaceful sheep, but about being the shepherd who has the best of both and then some.

» When faced with a great task how is it that you stay focused, knowing full well that all these years of work will eventually materialize into a finished product?

It helps to break it down and focus just on what the next step is. Big wars are won via little battles. Each little battle won provides a reward that motivates one on to the next step. Getting absolutely nowhere for seven years is different from unlocking it piece by piece over that time and each time getting rewarded a little bit.

It also helps to have confidence and knowing… rather than just having blind faith… by already having proof, glimpse, seed, insight, etc. that shows you a promise of what the end holds. The future must pull, rather than the past pushing.

Dinking around with a keyboard trying to compose something from scratch, having faith that the great melodies will come, never works for me. First the idea must strike me like lightning on its own at other times, or a bit like catching a faint whiff in the air and then digging deep to retrieve the memory of which it reminds you — then the idea is so awesome that it begs to be expressed in recorded format, and so this maddening itch to make it manifest is what motivates the arduous recording process.

I already know what I want, I already know the melody is great, I already know the end result will be worth moving toward. The labor is in implementing, rather than conceiving. Conception must strike as a revelation, and it must come first. The same goes for the articles on my site.

Of course when an obstacle is encountered along the way, then yes there is some labor toward getting past it, but the same way you can hear people talking on the other side of a thin wall, even if you can’t see them or make it out clearly, you can intuit that the answer is there beyond the obstacle,
and you might even feel its general shape. That’s the proof/seed/glimpse needed to motivate. Again, it’s not purely blind faith and bumbling, nor is it 100% clear vision with a deterministic implementation of known steps. It’s a transcendent intuition acting as a tractor beam pulling you toward its physical manifestation, a strange attractor.

As long you can fire yourself up, keep your eye/heart on the feeling and motivation that enthuses you about the project, then the more you’re fired up by it, the more you will automatically focus on it and make it happen. If you just have no motivation and no heart and just want to make an album because that’s what’s expected of you, then you’ve already lost and everyone with ears to hear will know that you had no mojo in making it, so no point in even trying.

Like I said, if a song recording process is just flowing then I’ll give up other things because I’m too wrapped up in it to care about those other things. That’s what I meant by obsession being a key to making breakthroughs. Controlled madness is the key to genius.

» Have you ever had astral travel experiences?

I have done it a couple times intentionally when starting from waking state, and maybe two dozen times spontaneously from a dream state.

The spontaneous ones, most happened from a lucid dream state. In the lucid dream, I found that by focusing on my own self-awareness and breathing and body sensations I could exit the dream and wake up in my astral body already partially detached from the physical. Often this would be accompanied by a feeling of intense wind, a rushing white noise sound, maybe a foggy bright light surrounding me, and a feeling of vibration or acceleration. Then it’s easy to use typical exit techniques to get out. The lucid dream technique works because my body is still asleep and so is too tired to wake up suddenly, unlike trying to project starting from a waking state where it takes an immense amount of relaxation to shut the body down.

So the intentional ones from waking, well those require the full body relaxation techniques, however I am naturally not someone who falls asleep easily or quickly, and so it took my ninety minutes last time trying to both fall asleep while simultaneously keeping my awareness intact. It is incredibly boring and difficult. And yes, the moment I fall asleep and recognize I am, it’s very easy to get shocked by this and wake back up. I haven’t been able to overcome this consistently.

Now, when out of my body, I did not actually fly off and go into the astral planes. I stuck around in the room for the most part. One time I had to wake up quickly and so I dove into my body but the wrong way, and I felt like being a shoe inside a drier tumbling around for a few seconds until the soul snapped into place in its proper position and I was able to wake up.

An acquaintance of mine had a forced astral projection once. He wasn’t too bright, and was cocky on top of it, and he mentally called out to the ‘shadow people’ and challenged them, saying they were pieces of nothing. Well, that evening he and his girlfriend went to bed and shortly thereafter he awoke to several such shadow beings in the room. They grabbed him and pulled him out of his body and toward the doorway, trying to haul him away. He saw them doing it to his girlfriend too. She was able to pull back and woke up, but he was still out of body. She saw his body choking and tried to wake him up but he wouldn’t wake up. Meanwhile he was pulling away as hard as he could and finally broke free and returned to his body, woke up gasping for breath, and his girlfriend told
him what just happened to her and it matched what he saw. I mention that because it’s one of the rarer types of experiences.

I don’t practice astral projection anymore as I find it risky. I don’t agree with people who say there is absolutely no risk. Some of the people I know who do it a lot, over the years they seem to lose more and more of themselves, and I noticed something dark takes the place of the vacant spots in their soul. Like a drunk person swearing they aren’t drunk, I don’t think they’re capable of noticing that they’re suffering from the effects of long term astral projection. But make up your own mind on that; I recommend all the writings of Robert Bruce if you want to research it more.

Lucid dreaming seems safer to me. The astral stays close to the physical body, and just like using a computer to connect to the internet, one remains ‘close to home’ while potentially using the lucid dream environment as a virtual kind of interface with whatever beings/realms/energies one can potentially connect with. I think that’s safer than going astral and trying to visit those realms directly.

» So, what is the best “system” to awakening the spiritual powers?

Good question. I would say that every system has something of use, and it’s easier to find books on each system than a book that has already combined the best of everything.

Off the top of my head, the system would have to include the following:

1) Getting in touch with your heart, creativity, empathy, intuition simply by exercising it and cutting through the B.S. of the ego/insecurity complex in our minds, and allow expression of the heart of the soul (a.k.a. the spirit) within you, which is your earnest honest true Self anyhow.

2) Stimulating your subtle energy body, similar to Robert Bruce’s NEW system or Vipassana, or taoist yoga.

3) Being able to bridge the gap between your conscious and subconscious minds via a form of ‘active dreaming’, such as the method told by Theun Mares, or more popularly, the Silva Method. This requires being able to fall asleep while keeping the mind awake, so that you can enter into a controlled dream environment that acts as the GUI to your subconscious.

4) Attempting to perceive through the faculties/organs of the soul. Rudolf Steiner recommended looking at a seed and trying to see its lifeforce energy potential which should look like a pink flame, for example. Or likewise with a living plant. Being more empathic/aware of people’s emotions and the thoughts/sentience behind their eyes.

5) Distinguishing between lower and higher impulses and following the higher ones, especially during everyday tests of life.

6) Tuning up your thinking/discernment abilities big time by deep contemplation of mysteries/ideas in a clear way.

7) Making sure to breathe more, get sufficient sleep and proper diet, since bad physiology can hamper mental concentration and mood.

» A friend who is a gnostic ex-instructor said that the demiurge is not a bad thing. What is your opinion about this?
My view is that the Demiurge in its original and true form is good, or rather neutral, being the ‘potter who shapes the clay in accordance with the will of the designer, which is God’ — you could think of the Demiurge as the computer graphics card that draws the video game environment and runs it, but which is not the programmer or designer of the game itself.

However — I believe that this graphic card has caught a virus, and that part of it (not the whole thing, just a portion) has taken on a mind of its own and become selfish, tyrannical, and parasitical. I view this as precisely paralleling what happened to the human soul. At one time, it was good, serving the highest component of the human being (the spirit) as an interface between spirit and body. But then “The Fall” occurred, and this soul acquired an ego and lower impulses, which as you know, is capable of being selfish, tyrannical, and parasitical over the human being and other humans as well.

This makes perfect sense because the Demiurge is the very soul of the universe, acting as interface between God and physicality, just as soul is interface between spirit and body. If one can get corrupted, then so can the other, for both are made of the same stuff in my opinion, which is etheric and astral substance.

Thus just as a higher and true part of our being still exists, so does a higher and true part of the Demiurge still exist, which I believe is the Logos/Christ/Holy-Spirit, to use terms familiar to us. But simultaneously the Corrupted Demiurge exists as well, and has some influence over our world.

Hence our world is no longer being fashioned by just one potter, but at least two, one attempting to make it into something beautiful, the other into something ugly and self-serving. The Demiurge is ultimately just a servant though, and as far as I can tell, the Corrupted Demiurge came about — and works in service toward — negative beings who have chosen to follow the path of negativity. It is their freewill, their choosing to ignore their own spirit and instead follow the ways of matter, which is the law of the jungle, that made them pervert their creative abilities and inject the virus into the Demiurge, creating the Corrupt Demiurge.

We do a minor form of this everyday when we unleash torrents of negative emotions and hateful thoughts, which create a localized thoughtform, egregore, or tulpa that then bends probability to create events that manifest more of the same. If you imagine this happening on a more cosmic scale, then that’s what I believe is the origin of the Corrupt Demiurge.

Thus those who say the Demiurge is good, and those who say it is evil, are both correct, just that they are looking at different parts of the Demiurge. It’s like saying, is the human soul good or bad? Well, the soul has its corrupted and uncorrupted parts, due to the Fall.

» Doesn’t the act of self-indulgence represent an STS activity that drains off life energy to negative entities?

We are STS beings due to our biology, psychological structure, and soul structure while here as incarnated human beings.

But where we are, and where we are going, are two different things. We may be STS, but some people are moving in an STO direction.

However, even if they are, the fact that they still are STS at the moment means certain limitations or
requirements are present.

These can be gradually overcome the closer one gets to becoming STO, but the problem occurs when you have not yet overcome or cannot yet overcome a certain need or limitation but pretend to ignore or suppress it nonetheless, in which case it can lead to imbalances.

Indulgence is an example. There are different degrees of it. Having a cup of tea and enjoying it is an indulgence. Sinking into depravity with hookers and cocaine is an indulgence. Are these on the same level? I would say they are not. In addition to something merely being an act of self-enjoyment, sometimes it can also cause harm to others and harm to self in the long run. So you can’t just gauge an act on whether or not it pleases the self, but what its overall consequences are on the balance of one’s own life and the lives of others. This is what makes one STS act “more STS” or “less STS” than another.

If an STS act, such as enjoying tea or buying a new shirt/dress, is generally harmless and also supports one’s psychological/emotional health, then it can have a net positive effect — not by doing anything STO per se, but by preventing further imbalances (such as depression, flatness, lack of energy). Then it’s okay.

Of course, if one needs drugs and prostitutes to feel happy and prevent depression, then it’s due to some very strong and unnatural dysfunctions (such as severe addiction, demonic shadowing, emotional scars) and the source of that desire should be addressed and overcome, which is perfectly doable and necessary since even average humans don’t engage in that behavior.

When it comes to sex in general, there is a point of balance where for an individual in question (it varies from person to person) any more would create obsession and excessive loss of energy to negative entities, and any less would cause neuroticism, frustration, wet dreams in men, and unintended consequences like lust manifesting in strange and perverted ways (like what happens to men raised strictly religious, or who become priests, who repress it improperly via guilt and shame instead of transmuting the energy, and due to their guilt of thinking about women they unintentionally allow those feelings to divert onto lust for young boys instead; thereby the repression causes the opposite effect, perversion instead of piety, of what it was meant to accomplish at the outset).

Thus the minimum indulgence needed to avoid net-negative biological/psychological consequences and maintain wellbeing seems justified, and then as one matures spiritually that threshold ought to gradually lower without bad effects. The two worst things one can do is deny one’s needs while not having successfully evolved past them, and to indulge in one’s needs with voracious abandon like the left-hand path disciples do. Both are acts of ignorance with consequences.

» I am very interested in how you appear to be left alone. Is there a technique that you use to keep these forces from bothering you and stopping your work?

I actually get a lot of external and internal negative resistance, but am good about watching my footing. They can’t just kill anyone they want. It works through a process of weakening until a target has given enough consent, through repeated slip ups and refusal to correct him/herself, that he/she can be killed. If I were any less careful I would be dead by now. I almost died in 2010 but pulled through.
For instance, to take me out is not as simple as shooting me through the window. If they did that, not only would higher powers intervene and prevent it before it happened because it violates the rules, but if I did die, it would only confirm for everyone that I was right. Better to not give me that kind of credibility.

The best way they take someone out, is through maximum plausible deniability. Like telepathic persuasion so that a target gets into criminal behaviors, drug abuse, schizophrenic symptoms. (Or maybe an illness, so the at the cause of death appears natural, but that illness would have to be permissible within the karmic context of a person’s soul structure and spiritual weaknesses). If the target can be driven into suicide after a period of unstable behavior, then not only is he eliminated, but everyone thinks he was nuts. Mission accomplished. But to get to that point takes a period of weakening, say a ten step program toward elimination. I know the signs of the first several steps, and whenever they happen, I correct myself, and thus never reach the latter stages.

So I am very careful about any deviations from my normal state of equilibrium. My life is quiet enough, which I purposely did by not having any kids or psycho girlfriend (I have a very sane one) and by working at home, that even small attempts don’t go by unnoticed. And so I stay in a safe zone. Likewise, I know that if I pushed myself out there too hard, I would cross some boundary and lose some of the protection I have. For example, if I started going on tons of radio shows, made myself a real fringe celebrity, and viciously attacked all elements of the matrix that I could, the response would be overwhelmingly harmful. I stay under that threshold at the moment, more for lack of time though.

As long as I stay on my site and put up articles that people can choose to read or not read, I only get resistance in proportion to that, which is usually in the form of abduction and mind-programming to induce depression and loss of confidence so that I abandon my path. That’s my weakness. My girlfriend doesn’t have that weakness, and so instead she gets near-death attempts while driving, but something always intervenes and helps her survive it.

So in short, they can’t kill me yet because I stay in the safe zone, but I do get a lot of problems because they circle like sharks looking for the smallest opportunities. That’s why I don’t do drugs, because drugs create cracks in the psyche and soul, through which such forces can pry open a deeper attack avenue.

If I were truly disinformation, then you would see me being propped up and applauded by all the disinfo fringe media outlets — you would see me being thrust into the limelight, on Coast to Coast, speaking at exopolitics conferences, and generally be a nice good PR guy for the Greys or fulfilling some black ops agenda. Since they have subverted fringe media, it’s rare for good researchers to get on (they still do, but not as often or as loudly). It’s the disinfo vectors who get on with gusto because they were groomed for that purpose.

The exception, or rather confirmation of the above, is those with military or secret society ties who do get killed. They signed lots of papers, or did lots of rituals, which gave away their freewill. They chose, knowingly, to sign up for something that they could be killed for if they leaked secrets. And so that eliminates their protection. Examples include Phil Schneider and Dean Warwick.

The other example are those who are about to unleash technology that would completely change the world before its time and do trillions of damage to the control system economy, such as Stanley
Meyer, Stefan Marinov, and Eugene Mallove.

I only appear to be left alone in the sense that my website continues (I take precautions for that too with multiple backups, though my site is blocked on a lot of web filters). But internally and peripherally there has been a battle since the beginning. There was a very low probability that I would still be here now, but divine protection and my own foresight and prudence allowed it.

» How would you define intellect? I’m writing about how the environment programs ego into soul.

I would define it as the computational part of the soul-brain system capable of remembering, recalling, comparing, contrasting, and reasoning. It is a computer that takes given inputs and produces certain outputs according to rules and models developed since birth, which have been programmed in through environment and biology.

The important thing to remember about the intellect is that it has no “truth compass” on its own, no baseline, and its outputs are only as good as its inputs and models. If the model is skewed, the output is skewed. If the input is incomplete or wrong, so will be the output.

So for example, if a person is primarily driven by emotional biases in life, like let’s say this person was rejected badly as a young teen and developed a hatred toward the opposite sex, then his or her intellect will take that as the unquestioned input and shape the line of reasoning accordingly. That means this person might engage in remembering selectively, comparing and contrasting the wrong things, and reasoning in fallacious ways to rationalize the input. In other words, emotional irrational thinking.

The same happens in the temples of Academia and Religion when a person’s root assumptions about the laws of physics or the validity of the scripture is accepted so deeply, without question, that it then guides all subsequent computation, which can only lead to elaborate ways of defending those assumptions. When trying to debate such people, they do all kinds of intellectual acrobatics but never question or unseat their root assumptions, which are their sacred cows.

So it really takes self-honesty and self-awareness to spot what one’s intellect is doing when it uses cherry picking and logical fallacies to defend an emotional bias or wrong assumption, and it takes willpower and humility to let that go and engage in an act of self-correction. You have to be self-aware and capable of self-examination to pull this off. It’s frightening how few people have this ability. Further, the input has to be something tied to Truth, and that is none other than a keen and well-honed intuition that can spot when something is intrinsically off. That kind of intuition doesn’t come from the brain, but from the higher part of the soul (the subconscious being a gateway toward that part).

People who don’t have that connection are at the mercy of limited inputs as come from society/authority (peer pressure and group consensus), from their biological instincts (fear, lust, self-preservation, etc.), and direct programming through culture, media, religion, education.

I should also point out that there are people who pride themselves on having a strong intellect, who set themselves apart from other people who are animalistic and unintelligent and emotional — however, these very same prideful people are often missing intuition, and therefore are nothing more than computers regurgitating their societal programming. Their baseline is set by fallible and sometimes malevolent authority. Many have PhDs and Nobel Prizes. Point being, even with their
reputation, they are still blind and wrong on a lot of points because they don’t have an even higher faculty which is intuition, which becomes divine reason and gnosis when developed to its highest degree.

That’s why these floating intellects are like the three blind men; for being such experts, it’s funny how even the supposed greatest minds of our time all disagree with each other about something, proving some or all of them don’t really know what they’re talking about. I’m sure aliens would be laughing at all this if they were capable of humor, and if they weren’t suffering from the same problem in their own way.

» What do you make of the timeline shift/delay of The Wave/Realm Border Crossing, if you still support that concept of how Earth and humanity will shift upwards in evolution?

Well I know with the alien agenda, there have been build-ups and call-offs over the past decade. You can track the buildups through the intensity with which alien propaganda floods media, entertainment, music, internet forums and blogs, comments sections of websites, and so on. There was a heavy buildup in 2008 but by late 2009 that one had its rug pulled.

There was another lesser one in 2012, but by then the tide had shifted towards general caution/paranoia against aliens whereas up to 2008 it was a widespread gullibility and wide-eyed embracing of the alien phenomenon. That makes it harder now for them to pull off what they intended, which is a coming out to probably resume the old affairs they had going on prior to 1000 B.C. when ‘gods walked the earth and communed with man.’

I think all that’s happened is that some conditions or variables changed, and they merely reformulated the agendas a bit to add extra leverage.

It’s not so much the Wave that’s been delayed, but everything. Economic collapse and war, for example. Even the solar cycle got delayed. We’re still on the upper end of the downward side of the cycle, as if the sun was put on pause there for a while. Five years ago, US and Russia were ‘friends’, and now with the orchestrated Ukraine drama the stage is being set for an eventual problem. These are all arrows that point. So it’s like the pieces are still in play, just the timing has changed. If you’re going by the Cassiopaean paradigm, even they said the timing is variable and depends on where we are in our learning cycle.

In quantum physics, events can happen at a certain specific place but the timing then becomes uncertain. There is a window within which probability says it should happen, but within that window you can’t nail down exactly when. That depends on the freewill of the observer. Therefore if you treat the Wave as a macro-sized quantum phenomenon, it’s our personal and collective consciousness and state of readiness that determines where, within the window allotted, it actually occurs.

I’m not sure how big the window is, but there are a lot of trends converging toward singularities within our lifetime. Well, within the next 20 years I mean. Ray Kurzweil has his piece about the technological singularity, while others say regarding this that we could face a robot apocalypse eventually. Meanwhile climatologists and pole shift theorists point toward Earth change singularities. The wise economists likewise know the economy isn’t sustainable and we’re hanging by a thread. Point being that even without a “Wave” we are still up for some major upheaval in the
coming decade or two, if we make it that long.

Therefore to answer your question, I believe that linear time and calendar dates are not sacred, but rather it’s the sequence of events and why it’s all happening that is of importance here. Due to the quantum nature of it, the involvement of freewill adding wildcard factors, and/or perhaps due to higher up ‘referees’ seeing where we are in the game and adjusting things accordingly, the timing is variable, but I do believe there is a deadline and it’s within our lifetime.

» Is astrology of any significance in indicating a person’s true self?

The way astrology works is that if you don’t have much of a spirit, your soul is like clay that gets squished into the mold of whatever astro configuration you’re born into. But if you have a spirit, then based on your past lives and what you plan for this life, you have certain talents, traits, biases, and predispositions that are more like a hardened piece of clay that has to find the right mold to fit into.

Therefore a spirited person will be born into a time/place that fits his or her requirements and pre-existing qualities, instead of being completely molded by it. Even if astrology does further molding, that is probably chosen or accepted by the spirit as being useful or necessary for this life.

Therefore a person’s astrological profile can be indicative of his spirit’s intent for this life and what he has carried over from previous lives, or the profile can show what astrological factors have molded his malleable soul.

However, not everything in this life is 100% planned and micromanaged. And given there are only 6-7 billion people, there are not an infinite variety of choices to be born into, therefore there are some sacrifices and compromises. For example, if the only body available is one that has 90% of your requirements, but the remaining 10% means you’ll be strongly affected by the moon in a negative way, well then sometimes that’s how it has to be. Then in life, the moon makes you angry or irritable during full moons, and that’s not part of what you wanted, but you have to deal with it.

Thus astrology is not something one has to submit to, as parts of it can be fought with willpower. The other positive parts, one can capitalize upon and use. Like me being a Taurus, my perseverance has come in handy in writing some of the longer series on my site.

» I’ve had entities speaking through people towards me, and shadow entities harassing me at night. How far can I go with this before it gets out of hand?

There is a class of entities that are nonphysical and usually invisible unless you are clairvoyant or in an altered state of consciousness. I’m not sure if they are demons or ghosts, a mix of both, or something in between both. But they are quite common and since most people can’t see them, feel them, or do much thinking about them, these entities are barred from affecting most people in a direct way. However, sometimes a person is clairvoyant or did too many drugs or is susceptible to their games, and then these entities are allowed (by metaphysical law) to do more brazen acts.

This starts small, usually, some weird event, an anomaly, a sighting of some kind … maybe that’s all they are “allowed” — but if the person gets shaken up by this and it changes his viewpoints drastically, and the person begins obsessing and thinking and fearing it more and more, that person then kind of rolls out the red carpet these entities to invest that attention/energy into increasing the
strength of their manifestation and power in that person’s life. So a feedback loop begins where weird events egg the person on, and the person manifests or increases the power of these forces through their continual focus and fear energy feeding them, and so back and forth it goes and yes it can spiral out of control.

The worse it gets, the more errant/wrong thoughts slip into the person’s head, by design, both through telepathic persuasion by these entities (such as the idea that “everyone around you is a hybrid with a crystal transmitter in their heads, they can hear your thoughts, they’re just pretending to not know”) and eventually you trust no one, lose your job, end up homeless or in a mental institution, and then your life is screwed. These entities get a kick out of ruining people like that.

Meanwhile, the guy next door lives his life peacefully like nothing is happening. Gotta wonder why. Well, it’s because he’s not susceptible to these games, or doesn’t have the clairvoyance needed to see these entities in the first place, or if someone near him has his thoughts spoken through their mouths, he brushes it off like nah I didn’t just hear that, and goes back to texting on his cellphone. Why is it that one person ignores it, and another person starts shaking and takes it so seriously that he eventually becomes a basket case? Well it has to do with our soul and psychological makeup, and these entities purposely seek out those who are responsive to such taunts and tricks.

Therefore, you have to change your soul and psychological makeup to no longer be as jumpy or easily provoked by this, and so in becoming unresponsive these things lose interest. The fact is, reality is somewhat malleable and our thoughts/beliefs play a partial role in shaping what happens to us. If you had instead believe that angels were at work and that heaven is winking at you from every corner and trying to drop miracles into your path, you would instead have become a lucky person with miracles happening everyday, just because you believed it. Of course demons and angels do exist, and some degree of belief or orientation toward them is needed to make the strongest connection possible that allows their acts to become more visible in one’s life, but the point is that our mindset/attitude/beliefs or where we direct the majority of our thoughts, meaning what our outlook is on life, this plays a role in how strongly these forces can manifest in our lives.

Therefore the good news is that you can change the channel if you want, call their bluff, not respond emotionally to their provocations, and direct your interests / pursuits / kicks towards other things. The thing you should avoid is feeling like a powerless victim. They want you to think that, because they don’t have much power themselves, but if you believe you are powerless then they can control you but really it’s you controlling yourself believing it’s them. Think of it like some punks at a zoo behind the thick glass, tormenting the apes on the other side — the kids can’t actually get in there, but imagine if they convinced one of the apes that they had superhuman powers to kill at a distance — they could cause hell for the ape, but all the ape really has to do is ignore them. The punks may pound on the glass some more but eventually they leave unsatisfied.

So this is about as accurate and concise of an advice I can give you regarding these entities; I’ve gotten a lot of emails from people who have the same problem, and luckily the above solution works so you can give it a try if you’d like.

» According to researchers, it appears there is not a single case of a Christian being abducted against their will. Many have gone willingly, but none against their will.

That’s not entirely true, but there’s a lot that can be said about that.
For one, an abductee can believe in anything so long as he or she believes in it enough to derive a feeling of sovereignty, protection, and confidence from it. Doesn’t matter if it’s belief in Jesus, Yahweh, the Holy Spirit, Archangel Michael, or just one’s own higher Spirit or Krishna, Mohammed, Buddha, Odin, etc. or even He-Man or Superman for that matter.

Even without belief in such divinities, there are other techniques such as righteous anger or imagining a high pitched sound in one’s head that according to anecdotal claims can stop an abduction in its tracks. Repeat that often enough and the aliens give up. The constant between this and the previous example is that the person doesn’t allow himself to be taken over by utter fear and terror, because he has a method of keeping himself together and resistant.

Further, some ‘alien abductions’ are not aliens at all, but demonic forces screwing with a person under the guise of alien contact. Once you get into the realm of demonic activity, then yes there are angels and a Christ-like force (or rather something closer to the Holy Spirit, since after all, Jesus said in the Bible that he was leaving but sending the Advocate in his place) that can offer protection if called upon. This is no pitch for Christianity, as even a Muslim who calls upon Allah will receive the same divine intelligence that serves all of humanity regardless of what name it is called. But this assistance works better if the person has himself together, which is why the first point I mentioned above is still valid.

And lastly, some demons are either lost souls / dark ghosts, meaning former humans who devolved so much in life that they slid into demonhood after death, or else they are artificial thoughtforms spawned by the past couple thousand years of religious terror that people felt. This energy agglomerated into semi-autonomous entities that seek more of the same energy, and today’s alien mythos is a good cloak for them to wear when terrorizing people beholden to the possibility of that. This also means, however, that this subset of the demonic hierarchy believe in the validity of the Christian paradigm as outlined by the Church over the past two millennia, and therefore things like crossing yourself or chanting lines from the Bible or sprinkling holy water induces repulsion and terror in them. If you brought over a demon that has its past history in Hindu India spanning centuries, then lines from the Bible will likely have no effect on it, as that’s not part of its programming.

So back to aliens. To paralyze you, they need to invade your aura using their own aura and take control of key substructures within it. They have to lock onto your pattern and track with it. The more willpower, confidence, and sovereign feelings you have, the more you hold a tight grip over your own aura, thus preventing them from overriding yours. Conversely, if you suddenly shift to a pattern they can’t reach, or that breaks their pattern lock, then you slip out from their paralysis induction. If they can’t override it, they can’t paralyze, and then you are free to react physically and kick them in a head if you were so inclined, and that breaks protocol because it endangers both parties so they have to call off the whole thing.

» I haven’t ever seen you comment on mental illness. I wonder, what are your thoughts on western medicine’s diagnoses on mental illness (particularly bipolar).

Western medicine doesn’t believe in consciousness, spirit, the soul, afterlife, destiny, karma, ghosts, demons, aliens, etheric and astral fields and energies, chakras and meridians, possession and entity attachments, or astrological influences. For that reason, it consists of squares trying to understand
If you consider the human being as a composite of physical, etheric, astral, and spiritual components interacting in a dynamic open system, then there are many places in that system where dysfunction can creep in. But no matter what the root cause is, psychology and psychiatry today wants to project it down into a two dimensional understanding. Therefore what it calls schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, etc. are various parallel dysfunctions lumped into the same category.

For example, a person without an active spirit component will lack self-awareness, self-examination, and self-correction and therefore have no counterweight to the pull of programs, biological and hormonal impulses, and other physical influences, and so like a ship without a ballast this person will wobble and bob about unpredictably, flipping over from time to time. Emotional swings from extremes to extremes, irrationality, and so on. That would fall under the bipolar classification.

Meanwhile another person has a fully formed consciousness but is highly deficient in certain nutrients which disrupts the brain neurotransmitters and creates erratic emotional responses that swing about depending on which neurotransmitter is impaired. This person too will be put into the bipolar camp.

Meanwhile, due to drugs or childhood trauma or dabbling in black magic, another person has picked up a few too many discarnate entity attachments (ghosts and astral soul pieces) that now reside inside her and periodically take control when they get strong enough or are triggered, and she then switches on a dime into a dark and depressive or aggressive mode, then they let off and she switches back to a better mood. Some of that might also be classified as bipolar.

So how is it that three different colors are all labeled the same shade of gray by western medicine? Well that’s modern medicine for you.

Same thing with schizophrenia, there are different types and different causes and some of those are conflated together into overly simplified subtypes of schizophrenia by the orthodox. There is a big difference between your mind-reality feedback loop growing out of control and causing a quantum catastrophe that makes things like aliens, MIBs, black helicopters, strange people following you, and other weird phenomena start to happen in overdrive … and living in a perfectly mundane world but some critical error in your logical processes or root assumptions or some damage to a brain region leads to a disconnect between external reality and the internal model of reality, leading to irrationality and false conclusions that might be classified as paranoid schizophrenia. And there’s a difference between that, and having a demon attached who hijacks one’s audiovisual neural circuitry via etheric interfacing and induces hallucinations such as hearing voices. And there’s a difference between that and being unwittingly clairvoyant and picking up on the streams of consciousness of the people in your neighborhood. And yet, all of these modern science wants to just call “schizophrenia.”

It really makes you wonder what the perfectly healthy human being would be like that fit none of the diagnoses in the DSM-V. Would probably be the most boring, mundane, cliché, matrix drone in existence. Which tells you something about what Western medicine is secretly pushing for.
I would like to ask if you think that malevolent beings from other planets telepathic hacks into human minds to instill feminism, communism, religion and humanism to cause division to one day invade planet Earth when we are defenseless.

The human mind and human societies have many exploits and backdoors, perhaps by design. Also, there are too many people being born without spirits or who are just very immature souls here on a thrill ride to experience human existence. Well good for them, but if these same people then end up supporting the Matrix Control System and voting for its political candidates, that screws things up for everyone else. So the point is that the human race is flawed and corrupt and easily manipulated.

The same way a master mechanic knows his engine well, aliens know us well. That is, they know the part of us that isn’t the part associated with true freewill, awareness, intuition, and sentience. The latter all come from spirit, which is beyond the aliens’ understanding. When a person fails to use that higher component and relies instead of reflexive mechanical behaviors in thought, speech, feeling, and action, then this person is both predictable and controllable. That defines the majority of the human race.

These false ideologies all make use of the various blindspots in the human psyche. Stage illusionists know human psychology pretty well enough to misdirect attention and thereby pull off their tricks. Well, aliens have that down to a precise science. Not only aliens, but demons also know people quite well, and also certain elite secret society groups and cryptoterrestrials that have refined their control techniques for millennia. Communism, fascism, socialism, and modern liberalism all play upon certain pathologies that a sector of the population is guaranteed to have. I won’t get into them, but they’re the reason there’s that saying about being able to fool most people most of the time.

Now, whether it was specifically aliens who came up with, say, feminism or whether it was demons who hatched the plot, or whether it was elite human social engineers — it’s hard to say where it all began. I mean what if a human elite group came up with the idea to achieve objective X for their own gain, but little do they know that aliens had been manipulating them to use as stepping stones toward objective Y? Who then is responsible for it? I’d say a bit of both.

The name of the game is inversion, corruption, imbalance, and reaction. Take whatever is the most optimal positive future for humanity, and find ways of inverting it, corrupting it, unbalancing it, and provoking people toward blind mechanical reaction. This goes for sexuality, spirituality, social interactions, technologies, education, economy, defense, science, medicine, and so on.

For a long time things were unbalanced toward the darker aspect of male energy, hence the violent oppression of women. And then like wild-eyed monkeys Western society reacted the opposite way, overshooting equilibrium and moving into an equal and opposite imbalance toward the darker aspect of female energy. Well, how about a balanced society made up of the positive aspects of male and female archetypes in harmonious balance? Obviously that’s the one thing they don’t want, and the one thing society seems to be incapable of achieving. Why? Because it takes everyone being aware, smart, and sentient to not act like reaction machines. Only certain rare societies found throughout history, who were spiritually homogenous amongst themselves (as in, no spiritless or mischievous and immature souls padding the population) were able to carry this out.

So anyway, even the alien agenda itself is just a subset of the war between positive and negative spiritual powers, and all this inversion and corruption is really a form of spiritual warfare meant to
erode the connection people have with objective spiritual ethics via their heart/intuition/spirit. By eroding that, by destabilizing society, and by corrupting it to a point where consensus reality itself becomes twisted to the point of possibly manifesting, attracting, or invoking apocalyptic disaster scenarios, the negative alien agenda has an easier time penetrating through that metaphysical “blood brain barrier” and turning Earth into a zombie planet of theirs. From the spiritual warfare perspective, it’s about completely consuming and enslaving the light.

» Do you consider that the Earth grid originates as part of the Matrix Control System, or more likely perhaps that it has been partly hijacked?

I did experiments with hypnopopmic hallucinations, which I consider to be a makeshift form of temporary clairvoyance due to the subtle body being not fully locked into the physical body yet when snapping so quickly out of sleep. I’ve seen weird things during this state, most which were just environmental etheric effluvia hovering about. However, I managed to do this in the parking lot at night once. When I opened my eyes after just falling asleep I saw a black square grid in the sky, black against the dark blue of the starscape. I did this a couple more times that night and saw the same thing, or else symbolically a square metal cage grid in the sky. Recently I heard from a clairvoyant who as a child said she could see a dully gray grid crossing the sky and thought everyone else could too until they asked her what she was going on about.

So I do believe there is a control grid overlaying Earth. However, this may not be identically the same one that the ancients aligned their sites with. It could be a graft, a foreign construct, placed upon Earth to control its natural grid which would be akin to the meridian lines of the human body.

I view the grid of the Earth, the natural one, as a harmonic standing waveform of energies, or else as some kind of crystal lattice in the etheric with node points here and there. Whatever principle is behind the meridians in our body, may be playing that out on a larger scale. Yes, I do think it’s been partially hijacked, but not completely.

It all depends on what reality actually is. Are we really a planet floating in space, in a galaxy in a universe… or is there some deeper thing going on, perhaps a matrix-like collective dream, or some hyperdimensional quantum hologram that’s merely projecting all this, where these grids are just the struts and trusses of the façade. I don’t know the answer, yet.

At the moment (or for the past 5 years at least) I’ve been researching who these ancients were, and what their role in engineering our civilization has been. The origins of civilization as we know it, and the advanced societies from 5,500 B.C. onwards, the megalithic builders, global navigators, ancient Vedics, proto-Indo-Europeans, their affiliation with the cone headed people and giants of olden times, and what took place in Egypt/Levant that lead to the myth of the Israelites and all that came from it. I think either aliens were involved, or an ancient offshoot of the human species who became so intelligent and advanced that they hid from the rest of humanity and became its puppeteers, like some psychoactive parasite controlling the brain of a host.

» How do second order beings, archons, or astral parasites control synchronicity?

There’s a difference between a pure synchronicity like a magazine being misdelivered to your mailbox that might have “[your name] enters danger!” on the cover (in reference to some character on a TV show), and say, people all day long coughing standing next to you or saying things that cryptically alluded to what is on your mind. The latter can be induced through simple telepathic
nudging, either via your own subconscious influence on them, or via an entity doing it. So beware that when people are doing the synch via certain behaviors directed at you, that’s on a lower level than pure synchronicity.

I don’t believe aliens or ghosts or demons are able to directly and easily create the higher type of synchronicity because that requires a long chain of cause-effect and precise delivery of the message to you that originates back in time some ways. Like the magazine cover, some person thought it up a month ago (influence #1) and then mailman had to misdeliver (influence #2) and that takes more finesse than just scribbling a telepathic command into the mind of a coworker.

That said, thoughtforms/demons/ghosts do have energy fields that can increase the probability of basic processes in an area. For example, demons can set up camp at a road intersection and pump it full of their toxic energy, and that creates an altered region of space where an accident is more likely. Another type of energy might make fires more likely, or cause computer glitches. Astrology like mercury retrogrades might involve such modulations of the etheric “matrix code” making up the fabric of our reality.

But again, these are crude things and not precise synchs that would require full knowledge of every variable and surgical control of the timeline, which only higher entities (including our higher self, to which our subconscious is a doorway) can enact. Like if you get a certain fortune cookie message, how would a demon know which cookie contains the message, and how would it be able to make the waiter grab the precise one… that’s too much precision for it.

That’s why things like pendulum dowsing and Ouija board and trance channeling are more susceptible to corruption than tarot cards, I Ching coins, and other purely synchronistic methods of divination, as the first are more easily influenced by an entity merely nudging the auto-motor functions of the arm, whereas tarot is harder to influence that way.

The higher beings who have precise control of space-time can easily affect the outcome of shuffled cards or thrown coins, by contrast, and I think they are responsible for the purer types of synchs too. The higher part of our consciousness is at their level, or close to it at least, and is able to also precisely alter our reality, just that if we pump fear or paranoia into it then it carries out those instructions too, for it is our personal demiurge.

» How would I find a mentor or school or society that would help me reach my goal for ultimate spiritual growth? How do they make themselves known to new recruits?

The real ones, the real deal “beyond the matrix” types, who are of a superhuman nature… those come to you when you are ready in their eyes, and they cannot be sought or bought or fought. You become ready by sheer personal spiritual development and proving your mettle in standing for goodness, truth, self-mastery, etc. in the face of this world’s control system. They are psychic and listen to higher divine commands and come to you when destiny calls for it. You prove yourself not by trying to prove it, as some Christians do by being compulsive philanthropists in hopes that God will grant them eternal life as a reward, but by what your natural actions, reactions, chosen areas of focus, and personal spiritual accomplishments say about your level of maturity. It’s not a valid test if you know you’re being tested and act accordingly.

There are others like myself who just try to be all around good people, who know some things and
try to help others, and these you might find as you already have by coming across my site and emailing me, or contacting someone on a forum who genuinely seems to know what they’re doing. Or more often, you might encounter them through synchronistic means by praying/intending for someone who is wiser, more positive, and more enlightened than you who is willing to help you out and bring you up to speed. If such a person exists, you will then cross paths with them at the proper time, almost as if by accident. That can happen sooner, easier, and more frequently because such people are closer to your level.

» What are your thoughts on the more esoteric applications of music and sound?

My aim has been to figure out the hidden science of music that would allow intentional engineering of various effects in the audience, effects ranging from changes in consciousness to improvements in health and evocation of the deepest feelings. On the most basic level, we know that different intervals have different feelings associated with them. The minor third sounding sad, major third merry, perfect fourth regal, perfect fifth powerful, and augmented fourth alarming.

I find it amazing that these boil down to simple ratios of frequencies, 2:3, 3:4, 4:5… How is it that two numbers — cold abstract mathematics — can evoke a response from the rich and sacred domain of feelings? Math and feelings seem like total opposites, and yet there is a connection. Then stack these intervals and like mixing primary colors you get secondary and tertiary colors (chords) that encode even more moods and feelings.

Well, aside from encoding feelings/moods/stories, I’ve heard of another kind of music that is able to act directly on the body, on the subconscious, on the source of will, on matter, energy, space, and time. It’s not music necessarily meant to sweep you off your feet emotionally, but a kind of objective music that does something to the foundation of our existence.

I first heard of this in the books of Gurdjieff, the Fourth Way founder and mystic. He talked about the power of “inner octaves,” which as best as I can tell are the octaves between notes, so basically microtones. The intentional use of microtones, generally in monotonic music like you hear in Arabic / Indian / Mugham / Tuvan music, seems to be what Gurdjieff had in mind. Further, in my study of drumming and groove, microtiming is also important in getting the body moving. So microtones and microtiming are involved in this objective music.

Further, Gurdjieff mentioned in his book “Beelzebub’s Tales to his Grandson” an anecdote about a mystic or occult scientist who was able to manipulate matter and biology using sound. The mystic said there are two types of sound, one that has the power to do this, and another that is the ordinary sound we know. Well, from my study of physics, the kind Jason discussed with you, I hypothesize that sound with a longitudinal electro-gravitational component is what Gurdjieff may have been what Gurdjieff had in mind. The 19th century inventor John Keely is another example of someone who was playing around with the more esoteric type of sound, his strange resonator machines being capable of effects unexplainable by conventional physics.

So when you send sound waves through air, you get longitudinal pressure waves making up the sound. This is common knowledge. But air molecules moving aren’t that special. However, if the source generating the sound is piezoelectric, charged with static electricity, or if the medium has a net charge (such as a charged plasma, or air charged with negative ions) then these sound waves will move those charges and some of that energy will then turn into longitudinal electro-
gravitational waves, which may have further power than just ordinary sound waves. Then, if you use microtones and microtiming on top of it, you might be capable of inducing some unusual phenomena. Even intervals/chords sent through that mechanism may generate unusual effects.

Overtone singing (khoomei) is another mechanism that can generate weird phenomena, even on its own; once I demonstrated it to my girlfriend in the kitchen, my voice projecting toward the back wall of the kitchen near the ceiling; well, our cat sat in the kitchen staring at that spot on the wall for the next hour like she was watching television. I might have opened a portal or something. We were having paranormal phenomena during those years anyway, so I think my sound was just modulating, simulating, or activating what was already a “conditioned space” of sorts.

Anyway, to explain this further, I need to mention that in occultism it’s common to divide subtle energies into the etheric and astral energies, or etheric and astral bodies, etheric and astral planes, etc.

The etheric component is the one closest to physicality, and is a kind of “metadata” or “html code” underlying physicality. It not only encodes physicality but has aspects beyond the physical. It gives structure to physicality and is associated with form, energy, patterns, repetitions, and maintaining the ordering of the quantum processes that drive biology. For example, it’s what triggers neurons into firing when consciousness thinks a thought; it is what keeps DNA functioning in an orderly way, in contrast to death when the etheric leaves the body and then the body falls into disorder and decays.

The astral, meanwhile, is the seat of emotions, passions, impulses, sentient perception, and other psychological/soul energies and power. The way it’s usually explained, plants have only a physical and etheric body and are only dimly conscious and don’t have emotions and passions and other such higher feelings. They are more of a stimulus-response type awareness. Animals have an astral body, however, and we can see their desire to move, live, react, act, etc. as a consequence of that. Humans have all these and then some higher components that also give us self-awareness, true freewill, and the ability to retain our core identity after death and into a new birth per reincarnation.

The basic structuring of a human being would be something like: body -> etheric -> astral -> spirit/consciousness with the etheric/astral acting as the interface or transducer between the heavy physical and the totally nonphysical spirit/consciousness component. Some traditions divide these into further layers, with the mental and causal components added between the astral and spirit layers but I don’t find this to be necessary.

Well, the objective music Gurdjieff talked about acts mainly on the etheric/physical body, while the other kind of music that stirs the feelings with sweeping harmonies is more of an astral thing. And of course, pure beat/rhythm acts on the physical (or at least the physico-motor circuitry in the brain) to get the body moving. So there’s a correspondence between types of music and what parts of the body/soul/spirit they target.

Therefore it stands to reason that a clairvoyant who has a pretty well-developed etheric body, with etheric faculties and organs activated, who has control over his/her etheric field (the aura) and the etheric field of the environment — that this person can generate “sounds” within that etheric field. For example, instead of just whistling a tone, also imagining it and radiating that intent out through the aura. This would have similar, if not the same, effect as the electro gravitational longitudinal
Therefore a combination of sound and etheric field manipulation via consciousness may have been the key through which various individuals/groups throughout history have accomplished seemingly miraculous feats. Feats such as levitating huge stones, changing the weather and manipulating the elements, curing disease, and so on.

Now, exactly which microtones, according to what microtiming, at what frequencies to use... that I don’t know yet, the above is what I’ve deduced from researching a wide range of fields. But it’s enough to show that modern music theory is just the tip of the ice berg, a fragment of what is a complete and awesome science of music.

The ancients seemed to have had knowledge of this. The Great Pyramid (and all the other megaliths during the stone/copper/bronze ages) was constructed with some kind of sound technology to levitate the stones, and tuning forks were a big part of it. But if you just applied tuning forks to a boulder today, I don’t think you’d get levitation effects because the etheric / longitudinal aspect is missing.

That said, the inner workings of the Pyramid suggest the thing was constructed as a machine. The inner chambers were filled with a plasma gas ignited by whatever was in the King’s Chamber (probably the fabled Ark of the Covenant, which was said to be a highly charged object that would electrocute people). The Grand Gallery in the Pyramid, according to Christopher Dunn, contained numerous tuning forks or Helmholtz resonators, which would have generated a rich spectrum of frequencies similar to how your vocal chords do.

At the top of the Grand Gallery, and before the King’s Chamber, is a little ante-chamber containing a series of vertical stone slabs that could be raised or lowered, which would modulate the spectrum of sounds the same way your tongue and teeth and lips do when you turn those vocal chord emissions into vowels. So when that vowel sound was pumped through that charged plasma in the Pyramid, you had specific longitudinal waves entering the King’s Chamber and interacting with the power source in there. Above the King’s chamber are various horizontal stone slabs, loosely laid down so that they could resonate, and that is reminiscent of the sinus cavities in the human skull. Thus the Great Pyramid was based on the human vocal system, but for the purpose of generating an etheric/longitudinal wave.

A friend of mine figured out that the vertical mechanical resonant frequency of the Pyramid matches the 7.8Hz Schumann resonance of the Earth. This is based on the height of the Pyramid and the speed of sound through limestone. The weight of those stones bears down on the pink granite of the King’s Chamber, which is piezoelectric, which is capable of converting those mechanical vibrations into electrical and thus longitudinal waves, not to mention the gravitational waves from the stone itself shaking. So whatever the Pyramid was designed for, it must have had something to do with the Earth, the ionosphere, or our biological dependence on the Schumann resonance. That’s as far as I can speculate on the purpose of the Great Pyramid.

Anyway, all this is to show that there is much more to discover in music, both in the composition of it, the execution, the source of sound emission, and the medium in which the sound travels.

» I find it all but impossible to achieve a balance between the spiritual and the material. Every time
I try to participate in the pursuit of ego gratification whilst remaining present, my good habits quickly deteriorate and I feel drained and depleted.

We are composite beings with higher and lower aspects, sort of like rider and horse. The rider might be some noble knight on an epic quest, but the horse just wants to eat, drink, and reproduce. As long as the rider is seated, both move together for better or worse depending on who has control.

It’s a mistake to confuse the horse with the rider, or believe they are the same thing. What I mean is, a person might have certain faults or addictions that overcome them and then they feel shitty about themselves. Well, if they stopped identifying with that “other” part of themselves, which is just some biological/social machine ultimately, then they can pick out what is the true, untouched, transcendent, and sovereign part of themselves. Then instead of thinking “I’m good! I’m bad! I’m good! I’m bad!” in a bipolar way, they can always be cognizant of that transcendent core that’s always there. That forms a stable seed that they can keep building on, reinforcing, growing. It should form the core of their self-image, a kind of spiritual fortification within their psyche. Viewing it as a combat between this higher integral self and the lower machine is how one can avoid identifying with, and thus excusing/rationalizing/defending, the latter.

So stated plainly, you just have to be self-aware and catch yourself during these moment and remember that it is not you. If it were you, you wouldn’t feel drained, depleted, uncentered, and regretful afterwards. Now, most people aren’t perfect but it’s not an all-or-nothing thing. It’s more a “do your best and never give in” kind of thing. If you fail, pick yourself back up and redouble your efforts for next time.

Whenever I write, speak, or do something, I’m self-aware of whether or not it’s serving some cocky, contemptuous, ignorant motive. If it is, then I view it as a parent would view a bratty child, a kind of “No, you’re not gonna do that.” If needed, I will even think of the opposite. If it’s contempt for something innocent, I’ll try to see it from that being/person’s point of view and come to an understanding. This is only possible if I have dissociated myself from that impulse, and my ability to do so proves it wasn’t actually my true Self.

Regarding the emotion of hate and whether it is a vice, some things are worth hating, such as hatred of the outright lying and deception by people who know what they’re doing and have chosen the dark side. But hate has a cost, and it’s only worth it if it motivates you toward action to right a wrong. If you can’t do anything about it now, that hate will just poison your soul and cause health issues in the long run, which is what so much of news including alternative news websites try to induce anyway, for they are acting as unwitting tools of the Matrix Control System despite exposing its lower tier conspiracies.

I found that a touch of sorrow helps with empathy. If you don’t ever feel sorrow for someone or the world, then you’ll never want to put yourself in their place or so much as lend a helping hand or word of advice. So while on the one hand I do see people like Trump supporters as idiots who would cheerfully ruin this country with their misplaced intentions, I can simultaneously see the flip side of why they’re doing what they’re doing, and it’s sad.

» What are your thoughts and opinions on the subject of black goo and the black goo remedy, morgellons, and black magic nano technology?
Diseases manifest more easily in people whose thoughts/vibes are a match to that disease. Morgellons tends to affect people who are especially neurotic, prone to victim mentality, and who have a paranoid exasperated feel. Whether it’s nano tech or some space organism or some mutated natural organism, I can’t say for sure. Nanotech exists, but evidently it isn’t powerful enough to override us all since even you and I are having this conversation.

I think there are metaphysical laws in place that prevent certain things that happen outside of their proper place and time in some people. So disease designers, if they really know what they are doing, would have to tailor an organism to work within those restrictions. Thus, in this case, maybe it can only infect people who have a certain vibe/mindset.

That said, there is a lot of B.S. in this subject too. Like the one about swishing wine and spitting out all these ‘worms’ and stuff, well that’s really stupid. It’s actually the acids in the wine pickling the skin in your mouth and tongue which then sloughs off when you spit it out. Whatever truth there is in the that field of study, it’s heavily contaminated by paranoid fantasies and deliberate misdirection.

» What makes synchronicities (artificial or otherwise) far from being random, but meant for us to notice?

Well the fact that most people never notice it or care, means that the synchronicity generators have targeted you more strongly in addition to you also noticing it more strongly. If they tried it on someone who didn’t care or wasn’t observant, they’d probably only vaguely notice and then try to ignore it or distract themselves with something else, making the whole thing redundant, and thus the synchronicity generators having a bird’s eye view of the timeline and probable futures wouldn’t bother with those people anyway. Therefore, your receptivity to synchronicities plays a role in whether they are even generated or not.

I don’t know the exact mechanism behind a synchronicity other than it being a modification to reality that affects no one but you in any significant way. For example, if I were part of an editing team for an important book, or say some new edition of the Bible, if I were to cut out a chapter then I’d get fired or yelled at. But if I change the word crimson to maroon, no one would care except for maybe one person who hasn’t heard from his mother in a few weeks after she said she was going on a boat tour among some islands and he’s been fearing she’s marooned on some island; he picks up the Bible book and sees the word maroon when he opens it. To him it matters, it has meaning, as it relates to his situation. For everyone else no big deal.

And because of that, such changes are “allowed” because they don’t disturb this “program” we call reality. We can experience synchs, distractions, etc. because these fall within the allowable malleable aspects of reality. Reality isn’t as stable as it appears. It’s a quantum cloud of possibilities continually taking shape, held in continuity by inertia, the laws of physics, and people’s programmed expectations.

But reality fuzzy around the edges, and within that border of uncertainty things can change or get weird. The more your everyday path in life deviates from the herd, the less you “track along” with the main and stable “lane” of probability, and so the weirder things might get. This can be for positive or negative, depending on which way you deviate. If you deviate in a kind of “the world is out to help me” belief system then the instability can come in the form of positive synchs, and the
I think negative entities hijack, amplify, try to initiate, or somehow piggyback upon this mind-reality interaction, which is why pivoting ourselves at the subconscious or emotional level can in turn pivot the nature of our everyday experiences.

» What kept you from becoming damaged despite everything that you’ve gone through in life?
Most people who have been abducted are wacky.

According to my alien contactee friend, he said that encounters with aliens in life tend to have a fracturing effect on the mind, and thus many people tend to be wacky/loopy. I’ve seen it in such people. I can feel it, intuitively, how their mind feels to themselves, and yes it’s a bit dissociated and wacky. The human mind isn’t suited to dealing with the cognitive dissonance it brings. Also alien experimentation and programming adds fractures to the mind as well. And the etheric/psychic field aliens emit can distort a person’s etheric body too, leading to further damage.

In my case, well I would say it was mainly bout self-awareness, self-examination, self-correction, and introspection. When engineers build a robot that walks, they build a feedback circuit into it that says if you tip one way, then extend leg or arm the other way to correct balance. That’s a feedback loop. Likewise, if you are self-aware, then if you begin going off the rails one way you can then use willpower and logic to create an opposite course of action to correct yourself. This means looking within and being honest with yourself, and writing stuff down to stay objective, and being aware of when you’re not being objective… which means, being aware of the root feelings and assumptions behind your choice of action or feeling or perception. If you can pull that off, then it’s difficult for anything to knock you off kilter.

Most people are externally focused, so inside they are easy to yank around by psychic/hypnotic strings by third parties. And those who are introspective, often don’t differentiate between what feelings arise from ego/trauma/programming and genuine discernment and intuition. And so they, also, are easy to nudge into depression or paranoia or whatever. Thus the key is to draw a line between what is your real self, real intuition, real logic, and truth … and what is not, even within your own head, and to treat that other part of ‘you’ (the false / ego part) as an enemy to stay watchful over.

Again, most people don’t have that ability because there are too many distractions in life and not enough challenges that force them to perform that level of discretion by turning their mental telescope inward. Also their level of consciousness-intensity plays a part, which may vary from person to person depending on their “soul age” or perhaps how much of their total consciousness dipped down into the body this time around (in terms of reincarnation), or how much they lost due to trauma, or how much they failed to develop due to distractions in childhood, or even brain structure differences that impede attention and focus.

» What do you make of skeptics saying the abduction phenomenon is just an artifact of sleep paralysis?

Sleep paralysis involves waking from sleep and being unable to move because the body is still asleep. If symptoms only involve temporary paralysis and nothing more, then we can say with confidence it was likely a sleep paralysis episode. However, if the person also recounts hearing
voices, feeling a presence in the room, or seeing entities, then two possibilities exist: either these are hallucinations, or they are perceptions of objective phenomena. They might be hallucinations if the mind was only partially awake and hence some dream processes remained active and induced hypnopompic hallucinations that overlaid upon physical perception. On the other hand, alien visitations and abductions reportedly also involve paralysis and the presence of nonhuman beings. Aliens have telepathic and telekinetic abilities and are able to modify an abductee’s nervous and subtle energy systems to induce paralysis for control and safety purposes. Superficially, these two phenomena overlap and so skeptics make the convenient but fallacious jump toward discounting alien abductions as mere sleep paralysis.

The difference between sleep paralysis and alien encounters comes down to how many elements are present in the experience for which sleep paralysis is not a fitting explanation and vice versa. If one wakes to see a parade of dancing bananas floating before one’s face, then since this has no correlate within the abduction or occult fields and is just plain ludicrous, that points toward it being a hypnopompic hallucination. But if one instead sees the ubiquitous gray aliens, humanoids in jump suits, reptilians, or shadow figures fitting the behavior and characteristics of demons, and more so if there happen to be multiple eyewitnesses, if the abduction takes place while one is driving, if there are anomalous injuries or bodily marks afterward, if pets react traumatically, etc. then sleep paralysis becomes increasingly less viable as an explanation. That skeptics want to dismiss it all with two dimensional excuses shows they are naive at best and biased sophists at worst.

» So what do you think about all these sloppy false flag mass shootings?

Well for starters these staged shootings happen just prior to import court decisions regarding gun laws and police state stuff, so the shadow elite are just trying to circumvent the checks and balances in place. So they’re trying to set up tyrannies / police states, using these fake events as justification.

But there’s more to it. I suspect that the ultimate agenda for this nation is to create a civil war that balkanizes (splits up) the USA into pieces so that external invasion becomes possible. How do you bring down a nation that is heavily armed? You get that nation to aim those guns at itself. Boom, auto immune disorder. Once weakened, then it wouldn’t be as difficult for Russia/China to sweep in, or for Europe/UN to come in under the guise of humanitarian ‘liberation’ or ‘security’ purposes.

The way the civil war would happen is by crossing enough of a line that armed people rise up. But for that to happen, they need to be angry and well armed, and that’s what all these token liberal threats about gun control are about, because instead of curtailling guns, all the administration has done these past seven years is create a gun buying panic. So they’ve actually increased it. It’s commonly jested that Obama is the greatest gun salesman of the century, based on the sales statistics.

Plus the whole prepper movement, survivalist shows on TV… it’s programming to create a survivalist/insurgent mindset in the public. Not the whole public, just the more right wing leaning folks. Which is what they’d want, since you can’t have a civil war if everyone’s on the same page, so you need a 50/50 kind of division (in actuality it’s 30/70) so one side is the government supporting Joe-coppertops, and the other the increasingly anti-authoritarian / libertarian types. If it ever happens that some kind of round up, detention, confiscation happens, then that would be the trigger for radicalization of the freedom movement. And this, in turn, would lead to enough chaos
and decentralization that from such chaos a new order will arise.

Though like I said, as we’ve seen in Egypt and Syria and Iraq, etc. when one dictatorship is brought down, you just get chaos and warlords in their place, and they then justify the invasion by other powers who then set up shop. That’s how one sovereign regime is replaced by foreign ones, first through internal war and revolution, then invasion. I think that’s what’ll happen with the USA.

The rest of the world will have their own thing going on, but all of it plugging into a master plan. Europe will be balkanized and turn fascist when ethnic tensions and fear of cultural annihilation by migrant swarms reach their snapping point. All this, in concert with economic instabilities brought on by climate and resource disruptions, and all this as a prelude to alien invasion under the guise of benevolent intervention.

Despite all this, there will be positive underground support networks, conclaves, and sanctuaries for the spiritually awakened. It’s not all doom and gloom, just collapse of the status quo. It’s only doom if you’re clinging to the past.

» Do you think practicing universal loving kindness would be good for countering alien abductions and negative programming?

Negative programming is designed to cut you off from your heart/spirit/discernment, and to pull you deeper into the STS or negative mode of existence. Therefore the practices regarding the heart, which can be found in Buddhist and Sufi studies can help counteract that, yes. Further, by raising your vibes this way, you come closer under the jurisdiction or respect of divine/angelic forces, who then can offer more protection.

And also, being in an extremely negative and paranoid mindset can enhance abductions through a reality-creation effect whereby you resonate with the types of scary experiences that these beings wish to enact, and thereby it allows them or empowers them to carry these out. Hence by staying in a more positive and empowered mindset, they are less likely to do the more overt types of abduction phenomena like the really crazy experiences you sometimes read about.

Can it stop them completely? Not sure about that, but it could cut out 90% of it. The remaining 10% might be due to any remaining karma, weaknesses, lessons-yet-to-be-learned, and physicality of your body that allows them to get away with certain things still. However, no sense in making it worse by having poor spiritual hygiene or a negative mindset.

Therefore the answer is, yes the practices can reduce a lot of it, not all of it, but enough that it makes a difference and is therefore worth pursuing.

» What are the possible meanings of various crop circles?

I believe crop circles are mixture of the following sources:

1) Genuine hyperdimensional benevolent intelligences using orbs that emit energy/gravity waves,
2) Black ops military using microwave/gravity lasers from satellites or cloaked crafts,
3) Human crop circle making teams doing it for sport, and sometimes under the inspiration of those hyper-D forces mentioned above. Not just boards and ropes, but more sophisticated but similarly simple methods.
So if you try to interpret circles made by black ops military, or by human teams doing it solely for sport, you will either get nothing meaningful or else decipher a thinly veiled message that the makers intentionally put in there but disguised just enough to give it an air of mystery and seeming to be ‘alien’ in origin even though it’s not. In the case of the military, they could do it for disinformation purposes. The Chilbolton Glyphs are a good example of that.

That leaves only #1, and the inspired ones of #3, making genuine circles with a higher meaning. This meaning, however, I don’t believe necessarily has intellectual content, but might be more archetypal patterns meant to impress into the subconscious and into the etheric body of the planet or collective consciousness, similar to Reiki letters being traced onto a patient.

So there is the challenge of figuring out which are genuine and which are not, and then among the genuine whether there is intellectual content there or if it’s more archetypal in which case there is nothing to decipher since it’s sub-conscious in its actions and doesn’t “spell out” anything in a way the intellect can grasp.

» Do you have any thoughts on numerology?

Numerology is normally used as a means of divination and reading hidden meaning in words and phrases. The way I see it, our reality is rearrangeable in many ways by intelligences outside of linear time. If they are beings who respect freewill, then the less some change violates freewill, the more easily they can make it. Thus they can very easily change or mold from the very beginning anything that doesn’t really matter to us whether it’s one way or another. Meaning, the things we overlook, or don’t know any different concerning it.

Here’s an example. The language you know was taught to you since you were a kid. You don’t really question why yellow is spelled with “ow” instead of “eau”. Same with your name, what if your name was Harry instead of Barry? I don’t think that would violate your freewill. Thus I think these kinds of things are changeable by beings outside time, at any time.

Alright, now what if you devised a system of interpreting the small details, reading meaning into them? Then that allows these forces to embed decipherable meanings in otherwise small details that people overlook. Hyperdimensional steganography. I mean, who normally cares about what number a name or word or phrase adds up to? No one who doesn’t know about numerology. It makes no difference to them. But if you make it have meaning for you, then I believe the very spellings of words can change in order to ensure it has the right numerological result to communicate the appropriate meaning. The same can be done with anagrams.

Another aspect is the internal structure to numbers, how they seem to have a meaning behind them. Considering that numbers are internally rigid in their relationship and structure, and not like human language which is subjective, I think the order there was instilled by the very founder of our reality. Maybe the Creator, or the Demiurge if you go by the gnostic system. I think it’s this being embedding clues in the very structure of existence, of its own existence. Dropping clues that our reality is intelligently constructed and giving clues on the intended purpose of things.

This is a tough question… as we know from playing around with numerology there is something to it, even with anagrams… but trying to figure out how it works, why, and who put all that order in…
I can’t be certain…

» If beings must become positive to transcend the material world, then how can negative beings exist outside the 3rd dimension? Do they use technology or did they come into existence positive and turn negative? And if they turn negative why aren’t they forced back into the material world?

My view is that both negative and positive beings can transcend the physical universe with its linear time and three dimensions of space. So maybe you misunderstood me, or I worded something poorly, to give the impression that only positive beings can transcend the material world.

Notice, too, that as long as a being is even partially physical, technology must be used to leverage themselves in the face of physical limitations. Thus aliens fly around in ships and use technology instead of just doing it all with their minds. So both negative and positive aliens are beyond our level of materiality, but are still fettered with a less restrictive but still existent type of physicality.

Angels and demons are examples of completely nonphysical beings. And correspondingly, they don’t use technology. You don’t ever hear of an angel with a ray gun, or a demon flying around in a spaceship. They just appear and disappear, by themselves without gadgetry. Aliens use gadgetry because they are partly physical to varying degrees.

That said, positive beings do have less restrictions than negative ones, when it comes to both the alien and demon/angel level. For instance, negative aliens might be far more dependent on technology to accomplish their goals, than higher positive aliens who are more skilled at doing things with just their consciousness. The reason is that negatives are going against the grain, against the flow, and this extra resistance means they need more technological leverage to do what they want. Technology is a way of using the rules to do your bidding. Thus they can use it to hack, infiltrate, exploit, find loopholes, and so on. They cut themselves off from the Creator and don’t get access to that infinite energy, that synchronistic support, that warmth. So they have to scrounge harder and be more cunning to succeed, thus their reliance on technology. Additionally, they lose more and more freewill as they go on, because they bargain it away to higher negative powers in exchange for greater power over those below… It’s a pyramid Ponzi scheme, the dark hierarchy.

So what this means is that, if you go far enough up the levels, you do reach a point where positives keep evolving and growing, but the negatives have reached the end of the line because they’ve exhausted their remaining spiritual energy. So that’s the point at which negatives can’t go beyond. But they can indeed go WAY beyond the level of materiality we are at. So relative to us, there are definitely higher negative AND higher positive forces.

» Why do aliens look like familiar Earth organisms? Why would they look like lizards or familiar Earth organisms?

According to abductee reports, the places that aliens claim to come from are all in our local galactic neighborhood. My best guess is that we are all genetically related thanks to a common alien creator group that seeded variations of the humanoid template on different star systems within proximity of each other. By proximity I mean within 100 light years, versus 100,000 LY being the diameter of the milky way so that’s .1% of the diameter and close enough for genetic horseshoes. Reptilians may not have evolved on their own. They could have been a human type hybridized with a reptilian animal species. I don’t know what the original humanoid form must have looked like. This would
all explain why we can breathe each other’s air, even interbreed, communicate, and why they’d have an interest in us. If they were plasma lifeforms from another galaxy I doubt they’d be here or be interested.

From abduction accounts, we know that there are Nordic aliens who looks similar to us, can breathe our air, and have had sexual relations with humans that produced pregnancy. Reptilian aliens likewise have raped human women but I’m not sure whether that’s lead to pregnancy. In any case, the Grey hybridization program likewise indicates that these alien types have DNA, which itself is odd if they were truly independently evolved beings from another world. Their humanoid morphology likewise indicates we are related.

So what I’m saying is that various planets may have had their own life sprouting on them naturally, but through intelligent forces, one big bundle of life could have been dropped on all of them, or perhaps some cross-pollinated with others. Either way, I do think there is genetic cross-pollination between Earth and other worlds. As far as Reptilian aliens go, if they are humanoid-animal hybrids, then the reptilian animal may either be an Earth animal, or perhaps another reptilian-like animal on another planet that has common artificial ancestry with those reptilian animals of Earth.

Even if life were only seeded on ten planets total within 100 light years, as long as intelligent beings traveled between those worlds, there is good chance of genetic mixing among them.

» How did the aliens arise? Were they genetically designed just like we were?

Considering lots of animals got where they are through seeming natural evolution, it stands to reason that some aliens out there likewise may have evolved naturally. It’s just that once they become intelligent enough to colonize other worlds and do genetic engineering, then you have some intelligent races being the product of genetic manipulation and evolutionary acceleration. The human species being an example. Too many oddities in our genetics and rapid evolution for it to be natural.

Maybe you’re familiar with the Drake Equation, which estimates the probability of intelligent life in the universe. It fails to take panspermia or genetic manipulation into account, which dramatically increases the chances of life being out there.

» If the NWO is alien, then why do these b**tards do everything to cover up UFO research? Is it not more logical to assume that maybe the Controllers are humans and do not want us to know about dudes bigger and badder than they are?

I think it’s humans and aliens collaborating, with primarily aliens at the top, and mostly humans at the bottom of the NWO pyramid. That pyramid is the capstone of the bigger pyramid of which we the people are at the bottom. I agree that, at least as the military/official level, those who know of aliens didn’t want the word to get out because they knew that the human power structure is royally screwed in the face of overwhelming alien power. Last thing they want to do is admit to the people that things are NOT under their control. That creates panic and loss of faith, and there goes their job security.

Now, next questions are:

1) Why are aliens also covering up their existence — why do they only allow sightings that are
easily rationalized away, or only done out of sight to select people? Why nothing so prolonged and indubitable that every last person on Earth is forced to believe they exist?

2) Why are both aliens and secret government groups nonetheless releasing info, creating sightings, and slowly acclimating the public to the alien presence? — by that I mean the controlled sightings, the drip feeding of the population through movies, TV shows, documentaries, mainstream fluffy abduction books…

3) Why are these forms of controlled release contrary in their conclusions to the truth being discovered by deep researchers who know that the alien presence has a strong nefarious undertone? Why do these controlled sources consistently refuse to address: a) the idea that human military and aliens are working together, b) that aliens are involved in creating artificial humanoids, in cloning and replacing human targets, and c) that the alien presence is pervasive and in our face, in our lives, and that they engage in mind programming and posthypnotic programming on a massive level?

Well, I think it’s because both the human and alien elements of the NWO have a plan in place to program the population and prepare them for the eventual coming home party, or the coming out party, of the alien-human control structure — and to welcome it openly. That’s what the alien disinfo from the 1960s to 2000s has been trying to push people towards. To make them like the human/alien controllers, and to be unaware of the darker side of the alien presence.

Thus, researchers like John Mack, Karla Turner, and Phil Schneider get killed while disinformants like get pushed into the limelight.

» Why would the aliens need covert control? Why fear us? Is this not a case of Bambi meets Godzilla?

It’s not that they fear for their safety, so much as fearing loss of investment and efficiency.

I mean, consider a con artist who infiltrates a company in order to pull off a huge embezzlement scheme. If he does it covertly, he has a chance of pulling it off because everyone plays their part and hands him the cash with naive trust. But if a slip up makes his act overt, then all that game playing and setting up the pieces ends in ruin. Then if he really wants that money even with everyone knowing about it, he’d have to do it by force. It would get bloody and costly.

So it’s simply a matter of efficiency. It takes far less energy and resources to influence covertly. It’s because they derive their power from what we give them through our own ignorance. What you don’t know, can be used to influence you. If you know it, and you’re aware of it, then you can resist it. Otherwise you think you’re acting of your own volition, when in truth you’re being lead. Ignorance is our fulcrum upon which we can be pivoted. Thus if they position themselves at the pivot point of an entire civilization, they can steer it with utter efficiency, stability, and security.

If they went overt, then instead of running itself, the system of humanity would turn its eyes toward them. A portion would indeed resist. Efficiency breaks down. Force then is required to overcome that resistance. That resource is costly. Using too much force makes everyone scared, uncooperative, and more willing to resist in the future. And the whole investment scheme goes down the tubes.

Thus if they want to go overt, they would require the respect, awe, and blind obedience of
humanity. Only then can they come into the open. By going covert long ago, they allowed mankind to develop its own technology, its own police state infrastructure, and its own global government so that down the line, after humanity was sufficiently programmed, the aliens can go overt and simply take over the steering wheel. If they stayed overt long ago, they would have had to provide the technology, training, guidance, manpower, etc. to bring the primitive native population up to standards. But now, Earth is ready to go and the aliens didn’t have to expend all those resources. They just had to covertly influence things here and there.

» One could argue that MILAB’s (military abductions) suggest that UFO’s are an Earth-bound manipulation more so than ET. How do we foreclose on that possibility?

The military/government involvement in abductions is only a recent phenomenon, probably starting in the 50s and really taking off in the 60s. The UFO phenomenon itself goes back to ancient times. Like even in the late 1800s there were mass airship sightings, which clearly weren’t human military in origin. That’s just one small example. There are medieval reports too of UFO phenomena (see the Nuremberg UFO Battle of 1561). Go back further to Mohenjo Daro, Sodom and Gomorrah getting nuked, every civilization claiming it was started by some foreign superhuman (“gods from the sky”), etc. and the idea that it’s all the work of the Military Industrial Complex starts looking like a joke.

So it goes back in time quite a bit.

Now, abductees of both military and alien and mixed groups can learn to distinguish between them. There’s a definite difference in the operational methods, the nuances, the feel, effects, technology, etc. between the two. For instance, only alien abductions are capable of abducting only a person’s soul and leaving the body behind. Military abductions are always physical in some way.

However, I do have reason to believe that 1) a lot of UFO sightings are experimental military vehicles (that’s obvious), and 2) that the military is engaging in abductions and sometimes stage fake alien abductions too (to cover their own tracks, and to do damage control for their alien collaborators).

Incidentally, these fake abductions always portray aliens in a positive or benign light. I think this is part of the human groups collaborating with aliens toward a common negative agenda, and thus the human groups making aliens out to be good guys (or scapegoating some alien group that only function as disposable accessories to the real alien conspirators).

The agenda like I said is to portray themselves as our saviors, so that they can come out into the open now that conditions are ripe for that. I think reptilians are disposable accessories, and that the real conspirators are likely human-looking like us. The Nazi drive to create an aryan super-race may have been an attempt to emulate them.

» Why would really advanced aliens need our DNA? Could they not synthesize their own? Why not simply create robots to serve them?

Exactly, I don’t think they actually “need” our DNA. However, I think they need us to be hybridized with their DNA, in order to make us more like them, or at least more like the Grays which are their robotic slave servants. In fact, I think Grays themselves are creatures made from synthesized DNA.
So that’s what the Grays are. Problem is they aren’t capable enough. Here’s the thing — if you synthesize DNA to create something that looks human, sure you may have a walking talking human, but only one that’s good for manual labor, physical security guards, and doing whatever they are told because they are like empty clones. You can’t just make DNA from scratch and expect a soul/spirit to incarnate into it. They need to have soul/spirit as well in order to do things that mere spiritless/soulless clones cannot.

For instance, with my mind I can form a visualized intent for, say, a material item that I truly need… if it’s not an utter violation and bad idea, then within a few days I start getting synchronicities that help bring it about, or give me a very great deal on them. That’s some part of my soul/mind having an effect upon reality, bending probabilities in certain ways. There is no way that a barely conscious robotic organic lifeform can do this. Now I could violate divine law by using this power for STS purposes, which requires more effort and magickal “hacking” but could allow me to, say, manifest political power and elite wealth by bending the timeline. Again, a robot couldn’t do this. Thus I have a tactical advantage.

And so, what I think is happening, is that aliens want to create a hybrid race that allows the human soul/spirit pool to incarnate into it, be locked into it, and yet have those bodies/genetics be controllable like the Grays currently are. This would create a soldier/servant race with far greater usefulness than either pure humans or pure Grays right now.

» What is the motive for the aliens. Raw materials? Some religious motivation on their part? I base my understanding of their motive on:

1) what they’ve been telling abductees and contactees,
2) what their abductees and contactees and “public relations” personnel have been telling the public,
3) what I have experienced of them personally,
4) what other fields of research not directly associated with aliens, but intersect with them, suggest about true alien motives.

Now, with (1) they’ve been telling abductees and contactees that they need us for our genetic material to help revive their over-cloned race. They say they want to hybridize humans with Grey aliens to create a new race with best characteristics of both. They want to replace humanity with this new model.

That’s a half-truth. Abductees have indeed seen these hybrids and I think I’ve encountered a couple in my lifetime living in everyday society. Some hybrids may only be a few percent alien and the rest human, and are raised in human families to two human parents. It’s scientifically possible to be biologically related to both human parents but have a third genetic component inserted as well. What I noticed about these people is that they were emotionally muted, kind of mentally quiet and blank, but also very intellectual. I sense that they lacked a moral compass and were easily programmable or moldable. For the most part they were nice people just kind of oddly mechanical in their quality of consciousness, reminiscent of a power transformer that just hums quietly with electricity, or perhaps the steadily spinning disk of an idling hard drive.

So genetically altering mankind to be more Grey-like in nature, that’s something I can say with
confidence they want to do. Grays are obedient, programmable, very psychic, very intellectual, but easily accessed telepathically like some remote computer terminal for remote operation. Hybrid humans would therefore have those qualities. They would be robust and physical like humans, but more easily controlled and less able to resist. Thus they would be a more hive-minded kind of work force with additional abilities like psychic powers. I would think they’d be used for creating a new force conquer other planets, or just to mine Earth to death for its resources. Just a guess.

With (2) for many decades the disinformation was telling the public that aliens are nice, that we should form a one world government under their leadership and the leadership of human alien hybrids who are more advanced than us stupid animalistic humans. So they want to lock us down under alien control in the near future, and that’s an overt form of alien control. The covert stuff was necessary while civilization was in its shaky growth phase, but now a lock-down phase is possible and profitable.

With (3) I have personally experienced evidence that they are interested not only in biological harvesting, but also etheric/astral/psychic energy harvesting. They feed on emotional energy, the lifeforce energy of people. We are like dairy cows in that sense. This lifeforce energy is fuel for them that allows transdimensional maneuvers like entering realms/timelines that they normally can’t access, or in other ways transgressing boundaries that normally keep them in check.

With (4) I mean fields like occultism, Fortean phenomena, what Islam says about the jinns, or Christianity says about the War in Heaven and spiritual warfare, etc. Basically the idea is that ultimately these highly negative aliens, or whoever controls them, is in it for power, control, and lifeforce energy. They want to control souls, and assimilate beings into helping them assimilate other beings. To absorb more and more into the energy pyramid scheme, with these demonic beings at the very top feeding on all the energy.

So I think energy, power, and control is the ultimate motivation here. But not power by force, rather power by influence. To ensure maximum energy harvest from maximum worlds, to control the maximum number of souls for the maximum length of time. And that grand goal has a long sequence of steps required to attain it. Like on Earth, if we get turned into some controllable hybrid race, which would be a way for overt alien control to succeed without resistance because people are genetically handicapped at that point, then we would soon become suitable to go out and do the same to other worlds.

I came across another theory which I think is also viable, which is that aliens are time travelers from several probable futures all competing over which one will win out in the end. Or rather, say in the future some group has exhausted all its resources. They try to create a parallel timeline with fresh souls and resources that they can move into and feed off of — to do so requires changing the past and getting those souls onto that timeline. Well, so they come back into human history, pretend to be gods, establish what ends up becoming the New World Order, hybridize the population, and create that new future they desired from the beginning. I think that explains a lot, that ultimately it’s an archetypal parasite finding very clever ways, using cover manipulation, genetic engineering, and time travel to expand its food source.

» Have you considered that there might have been past human civilizations before 10,000 BCE that hybridized themselves and went in to space. Such would be human, and thus DNA compatible with
us? Could they have returned? An EBE hypothesis would not be necessary in this case.

Precisely, that would explain the Nordic alien types. The Grays and Reptilians are harder to explain, unless they are genetically engineered creations by the same people. On the other hand, we know from UFO sightings that their ships are incredibly fast and can move through solid matter, thereby avoiding the issue of interstellar collisions and radiation. There’s no reason why they couldn’t leave our solar system and find another planet to visit. And if so, then no reason why beings from other planets couldn’t likewise visit our world in the past 300,000 years. It’s possible that an ancient advanced offshoot of the human race has indeed gone off-world, and made alliances with other aliens from other worlds, and therefore both right now seem alien to us.

» What do you believe what happens when you die?

First is an out of body experience. You might see your life flash before your eyes as the etheric body separates from the physical. Then you find yourself hovering over your dead body and maybe get to move around a bit.

At that point things start to vary.

Some people eject from their etheric body straight away enter straight into the light which they should see somewhere above them. That takes them into the astral and spirit realm where they undergo a more thorough life review for some time.

Otherwise, if they continue sticking around the physical environment, the etheric body starts disintegrating within 3-7 days. If they were particularly dark in life, they could be solicited by demons during this period. At that point it’s possible for them to suck energy from living beings in order to keep their etheric body from disintegrating. Then they become ghosts or phantoms, Earth-bound spirits. They can also attach themselves to animals of vulnerable humans and become spirit entity attachments.

Otherwise their etheric body dies and they increasingly lose touch with physical reality and begin “dreaming” as they shift from the etheric to the astral body and start entering the astral planes. So things become more dreamlike for them, which eventually becomes the more thorough life review.

In the astral planes, they run the risk of being ensnared by astral predators pretending to be priests or tribal gods or whatever appeals to their belief system. These are demons and other negative discarnate humans. If they died with heavy emotional baggage, psychological addictions, or programming, they can get stuck in these make-believe astral plane environments that appeal to that. There they stay until their astral body is sucked dry and shrivels away and they awaken like from a coma into their deeper, true, more impersonal spirit-centric consciousness. Then they’re free to finally move into the spirit realm.

In the spirit realm, having awoken from their previous stupidity, they have the foresight to plan for their next life and I guess get counsel or meet with other spirit beings. They see what more needs to be done and learned, and feel the call to return to do it right. So they are born again as humans eventually. Only, in many cases, to screw up again, and thus reincarnation keeps repeating.

» When I asked you about what the higher self is you mentioned the word “perfection”, what exactly do you mean by the future perfected version and how do we reach perfection?
Perfection means having none of the flaws of mortal man, none of the ignorance, biases, selfish drives, shortsightedness, temper, egotism, foolishness, etc. and instead being as close to godlike and angelic and powerful as possible without losing your individuality… having accumulated as much wisdom as can possibly be gained by an individualized soul. Strong, steady, aware, balanced, wise, understanding, poised, and free from limitation.

We can’t reach that in one lifetime. I mean, we can indeed reach perfection as far as human potential goes, but there are greater forms we can take that allow further expansion and perfection after that. So in this life, perfection comes down to knowing the difference between what comes from ego/biology/social-programming and what comes from spirit/heart/wisdom, and consistently choosing and acting from the latter. It also means to conquer your day more and more, having fewer moments where you’re being mindless, foolish, or ignorant… and that includes sleep time where we normally lose awareness of ourselves and do silly things in dreams. It means watching our thoughts and feelings to the same degree that we watch what we say and do. It also means striking a perfect balance between compassion and wisdom, love and discernment, heart and mind… for instance, being so loving that you ignorantly feed a psychopath and drain all your resources is foolish and not something met by wisdom or discernment. Likewise, being so unloving yet discerning that you become paranoid and stand-offish while being cold inside, that’s not good either.

» Is your higher self in the sixth or seventh density and can you please explain the differences between the densities?

As best as I can tell, yes, the Higher Self is in lower 6th density. Right around the cusp of 5D and 6D. This is going by the definition of the densities according to the Ra Material.

3rd is where we are. It’s where individualization of the soul occurs, and the choice made toward aligning or rebelling against the Creator.

4th is where the chosen alignment/rebellion is expressed in full. There is still physicality but it’s fluid and more complex. Aliens are in this category.

5th is the first density without any physicality. It’s entirely ethereal. The astral planes are centered around this density. It’s where people stop over when they die, a.k.a. the spirit planes. Animals too, same as 4D beings. Thus the astral plane has various levels corresponding to the various densities, and is like the central elevator shaft of a building that goes up through multiple floors. This is my own definition of how the astral relates to the densities. But only those who have graduated from 4th density and transcended physicality entirely stay in 5D as native denizens instead of mere stopovers.

So at the top of 5D and going into 6D is when evolution as an individualized being alone cannot go any further. All has been squeezed out of that curriculum. So the next evolution is agglomerating into a soul group. This is not the same thing as a group soul, where there is only one soul that splits off parts into separate expressions, like is the case with animals. Rather it’s numerous perfected individual souls working together to continue evolving as a group. That is what most of 6D is about. So the Higher Self is the last and final perfected state of the individual soul/spirit before it moves on into the soul group. As an act of service, it reaches back and helps out all of its past incarnations, which are always active.
Thus for us, the Higher Self represents our future, final, personal, perfected Self. A pole star, so to speak — our direction North toward greater spiritual perfection. We can try to embody it, like Jesus did, and thereby be much more than we currently are. But that doesn’t make us identical to the Higher Self, as we’d still be going through 4D and 5D before reaching that state in full. But tapping into the Higher Self and trying to think, feel, speak, and act like it helps move you in that direction.

After 6D, I subscribe to the Cassiopaean definition, which is that one merges into the Creator and achieve union with all existence. And that this is where evolution ends for the spirit. Not that it gets wiped out and dissolves, rather the Creator who was within that spirit the whole time awakens to its full infinite self, having had the whole path from beginning to end now in its repertoire.

» What are your views on Aleister Crowley? Crowley was quite an interesting character, and his material seems like cool material to draw from.

Well, Crowley chastises the stupidity of 3D false dichotomies, like the kind found in politics or social tradition or religion, to pose his transcendent metaphysical view as the logical alternative. But the trap is that beyond the 3D dichotomies, there is a higher duality — higher negative, and higher positive. Crowley’s material delineates the path of higher negative development, basically how to serve self at the expense of others and finding ways to justify it to oneself.

So he does this a lot, presenting the higher negative alternative to lower common fallacies. That is, 4D STS as the only alternative to 3D STS/STO, so higher vs lower. That’s fallacious black and white thinking. One example is taking a concept like “love” which, to ordinary undeveloped 3D people is just some sentimental hormonal surge and thus animalistic, whereas Crowley defines it in a higher context which I think is close to truth. But, then he goes and puts in a twist or disclaimer that deviates a seemingly positive concept toward negative ends.

For instance, the positive path would mean following your spiritual will and destiny in a way that harmonizes with others and makes consideration for them and the system as a whole, whereas Crowley says, “Every man has a right to fulfill his own will without being afraid that it may interfere with that of others; for if he is in his proper place, it is the fault of others if they interfere with him.” — in other words, do whatever your “True Will” wants, and if it hurts others then too bad for them.

Another example is his idea of “True Will” — it’s a transcendent kind of will that doesn’t stem from social programming or animal impulses, something beyond the regular ego mind’s whims. Well, there are all kinds of subconscious impulses that seem to transcend common will, that come from some place deep and mysterious. They can be divided into two groups, those that stem from spirit, and those that stem from a more demonic sub-ego level. The latter can be quite inspiring and exciting and mysterious, which is what the Nazis tried to tap into, and if Crowley defines that as “True Will” then of course it seems like a good alternative to mechanical habits and social programming. But what about the other “True” True Will? The kind that actually comes from spirit and works in consideration of the good of all? See, that is left out Crowley’s system.

Anyway, I think Crowley’s material is good for the “higher” aspect, so long as one understands it stems from the negative half of a duality that tries to present itself as, and therefore suppresses awareness of, the higher positive half.
Another thing, I don’t care much for elaborate rituals and convoluted symbolism. That stuff is necessary when you don’t have divine backing but want to have your way anyway and thus need to “hack” your way to results. Ritual magick is hacking to break into what is disharmonious to the total system. Just like a hacker you need to know code, scripts, algorithms, etc. to be successful. But that’s not the only way to be successful. You can do it legitimately too, which is the higher positive path.

» What is your position on the Jewish role in the NWO. Some say its all them, some say it’s not them and that they are actually being used. What do you think?

I believe they are being used. The true NWO elites aren’t Jewish, but light-eyed Aryan types descended from the ancient Phoenicians, Akkadians, Dacians, Druids, Brahmins, Tocharians, etc. They are the closest genetically to the negative Nordic aliens that you hear about in abduction and contactee literature. Think of the Queen of England, the Nazi supermen, or the Rockefellers for instance. Thousands of years ago these bloodlines employed indigenous people (Semites, Egyptians, Meso-Americans, Southern Indians, Paleolithic farmers) to be their power base.

Aliens are the next highest up on the pyramid above the human elite, and thus the top of the human portion ought to be closest to the alien types. You never hear of Space Jews except in Mel Brooks parodies.

Seems like Jews have been thoroughly programmed and used to play a servile role to an invisible elite. Scapegoats, frontmen, henchmen so to speak. Not all Jews of course, I’m talking about the corrupt leaders and blind followers. Every race has its corrupt leaders that are like finger-puppets to an invisible hand. I’ve known Jews who were normal and good people, but then again they weren’t the elites of their kind, just the average middle parts.

The whole creation of Israel was supported by the Nazis. I’d think it serves to corral them into one area, turn the world against them through their own abusive behavior garnering world wrath, and then frying them in a nuclear holocaust.

If you read the Old Testament, their origins depended on a piece of alien technology (Ark of the Covenant) and some psychopathic being that commanded their leaders through it. Thus I think Jews have been played from the very beginning. So those who say the NWO is a Jewish conspiracy are being outsmarted by the true conspirators.

» Does prayer work? And if so, why do they only respond when you ask for help? Is this to do with the rules of free will?

Well I think prayer works in two ways: 1) by what you attract via your own mind, and 2) by what is granted to you by a higher being who answers your call.

Of course, the higher being would know your mind and heart, so if you are begging from a place of chosen weakness or ego then it’s not going to help you.

Commonly, prayer tends to be a form of begging to a higher father figure to grant you some help. I suppose if you are earnest and sincere, then your call will be heard and answered. But it’s also possible that an attitude of victimhood and terror that accompanies it, attracts more of same via process #1 mentioned above.
When I pray, it’s more like “Thank you for… I hereby request that ……” rather than “oh please please please do this…” Just to let it be known what I need, while respecting the freewill of the higher being. I think prayer should be done from an attitude of humility but also assuredness.

They don’t only respond when you ask for help through prayer. Sometimes I was going about my day thinking, “would be nice to have ___” and then forget all about it, and later that day it manifests for me. This has happened a few times. I think something saw my genuine need and arranged it. I didn’t have to get on my knees and pray. It was all about the level of need and sincerity behind it, and the future outcome of it.

So if you’ve done all you can, and still need a bit of assistance, then you can ask. Asking, more so than commanding or pleading. Another form of prayer is gratitude and acknowledgment to the Creator. That in itself can attract more things to be grateful for, thus it’s a good practice to do.

» Ok here’s the thing that I disagree with, or am having a hard time accepting. Your concept that there are both aliens and demons. What makes you sure that demons are not using the concept of aliens as a disguise for their actions?

As far as I know, demons are spirit beings who inhabit the darker levels of the astral planes, the hellish nonphysical realms. As such they have no physical bodies, physical environments, and don’t make use of technology. They can exert physical force in a telekinetic manner, and are able to possess/inhabit people, if they are powerful enough. But the main point being that they are of an occult, metaphysical, nonphysical, ghost-like nature for the most part. They are also opportunistic feeders who run around like sharks for victims to torment.

Contrast this to aliens who show up on radar, leave trace remnants on the ground, implant physical devices, use real technology that the government has attempted to reverse engineer with some success, can be recorded on video camera (UFO vids), and show up in ancient mythology, religion, and folklore as various sky gods who came down to kickstart civilization. So with them, there’s a more physical, technological, long-term agenda. They aren’t necessarily opportunistic feeders, but more like long-term manipulators. Also, there are alien groups that teach a pro-Christ (not in a religious sense, but the same ethics Christ promoted), pro-Wisdom, anti-Demon type of philosophy.

But, I know of examples where demons pretend to be aliens. And they have limits, so they can mimic but not pull it off fully. For instance, they can’t manifest physical ships. So if a target who’s being harassed by demons pretending to be aliens, they might induce in him hallucinations of ships flying over the city, etc. but what he sees never actually affects the environment in terms of radar traces, actually cutting through the air, being seen by others, or showing up on video because it’s mostly in his head.

Also, the demons doing this have only one goal in mind, which is psychological and emotional torment. I know this one guy who fell into this trap and they told him he was being tested and had to obey everything they said… they commanded him to chase after the ship he believed he was seeing, across rivers and fields, through swampy areas, thorns, etc. and the ship would keep moving running him ragged. That’s an example of sadistic torment.

The highly negative aliens are either possessed by, or in league with, demonic forces. But there is a difference between the two. As I said, the demons are fully nonphysical, while aliens are sort of like
us in the sense of having bodies and technology. Imagine if humanity continues as it does, often possessed by demons… what if mankind “evolved” another four thousand years and became physical legions that are technology-enabled subordinates to the demonic hierarchy? That’s perfectly possible. So you see, future negative humanity is on the level between current humans and demons. Likewise, right now there are aliens that are in that in-between state. And I have reason to believe there are positive aliens between the levels of humans and angels.

Angels and aliens also have their differences. I’ve had some experiences with angels, demons, positive, and negative aliens; therefore I know there’s a difference between them. So if aliens don’t exist, then angels are also pretending to be aliens, which I find ludicrous. When demons pretend to be aliens, it’s just window dressing without actual real content. Like they might tell you empty words about coming from this or that planet, but they don’t have any real technology or wisdom content to back up the idea that they’re actually alien-like in their advancement. A lot of channeling nowadays is done by negative beings like demons pretending to be ascended masters or whatever.

The line between negative aliens and demons is very blurred, however. But away from that line, I do see there are definitely demons, and definitely aliens as well.

» I’m also wondering why you throw out the entire Bible and take only the gospel of Thomas.

The Gospel of Thomas consists mostly of extracts from the other books of the New Testament, so if it doesn’t ring true then the Bible shouldn’t either. I throw the rest of the Jesus story out because everything else about the Jesus story that isn’t in the Gospel of Thomas is precisely the stuff that, to me, seems to have served the political and pagan occult interests of the Roman Catholic Church. You know, the Sun Cult that crafted most of the Jesus story, 12 zodiac signs around the sun = 12 disciples around Christ, the cult that made December 25th his birthdate even though that was a pagan sun ritual day having to do with the Winter solstice and so on. If you boil the teachings of Jesus to their core essentials, you have the Gospel of Thomas. It’s about the redemption of the Fallen soul and how it may return/enter the Kingdom of Heaven.

Not that I ignore the rest of the Bible, just that there’s more corruption there than not. The Bible as a whole is a big composite of positive, negative, and neutral aspects. If you’re filled with Spirit, you can find the wisdom-filled messages of Spirit in a TV Guide. Truth is everywhere, and if the Bible is as corrupted as I believe it is, Spirit can nonetheless give you “x-ray” vision to see the truth behind it without swallowing the B.S.

» I wonder if abductees are programmed at a subconscious level to be more disposed to accept “cataclysm and peril” as some sort of timeline dynamic manipulation? A way that they can try to steer their consciousness onto that timeline.

That’s a good point. It’s happened through cult, religious, and channeling networks that the entities are always inducing an expectation of imminent doom, really trumping up the fear and incapacitating people that way.

I see two types of programming or “education” happening in the alien field. One is the ultra-doomy types where the target just gives up or becomes obsessed with survivalism and putting all life on hold, to wait for the end. That one seems like a timeline steerer through consciousness steering. The other is a more informative “let’s get you trained and ready for upcoming emergencies… here’s
how stay calm… here’s some medical training… if things get tough we’ll offer some help, blah blah.” I’m not really aware of any alien groups that claim all will be peachy in the coming years, so maybe cataclysm will indeed happen, but it’s people’s reactions to it that are being programmed. Let’s say spiritual solutions are key, then a high doom mindset would neutralize that.

These abductors could be time travelers from those apocalyptic futures, who are trying to ensure that their timeline happens because they are the ultimate beneficiaries. There seems to be some kind of timeline war going on, or competition over what future happens. There’s an undercurrent of “those who survived the changes, are the ones who are now being abducted before the changes” like some kind of Terminator plot.

The military abductors, some who work with alien factions, seem bent on creating a sleeper army of super-soldiers who will survive and, I assume, establish some kind of order favorable to these black ops groups. Some fascist technocracy, which then would indeed evolve into a highly negative timeline. These abductees get the military, martial arts, criminal arts, survivalist type programming.

Meanwhile, I think the more positive alien groups are programming some people to be ready to counter various alien deception scenarios and function as beacons of stability if things get topsy turvy.

» Where can good news be had if we are constantly sieged out by both 3D and 4D forces? Where can one draw strength to not become critical?

Mostly in our personal victories, faith in the future, and spiritual devotion to ideals and principles that are eternal. You can carve out a pathway to heaven even while surrounded by hell.

The news is full of distractions-of-the-day: cheap thrills, hypnotically engaging dramas, and sensationalism. It’s usually about things happening to other people whom you’ll never meet, problems you’ll never cross paths with, and therefore designed to rile you up with no outlet for doing anything about it.

All it takes is a quick glance at the headlines and a little investigation into new developments that could intersect your life and you need to be ready for, but beyond that, news is among the may things that waste people’s time, money, and energy.

The real positive developments aren’t evident in the news except occasionally when some police state measure or corruption is exposed and disabled, but the real positive gains are underneath, behind, between, and beyond what becomes aware to the masses through manipulated information sources.

The thing is that our world is an intersection of positive and negative realms, positive and negative futures. The matrix media sources try to get us focused on only the negative aspect and make us feel powerless in its grip. But meanwhile, the positive is embedded in the same reality, within and around us. We only have to notice it, set our hearts toward it (while keeping an eye on the negative too, since you don’t want to become blind to anything), and it then takes more root in our lives. In fact, once our lives are going better, we have more hope than ever.

Like I said, pathway to heaven through hell. It’s a matter of choice. Reality is somewhat fluid to our thoughts, and the core basis of our intentions, focus, and devotion is what seeps into reality and
becomes stronger — therefore, if you keep your hope alive and set sights on the end goal of a perfect, spiritually liberated world, and work toward it, it will work its way toward you. Otherwise it withers, or at least your connection to it withers and it moves on without you. It’s this faith in a divine plan, in a happy ending, that’ll keep you from letting depression or cynicism disable you. See, even if it’s just a psychological device bordering on wishful thinking, compared to malaise from being overwhelmed by negativity, it’ll make you all that more effective at making a difference since you’ll have more energy and clarity.

Since you can only affect what’s in your sphere of experience, I would say that all your hope and disappointment should rest on the results you see within your own life and those you’re responsible for, rather than on problems and people you truly cannot affect as you hear on the news. If everyone did this, the world as we know it would be covered with everyone doing what they do best, which is improve their slice of reality.

» The Matrix has got me isolated, and in a country run by psychopaths, with most people asleep and either incapable or unwilling to wake, my life’s not working. I have to have a good life for myself, and be able to act in favor of the good future. Suggestions?

As you know, there are deterministic and synchronistic factors behind current life circumstances, and deterministic and synchronistic ways to change them. If one isn’t helping, more of the other can.

The deterministic solutions are all action oriented. You applied those when fending off the psychopaths and applying for school. But then opposing deterministic factors like the economy crashing put a halt to that, and the dominoes have continued falling right up into your current situation, which I’m sorry to hear about and hope is just a temporary setback.

Question is whether there are any further outward physical actions you can take, or whether synchronistic solutions must be used to bend probability enough to give you a needed breakthrough. One thing I see a lot, is people attempting to move forward deterministically, but getting held back by synchronistic opposition, aka bad luck and things not working out in a highly improbable manner despite them doing what seems logical and should work according to conventional expectations.

Such situations require two things: 1) making sure that the synch opposition isn’t due to you stubbornly pursuing a path that is ultimately harmful and, if not, then 2) resorting to synchronistic solutions.

I don’t know your situation well enough to say what exactly is going on, but on the deterministic side of things, you’d have to do what any person off the street would recommend, aka job hunting, resume sending, attending local job/career oriented events and networking, etc. trying to sell yourself to potential employers. That’s the way it’s done in this Matrix, you fight your way to the top, using your awareness toward cunning and strategic actions. Or at the very least, go somewhere, do something, different from normal routine, in order to break the inertia and allow an avenue for new opportunities, that works on both a deterministic and synchronistic level and helps break the ice.

Or, you could try bending probability a bit. You said that you’ve been trying some reality creation
with spotty results. I know the Cass group rants rabidly against the idea of it, saying it’s a form of self-delusion and “buffering” against the harsh reality of life, and that all you need is objective awareness. But they’re stuck in the deterministic frame of reference and are entirely clueless about even the very thing the Cassiopaeans taught, the idea of FRV and realms and how that relates to your learning path and thus your set of experiences in life.

Point being that the root assumptions, core programming, fundamental givens that we have regarding the way life goes, is the way life is synchronistically biased to go. Like I said there are deterministic factors as well that determine how life goes, but the synchronistic aspect is where the “4D” comes into it.

From a traditional occult perspective, it’s about the thoughtforms you have generated, and the foreign thoughtforms from others that have surrounded you, that work like little demiurges upon your slice of reality and shape your experience. From a psychological perspective, it’s the energies and beliefs in your subconscious that do the same thing.

Either way, I know from experience that the fulcrum of the future partially rests on this pivot point at the root level of our minds. By turning ourselves at that level, we change course in terms of the stream of experience that comes to us synchronistically. It really is like changing the angle of a hologram, you experience a new side of the hologram you didn’t before.

Therefore it comes down to methods of reaching and reorienting that level. See, the thing is that if external deterministic factors like being surrounded by psychopaths, a nation going down in flames, economy sucking, etc. don’t just inform your awareness, but sink down deep within you in an emotionally invested, preoccupied, obsessed way, then it’s all locked into place synchronistically as well and you become fully dragged into the lake of your preoccupation. Then it becomes a feedback loop where deteriorating external triggers deteriorating internal, and vice versa.

Consequently, we can and must extricate ourselves from that feedback loop and carve out a pathway to heaven through hell, despite hell. It’s all done in defiance of the past and present, because only then can we break the momentum of the past and shift course to a different personal future. I’m not talking about changing world events, but changing your life circumstances and where you stand with respect to the collective conditions you cannot change.

The most effective way of doing this, that I have tried and confirmed many times, is by emotionally involving yourself in desired outcomes/intended futures, during a state of mind where you’re weaving in and out of sleep, so in the first few minutes after waking up for the day. The conscious and subconscious are then very close to each other, the etheric/astral bodies are loose and easily puff off thoughtforms into the etheric environment, and the mind isn’t fully locked into linear waking reality where the quantum wave function is fully collapsed and too stiff for probability bending. In those minutes where you snooze and come in and out of sleep, try to evoke the feeling that things are actually working out perfectly, that you’re enthusiastic about life finally being back on track, and try to feel gratitude to reality/universe/creator for it.

If you can actually fall asleep momentarily while holding these thoughts/feelings, and if you can carry some of that momentum of optimism-toward-future-despite-the-past-and-present, then you will start seeing effects within three days. Then if you did take deterministic action, or simply did something new where you can run into people you haven’t met yet, you’ll be synchronistically
supported instead of hindered toward improving life conditions. You may get the synchronistic breaks you need to bust out of your dilemma.

» The whole idea of positive beings not interfering because humans invited the bad guys upon themselves seems ridiculous considering the deception, mind control, and coercion involved. On a mundane level human laws generally prevent deception and fraud. If a guy robs you via a fraudulent scheme because he gained your trust the police don’t say, “well too bad for you, you trusted him so you invited it”.

Intervention is proportional to the freewill violation. There is a difference between a conscious choice/agreement, and an uninformed/naive one. In law we do see people getting shortchanged, and when they sue, the defense points to the fine print where it’s all spelled out what they agreed to, and the Judge has no choice but to agree it’s all legal, albeit shady.

It’s complicated. If you have spiritual protection, a Reptilian can’t just jump you while you’re hiking in the woods and eat you, because no way is that your choice. However, if two years earlier the Reptilian puts a thought in your head that you are inferior, and you choose to accept… and over the coming weeks you accept more and more of these suggestions… then get terribly depressed… let your life fall apart… get into drinking… choose to tolerate the wrong friends and get into drugs… get involved in crime hook up with Satanists… give away your soul in a ritual… and then weakened by drugs and ritual you go for a hike… then the Reptilian can kill you easily. Not because you agreed to getting killed in that moment, but because your little choices have all added up to an equivalent form of it.

Fact is, positive forces are here and they do intervene in people’s lives depending on all such factors — freewill, karma, destiny, how it affects the future, whether it would shortchange any lessons or preserve them, etc. But the fact that there is a positive presence at all, means the negatives have crossed the line. It’s just that if all negative were to be wiped out now, there are too many people being shortchanged of the huge wake up call they need to be strong and discerning. If God snapped his fingers and all evil went poof, you’d have peace on Earth but it would be a peace amongst naive children, as was illustrated in the Adam and Eve myth. That’s a regression, not an evolution. We’re meant to move forward to have “knowledge of good and evil” (discernment) and that can only be through immunization via exposure, and upon accomplishing that we can “eat from the tree of life” and move into the “Kingdom of Heaven.” Some say since evil has a purpose we should not resist it, but that’s a total backward fallacy. Evil serves a purpose, which is to be challenged and overcome and thereby learned from.

» With the whole prison-planet agenda in play, why do souls continue to incarnate here? On a certain level the whole thing seems very odd.

There are a lot of low-level souls who have no preference one way or the other. Think of some lady born fifty years ago… has a normal life, kids, and passes away. Whether the planet was under this or that alien control, is of no consequences to a life of raising children and having typical human dramas.

Then there are what seem to be higher souls who are somehow stuck here, caught in a karmic cycle of identifying too much with negative and base impulses, and increasingly burying themselves in debt and ignorance. They are the ones the negative forces are trying to keep asleep. And they are the
ones that I think positive forces are attempting to intervene on behalf of. But it’s a delicate intervention, just as the alien control system is delicate and waged via info and spiritual warfare rather than outright physical slavery at raygun-point.

So you have souls incarnating here because the prison planet is irrelevant; or put another way, it simply provides a kind of resistance and challenge that serves them in some way. Resistance training, like going to a gym and lifting weights. Other souls incarnate to attempt to counter the negative system, and many get caught up in it, then those who try to rescue them also run the risk of getting caught. Thus a bigger intervention is needed to break it up at the right time, and that’s what I think is happening. Earth is a casino, you could win, or you could go broke, and that comes with all the addiction to gambling and getting involved with the cosmic mafia, etc.

» If we are to experience a wholesale uplifting of humanity over the coming decade, it will require a tremendous amount of energy. I don’t mean to be overly cynical here, but I doubt very much that billions of people are suddenly going to have mastered themselves enough in such a short interval to free their own energy to do the job. Nothing is free in this universe. So, where is the energy going to come from?

Great question. The guru or teacher partially lends energy, and partially activates the energy circuits within a person. A person is like a non-magnetized piece of metal. A teacher is like an electromagnet with current surging through him producing an energy field. The metal becomes inductively magnetized in his presence. So people become addicted to gurus because they get activated in their presence, and it slowly fades away when they’re back home. Unless they learn the technique of modifying etheric energy output, they will go dormant again. Some of this I learned from contactee named Fore on the Open Minds Forum, but there are other sources that say similarly. The point is that one’s own etheric energy can be increased, whether by direct addition or mere stimulation, by an external field.

Alright, so an abductee in the presence of an alien tends to be inductively energized, which causes a shift in consciousness as perception and consciousness expand correspondingly. Castaneda could have his energy or assemblage point modified by Don Juan, through a force of intent applied to his back where the assemblage point resides. The alien field is so strong that it does this near automatically, therefore a person will basically black out or shift to an expanded persona when too close to an alien unless the alien shields this energy consciously.

Now, if you go into the woods and try to raise this energy all by yourself, based on what I’ve read and what Fore has explained, you need to know the precise methods needed to activate your own energy centers. It’s not so much gathering it from the environment, as opening the valves to a source we always have on tap but just don’t have turned on. Still, doing this is very difficult, like becoming a competitive bodybuilder. Yoga and Buddhist techniques, like Taoist Yoga, are examples of how technical it can be.

Alright… now my point. If nothing changes in terms of Wave energies, then only knowledge can do the job. It would take psychically activated and etherically-flowing people to both activate and teach others who then activate and stay that way, whom in turn would have to do that to others. The Cathars had a ritual where such a thing was done. Only problem is that unless a person is sufficiently robust in mind, body, and soul, this can lead to mental unhinging, like an airplane flying
too fast and starting to rip apart. Such a spread of knowledge and person-to-person activation hasn’t been done so far, because it must be difficult.

Therefore, what needs to happen is the Wave energy making it easier for such individual activations to occur. I read a paper recently on the use of divine weapons in the Indian classical epics. The weapons were withdrawn during the Kali Yuga cycles because they became ineffective for use by humans... probably due to vibrations or energies becoming too low and dense. Meaning that the ambient concentration of etheric energy may vary cyclically. And we may stand on the cusp of such an increase. If Earth goes through, or is irradiated by, a cosmic field of etheric energy then it would be VERY similar to standing in proximity to an alien being pumping out such a field locally.

What that would do is:

1) psychically activate people who can handle it,
2) shift their perceptions toward the etheric/astral and not just physical,
3) alter their consciousness, expanding it beyond the tiny aperture that defines daily human existence,
4) and thereby unlock aspects of soul/consciousness that are only accessible in such states.

To give an example. If your mind is shifted in the presence of an alien, and in that state (Castaneda’s “Second Attention”) you are taught things, you will forget it when you return to lower energy consciousness. But when raised to that level, that knowledge resurfaces. Thus an abductee or a Wanderer coming into 3D may forget most of everything while in regular mind, but upon the hitting of a Wave of etheric energy will remember it all, perhaps like waking from a dream. In the dream one may have been a five year old on a tricycle, but in real life one may be a soldier or firefighter or something... likewise, what we are now (3D STS humans) may become equally trivial/small from the perspective of our elevated, shifted, activated minds. That’s my theory. And only through such an irradiation of the globe can it become a global awakening, although I suspect that there will be many who won’t be able to handle it (illness, psychosis, suicide, panic).

» I understand that this world is an illusion, a matrix program. However, it is difficult to keep this in mind when people behave in such abhorrent ways towards one another. What is the best way to put the illusion aside and go to a higher “frequency” to aid mankind? I’m at a loss as to what to do. Can one changing him/herself really change the world?

From personal experience, I can say that whether it’s the world responding to you, or you merely shifting to another timeline more in accord with your mindset, that there is indeed a link between you and the world, and that changing yourself does shift the probability of things in subtle ways. For instance, intending that animal abusers will get taken down won’t eliminate it entirely, but you’ll start seeing a couple separate new instances in the news about such people getting busted, when in the weeks prior to your intention there will have been none in the news per a search. I suppose that sustained intent can have a greater effect, but there’s only so much one mind can do against the momentum of the collective consciousness.

The main problem is this collective momentum that pushes the timeline forward like a giant locomotive, and the fact that so many of its passengers have paid for that trip and want it to proceed. Think of the millions who voted for some political candidate who turns out to be an idiot or tyrant. That’s a lot of conscious force. Therefore I say that while the collective, general, crowd,
majority, etc. cannot be changed by mind alone, at least not very quickly, individuals can however change individual aspects of things. And sometimes that does cascade into big effects.

I myself have been wrung dry of concern for the things I cannot change. Instead of curling up in gut wrenching misery and pity, my emotions actually stay above the zero line, and I feel very calm while simultaneously directing a thought of blessing, comfort, and best wishes to the victims. I focus more on what is within my sphere of influence. My view is that if I have the means to do something, if it has a chance of succeeding, if the leverage is good where output is greater than my input, then it has fallen upon me to take action. Otherwise, I’ve learned that trying to help where life doesn’t place you only ends up wasting energy. So overall I have a very calm, strategic, patient mindset, instead of an emotional one. I used to be more emotional but it didn’t produce anything in terms of change. Therefore I feel more like being some freedom fighter in a country under military occupation who needs to patiently work where opportunity affords and prepare for the eventual moment of opportunity, rather than losing hope or acting blindly. This is what Castaneda called forbearance.

I saw that you wrote sparingly about your personal experiences of being under attack, but what you did articulate is familiar to me, i.e., “picking up the phone”, “high-strangeness”, ear ringing, energy running through your body, being drained, semantic games, insults, etc. Any assistance or guidance would be most greatly and sincerely appreciated.

One important thing I learned from a friend is that psychic powers of any kind including third eye activation requires a current of etheric energy to flow within, through, into, and out of you. The only problem is that by emitting such energy, which is necessary to power such abilities, it does saturate your local environment, and that in turn attracts negative entities. This can also happen inadvertently if you are too beaming or glowing in your emotions to the point of dizziness (figuratively speaking), then the same process can be triggered unwittingly. In either case, energy outflow into the environment attracts entities plain and simple. That’s one half the equation.

The other half is the mental preoccupation, desperation, suspicion, fear, etc. that is devoted to these oppressive entities. The closer you are mentally and emotionally to them, in other words the more they preoccupy your inner world of what you dwell upon, the closer they come to you. Through some kind of mutual resonance or law of attraction I guess. What this does is set up a feedback loop where the more you respond to them and give them validity, the more entrenched, tangible, and controlling they become in your life, which in turn provokes you into feeling even more desperate and thus giving them even more power and control. They have an illusion, a game, a way of perceiving the situation set up that they expect you to buy into, so that they can be the kings of that game.

I’ve only known a few people who succeeded getting out of this. One of whom is myself. There are a few ways to get out, but the method is rejected by the majority of the ones I tell it to, because they seem to be invested at some level in continuing to buy into the game they’ve been ensnared in, maybe because deep down they derive their identity from being a victim or feel special that nonhuman forces are so focused on them… I don’t know… in my case I just didn’t see a better way until it gradually just became something I shifted into.

Anyway, the method includes any of the following:
1) Improving the feel of your living space by: cleaning and throwing out old junk, rearranging furniture, putting some soothing ambient lighting in place, getting a couple house plants to liven things up, burning scented candles or incense, getting a small water fountain, getting curtains to thoroughly cover the windows if they are a source of fear — anything to create a feeling of safety and sacred space. Also a mosquito net over the bed can help. These are partly psychological, and partly etheric… as in Feng Shui, they can alter the energies of your house or apartment so that it’s not saturated with the toxic fear/dark/oppressive frequency that negs live upon.

2) Stopping all visualization exercises aimed at activating chakras or energy circuits or whatever. Reason being that the more energy in/out flow you have, the more entities are attracted. In a way you need to shut down the gateways that they thrive upon and become as “philistine”/”material” as possible without actually losing your spirituality. In other words, to become more grounded in physicality (not talking about becoming money-grubbing or shallow or sexually devious though, I just mean becoming present in the physical world instead of mind dwelling on the paranormal). Even if only temporarily for your own safety. For me, I find that chocolate closes my chakras temporarily, and mainstream distractions like movies helps take my mind off things too.

3) Trying your best to fill your mental/emotional inner space with something other than the paranormal stuff and the abductions as well. That’s because I found that while abductions do have their physical reasons for happening (mind programming, implants) for some reason they become way more frequent and severe with more after-symptoms if one becomes obsessed with them and highly fearful. Thus by eliminating the latter, abductions drop down to 10% of what they were, and that 10% can be dealt with in physical and spiritual ways via simple tricks like a voice-activated tape recorder or tying yourself to bed with a fresh zip tie that must be cut every morning. In a way this step #3 advocates ignorance, but it’s only ignorance of that which derives its power through investment of belief — meaning, they are bluffs. Only by eliminating your own reality-creation effect in the process, can what remains be dealt with objectively. For myself, I reached a point of not caring and laughing at it, not giving up out of defeat, but abandoning that tired game of fear because I felt I had better things to do in life. That sucked the power out of it.

4) Cultivating two feelings in yourself: a) that everything in your life is getting better again, that there is hope and a bright future, that the world is now out to HELP you, and b) that the divine forces have your back now, that you’re safe and protected, that the storm has lifted and the rainbow’s in the sky. These are feelings you can dwell upon, in a modest, steady, constant way (try not to get TOO giddy about it, as that might lead to energy spillage and once again attracts the negs). This step helps attract positive experiences to boost your confidence and get you back on track.

So overall, these steps entail cutting off the previous negative feedback loop, initiating a positive one, and changing your local environment to help anchor this change. See, what people otherwise try to do, is act within the staged game to find solutions, like say hiring an occult fighter to come in and try and take these entities on directly, or visualizing fighting them, or bargaining with them, whatever… but that’s acting within the box, not leaving the box entirely. It takes a paradigm shift and abandonment of the old game to deplete the momentum the negs have built up. Right now, I only have occasional mind programming to deal with, but nothing like the craziness I had in 2001-2003 when I first got into this field of research and didn’t know about the things I described above.
In the past couple of years I had a few really weird things happen to me. They all occurred while I was in bed, my body paralyzed, my mind awake. Sometimes right when I was about to go to sleep, I would hear this ringing noise, which sometimes felt more like drilling into my head. Any ideas what that might be?

I’ve experienced what you describe. It does feel like the soul is leaving the body and undergoing a lot of noise, vibration, pressure, or acceleration while doing it. And once free it feels like antigravity or a helium balloon just floating.

Well first of all, when we sleep this happens naturally but normally we’re dreaming or unconscious. Our soul does separate slightly from the physical body, hovering near it for as long as we’re asleep. The problem is when we wake up too suddenly and the soul’s not yet fully back in the body, or when we try to go back to sleep and it starts to separate before our consciousness has drifted off. Then we become aware of this process and experience sleep paralysis among other things.

For our consciousness to move our bodies, the soul has to not only be in the body but attach itself to thousands of little nerve/energy centers of the body. I suspect these are the same network of interface points that acupuncture knows about. Anyway, if the soul’s not connected to those, as is the case when asleep, then you can’t move your physical body. Of course there’s also the physical brain thing that happens, where part of the brain controlling motor movement shuts down, but the soul thing is also a factor. Meaning you’re paralyzed as per classic sleep paralysis if your body has fallen asleep but your mind is still awake.

As soon as the soul detaches and begins separating and hovering, your perception splits into both what your physical senses perceive (due to the brain and your soul’s tether-like connection to it, thus still semi-perceiving through it) and what your soul perceives. By that I mean your soul ears, soul eyes, and other soul senses. Thus if you’re in this state and try to open your eyes, you’re both opening your physical eyes AND your soul eyes. You’ll both see the physical room AND any etheric/astral entities in it.

But even more, you’ll be able to hear your etheric/astral environment while doing this. And as you know it can get pretty damn loud. I read at the saltcube.com website that this is like a region of static between radio stations, and that if you lift out enough the noise goes away. Makes sense. So this in-between region of junk/chaos/noise, or merely a temporary stage of vibration sort of like lift-off of a rocket. So if you hover slight before or after this point of maximum noise, you’ll start picking up on the so-called real “radio stations” (as in telepathic, etheric, astral signals and sounds and not just noise).

I’ve heard various things in the maximum noise level. It used to be a hissing rumble like at a waterfall, but over the past years I’ve also heard an extremely loud mechanical whirring, which incidentally ended up sounding identical to what I heard later on my shortwave/AM radio when I held it up to the Ethernet computer cable right on the other side of the wall where my head is when I sleep. If there’s a connection, then it’s punning that the “ether”-net cable emitted etheric noise. I wonder if it’s by some secret design to pollute the etheric/astral environment and contaminate people’s sleep. On a side note, I noticed that my dreams are a lot stranger when I leave the Ethernet router on, as if something’s using the cable and router as a kind of broadcasting system, strange and paranoid as that sounds.
Anyway, so aside from your soul-ears (I call them etheric ears) you also have etheric vision at your disposal. It’s almost identical to what true clairvoyant seers use to view auras, ghosts, and other things. Except they can separate their etheric eyes from their physical eyes any time of day, even while walking and talking. And ideally they have developed the soul organs so that it’s more accurate and can see more things. What we see when cheating by using the natural sleep function of soul separation to view/hear stuff is, and sorry for the macabre and bizarre metaphor, like an embryo poking its head out and looking around before returning to the womb. It can see things, but not as well as a baby or child or adult for that matter.

But stated another way, we are literally dreaming with our eyes open when this happens. As you know, dreams are internally projected environments with symbolic visuals. Well this same part of the mind that generates those visuals, can decode etheric/astral environmental signals and turn them into symbolic images for you. I suspect the same happens with physical reality too where nonphysical information signals are decoded by our collective consciousness into the appearance of a physical reality but in a way it’s all a holographic universe.

Anyway, all this means is that when you see through your soul eyes, you may see not only what’s actually there in the etheric environment, but run the risk of having genuine internal dream imagery also superimposed on it, the latter being more hallucinations then, than actual perceptions. So not everything you see in this state is what’s in the room, some is a product of your own subconscious superimposed on it.

I’ve seen some strange things in this state. It happens when I nod off to sleep, especially during a daytime nap, and then suddenly flip open my eyes the moment I catch myself doing so. Several times I’ve seen what look like flies on the wall or ceiling, one time a hornet crawling up the window drapes, but most of the time what looks like tissue paper immersed in water and these floating amoebas and writhing balls of spaghetti. When I’m about to get sick, I might see a cloud of black seeds being blown at me. I think some of these are etheric precursors or accompaniments to internal biological processes, which the subconscious projects forward. But one can also see actual external phenomena in this state. One time I awoke to see this blond human-like alien but with huge frickin’ blue eyes standing right next to me, wearing this silver puffy jump suit and mid-back wavy blond hair. I sat up casually and said hi as the image faded along with my return to consciousness.

How do you know the diff between an internal projected image and actually seeing what’s there? Simple, if you move your eyes, and it stays in the portion of your field of vision you originally saw it and moves with your eye movement, it’s a projection. If it stays fixed with the background of your environment, then it’s really there. Or so I think at the moment.

Anyway, if you’re ever in paralysis and want to break out of it, I read that it helps to try and wiggle your toe. This way you’re sending a signal from head to the other end of the body and waking up/synching/attaching the nerve points along the way. If you’re in the grip of an entity, then try to shake it free mentally by changing your thoughts, feelings, vibe/attitude, as quickly as possible. It can’t hold onto you if your mindset changes too quickly, or to something it can’t match. For instance, a demonic being won’t be able to hold on if you suddenly shift toward positive vibes, like if you invoked the power of divinity and a feeling of protection.

One last things. Twice now I was able to pay very careful attention while waking suddenly from a
nap and seeing things in an etheric state and then returning fully to my body as I come to regular waking consciousness. Both times I noticed that, during the return, my visual perspective would literally slide down from the position of my forehead down to where my regular eyes are. In other words, my visual perspective would move by about 2 inches, without my physical head moving. This can mean only one thing, that my etheric eyes were detached and floating up near the forehead area. In fact, the first time is when I was sitting cross legged in a chair and nodded off, and when I opened my eyes I could see the top of my toenail, but as I fully awoke the perspective changed and I saw only the top knuckle of the toe, no longer the toenail. And this past time, I watched some folds in my bedding rotate in perspective as my vision began synchronizing with my physical eyes. Thus in both cases vision originated at the forehead. Maybe that’s the third eye, or maybe that’s just etheric eyes being extended to that area. But it’s proven to me that I’m not just seeing through physical eyes when this happens, but that perception is quite possible without them.

I’ve been studying Revelations and here is something about Israel. Revelations says that what happens in Israel determines how much time is left for humanity. When Israel is surrounded by armies this is getting close to the world-wide destruction coming.

First question is, what does Revelation mean by “Israel”? Is it defined by:

- political boundaries, meaning Israel is what we see on the map, an artificial nation forced into existence after WWII,
- genetic boundaries, meaning Israel would only consist of the genetic descendants of the original Israelites, which would exclude most Israeli citizens today since a majority are of German/Polish/Russian descent,
- or spiritual boundaries, meaning it’s about the collection of higher caliber souls that were once incarnated among the Israelites, but which since that time may now be incarnated scattered about in any and all other races?

Personally I think the first is a deception, that it’s a political counterfeit of the real spiritual “Israel”, created to prematurely fulfill end-times prophecies. All I’m saying is that when nations do come against the political Israel and a deceiver arises and then is defeated, people shouldn’t make the mistake that the antichrist is gone and now a golden age can begin. No, I think that’s when the actual deception starts. I mean, consider the weather disasters happening… on the one hand people say it’s signs of the end times, but what does it mean that HAARP technologies are inducing them? It once more points to a premature artificial end times, which would give rise to a premature artificial Christ/Kingdom of Heaven before the real thing ever occurs. Just my personal view.

Let’s suppose you have been given the opportunity to address one who was actually assembling demiurgic technology for the purpose of service to others and the creation of a light based reality? What would you say to them?

I’d say that you better first train and pray and work to receive the illumination, the knowledge, the wisdom, and the guidance/orders first from higher divine power because otherwise your mortal motivations might be too shortsighted to make permanently effective use of the technology. Train yourself, pray for that higher wisdom, so that you use it in harmony with the higher intelligence that knows what needs to be done. Don’t use it solely out of revenge, regret over some past wrong
(bringing back a loved one), etc. It must be used only when you’re illuminated with full knowledge of how and why you must use it. Because the road to hell is paved with good intentions, and last time someone used the Ark Stone for what at the time seemed like righteous reasons (free the slaves from Egyptian oppression) it lead to a major corruption of the timeline.

» What is your opinion of the environmentalist and animal rights movements?

Few can deny that protecting the environment and championing the welfare of animals is a good thing.

But the “movements” by definition make it their sole goal, to the exclusion of all other considerations, and that can lead to net imbalance in the end. In other words, they can become fanatical and overboard with it, and lose sight of the hierarchy of priorities in certain cases. Too often they fail to take the big system and long range views into account. Thus they can be shortsighted. I’m talking about extreme examples like releasing ferrets from some farm, only to have them get squashed to death on the nearby highway.

While there is some logic and ethics involved in what they do, too many of their members are driven solely by emotion, and that leads to childish recklessness.

I also find it interesting how environmentalists are still deeply imprisoned within the mainstream paradigm. For instance, they know all about global warming, carbon emissions, the benefits of solar energy, reusing materials, etc. but mention scalar physics, free energy, antigravity, Tesla, suppressed inventions, etc. and they balk with skepticism and resort to logical fallacies or outright ignorance, preferring instead their petty “mainstream” solutions, which will always be inferior to the cheap energy provided by oil. Therefore they are too often gatekeepers of the liberal minded crowd, and they don’t even know it.

It’s bad enough when either get mired in idealism to the exclusion of reality. It’s worse when even their enemies are mired in reality to the exclusion of spirituality. The latter is what’s being left out in the false dichotomy between environmentalists and anti-environmentalists. The battle between them is like one between immature children and greedy old bastards. Neither are truly intelligent, altruistic, wise, and aware of the greater spiritual picture that everything must be compared against.

So to sum up, I’d say their heart is the right place but their head is in the sand.

» Have you looked at the bicameral mind or any of that research? Do you think that we are divided or cut off and that our natural state would be a type of whole brain functioning?

It’s pretty true. Consider how in dreams, even when we become lucid, we experience dream seemingly independent characters and environments generated by some part of our mind that is NOT the part witnessing these things in the dream. And yet if we get good at lucid dreaming, we can indeed change the environment and characters but it takes practice. This means the other part of the mind can be bridged.

It’s also known in alien abductions and shamanic work (Carlos Castaneda and Theun Mares) that we can enter higher states of consciousness where streams of experiences and memories recording during previous attainments of that state become available again, whereas back in regular waking consciousness these are inaccessible. When a shaman moves your “assemblage point” or an alien
induces in you an activation of your etheric body to an energized state, you awaken from your mundane awareness into a more complete one.

It seems that right now, in our everyday awareness, we are running on auxiliary backup mode. Like those powered-down ships in science fiction movies. The main systems are not online. We don’t have access to the memories, knowledge, or expanded perceptions of our more complete self. And yet we can indeed enter that state through occult training or by accident sometimes.

There is indeed a higher part of our being, like a satellite, of which we are just a menial autonomous ground probe wandering the surface.

Whether the bicameralism is a psychological defense mechanism against the pain of having fallen from the spiritual realms, I’m not sure I buy that. I think it’s more a consequence of incarnating into a body that has been genetically engineered by nefarious forces to be handicapped this way. Birth, interfacing with the human brain, and social programming pose powerful forces that can override the soul’s innate higher qualities.

» According to Castaneda, we are prisoners of a “predator” that came from outside, and it could be compared to a parasitic attack, or to a symbiosis in a bad way, that was not necessarily required for our “evolution.”

Exactly, and it ties into what Rudolf Steiner said:

Therefore, the opportunity exists – a short time before we are born, not long before we are born – for another spiritual being besides our soul to take possession of our body, of the unconscious part of our body. It is this way; a short time before we are born we are permeated by another being – in our terminology we would call it an Ahrimanic spirit being. This is within us in the same way that our own soul is within us.

These beings who spend their life by using human beings, in order to be able to be in the sphere where they want to be. These beings have an extraordinarily high intelligence and a significantly developed will but no warmth of heart at all. Nothing of what we call the human “Gemut”. And we go through life, my dear friends, in such a way that we have our souls and a Double of this kind, who is much more clever, very much more clever than we are, who is very intelligent, but has a Mephistophelian intelligence, and an Ahrimanic intelligence, and also an Ahrimanic will, a very strong will, a will that is much more akin to the nature forces than is our human will, which is controlled by the mind and the heart. […]

These beings of high intelligence, but of purely Mephistophelian intelligence, and with a will more related to nature than can be said of the human will, these beings once decided out of their own will that they did not want to live in that world in which they were destined to live by the wisdom-filled of the higher hierarchies. They wanted to conquer Earth; they need bodies, for bodies of their own they do not have. They use as much of the human bodies as they can use, because the human soul cannot entirely fill up the human body.

You see, as the human body develops, these beings are able to enter into it at a definite time before the human being is born, and below the threshold of our consciousness they accompany us. They cannot endure one thing in human life, they positively cannot endure it, and that is death. Therefore they must always leave this human body in which they have established themselves before it succumbs to death. They continue to have a
very great delusion, for they want to be able to remain in human bodies beyond death. That would be a very great achievement in the kingdom of these beings but that they have not yet achieved. […]

In the coming centuries it will have to come to man’s knowledge more and more that he bears such a Double within him — such an Ahrimanic – Mephistophelian Double. Man must know it. […]

It’s also worth mentioning that when Steiner says, “the human soul cannot entirely fill up the human body,” that means emotional traumas through shock and abuse or chemical traumas through drugs like LSD can fracture off parts of the soul, leaving even more of a void for these Ahrimanic forces to inhabit. Spiritless people are the emptiest of all, and so they like a public bicycle they can be ridden by any number of forces at any time. But even spirited people who suffer soul fragmentation can come under these influences more readily, just not to the same degree or as often.

This is basically the same thing as entity attachment and demonic possession, though the latter is the highest degree of that phenomenon. The mistake is in thinking that either you’re projectile vomiting and talking backwards in Latin, or you’re free of possession. It’s not black and white like that. As Steiner said, there is a base level or default version of it that we are born with, which resides in the back of our minds as what Freudian psychology would call the Id-Ego complex. It’s our internal prison warden keeping us locked into the Matrix Control System.

As Don Juan explained to Castaneda:

In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engage themselves in a stupendous maneuver-stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist. A horrendous maneuver from the point of view of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind! Do you hear me? The predators give us their mind, which becomes our mind. The predators’” mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now. I know that even though you have never suffered hunger, you have food anxiety, which is none other than the anxiety of the predator who fears that any moment now its maneuver is going to be uncovered and food is going to be denied. Through the mind, which, after all, is their mind, the predators inject into the lives of human beings whatever is convenient for them. And they ensure, in this manner, a degree of security to act as a buffer against their fear.

» I’ve got a question. About Yahweh. Why do you characterize him or it as urging man toward a material orientation? Or subjugating spirit to matter? I think I’ve told you about my thoughts about him and the blood sacrifices that he seemed obsessed with.

No doubt Yahweh (or Jehovah, depending on choice of terminology) had a thing for blood sacrifices. I mentioned in my Ark of the Covenant article that such sacrifices release great quantities of the type or frequency of etheric and astral energies that make the Yahweh entity stronger. If you think about it, nature itself — the law of the jungle, dog eat dog — is a giant factory for producing such energy. Life develops only to meet a grizzly death in the jaws of a stronger life form. You could say that nature, and hence matter, is inherently oriented toward the subjugation of spirit to matter.

The only time spirit triumphs is when it’s stronger than the influence of matter and physicality. Take a child born into a real hostile ghetto-like environment. If the spirit is weak, the kid will be a
product of his or her environment and probably turn into a criminal. If spirit is strong, then despite all physical influences, he/she may rise against it and become the exception to the rule and live a more altruistic and noble life.

It seems that the Yahweh entity is pretty much a personification of physical nature and matter, which operates by rules that are ultimately opposite to those of spirit and consciousness. Not that Yahweh directly tells people to believe only matter exists and we should become completely materialistic (that’s more the purpose of Ahriman, another branch on that tree of evil) but rather Yahweh’s influence takes the laws of determinism, physical causality, biological survival, etc. and extends them upward into the etheric and astral domain. Same way that the human ego is the same thing extended up into the psychological and social domain.

So even if Yahweh is being indirect in serving matter by, say, pushing a religion that demands blind obedience, daily mechanical worship, ritual sacrifices, appeal to the reptilian part of the brain by playing to fear and neuroticism, etc. these ultimately serve ends that, at their very root, seem to be steeped in the blind, deterministic, cruel qualities of matter. It’s an invasion of determinism and mechanicity into the sphere of consciousness where freewill and spontaneity should reside.

If the Corrupt Demiurge continues assimilating beings to the very end, what would be left is a hellish totalitarian Borg collective that, once it exhausts all its resources, would probably collapse in on itself like a dying star into a black hole. Then the last traces of spirit and consciousness would probably freeze into permanent atrophy and become just as cold and blind as matter itself. Hence the end is a return to the beginning in that case.

» It is said that the path of sanctification is one of hard inner working. Can you provide some advises about the way to reach this point of evolution required to be a candidate for true initiation?

As far as I can tell, it’s a combination of the following:

• Identifying and overcoming your own blind mechanical reactivity, ego-based impulses, emotions like contempt, hubris, and vicious hatred, etc. — basically identifying the beast within and consistently choosing the opposite of what it desires. Here you are shining a light on the baser aspect of your personality.

• Reinforcing the expression of your heart and soul, meaning training your sense of compassion and understanding for others. doesn’t mean let them abuse or walk all over you, but I mean to aim for an understanding of what it’s like to be in their shoes. This helps reduce unfairly contemptuous and judgmental thoughts. Here you want to nurture your heart/soul based feelings instead, so that you grow closer to the warmth and understanding that you might find in a positive secret society, angelic, or Christ-like individual.

• Having a curious mind that likes to ponder philosophies, observe nature, learn about the universe and metaphysics, contemplate the mysteries of life, etc. This helps to train your sense of self-discovery, logical analysis, and intuition. Pondering and analyzing also trains discernment, and that leads to wisdom when applied in life.

• Being a bit daring with personal fears that hold you back for no good reason. We are socially programmed to stay in a cage of conformity. It’s a good idea to try and extend ourselves beyond that cage, with discretion of course, but mainly to demonstrate and be comforted in
the fact that our spirit is stronger than the programming, and if heart and mind deem something a good idea, we shouldn’t let risk of embarrassment or failure keep us from following that.

• On the more technical side, being able to maintain a continuous line of awareness as you fall into a dream state is THE skill that opens up all other shamanic and clairvoyant abilities. I mean, once you can lucid dream at will, you can commune with nonphysical positive beings who notice that you’re awake in your dreams, and who therefore know you’ve passed one of the initiations that most people never do. Look up “active dreaming”, “wake induced lucid dreaming”, and “mind awake body asleep” for more on this subject.

In short one has to overcome everything that is of the world that has grafted itself upon us, and simultaneously nurture and expand the spirit/soul/mind component until it is not longer beaten down by the first, and so that it shines brightly and without hindrance. This can happen even in certain tests in life, severely difficult tests, where we have to choose between following ego versus following spiritual wisdom, and when choosing the latter we may get contacted or just synchronistically winked at by positive forces for doing the right thing. So in those cases, initiation is not from a long line of discipline in following the above points, but in an instantaneous demonstration of having transcended the lower self.

» I have been working hard on inducing lucid dreams recently and have come close at times but not quite there. Are there any tips you could recommend or any techniques?

I’m actually still working on this, not for lack of knowledge on how to do it, but lack of the energy to carry it out. The problem comes down to energy, and here I mean vital energy. When you have more vital energy, you are more alert, more joyous, less able to be put down or discouraged, and less likely to be entranced or hypnotized by something. It’s the energy of your soul. My energy levels fluctuated cyclically, so some parts of the month I have more energy than others, and my dreams are better too.

I noticed that in dreams, I require a certain level of mental/soul energy to even admit to myself that, yes in fact this is a dream. I noticed a few times that I just felt tired, and in the back of my mind I didn’t want to become lucid because it would mean exerting effort and potentially waking up. This was just the faintest impression I caught once. Meanwhile, other times I had quite a bit of energy while asleep and lucid dreams came easily. Or alternatively, I had a lucid dream and I woke up and just felt so awake and rested and energized even though I hadn’t had my full hours of sleep.

In other words, if you have too little energy, no amount of auto-suggestion, reality check practices, etc. are going to help you, because you’ll both lack the willpower to carry out those practices, and the energy to do them in dreams.

Thus there is a conundrum, which is this: How do you have enough energy to become lucid, but not so much that you have trouble falling asleep? Or put another way, how can you get to sleep with the maximum amount of energy? The answer is a combination of rapid sleep induction techniques, whole body relaxation, and going to bed when you’re not even tired. If you have trouble staying asleep, especially during the final hours, but manage to stay under anyway, then much of the time you’ll either have really awesome dreams or else become lucid in them.
Hence the trick of wake-back-to-bed, where you stay up for an hour. That gets the “awake” neurochemicals flowing, which ensure that when you do go back to sleep, you’re not as “asleep” as you normally would be, hence more easily can become lucid.

But gaining more energy is a complicated subject, it gets into such things as soul fragmentation and the Toltec practice of recapitulation, of gaining back personal power as Carlos Castaneda would say. That’s the fundamental cure. I suppose you could also request to your Higher Self to give you more energy especially while asleep, maybe that will help. But doing whole body relaxation and going to bed an hour earlier than you normally might, and stilling your mind so that inner dialogue doesn’t keep you awake, that’s one way of going in with more energy.

» Robert Monroe and Gurdjieff considered the energy-collection system to be a built-in part of the cosmos, necessary for evolution, whereas you seem to view it as totally and inherently negative.

My view has been that “soul energy” or what Monroe termed “loosh,” spans a wide spectrum in terms of its vibrational essence and level refinement. It would seem to me that the shift from a Golden Age to Iron Age came not with a decrease in total biological etheric energy output so much as a shift in the type of energy being produced, from a more positive type of loosh to a more negatively tinged type.

Perhaps the alien manipulators and negative energy harvesters had cut themselves off from the Divine, which would explain not only their need to harvest energy from lesser lifeforms instead of tapping into it themselves from the Infinite Creator, but also their need to harvest a specific kind of energy produced through processes that accompany being cut off from the Divine. Thus utter suffering, depression, vengeful hatred, depraved lust, and so on. It’s an energy that resonates with their own low soul vibrations.

If people turned toward producing positive loosh again, it would connect them to the Divine, and the manipulators wouldn’t be able to use that energy without themselves also converting to a more Divine orientation. Anyway, that’s just how I figured it.

As to the positive aspect of the energy economy, well here’s the thing. If you produce positive loosh through an act of love or worthwhile sacrifice, you emit that energy but you probably acquire or produce an equal or greater amount within yourself from “Source”. You know the idea of paying it forward, or giving to receive, etc. It’s the principle that is very much like Free Energy, in that you multiply what you have. Versus negative loosh, where when you give it up, since you’re disconnected from the Divine in the act, you end up depleted.

Thus the negative loosh economy is “conservative” in the physics sense, in that every gain in one place comes with a loss elsewhere, and finite supplies are divided up and competed over. In a positive loosh economy, no one gets depleted, as the Creator always fills the cup. It’s kind of like the mythical idea of a cup or cauldron or horn of plenty that could never be exhausted. What I call the “energy farm” is more the negative loosh economy, due to the negative connotation of “farm.”

Also I’m familiar with Gurdjieff, and also Boris Mouravieff, who explained another positive aspect of the energy economy. Mouravieff diagrammed it out pretty nicely. In short, humans act as energy transmitters that feed a lower order of evolution in order to boost them to higher evolutionary status. In the process, humans evolve higher as well, thus it’s a grand ladder. It’s like a mom nursing her
baby. Baby grows, mom gets wiser, and it’s all good. Both connected it with the moon, which is an embryonic planet that feeds off us, or rather the beings use it to feed off us.

David Icke recently wrote a book on the moon-energy connection as well. Except Mouravieff went a step further and said that a portion of humanity consists of what he called pre-Adamic humans, which I’ve termed spiritless humans, and they act as veritable milking tubes for the rest of humanity. I had to read the Cassiopaean Transcripts to get further insight on the matter, which is that there was a time when the human to spiritless human ratio and interaction was healthy and the whole cosmic energy cycle was in harmony; but that these spiritless humans have since been co-opted by the alien manipulators so that instead of evolving, these humans are merely used as the milking tubes for these alien manipulators. Thus nothing is evolving really, mankind is getting beaten down and sucked dry, and the alien manipulators are getting fatter and more able to feed off others in the universe.

Hence, the parasitism of energy that once occurred to humanity in a more healthy way (like mother to baby) has been corrupted, and little positive can be said about the energy economy today. Things are in great disrepair on this planet, as you know. But there is still a positive energy economy, though it’s insignificant in comparison to the negative one. That’s why I didn’t comment on it in Fringe Knowledge, partly because without further elaboration it would make positive forces seem like just another kind of parasite, which is not true in my opinion as I don’t think they are in it strictly for the energy, since they do care about our evolution and ultimate spiritual well-being while the negative forces don’t. It was a subtle distinction I didn’t want to have adding complications to a book that, to the newbie, is already a brain twister. I mean when two people genuinely love each other, they are emitting positive loosh that “feeds” the other person. That isn’t parasitism, as it’s just a way for both to tap energy from the divine source within themselves and bring it into manifestation. There is no loss, only net gain there. Love is free energy.

To cite what may be the ultimate non-duality, I’ve gotten some striking reports from experiencers over the years which make a case that sometimes the very same beings can manifest as extremely positive or extremely negative, depending on the perception and/or the soul-nature of the human who encounters them ~ sometimes even at the same time.

Right, I do take a more dualistic position, because from my personal experiences with aliens I’ve noticed competition/opposition among them, indicating they are not all a unified body acting positive or negative according to whim, but they are indeed split along set ideological lines. It’s really tricky though for the following reason:

You can have a self-serving, manipulative, negative alien that a) portrays itself as a loving “god” to gullible worshippers, example being their pretending to be “Commander Ashtar” or whatever, and b) portraying themselves as caricaturized boogeymen to feed off the fearful. Or you can have positive, benevolent aliens that a) portray themselves as a more approachable, dumbed down, anthropomorphized good guy to relate to a person and give them support, and b) act in a stern, harsh, and disciplinary manner if one offends them or does something really stupid that they feel you should have known better than to do.

Thus both can act in, what to the average person, might seem more positive or more negative. Except the negative aliens acting positive isn’t exactly the same as positive aliens acting positive.
Same with them acting negatively. There are distinctions which speak of a more fundamental
dualism there.

I’ve read some of John Keel’s books where he gets into the trickster nature of these entities, how
they can act nice or evil at whim, but those types of entities I think are negative aliens, demonic
beings, and astral critters that love to play such games, whereas the genuine positive aliens aren’t
that duplicitous, at least in my research and experience.

In other words, among the negative alien types, you have a lot of role playing and false dichotomies
being used, with the false dichotomy obscuring the deeper dualism. That’s why in my Discerning
Alien Disinformation article I keep emphasizing the idea of distinguishing between bad guys
pretending to be good guys, and genuine good guys. That’s the key question that none of the disinfo
vectors dare to discuss because it’s the Achilles’ heel of their machine.

False dichotomies work so well because either 1) you believe the false dichotomy and choose either
the false good guy or the bad guy option, or 2) you realize the false good guy option is a sham, and
thus conclude there are no good guys at all. In either case, the third option beyond the two false
choices is ignored. I think that’s why false dichotomies are the oldest trick in the book, because it
works so well again and again.

The idea that a UFO could get shot down by the terrestrial military lies outside my paradigm. It
might make sense to me if it were qualified by further information: perhaps you would call it a case
of humans using alien technology. In my view, though, such technology would most likely be
purely psychotronic, and perhaps the Cryptocracy has access to a whole secret range of it.

I think that if human technology alone were allowed to progress for another couple thousand years,
it would reach a point where it’s no longer technology in the way we conceive it, but a kind of
metaphysical magick. Thus at one end of the spectrum you have pure matter-energy-spacetime type
technology. On the other end you have stuff that is totally beyond that and wholly in the realm of
metaphysics. But to get to the latter, you go through an intermediate ambi-stage where it’s a bit of
both. That’s where I think a lot of alien factions reside. Hence in the ambi-category, it shares two
baselines: the physical and the metaphysical.

If you go a little lower, then it’s more in the extraterrestrial camp. If you go a bit higher, then it’s
more in line with the ultraterrestrial metaphysical paradigm. But usually it’s somewhere in between.
Or I should say, it’s variable according to use, and who is using it. Example, an alien ship might be
primarily a thoughtform type construct that stays in an ethereal state; for observation or abduction it
projects into physicality and then is shot down by advanced weaponry; pieces land, and when
analyzed are shown to consist of metal alloys. So was that ship ultraterrestrial or extraterrestrial? I’d
say it was ambiterrestrial and variably more one or the other depending on its use and the state it
was in.

The reason why I’ve gravitated a little more to the extraterrestrial side, is because of all the research
points about underground bases, underwater bases, localization to this planet or that star system,
and their needing to use technology rather than pure mental magick to, say, walk through walls or
levitate someone out a window or whatever. This localization to points in space and time (alien base
in the Ural mountains, ship hovering overhead, light seen northwest at midnight, etc.) and their
being burdened by limitations that require technology to get around, shows that most alien factions
we know about from alien research literature are not as “ultra” terrestrial as, say, higher divine
generic type beings who have never been known to employ ships or weapons or bases for that
matter. So they resemble more the extraterrestrials, but are definitely not as limited in reality as the
public conception of extraterrestrials makes them out to be. Definitely not as nuts-n-bolts as NASA,
that’s for sure.

But if you go back in time to medieval and ancient accounts of these beings, they were clearly
tangible back then and employed technology, and again were not modern day human military in
antigravity ships. Besides, where did humans get that tech so quickly, going from horse and buggy
in 1895 to flying saucers in 1945? If UFOs are human crafts, then they must be an advanced
offshoot of humans that were flying around thousands of years ago already, or else they are simply
time travelers and all non-human looking aliens are their genetic creations, but that leaves a
question of why human DNA itself shows sign of having been engineered aeons ago. Did future
humans genetically engineer the human species itself? What came first there, the chicken or the
egg? That paradox is easier solved by saying aliens exist and got the whole thing started, and time
crafting humans are just a small subset of that phenomenon.

» You pinned down freewill as the ability to choose between negative & positive, selfishness vs.
service to others, but for most people, as Gurdjieff would say, there is no one there who can choose.

I always thought Gurdjieff was overreaching with his claim that pretty much everyone was a
machine, and that neophytes in the Fourth Way were machines without souls until many years of
self-remembering and other practices might give them an inkling of a soul. That doesn’t take into
account continuation of esoteric evolution through multiple lifetimes, allowing one to sort of pick
up where one left off, or the idea of higher souls coming into 3D to help out. Both of these cases
would be born here already with “something” inside, which I’ve come to call spirit. It’s just a
question of how many of the latter there are, versus humans who have nothing inside that resembles
spirit.

I also assumed that for anyone who’s gotten to a point in life where they were willing to read my
book all the way through, or pursue the kind of subjects you and I discuss on our sites, that such a
person wasn’t the run-of-the-mill asleep or empty human.

Also, freewill isn’t an absolute thing, but a matter of degree. You can have a little freewill or a lot,
it’s not an all-or-nothing deal. As long as you have some, even if it’s not a lot, you can make choices
of thought, feeling, or action that helps you get more. All you need is the minimum threshold of
awareness, energy, and willpower to get that process going. Even with Fourth Way, people must
have had enough to choose to enter that path to begin with and pay attention to what Gurdjieff was
saying. Maybe Gurdjieff just defined freewill in a more strict manner, perhaps meaning being a
liberated sage/jivanmukta as in Buddhism. In that case, 99.99% of humanity does not have freewill.
But I view freewill in gradations, and think more people have enough of it to make a difference than
Gurdjieff would give credit for.

» Finally, let me ask you about your assertion that there are “metaphysical laws” which prevent
even the most dastardly negative creatures from violating the freewill of other beings. Maybe it’s
just the way you phrased it, but I’m not aware of any such law or laws. Perhaps you can elucidate,
and mention the source(s) of this premise.
I noticed this from observing the way they work in my life and other people’s lives. If someone is a threat to them, they don’t just push a button and have the person disappear or drop dead. There’s always a gradual stalking and weakening process, and a subtle “permission asking” process, by which the person is tempted and if he/she makes the un-spiritual choice, it gives them more leverage to take it further during the next iteration. This tells me they are working within limitations imposed on them. They’re always trying to get permission, trying to tempt, trying to trip and dissuade. These are the actions of beings who are flying under the radar, working with loop holes, hacking the system so to speak. They don’t have absolute power. However, if a person or society or entire planet gets to a point where, through successive investment of their manipulation successes these beings finally get to the check mate stage, then they can swoop in and turn everyone into alien sausage meat if they wanted. Like the Nazis rising to power; doing it democratically, until at the end nothing could be done to stop the extermination of dissidents.

So let’s say you’re a target and have been for several years, and their stalking and massaging of you has resulted in your weakening and the making of a cascading series of stupid choices; you’re weak and depressed and paranoid because of all of it. Then one night a black shadow being comes in, wraps itself around you, squeezes until you can’t breathe, and you die of a heart attack or asphyxiation. The whole time you scream no no no, you don’t want this, you don’t choose this. Now, was that a freewill violation or not? It was in that moment, but it wasn’t in the big picture because you spent the past several years giving away your freewill piecemeal so that in this final act, you face the consequences of your past accumulated indiscretions. But the fact that these forces had to stalk you for several years shows they lacked the power initially to just do away with you, even though in the very end it seems like they had total power over you in that one final moment.

Things that can weaken a person:

- deep obsessive paranoia and fear
- having intentionally invited these forces into your life
- occult rituals and pacts, maybe bargaining with them for favors in exchange for your soul
- weakening by drugs and alcohol
- prolonged depression and suicidal thoughts, acts of suicide
- feelings of exasperation and giving up of all hope
- choosing a partner who is an energy vampire and/or psychopath
- being drained by a life of choosing to have had kids that are energy vampires or psychopaths
- ending up in jail at the mercy of the prison system, or choosing to enter the military
- working for the military or government or black ops and signing papers allowing your termination if you violate the contracts
- living by the gun or sword and accumulating much karma from the harm of others
- having had karmic accumulations from past lives, and that includes demonic pacts made in other lives.

Genuine freewill violations still happen, but I think they require physical force, for the perpetrator being completely in the physical. For nonphysical entities to try and take you out whenever they wish, they will run into metaphysical opposition of some type. I don’t know if it’s a natural law, or if it’s more protector beings stepping in to counter it. All I know is that physical violators don’t tip
toe around the issue and just go for it, while astral, alien, and demonic beings tread very carefully
and have to “hack the system” so to speak to pull off their offensive maneuvers. And even then,
physical hit attempts like getting smashed by an oncoming car or assassination by bullet can get
thwarted if higher law or higher positive beings step in when some “game rule” violation occurs.

» How imminent is a zombie apocalypse? Or do you think it is predictive programming? Just
wanted to know your thoughts on it. I’ve noticed a lot of zombie related themes on the History
channel.

The zombie obsession seems like a combination of several things:

1) A deep-seated anxiety in the population about the spiritual zombification people, which manifests
symbolically in actual zombies depicted in movies and TV shows. From a Christian perspective I
would say it’s a collective subconscious response to the rise of the anti-christ force in the human
population. From a secular conspiratorial view, it’s simply the increasing depravity, stupidity, and
programming of the gullible portion of the population. Anyone with spirit/soul can sense that others
around them are in a downward spiral, going further and further from what it means to be human.
Hence, becoming non-human, the walking dead. It’s worth mentioning that in dreams, dreaming of
zombies represents attacks by people who can’t think for themselves; they have no brains, and want
to take away your mind (eat your brain).

2) A deep-seated anxiety in the population about the imminent collapse of civilization and the shift
toward survivalism. They can sense the floor is about to drop away. This anxiety is manifesting in
many ways. Not only from the growing prepper movement, but even something as simple as the rise
of SUVs ever since the turn of the millennium. People want to own something rugged because they
are scared and insecure. Like animals reacting prior to an earthquake. Well, the whole survivalism
and prepper movement can be expressed in a socially acceptable way if the fear is made of zombies.
Hence that stupid Zombie Squad culture where people are buying real militarized vehicles and guns
with live ammo “just for fun, in anticipation of a fictional zombie apocalypse.” They’re doing
exactly what the militia groups are doing, but since it’s against zombies somehow it’s cool and
acceptable. But the event they are fearing doesn’t have to be zombies.

As to whether an actual literal zombie apocalypse could happen, I’d say the chances of that are
slim. One possibility is that odd solar EM, or weakening of earth’s magnetic field, or who knows
what else, causes mass insanity and psychosis in people who can’t handle it. Those microbiologists
who were killed over the past decade under mysterious circumstances, I looked into what their
specialties were and putting it all together it looks like the shadow government is engineering a
DNA-specific pathogen that can induce mad-cow type symptoms, in effect giving dementia to
enemies and rendering them easier to round up. Either way, if there is an epidemic of dementia or
psychosis, they wouldn’t be corpses crawling out of the ground, but rather given enough starvation
can turn into desperate psychos preying on the weak in a post-collapse situation. That’s the closest I
can foresee us ever getting to a zombie apocalypse.

But overall though, I’d say it’s primarily a socially acceptable “fun” way for people to prepare for
something they may not consciously realize is actually coming (a breakdown of civilization), and is
always a way for the government and military to indoctrinate people into that mindset, and teach
them survivalist skills to make it through. Hence even Spielberg’s show “Falling Skies” about an
alien invasion; it’s just prepper porn for the most part, and teaches the audience how to forage for food and medicine, set up camp, go on military strikes, etc. This goes hand in hand with the military abduction (MILABs) projects that aim to create an army of sleeper agents that can survive a collapse situation and I guess fight whomever these military programmers think are the enemy. Evidently black ops (and aliens) know what’s coming, and they’re programming people directly and through media to react a certain way to whatever’s coming.

» How do I find an authentic goodhearted alien?

You mean how to meet one in person? If you’re a contactee/abductee then maybe you already have, and don’t remember it.

If you’re not a contactee/abductee, then you have to ask yourself, what would motivate a good alien to go out of his/her/its way to meet you, considering the circumstances on Earth. Circumstances are that in certain countries (NATO, USA, etc.) negative alien groups have jurisdiction since they’re the ones with whom the shadow government has made treaties. These aliens and government have such countries on lockdown, making it difficult for good aliens to be as open as they used to be. When you hear about UFOs getting shot down, it’s not government shooting down alien crafts in general, but shadow government + negative alien technology shooting down good alien crafts when they get detected occasionally and intercepted. This means it’s very risky for a good alien to just show up in every day circumstances and meet you, unless they are very careful to hide their true nature.

Anyway, the only way to get their attention is if you get involved in their affairs enough to either impress or concern them. The more you step on their turf, the more they step into yours.

They’re concerned about how the public perceives them and their enemies, how intelligent people are regarding alien matters. Thus if you become a researcher in this field, do a good job of exposing their opposition, do a good job of helping the good guys empower people, then these good aliens know you’re on their side. If you demonstrate sufficient selflessness, chivalry, courage, intelligence, discretion, discernment, etc. and they think it’s safe and fruitful to meet you in order to speed up your path, then they might do so.

The least likely of all possibilities is that they meet you while you’re fully awake going about your day. More likely you’ll get a visit one night halfway in/out of sleep. Even more likely they’ll just telepathically broadcast into your dream state. That happens quite easily and often actually, since it’s risk-free and only limited by how busy they are with other projects.

If you want to see one without necessarily interacting with them, you might find a few at UFO conventions and similar types of events. They could be there as observers, pretending to be human. You might not know who they are. But if you look at everyone, chances are that at least one or two people are one of them in disguise. They tend to use remote controlled clones as ground probes, so that they don’t have to risk themselves being here directly. But the consciousness piloting the clone is them. I don’t know what they’re clones of, though, except that they’re flesh and blood vehicles that could pass any medical exam as seemingly fully human.

Funny story… many years ago I asked the universe to let me meet a Nordic in public, so that I could sit down and chat with him, and have him tell me something very inspiring. Well, I forgot about this request and two weeks later this event came up at the local book store. I checked it out
and afterwards got to meet the speaker. It was Richard Bach, the author of Jonathan Livingston Seagull and Illusions. He was a tall guy with blond hair and blue eyes, and one of the warmest nicest people I ever met. I mentioned my website and he told me to keep it up, that he appreciates what people like us are doing, and that we need more such people. Anyway that was pretty encouraging. No I don’t think he was a Nordic alien, just that reality had a sense of humor in fulfilling my wish. Indeed my wish was fulfilled in the sense of a Scandinavian looking guy fitting the qualifications; I just forgot to add the part about “real live alien” to my request when I said, “Nordic.” But close enough anyway, as I’d probably fall over from shock if I met a real Nordic while in my regular waking state consciousness, due to their intense energy field and inhumanly large eyes.

I was wondering how would be a defense mechanism to avoid alien manipulation, as you mentioned “No one is immune to this except humans of zero interest or those with special tactical awareness who have taken full countermeasures”. What would be those full countermeasures? Especially when somebody already suffers from Energy Harvesting and Implants?

Full countermeasures require being very psychic, in order to detect when negative aliens are attempting to manipulate or scan you, and thus you can develop more reliable ways of blocking them. You have to be almost on the level of an alien to block their attempts directly. But to become that is difficult; it takes a lot of work to achieve that, at the risk of other problems like health issues that come with being psychically active.

Otherwise, you can go a long way simply by not doing what these aliens are trying to get you to do. They are always trying to modify your behavior toward something that is beneficial to their agenda. The energy harvesting is more something that happens on a mass scale with religion, entertainment, violence, sex industry, and so on. That aspect is more directly operated by demonic beings and any alien groups that have a foot in that realm. It seems in general that aliens, as far as their involvement in the lives of truthseekers goes, are more focused on the strategic benefits, than the energy harvest. For instance, they commonly do the following:

1) Program a target to become obsessed with a certain individual or subject that is unhealthy, unproductive, wrong, or disinformative.

2) Program a target to hook up with someone who is likewise manipulated. See Eve Lorgen’s work on the “alien lovebite” phenomenon for more on that.

3) Program a threatening target to lose interest in what he/she is doing that the aliens find threatening. The person might feel hopeless, depressed, unable to think about that subject, and so on.

4) Break up that target’s relationship with friends, family, lovers, forums, networks, etc. that the aliens disapprove of. This is done by planting false suspicions in people’s minds, playing their weaknesses against each other, or outright abducting and programming someone to stop caring about you and to have an aversion to you.

5) Get a threatening target to self-destructive via emotions of anger, hatred, irritation, depression, unlovingness, etc. at the worst time, in order to make the target sabotage him or herself.

6) Get a gullible target to start loving these aliens and worshipping them, in order to act as a PR
person or sales rep selling those aliens as the “good guys” to other naive people.

7) Monitor a target for upcoming times in his/her life when the future is greatly in flux, where it could either go really well for the person or really well for the alien manipulators; and then to use telepathic persuasion, posthypnotic programming, manipulated agents sent to him/her to push a certain choice, or just to cause confusion or irritation or whatever to pressure the person into making the more negative choice.

These are some examples. Obviously the solution, if you can’t block their attempts directly, at least you can block the successful outcome. If you watch your own thoughts, sudden impulsive feelings, changes of emotion that are uncalled for, anything out of the ordinary that occurs in your train of thoughts and emotions — if you can catch those, and use will-power/self-control to choose a healthier alternative, then you defeat their attempts. Remember, they want you to think, feel, and act in a way that benefits them instead of what benefits your own freedom of mind, peace of heart, and fulfillment of love and life. They will give you everything except freedom and awareness; thus watch out for people who have been suckered through such tricks and cheer for their alien benefactors, because these people are simply mouthpieces for them.

» In reading further on your site, I saw a part that mentioned usually negative forces will attack harder if you make the wrong choice, and usually attacks will subside when you make the right choice. Is this a hard and fast rule in your experience?

No, it’s a general trend that occurs in conjunction with other things going wrong in life including accidents, illnesses, lots of setbacks, and every little thing seeming to conspire to annoy you. Because then it’s more a general symptom of your “reality immune system” being depressed and just as with the body then experiencing many different illnesses simultaneously (viruses, bacteria, fungus, etc.) same with reality, with negative force attacks only being one of those.

It’s possible to make a right choice and get more attacks under the following circumstances:

- You’re previously made deals with neg entities or innocently invited their presence, in this or a past life, and there’s some kind of karmic or pact bond going on with them. So that when you choose to leave them behind, they still have enough “legal” jurisdiction over you to try and scare you into staying. This usually involves them giving you nightmares, visiting you at night, lurking around the home trying to cause trouble. But at the same time you will also get synchronistic help in continuing to choose to leave them and follow a new and brighter path. Then as you continue on that path, the attacks subside as you draw further and further away from this. Versus being on the wrong path, where the farther you go the worse the attacks become since you’re treading deeper into their territory.

- You’re choosing to embark on a project that has serious threats to their little control system, that attacks them directly. I don’t mean writing a book on how to be spiritual, but writing a book exposing the truth on abductions or how to defend against demons, etc. stuff that directly steps on their toes. Then they reciprocate, for as long as they can. At the same time, you will get synchronistic help and protection if your vibe is balanced. An example would be, life is pretty good and you’re emotionally balanced and mentally objective, but dark forces try to steer someone’s car into yours to kill you, but a glitch in the traffic light system causes you to hit the break when you otherwise would have gone through and the dark force
attempt to kill you fails.

If you’re already in pretty deep under their influences, then just like being in the middle of a dark forest, if you want to get out, you still have some of that dark forest to go through. The test is what happens when you continue with the clearing attempts. Does it gradually get better or worse? Usually what happens is, these entities will be weakened, so their attacks will be less frequent, but out of desperation they’ll save up what energy they have to make those sporadic attacks worse, as a gamble that you’ll be cowed back into giving up.

It’s easier to open a door and let things in, than to make things leave by closing a door. The stubborn degree to which they stick around is proportional to the degree you in some way, intentional or not, invited them in. Nothing to feel guilty over, in fact if that’s all it was, then at least you have the confidence in knowing you’re on the right track and that it may just take a little more persistence than usual to shoo them out.

» I want to believe information like I read on your website, yet I have no concrete proof any of it is real. My logic and reasoning prevent me from believing anything I read without definitive proof.

It seems to me you require not logical proof, but experiential proof. Something you can personally experience, upon which you can build lines of reasoning.

As for me, well I had some alien and ghost encounters as a kid, and have had enough synchronicities, déjà vu, ear ringing, precognitive dreams, etc. from month to month that I’m always reminded reality is stranger than what the materialistic determinism mindset of science would admit.

Even so, I believe a good number of “fringe” ideas even without having experienced them myself. My reasoning is that if enough people I personally know have independently experienced something, and if I can’t find an easy explanation to show that they are mistaken, then I take it for what it’s worth.

The problem with skepticism is that much of it is pseudo-skepticism. That is, either false logic or false premises applied to rationalizing away an anomalous phenomenon.

One example is when they try to debunk life after death, alien abductions, matrix glitches and the like, they purposely exclude the facts/observations/details they cannot explain, leaving only a small sample which they then debunk and pat themselves on the shoulder for doing so. Real example is astrology; maybe you know about the test where they gave everyone the same horoscope, or different people the wrong horoscope, and the people all agreed that it was accurate. That’s somehow supposed to prove that astrology is bunk. Well, why were the horoscopes used, ones from some national syndicated column written by a superficial astrologer, and not the real and deep analyses done by true professionals? Because if the latter, then the debunking test would have failed. So you see, by excluding certain things and knocking down a straw man, pseudo-skepticism makes a big error.

There are also key root assumptions that can entrap us. One is the assumption that nothing should be believed unless it is proven. This kind of logical positivism has its problems. There’s actually no logical reason why that assumption is sacred and true. One could just as easily say, anything is possible until shown to be impossible or highly doubtful. Both of these approaches are valid.
Another root assumption is that we must think in “all or nothing” terms, in binary ways. That is, either something has conclusive proof and therefore is true, or no conclusive proof and we can’t accept it. How about probabilistic thinking, like the kind used in court of law — if there is enough circumstantial evidence, then a verdict can be made.

And another error is thinking that you must only believe that which is 100% true and proven, and once you believe it, you must commit to it for the rest of your existence. In other words, no risk taking, no revision, no rapid prototyping. Only incremental steps, taking one bite of perfection at a time, until you achieve at a whole of perfection. This kind of timid attitude is good if you’re an engineer building bridges since being highly experimental means risk to public safety, but when it comes to finding out what’s really going on in reality, it’s okay to “take your best shot” and build a viewpoint with loose tolerances, trying and testing it out, and seeing how well it works, then making revisions as time goes on to increase the resolution and accuracy of your picture.

To not believe anything until you’re 100% sure is like trying to build an engine with 0 tolerance in the parts. It’s impossible, or at least incredibly expensive. Loosen the tolerances a bit and you might get something up and running, so that you can test performance and modify the engine as needed.

Anyway, all I’m saying is that there are different approaches, and the one adopted by rigid academia isn’t always the best in all cases. If you look for concrete holes/counter-examples, look for the underlying motive of a text and see where it leads to, and if you’re open to revising your views if you come to discover something was false or shady, then it’s definitely okay to temporary accept sources that may not be 100% in every way. It’s like eating food, if you only wanted to eat 100% pure food, you’d be limited to sugar, salt, and distilled water. Otherwise it’s best to take what you can get and try to make the pros outweigh the cons.

I should also add that I do a lot of reasoning via counter-example. That is, eliminate the impossible via counter-example, rather than proving my point of view through supporting example. A lie can be supported by a thousand facts, but it can be demolished with only one counter-example. It has to be a valid counter-example though, not disproving astrology with a rigged test or saying that, since if you poke someone’s brain and they feel a “presence” that therefore all alien abductions are mere brain phenomena. That’s pseudo-logic.

So when it comes to any view I hold on my site, I ask the question:

- Is it internally logically consistent?
- Can I find or think of any counter-examples?
- Is there anything it fails to account for?
- Is there an alternative that is better in every way?

Rather than:

- What sources of authority have voiced this idea?
- What scientific studies have been done to back this up?
- How many of my peers hold this view?

The problem with the latter is that credibility is often a matter of group consensus, and delusions/limitations shared by a group can lead to seemingly objective “truths” being endorsed by
all that are, in fact, false. If that weren’t the case, Thomas Kuhn would never have written the book on scientific revolutions.

So as far as the ideas on my site are concerned, if there’s not a better alternative, if it accounts for what I know up to now, if I can’t find any counter-examples, then I go with it for now, until those conditions are met and then I modify it to improve it.

Again, if the casual reader is lacking personal experience, or anecdotal experience from others, or if he/she hasn’t done the broad level of research into diverse areas, then he might find many of these ideas unnecessarily complex, and opt for Occam’s Razor by picking a simpler or more common explanation. Occam’s Razor says, “entities must not be multiplied beyond necessity” but necessity is a subjective thing dependent on how many outliers or counter-examples or anomalies are taken into account by the person making that judgment. That’s why pseudo-skeptics must exclude these, so that they can have Occam’s Razor lead to their rationalistic solution.

» Is there any kind of tests I can do to prove any of the information to myself in regards to this matrix being real and valid?

There are a couple you can try.

The first is the reality creation test. That’s where you try to manifest something innocuous through emotion/visualization. The goal of the test is to prove to you that reality (or rather probability) can be molded by thought. Only problem is, you have to do it believing it’s real, since doubt and skepticism will block your subconscious from making the connection with reality and bending probability that way.

To do this test, during the first couple minutes after you awaken for the day, as you lie in bed, visualize an improbable object or situation and put yourself into that image as if it were happening right now, and you were feeling amazed or awed by it having materialized for you. For instance a blue fedora with a gold bell on it. Something you wouldn’t see any day of the year no matter how hard you tried. Feel the emotion, visualize the object or situation, imagine the smell and sound and texture of it, etc. and do that for two minutes or so. Then get up for the day and forget all about it. Repeat this every day for a week and something very close to what you had imagined will come your way synchronistically against all odds.

The second test is dangerous and I don’t advise it, but mention it for illustration. It’s to prove to you that aliens and/or negative astral entities exist. What you have to do is read one or two alien abduction case story books, maybe some on military abductions, anything alarmist and scary. Then you have to work yourself up emotionally to really fear them. You can print out a picture of a Gray alien and tape it to your ceiling and stare at it while you lie down. If you can work up the fear enough over the span of a week, pretty soon they’ll begin entering your life, drawn in by the psychic beacon you’re sending out. Then if one night you suddenly feel a wave of sleepiness and are told to be still because they’re coming, and you do fall asleep, you’ll have yourself an abduction. If you enjoy your perceived memory of the abduction (which is a false screen memory) and ask for another, they’ll come again, and the more you do this, the more your freewill slips away and the more they turn you into their little lab rat. Not a fun thing.

Third test might get you a visit from an alien. Join a forum that deals with the alien subject, and
make it a point to consistently point out that aliens are manipulative, that they use deception tactics, that people need to question the intention of their alien contacts. Research the subject and give examples of where they are being deceptive. Rain on people’s parades, especially at channeling and New Age forums. But you’d also have to know what advice to give these people to help them break free from their alien handlers. You’ll piss off a lot of the alien overseers, and they’ll pay you a visit one night. You might get psychically scanned which induces vertigo, or suffer bouts of tinnitus. But at least you won’t be getting abducted all the time like in the previous test.

Fourth test is pretty nice. It’s like the one about manifesting a strange object or situation, except you instead visualize something good. I don’t know, maybe that everyone goes out of his or her way to help you and be nice to you. Or you have to convince yourself that there’s a benevolent force conspiring to help you at every turn in the most amazing ways. Keep up that feeling every morning for a week, and it will begin happening.

Fifth is… and I don’t normally recommend this… but try to have an ayahuasca drug experience. Unlike other hallucinogens, ayahuasca (or the DMT in it) creates a very lucid experience, one deep enough that it’s very difficult to try and explain it away as a pure hallucination what you experience or are shown and told. I don’t normally recommend it because I prefer people get convinced through research and reason, but if that’s not enough, then ayahuasca is a good and relatively safe last resort.

What you will notice about all these tests is that they involve you — your state of consciousness, your feelings, your thoughts, your awareness, and most of all your volition. That’s why evidence for all this stuff is so compartmentalized; too often it’s personal and non-transferrable, but that’s not a mark against its validity, it merely speaks to the nature of these phenomena. Only matter, energy, space, and time are universally objective and analyzable by anyone regardless of who or what they are; the same can’t be said for phenomena that sit on the edge of reality and, like quantum phenomena, require participation of the observer

» What I wanted to ask is about positive and negative energy. I’ve read quite a lot about it but I’m not getting the point as to, are we not supposed to feel negative at all, or is it what we do when we are in that negative state?

What matters more is your fundamental outlook, the “color” of how you perceive and react to the world every day. The background music of your life. The “ground” upon which your thoughts and moment-to-moment feelings wander. Do you know what I mean? It’s your inner climate, the default way you react to things, the quality of your nature. It’s like the subconscious “tone” that’s always there underneath, which you might not always be conscious of, but it colors the way you see, think, feel, and act.

If this is negative, then that is when you make it easier for negative forces and illness and accidents to come your way. If this is positive, then you will likely notice an increase in good luck and everything going well.

As for moment-to-moment feelings in response to things, negative emotions are fine if they come from the soul and not from ego. So let’s say a news story about an abused child. If you feel sad, your heart aches, then that’s good because your soul is feeling concern.
Then let’s say a news story about a thief who steals from old women and ruined many of their lives — there you have to be careful, because it’s very easy to feel hatred and contempt and revenge, and since it’s a news story you can do nothing about, those emotions can’t go anywhere, and begin polluting your aura, so to speak, harming only you.

Where anger comes in useful, is if you are personally being violated or intruded upon by someone rude, selfish, ignorant, etc. and you have to stand up for yourself. If that anger motivates you to overcome fear of intimidation, and you simply do what must be done, and the result is that you regain your freedom somewhat, then that is also good.

Emotions are best used to fulfill the choices you make. If you choose to speak up to someone, to put them back in their place if they are being unfair, then the emotion can help you carry out that choice if confidence is lacking. However, it’s dangerous when emotions make the decisions for you. Then you may make bad judgments. Thus every time an emotion tries to sway you to make a choice, pull back and use your mind instead to make sure it agrees and that you’re not acting blindly. If all is okay, then go with it. Otherwise, you might find out that, no, it’s not a good idea to act on it right now.

There is a difference between feelings of the heart/soul, and feelings of the ego/animal within. We have to distinguish between these two. The heart/soul will always agree with wisdom and reason, but the ego/animal will go against it. Thus there are times when negative emotions are fine, but the only way to know for sure when they are, is to do a mind/reason/wisdom check when they arise, to question them, and to choose whether to proceed with them, or to diffuse them through a change of perspective based on a more expanded, higher perspective.

But those kinds of reactive emotions are not as big a deal as the more underlying, permanent, emotional “climate” of your being, which as I said need to stay on the balanced/positive side to avoid attracting misfortune.

» What do you think about people who are “possessed”? Do you believe they are technically “dead” and their bodies are used much like a stolen car, or are they trapped somehow and unable to regain control of their bodies and mind?

From what I’ve seen, it’s a spectrum of gradual possession. Some people are just easily influenced and occasionally have external forces speak/act through them. Others are helpless against a negative/psychopathic persona that possesses them only 75% of the time, stepping in and out as circumstances make convenient.

And then there are people who, it seems, have no original human soul inside them, but are 100% piloted by a non-human intelligence. The latter are quite sure of themselves, slick, manipulative, with an evil glint in their eye even when they’re smiling. It’s like the entity knows what it’s doing, and this is the way they are all the time. The most successful ones among these become influential people in society, anywhere there is money and power. That doesn’t mean all powerful people are of that type, just that the possessed are conveniently positioned by the demonic hierarchy into those places to feed, exploit, and make things harder for good people. So, certain politicians, music and movie producers, artists, city council and school board members, supervisors and CEOs, correctional officers, social workers, lawyers, judges, etc.
But demons and demented ghosts take what they can, and their lower less intelligent minions find hosts among the lower classes if there is a localized position of power that can be exploited, for example a violent or sexually abusive stepfather that again, “conveniently” comes into the life of an innocent and bright young girl and makes her life hell. There are stories of sick couples that kidnap and torture children. They tend to be on drugs and have severe alcohol issues too, which makes possession even easier. No normal human being with an active spirit would engage in those acts. And if spirit isn’t there to add an element of conscience and empathy, then something else will take the wheel. These people are less than animals, because even animals don’t do that kind of stuff in nature. Thus whatever force is piloting them, is outside the circle of life and nature, and that is identically the demonic realm which is a cancer upon Creation. Cancer serves a purpose but it’s not natural. Its purpose is to be fought and overcome, thus setting right the weakness or imbalance that brought it on.

The only ones who can recover are those who have a real human soul (spirit) inside them, and who are sufficiently alive inside to 1) realize that they have been influenced or possessed at times, 2) are able to distinguish between their own thoughts/feelings and the artificial ones, and 3) have the willpower to do something about it. Usually it’s people in the early stages; either that, or people with schizophrenic type disorders who try out spirit releasement therapy or similar. That’s where the work of Dr. William Baldwin and Dr. Shakuntala Modi come in. They use hypnosis to try and rid patients of their negative entity attachments, which works because it removes the infection at the subconscious or astral level where it resides.

I saw an interview with Marshall Vian Summers through Project Camelot awhile back where he made some pointed comments about free energy technology, which I’m interested in your take on.

Right, free energy isn’t free in an absolute sense. It’s more about where the energy ultimately comes from, at what cost. In the case of human free energy technology, it actually comes from time itself. In other words, time slows down a little around these devices. However it has other quantum ripple effects that then impact human health, the weather, Earth seismic activity, and so on. You’d have to know these effects and why they occur in order to design free energy devices properly so that their “exhaust” doesn’t pollute your local etheric environment with toxic energies. The flip side of that is, you could then pump energy into something, and have it convert to the other way, so that instead you have enhanced human health, quietened seismic activity, etc.

So free energy isn’t as simple as just making free electricity, there are some other small details that need to be figured out to make it safe, but yes I do think it can be done. I mean, having a 1kw free energy generator for a home should be doable if the NWO forces back off from killing or buying out the people who do it.

The biggest argument against free energy is that with free energy everywhere, there’s no limit to how much resources can be harvested, machines produced, etc. and so under our current culture whose “modern sophistication” is just lipstick on a pig, with some people and corporations and military being as greedy and cut-throat as they are, resources would be gobbled up exponentially. So unless you could also make free matter, you’d run into problems there. If we start colonizing other planets thinking it’s like the early frontier days, as Summers says we’ll quickly discover that there are no frontiers in this sector of the galaxy since jurisdictions by various aliens are already well established. We’d be like jungle natives setting out on a boat thinking we could colonize other
continents like Europe and North America.

The only thing limiting resource usage would be if free energy only worked by putting out X amount of power per cubic meter of space, perhaps by it drawing from the surrounding ether like a dehumidifier draws water from the air, and there’s only so much ether around to do it. Then it would be like solar power, in that while the quantity is infinite, the rate of tapping it is limited. Then it could work I guess.

There was a Stargate episode about the Tolans who offered their less advanced planetary neighbors free energy, but the people there used it to fuel their war machines in unlimited ways, and it ended up destabilizing and blowing up the planet. Perhaps that’s what happened with Atlantis and the primordial Nordics blowing up their home planet. I think some forces feel likewise if Earth had it in wide open use. However, it seems black ops with their antigravity triangles and such have it, and it’s interesting to think that the shadiest predators on the planet are the ones who use it, while good people continue slaving their lives away to feed the oil industry.

But overall, what will probably happen is either, a) aliens take over, put everything on lock down, and free energy becomes available in a highly regulated way with strings attached, or 2) humanity undergoes a reset, and the survivors build their own small-scale free energy devices under a new culture of responsibility which, coupled with a reduced population, will prevent resources from expiring as quickly. The latter then eventually evolves into the kind of civilization that the Nordic aliens are at already. So, with increased power comes increased responsibility, and responsibility from the viewpoint of the irresponsible seems like limitation and restriction, but that’s the price to pay.

Otherwise, free energy can be done right now if it stays underground (figuratively) and is only in the hands of the good people to give them a leg up on the NWO oppression system. For instance, enough to power their homes and cars and allow them to live off the grid, easily. If it stays there, good. If it gets picked up by corporations and overhauls the military with tanks and jets and planes that never run out of energy (think giant killer predator drones hovering over our cities 24/7 without running out of fuel, with energy beam weapons to zap dissenters, etc.) then obviously that’s a problem. Thus ultimately, it’s our current culture, and current corporations and military that are preventing the responsible and necessary use of free energy. If the system ever collapses and wipes them out, then free energy could blossom. I also think that people would need to develop, maybe naturally if you consider the Etheric Tide idea discussed in Gnosis Part 7, certain clairvoyant/psychic abilities so that they can see and feel any otherwise invisible effects of these generators.

Thus, any current free energy researchers would do well to stay underground and pass their technology on in secret, to secret networks who need it, perhaps the same networks who will one day topple the NWO structure, and only after global collapse and cultural reset can they then bring it into the open. That, in fact, is very much like any secret society in history who possessed some great power, be it the real Rosicrucians or immortal Alchemists, who did exactly this.

» What’s your take on Marshall Summers/Allies of Humanity material?

Well he doesn’t acknowledge the hyperdimensional, timeline split, or time travel aspect of it. His paradigm strictly deals with 3D aliens: extraterrestrials. Maybe we just differ in our semantics.
Now, the Allies themselves, being that they had to observe from a distance, were chased down, etc. it does sound a lot like what you’d expect of an upper level 3D extraterrestrial group. I mean, considering we have more advanced aliens (Nordics, etc.) that are here on Earth and have been for decades, so obviously the latter have better evasion or defense tricks to do that here on the ground. That is, if the Allies are even real.

So let’s assume for a second that the Allies aren’t real, and Summers is a disinformation vector. In that case, I suppose the only angle I can pull from his material, is that it nudges us toward a certain probable future where, except for some psychic/gnostic skills, we exist in a world of dwindling resources, continuing physical limitations, and having to deal directly with the 3D/4D STS factions that have trade routes through this part of the galaxy. In other words, it’s a very material-based idea, materialistic future, no timeline splits or shifting to some other dimension or anything. But who knows, maybe this is the more realistic view. I just find it interesting that the nonlinear time stuff, hyperdimensional aspects (like them being involved in our everyday lives, monitoring, nudging, etc.) is being left out, that’s all. Also about aliens not being able to breathe our atmosphere — abductions show they breathe ours and we breathe theirs, as far as I can tell.

What the Allies say of the alien disinfo campaign is correct, as far as my own research has borne it out to be. The importance of Knowledge/Gnosis is self-evident too. Overall though, net effect of the messages is positive. I wrote *Discerning Alien Disinfo* not only to expose the agenda, but also to augment Marshall’s message because his books seemed intentionally vague on specific tactics being used, so I wanted to bring those in detail out into the open.

» How does the etheric body work, especially in regard to the physical and etheric and genetics? The same for the astral body.

Alright, well it’s a field that biases the probability of quantum events. So if at the quantum level, matter normally wants to continue the way matter does and follow the course of entropy and disintegrate, the etheric field can change this so that matter acts in a more organized, ordered, and intelligent way. In other words, it has the ability to produce negative entropy. After all, the law of thermodynamics is just a statistical observation, and negative entropy isn’t impossible just highly unlikely. And yet, improbabilities is what the etheric body can produce, namely by guiding cells and DNA to perform as it should. It acts as a guiding template along which biological processes can flow, similar to iron filings following the field contours of a magnet.

So the etheric is able to overcome the default behavior of matter. Or put another way, default behavior of matter is simply how it behaves when there is no extra etheric body nudging it otherwise at the quantum level. Now the stronger, more complex, and refined the etheric energy field, the greater that matter is influenced by it. In the case of humans, we have just enough of the etheric body to allow our spirit/mind to influence neurons, and thereby enable our brains to mirror our thoughts and muscles to obey our will. The etheric body also maintains health and vitality, as mentioned.

The place where etheric body interfaces with the physical is likely at the level of microtubules, dimers, and so on. The site quantumconsciousness.org explains it very well. In a nutshell, inside these small biological structures called dimers, there is an empty pocket in which electrons exist in a quantum delocalized state. Anesthetics have the ability to plug this up and temporarily prevent the
electrons from doing what they must, and so consciousness leaves the body at that point. These electrons are called Pi electrons. They are one of the many states in which electrons can exist within/around a molecule. But what makes them special is that they are quantum delocalized (in a ghostly superposition state) while simultaneously creating effects that are, in the end, physical on an everyday scale. So that’s where the quantum world meets the classical world, and where the etheric body ultimately is able to influence the physical, at least in biology.

Beyond this usual state of affairs, we run into the limitations of the physical: aging, five-senses, illness, gravity, and so on. These we cannot overcome in our current etheric body state, since our etheric body is only strong enough to sustain life as we currently know it. However, if we are able to increase our etheric energy, then these limitations begin to be correspondingly overcome. For instance, if beforehand DNA activity and epigenetics (the way genes are turned on and off) only corresponded weakly to our thoughts and emotions, with extra etheric energy the response would be far greater. Thus I hypothesize that if Earth were to be irradiated in a strong etheric energy field that elevated its quantity and quality in every living being, you would see a great acceleration in evolution all over Earth, and perhaps this explains some past explosions of life on Earth. But now, for us, it would allow for faster natural genetic evolution.

Additionally, if our etheric energy were to increase, certain dormant or embryonic structures in our etheric body would be activated. Think of a crashed spaceship that has been off-line for hundreds of years, and someone connects a proper power source to it. Now all the main subsystems come back online and perhaps the ship can even take off and fly home. Same thing in our case, we would acquire perception beyond the five senses, increased control over our physical environment via thought/emotional energy, and other paranormal abilities. It would be like a desert blooming after a rain.

If our etheric field extended beyond our bodies and reached out into the environment, then anything it touches would become more perceptible directly influenceable by us. Why? Because the etheric influences matter at the quantum level, and if the etheric is directed by our minds or higher minds, and is able to alter the etheric “code” beneath/behind a material object, then the object can be made to move (per telekinesis) or more exotic things like teleport, dematerialize, and so on. I believe that initially, this would not be easy at all, but might require technology that is built on the principles of not only physics but also etheric energy principles. And, for example, in the Old Testament the accounts of Moses using a staff to raise water up into the air, or the Ark parting water, and other seemingly magical acts, are an example of this. For back then, ambient etheric energy levels on Earth were a little higher than today, and occultists/priests with the proper knowledge and perhaps technology could make use of those improved conditions.

But for now, the etheric is both a mirror copy of our physical body, and something extra — a superset. It not has mirrors of our physical organs, but also contains structures/organs for which there are no physical correspondences. Some of these grow naturally when etheric energy is increased. Certain hermetic, yogic, shamanic, etc. practices aim to condition and amplify the etheric body’s energy flows, in order to activate and grow these structures. If the etheric body becomes so strong that the physical body comes under its complete control, then you have shape-shifters and people who can teleport themselves, walk through walls, perhaps exist beyond time. The body is absorbed into the etheric like retractable landing gear into an airplane. Or perhaps the body is not
even needed, and the etheric can just manifest one out of thin air when needed. This state is more akin to that of angels and the djinn and the elementals, and aliens as well, although aliens have a physical body while angels do not unless they want to temporarily project one.

As to what the etheric body/energy actually IS — well, I suspect it has to do with “imaginary energy” or “imaginary matter” — that is, in Einstein’s theory of Relativity, when you surpass the speed of light, matter becomes imaginary matter. As in, multiplied by the square root of negative one. Or, shifted dimensionally by 90 degrees, same thing. In other words, it would take physics/math language to attempt to describe what it really is.

Whereas the etheric’s job is to interface the soul with the physical, to provide the structures and rhythms and patterns and templates according to which matter should be patterned, the astral body is not in any way physical. It is the seat of emotional energies, desires, passions, and impressions. But it interfaces with the etheric. So between the mind/spirit and the etheric, is the astral body, which influences the etheric similar to how the etheric influences the body. It’s not at a quantum level anymore, but beyond in the metaphysical realms, where this interface happens. But the astral also has structures that loosely correspond to the etheric. In fact, the chakras are multi-dimensional conduits that link the astral with the etheric with the physical body. It is said (according to Rudolf Steiner) that upon deep sleep, the mind along with the astral body leave and enter the spirit/afterlife realm and commune with the beings there, while the etheric remains with the physical body and undergo the restorative processes that sleep brings. And that when dreams begin, that’s after the mind+astral returns and loosely mingles with the etheric body without fully entering the physical body yet. What the astral soul underwent in the spirit realm, this mixes with, or filters through, the etheric body and the physical brain, and the combination produces our dreams as a projected result. Upon awakening, all four of these (mind, astral, etheric, physical) merge back together.

Upon death, the physical body drops away but the other three remain together, and one exists as a disembodied human for a while (several days it’s said). Then the etheric begins dropping away, and one slips away from linear time and physical reality. The astral body is then purified or stripped of its attachments/desires and might even fall away from the mind/spirit. The latter then goes on to the afterlife, while in some cases the astral shell continues on until it fades away. But the astral shell, or even the etheric body, can survive and go on separately from the mind/spirit, and this shell is what’s often channeled via ouija board. I even read in one of Steiner’s books, that in the orient certain black magic societies capture these shells and use them for nefarious deeds, or that demonic beings can slip into them and wear them, and soak up the energies given to them by people who practice ancestor worship. Well, same way there is abnormal psychology, this here I guess would be abnormal metaphysics.

» I read an article by someone who is purportedly the human representative for the Pleiadeans on Earth. Prior to seeing this article, I had hopes that at least the Pleiadeans would be kosher, but no, he was channeling for the Ascended Masters. YIKES! I know the Ascended Masters belong to the Great White Brotherhood and are a spiritual branch of the Illuminati. One of my friends who I shared this with said we might as well shoot ourselves and I am close to loosing hope for a brighter future.

Well the problem is that negative forces, hoaxers, and delusional New Agers have created caricatures of the real thing and either usurped the name, or created a new name to designate their
So there may in fact be positive humanoid aliens and a positive spiritual brotherhood. They might even be called the Pleiadeans and Great White Brotherhood. But that doesn’t mean everyone who identifies themselves under those names, or associates with them, is necessarily also positive. In fact I’d say that a huge majority of the latter are nothing but impostors and scammers.

I mean, how many humans, aliens, demons, etc. throughout history have posed as “God” to their unsuspecting victims? Negative forces obviously can’t gain much allegiance by revealing their true colors, so they wear the colors of the good guys.

The Ashtar Command, Galactic Federation, and Galactic Federation of light as known by those names are false, as those names originated with certain channelers and hippies and not with anybody actually known by that name. I mean Ashtar sounds like a joke derived from Ashtaroth, the name of a demon who “who seduces by means of laziness, vanity, and rationalized philosophies.”

But I know from personal experience that positive aliens, some looking like humans, do exist. Only, they never identify their real names, where they come from, and they sure as hell never call themselves by grandiose titles like “Melchizedek Princess of the Mintakan Crystal Dolphin Alliance” or something along those lines.

The only reason you know they’re positive is by their actions and the end results of their words, the knowledge and training they give to make you a more aware, ethical, powerful, and freer human being. And not through common sense, over used, trite sayings that anyone could get from fortune cookies, but through timely, specific, powerful knowledge that makes a difference, that you can verify through personal experience and reason, that has a certain deep elegance to it testifying to their experience, wisdom, and intelligence.

The real good guys aren’t the sappy cartoons that you read about in New Age literature. They’re more mature, mentally lucid and sharp. They say a lot with few words. You know how my site gets to the point and cuts through the crap. Well, same for these guys, just to a higher level. What they say accords with the facts. If someone calling himself Commander Ashtar says all negative aliens have just been kicked off the planet and we should rejoice, but you yourself are still getting symptoms of alien monitoring and abductions, then guess what, that Ashtar character is full of it.

I don’t see a reason to shoot ourselves, because the situation isn’t hopeless. I mean, we’ve known for a long time — from dreams, prophecies, trends, lessons of history — that the world needs to change, will change, but that the transition would be mightily difficult, and that dark forces would reach an excruciating crescendo before their downfall. So we’re at the foothill of that dark mountain, and sure we have a difficult time to get through, but there’s a positive light at the end of the tunnel. We shouldn’t give up, because the fight has yet to truly begin. We just have to hang in there and take our battles one day at a time, keeping our eye on the faithful positive outcome at the end.

» What is your impression of the “journey” that Robert Monroe was describing in the final two books? Do you feel he used a level of metaphor to describe his soul’s journey, or was it a true recounting of his experiences?

Well, at worst the two books may have been a fictional narrative woven together from actual
experiences he had while out of body. The same way made-for-TV movies of true stories have an exciting plot overlay that ties it all together even though in real life it wasn’t quite as coherent. But to be honest I think he was recounting the experiences as he had them.

The problem lies in the fact that astral experiences are partially objective, in that what you see is more your own subconscious interpretation of what’s actually there. It’s like the code behind a website, and what you see in your browser — what you see is specifically made so by the browser and computer’s library of how to interpret that code. So I wouldn’t take everything he said he saw as being exactly how he described it, but may have been partially symbolic representations.

The other problem is his way of making sense of the experience. Like in one, he was in the future and met that woman with the corn, and in another experience he seemed to meet the same woman with corn but on an Earth one million years ago. This seems like a contradiction, unless he actually visited a realm that was outside linear time somehow, or if time were a timeloop so that our future is actually our past, or something like that. Since Monroe didn’t bring up these possibilities, that contradiction was something certain critics pointed out as being suspicious about his books. But I don’t think they’re suspicious.

And the last problem is that what you see in the astral depends largely on the state of your being, your consciousness. Some things you just can’t see, because it’s beyond your mental scope. Like I know psychics who can read everything about a person that is within their own comfort zone, but if the psychic knows nothing about aliens or military abductions, then when they read such a person/abductee, that aspect of the person is invisible to them. It seems that different existences are more segregated/quarantined on the other side, and therefore you could talk with an astral entity who knows all about one segment, while knowing nothing of the other.

This can lead to conflict between books on the afterlife where some say it’s all heaven and roses, and others say it’s a big energy farm where trickster beings feed on our souls. I don’t believe these are mutually exclusive, but two different areas of the afterlife. I believe we are only as free in the afterlife as we are while living, thus if while living we are slave to some heavily controlling religion or cult or personal attachments, then these fetter our soul afterwards for some “time” until we finally move on past them.

» What is your impression of the “freewill” vs. “determinism” paradox and how do you see it affecting an individual who has introduced themselves to the idea that they have a “greater essence” existing outside of “time” who may have already written the entire incarnation out for them?

As best as I can determine, the life plan/destiny decides what generally must happen and why, whereas you while incarnated determine more how it manifests and when. For instance, if there is a key lesson you must learn (as so chosen prior to incarnation) then it’s up to you how quickly you learn it; often people will fail the first several times and only the fourth time does it finally click and they break out of that lesson loop onto the next one. That shows an element was indeed fated, but the timing and severity of it was up to you here. There also seems to be the phenomenon of exit points, where you might have a handful of times in your life where it would be a good time for you to die and leave, or to continue on for some “bonus rounds.” Thus you might have a close call with death that gets averted at the last moment during such a point. Or things might lead up to such an exit, but in the end it fizzles out, probably because during “night school” you elect to not check out
just yet.

So that’s another thing, it seems the part of our being that made the choices for the plan, still exists outside of linear time while we are here, and it’s possible to revise, updated, add-to, or somehow amend the plan while we’re still alive.

Role playing video games, or choose-your-own-adventure books, are a good metaphor for all this. There is a predetermined structure, but you choose certain options from the ones given. Hence it’s a mix of freewill and determinism.

» What technology do you use to gain insight (meditation etc.)?

Mostly it’s research and contemplation, with some random intuitive insights and observations throughout the day thrown in, and occasionally an enlightening dream, also conversations with others in which ideas spontaneously arise. But of all these methods, contemplation is the only one that consistently pays off. I’m talking about sitting or lying down with a notebook or blank sketchbook, writing down the mysteries/perplexities on my mind, brainstorming possibilities, pouring over my “knowns” and experiences, and mapping out possible solutions. Intuiting them, then writing them out in plain language, then going over them looking for counter-examples, holes, insufficiencies. And in the end, summing it up in a paragraph what the conclusion is.

Not all the time do I solve the question, and often I’ll have to read or research, and synchronistically I’m guided to some key items of info that make it all click. The more difficult and bigger the problem, the longer it takes, but many things I’ve gotten to the bottom of to my satisfaction. They stand as working hypotheses until more info comes along that suggests the need for a better theory, or a counter-example that shows my theory was flawed. But yes, contemplation, introspection, tuning into intuition, analyzing it with logic, converting it into words… that’s the real grist mill that grinds out the bulk of what you see on my site.

As for meditation, I see that more as training the mind to stay disciplined and enter alternate states of awareness without losing itself, such as entering a waking dream state, which has NUMEROUS uses and is the key to healing, remote viewing, clairvoyant, and other powers. I just started browsing through that Silva Method book by Jose Silva, and the first half I’ve read so far is in line with what I’ve read in the books of Rudolf Steiner, Theun Mares, and other hermetic/gnostic/shamanic types. That kind of meditation, as well as simply raising your mood into a more spiritually lofty attitude, those are the only meditations that I do when I can. But not mantra chants or anything like that; I think the Maharishi Technique is self-hypnotizing and can turn the brain to mush.

» The aliens are visiting us for thousands of years, there are archeological and historic proofs, but for some reason today they visit us but remain hidden.

I don’t know why they want to be visible now, as the disclosure campaign suggests. Maybe to start a new religion and be adored as gods?

I’ve heard a couple theories toward that end. One is that a kind of quarantine was put in place by a third-party powerful alien group, whereby other alien groups were prevented from being openly walking around pretending to be gods. Therefore these aliens had to become covert, with only occasional limited contact. Mankind was to be left alone (at the public level) to develop on its own.
This occurred around 1,000 to 800 B.C., which matches with mythology and the Bible where it is said that the Gods stopped talking to man. But, theory is that the quarantine will soon be lifted because mankind has now reached legal age. Hence the alien groups who had to be secret, will soon be allowed to reveal themselves again. The only difference is that today we have science, nuclear weapons, space weapons, global military, and more… therefore they cannot come back pretending to be magical gods, but would have to use a scientific and logically paranormal “mythology” to present themselves.

And that’s the picture they have been giving to abductees and contactees for decades now, as if to prepare the public to perceive aliens in a certain way, so that in the end these same beings can rule over us except we will follow them from different reasons than the past. Like if in the past they were seen as divine gods, then today they might be seen as technological superiors here to help their young brothers and sisters on Earth advance as well — so long as we obey them and eliminate any human “bigoted” resistance working against their trying to help us. In other words, they are just the space version of Nazis or Communists, and it will be one tough battle preventing such a scenario from manifesting if they try to do that in the next decade.

I suspect that the current global economic disaster just beginning, and the first early stages of World War III in the mid-east, are steps in their agenda to make people weak, confused, divided, and desperate for help, so that these aliens can step in and offer help with dangerous compromises on our part.

» I have heard claims that the white light at the end of the tunnel during near death experiences is a trap. Do you have any ideas regarding this?

Personally no I don’t think so. Reason is that any accounts of discarnate humans who do nothing but latch onto other people, steal energy, enter into service of demons, or are just stuck and confused in some astral realm, they all were ones who never went into the light, and only guiding them into the light frees them up.

One thing is certain, the light is the way out and into the true spirit realm (5D/time-space) and subsequent incarnation. So if someone wants to avoid reincarnation, then they should avoid the light, however they end up going nowhere instead and just hang out in literal limbo like a kid being trapped in an empty classroom after everyone else has gone home. I’m not aware of any genuinely positive entities showing signs of being truly wise and good, who say never enter the light, or who offer a better alternative for that matter. Meanwhile, those who do say it’s a trap have some huge flaws in the methods they used to obtain that idea, and the rest of what they say shows further signs of fatal naïveté, corruption, or demonic deception.

The only real bad thing about the light is that it seems to obliterate everything about you that was not fully absorbed or imprinted upon your core spirit. Castaneda therefore wrote about recapitulation as the way to avoid being “eaten by the Eagle” — theoretically it eats the copy of the memories you made if you recapitulate them first while alive. Then your original memories stay intact. However, Rudolf Steiner said that only the spirit core survives the process of reincarnation, and only what in your lifetime entered into the deepest core of your awareness therefore survives. Hence, if you recapitulate meaningful experiences deeply enough, you might absorb those memories into that core, hence it survives the entering-the-light process. The light is the Eagle, no
doubt about that.

» Is the moon an artificial object?

Compared to other solar system objects, the Moon is anomalous in several ways. Its relative mass to the planet is unusually large, its orbit is unusually small, its density is too low, and its core is strangely undersized as well. It is unlike any other body in the solar system. And while the Moon is 400 times smaller than the Sun, it is also closer to Earth by the same factor, hence Sun and Moon appear to have the same average width in the sky, allowing for solar eclipses. Its nearly circular orbit maintains this improbable relation within a small variation. Since the Moon’s orbit increases slowly over time, only within the span of the past million years has this condition existed — the same span of time during which intelligent life on Earth arose, upon the only planet in the solar system's habitable zone. What are the chances of all this happening naturally? Slim to none.

Therefore at minimum, it seems the Moon was artificially placed into its current orbit. When did this occur? Probably around the same time Earth acquired its tilted axis and four seasons; the Moon serves to stabilize Earth’s axial tilt. It was only after the end of the Jurassic period that warm blooded animals and deciduous vegetation proliferated, indicating evolutionary adaptation to the introduction of seasons. Therefore it’s possible that even 150 million years ago, the Moon did not exist around Earth.

But why was it placed there? According to Hermetic tradition, the Moon is an embryonic planet placed around ours to siphon off the energies generated by the suffering and death of intelligent terrestrial lifeforms such as humans. This matches rather well what has been known about the Moon in both scientific and occult areas of investigation. For this and other reasons, I believe our Moon has been artificially placed by superior beings who have vested interests in the cultivation and periodic culling of intelligent life on Earth. It stands to reason that they may have modified it internally as well to suit their purposes. Thus a natural planetoid may have been artificially modified and intelligently placed around Earth to serve some cosmic agenda.

» I don’t remember you mentioning Sophia anywhere on your Gnosis articles, so I am curious, what do you think about this mythos?

I only mentioned Sophia briefly. I think she’s equivalent to the Holy Ghost or Holy Spirit, the Advocate, the Comforter. In the Christian paradigm, when Jesus Christ left his disciples behind, he promised them that an “Advocate” would take his place and speak through them, inspiring them, doing God’s work through them. This Advocate also became known as the Holy Ghost. But that’s the same concept as Sophia, holy wisdom that enlightens, illuminates, awakens, and animates you. It’s a feminine nurturing energy because like a mother bringing an embryo to term, the Holy Spirit or Sophia brings about the birth of the higher mind into the lower mind. That’s what I think Sophia really is. Obviously if there is a Father, a Son, then where is the Mother? It is Sophia.

In that other Gnostic myth about Sophia, the Aeons, the Demiurge and how the universe came about, Sophia plays the role of Logos, in the sense of her being the creator of the Demiurge. So Sophia is indeed both the Logos and the Holy Spirit, and these are just different terms or angles of the same cosmic being.

Steiner had a triad of: Lucifer, Ahriman, Sorat. Sorat being the Sun Demon with his “flying
monkeys” (like in Wizard of Oz) the Asuras. Sorat is a purely destructive force that aims to destroy individuality and form and reduce things to formless chaos. Ahriman being that which crystallizes into soulless order. And Lucifer being that which illuminates with false light and brings egotistical transcendence toward realms of delusion and mania.

So it stands to reason that the positive is also a triad. 1) The Creator/Nous (infinite creator), 2) Logos/Holy Spirit/Sophia, and 3) Christ. Also known as Father, Holy Ghost, and Son in Christianity which due to its patriarchal nature prefers using “Holy Spirit” instead of the more Gnostic “Sophia.”

» Is there anything that people who are new to truthseeking need to watch out for? Will they be targeted for not staying asleep?

One thing that happens is that the neophyte will be approached by a spiritual con-artist (or multiples of them) who will try to befriend and beguile them. They come on quickly, share certain uncanny things in common as a gimmick to build rapport, and then try to sell the neophyte on some wrong belief system, on a destructive relationship with them, or anything that would either shut the neophyte down or more often, lead them astray and turn them into an asset for the dark forces.

That’s because these forces are efficient, and if they see a ripple in time, they will trace it back to the source, which is when a person first is on the edge of awakening. That’s when the person is also most naive, and hence influenceable. It’s the logical choice of where to nip that “weed” in the bud.

There’s also a phenomenon where a person’s life falls apart and when they’re broken and can’t sink further, they have an epiphany and rise from the dead, so to speak, into the light. However that’s more a catalyst that propels them into awakening (because they would have been too stubborn or programmed for anything less harsh to work). I don’t consider this the same phenomenon as the preceding paragraph, as it seems more in the area of “destiny” (as in a pre-determined time of triggering and forced awakening) than as a hostile attempt to trip them up.

Another thing, some people may have made pacts with dark forces earlier in life, or in previous lifetimes. And when they awaken in this life and try to break free, those forces still have some of the old “signed papers” that give them permission to enter the target’s life more deeply than if the person never had anything to do with them. So, such people will get way more hard-hitting resistance by forces, including accidents, injuries, hauntings, and generally forceful and scary stuff that tries to push them back in line. If they keep up, they break through the resistance. It’s like reaching escape velocity, the black hole will fight to pull you back in at first.

But generally, the deceptive spiritual con-artist trick is the most common one. They remind me of desperate salesmen who put on the charm but get quick to the selling point, and they often go nuts or get angry if you don’t follow along with them quickly enough.

Lastly, if you do awaken and your light shows, this attracts further neg entities (nonphysical) and probably also negative aliens if you’re of concern to them, like if your words and actions intersect their agenda and interfere with it. If overt scare tactics don’t work, they resort to covert telepathic persuasion and night-time mind programming to induce feelings of apathy, depression, doubt, and distraction with the mundane. They can do this slowly over the span of a couple weeks so that if you’re not careful, you slip into it gently without realizing. That’s why it’s good to write down a snapshot of your true self and true spiritual mindset, and compare yourself with that periodically to see how far you’ve deviated, then re-commit yourself to make the correction.
If you do a lot of good, shine the light bright, become an outlet of positive influences, then dark forces bring out their big guns. Usually 5D STS entities. If you read the Ra Material, I think it’s later in Book III where Carla Rueckert came under the surveillance and encircling of a demonic entity. It was trying to make her ill, and if she went out of body, then to snatch her soul. Demonic beings are a PITA. If you have karmic issues that attract them and allow them to attack, and if you’re revealing weaknesses by betraying your conscience or being somehow stubborn and ignorant, then these entities have the ability and permission to hack away at your defenses. Otherwise, if they’re doing something just because they want to, then you can call on higher divine light beings (angels basically) to come down and clear out your place and remove all dark beings and protect you from them.

Lastly, I know from experience and those of others, that be it aliens or demons or even black ops military, that there is an attempt to use posthypnotic programming on key targets along the lines of “you will not remember who you are” and that kind of stuff. They want to keep the lion asleep. 

» I want to grow more, but I feel kinda lost. I haven’t lost hope, but I feel like I’m just living and don’t have any direction.

Hang in there. You may simply need a change of pace, a change away from what you’ve been doing so far. Maybe it comes from trying too hard instead of doing what feels fun and natural, which can turn life into a drag of self-imposed expectations and obligations that weigh you down. Maybe it comes from sticking too closely to familiar territory and comfortable old ways, and therefore getting stuck in a rut. I feel you need help and input from the outside, contact with new things, to infuse some novelty into what may have become a self-enclosed situation that loops without meaning.

I watched a video recently by this marketing guy who explained that we have two sides of us, the side that society expects us to be, and the side that we truly want to be at the soul level. He said that magical things happen when you get in touch with the latter, meaning when you figure out what you truly want at the core. That’s where you identify your meaning in life.

So he said one way to do this, was to do the following exercise: if there were no limitations and no consequences, what would your perfect every day be like, from beginning to end? This is to get you thinking in terms of what truly excites you, what would satisfy you, what would be the life you would genuinely enjoy living?

He himself did this exercise in a very detailed way, writing several pages describing the experience (sights sounds smells events, location etc.) of his ideal day from waking to sleep. Details helped him experience it internally. Then he forgot about it, and several years later found his notebook and realized he was now living the life he had envisioned back then. It’s a bit of reality creation, but that’s more a side-effect of the exercise.

Point being that if we’ve confined our imagination with self-imposed limitations of what society expects, instead of letting our dreams and wonder and hope run free sometimes, then we deny ourselves the core meaning of our lives as well. Richard Bach said, if you argue for your limitations, they become yours. Therefore as a change of pace, as a means of getting out of a rut, as a way of getting back in touch with meaning, it would be worthwhile to ponder something along the lines of this exercise, to be free for a moment and entertain the deepest wishes of your heart.
That actually sets things in motion, whereby meaning begets meaning — synchronicities arise that reinforce the process. So what started solely in the mind, may become outmanifested in subtle ways that increase hope and meaning.

I also recommend temporarily dropping any philosophical burdens you might have, and taking some time to do seemingly frivolous things (in the category of play, explore, enjoy). Not sure if you have any nature there, but that’s one option. The purpose is not to ignore your problem, but to give your soul/subconscious some breathing room to work on it, and to boost your morale a bit with some figurative and perhaps literal sunshine. It will help to stoke the fires of our your soul a bit, bring some color into your outlook, and that in turn opens the flow again and together with the above-mentioned exercise ought to bring a gradual resolution to your problem through the new insights and synchronous events that follow.

» Just a question about what you have discovered in your search of how religion ties into all of this. Religion is the body of spirituality. Spirit can survive without the body, but the body cannot thrive without spirit. Likewise, spirituality doesn’t need religion, but religion does need spirituality. Without spirituality, religion is a dead corpse. That’s what you see nowadays in much of organized religion — a zombie that mimics the original living spirit, but feeds on the brains of its followers.

When people read the scriptures and derive wisdom and upliftment from it, they are picking out from it the spirituality. That’s good. Wisdom is universal, it speaks to the spirit. There is also dogma and superstition that people mistake for wisdom and power. Take for instance the Catholics and how they believe some wax figure of some saint will keep demons away. That’s not much different from voodoo.

Then there are others who cannot see the spirituality in it, but who just dress themselves up in the clothing of religion, parrot its statements, and use it to control, degrade, and persecute others. So for some people who don’t themselves have spirit, for them religion is a corpse they can possess and wear as an identity, as an excuse to commiserate with others like themselves, as an excuse to feel united like a tribe against a common enemy (usually those of another faith).

Or I put it another way. Religion is the Wal-Mart of spirituality. Wal-Mart helps get global goods into pretty much every town, it’s easily accessible to all. People can buy goods with little effort. They can have a job whereas previously there were few jobs in town. But at the same time, Wal-Mart is a parasite that kills other small businesses, exploits its workers, and leads to the problem of slave workers overseas. Low Prices here comes with high price to living conditions elsewhere.

Same with religion. It has convenient books anyone can read, convenient answers, buildings you can go to, people who preach to you as you just get to sit and listen. It helps bring the potential for spirituality to MANY more people who otherwise would be too lazy or isolated (in terms of location or access to literature) to hear of it. Therefore it’s a mass solution that, ultimately, aims for quantity over quality. But the price is that other smaller, perhaps more spiritual streams of knowledge, can become denied to these followers.

For instance, someone becomes Christian… they get indoctrinated with the Bible, then are told Gnostics are agents of the devil. There, the entire stream of Gnostic spirituality has just been denied them. Thus they are like people who could once only crawl on their belly until religion handed them
a crutch, then they were able to hobble around, but the crutch made them dependent so that they
could never walk or run. It’s a help in the short term, that hurts in the long term. Worse, they begin
spiting those who claim they can walk, saying it’s an affront to humility because only Jesus Christ
could walk, and who dares compare himself to the son of god? Well I can guarantee that Jesus never
meant for us to crawl in his shadow. Our path is to walk shoulder to shoulder, arm in arm, with our
divine siblings. If anything, organized religion nowadays is an instrument of the antichrist.

Spirituality is not confined to any one book, any one religion. Thus, becoming dedicated to just one
religion to the exclusion of all others guarantees having an incomplete spirituality, as you then limit
yourself by the limitations of that religion. Spirituality is built through experience, observation,
intuition, realization, revelation, and the compassion of the heart which builds understanding.
Religion is a crutch that helps along that path, but is just one means to an end. You can do just as
much, and more, without religion, if you are intelligent, honest with yourself, observant, intuitive,
and pursue a wide variety of books and correspondences to discover the universal spiritual law
behind it all.

» Last night was the most terrifying night of my life. A few hours before I was filled with joy and
enlightenment. I was contemplating many of the things I had just learned when all of a sudden I
heard a faint ringing that sounded exactly like the recording you played on your broad cast. An hour
after I received another ringing that was a little louder than the first. I tried to tell my self I was
imagining it. That I was just being paranoid. But my paranoia only increased from there on. I took
me many hours to fall asleep and all night I allowed fear to overcome me. How do I over come this
fear before it gets out of hand?

Since you most likely haven’t been abducted yet, you’re not really stuck. People get stuck after
they’ve invited them in, gotten abducted a few times, continue to hold an inviting favorable view of
aliens, and agree to more abductions. So if it hasn’t begun for you, then you’re in a good place to
reject it.

Have you heard an ear ringing before this incident? If not, then sure they might have picked up on
your call. But, again, that doesn’t mean you’re doomed, because abductions haven’t begun. They
might have just been checking to see who you are, if you’re serious, and how useful you are.

Right now, three things will help you:

• Willfully stating your intent that they get out of your life and never come back, that you
want nothing to do with them, and that you are closing the door on them permanently.

• Doing whatever is necessary to get a grip on yourself and not feel fear. rather, you must
induce feelings of relief, security, safety, and assurance. Be it through autosuggestion
(affirmations that reprogram your subconscious) or leaving some lights on, putting on an
attitude of righteous confidence like they better not mess with you or they’ll regret it, or:

• Requesting, or simply visualizing and feeling, that genuine angelic protectors (kind of like
noble and divine guardian spirits) stand around you as you sleep, facing outward ready to
strike back anything malevolent that dares to intrude. This works best if you can feel a sense
of relief/comfort/secure after putting this request/visualization into motion.

So mainly you express your resistance and revocation of consent, you put on your confidence, and
you request protection from real angelic forces. And then I’d avoid thinking or reading much about
diabetes for a few months until your emotions settle down again and you can read it calmly. The battle
is mostly in your mind now, since reality creation via the mind-reality feedback loop will decide
where this goes; by adopting the feeling that it’s over and you can be calm and happy again, you
help bring about that very outcome. Consider it a challenge on how well you can control your
thoughts and feelings. It’s not a skill that “3D” humans need to learn, but something more part of
the “4D” learning curriculum, so you’d be getting a head start or at least a preview of one of the
challenges future stages of evolution have to deal with, namely how to structure your internal world
in order to structure your external world.

If you need physical deterrents, the voice-activated digital recorder trick seems to work for me, or
one of those trophy trail cams from Bushnell that can make sure you stay in your bed and nothing
sneaky comes around. I haven’t had to resort to the Bushnell, but I do run the recorder. But for now,
I’d advise doing the above three methods.

If by chance you get an ear ringing and a sudden impulse to go to sleep, and by trying to stay awake
you start feeling tingly or like a lead blanket being draped over you, and especially if you see
imagery of aliens in your mind’s eye on top of it all, then get up, turn the lights on, walk around the
house, splash water into your face, or even grab a flash light and jog up your street for a couple
minutes. This will break the lock. That happened to my girlfriend once. She did that once or twice
and didn’t have to deal with them again. But if you do the three things I mentioned, most likely you
won’t have to deal with that.

> You wrote, “There are no hidden variables in quantum theory, only those created on the spot by
conscious selection.” I agree that, according to the Bell Theorem, experimentally verified by
Aspect, there are no LOCAL hidden variables. This does not rule out the possibility of NON-
LOCAL variables, though, such as the quantum potential posited by David Bohm.

Bohm’s theory looks deterministic at first, in that a real particle is nudged along a certain path
depending on the forces it experiences on its journey through the quantum potential field, sort of
like a charged particle’s trajectory through the electric field. The response of the particle to the force
field is deterministic. But all Bohm really did was push the non-deterministic aspect further into the
background. The catch is that the quantum potential itself is said to have many random fluctuations
or variations in it. Bohm gave no explanation for what exactly causes the variations in the quantum
potential, saying only that it may be due to further variables yet to be discovered, and that his theory
was therefore a work in progress. He kind of glosses over that point.

So sure, given a certain quantum potential field, the particle moves through it in a classical way, but
the field itself has non-deterministic (seemingly random) features, which results in the particle’s
behavior to be ultimately non-deterministic.

This means that consciousness, rather than selecting a particular state of the particle from an
amorphous cloud of possibilities, instead selects the features of the quantum potential. The result is
the same. Consciousness chooses something, the whole thing is basically non-deterministic, even if
the field-particle interaction itself seems deterministic when viewed in isolation, due to the field
(rather than the particle) being the thing chosen.

And yes, the field has to be non-local because, as with the delayed choice and long-distance
entanglement, it has to transcend time and space. For example it means that a particle’s path through an unobserved double-slit experiment that happened 10 years ago, was determined by a quantum potential whose “random” features are decided now upon observation. It’s not turtles all the way down; there is one ultimate nonlocal hidden variable that decides it all, and that is consciousness existing outside the space-time framework.

So in my article, I did mean the impossibility of local hidden variables that imply complete deterministic behavior. The problem is that while non-local variables may exist, their existence does not allow for complete deterministic behavior either. I like the idea of a quantum potential, it seems similar to the idea of etheric energy fields. It implies that the mind influences physicality via the quantum potential, which is what I said concerning the etheric energy field.

There are no interpretations of quantum mechanics, be it Feynman or Bohm or others, that successfully rule out the role of consciousness in non-deterministically choosing the observed state of a system. None offer an explanation as to what does the final selection, saying only that it’s due to a “random” factor, which is a cop-out meaning nothing beyond “we don’t know, we can’t say, we won’t go there, we have no comment.” It proves consciousness indirectly by denying any other possibility (such as deterministic factors).

Or, if you want to say that quantum physics (regardless of interpretation) neither confirms nor denies consciousness, then you can ignore quantum physics altogether since it becomes a non-factor, and then it’s free game for other things like paranormal studies, parapsychology, synchronicity, occultism, and mysticism to make that determination. And they all weigh in favor of consciousness.

» I would like to know about timeshifts and how they may be caused and by what?

Since we’re within time, like characters within a novel, we cannot see it from outside. Therefore the true details behind time shifts can’t be stated for certain. We can only make inferences based on the anomalies that surround such shifts.

One kind of shift is simply where everything’s headed in a certain direction, but at the last moment deviates so that the original intended direction is missed, like swerving around an object in the road while driving. This may simply be due to conditions changing suddenly, like people becoming aware of it, and thereby altering its probability. There’s a difference in probability of something depending on whether you’re expecting it or not. Somehow, expectation of an event affects how likely it’s to happen. So if next week we are to experience a grand Earthquake, but one that only has a 80% chance of occurring, then if we suddenly become aware of it potentially happening next week, say through an unEarthed prophecy or some remote viewer saying it’s on its way, then conditions have changed, and it might drop to only 10% probability.

Another kind of shift is an externally, artificially, induced one. Here I’m talking about aliens, divine intervention, maybe black ops military with time manipulation abilities, who aim to either induce an event into happening or prevent it from happening. Let’s say in a week, the sun’s going to throw out a CME that will ruin all electronics on Earth and end civilization as we know it. Let’s say this has been certain for several years that it’s going to happen. So then, something intervenes. Maybe not by tweaking the sun, but somehow shifting us in time, or shifting us to a parallel timeline where the sun won’t be doing that for another couple hundred years. Kind of like evacuating a building if they
know a bomb’s in there. I don’t know how this would be done.

Either way, though, there ought to be several anomalies.

1) Leading up to such big events, there ought to be many dreams, synchronicities, signs, and such that it’s going to happen. I’m not talking about people on youtube ranting about it happening, but things everywhere including your own life suggesting something is right around the corner. That’s because it really is on its way, and like an approaching thunderstorm can be heard before it starts raining, an approaching event can have precursors like this.

2) The event then does NOT happen when it’s supposed to (based on the precursors). And this equates to a sudden jerking of the steering wheel to swerve. As a result, more anomalies pop up. More synchronicities, maybe good ones, good omens I mean, indicating things are looking up now.

3) There may then be a lull period of a couple days or weeks where, because the timeline has just suffered a jolt, it doesn’t quite know what to do next, and it takes a while to readjust to the new mode. During this lull period, nothing much happens in terms of personal, life, global events. Things are on pause, or better yet on mundane loop mode, filling in the time. The bigger the event averted, the longer this lull period.

4) People will have memory glitches, a sense that one day is really another, or that the flow of time isn’t quite what they think it should have been the past week or two.

See in2worlds.net for articles with anecdotes about these and related kinds of anomalies.

» Do you suppose the prime matter (in Aristotle’s hylomorphism theory) to be etheric energy?

There’s debate about whether Aristotle truly believed in prime matter. He didn’t dwell on it much, basically only inferring it in order to keep his theory consistent. Because he believed the four elements are the basic forms of matter, but that since they can change into each other then there must be an underlying prime matter, which is pure potentiality without form. Prime matter wasn’t the first and most important basis of his theory, upon which he based everything else. More like he reasoned backwards from our everyday world to the simpler things, and was forced to indicate that prime matter may exist as the logical conclusion of his theory. So if you define it as pure potentiality without manifested form, then yes blank basic etheric energy would be it. However, etheric energy does have form many times, just that it’s not always physical. But generic etheric energy is the basis of everything physical, so yes overall I’d say the two equate.

» Where did Humanity originate from, and was it a natural or artificial process?

Natural selection and random mutation only accounts for a small part of human origins. These can bring about micro-evolution, meaning relatively trivial changes like average height, strength, body morphology, lung capacity, and so on. But major changes such as simultaneous changing of hair color, eye color, skin color, facial features, skull shape, and vocal tract — in the time allotted by archeological evidence — cannot be explained by mere Darwinian evolution. It is therefore unlikely that Asians and Caucasians evolved naturally and directly from Africans. This suggests they were artificially created. Lloyd Pye has written extensively on the topic of artificial genetic manipulation of the human race, and points out how the human genome has over 4,000 genetic errors, an unprecedented number indicating our species has endured profuse levels of genetic editing.
In context of mythology and alienology, this suggests various alien factions have had a hand in creating the human species. It seems there existed an original humanoid template around 300,000 years ago, artificially created by aliens from the pre-existing simians on Earth. This basic template was then further differentiated into various races according to their intended environment and function. Africans were probably the oldest and most native of all races, especially suited for Earth’s close proximity to the Sun. Caucasians are likely not from this planet, but from an aquatic planet further from the Sun, such as the one that is now the asteroid belt. Modifications of the basic template may have included insertion of alien DNA or a merging of various alien species DNA. Africans, in being direct descendants of the original inhabitants of Earth, would therefore have the least amount of modification and alien DNA, compared to Caucasians who could have the most. This idea is further reinforced by what we can observe today in terms of the common tendencies, personality traits, preoccupations and dysfunctions of the various races, which reflect the nature of what particularly was merged with the original humanoid template. For instance, if alien DNA was added, then these traits may reflect the intrinsic idiosyncrasies of the alien species in question.

So once these unique races were seeded by aliens in their environments, only then would Darwinian evolution produce further but subtle variations, but never any completely new races. Thus the origin of humanity as a whole is both natural and artificial, on Earth and off-Earth.

> Do you think that in 4D any of the entities have mental disorders, or have they perfected themselves through mental discipline and genetic engineering to avoid such things?

Higher 4D STO beings, no, because higher density positive is a path that first involves achieving mastery of your lower self, and that means immunity to all its quirks and glitches. You could say that they are more sane than even the sanest 3D human, because being 3D STS is basically a psychological and spiritual disorder in which we are disassociated from our higher Self and have numerous sub-personalities within us, not to mention our egotistical preoccupations which are a form of neurosis. Humanity in general is insane by 4D STO standards, and it’s only those who have that more than anyone else who gets labeled insane by society.

But lower 4D beings, including aliens we might consider neutral or positive just not that far into 4D, they do seem to have issues here and there. They can be haughty, obsessive, given to martyrdom, foolhardy if too optimistic about their chances of success, and probably suffer from stress. Also if they have access to psychic abilities, to step outside linear time, to view things clairvoyantly, to sense probable futures, etc. there could be dysfunctions that involve those dynamics that we can’t even conceive. They have feelings we cannot feel, and so they may have problems we don’t have yet.

But 4D STS, definitely, since STS is the grandest of all disorders. Higher STS beings might be more measured, stable, and perfect in the 95% of their beingness, but in the other 5% which is their core, they are some sick puppies.

> Strange question, but what does karma and reincarnation say about innocent people who get murdered (say a random hit and run/terror attack or mugging) or die in accidents? Isn’t that an outright violation of freewill by negative forces if the person gets killed via unfair and unsuspecting means?

Ironically, the existence of karma necessitates the possibility of freewill violation, as only through
violation of freewill is negative karma incurred.

Therefore those who say there are no victims, that whatever happens to a person is a result of karma, are contradicting themselves. Because if that were true, then no freewill could ever be violated since all is chosen, and hence without violation of freewill there would be no karma incurred. So without the existence of karma, how can everything be the result of karma? It’s a non-sequitur. New Agers just haven’t thought it through to the end to realize they are contradicting themselves.

Fact of the matter is, since freewill exists, it’s possible for one person to choose to offensively violate another’s freewill. If the total amount of freewill afterwards is lower than before, then that is a violation to the entire system. Hence if things are fine, and someone chooses to murder and kill an innocent person, the after state is lower in total freewill and balance. But if a police officer shoots and kills a murderer who is about to execute his next victim, then even though he denied the murderer’s choice to kill (in essence violating it) the total freewill state after the act is enhanced since the victim is spared undeserved violation.

Point being that if freewill is undeservedly violated, be it outright violence or even subtle things like persuasion and manipulation or neglect, then whatever causes regret to the higher mind/spiritual core of the perpetrator establishes a kind of negative karma for that person.

So in some cases, sure a murder victim could be experiencing the end result of his or her own karma from this or a previous life. In other cases, the victim is truly innocent and, in being done wrong, gets some kind of karmic compensation for the next life, while the perpetrator gets negative karma.

Then there are spiritless humans, who have no karma because karma is a spiritual self-correction mechanism and it serves no purpose for such people. They live entirely by the law of the jungle, and the laws of chance. They can end up in accidents, as crime victims, perpetrators, etc. without any higher meaning or higher consequence to it.

These spiritless humans seem to be the ones who fulfill a spirited person’s negative karma. For instance, if a spirited person killed another undeservedly, there is deep spiritual regret to the point of choosing to experience that next time around. So there’s another common paradox, which is that if such a person does get killed next time around by karmic choice and consequence, then wouldn’t the perpetrator himself then acquire karma, and have to do it his next life, causing yet another perpetrator to do likewise? In that case the cycle never ends. But with spiritless humans, yes the cycle does end the first time, if the one fulfilling the original perpetrator’s karmic consequence himself incurs no karma, due to being spiritless.

What this means is that spiritless people are heavily under the influence of a spirited person’s karmic field of energy. So that if a spirited person is “clean” then the spiritless are synchronistically repelled from harming him or her. On the other hand, if the person has weaknesses in that field, then the spiritless are moved in it like iron particles in a magnetic field. They are activated by it, and unwittingly help (in a painful way) that person work through such issues.

However, two spirited people can, prior to being born, agree to help each other sort out karmic issues too. So there are both spirited and spiritless humans who can respond to your karmic needs.

As you can see, it’s more complicated than the typical New Age view, but taking into account just a
few more factors, I think it all makes sense.

» The Buddhists teach of the ultimate nature of no soul, is it possible that these spiritless humans that do not possess the 2 higher chakras (emotion and intellect) are merely just ego-less humans? this would make sense to me as the emotion and intellect are what the ego is comprised of.

From my readings of western occultism, gnosticism, Fourth Way and so on, we have two emotional centers and two intellectual centers — the higher and the lower of each. The higher emotional and intellectual centers are those associated with spirit, gnostic revelation, creativity, intuition, and enlightenment. The lower intellectual center is a machine-like computer that’s only good at comparing, contrasting, computing, and calculating. It is unlike the higher intellect which truly knows in the highest sense. The lower emotional center is what animals have, and it’s the seat of basic emotions and drives. Spiritless humans have the lower intellectual and emotional centers, but not the higher versions of those.

So it all depends on how you define ego — if you define it as the higher intellect and higher emotional centers, then yes I would agree that spiritless humans are ego-less humans. But if you define ego in the conventional way, as the “me” that is merely the product of biological and social programming, then ego would be composed instead of the lower intellectual and emotional centers. In which case, spiritless humans do have ego, and pretty much only ego. Making them highly egotistical. If you were to erase their ego, they would cease to exist. Whereas in a spirited human, if you erase that ego, they would lose their human personality but still exist as a transcendent higher point of consciousness, the spirit, with its two higher centers.

Therefore you could call it the higher ego and lower ego, if you want to be precise. In my Gnosis series, the first article, I talk about the higher and lower ego and how they relate and differ.

About the Buddhist doctrine of no soul (anatta), Buddhism views things from the ultimate absolute perspective, in which case everything except for the infinite and undivided Creator is an illusion. That may be true from the absolute perspective, but here on a practical level within the illusion, there is indeed something “temporarily permanent” in us. It’s not unchanging, but grows from experience to experience, lifetime to lifetime. It starts small, and gets big, but before it existed, it was One with the Creator. And after it finishes its journey, it will again be One with the Creator. In between, it is an illusion, a dream, an imagined journey — if viewed from the perspective of the Creator. But on that journey, and within it, it is very much real. If it exists for a million lifetimes, then even though it’s a temporary blink in context of eternity, during those lifetimes it is more real than, say, the lower ego which only exists for one lifetime. So in that paradigm, a spirited human is one who has something that is relatively more permanent than what a spiritless human has, even though both — in context of absolute, infinity, eternity — are illusions and non-existent.

» How can one choose STO if one is filled with hatred and contempt for the overwhelming majority of humanity?

Mainly you have to understand who is who and why they are the way they are, and view it all from a higher context. So in your case there are:

A) portion of humanity you feel hatred and contempt towards, and

B) portion that you don’t feel that towards.
Of (A) there are:

1) The greedy inhuman predators who are behind the wrecking of the planet, the child sex slave industry, international banking scam, and so on. They are the true forces of evil, have chosen their path, and are working feverishly to destroy all that is good. But they masquerade as humans, and win either by making you their prey, or by getting you to hate all humanity for the actions of these parasites and thus turn you into an enemy of humanity just like they are. These are the only ones that truly deserve hatred.

2) The spiritless humans who are both their henchmen, pawns, and victims. To me, these are irrelevant non-factors. If the world went up in flames and these burned along with it, I wouldn’t care. I mean, sure they suffer like animals caught in a wildfire, but I don’t get too attached to them. I don’t get frustrated at them and their decadent idiotic ways either, because it’s no different from maggots in a garbage can doing what they do. They are what they are. This is their only life and in the big scheme they just don’t have any permanence or importance. They just don’t matter to me.

3) The spirited humans who are young souls who were preyed upon and programmed into becoming zombies, who are misguided and didn’t stand a chance against such overwhelming control. They went down a wrong path in life by not knowing better. They weren’t bad before, and they won’t be down the line, but for now they are intoxicated. For them I can only feel sorry. They are spiritual tragedies, like that brother or sister you once revered but who has since that time wound up in jail and become a total screwup.

Then, of (B) there are:

4) Those spirited people who are well meaning, open to improvement, and have a greater positive than negative effect on the world around them. Some are saints, some are like us, some are meek but gentle people. They are the hope and seed of a positive future. And they are humans too. Some are still children, some are nearing the end of their life. Point being that these are good people at heart, and they exist. Do they deserve to be hated because of the rest of humanity? No way. They are like rare flowers in an otherwise barren landscape, and it’s great during those rare times you come across them.

So really, contempt and hatred is only justified for (1) and they are in the minority. So you can cut down that hatred from “overwhelming majority” to a minority if you really wanted to, if you understand that (2) are irrelevant things that simply are what they are, and that (3) simply don’t know what they do.

But even so, you don’t actually need seething hatred and bitter contempt to know that (1) are wrong, and that you stand opposed. That just comes from an inner knowing. You can feel calm, strategic, like facing a sports opponent, without having to be trembling with tears of rage. Prolonged feelings of hatred and contempt that you can’t act upon, only end up polluting your soul and leads to illness and misfortune. So as a strategic occult maneuver, it may be necessary to keep the volume of those feelings turned way down, and instead rely upon pure understanding to differentiate between what they stand for, and what you stand for.

And the way you can do that, is by focusing on (4), on their existence, on the fact that any positive future will hinge on them, and that they are the only ones you really need to be focused on. Also, on
the fact that whatever happens to the world, it doesn’t have to happen to everyone. Therefore if (4) can wind their way through it and come out alive and build a new future, while (1) and (2) go down with the ship, then that’s cause for hope. That’s what I’m hoping for at least. And if I hold onto that, even if only as an occult strategic maneuver to prevent myself becoming hopeless over the things I can’t act upon at the moment, then it helps me be more effective, balanced, and alive in life. My mind is on the future, on empowering the good people, and getting ourselves through this mess, and subverting (1) when opportunity affords, but it would be a terrible mistake to focus only on (1)(2)(3) to the exclusion of (4) and the possibility of hope.

» I was wondering what is your take on Kundalini Yoga? What is Kundalini and how is it linked to the Matrix System?

Well, the kundalini comes from the base of the spine, which is associated with the lowest chakras. As you know, the human being is both animal and divine, a sort of half-being. The physical, etheric, and partially the astral bodies are essentially animal in nature, while the spiritual core is divine. Well, the kundalini comes from the animal part. It’s kind of the “Earth ground” (in electrical terms — the thing that connects one down into physicality) of the chakra system. That’s both a good and bad thing.

Bad because, in occult tradition, it is said that kundalini is actually the energy of illusion, maya, the matrix, physicality, and I would say also the Demiurge as the gnostics envisioned it. I don’t see it as a divine thing, but rather the opposite of that. Not to say it’s satanic or evil, just that it’s our energetic ball and chain that anchors us into this realm of illusion.

Now, at the same time it’s good in that, if you are a really evolved being who has all the other chakras in tip top working order, then the kundalini would be the final grounding rod whereby the divine energy surging down through that and meeting the kundalini energy surging back up, the two together would allow for control of physical reality. Except in this case, control of physical reality according to divine command, rather than vice versa.

So think about what happens if you only stimulate the kundalini center, without having the other chakras in order. Then you’re unleashing the animal/matrix/maya energy without a higher intelligence to properly use it. It’s like lighting the fuse of a model rocket engine without so much as a rocket or launchpad.

It’s actually better to go the other way — work first on the heart, throat, and crown chakras — if you want to do chakra work. Because those then allow you to do the lower without experiencing the unpredictable side effects of the lower.

Premature kundalini activation is dangerous. But it has differing degrees of severity. The most severe case is a lady I used to know who saw a UFO up close when she was young, thereafter went blind, and thereafter had a kundalini activation that caused partial human combustion. Others just get a partial activation, overstimulate their lower chakras, get spiritually out of whack and become egotistical snakes in the grass.

» Is there anything more one can do to prepare themselves for the “event” whatever it maybe?

Many things have been predicted for the “end times” including any of the following:
• Magnetic pole shift, where N and S reverse on Earth. In between, there is no magnetic field, or else it is patchy and several spots on Earth will have none for a short while. This is a problem because the magnetic field shields against dangerous solar particles, so some spots will receive dangerous radiation. If that ever happens, one would need to stay indoors while it’s happening, in the lowest spot in the building like a basement.

• A physical pole shift. Not that the physical north and south poles reverse, but where the north pole where it is now could tip and slide maybe 1/8th of a turn, causing places like Australia to then shift toward the new equator or maybe the USA up toward where Canada is now. A pole shift might take hours or days to complete. But during that time, there would be severe Earthquakes and massive tidal waves from the ocean sloshing, and parts will have severe winds. The places that will not have much of anything, are near the axis around which the continents shift during the pole shift, so some spots can come out unscathed.

• Incoming comet or meteor bombardment. Basically fire raining from the sky, starting fires and smashing unlucky homes, making people very paranoid about being outside. This has happened before in ancient times. If it’s a really big comet that passes very close, then there will be electrical arcs in the sky too, which will make a trumpet-like sound due to the way it cooks the air.

• Massive volcano and Earthquake activity all over the globe. This can be caused by comets, meteors, physical, or magnetic pole shift. So this one is pretty likely if anything at all happens. Problem with volcanoes is that they throw up lots of ash into the atmosphere, blocking out the sun for at least a year or more. Summer would feel cold as winter, and there would be no food grown. This happened once in 535 A.D. when much of Europe fell into the Dark Ages afterwards, and a plague spread that wiped out most of the Roman Empire.

• An etheric/nonphysical energy wave that will sweep through the solar system and affect our consciousness. It might make “mundane” people go insane from being able to handle it. It could cause others to achieve a kind of superconsciousness complete with psychic powers. It would open our psychic eyes, and we’d be able to see who is whom, including aliens and neg entities and all that. Even if only this happened, it would cause a downfall of civilization and the rise of a new one with far less people.

• A timeline split where part of the population wakes up one day in a new and better reality, maybe an alternate Earth where they have a chance to start things anew, while the old population stays behind to live their last days on a dying Earth and then goes extinct.

• An alien war/invasion where aliens show up and try to take control of the planet, but another alien group steps in, and an alien war ensues where much of the planet might be destroyed. Or perhaps some people are taken by aliens while the planet undergoes Earth changes, and then they are brought back to repopulate in a post-apocalyptic world.

• A huge solar flare that hits Earth, generating so much electrical and magnetic activity that anything electronic will be burned out. There are stories among the ancient Celts of not being allowed to wear anything metal, because it would become hot and throw off electrical arcs. Yes, this would happen if a large electromagnetic pulse were underway. It would induce
electrical currents in anything metal, and make them hot, melt, and cause electrocutions. If nothing else, computers, power stations, cars, planes, etc. would cease to function. Such solar flares can also cause Earthquakes and volcanoes to go off.

But... how much of the above will actually occur? And how soon? I don’t believe 12/21/2012 will see any of the above. Why? Because there are a lot of prophecies from different cultures, they generally point toward the same kind of ending, with similar sequences of events that lead up to the ending. And right now, we have not yet seen all of these sequences play out yet. Meaning another couple years are needed for them to occur first. What I mean is, if they prophesy that there is WWIII with nukes and tanks, then that cannot happen after a solar EMP event because that would fry out electronics and prevent those war machines from working.

Honestly, I think it's like approaching a waterfall on a boat. The river is calm all the way near the end, where then you start hearing the rushing of the waters and the boat picks up speed and then you fall over. So we maybe a couple years away from a waterfall, and I think the next year will see a slow speeding up of the boat speed. When things go bad, it would likely go very quickly depending on the cause.

You really can’t prepare for all possibilities. I tell people, prepare as you would for a strong storm that would knock out power and leave you without groceries or clean water or gasoline for a month. So a month’s worth of provisions is logical. This will give you a month to think about what to do next. If instead you try to secure a year or more worth of provisions, then that is so much equipment and money and time spent, that you almost give up your regular life and destiny in order to focus on only that, and this is not good, and is spiritually harmful. Plus it won’t be portable, and if you had to evacuate your home you might lose most of it. Therefore in my case, I prefer preparing enough that could fit in my car, and no more. Thus if I had to evacuate with advanced notice, I could take it.

But beyond that, it’s really about being spiritually balanced so that you have good luck and divine intervention, which is worth more than guns or knives in a chaotic situation. I mean, it helps to have first aid knowledge, maybe how to set up a small solar panel charging station, and other skills, but these must be balanced by a confident, peaceful, faithful attitude too.

» Do soulmates really exist?

There are different phenomena that can be categorized under the title of soul mates. For example:

- Two independent souls that developed in such a way that they became more resonant and compatible and complementary to each other, enough so that by chance or higher arrangement they started crossing paths more and more in lives, and developed a love and bond to each other. So that, in the next life, they agree to cross paths in even more meaningful ways and perhaps even spend their whole adult lives together.

- One higher soul that splits into two complementary halves that each are born into the world and either in this life, or in another life, find their way to each other.

- Two souls from the same former planet, realm, or dimension, or time who used to know each other because they were on the same group or team, so to speak. So now, on Earth, they may be one of dozens of others from the same group or team. When they meet each other, they recognize the similarity and as if they know each other, that they’re both part of
something in common. But that doesn’t mean the other person is the only soulmate they could encounter.

- Two independent souls that get caught in a karmic entanglement during some lives, and in this life plan to spend much time together to work it all out. Destiny will seem to bring them together for a period of time, as they need each other for each other’s soul development.

All of these ought to be possible. Maybe some could be named other things, like “polar couple” or “twin flame” but most people might perceive all of these as being soulmate.

My current girlfriend seems to be one. Oddly, we have everything precisely opposite including both western and eastern astrology, but somehow we’re compatible enough to stay together and we’ve done a lot in terms of mutual soul development. However I don’t believe that everyone needs a soulmate to move forward. Though in my case, we both helped each other stay alive against dark force manipulations and traps. I saved her life a few times, she’s saved me from making some stupid decisions in life that would have ended my path.

» How do you go about figuring out the concepts you’ve written about?

First, define the problem: What is the exact issue here? What precisely is the question that’s stumping you? How would you explain it to someone who wants to know what puzzles you?

List the Facts/Knowns: Survey the facts of the matter. These are the puzzles pieces you will work from, or at least use as the foundation. These are things you cannot deny, that you must work around. Anything you come up with must take these into account and cannot ignore them.

Deduce some things: Take your facts and deduce some implications from them. These are extensions of the facts, the things they imply if taken to their logical conclusion. Add those to your list of Facts/Knowns.

Review the problem: In light of these knowns and conclusions, is the answer to the problem any clearer? If you’re lucky, then in the process of extrapolating you ended up answering your own question. Otherwise, continue on.

Make creative guesses: Start brainstorming a list of possible answers to the problem. Search your entire mind, feel out possibilities, really crank those gears in your head. Keep returning to the problem, and ponder over the knowns, and then get back to your intuitive feelers to probe different candidate ideas.

Unpack the thought-balls: You will get vague senses of ideas at first, more of a non-verbal sensation of a concept percolating its way up into your conscious mind. Your goal is to circle around these thought-balls and dissect them and translate them into key words, diagrams, phrases, sentences. Make these written/drawn things part of your brainstorming list.

Coalesce into definite possibilities: These will bundle into various clusters of possibilities. Like three main possibilities, each with a cloud of details or ideas surrounding them.

Analyze the result: Now analyze these in context of the knowns, and allow through only the ones that fit the knowns, take them into account, and have no holes or gaps. Fish out from your list of ideas, those that are both logically and intuitively sound. They will both make sense and feel right, fit the facts, and shed light on the problem.
Keep the best: The best ideas are a “bingo” or “eureka” type effect, like the penny dropping, a realization made, the problem being unraveled a few steps. They are revelations, and come with a small paradigm shift in your mind. Circle these ideas, or put a star or exclamation mark next to them.

Deduce again: With this new revelation in mind, add it to your Knowns and repeat the process, thinking through to new conclusions extrapolated from this new expanded set. You will likely then come up with a few new questions or issues to resolve. If you hit upon those, again make creative guesses, unpack the thought-balls, analyze them to weed out what doesn’t fit, and take your best candidates that pass all the tests and once more add them to your Knowns.

In the end, survey all your newly found “eureka” ideas, gather them up, and write out a detailed answer to your original problem. The answer should be a distillation of what you have discovered and concluded. It could be a numbered list of pure essential principles or laws or conclusions or things you need to keep in mind. These will form a new theory of sorts.

Test your theory. The theory will then make certain implications, now see if they fit with other data as you encounter it. If your theory is good, its predictions and implications will keep fitting and fitting with new sources you encounter. It will clarify them, unravel them, act as a kind of master key to them. Otherwise, you may encounter a source that contradicts your theory. In that case, you’ll have to analyze both to see which one is at fault, or whether both need to be replaced by a third yet unknown theory. This contradiction then becomes a new problem, for which you can repeat the above process.

» What is the situation with military working with aliens and also shooting at alien crafts? What exactly is going on?

In short, the government (and here I mean black ops military and shadow government) made deals in the 1930s-1950s with alien factions that could provide them with knowledge, technology, and a strategic alliance. These then became “friends” of the government, and they worked together on joint projects. They were the ones who said, we’ll give you technology if you let us abduct your people. Because the U.S. was at war with the Germans and later the Russians, the military and government leaders felt it was a necessary deal to make, to defend national security.

Now, the problem was that during that time, the government allegedly also met with other alien groups that offered to meet. Except these groups basically said, no we will not give you technology, we will offer words of wisdom and warn you against pursuing your reckless, selfish, warlike ways. If you give up your nuclear arms and become fair and wise leaders, and knock off your tendency toward tyranny and oppression, we’ll become your friends and support you in every way that doesn’t interfere with your planet’s freewill. Hence no technology. These aliens were enemies of the other aliens.

So the government had to make a choice, and they chose to make a deal with the devil. In fact, they probably realized that these other “good guy” aliens were a threat to them, to their burgeoning military industrial complex, and the “bad guy” aliens probably told the government that unless you help us take these other guys down, we won’t continue giving you technology and support. It goes deeper than that, however, because of WWII when the Nazi scientists were shuttled to the USA and became the nucleus of the black ops world; those scientists brought with them their negative alien
affiliations, which were what gave the Germans such advanced technology for their time. By the 1950s, they were starting to take over, and subsequent meetings with aliens would favor treaties only with the negative groups. Right around 1960 is when this black ops, negative alien, military industrial machine grew out of control, and not long afterward is when Eisenhower gave his farewell speech warning about it. The Betty and Barney hill abduction involving Gray-alien and Nazi-like individuals happened later that same year. Then a couple years later Kennedy got shot, and that put an end to the old America. What came afterwards was a product of the nazi-alien-military-industrial complex.

So the government together with these bad guy aliens formed an alliance. The alliance included shooting down the crafts of their common enemy, which to us are the relative good guys. Thus the government is using alien technology to defend their territory against aliens of the opposing faction that they didn’t make a deal with. Little did they know that the hostile aliens were playing them like fiddles, and I think it was around the early 1970s that they realized they had been had, except by then it was too late.

So I think at that point, they realized they could only do damage control, and that’s when the alien disinformation campaign came out in full force (in the early 70s). That’s when types of aliens comprising the negative alien group (Grays, Nordics, Reptilians, Mantis) were starting to be pushed into the public consciousness. That’s when the government began abducting people (MILABs) to create fake alien abductions to present those negative aliens (particularly the Grays) as benign, if not benevolent, mainly to drown out any reports of the truth, which is that abductions had gotten out of hand and the government could do nothing against it. The fake abductions also served to ensure that it never appears as if the government and aliens were working together, because in truth it was the government working for a force they could no longer resist against. That’s why so many pro-alien disinformation people are former military or intelligence, or still on the government payroll.

I do think there are parts of the human elite network that are not under alien control, that might even be fighting against aliens altogether, but they are doing it out of selfish reasons. As in, they want to control the planet for themselves, and not be working for an alien controller. But they are in over their heads, and any attempt they make at creating an NWO just for themselves, would just as soon fall into the hands of the negative aliens.

» There seems to be more than one “Illuminati” operation, with both being described as “good” and “bad” by each other and many others. I am a little confused by this.

I don’t trust the sources that claim this, or claim to be of one side. I think those are hoaxes. Like Ben Fulford and Drake for instance. I think they’re playing people, or are themselves being played.

But as for the real Illuminati, you have to understand that over thousands of years, rare knowledge and power falls into the hands of a few. Some use it responsibly, protecting it from abuse and from idiots, until a time comes when it can be shared. Others use it for self-gain only, to manipulate the masses.

Even a good secret society can have a falling out with dissenting member, and that rebel then goes off and starts his own secret society. Or perhaps a portion gets overtaken by demonic beings or whatever. Point being that you have good ones and bad ones, just like with aliens. In fact the good ones are likely interacting with, or taught by, the good aliens. Same with the negative secret
societies and their nonhuman benefactors.

So yes, if you call the “Illuminati” the general class of humans who have superior knowledge and power, then there are conflicting agendas, some more benevolent, some more evil. But those internet hoaxers who spell out what these agendas are, I don’t have much trust in them. Too often these opposing factions (as described by the disinfo artists) are just false opposites meant to set up a particular point of view in the audience.

For instance, one Illuminati faction is “good” and wants humanity to have open and free contact with aliens who are our friends, while the other Illuminati faction are “bad” and want to keep us in the dark about it all in order to keep the planet to themselves, to keep humanity technologically stunted. Well, false dichotomy there.

Truth is that negative aliens pretending to be good guys will make contact with general humanity, with the help of those human elites they have co-opted. If that happens, then if you buy that B.S. you’d think “oh great, the bad Illuminati have been defeated, the good guys won, now we can enter a golden age!” Not so fast.

» How did you manage to pull off your website and network despite the threat of being taken out?

Mainly because around 2003 I began to realize the overt threats were empty. I remember getting beeps, clicks, hisses, volume dropouts on my phone conversation with other fringe people. And then I realized, if they were REALLY seeking to monitor me, why let me know about it? Why make it so obvious? Well, it was because they had no power to stop me from speaking, but they could try to make me paranoid and thus make me stop myself from speaking. This shows they had less power than they’d like me to believe. And after I laughed them off and continued, the signs of monitoring on the phone stopped, because now it was ineffective and a waste of their time and energy.

Now, aliens and demons are only obvious in your life with obvious threats if they think you will get scared and shrink away from doing any further harm to their operation. But once you see through that, they lose a big chunk of their power. Then they switch to stealth mode to salvage what they can by using telepathic persuasion, abduction, mind programming, and maybe angry human agents to try and make you depressed, lose confidence, and give up without realizing that the source of this depression and loss of confidence is actually their ploy and not a natural product of your natural failings. They try to turn you against yourself. That’s how it really works, not the black vans tailing you to Dairy Queen.

Remember this: To fully take you out, they have to start small and maybe go through a series of ten incremental steps before you’re so weak that they can permanently immobilize you. Each step requires your participation and willfulness to engage in it and sink further into negativity and ignorance and delusion. Thus if you catch yourself in the first 2-3 steps and correct yourself, you will never make it to steps 9 and 10 where you’re weak enough to be taken out. That’s how I’ve done it. I know my normal state of mind, normal state of life, and am able to spot when I go astray, and then I correct myself.

If you’d like to know what role divine intervention and guardian spirits play in all this, well they are one of the reasons it’s a multi-step process before you’re killed off. Every step is something of your own freewill choice that relinquishes a corresponding portion of the protection you might have had.
So by step 10 you’ve pretty much tied the noose around your neck and jumped off the chair. They can’t intervene at that point because it’s your own doing. What they can do, however, is intervene against outright violations which would be dying at step . Not everyone has that protection. It depends on why a person is here, what their requirements are in life as far as a mission or learning curriculum is concerned.

» In this road of “Consciousness” is it safe to say that no harm could ever come to you, example, car accident, getting shot, being raped or mugged. Or will it depend on what level you are on, how far you evolved, that certain events or deities can no longer harm or effect you?

It definitely depends. Not only on your current mental, emotional, spiritual state, but also on what agreements you made before being born. Just as there are millions of reasons why someone might travel to France, there are many reasons a soul might come to Earth. Sometimes it might be to carry out a certain category of services to the human race, on the condition that one would be protected during that. In which case, sure during life that person may get saved again and again from the kind of harm that would stop their service before it’s finished.

However, even if someone has protection, I think it can be given up. For example, if someone gets off track in life, becomes very hateful and paranoid and, let’s say, abandons the service mission in favor of becoming obsessed with martial arts and weapons training and survivalism, then the protection might be forfeited.

Or let’s say the person makes a series of bad choices and gets engaged in voodoo, black magic, satanism, or other rituals where they swear allegiance to the Devil. Well, if that choice is made deeply enough, then it could likewise forfeit protection from the divine forces.

Or if the person gets attacked in life by demonic forces… the forces would be allowed to attack because it’s a gamble. If the person survives, they become stronger than they would otherwise, which is a spiritual risk worth taking. On the other hand, if the person is not strong enough or makes bad choices (usually based on ego and illusory insecurities) then the attacks may succeed. Then if the person gets so down that they attempt suicide, it’s possible the suicide might succeed. Although I’ve known people who’ve had protection in life, and when they tried suicide the gun jammed for the first time ever, and they reconsidered their choice. So even a choice to kill oneself can get intervention in special cases.

So the above are special cases. Generally speaking though, it seems that the more you matter to others and the future, the more you matter to the forces that care about the future and those others. Therefore if you were to be harmed, their interests would be harmed, and they might have a hand in protecting you.

The reason we can be harmed at all, despite the existence of freewill, is first and foremost, that choosing to come here means choosing to accept the risk that comes with existing in a physical environment where other beings with freewill exist. If they are stronger, they can use force to overcome you. Freewill violation is possible here. Accidents do happen. But the higher priority a situation, the more extreme the intervention.

If you consider someone whose only purpose in life is to be born as human, experience what it’s like, and begin the journey of becoming an individual, mature soul eventually… then there are no
real big priorities. It wouldn’t matter if they won the lottery or were murdered, as the goal is simply to experience. For them, chance plays a greater role.

This, in contrast to what I said earlier, when a higher soul on a mission comes here, then it seems they have a specific and narrow set of boundaries that are allowed in life, and protection comes with that. But due to freewill, I don’t think anything is 100% guaranteed or fated.

» What are your thoughts on past life regression therapy. Do you have any experience with it?

I haven’t done it myself, because I never found a local hypnotist who specialized in that. You might get actual memories, or you might get false ones. False ones could come from having a symbolic “dream” about some emotional or physical issue that’s plaguing you.

If you go to sleep with a stomach ache and dream that you’ve been stabbed in the stomach, that makes sense, it’s symbolic. But if you do a past life regression and have had worries about your stomach lately, and you see a scene that you’ve been stabbed in the gut, does that mean that’s how you died in a past life? Maybe, or maybe not.

I think it can work, if you are deep enough in a hypnotic trance. Not all people are hypnotizable. And not all hypnotists are good at what they do. It’s not commonly known, but hypnosis isn’t just about guided words. The best hypnotists have an occult power to manipulate your etheric energy field, to displace it from your head so that you lose regular consciousness. Franz Mesmer, who popularized hypnotism, had this ability.

Another issue is that if you are knocked out deeply enough, then it’s possible for other entities such as ghosts, demons, aliens, or whatever to take over your body temporarily and speak through you. Dolores Cannon has had alien entities speak through her clients, picking up conversations where another client had left off, even though the two didn’t know each other. This can be an avenue of great disinformation.

So there are some risks and noise associated with hypnotic regression and therapies. Whatever details you discover, if they can be checked against history and verified, then of course that makes it more believable.

There are forms of past life therapy that don’t seek to reveal any facts, but merely treat psychological, emotional, and physical conditions. Those are helpful in treating something, but it may not necessarily always be the truth of what happened in a past life.

» Why don’t good aliens come to liberate our planet from the evil forces controlling it? I’m sure they could easily win.

I think the problem is humanity itself. Back when I ran a forum, there would be really subtle trolls that would worm their way in from time to time. I could see them right away, but most people could not. If I booted them before they had a chance to reveal to everyone who they were, there were a lot of upset people thinking I kicked out an innocent person. Sure, it was my forum and I theoretically could do what I wanted, but the troll attempt may itself have been an attack to make me seem irrational and tyrannical, the very thing I wanted to avoid (due to having faced that same crap on the Cassiopea forum).

Anyway, although I could have easily deleted their account and banned them, I didn’t. Why? Well,
for one they were entrenched in the hearts of the majority of the members. Patting their backs, appealing to their ego. People would have come to the troll’s defenses, not knowing that deep down the troll was being a dishonest manipulator. Secondly, the people had a spiritual lesson to learn about discernment. If I kicked the troll out right then and there, the people would not have learned that lesson and instead would have turned on me.

So the same thing applies on the world scale with aliens. First of all, positive aliens don’t want to interfere with the world if possible, therefore if right now the negative alien stuff is in the background and most of the word continues on not even believing in aliens, there’s no reason for positive aliens to reveal themselves and the whole alien presence through what could be a bloody fight over our heads. Thus they would have to take out the negative aliens covertly, and that simply cannot be done considering how negative aliens have deep underground bases and the cooperation of our black ops military and satellite networks that can monitor when positive aliens enter their restricted air space.

So really, the main reason positive aliens haven’t done it, is because to do it means to reveal the existence of aliens to the planet. What’s so bad about that? If it’s not done right, the world would indeed spiral into chaos. Think about how sensitive the economy/markets are to a simple report that comes out of some U.S. financial agency. The implications of aliens would destabilize things quite a bit. Also I suspect there is a third party overseer like a referee that’s disallowing it, or at least has been for some time.

But let’s say negative aliens revealed themselves first, once they feel confident they can lead us humans to the slaughter now that they have the slaughterhouse fully up and running. At that point, positive forces could step in — however, if they did it RIGHT AWAY, it would be like me kicking out the forum trolls right away. People would be wondering, gee here we had these aliens from the Ashtar Confederation offering us free energy, peace, and knowledge… and all of a sudden their ships are being blown out of the sky by this other group. What would people think of this other group? They’d see them as enemies of peace and progress, perhaps as alien controllers wanting to keep mankind from advancing technologically. If they attacked our military bases and fried your uncle because it turns out he was a robotoid working on behalf of the negative aliens, you would turn against them too. It would be 9/11 times a million.

So the positive aliens would have to wait until a critical moment when 1) enough people have seen what the first bad group is really like, and also 2) enough people have learned to be self-reliant instead of depending on aliens for progress. The second point is another reason positive aliens haven’t stepped in. Once they do, or if they were the only ones who did, all human eyes would turn to them for help, technology, etc. and if they give us technology, they’d have to show us how to use it, they’d have to be there for tech support and repairs, and we’d become increasingly dependent on them instead of being able to work our way up to their level. It’s like when the Europeans encountered the natives, the latter were given things that today make them pretty much totally dependent on us. They depend on the government now for handouts in their reservation, and they live in squalor.

Anyway, it would be a disservice to us, and to them, for them to come out first and try to not only kick out negative aliens, but then have to get us up to speed on their star trek world and technology. If the world were made of nothing but people like you and me, positive aliens could show up and
explain the conspiracy and we’d nod our heads and react in a wise manner. But we’re in the 99 percentile and there are billions who will not react wisely at all.

That’s why I think they’ll let the bad guys show up first, pull a great deception, and at the verge of the point of no return, only then can they step in and offer some tactical assistance but mainly giving us critical knowledge so that we can make an informed choice and out of our own power and buck the negative aliens. Then the positive guys would hang back and let us develop on our own, and perhaps in 500-1000 years we’ll be mature enough to stand with them instead of being on our knees like superstitious natives begging the “gods” for gifts.

Would you call biblical creationism vs scientific evolution a false dichotomy?

Yes, because each side is based on flawed and incomplete assumptions, and each side uses the faults of the other to justify their own validity. Both of them ignore better possibilities.

For example, what if each species has an oversoul, and intelligent mind located in the astral planes that presides over the whole species. The various animals in that species are individual extensions of this oversoul. When the animal dies, its energy is withdrawn back into the oversoul. Now, what if this oversoul uses the entire species as a kind of body to evolve itself over hundreds of thousands of years. And what if, when the time comes to employ a new form, this oversoul induces a probabilistic pressure that causes mutations to arise in the animals that end up producing a new species, and the oversoul transfers on to that one?

Then what you have there is self-guided intelligent evolution of species. It’s neither purely random mutation and natural selection, nor is it some one single Creator god.

How come neither side wants to even discuss this possibility? Well, the answer is that one bases all its beliefs on a books whose authorship they don’t question, and the other side bases all its beliefs on the realm of the five senses and cannot comprehend let alone perceive etheric and astral energies.

So there you have it, the dumb arguing with the blind. And most people fall for this dichotomy, thinking there must only be those two choices. The fact that they can see flaws in the opposing side, somehow convinces them that their own side must therefore be right. That’s a logical fallacy. Why is it that they assume it’s either one or the other? That’s called binary thinking, and it’s the #1 flaw in the human mind. Such people have the intelligence of a light switch, either on or off, 0 or 1, right wing or left wing, evolution or creationism, false choice one or false choice two.

Do you think any high profile conspiracy researchers like Alex Jones, David Icke or Jesse Ventura are disinformation agents?

They strike me as people who have a ceiling on their beliefs that they won’t go beyond. Alex Jones has pressed himself up against that ceiling for over a decade and won’t go further. Thus he’s like a broken record. The Bohemian Grove thing was as far as he went, brushing up against the occult aspect of it all. But he still doesn’t believe in aliens, nor has he seemingly studied metaphysics. Those are the true source of the problem.

What Jones, Icke, and Ventura are doing is exposing the 3D level of the conspiracy. Icke goes further, but there are things even he refuses to talk about in depth. Examples would be the abduction phenomenon and MILABs and military working with aliens, also the idea of negative Nordic aliens.
He’s all about the reptilians mostly, but I think reptilians are a decoy or at least subordinates that answer to a higher darker power. Therefore if aliens that look like Nordics show up and say they want to help us fight off the reptilians, Icke’s paradigm would fit right into that, even if the Nordics themselves (or a faction among them) were the true bad guys.

Ultimately I like all three of them, within the circle of their expertise, within limits. For a person who is new to the fringe stuff, these guys can teach a lot. The only caveat is to not let their ceilings become your ceilings. They are good stepping stones.

I don’t think Icke or Ventura are knowing disinformation agents. Jones I’m not sure about, as he goes from calm to crazy in two seconds and calms back down again, which isn’t normal and seems like an act, thus I think he’s acting a lot of this, which makes me question what he really cares about. It’s actually easier for him to simply be a MILAB, programmed to be obsessed with this subject. Why? Basically to fire people up and sow the seeds of the next American revolution, which is needed to bring down the nation and allow it to eventually be disassembled and taken over by the NWO (maybe through a China/Russia war as well).

» David Icke once mention that if you hire security guards, to protect your house and to protect you, you are manifesting the fear of being attacked from your thoughts into 3D reality. And may actually be attracting such negative situations into your life.

In reality, the attraction of such events depends mainly on your emotions and deepest of beliefs and not on your awareness, knowledge, or calm thoughts. Therefore a person who has no security guards, no weapons, who is kind but meek, if that person spends all day deeply and neurotically fearing getting attacked by muggers or robbers, that will draw it in. Same with someone who hires the armed guards out of a deep fear and preoccupation.

If one wanted to have the best of both, it would require thinking objectively about risks and what needs to be done about that, but NOT having any emotional attachment or preoccupations or deep beliefs about imminent harm coming to you.

But more importantly, what Icke says applies only to attraction. If you drop your emotions/beliefs about a threat, all that does is not attract it anymore. However, it does not mean blocking it totally. So if you’re not attracting it, that doesn’t mean it can’t also happen by chance now, or by the freewill of the attacker to choose you instead of the neighboring houses. The only thing that blocks actual events, is calm awareness of it, strategic preparation for it, and divine/higher protection.

To reiterate, what happens to a person is a mix of:

1) Probability-shifting — Using your thoughts/emotions to influence the chance of an event BEFORE it ever has the opportunity to manifest. Example is calmly being aware of the possibility that your car tire might go flat on a trip, and being mentally prepared for it. The expectation alone can prevent it from happening, more often than not. Another example is having a deep gnawing fear of the tire going flat, and therefore attracting it instead.

2) Physical/material causality — Using actions, choices, words, preparations, material goods to make something happen or to forcefully prevent some event from being able to manifest or to succeed. Example would be replacing your tires with pop-proof tires, thus it can never get flat on the trip. Causality is also the reason why, if you now go outside and choose to jump off a balcony,
you will indeed (99.999% of the time) get injured. You chose a physical action that results in physical harm. On the other hand, if you have special protection, while you might get harmed in that case, the next day when you walk under a piano being lifted to the top floor and the rope breaks, but you’re not aware of that and didn’t choose it, something might intervene to prevent you from getting hurt. The difference being that you chose the first case, but not the second.

3) Random chance, other people’s freewill — There’s no bigger reason to it. It happens because it could, or because of astrological influences beyond your control, or because someone simply chose to do it and you were in the right/wrong place at the right/wrong time. Example would be sitting down on a bus seat, only to realize someone left a half opened packet of mayonnaise on there and now your pants are stained. Maybe there’s no higher reason for that, just sheer accident without major consequence. If it doesn’t change anything in the big scheme of things, then there’s no reason why higher forces would try micromanaging that situation. On the other hand, if you now go home and change your pants, thereby getting off the bus early and afterwards that bus crashes off a bridge, then the mayonnaise could indeed have been a higher intervention.

David Icke’s situation only covers the second example listed in #1 above. But it’s only part of the picture. Therefore people who believe that the 2nd part of #1 is the 100% explanation of ALL that happens to us in life, they are incorrect.

Nonetheless, it is an important part of our reality. Take note that the actual proportions of #1, #2, and #3 in life varies considerably from person to person. One person’s life might be mostly a result of #3 or #2, while another is mostly #1. Theoretically, it would be possible for a certain person to have 100% of just #1... what kind of person would this be? I’d imagine someone like a Buddha or Jesus or some divine emissary in human form who has no lower ego, who is wise and spiritually strong, pure, and never strays from their higher consciousness.

» What about the Asian religions(Hinduism, Buddhism, Confucianism, and Daoism)? Are these religions wrong like Christianity, Judaism, and Islam?

Their basis predates certain events that happened from 3000 B.C. onwards that have bearing on our world today, of which Christianity, Judaism, and Islam originate from. I detailed this in my Gnosis series on my site.

In other words, asian religions are more generic, universal, and concern more the absolute nature of things. Whereas Christianity concerns are more localized to the specific alien/spiritual conflicts that arose on Earth in recent times. Meaning, yes overall Asian religions are less “wrong” or have less “agendas” — BUT, they are also less relevant, or are outdated, in some ways.

It used to be that empires spanned regions like Asia or India, and the goal was stability and for people to keep things the same. In which case, leading a simple life according to Asian religious concepts is fine. You try to eliminate the ego and meditate and don’t rock the boat. That’s how China stayed pretty much the same up until 1800-1900 when the West brought the industrial revolution and imperialism over.

Well, that simplistic stability thing won’t work today anymore. Christianity is an apocalyptic religion. It’s about an end to history and time and the world as we know it. It’s more of an emergency evacuation procedure book than Asian religions which are more like “general tips on
enjoying your stay.”

The problem with Asian religions is that they don’t train the intellect, individuality, or ego enough. They favor collectivism and uniformity and a simplistic existence. In some ways I think they are regressive, in that they aim to get you to strip away what makes you human so that you revert to your primordial higher spiritual self. Well, that’s one way to do it, but it’s going backwards. Western esotericism is more about refining and perfecting your human aspect and then placing it under the command of spirit, so that you move forward toward perfection instead of backwards. You keep your assets and then some.

Ultimately we need to extract the best from everything, instead of subscribing to any one particular religion.

» Who exactly are the Pleiadeans? Are they the same as Nordics maybe?

I’m not sure that they actually come from the Pleiades. They tend to use star names or mythology names to identify themselves, but mainly to protect their real identities. Who are they really? Well, I think they’re humanoid, but they might be hiding their identity because what they’re doing isn’t sanctioned by their own government or some intergalactic politics.

For instance, USA and Russia during the Cold War had an uneasy peace. If the USA officially sent a team of psyops into some satellite nation of Russia in order to spread anti-Russian movements, Russia could get pissed and even launch a military attack on the USA. But if some maverick activist group from the USA went over there and tried to start a movement, Russia might be pissed at that group but couldn’t hold the USA accountable and so there wouldn’t be a war/attack. However, they could still get angry at the US for allowing the activist group to go over there. Hence the group might be best off being totally secret and not revealing who they are, or where they are from. Actually “going there” isn’t the best metaphor — more like they stay in the US but use email, websites, social networking, and instant messaging to remotely influence the political terrain of that nation.

Same with some of the good guy Nordics; if they’re helping people on Earth, and Earth is primarily a negative-alien controlled planet, and those who control it have an uneasy truce with the Nordic homeworlds, then you can see why the good guy Nordics have to be careful. Not only are they in enemy territory, but if their homeworld is found out and held accountable, it could shatter the peace and start a hot war. That’s the line of reasoning that Marshall Summers published in his Allies of Humanity Book 3.

I think a hot alien war is likely in our future. The only reason the peace might exist, is because Earth hasn’t yet aligned itself 100% with one side or the other. Until it does, there may be a third party alien referee or overseer group in charge of protecting planetary freewill, that is keeping alien sides from being more brash in their moves. But when the time comes, they’d probably pull back that protection now that Earth has reached “legal age.”

That would entail a kind of disclosure, and people recognizing aliens and making the choice. At that point, the sides would up their game and it could spill into a full on war if things go crazy. Abductees have been dreaming of aerial ship battles by the thousands. Hell, some abductees have been given training on survival and manning ships and using advanced weaponry — not only alien
abductees but MILABs too. Hot war indeed.

There are some channeled sources on the net today that claim to be the Pleiadeans but they act more like figments of imagination or more likely demons/spirits pretending to be them, or Grays pretending to be fluffy sappy lovey dovey Nordics for purposes of monitoring and control. Just because something claims it’s Pleiadean, doesn’t mean it is.

“Bringers of the Dawn” by Barbara Marciniak is pretty legit. I’m not sure if they are Nordics who dictated that book through Marciniak, or higher up nonphysical entities who used the Pleiades constellation as a symbol to sign their calls with. Keep in mind that a Nordic might tell one person they’re from Sirius, and tell another they’re from Tau Ceti, another they’re from Alpha Centauri, another they are from Lyra or even the future. Generally speaking though, when fringe people on the net have said “She’s a Pleiadean” they’re usually referring to a human-looking alien preferably with nice hair and curves in a bodysuit.

As for Billy Meier, from what I can tell he probably had real contacts as a kid, but as a young man he may have stopped having those contacts, became a bit egotistical with delusions of grandeur, and then gradually formed a cult and hoaxed some photos, and later may have come under the control/guidance of Grays or negative aliens. There’s a valid core to his story, but it’s only in the very first few Contact Notes he published; then it seems he ran out of real material, and began making up the rest. That tells me he had real contacts at one point, but they stopped, and he fabricated the rest.

» Do you believe that the more you are aware, into fringe, and are involved in other things you are more likely to be affected by ETs?

It depends on whom you affect via your knowledge and actions. It’s possible to attract attention only from demons and ghosts, but none at all from ETs and vice versa. And with aliens, it depends on whether it’s the long term strategist types who are manipulating human history, or the more opportunistic ones who just want to play with and feed upon humans, because they are of the demonic persuasion.

The long term strategists you can only attract if you are useful or a threat to them, and that basically means you go out there on the net or locally and begin exposing them and their methods, and make new insights that haven’t been made before, causing these being to panic and want to shut you down before you cause more harm. Or you can simply ask too many good questions on some abductee forum, cause people to doubt their own alien handlers. That works too. But if you don’t have an interest in aliens, or discuss them, then you’ll likely never interact with these ones.

The alien opportunists are more like demons, in that they pick on the weak, paranoid, jumpy and play games with them until they crack and go nuts or commit suicide or become a total passive puppet to them. Or perhaps those are demons pretending to be aliens. Hard to tell, it’s a murky area.

So whomever specifically you’re useful or a threat to, is whom you’ll get attention from. Thus if you’re a political activist trying to expose the nuclear industry, you might get attention from political groups and government agencies who feel threatened by that. If you’re a Christian thinking you’re waging spiritual warfare against the dark powers, then you’ll probably get demons coming after you. If you research the alien agenda and expose some new information, you’ll get aliens.
It’s also about your potential for these things. Some people are smart, observant, and independent enough that they could very likely begin to affect things. The alien long term strategists watch out for this the most. Some aliens are relatively benevolent and they look for babies with certain qualities including intelligence and open mindedness and spiritual maturity to then contact throughout life and train to oppose the negative alien agenda. But the negative aliens can see those babies too as a possible threat; they read their souls, determine probable futures, and then begin shaping them the opposite way as much as they can. It’s an invisible time war of sorts.

» What would you say to an atheist or agnostic or nihilist or anyone that doesn’t believe in a divine creator of the universe?

First I would say that they are probably thinking of an anthropomorphic God as envisioned by the religious, but that the real divine creator may bear little resemblance to that. Therefore if religion turned them off to the idea of a God, have they considered other more reasonable possibilities for what a divine creator actually is like?

Second, I would ask them, where do you think consciousness comes from? If they say the mind is a byproduct of matter, that consciousness arises as an epiphenomenon (outgrowth) of material causes, then I would ask them, at what physical level does consciousness have its beginnings? The neurons, the chemicals, the molecules, the atoms?

If they say any of those, then I would say, did you know that the brain is a quantum computer, and that the behavior of neurons originates at the atomic and subatomic level? If they say of course, then I would say, did you know that the quantum behaviors of electrons and other subatomic particles have been proven in quantum physics to have no discernible physical causes? That therefore no amount of math or measurement can predict what exactly a subatomic particle will do next? So if consciousness arises from quantum behaviors, then consciousness does not have a physical cause. That is what quantum physicists have determined.

I would say: So you saying that consciousness is an epiphenomenon of material causes is wrong. It arises from nonphysical factors that you don’t know about. And it leads to something that is intelligent, self-aware, creative, and has freewill. If I said that consciousness preceded matter, and that the quantum fluctuations seen in matter which generate all the subsequent physical phenomena are ultimately caused by consciousness, then the brain is not only a quantum computer but a receiving device for a nonphysical consciousness.

I would ask: Now let me ask you, where did the universe come from? (They will say Big Bang or that it always existed). Then I say, Stephen Hawking who is considered the smartest and more respected physicist alive, says it emerged into existence due to quantum fluctuations in the vacuum. Now, what causes quantum fluctuations? Not material causes. Therefore the physical universe came into existence from a metaphysical source. There is nothing that disproves the possibility that this metaphysical source was conscious. If they say that I can’t say that because I can’t prove it, then I tell them, then if not a physical factor that caused it, what is it then? If they say they don’t know, then I say, well then you admit ignorance on this point, whereby at least I have a working hypothesis based on principles that also explain how consciousness arises in the brain. Then the debate could go on to finer points.

» Do you know anything about similarities between how “classic” Monarch and/or ritual abuse style...
programming and that of MILABs and/or abductees presents in those subjected to either?

Well I have some ideas about the differences.

The newer MILAB (military abduction) methods seem to have these capabilities:

- Taking an abductee through a portal instead of by van/helicopter.
- Being able to remotely speak hypnotic commands into the mind instead of needing to be there in person.
- Ability to remotely induce scripted dreams, or virtual reality scenarios.
- The ability to remotely split the mind remotely or nonviolently through traumas virtually induced in the person’s mind.
- The use of injectable drugs that act on the soul itself in some way, instead of being mere regular psychotropics.
- The use of technology that can interface with consciousness, maybe detach the soul from the body slightly during an abduction (an induced OBE)
- Activity in the astral realms, such as taking the soul but not the body during an abduction (I’m unsure of this, as I think it’s more an alien capability).
- The incorporation of remote viewing and remote influencing to program a person with commands designed to activate at the event viewed.
- Implants that are not metal, don’t show up on x-rays, and don’t emit detectable radio fields.
- Ability to take an abductee into some parallel dimension (lower fourth density) which also induces an altered state of consciousness or memories that cannot be accessed back in our regular dimension, but only while there.

Do think the spiritual warfare techniques you and others with similar viewpoints have suggested (such as Carissa Conti, Eve Lorgen, etc.) give for MILABs/Abductees would work for those who are not sure what category to define their programming in?

Yes, more so now than back when the old style Monarch stuff was being used. The old stuff seems to be more physical, regular technology, as in get taken by car or truck to a building, shot up with drugs, traumatized, and programmed. Whereas the newer methods seem to involve occult principles, hyper-dimensional physics, and transportation between dimensions. The spiritual warfare techniques are against metaphysical, occult, interdimensional phenomena.

Spiritual warfare doesn’t work so well on physical phenomena like a bear trying to come through your window. However, we do know from reality creation methods that intention affects physical events too by altering their degree of probability, so it’s not entirely useless against physical things especially in preventing them from arising in the first place.

As long as an event is still “out there” in the future, as long as an entity is still “not fully here and physical” (it’s in what the Theory of Relativity calls the “spacelike” region), as long as military abductors are trying to get at you from the other side of an interdimensional portal — you and they are not 100% in the same physical reality. Therefore, the interaction between both of you is not 100% deterministic, physical, force based. And so it ought to be more sensitive to metaphysical laws and factors, since there are some non-physical factors involved. Meaning spiritual warfare ought to be more effective in such cases.
That, unlike the bear, who is here right now in your physical reality and it would be better to grab a stick or a shotgun to fend it off. Again though, spiritual warfare or just prayer/intention could reduce chances that a bear would pick your house, but it’s not failsafe.

» Did god or the creator create our souls and our physical bodies and then aliens tweaked us along the way or did the creator create our souls and then aliens created our physical bodies?

I think God projected forth our spirit, the central core of our being. The soul is more a temporary energy sheath around the spirit, that helps spirit interface with the body.

I think both the body and soul can be modified by aliens, but the spirit cannot unless it chooses to be.

As far as I understand, animals (average ones) only have a body and soul. So imagine that Earth had a natural evolution where animals with body and soul up to our ancient ape ancestors evolved. Now if aliens came along and modified them, turned them into more humanoid shape in order to be better slave workers … then you’d have just a more capable kind of animal.

But now imagine that this higher animal was sophisticated enough to start housing a spirit. What if spirit came from another higher dimension, and was enticed into occupying these higher animal bodies. Maybe for the benefit of getting to experience physicality. Maybe it was a curiosity akin to Adam/Eve eating the apple.

So once the spirit was stuck in Earth reincarnation cycle, in the human body, I think other aliens came along and made further tweaks to the body/soul complex. And so on several more times. From what I gather, the human species was not meant to become its own flourishing civilization like we have today, but was originally just an experiment or slave race.

But now that we’ve picked up and run with our progress, I think it’s sort of like a kid in a custody battle being old enough to decide whom to live with — the race is now on to influence us to choose sides. The sociopathic daddy (4D STS) wants us to go with him, so to speak. And that’s where my “Discerning Alien Disinformation” article comes in.

» I’d like to know what you think of the holographic universe theory.

I’m a believer in the theory. My view is that reality is a fractal hologram that, by itself, is a static pattern of all possibilities from past to present to future. And that we are the ones that travel through it, activating/playing it like a laser illuminating one instance of an object when shining on holographic film.

Though it gets more complicated in that we collectively seem to be chained at the ankles to each other. When you’re wearing a chain, you have some freedom of movement but can’t stray too far from the rest. Likewise, we might be able to tweak our timelines a little (and thereby attract synchronicities and miracles) but don’t really change the world as a whole, since we’re in this together. Thus our travel through the fractal hologram is a group effort.

The other feature of the holographic universe theory, that the small parts contain the whole, well yes I guess technically that is true, but I haven’t found it to have much practical significance. What I mean is, the below mirrors the above, but just like how a hologram’s smaller piece doesn’t contain as much resolution as the whole, there is just the resemblance and not a perfect correspondence.
And so a shell might mimic a galaxy but the shell obviously doesn’t contain stars and planets with little humans on them. So the general form is replicated, but the details differ.

In my book *Fringe Knowledge for Beginners*, I discussed the above idea a bit more than on my site.

The physics community has had some researchers looking into the idea that our universe is holographic in the sense that it’s a higher dimensional thing (a space-time thing) encoded in a 2 dimensional surface. This was in the news again recently. Years ago I read of another scientist who proposed what this 2 dimensional surface actually was: the surface of a black hole.

Well, my own physics research has concluded that we might as well be living in a black hole. Or put another way, between our universe and a parallel universe is a wall, and this wall is the surface of a black hole. To leave our universe means to climb out of a black hole, so to speak. But what a black hole’s surface really is, is the place at which light is stationary. So the surface itself is nothing but light, in a single timeless pattern. What does a hologram encode? Patterns of light. So yes, I believe that’s what the fractal hologram is, a holographic pattern of light recorded onto the surface of a black hole, and we are living within/upon it. That’s pretty mind blowing.

» What really happens when a Christian thinks they are saved or a born again Christian? They think this is proof of the biblical god and they say he gives them the faith to believe in him.

In some cases an actual angelic, higher self, or divine force can stand in for whatever figure they imagine they’re in touch with. This would depend on the person, if they have a genuinely good heart and all that, and are holding fast to the kinds of ideals that such higher beings find honorable and righteous even if the name/image of whom the person is addressing is inaccurate.

But I think in a lot of cases, it’s no different from when a cult member initiate finally “breaks” and falls for the cult leader. A kind of Stockholm syndrome, which is really a survival mechanism whereby the ego thinks “If I can’t beat em, join em.” It’s the human equivalent of a dog showing its belly to an alpha dog. By playing the subservient, you might gain favor from that which you fear and perceive as having power over you. So in the case of some Christians, there is a belly up movement in a last ditch attempt by the ego to survive. I mean, if they are threatened with eternal damnation in hell, that they are sinners, and that Jesus is the only way, then you can see what the fear/threat is that causes this reaction.

Deep down I don’t see such Christians actually believing it from a “knowing” viewpoint. An exception would be if they had a near death experience, a really powerful dream, maybe an entity that looked like Jesus came to them and made an impression. Then they are speaking from experience, although they accepted and did not double check the experience to make sure it was legit. But the rest who don’t have that, they do it on faith or make-believe. There’s a lot of self-induced psychosomatic reactions such as shaking or feeling chills or whatever that a person could mistake for the Holy Spirit, and take as proof the Christian god has touched them.

What I’m saying is that if deep down they have doubt, this doubt they try to make up for with double the amount of zealfulness and devotion to the Christian memes they have assimilated. They proclaim it loudly and Bible thump all the time because they are insecure and trying to ignore and suppress that gnawing doubt. Someone who is genuinely in touch with the divine, simply lives it. Any proclamations they make would come from the heart. There is no nervousness or “trying hard
to convince myself” type feel to their words, as is the case with a lot of Christians who have the religion but not the spirituality.

» Do you think that the mastery of astral travel (if the phenomenon is real at all) is a necessary prerequisite for liberation or enlightenment?

No, by itself astral travel does nothing to make you more knowledgeable, enlightened, or spiritual. That is because you only tend to encounter layers of the astral planes and beings who are equal or lower than you in consciousness/vibration.

Mostly it’s a waste of time, and can be dangerous if you are under negative entity attacks. They can pull you out of the body and sever the soul connection to the body if they are strong enough, and then they can take your place. People who astral travel too much seem to lose parts of their soul slowly, like it wears away.

I think it’s only safe if you’re already an esoteric initiate, well trained over your mind and emotions and are spiritually balanced. Then if you’re that high, and you astral travel to attend some meeting in the higher astral planes, sure you could gain from that. But most people just going exploring or flying around, no that’s not good. Astral travel isn’t something you do to become more enlightened, it’s something you can do more safely near/after becoming enlightened.

Lucid dreaming is safer. Any positive being that can teach you anything, can do so by projecting itself into your dreamscape if needed. You don’t leave your body (that much) and therefore cannot be taken away and replaced.

Another thing that is better, is the “mind awake, body asleep” state. This state is a prerequisite for astral traveling. Meaning, you have to be in that state to project. But when you’re in that state, you don’t necessarily need to astral travel. You can remain close to the body, but detached from it only slightly, so that you can think while being free of the physical brain. You can do many things in this state like remote viewing, remote healing, self-healing, soul fragment retrieval, and so on.

» What are fallen angels? Are they the same as demons or were they mistaken for aliens in ancient times?

The ancients couldn’t tell a spaceship from a helicopter, a time traveler from an angel, or a ghost from an albino. So when they speak of “angels” sometimes it was really angels, sometimes it was aliens.

In my view, aliens occupy the part of the evolutionary ladder between angels and humans, and between demons and humans. So angels and demons are more extreme manifestations of “perfection” of light or darkness, whereas humans are somewhat in the middle zone, and aliens are on both sides of that zone with some being more good and some more evil.

Angels are created perfect, with not much freewill. So they have neither the faults, nor the freewill, to become something other than what they are. I just don’t see how they could have fallen and become demons. Thus I don’t believe the Biblical myth about literal angels having fallen. However, I do believe that myth refers instead to an alien civilization that was once in harmony with the divine, but some of its members became a bit too proud and selfish and thus a schism erupted, and some of them “fell” — they’re not demons, but rather some of the negative aliens we encounter
today, including and especially the negative Nordic types.

» As far as inviting divine influences into my life, do you recommend I read up on how to channel higher beings?

No, there’s really nothing fancy involved. They’re telepathic anyway. Don’t think of names or personalities (like Sananda, Ashtar, Elohim, etc.) as they don’t really have names. Higher divine beings are just no-nonsense, understanding, beings that represents truth, balance, justice, ethics, and the power of spirit. They resonate with the energy of love, power, compassion, hope, beauty, truth, justice and so on. Therefore if you invoke some good vibes in yourself, then think both of them and of your own consciousness within as being a godspark related to them, that will get the process going. Think of it more as a resonance with them and what they represent. They’re not weak, therefore you shouldn’t be. They’re not in fear, therefore you shouldn’t be. They are powerful and noble and beautiful, therefore you ought to invoke that within yourself to achieve that resonance. You can mentally or verbally invite them to protect you and show you wisdom, lucidity, and goodness… and ask them to clear your mind, body, and soul of all negative influences, and also to clear your surrounding space and keep dark entities away. That’s what I do, it helps. It might take a week or so. The more you feel your inner attitude change, the more they can connect and help straighten out your life and environment too.

If you suddenly begin automatic writing, speaking in tongues, or channeling them in a trance then there’s a 99% chance it is impostor entities coming through. They’re chomping at the bit to create new gurus through whom they can control gullible followers. Higher divine beings are discerning and knowledgeable, therefore you should be also. The more gullible, wishful, and deluded you are, the more you will attract entities that play on those weaknesses. That accounts for most of the channeling literature out there. The channeling that’s actually good, you will notice the people involved are sharp, good-natured, discerning, and have integrity. It’s better to receive anonymous insights given to you through the back of your mind in response to questions you are pondering over, as then your logic and research can crunch through those intuitions and filter out any corruption. I think that is the preferred form of contact by higher beings because you do your half of the work, exercise your freewill, grow as a seeker, and don’t turn these entities into objects of worship.

» Have you been conflicted with being pulled in one direction by the collective machine while knowing that your efforts are better served in other capacities?

That was behind my decision to quit college and do other things. I was 4 years into a physics and engineering degree, had 2 years left. But in working with grad students and professors I knew what was ahead of me in Academia and didn’t want to do it. The problem was that to succeed (or even not fail in it) you have to give it 100% of your dedication and belief. You have to have faith in the system. I couldn’t simultaneously have only 50% conviction in it, while having the other 50% be my awareness of alternative physics and the conspiracy.

Anyway, from everyone else I’ve talked to over the years who have been in a similar dilemma, here’s what I concluded.

First, if a mainstream job is taking all your time and energy so that you barely have any left for more important and happier things, then that’s a problem. But if it’s a tolerable job that is merely an
inconvenience that takes up 1/3rd of your day — yet easily pays the bills and leaves you with enough time and energy the rest of the day/week, then for some people that’s the optimal point of balance because peace of mind is worth the hassle.

There were times when they quit without having a backup plan, without having something better already getting off the ground, and the result was that instead of slaving away at a job, now they were slaves to worry over making ends meet. So they had more time and energy in a sense, but not the financial freedom they had before. Thus they traded one problem for another.

The more successful stories involved a gradual transition. Like say, cutting back to part-time hours while working on the Plan B. Once Plan B’s income increased to a sustainable point, they quit their mainstream job and did that instead. This is the least risky way, as if Plan B fails you still have basic original income to fall back upon.

Another guy I know was at a graphics design firm doing really tedious and boring work for like 15 years. Eventually like old gum, it lost its flavor and all last drops of enthusiasm disappeared. He couldn’t go on anymore. In that case, it was a kind of ultimatum, and really a non-choice as he just couldn’t function anymore without sinking into depression and listlessness were he to continue. That’s an example of where, if you have no choice but to quit, then it’s the right choice to do so. He also had a really good attitude though, and had a dream of doing music production (he did that as a hobby for years). It’s what he REALLY wanted to do. So he quit the job, and I think within a week or two synchronicities piled up and now he’s an internationally known mixer/producer of electronic music. His attitude is what helped him most there, I think.

So I would say, the more you have luck/synchronicity/mind-over-matter as demonstrable forces in your life, the easier it is to quit something and “magically” have success in a new endeavor closer to your heart. The less you have those assets, the more you have to rely on pure common sense and strategic planning, such as shifting gradually without making any super risky moves.

There’s a kind of residual inertia that builds up in life from all the habits, negative beliefs, choices (good or bad) we’ve made — including going back to before we were born, which now manifests as the “hand of fate” that imposes certain limits on what is good for us to do. If we try to do something outside those limits, then we lose the support of the invisible helping hand we might have, and even get illnesses/accidents/misfortune as a kind of warning sign, like the rumble strip of a highway if you veer off the road too much.

The more of this residue there is in the path of your current dreams, the more time and effort it takes to dissolve it and achieve that dream. The residue varies from person to person according to their subconscious baggage and life circumstances. Ok, so someone in jail for the next 20 years wanting to be a forest ranger in 5 years, that’s not going to happen as easily as someone who lives in Colorado outside of jail. More inertia.

So the degree to which there is inertia, we must rely on patience, strategy, and direct action. The rest, however, is a matter of synchronicity and luck as determined by your mindset and how much your goals are in alignment with your destiny. Thus some people seem more lucky than others, but really it’s a ratio between their “residual inertia” vs their “mind over matter” factor.

Personally I like to play it safe and smart, have strategic pathways in place to get what I need, but I
also maintain a good attitude so that I’m not becoming my own enemy by manifesting bad luck through a rotten despairing attitude. Nothing is worse for your life than waking up every day into a state of cynicism, depression, loathing, guilt, resentment, or depravity. That shapes the day synchronistically and thus influences the course of your life. Hold the opposite mindset to get off on the right foot, and the rest of your problems will be easier to tackle.

So sure, there can be little miracles helping us out, and I let “reality” take care of that half, while I take care of the mechanics and practical aspects of things. Meeting “reality” halfway has worked out well so far.

» How do you make people believe what’s going on without them thinking you’re crazy?

People are each at a certain level of awareness. You can only take them up a couple notches from that level. So if they are at a very low level of awareness, you can only bring them to a low (rather than very low) level. If you tried to bring them to YOUR level, which may be too much of a change, they can’t follow and will lack the context to appreciate what you’re saying. Hence the phrase, “casting pearls before swine.”

Some people are naturally curious and open minded but simply haven’t had the chance to come across key information. This is my definition of naïve. If you can pique their interest with a series of “what if” questions that gets them coming up with possibilities simply as a fun exercise that requires no commitment of belief, then you can probe how open minded they are.

However, if they sense that you are trying to convert them, then they will shut down and become resistant. Therefore if you are as honest and innocent as possible, co-wondering with them, like “You know, I keep thinking what life would be like if aliens were real and showed themselves to the world tomorrow. What do you think, Fred?” and “I watched this documentary yesterday on UFOs and am starting to think there might be something to it. Have you ever seen anything weird?” Rather than “Aliens are here and they’re going to take over soon, why can’t you see that? Sheeple!”

So basically you have to fish for any curiosity or context they might have, that could get them interested. You can’t impress a belief on them. Well, you can through pressure and manipulation but that’s no different from how religions and cults do it. Rather you have to offer more info to the part of them that wants it. So first find if they are interested, if you can engage their interest, and then feed that interest in measured doses up to what they can handle. Don’t be a snaky salesman or some petty guru who is power-tripping on the whole master-initiate thing. Keep it real and down to Earth. If they can see that you’re interested in an innocent harmless way, and they then “think along” with you rather than being “talked at” then that’s good.

The problem is that some people simply “don’t believe” more as a safety mechanism because they’re fundamentally incapable of handling awareness responsibly. Not to mention, some are simply not here on Earth to do anything beyond live a hum drum life and reproduce. If you somehow succeeded in getting them to believe, either by exposing them to real paranormal phenomena or faking it, you’d be violating their freewill first and foremost, and you’d also likely make them become unstable, paranoid, super depressed, angry, and dysfunctional. Or worse, they become zealous nuts and next thing you know they’ve joined a cult because they have zero discernment.
Other people may seem like they are interested, but more as a way to placate you, or more as a passing form of entertainment. So they might converse with you or even read a book, and then a month later it’s like it never happened. Beware of such types and don’t let yourself be disappointed by them. You can’t satisfy an interest that doesn’t exist. They’re just patting you on the head or caught up in your enthusiasm as if hypnotized, then forget all about it when they switch back to their default trance state of being a cog in the wheel of the matrix.

So in a nutshell, it varies from case to case, you have to probe for who has potential interest, pique that interest, and then supply it. But just preaching and barking at people without discretion rarely works. Might as well wear a sandwich board on a street corner.

» How come “lone nuts” have never taken it upon themselves to kill these NWO elites?

Part of the problem is that there are forces who manage things from behind the scenes, in ways that most people don’t realize.

Let’s say a lone nut somehow decides to go after some elite person. Well, black ops and secret society and alien groups already have remote viewers in place and can read minds anyway, and know he is going to do that. They use telepathic or technological means to subconsciously sway him away from that, with thoughts such as “It’s not worth it” or “just kill yourself” or whatever — and the person decides against it, and you never hear about it in the news. End of that problem. Meanwhile another person contemplates it, and negative forces find it useful… maybe they can get some ritual death thing out of it, or maybe it’ll serve some gun control law that’s being contemplated. So they encourage it and allow it, or ensure it happens in the first place because this lone nut is one of their mind control agents.

Someone has to be aware, and has to be under the guidance/protection of destiny and whatever angelic/positive alien forces require, in order for him/her to get something major done. In other words, if a person WERE to kill an elite, or do something that majorly goes against the NWO, it would only be the final act in a kind of battle or wager or negotiation that’s already gone on behind the scenes, likely outside our 3D reality.

I think it’s rare if not impossible for someone purely out of their own freewill to go out of his way and commit an act that changes history forever, that impacts hundreds if not millions of lives. I think such power is heavily monitored and controlled invisibly. People try to do things without even realizing that their subconscious, their health, their finances; their life can be influenced toward or away from that goal. Thus there is a backdoor in their minds, in their life, that allows/prevents them from doing such things.

This also goes for free energy or antigravity inventors who want to change the world by releasing radical technology. Do they know about telepathic persuasion? Do they know about abductions and posthypnotic programming? If not, then they don’t stand a chance. They can be made to sabotage themselves and their relations with others.

» In your books so far I haven’t found your answer to these questions, or at least the question, “what is this all about—what is the final result supposed to be?” I understand the idea that we are here in this giant classroom learning what was planned for us to learn, but even if we learn every lesson perfectly and quickly—what is it all for? Is there any relief from the eternal learning environment?
Will all of this “learning” be put together and form the perfect world for humans, the planet and everything else that lives on this Earth?

I think the fact that consciousness is dynamic — meaning it perceives, it reacts, it acts — means that a being is always changing in some way. This also means that a state of unchanging utmost perfection forever and ever (like the Christian idea of Heaven) is not suitable for consciousness as we know it. It seems to be the slight imperfections, the limits, the part still unfulfilled, that drives life forward and that produces the variety of life we see.

Therefore I think we can attain to relative forms of perfection, rather than absolute perfection. What does that mean? It means reaching the conclusion of our current phase, our current environment, our current stage. The thing that we are currently moving toward in the short term.

So when you say a perfect world for humans, the planet, and life on Earth — that wouldn’t be perfect from an absolute perspective because why should an animal be limited from talking, why would an insect still die after two weeks — and if death were also solved, then the question is why (if life is perfect) would animals and humans be limited in how much they can reproduce and enjoy reproduction before overpopulation kicks in. Meaning, even a world of maximum harmony still has limitations and imperfections due to fundamental flaws built into that system.

The deepest flaw is that two or more independent beings exist at all, instead of everything being united into one infinite self-aware unity without need for physicality or any other realm beyond one’s own self. Ok, so that is the idea of the “Infinite Creator” in his/hers/its un-differentiated form. A single point of infinite intensity without nothing else existing, just pure consciousness aware of itself.

But then I wonder, how long can such a single being exist, before it gets “bored” (or rather, before consciousness being what it is, needs some space to move) and desires to explore its own nature in a more variety-filled way. Well, that impulse would result in the projection of an infinite variety of distortions away from absolute unity and absolute perfection. And it’s the pathway back to unity and perfection that represents something new and interesting, that would allow the infinite Creator to experience more than its own solitary unchanging self.

There’s a satisfaction that comes with knowing something, with finding out a mystery, with realizing that something is an illusion, with correcting errors and misperceptions. Life begins at the chemical and bacterial level, eventually gets to the plant an animal level, and then to human-like beings. It’s as if the earlier stages were preparation to allow the birth of a kind of consciousness (individualized self-awareness) capable of contemplation, learning, epiphanies, and so on. And from that point onward, it’s like the layers of illusion get stripped away as a being grows into greater awareness and power and the ability to create. It’s as if the individual being slowly ascends to become more and more like the infinite Creator, until eventually awakening into the infinite after having explored the full potential, the full pathway, of its separated self from the initial projection forth from the Creator all the way to the eventual reunification, a long journey like Lewis and Clark expedition. I mean, why did Lewis and Clark go all the way out west only to end up back where they started at the end? Because it wasn’t about the end point, but the journey and what they discovered along the way. They were mapping the unknown, turning potential into actuality.

So I suspect that the absolute purpose of consciousness is similar, to map the remaining unknown...
areas of its own infinite potential. And that this comes with a certain satisfaction of knowing and realizing and being, that issues forth from the very fundamental thing that makes up consciousness (to perceive, to be aware, to know).

However — aside from that absolute purpose, there are many “mini games” within it. I mean, there are so many illusions within illusions, little mini games or side paths one can take in the mean time. Ok, so let’s look at humans for instance. Let’s say that for some of us, we weren’t always human… let’s say we were originally inhabiting a more spiritually harmonious state (like the Garden of Eden myth) but that we were given a choice to enter a different kind of experience. We took it — foolishly or courageously — and now we’re here, having forgotten our original state, and possibly ensnared by a rather evil (meaning, run by beings who are even more deeply trapped in the illusion) control system that seeks to keep us here for as long as possible. So then, the purpose of this mini game would be to master this current experience, reawaken to our prior original consciousness, except now augmented or enhanced by the skills/strength we acquired while here living numerous lifetimes out in this 3D world of ours.

So should we then attain to a 4D positive type of existence where things are harmonious again and we know who we really are, that completes the mini game. That’s presumably the purpose of our little phase we’re going through right now — but it’s not yet the end of the road. Because even if we did acquire a positive 4D state, I bet it won’t be long before some folks — with their newly awakened hearts, power, and courage — realize that there are still beings stuck deeper in the illusion, let’s say humans who didn’t make it out, or beings on other planets that have been enslaved by a dark control system, and so these folks would now have a new mission, which is to help those less fortunate. That’s a new mini game. It’s a new type of experience, that ultimately serves the big absolute purpose of infinite self-exploration, but in the mean time it’s a mini-goal that is within reach at least.

» I think it’s important for me to know why we need to hang in there and that it’s more than just learning for the sake of learning or for the entertainment of entities attending their version of the Roman Games.

To hang in there, is to believe in the purpose and eventual conclusion of the mini game. If it had no good purpose and didn’t really have a conclusion, then there would be no reason to hang in there. Personally, I have hope and faith based on what I see. I take everything I can into account and that gives me hope.

For example, I know from experience that there is a tug of war, and that there do exist higher forces that seem to value integrity, freewill, knowledge, responsibility, compassion, understanding, and freedom. These are values I agree with. That these forces exist (to me), and yet there are also negative forces that value the opposite, shows me that negative forces don’t have 100% control over everything. I mean, the fact that I can even think about this stuff and converse with other people about it, shows that they don’t have 100% control. If they did, they’d snap their fingers and no human would ever think dangerous thoughts ever again. But since we can, and since I know such positive forces exist, I at least know that we’re not 100% doomed.

Then I look at the path my life has taken, and how even in some other people’s lives (whom I’ve known for years) I can see them being put through an invisible curriculum, a preparation path, to
equip them with certain skills and set the groundwork for certain opportunities and projects in the future. Something higher is orchestrating it. And the end goal of that preparation, from what I can tell, seems to be toward creating a body of aware people who can serve as wayfarers for others during a time of chaos and rebuilding, when uncertainty and fear are rampant due to old paradigms crumbling due to the ground shifting beneath the feet of modern society. I don’t know what causes it, whether it’s a slow collapse or cataclysms or aliens showing up or what. But to me, it looks like the tug of war between dark and light will be spilling into the streets at some point in the future.

Then I notice how this is all in keeping with prophecy from numerous cultures, religions — and some of it even in alignment with scientific research, economic trends, current events and so on. Therefore I believe that things are coming to a head, and if the prophecies are true, it will end in a golden age eventually, and a new spiritual Renaissance for humanity. However, current trends and prophecy also indicate that there are some bumps in the road, that it may get darkest before dawn. I’m prepared for that.

So from the above, I have reason to hope that there’s a happy ending, that there’s a purpose to what we’re doing here, and that we have to hang in there because higher forces — who seem to have a broader perspective than we do, and can see futures we cannot — seem to be investing their energies and efforts into us, and into this endgame we’re witnessing. If they think it’s worth their time, then maybe it’s worth our time to endure and play our part.

That’s how I view this mini-game we’re in. It’s not so much that we’re puppets being watched by spectators, but that we’re both the spectators and the players. When people do an extreme sport like climbing Mount Everest, they are not doing it for others really. They do it to prove something to themselves, and to find pleasure and satiety in the journey and the challenge. I think that’s the absolute goal of what we’re doing, but in the mean time we do have this tug of war thing to deal with, which I find pretty exciting actually.

» What are your thoughts on transhumanism?

I’ve been studying transhumanism and Kurzweil over the past few months. It is what awaits us if the world continues as normal. Even if there were no aliens, no ghosts, no demons, no NWO, no comets or solar EMPs, we’d still be heading toward a technological apocalypse of sorts.

Kurzweil is right that technology is growing exponentially and will reach a singularity. Political opposition, climate disasters, economic collapses may slow it down, but as long as knowledge can be stored and distributed then knowledge will build upon knowledge and technology will keep increasing.

Right now we have nanotech, genetic engineering and analysis, drones and humanoid robotics, computer power, solar power, and battery capacity as trends that are growing steadily. If things continue, by 2025 drones with super-capacity batteries will be as common as wifi routers are today. Remember back in 1998, Wi-Fi internet was barely even known. By 2008 it was everywhere. Drones today are burgeoning, but they’ll be common in the late 2020s. Some time in the 2030s we’ll have fully functioning humanoid robot drones, similar to the Terminator movies.

What will happen is that segments of society and the military and elites will continue upwards in their tech trajectory. In truth, what will be coming out is black ops tech that was known decades
earlier. It’s just being brought onto the surface, so that it can be used publicly upon the public. Portions of society will reject and resist this. You may see Luddite terror increase. It would reach a crescendo whereby, in the end, basically you’d have a very small elite with very high technological power fighting a larger number of less-advanced freedom fighters. The problem is that they’d have aerial and humanoid drones to do the fighting for them. That includes hunter-killer humanoids that operate cars, planes, helicopters, rifles, etc. blast open doors, flip your car over, return sniper fire in less than a quarter second, leap 20 yards and tear your head off. Five hundred of those could probably take out 100,000 human fighters. That’s when the luddites would be wiped out, unless they develop hacking/psychic skills to disable those things.

And the other risk is a full on Terminator/Matrix scenario where an AI does break away from human control and whips up a perfect plan for wiping us out or enslaving us. By that point, people’s brains will be jacked into the network anyway, so this AI virus could just as well take over their minds too. And there’s no telling that, if it’s a quantum computer running the AI, that some group of demons couldn’t set up shop in the computer room and condition the etheric energy there in order to interface themselves with the AI and thus virtually incarnate into mass consciousness.

The question is whether divine/alien/secret society forces would allow this, or whether they’d treat like a Tower of Babel thing and step in to “confuse our tongues” by smashing the machine, so to speak. I mean, what if the technological singularity is what brings on a hyperdimensionally ordained solar EMP event that pushes us back to the dark ages technologically, to ensure humans survive without technology that would wipe out the whole planet and thus ruin the “crop.”

Looks like no matter how you slice it, we’ll see some crazy end times stuff in our lifetime.

» Could you provide some examples from your own life on how you can still have courage to live in this often superficial, harsh, even hopeless world?

Myself, I was stuck in a hopeless doom phase for much of 1996 to 1999. Then I read some books on Hermeticism and realized that there could be a higher divine order and purpose to a lot of things. Prior to that point, I thought that the aliens, new world order, psychopaths, etc. were all there was. It was them, and then us powerless humans.

But afterwards I realized there were good guys too: human good guys, secret society good guys, alien good guys, and of course the divine beings. However, there was a reason why they behave the way they do. And there is a reason why evil exists in the world. Once I understood that picture, I was able to feel secure in being aligned with the good, without at the same time being crushed by the seeming hopelessness and evil in the world.

Religions rely on faith, such as “God works in mysterious ways” and so on. Well, faith is a form of ignorance and it should be no substitute for understanding, insight, and knowledge. Faith should begin only after the latter have reached their limits, and not a moment sooner. For me, faith is extrapolation based on knowledge and experience. I’ve experienced positive synchronicities, an invisible helping hand, and very subtle guidance that has helped me become more aware and responsible — and thus I have faith that it will still be there in the future. I can’t know 100% that it will, but based on past trends I believe the trends will continue. That’s faith based on experience, and it’s reasonable.
Now, the reason I mention that, is that the superficial, harsh, hopeless nature of the world is just one layer of it — the layer that is most easy to see, and most shown to us in media and news and displayed by people around us.

However, it can be counterbalanced with knowledge and understanding of the higher metaphysical context of it all, and knowledge of the good forces and when/how they intervene and when/how/why they don’t.

This knowledge is what builds security and stability. And it can only be gotten by a bit of experience, but mostly by reading and contemplating some good sources that attempt to explain how it works. That’s why I mentioned the “Wanderer’s Handbook” in my last email, because it’s one example of a worldview that helps make some sense of it without need for much faith or blind worship of something.

I’m at a point now where I feel like someone engaged in a game of chess. I don’t fear the game, but I do have a calm and steady determination. I went through doom for so long that I’ve become immune to it. If something weird were to happen like alien ships flying overhead, I think I would feel a bit of excitement and determination but I wouldn’t freak out. Because ultimately I feel secure in the idea that 1) I am an immortal point of consciousness merely peering in through my physical eyes, and 2) there is a divine plan where things do work out in the end, even if things are rough in the mean time, and 3) there are good forces that can assist if we hold to positive ideals and keep our hope/vibes up. And even if none of them were true, these beliefs still hold value as a strategic move to maintain composure in times of crisis.

» I’ve been reading David Icke’s “Infinite Love is the Only Truth” recently, and he says that reincarnation is part of the matrix plan to keep us here and in the matrix, and it doesn’t have to be. So where do we go? I’ve heard that the tunnels with the lights at the end are traps.

The cases of discarnate humans are who are Earthbound as ghosts or hitch-hikers who ride on people, or who are trapped in a state of dream-like delusion in the astral regions — they always seem to be the ones who didn’t go into the light. And by helping them to realize and see and enter the light they are freed from that condition.

I mean, I’ve never heard of a case of someone who didn’t go into the light and was now free and happy for it. If the light/tunnel is a trap because you reincarnate, then not going that route seems to place you in an even worse state of being a wandering ghost with you hands in your pockets and needing to feed off the energy of the living to maintain coherence and nearness to the physical plane. I’d call it a vampiric or zombie-like existence, like someone who becomes a vagrant in an airport because he never took a plane out of there.

So the choice seems to be between being born into another body or becoming a homeless ghost. I don’t know how long I could keep up the latter. At least I know that while living, I get to experience and learn and grow and make a difference in the world.

The idea that reincarnation/Earth is a trap is a popular one becoming more popular. I think it arises from a couple incomplete observations and a modern contrarian or paranoid culture that likes to rebel at any idea of control. The observation includes some people recounting how they didn’t want to be born again, that they thought they did good and were done, but were forced anyway to come
back. Now, I could tell by their voice that they were nice people but also a bit naive and childlike and definitely not on the level of a seasoned STO-oriented person who is an old soul wise and pretty much a “master” of sorts — those are examples of who graduates to the next level. At least, those are the kinds of beings we do find in the next level up, and there’s a continuum or spectrum where we are right now to where they are so I don’t think it’s a case where they’ve always been that way and we’ll always be stuck here — the continuum of different people at different stages shows it’s a smooth pathway to the top and anyone can make it who chooses to work on it.

If a person complains they cannot do it because every time they’re born they forget, and keep making dumb choices — well actually you don’t need to consciously remember the event that taught you a lesson in the past life. If you did remember, it might only be an intellectual understanding like don’t betray someone because they will burn your house down with you in it. If you truly understood from an empathic point of view, from regret and guilt, that betrayal for selfish reasons is harmful, it sticks with you at the very core of your soul and you’ll be a different person next time. Progress is rough for some people but whether it takes them one lifetime or ten lifetimes they seem to come around. The evidence of that is that there are good/wise people now who, when they have regressed their past lives, they’ve had ones where they were bad news but over a few lifetimes they grew out of it.

Soul evolution takes a while, and that’s the other problem: for us, 10 years is a long time. A lifetime is as big as we can imagine. But to higher beings who know that our spirit is immortal, permanent, and that these souls/bodies we take on for each life are just temporary containers — they have a much longer term view than us. The problem is people taking linear time, their bodies, their lives too seriously, giving it an immense value (based on assumptions habituated out of ego/human brain/finite existence on Earth) that creates a seeming but illusory unbearable cost to have to be born again. From the viewpoint of spirit, it’s just not that big of a deal — from spirit’s perspective. I mean, we’re like 5 year olds and they’re like adults in comparison. As 5 year olds we have no idea how much it takes to, say, become a professional in a particular career, or how much more schooling we have ahead of us, and we throw a fit when we are forced to go to school or get to bed early or not eat all that candy.

If people didn’t change, didn’t ever learn, if some babies weren’t born innately wiser and more sentient than others, if there weren’t people who were so advanced to the point of magicality as if they exist on the very threshold of this dimension — then sure I’d say we’re all trapped and there’s no point to life here except to be food.

But the continuity of growth, even with some side tracks and dips before going back up (like the way a business grows), tells me that yes there is a purpose for being here and yes there is a way out, but that it’s not as quick and easy as some people would like it to be. And that dropping out of school is not the same as graduating and being done with it. Every time you sign up for next semesters classes you’re committing yourself to being “trapped” again, but I don’t think it goes on forever ad nauseam. If there were no point to our existence, there wouldn’t be higher forces engaged in a tug of war over whether we enter into greater freedom and wisdom or into greater bondage and ignorance, nor would there by a synchronistic hidden hand to life arranging certain key moments and people that build lasting friendships and changes to your character.

So what I really see happening is a juxtaposition of two programs, one a kind of spiritual
curriculum/benevolent sandbox/school of hard knocks, and two an actual occult oppression system filled with deceivers and manipulators both in the physical, etheric, and astral realms. So there’s both going on. It’s just that people aren’t making the distinctions between the two, or factoring in how much freewill factors into the equation, or even that instead of each side being clear cut in their own jurisdictions (suggesting that everything is in its right place) there are indeed transgressions or freewill violations or imbalances happening. Yet, these transgressions don’t imply that therefore all that happens in the afterlife, or here on Earth, is under the domain of the dark forces. It’s not that simple. This duality with some gray areas in the middle where transgressions happen, that’s why the world is even the way it is, and why a divine intervention necessitating the correction is underway and will shape our future.

To conclude, I’d say the situation is complex and there’s both good and bad happening at the same time, and people are getting fragmented information and drawing ill-thought conclusions from it and erring on the side of a simplistic “it must all be a hopeless evil prison” or “it’s all a grand happy school and everything that happens has a good reason behind it” — I think it’s somewhere in between, and which one you’re moving into is up to you.

» Wouldn’t it be desirable for our Higher Self to give up everything and head to a mountain and silence our mind so the only will we would listen to is his?

Well I’d say that the Higher and lower self (us) are connected like a circle’s circumference and center point is connected via a radius. When the circumference pays attention to that higher center, it’s tapping into the HS. I think this can be done in every day life, not only just through isolation and meditation.

It starts with kindling intuition, compassion, and nurturing that which gives you a true and genuine sense of soul-satisfaction or happiness, as opposed to the glee that the ego experiences when it beats a rival or sees the latest issue of a porn magazine has arrived in the mail or whatever.

In other words, differentiating between ego/lower impulses, and higher impulses, and nurturing the latter. You can feel the latter, I mean you feel a certain thing when you do an earnest act of kindness, for instance, not necessarily a “gee look at me I’m such a good person” but more like “I feel for you brother, be well.” This also goes into creativity, or figuring out an answer to a grand mystery and feeling the awesomeness of existence because you just glimpsed a bit of its underlying elegance. Or pure beauty in all its forms, whether architecture or a certain scene. The part of you that senses these impressions isn’t the ego.

Myself, I don’t find much value in sitting in meditation with a silent mind. If it’s silent, nothing’s happening. If a thought enters, I banish it. How then, am I supposed to think the thoughts of my HS, experience its content, if I’m keeping my mind silent? I find that contemplation is better than that kind of meditation.

I get more out of pondering and crunching through mysteries in my sketchbook. Whenever I open my mind and intuitively feel out the answers, the answer precipitates at the edge of my conscious awareness and I then reel it in and turn it into words, then I logically analyze it. That’s bringing something from another realm into this one, actualizing it, being able to communicate it.

But to get actual pictures, audio, imagery, even speech from your Higher Self while you’re awake
and walking around, requires being psychic to some degree. That requires actual psychic training to
build etheric organs around your head and crown area that can establish a two-way communication
with the higher mind. Without that, you can still exercise the heart/intuition/wisdom that is the
default nexus point or intersection where your Higher Self is plugged into you.

» Could Astrology be a way for the Matrix to control us? Could it in a sense be a set-up utilizing the
magnetic fields of the Sun, Earth and Moon? I notice how people seem to invite the influence of the
Matrix into their lives by getting into Astrology. Much like religion, television, sex, drugs,
“patriotism” and other control mechanisms, could Astrology be part of how the meta-human
realities control humanity?

I’d say in the same way that winter, spring, summer, and fall are means for the matrix to control us,
for these too are related to alignments stars and planets (Earth and sun in this case). This whole
physical universe is a machine, especially on the macroscopic scale where there aren’t many
surprises and things go on like clockwork as far as alignments and positions are concerned.

The difference of course, is that something like the influence of Pluto in Sagittarius doesn’t make
much sense from a magnetic or even gravitational point of view. Pluto has barely any gravity effect
on us, no electric or magnetic effect either. So something else is going on there.

There are various possible explanations as to how it works. One is that although Pluto doesn’t have
much gravitational force, it is still a uniquely composed mass with an associated etheric layer to it
(same way crystals have an etheric aura) and it may have a certain vibrational fingerprint. It may be
emitting an etheric “sound” that reaches us here, that isn’t proportional to its mass necessarily,
anymore than a person’s vibe is somehow related to his or her body mass.

Similarly, different regions of the surrounding universe might have different vibrations. So when
one of those adds up with one of Pluto’s vibrations, you get a certain “chord” here on Earth, and
that influences things at the quantum level and skews probability in a certain archetypal way
 corresponding to Pluto and Sagittarius in that case.

Another possibility is that there is no direct etheric force being applied to us. Rather it’s all about
the collective unconscious and magick. When a magician draws a pencil trace on paper in the shape
of a certain symbol combined with another, and it causes the intended target to fall in love or heal a
leg injury or whatever, it’s just symbolic programming instruction. So when Pluto is in Sagittarius,
perhaps it’s no different — it’s one symbol in relation to another, and on the mental/astral level that
means something, it’s a certain command injected into the reality mainframe.

Where the Matrix comes in is that people aren’t entirely free if their lives are subject to the pull of
these etheric or magickal influences. It’s like we’re boats with constantly shifting winds getting
blown off course. Worse, those who know these wind cycles can predict the direction of the boats,
and prediction is a further form of control. Like if I were a scammer, and some astro alignment were
coming up having to do with deception and people losing money to scams, well that would be a
good time for me to run some operations. Scale this up to geopolitical events or even ritualistic stuff
in the media, and you can see they are capitalizing on certain influences.

I say this because the motion of the planets against the stars is set. It’s not something the Matrix can
fiddle with willy nilly. Its power to control lies in the predictability of this influence, and the fact
that people aren’t as secure in their freewill due to these influences.

Though I should add that from an esoteric and occult perspective, these influences do serve a purpose which is to motivate the action of those who are unable to act on their own. If a puppet can’t move on its own, it needs strings to pull it. This goes for the moon too, and that’s what Gurdjieff was talking about with the moon being likened to the pendulum on a clock; it’s what drives the motion of the clock. In people who don’t have much freewill to begin with, they are set into motion by the influence of the heavens (as well as biological and social conditioning of course).

Why isn’t biological programming and social conditioning alone enough to drive these puppets? Because notice that astrological influences are complex. It’s more nuanced and appropriate to the kinds of dramas that are unique to the human as opposed to animal experience. For example, Mercury retrograde involves misunderstandings and mechanical or electrical problems. We’ve only had electronics since the 1900s and animals don’t build machines. And that’s why I think astrological influences are an additional and necessary driver for people who lack freewill. Social and biological programming can’t do things like make your computer break down, or give your car a flat tire, or make people hostile against each other for no ordinary reason. Thus it’s a pendulum that drives these finer category of events of human life on Earth.

Though if we have freewill, these influences are a nuisance. It’s said in esotericism that it’s important to escape the zodiac, to go over and against time itself. In other words, to disentangle yourself from the machine. The more you apply freewill toward keeping yourself out of the baser emotions, and the more you choose to keep your vibes positive and mind clean, the less severely you will be “punished” by astrological factors.

As for people getting into astrology, it’s a double edged sword. I don’t believe astrology itself is purely evil in every way. I think it’s similar to weather forecasts but can have negative uses. There’s a difference between viewing astrology as fate and viewing it as probability.

It may be fated, due to the predictability of planetary alignments, that probability increases on a certain day for something. That’s precisely the same thing as in quantum physics when the wave function is said to evolve deterministically; the wave function is a bundle of probabilities whose shape can be calculated with perfection, but which of those possibilities becomes manifest is not set in stone. In astrology, it’s a fallacy to believe that a particular alignment means some associated event is fated. It’s not. But that it’s become more likely or less likely, that aspect does follow predetermined rules.

When astrological influences apply pressure, you still have freewill to go with it or fight it. People who make their decisions solely based on astrology are submitting their freewill to the machine, which is not good. It’s not something that should make your decisions for you. It’s something that, like a weather forecast, you merely take into consideration. It has to be used carefully and in balance.

» I was wondering if I could get your opinion on Chakra removal. I have been researching this a while, read some articles and watched some YouTube blogs with people who’ve claimed to have removed them or have had them removed.
They’re probably just removing surface layer energy patterns in the etheric/astral body and mistaking it for the chakras being removed. Unless they can literally see the chakras and manipulate them objectively, they’re kind of shooting in the dark and going on how they feel before vs. afterwards, meaning they don’t know for sure whether the chakras are being removed, if they’re merely being tweaked, if an entity they’re asking to do this is giving them false feelings of confirmation, if it’s just etheric/astral gunk they’re removing, and so on.

Same with the removal of the astral body. They might just be “taking a shower” and then raving about how great it is to “remove your skin that way,” when they were just removing dead skin cells and dried sweat and oils. Wonder what would happen if you used those same methods to try and remove your brain… I bet you’d feel better but the brain’s still there.

About chakras being a form of enslavement, that really depends on how you define chakra. In my understanding, they are subtle energy function centers the same way the brain has centers for speech vs. music vs. math vs. emotion. I don’t see how the etheric or astral body is supposed to be completely featureless without a single meridian, meridian point, or chakra. They’re all different degrees of the same thing. As long as energy is coursing through the subtle body, it’s going to follow certain pathways and pool in certain areas, engage in certain patterns, etc. and these organize into various systems and subsystems of which the chakras are major nodes.

I know of aliens putting etheric implants into a chakra to put a cap on it, for example. It stands to reason that if the chakras themselves are enslavement tools, then aliens wouldn’t need to put something external onto it to keep it from functioning. And why would they create a heart, crown, or third eye chakra anyway that would allow humans to tap into wisdom and knowledge and perceptions that could undermine the control system? They should have only created the lower chakras in that case. It seems to me the higher chakras bother them, threaten them, and they do what they can to shut those down. That’s why I don’t think chakras are completely a negative control system.

» Given your research of mankind, this planet and to some extent even the universe, have you formed a personal philosophy of life by which to live or embraced a particular path, dogma or avenue of study which you’re convinced is true?

The closest published source would be the Law of One material, particularly regarding what it means to be “Service to Others” and being a so-called “Wanderer.”

But there are others that come close, and differ from the above only in that they come from an older time period where certain terms, concepts, and memes didn’t yet exist. These are Rosicrucianism, Hermeticism, Gnosticism, and New Thought/early Christian Science (which is just a 20th century Christian-based version of Hermetic/Rosicrucian knowledge).

Also to some extent Buddhism, but I don’t agree with dissolution of individuality being the penultimate goal; I think individuality should be cultivated and turned into an effective “knight” that can serve his Lord/Lady (which is the heart or spirit or higher self or divine impulse).

The basic principles summarized:

• Thoughts have consequences even if not acted upon; do not harm or violate innocent people with your thoughts and feelings.
• Thoughts and feelings affect reality cumulatively, so if you want peace, harmony, and prosperity in your life then don’t emotionally obsess about doom, hatred, despair, etc.
• People are dual beings with a higher and lower aspect; focus on serving their higher aspect and help it become wiser, stronger, more secure; don’t feed into their lower aspect. Same goes for yourself.
• Violating other people’s freewill incurs self-imposed karma if your learning path is of a positive polarity; remember that their freewill has to do with their higher aspect, not their lower wants or dislikes.
• Your own self-awareness is present within others as their self-awareness, it’s a different instance of the same absolute Mind; be mindful of this unity behind all life.
• The higher aspect of a person has a higher heart and higher mind; lower aspect has a lower mind and lower seat of emotions; don’t confuse higher with lower, but distinguish between them.
• Higher mind is gnosis, intuition, revelation, divine reason. Higher heart is compassion, empathy, love, humility, courage, and chivalry. Make the lower mind (intellect) and lower emotions subservient to these.
• Train your mind (both lower and higher) by regular contemplation of mysteries, paradoxes, things you’ve seen/read/heard, your life situation, new ideas, etc. especially with a notebook or journal or sketchbook.
• Truth isn’t relative or subjective, there is a definite framework truth that can be discovered through experience, observation, experimentation, reason, and intuitive revelation.
• Ethics isn’t relative or subjective, there is a divine framework of right and wrong of which our human ethics and morals are but a crude approximation.
• Train your heart/emotions by meditating before stepping out of bed on positive ideals such as gratitude, enthusiasm, optimism, love, camaraderie, compassion, and so on.
• Life has a certain flow or curriculum or boundary; when you step too far outside that, you are on your own and things can get rough. There is safety, efficiency, and success when you walk the line of destiny.
• Don’t sacrifice yourself for others to the point where you impair your long term ability to help others by being run down, sick, tired, disgruntled, etc. Rather maintain balance between caring for self and others.
• If you can help it, don’t follow leaders who are less capable than yourself, or take on obligations if your heart’s not in it.
• Life is short, the body is temporary; how you live is more important than how you die.

There’s more but these come to mind at the moment.

» If the negative ET’s have the ability go move around in our timeline and change things/events, how can we possibly ever come out ahead as they can (apparently) always go back prior to the incident that “woke the human race up” and make sure it didn’t occur. It seems to me like it’s a no win situation for mankind.

There are a couple things that put a silver lining on this cloud:

1) That there seem to be other aliens or perhaps angels that can make counter-moves on the
timeline. For example, if an alien tries to go “back” and cause a driver to swerve into your lane and kill you, some positive force might go “back” and insert a thought into your mind to slow down (for no reason you can discern yet) and you do and then the other driver crosses in front of you into a ditch without hitting you.

2) That the negative aliens don’t have 100% freedom in time travel and what they can change. There are rules to time travel, and I think they have to do with quantum physics and metaphysical/occult laws.

3) If a time war is happening, then the past we remember is the “final” past. That means at some point, the buck stops and the past remains as you currently remember it. Sure it could change tomorrow, but the fact that you keep perceiving a forward movement in time with a steadily passing past, shows that the time war isn’t an infinite thing, and you’re making steady progress into the future despite it all.

4) You still have some level of freewill, spirit, and hence uncontrollability and unpredictability. That means even if aliens could see into the future, they can only see probable versions of you. In my life, they act as if they can only influence probabilities and try to influence me, but not stop me cold by say dropping an airplane engine on my head. I’ve had premonition dreams of their upcoming attempts, and by becoming aware of it I’m able to sidestep their attempts. If I’m getting feedback from the future and act accordingly, then I’m changing the future, and contradicting whatever it is they originally expected I would do. This shows me that I myself have some power; it’s not much, but it’s something.

Also, I keep reading from various authors that it’s necessary to see through the “deception” and become more spiritually aware. I am all for that, but how does it help? If you can see what’s going on for what it really is, what can be done about it?

The world at large cannot be changed, I don’t think. One reason is that there are too many naive, stupid, or ignorant people (in the technical sense of those terms, not derogatory) who need, want, and sustain the negative control system.

However, what you can do is protect yourself from it as much as possible, and help others who are receptive do likewise. It’s not about saving the world, but saving yourself and a few others from the world and its inevitable demise. At least that’s how I see it. Quality over quantity.

You can make more informed choices. If you know how the financial system works, maybe you won’t be so eager to sign up for that 401k or whatever. Maybe you won’t be drinking Coke all the time, or chowing down on GMO corn. Maybe you won’t vote for the next Bush or Obama, let alone campaign for them like a chump.

Maybe you’ll see things coming because you have your eyes open, and will take the exit door onto a safer pathway while the herd stampedes onwards toward the cliff.

Maybe if aliens show up and show us with gifts of technology, you’ll recognize the disinformation tactics and know they’re not the good guys, and you won’t get the cool brain-enhancing chip they’re giving away.

Maybe someone who’s on the cusp of awakening gets into a conversation with you, and you have a
hard drive full of videos or eBooks you could transfer, etc.

Overall it’s about making yourself more prescient, helpful, agile, and prepared. Preparation is what happens in between action. Action moments are few and far between, and the “what can I even do right now?” sentiment can get irritating and exasperating if you don’t realize that living, being, and preparing are important, for they make you enjoy what you’re doing and make you more capable of acting when the opportunity arises. Think of it like being a fireman; lots of sitting around playing cards and sleeping and training… until the alarm rings.

It’s also easier to push what’s already falling… right now the status quo is trembling but still on all its four legs. You can’t really push it over. But when it stumbles, you can then guide the direction it falls. Times of chaos, when people look to you since you’re prepared and have strength and therefore can offer guidance, is when you can nudge things way more easily and efficiently than you can right now. You can’t right now tell the average person how to distinguish between good and evil aliens if they don’t even believe in aliens, due to Obama not having gotten on TV and announced it (that’s about the only proof they’ll take, short of ships hovering over major cities). But if such an event happens, suddenly they’ll be freaking out and look to you for any tips (or worst case, with xenophobic paranoia since you might be “one of them” — must watch out for that too).

We need to empower ourselves and eventually network together and support each other so that like ants forming a raft we can stay afloat while the world collapses under its own weight, then we can nudge the outcome and rebuild things the right way.

» I have been quite duped. My own desires and the aliens’ promise of the fulfillment of those desires has enticed me to continue much like the carrot and the donkey. The beginning was quite dramatic and beautiful, and then turned into something other. In truth, they simply used me, drew upon my energy and life force and manipulated and lied to me. I feel often a fool and should have known better, but alas, I didn’t act upon all the red flags that I saw. I have ceased believing in much of anything spiritual… I simply can’t trust anything.

This is a good time then to discover what is genuinely spiritual versus what is not. You still have your own sentience, volition, consciousness, self-awareness… and a portion of that contains the seed of hope, triumph, will to overcome. It’s something you already have, the trick is to not allow that “something” to be abandoned, forgotten, or given up on solely because a relatively external thing such as a higher self cannot currently be reached. In other words, you may come to full realization and practice regarding the power of self-reliance and sovereignty and being “above” this whole mess. It may come with a bit of a feeling of humor, relief, a flippant indifference toward these entities, and a renewed focus on your life/future and what you want to do with your life and thoughts and energies.

See, part of the problem is that yes these entities exist, and yes being aware of such phenomena is good, however beneath a certain threshold of spiritual strength and balance this can turn into a kind of exasperation, desperation, exhaustion, and constant preoccupation that in itself feeds and sustains their connection to you. Now, depending on how deeply you perceive them, there may be some psychic activity going on with you; these entities interact with those who can perceive them, that’s why they don’t bother doing this stuff to people whose chakras are closed off because it would be like making funny faces at a blind man. Therefore I sense that you may need this kind of grounding,
which is the opposite of visualizing energy balls within you and other practices that actually stimulate your psychic circuitry and output energy that attracts these entities like moths to flame.

So since you’re in an emergency situation, I recommend doing a month’s work of grounding yourself, entering the kind of mindset of the average person who doesn’t have or believe in paranormal phenomena, who finds joy in regular things like nature or movies or cafes or tangible things, and who doesn’t think about or acknowledge or care about “entities” — it’s a kind of anathema or excommunication you’ll be doing on the entities. To give them the silent treatment, or rater, to erase them as much as you can from your daily thoughts and focus, to displace them in your mind and life with other stuff.

Now, this seems like a form of ignorance and materialism. But it’s one of the few times that ignorance has an actual use, which is to weaken that which derives its power from your continued belief and preoccupation with it.

I say that because I used to get paranormal stuff and it was a very fearful and desperate time in my life. But after I did some things to create a feeling of safety and relief (at the time I had issues with microwave energy beams coming through the windows, so I put up foil-lined Mylar sheets to block it, which incidentally blocked visibility of the outside which was the source of my fear due to entities lurking out there) then most of the paranormal activity went away, due to my feeling of safety and relief and getting on with my life. I broke the feedback loop. Life became more grounded and “real” instead of some twilight zone nightmare.

Anyway, flipping that inner switch from victimhood to indomitable power and nonchalance is worth a shot. I’m thinking perhaps at some higher level you’ve placed yourself in this situation as a test, as a crucible to forge a new spiritual strength within you, and that the true higher forces are withholding their help so that you develop this. What “this” is, exactly, is freewill. Pure freewill. To choose IN SPITE OF current and past circumstances. To set your sights on how you’d like things to be, on happiness and relief, and to WILL it, to put your foot down and MAKE IT SO because you know you can, must, and shall. That’s what I’m talking about; I think sometimes our efforts to solve a problem is done while holding certain root assumptions that actually validate and reinforce and sustain the problem. It’s in turning around those root assumptions (which is flipping that switch) where the key resides.

» I used to always worry and wonder what is the point of reincarnation if you forget everything and have to start over each time. I tried to find the answer but never could.

About reincarnation and forgetting, what we go through in life should ideally change our being at the core. It changes our nature, our intrinsic wisdom and how we react or act regarding situations and choices we face. These changes occur at the soul/spirit level and are innate, subconscious. They are not just what we have learned, but what we have become.

And these “dents” or “augmentations” are relatively permanent, in the sense that they survive death and are still inside you when reborn. Thus you may not remember at a conscious level the events that lead to a particular lesson or change of being in the past life, but the lesson/change is still there at a spiritual-instinctive level.

Some things in life we just know better than to engage in, some choices we don’t make because at
the core we just don’t stand for it, meanwhile another person waltzes right into it like they’ve never
gone through that or seen its consequences (meaning they haven’t been dented by that experience).
There’s a reason why some of us have insight and standards that others don’t, that weren’t
necessarily taught to us in this life. It’s because these standards are part of our being, probably from
having learned the hard way another life.

See, the true test of whether a person is kind, is whether he/she is kind out of the goodness of
his/her heart. That means, doing it as an expression of his/her being, not out of intellectual memory
that “ok last time I was nice to someone, then life was nice to me, so now I’ll be nice to this person
because I can’t wait to have life do something nice to me in return.” Or similarly, “Someone up
there is watching me, so I’ll be nice because I don’t want to get punished by them.” Those are
examples of cheating or insincerity, or at least not true tests. To not know you’re being tested, is the
true test. Likewise, to act differently than how you did before, despite not remembering the former
event, shows that your very core of expression has changed, and that is the true test therefore, and
why I think amnesia works.

However – if you are here on a mission, and not just here for your own soul growth, then
remembering may be important. Also, most people can’t handle even just 70 years worth of life
before becoming crabby bastards bitter and jaded; if they went through 700 years I can’t imagine
how grim and cranky they would be by then. For them, a fresh start helps.

But if someone has the ability to withstand time and not become bitter and withered at the spiritual
level, then in theory he/she should be able to handle past life memories without being incapacitated
by their cruelty and suffering and loss. It’s hard enough losing a relative or loved one, and to
remember the dozens upon dozens is a bit much. But if you can handle that, and if you have a
mission, then I think past life memories are deserved and may come naturally. I think that’s what
true esoteric initiation in the old mystery schools was meant to give, a means of making you
stronger and being able to withstand all that, so that you can retrieve your memories and achieve
true confidence in your purpose here.

» I would like to know who are the planetary helpers, just some overviews. I’ve read the Ra
Material and got curious what is the capability of the
beings that help the 6th density beings in the so-called Harvest.

Well it’s 4th, 5th, and 6th density STO beings and 3rd density people like ourselves who may
actually be some of these higher STO beings incarnated into human form. As humans we help out in
what ways we can, according to ability and circumstance, basically just being a positive rather than
negative influence on those around us and on society in general. Doesn’t need to be anything big
and epic, as anything helps even if it’s only to one other person.

The 4D STO beings are mostly certain humanoid alien types, some of them people call Nordics or
Pleiadeans but not all who look like that are positive, same way not all who are Asian or White
among us are positive.

These types seem to scan the population for kids who have unusual intelligence, spiritual, psychic,
or intellectual abilities who can be trained to become helpers in some way. Some of those kids
might be those 4D/5D/6D STO beings in human form, not always knowing their origins due to
amnesia that comes with having human wetware (brain and body).
I don’t think there are any STO Grays, because they are robots with the sentience of geckos and might only at best be used as worker drones by positive alien groups to help with initiating contacts but I think most reports of Grays are actually negative types pretending to be positive, and that includes staged abductions by black ops military to cover up the true nature of the alien presence. There might be some positive Gray hybrids, but only because they have a spirit that has overcome the Gray genetic influence that tends to make a race be extremely Asperger or autistic, which isn’t healthy.

5D STO are nonphysical beings like spirit guides, and perhaps there are some discarnate (3D or 4D beings without bodies because they aren’t incarnate) ones as well. Though many people who can talk to spirit guides who tell such people to do things, are actually talking to deceiver entities. I think the real STO ones stay in the background and don’t interfere to the same degree, and only help in subtle ways like guiding dreams of giving hints to the subconscious.

6D STO are like angelic beings, oracles, entities outside of space-time altogether and are able to create positive synchronicities and seem to have fine level control over our reality. I think they can rewrite time if needed, but are wise enough to not do that regularly. They are the referees of reality. If they do intervene, it’s only under the most extraneous circumstances and then it’s an absolute, unstoppable, inarguable intervention. Problem is their foresight is extreme, patience just as extreme, and understanding even more so. Thus we can shake our fists all we want at them for not stopping Fido from getting run over by a car, but the fault lies with us being shortsighted rather than them being cruel.

There are also 3D/4D secret societies made of advanced positive humans, in counterbalance to the 3D/4D negative secret societies that are running the New World Order agenda. These are the true Rosicrucians, Illuminati, alchemists, hybrids, and so on. They are embedded in our population and have secret technology and knowledge that they use for good, but the reason why they don’t just snap their fingers and take down the NWO agenda is because it’s a delicate situation and there is a proper timing and sequence to everything that maximizes the metaphysical/karmic experience for humanity and so they act only in appropriate ways at appropriate times without cutting this “experiment” or “experience” short for everyone.

» Why do people get so angry at animal abuse when in contrast with human torture?

Animals are more innocent than humans. Not all animals. When we hear a story about a shark that was killed after it attacked a boy, people are glad to hear that. I think animals and plants already show archetypal reflections of the STO and STS principle. Sure, it manifests in a rudimentary prey vs predator form there, whereas for us it’s not just predator vs prey since STO goes beyond that false dichotomy. Still, there are animals, plants, and fungi that feed on death, decay, disease, etc. and that’s the very first stirring of the STS archetype.

Anyway, that said, most animals aren’t intelligent or have enough ego in order to be sadistic. (Though cats do torture game, dolphins can as well, and so on, and I should mention that even among cats and dolphins there are more positive and more negative dispositions among them. That’s because at those advanced stages of the animal kingdom, individuality is already beginning to manifest on a per-animal basis. They can even have more sentience than spiritless humans).

My point is that when it comes to good animals, they don’t have a mean bone in their body. And so
when they get harmed, it’s pretty obvious they are the victim. They don’t have karma, so they don’t
deserve what happens to them. It happens solely because they are too weak and perhaps at the
wrong place and wrong time. Therefore we can’t help but feel sorry and protective regarding them.

When it’s a human, there is some ambiguity there. Did the person do something to bring it on… did
they have a karmic reason for it… was she a nice person or a mean person… See, it’s a well known
phenomenon that when an unattractive ethnic woman gets raped and killed, her picture may be in
the news but people forget it quickly. If it’s a young, pretty, white girl then suddenly it makes the
national news and everyone feels it’s so tragic and what a shame she had to suffer, etc. That is
because they perceive it as the defiling of something healthy, innocent, cute — just like when it
comes to cute animals getting abused. People get more outraged at a puppy getting kicked versus a
large German shepherd. Same thing.

Biologically, it appeals to our in-built desire to protect babies. Babies are cute. Animals that have
baby-like features in the face (neoteny) are considered cute. When babies get harmed, we get
extremely pissed. Though we also get pissed when we see, say, an elderly frail woman getting
pushed over and kicked by some punks. So it all comes back to violation of the helpless (whether
they are babies or little animals or elderly) touching something within us. There is less ambiguity in
those situations, and an underlying assumption of innocence and vulnerability.

So altogether, I think it’s a combination of biological instinct to look out for our young, combined
with a metaphysical knowing that animals are not capable of evil like we are therefore they have an
innocence and purity that is similar to that of a baby. Though “vulnerability” itself can then start
including the frail elderly or pretty cute faces in the news as well.

» Can an alien who genuinely feels love for a human still be considered Service-to-Self if the aliens
force themselves into the lives of the humans they feel affection for and disregard the fact that the
human in question might be overwhelmed by it?

That’s a good question. If you look at the spectrum from extreme negative on the bottom to extreme
positive on top, then near the middle you have negative-neutral aliens and positive-neutral aliens.

The positive-neutral ones are positive but they’re not THAT wise and experienced, so they might be
idealistic or naïve and therefore do “positive” things that end up being mistakes, sort of like PETA
letting ferrets loose from a farm only for them to get crushed by cars on a nearby highway. There
was a love and concern but it was shortsighted.

Meanwhile the negative-neutral ones might be negative but not super experienced or cunning either.
Think about gang members, mafia groups, or the Nazis/Communists and how within their
respective groups they loved each other and would “help a brother out” — so there’s love there too,
but as a whole they were predatory. The Nazis had dogs (German shepherds) whom they loved. So
they loved animals too. They would help an Aryan granny cross the street. But overall they were
screwed up paradigms. Their love for their dogs was a bit twisted the same way a man might “love”
his handgun or rifle. He loves the power it gives him, what he can do with it to intimidate others or
patch his insecurity and paranoia. Or think of a narcissistic girl who loves having her “friend” with
her solely as a energy source to feed off of, to make herself look better in the company of others.
She likes her friend as an accessory, not a person. So that’s the kind of affection these neutral-
positive beings tend to have. Anytime you overlook the spirit-based individuality of someone and
love them for something you affiliate them with, it’s not true love but a selfish delusion.

The extreme negative aliens have love strictly for themselves, so it's more pure form of selfishness or darkness and being at the top of the food chain they have no “brothers” to love or work with, only “underlings” to use as tools and command around. So there’s very little “other-love” there.

The extreme positives are wise and experienced and that, unfortunately, is why they are so hands-off with everything because they can see the long term picture and know that short term gains might be outweighed by long term damage. We want immediate intervention, not knowing the metaphysical context or long term imbalances that could result. But I think these beings know what they’re doing, and they leave it up to the lower positive martyr-like beings to play the heroes and learn their lessons from that.

» May I ask why you feel that lucid dreaming is safer than astral projection? I understand the analogy, but they are both ultimately a mental projection, aren’t they?

From what I understand, the difference comes down to the proximity to the physical body and physical realm. Physicality is a bit like a turtle shell, and going out of shell creates certain vulnerabilities.

In lucid dreaming, a portion of the subtle body naturally detaches as it always does during sleep and hovers very close to the physical. And in that state, it then experiences an internal projection of the dream environment. I guess it’s like stepping onto the roof of your house to get a better neighborhood Wi-Fi signal to browse the internet with.

When I was lucid dreaming and then focused on my own self-awareness, I woke up into my astral body which was partially detached already. It wasn’t just changing dream states, but an actual awakening or exiting from the dream, just as if I had awakened into my physical body at the end of a sleep cycle. So I was in the room, but not in my body, though very close to it. At that point, I could employ the standard projection techniques, in this case swinging or rolling out, and I experienced the extreme tug, sluggishness, or gravity that people describe which lessens the further one gets away from one’s body. Also the loud noise, wind, and acceleration at times.

So this tells me that was a somewhat tangible experience rather than solely just a mental projection as a dream environment might be. I really was in some portion of my soul that was gaining distance from the physical body, and I could move around the bedroom with it. If I had been unable to get back into the physical body, it probably would have died in its sleep.

Someone I know did something stupid once. If I remember correctly, he called out to the shadow people and challenged them, saying he would fight them and kick their ass. Well, not long after, he and his girlfriend went to bed and that’s when the shadow beings came. He woke up to them pulling him out of body and dragging him away. He fought as hard as he could. Meanwhile, they were also dragging his girlfriend away but she was able to fight them off more easily and woke up. She tried waking him but he wasn’t responding, while from his perspective he was being pulled out the bedroom door by these beings at that time. After struggling some more, he broke free and returned to his body and finally woke up gasping. So lesson learned. His experience matched what his girlfriend experienced.

In a lucid dream, we can have all sorts of nightmares but not die from it or risk not waking up
because it’s just an internal mental projection formed by the subconscious mind or soul turning archetypes and various psychic energies coming in, into 5-sense constructs. What happens during the astral state is similar in that the mind turns energy patterns and psychic data into 5-sense constructs, except those patterns are really external and occurring there in the environment. Thus if your soul is being pulled away, it’s being pulled away for real in that case.

I’ve known others who did a lot of astral projection and the effects reminded me of what happens to heavy LSD users, in that a part of them seems to get lost, and worse, something else takes its place. I can imagine it being like a cookie being repeatedly taken in and out of a jar, the crumbs come off every time and eventually it’s only half the cookie. Also, I think the willful intent to project far and wide, versus just the nightly thing where one remains close to the physical, can loosen up the bonds between soul and body a tad too much and like Velcro wearing out it just doesn’t stick well anymore, and so the person isn’t as grounded. And with a loosening of bonds, I think other entities have an easier time manipulating the person too.

So for all these reasons, I would say lucid dreaming is safer than astral projection. I suspect it’s possible within a lucid dream to psychically tap into an actual astral realm and experience without actually leaving your physical body too much, versus the typical astral projection state where you fly out and away. Like drugs, astral projection is all right a few times but heavy chronic use may have the above-mentioned side effects. Also, it depends on how targeted one is by negative forces, as to what the risks are. I myself wouldn’t do it because these forces are circling me 24/7 and I have to be careful about my defenses.

» Like you I apply scientific theory to everything, and I just can’t find a shred of supportive evidence for these things in the “real” world. How do I make the connection?

The flaw may be in our definitions of “evidence”. Scientific proof is that which can be shared/transferred to anyone, and/or which can be replicated and independently verified by anyone. The problem is with the term “anyone” because it assumes the phenomena has absolutely no dependence on the “whom” of this equation. We already know from quantum physics that the observer plays a role in the outcome of an experiment, and presumably a different observer would produce a different outcome. But before the advent of quantum physics in the 1920s, science assumed matter is all there is, and that it behaved predictably like a machine. Therefore, they figured the observer had no role, and must be kept out of the equation. Thus they established the concept of “scientific proof” where it didn’t matter who did the experiment; everyone should get the same results if they apply the same experimental methods.

This is 1800s science, and oddly enough skeptics nowadays are still using 1800s scientific thinking when already by the 1920s it was proven that the world is not a machine independent of the observer. So in a way, those who consider themselves “scientists” and “rational” are being irrational in holding onto outdated scientific assumptions. It’s been a hundred years since quantum physics and all they can do regarding that is shrug their shoulders and say “stuff is random and we can only examine it probabilistically, and we won’t get into the question of the conscious observer since our job is only to get results in experiments and not question the whys, because the whys are left up to the philosophers.”

So if you were to scale quantum physics up to the macro everyday human level, what you get is a
collection of observers (all of us) each influencing the manner in which the wave function of existence becomes the history/timeline that we see before our eyes. Each of us affects what experiences we pull toward ourselves. And so the quality of our consciousness, the metaphysical things that affect what we pull in probabilistically (destiny, karma, all that stuff) plays a role in whether or not we can even access certain types of objective phenomena.

See, there’s a flaw in thinking that things are either subjective or objective. Subjective means it’s all in our heads and doesn’t affect reality, objective means it’s completely real and has nothing to do with what’s in our heads. But what if what’s in our heads determines whether or not we can access a certain corner of objective reality? Then it goes beyond both, and I’ve had to call it transjective as in transcendentally objective.

The point is that some proof can only be accessed by some people, and cannot always be transferred between people. It can be as simple as a dream I had this morning, which I cannot transfer and prove to you it took place. To me, I have 100% proof for myself that it occurred, to you there is 0% proof beyond your trust in my word. Dreams are somewhat subjective though, but then consider say aliens or ghosts or angels or demons or whatever who are real and independent beings, however their realm only intersects yours if you are “tuned” to them in some way. If your consciousness/soul is “broadcasting” on their frequency in some way, you will experience them objectively. But if not, then you won’t.

So that’s one complication, that our own soul/consciousness plays a role in whether we intersect and thus can experience a particular phenomenon.

The other complication is that with aliens we are dealing with intelligent beings who, based on available data, have the capability of 1) seeing into the probable futures with varying degrees of clarity, and 2) time traveling to a limited extent. In the first case, they can tell whether they will leave behind an item of evidence and whom it would reach, and what the impact of that would be. If they don’t like that, they can avoid leaving that piece in the first place. Thus they are far less prone to accidents than we are. In the second case, they can travel in time and reverse a mistake on their part, so likewise they wouldn’t make such glaring accidents as to leave clear evidence behind. This means they only leave behind as much evidence as they want to whom they want. Therefore they can keep a very tight leash on how much proof of their existence is circulating around.

I’ll give you an example. Years ago at a bookshop I met a guy and his girlfriend and we got talking about the alien subject; he told me how his brother on the West coast is an abductee who has had some harrowing experiences with them. He was dead serious when he said his brother was able to film the onset of an abduction, how he was in the alley behind his building filming one night when they arrived and knocked him unconscious but the camera kept rolling after it fell to the ground. The video showed them walking towards him and the camera and you could see their feet only. The guy said he saw that video and several others and was blown away by it. So I said, wow this is amazing have you thought about putting it on YouTube? And he said that they and his brother didn’t want the publicity so they wanted to keep it quiet. So I said we should get together because I’d like to see it then myself. He said sure, but was in a hurry and had to leave. He knew who I was through my books and I asked him to email me. Guess what, I never heard from him again.

So an item of proof that could have really shocked people slipped away just like that. So casually,
“didn’t want the publicity.” And that’s how this stuff stays under wraps, not with MIBs threatening people at gunpoint, but a mere shrug and “meh, it’s too much trouble” and that’s the end of that. It takes almost nothing for an alien to drop that suggestion into someone’s head to not share something, if the person thinks it’s his own thoughts. And this can be done all over the world, easily, and so once again we have a dEarth of true proof.

The difference between “no proof due to it all being fake” and “no proof due to quantum and alien precognitive censorship” is that the latter still has 100% personal proof for those experiencing it, of which I am one. So where does that leave people like you who don’t? As I mentioned above, you’d have to make up for it by exploring all the anecdotal evidence, sorting through it, and coming to a probabilistic assessment of what to believe. That which makes the most sense, fits the pattern, and is validated by further research and new events, is good enough to keep as a working hypothesis until the need arises to modify and improve it.

So really, it’s all about research and reading between the lines. Analyzing motives of the witnesses, their sanity/intelligence, and not always taking what they say at face value since they are just reporting their interpretation of what happened (what they were shown) and not always what actually transpired. The latter can be deduced by comparing multiple cases and sleuthing out the underlying agenda, just how detectives work in solving cases. A detective case is never as simple as “Oh here’s a video of the guy doing the crime” — sometimes it’s lots of circumstantial evidence that builds up enough to get a conviction.

I agree that on the internet, especially, there are a lot of deluded, truly schizophrenic, or attention seeking hoaxers and victims of government psyops that stage fake alien abductions and all that stuff, but amidst the noise is a signal. Or rather, sometimes the signal is what the noise avoids. Sometimes it’s not about what is shown to us (the cases being published in books and newspapers) but what is being ignored, suppressed, avoided (such as the issue of how to distinguish between positive aliens and impostor positive aliens). There are, however, abduction forums, books, videos that can be used. Cases to study, I mean.

So you ask, why does this stuff only happen to people who are powerless to bring it to public attention? That’s pretty much been answered: because aliens know the impact of the evidence they leave behind, and ensure that the only evidence that gets out is that which either doesn’t change anything, or changes it when and how they want it to. The latter is exemplified by them turning on their damn headlights when they fly around at night. Why do they need to do that? They could just fly in the dark. But no, they are actively marketing themselves, slowly and gently, through proof that has a certain level of plausible deniability so that it reaches those who want to believe but is dismissed by those who don’t.

» Would I be correct in my assertion, that you write more for people who have awakened to the 3D manipulation, but have yet to see and grasp the 4D(spiritual/metaphysical/alien) manipulation?

Yes. I write to fulfill a need, and there are many books and websites out there covering the 3D conspiracy. You know, the 9/11 cover-up, Bilderbergers, Illuminati, even the government UFO cover-up. Those fields are saturated with material.
Also they only address the enemy outside the gates, not inside the gates. Inside we have the 4D manipulation of our own minds and souls. If we lose the battle there, then the external war is already lost.

This happens to people who study so much 3D conspiracy that they end up falling for a 4D agenda; for instance, getting so cynical, pessimistic, and angry about human elites running the planet, that they become dead and bitter inside. Nasty angry people. Spiritually they have succumbed, even if externally they are still fighting against the 9/11 cover-up for instance. They have no balance, and they are striking at the branches instead of the roots. They are guarding the front door while the back door is wide open.

In fact, there are disinformation agents who very openly discuss the 3D conspiracy, but grow rabid and manipulative when you mention either/both the alien and spiritual/hyper-dimensional aspect to the conspiracy. It’s because that’s where the real manipulators are, and where the real solutions are to be found.

So you see, the trap is for people to either fall for negative awareness or ignorant positivity. The latter is those New Age-oriented types who have no concerns for the problems of the world and try to ignore it, in order to focus solely on improving their selves and lives but in a superficial and ego-based way. They actually don’t care to help others, but want to use reality creation methods to manifest millions for themselves for fame and fortune.

Which is why, on my site, I recommend positive awareness. To see truth from a higher context, instead of ignoring what is uncomfortable to hear, or instead of focusing only on the uncomfortable and succumbing to emotional suicide from the higher lack of perspective that could balance it out. Those who focus only on the 3D conspiracy, or who choose ignorant bliss, are in the pockets of the 4D manipulators, and they don’t get real interference, only superficial interference meant to make them think they’re on the right track. It’s when you ARE actually on the right track, that you get covert interference meant to make you doubt yourself or stray onto a wrong line of research. Which is what I have to watch out for constantly.

» I was just wondering what you believed about spirit guides?

In a lucid dream I asked that all souled beings here reveal themselves to me. And a blue van drove up, door slid open, and inside were six people of varying races and ages and professions. After discussing with them, they said they were my helpers. Each had a set of specialties. Like one guy was military looking and specialized in psychic combat and self-defense. Another guy was into humor and physics. There were two women, one asked me to describe how she looked, and after remarking that she looked Asian, she looked amused and commented to her friend that it’s curious how she often comes across as Asian. Meaning that’s not her true form, just how my mind read her energy signature.

I do think we have at least one helper or spirit guide. More of an angelic being though, that we have by default looking out for us, even though humans tend to ignore their intuitive nudges and frustrate them to no end. The Higher Self is one such guide, the most important of all. There are also alien types/hyper-dimensional beings, say ones whom you were part of before becoming human, and now your buddies back in hyper-d land check in on you.
To a small degree deceased humans can also be spirit guides. Only problem there, is that too many such cases are astral impostors and predators/parasites. Or just plain old human entity attachments, where they get stuck on you after dying and refuse to leave you, because they don’t know how to enter the light or else enjoy still being human. I know people with “spirit guides” who are dependent on them, and the “spirit guides” tell them everything to do, down to the smallest detail, and run them ragged like mice in some cruel science experiment. So watch out, some people who are big into spirit guides are actually riddled with astral parasites. You can tell by what the spirit guides say and instruct. Real spirit guides can offer profound, concise, and true guidance. Fake ones just toss you something trite and possibly incorrect, like a con-artist might.

I don’t mention spirit guides much on my site because it’s risky becoming preoccupied with the idea you have a team of characters always around you, and that’s it’s safer only believing and trying to contact the Higher Self because that’s the big and reliable one. Even if you do have a team, they ought to reveal themselves to you and become obvious if needed. I mean, they can give you just as much info through dreams, and when you contemplate stuff and get ideas, without you having to face-to-face converse with them. It’s more innocent that way, I mean less egotistical when you get help without you knowing it. Because once you know it, then things might get a bit weird between you and them. That’s just how I see it though.

Do you accept Jesus Christ as your Savior?

I view Jesus and Christ as two separate beings, the first human-born, the second nonphysical and divine, who became as one during the ministry of Jesus Christ. By acting through Jesus as a vessel, truth and light was injected into the timeline. The Christ mission was incomplete and has yet to be fulfilled as evidenced by the state of the world. I define Christ as an intelligence projected by the Creator toward the restoration of the corrupted timeline back/forward to the Golden Age. Also I consider only the “Q” document and the Gospel of Thomas to be reliable texts of what the historical Jesus Christ actually taught.

So to answer your question, not Jesus himself, just Christ the divine projection of the Logos, sent to guide humanity back to the so-called Kingdom/Garden, which I interpret to be a higher positive realm of existence, aka 4D STO Realm (although the Garden was technically our former 3D STO realm, so we’re not retrogressing to Adam & Eve naïveté again, but rather moving forward toward congruence with the Elohim in a 4D STO realm).

So I see Christ more as universal initiator than personal savior. Christ has nothing to do with religion, as the latter is a human dogmatization and corruption of universal spiritual truths and principles.

John 10:34-35: “We are not stoning you for any of these,” replied the Jews, “but for blasphemy, because you, a mere man, claim to be God.” Jesus answered them, “Is it not written in your Law, ‘I have said you are gods?’”

John 14:12: “I tell you the truth, anyone who has faith in me will do what I have been doing. He will do even greater things than these, because I am going to the Father.”

If we take these quotes as valid, then they show that Jesus was an exemplar of what is possible for a human, that what happened to him and what he did, can happen to us and we can do. How? By
becoming pure living expressions of the Christ intelligence. Only then are “we as gods” and can we “do what I have been doing… even greater things.”

Thus to elevate Jesus the man, the personality that walked Earth two millennia ago, to so high and unique a status that he becomes an idol and we become but unworthy worshippers, is to go against the very mission and words of Jesus Christ because it keeps us down on our knees instead of rising up and meeting his example. Jesus pointed at the Truth, and people worship his finger. We must walk in his footsteps in order rise shoulder to shoulder with him.

I think what separates Jesus from other people is that, the soul/spirit that was born as Jesus the human, was nonetheless among the wisest, oldest, and most advanced spirits/souls in history. That’s what it takes to become a vessel for the Christ at so early in history and have an impact so large. Buddha and the other avatars likewise.

But now, since it is the end times, the same will be possible for many to achieve within a short time, to become expressions of Christ. Only by the latter, which I interpret to be the Second Coming, can we defeat the Anti-Christ forces and merge Earth with the Kingdom. Jesus Christ the guy in a robe with beard is not descending from the skies to save us all, rather it’s a global and widespread phenomenon that will allow humanity to save itself through the awakening of Christ in many — thus the son of man will come in “clouds” (read: multitudes) and thus Mark 13:21: “At that time if anyone says to you, ‘Look, here is the Christ!’ or, ‘Look, there he is!’ do not believe it.”

Anyway that’s my view. The modern mainstream conception of Jesus Christ, promulgated by the power hungry Church and politicians of the first centuries A.D. served to distort and quarantine the Christ mission to as non-universal a role as possible. A pathway meant for all fallen beings has been turned into an excuse for sectarianism and bloody crusades. I hope that Christ finally breaks free from the fetters of organized religion.

» (Question about why some turn Christian overnight and become very irrational and fanatical about it)

If someone buys mainstream religion hook line and sinker, then it’s because something has bypassed their logic and sinks its roots deep into the emotional, egotistical, and subconscious layers of the mind where it’s rationalized instead of analyzed. Meaning an emotional event that overwhelms them, some logical fallacy they fall for, or something that satisfies and ego need. For example:

- They pray to God for a miracle, get a miracle (which could be caused by anything), and not only think it’s proof of God, but proof that they should now memorize the Bible and become hardcore churchgoers. Even if it were God, that doesn’t mean they should become fanatical Christians.

- They have ego insecurities with need for approval. They find in Christianity both a reason to feel guilty about themselves (because they are sinners) and the solution (become a fanatical Christian to gain God’s favor and be forgiven).

- They are at their bottom point in life, pray to God for help, then get a synchronicity (like a phone call from a Christian friend) asking if they want to go to Church. They break down and think this is the answer, and then become fanatical Christians themselves.
They notice that people they respect, like professors or bosses or friends, are Christian and go to Church. They realize Christians aren’t as fanatical as they previously figured. But they ignore the fact that even smart people can split their minds and make some room for illogical religious beliefs. So they take after whom they respect, and join the Church.

They weigh the risks of not believing Christian truths (eternal damnation in hell) to risk of believing in Christian lies (just being an innocent fool) and feel it’s better not to risk eternal damnation, so they become Christians. But this is a logical fallacy, since you should not let imaginary risks influence you. What if another religion comes along and says “if you don’t believe in us, not only will you burn forever in hell, but so will all your loved ones” — now are you supposed to convert to that one just because the risk is even higher than that of Christianity?

They equate Christianity with the only way to be moral, ethical, and wise. As if being a non-Christian means you can only be a depraved maniac who stabs people in the back. Not so, because we have spirit/conscience within us that we feel when we hurt others, and that kind of understanding is more real than blindly following commands in some book.

They notice that all the nice people they know are Christians, and the depressed or negative people are not Christians, and being nice people themselves they think they have to join the Christians. This is seeing things in only black and white. If they themselves were nice, without being Christian already, then that shows you don’t need to join the Church to be nice. You just act on your heart. What they see just means they live in a narrow minded town where everyone happens to be either Christian and nice or not Christian and not nice. But that’s just that town.

The Bible answers some mystery or question for them, something they always wondered about, that mere school education did not answer for them. So they conclude there’s something to Christianity, and start studying the Bible. Their mistake is thinking a few answers means it has all the answers. There may be yet another non-Christian source that has even MORE answers than even the Bible, so why are they stopping at Christianity thinking that’s all there is to know?

They have a supernatural experience, a vision or a dream, in which they encounter Jesus. This emotional impact of this overpowers their reason, and they start rationalizing its reality instead of questioning whether it was just a dream or some form of deception. And even if it were Jesus, that still doesn’t mean they now have to swallow the whole Bible and join a Church, since the latter two are corrupted versus what Jesus actually taught.

All of these are examples of something bypassing their critical thinking ability. Usually either some form of authority, or an emotional impact. It leads to a betrayal of reason, intuition, and experience.

In contrast, some other Christians have an intelligent, independent, and illuminated perspective. They don’t blindly swallow dogma. Religion is like a reflecting pool: some can make out reflections of spiritual truths high above the plane of religion, others see no reflection and drown themselves in the pool.

» Considering that negative aliens use human beings for energy, do you think that more enlightened
humans become vegan so that they don’t exploit other life forms?

If people’s genetics/blood type/metabolism allow them to be vegans without ill health consequences, then definitely. I noticed that it’s fair-skinned and light-eyed people with A, B, or AB blood types that handle it well, and dark-haired brown-eyed people with O blood that handle it worst.

But if someone is not biologically suited for veganism and they suffer from malabsorption and malnutrition, fatigue, spacey headedness, etc. then their total ability to help other people spiritually will decline, and that has worse impact on the system as a whole, and therefore the future of mankind, than the cost of taking an animal’s life. That’s not an enlightened thing to do.

Some occult practices like advanced astral projection or deep trance meditations require a vegetarian diet at least in the days or weeks leading up to it. Usual explanation is that meat lowers your vibration and therefore you can’t pull these maneuvers with such lowered vibes. But that’s only a small part of it. Rather, it’s the same reason fasting is recommended — because the body must be made weak through starvation and malnutrition, so that the soul and spirit can more easily detach and do their thing. The stronger the body, the greater its “magnetic” pull on the soul.

Implying, therefore, that meat imparts bodily grounding and vitality — to a degree. Thus if you need to be “here” in reality, if you need to be grounded and sharp, and if you need to have physical energy and boldness, then depending on your biology you might need meat in the diet.

I don’t eat soy because of the estrogen mimickers it contains, beans contain too many indigestible substances that upset my digestive system, and I can’t handle lots of carbs either. Therefore I would not do well on a vegan diet with its few remaining options. Thus in my case, I choose to stick with a regular balanced diet because ultimately, it gives me the time, energy, clarity, grounding, and health stability that I need to think and work hard toward critical goals. I would be doing a disservice if I became listless and passive and mentally fogged on a vegan diet. Now if I retreated to a lifestyle of meditation and non-thinking and effeminate passivity, then the side-effects may not bother me as much.

If someone can do veganism or vegetarianism just fine, then they have no excuse for not eating lower on the food chain. But people who aren’t suited for veganism or vegetarianism become progressively impaired by it, and just like with alcohol their impairment keeps them from seeing just how impaired they are. So with mental faculties dwindling, they become increasingly shrill and illogical and cranky, not to mention pale and wan. It takes a lot of time and energy spent researching, shopping, preparing, and eating to stay healthy as a vegan.

What bothers me are 1) emotionally hysterical vegetarians who use their lifestyle as an excuse to justify a vicious contempt and egotism bordering on the demonic, and 2) self-absorbed meat eaters who have no regard for animals and gorge themselves way beyond dietary necessity, especially those who think animals aren’t conscious.

If you’re going to eat meat, be mindful and respectful, don’t support abusive farming, and make up for the loss of animal life by putting out an equal or greater amount of good into the world. Enlightened people would know what is best, and sometimes that means going vegan, and other times might mean including meat, depending on their biological needs.
Any thoughts on the place human positives refer to as “home”, where it is said that the dark humans are not allowed entry upon death, and where constant and vigorous research of every imaginable type is conducted before handing knowledge to Earth-dwelling humans?

Two things come to mind.

First is that it sounds to me like what some sources (the Cassiopaean Transcripts and Ra Material) call “fifth density.” More common name is the afterlife or spirit plane, but it’s that level of existence where spirits go in between physical incarnations. From what I understand, spirits that still incarnate into physical bodies go to this level temporarily without being native to that level, whereas higher beings who have moved beyond physicality live there natively. So the same level is home to both beings who are native to it, and those lower beings who only stop over temporarily before moving back into physical life again. That level has the akashic records, symbolically experienced by us as a library containing all experiences ever experienced and lessons learned. I visited it once in a lucid dream where I asked to meet my higher self.

In Robert Monroe’s books, he talks about some of the intermediate layers between ours and this spirit plane. Maybe it was him, or some other source, but one of those places was termed “summer land” because it was always summer time there with the sun always near sunset or twilight, very pleasant.

Second is that it might instead by positive “fourth density” which is like a higher, more malleable, but still tangible plane of existence just above or beyond our physical, but not one that is as high as the spirit plane. In that level, your personal soul frequency and spiritual orientation determines your residence within that level, like the realm that you occupy, and so dark humans would naturally not be able to vibrate high enough to enter it. Also, the beings there, many of them looking human like us but of a higher superhuman caliber, do tend to deliberate over what knowledge to carefully provide to us lower mortals. But positive fourth density blends smoothly into fifth density, so the two above are somewhat part of the same continuum.

I don’t know the exact name of the place though. There are also other planets where positive beings may originate from, planets where dark forces are banished or unable to find such places.

In terms of reality creation, what happened with the massive and (presumably) brutal extinction of the dinosaurs? Since they were animals with no higher, cognitive function, they must have been exempt from the concepts of attracting probabilities into manifest existence.

Reality is dual in that there are spiritual laws and physical laws. The lower the consciousness of something, the more it comes under the dominion of physical laws and less priority it takes within the spiritual realm of things.

Take a rock for instance, for the most part it’s entirely under the laws of physics and chemistry, in being crushed, dissolved, transformed, thrown, mined, and so on without being able to resist, and without anything intervening on its behalf. Whatever can happen to it, happens to it, because it’s very low consciousness.

Plants are next up. Things happen them as well… animal comes along and eats it, and its life is over, and it can’t even run. Might have evolved poisons and thorns, but that’s about it. So a forest fire can rage and wipe out thousands of square miles of trees, and there’s no higher divine beings
stepping in keeping it from happening because in the big scheme of things, the trees don’t matter much as individuals because they aren’t all that individual. It’s like the cutting of hair, which doesn’t destroy the person. Likewise, a forest burning down doesn’t kill off the group soul of the tree species. It’s an entire species getting wiped out that might matter, but one tree or another maybe not as much.

And so it is with animals. The higher the animal, the more it might matter. For instance, a pet seems to matter enough that certain ones get destined to be assigned to certain humans, especially good humans who give them care and raise their consciousness. Maybe those animals are on the brink of incarnating as humans and need that boost. The less individualized the animal, like say a worm or swarm of insects, the more physical things can happen to it without interference by spiritual beings.

As far as the dinosaurs go, it was probably a combination of both physical and spiritual circumstances. Spiritual because their death allowed for the rise of mammals, and mammals allowed for more diverse and successful building of individualized consciousness, as in humans. Since crocodiles are millions of years old and haven’t changed much at all, it’s possible that the reptilian lineage reached a dead end in terms of its potential. So in the big scheme of things, the comet impact was allowed because ultimately it serves a positive purpose in the long run. It’s not so much dinosaurs themselves attracting it consciously, as that kind of phenomenon only belongs to beings with individualized consciousness of a higher caliber since it’s a Creator-like trait of creating and manifesting. Rather it’s natural laws sending comets to Earth and there being no reason for higher beings to stop it.

Even in human civilizations, heavy disasters have happened with huge loss of life. Like 90% of the population getting wiped out. It’s those who survive, who either do so by luck of nature, or by destiny. Same with those who die, sometimes their life has run its course and they’d be better off checking out for now and coming back later in better conditions, or sometimes they live or die by natural circumstances because they themselves don’t matter much to spiritual stuff either due to being too low of consciousness, meaning their needs are too basic to require needing to stay in that body at that time.

» What does “soul death” for STS beings actually mean? I’m assuming that once they’re destroyed their energy is reconstituted by the Creator and used to make something else. Since, at least in theory, energy can neither be created or destroyed where do these dead beings go?

The only explanation of that, that I have seen, is in the Cassiopaeian Transcripts where it says that, in the final stage, they implode like a star collapsing in on itself and become the equivalent of black holes, metaphysically speaking, which translates to them being recycled as elementary matter. Meaning that matter is frozen consciousness, that which has the least freewill of all. Makes sense that if they keep losing freewill the deeper the go into STS, that the ultimate end of that would having no freewill at all, which is identically matter.

» What will happen if our hologram of existence succumbs to a negative, STS take over? Will the Creator simply reabsorb it into itself after learning what it’s like to have that experience or will it continue to explore what it’s like to be in the negative?

You mean if our entire universe comes under STS domination? I think it would result in loss for the Creator through the curtailing of potential. And for that reason, the Creator would do well to
intervene when and where necessary through divine servants, to make sure it never gets to that point. That doesn’t mean it won’t reach that point on this planet or that, just talking about the universe as a whole. So Earth matters enough, but not enough that the negative stuff has been curtailed from the very beginning. In fact, I think the Creator or whoever calls the shots, is a very good strategist in bringing a world to the brink, in order to maximize the experience and lessons learnt from the dark side, before putting them away.

But if Earth were to succumb fully, it would mean a very long time of darkness that spreads a bit like cancer through the local part of the galaxy, until some distant future time when the Divine has another chance to turn it all back. Because that chance exists, the Divine isn’t snuffing out the dark on Earth right now. Besides, to do so through direct intervention would violate freewill as well. The Creator seems to take more of a backseat approach, letting freewill on all sides do its thing until it gets to the point where freewill for all is about to become irrelevant through complete enslavement and implosion of all consciousness.

» I understand what you mean that the Creator doesn’t want to violate free will and therefore isn’t stopping the progression of various negative events in our world but is there really a finite period for the Creator to intervene in our matrix/hologram? Or as you put it, “a chance to turn it all back?” It’s hard for me to imagine a multidimensional, omniscient being ever running out of options about when it can “recall” a “cancerous” reality… How can a chance ever be closed to the Creator?

Mainly because the loss would be greater than the gain in forcing a chance where there shouldn’t be one. It would mean the erasure of a lot of experience and lessons learned by a lot of beings to just go back and wipe it all out for the sake of saving something that, if it were allowed to continue to its next opportunity point, would leave those lessons intact AND still allow for all things to turn out well in the end.

If the Creator is infinite, then the Creator is also infinitely patient, and I think that farsightedness and patience is at the root of why the Creator seems cruel. Those who protest the cruel-seeming Creator risk being like children who can’t think with far enough a view like parents, and so if parents let a child fall of his bike instead of always being there, it’s to make him a better bicyclist. All the child sees is abandonment.

In my experience, the past is malleable and there is timeline manipulation by positive and negative forces, but they seem to be cumulative additions instead of erasures of what’s already been chosen. Imagine a wall with graffiti — it’s one layer after the old, layer upon layer, instead of one getting erased before the next layer is added. These little changes are there to influence choices made now, so that the future is changed. This is different from outright changing the past so that the future is outright different, it’s more subtle and preserves freewill. So I would imagine the Creator works likewise, allowing freewill to run its course and interceding only when doing so assists a future rather than undoing all the choices of the past.

» What are your beliefs on NESARA?

There is no NESARA in effect. The people who run it are scammers who have been leading other people on for years and years and years. There is an actual law or bill called NESARA but it is nothing as huge as these folks claim. Additionally, the government and legal system don’t work that way where some legal thing like this is a magic bullet that just causes them to crumble and restore
everything to right. No, there are plenty of legal items that would have done that already, like the missing 13th Amendment that disallows anyone with titles of nobility (like Esquire or Knight) from holding government office, which would purge government of everyone who has ever become a high lawyer.

The government consists of people and psychopaths who don’t follow the law if they don’t have to, who cheat and twist and bend and ignore the law as they see fit. The real NESARA is too piddly for them to even pay attention to. But the scam is severe enough that followers of FourWinds writings have lost a lot of money and never gotten it back. Every other week they say NESARA is about to go into effect, but for decades it has never happened, because it’s not as big and real as they claim. So I would stay away from it, not send any money, and focus on other ways to create change.

» Do 5-D hyperdimensional beings think it’s really possible to “win” in the end? Aren’t they aware of the Creator or are 5-D beings and their ilk soulless and therefore like the Demiurge and Archons, no more than high-functioning, entitized aspects of a negative ego, stuck in a feedback loop of feeding their endless hunger for control?

STS itself comes with a very deep-seated element of denial. This denial is at the root of consciously chosen STS path. Wishful thinking is a better name for it, which is the denial of reality and truth, and the adoption of selective perception. Because only the latter, an illusion, can keep the ego intact and safe and looking good. It’s this same denial that makes every element of the STS hierarchy revel in it being the boss stepping on those below, when they themselves are slaves getting stepped on from above.

I mean, when they do notice themselves getting stepped on, in reality they have two choices — get out of the STS predator-prey hierarchy, or fight harder to get higher up the ladder. In the beginning they keep fighting… I think that at some point there are drop-outs, however, who might get tired and burned out from it all, and it is they who may drop out and apply their knowledge toward STO purposes… but only if they discover within themselves some glimmering of spirit and have it grow strong enough.

So to answer your question, yes I think 5D STS thinks it can win. It wishes it can and strives for it. And at the deepest level it’s likely a blind urge that they don’t question, a hunger to control and expand the empire of control. Also the threats of competition and usurpation from those below the hierarchy keep them going, as they need to be leaders. So they’re as much pushed from below as they drive themselves, and this is possibly what drives some off the cliff into STS implosion.

» How does something become a 4th or 5th dimensional being?

The best book on that is the Ra Material, aka The Law of One books. Language is a little dense, but the cosmology of it is very elegant.

In short, a 3D being just finishes up all the lessons involved in being 3D and outgrows it. During 3D, individuality grows and becomes purer and purer to whatever polarity it has been growing toward, and eventually it breaks completely free of all that makes a 3D person limited. Generally speaking that’s when the individuality is strong enough that it remains continuous between waking sleeping, life, and death instead of losing itself, and when it gains sufficient mastery over the etheric and physical bodies.
So in a human case, that would mean breaking free to some extent from physical biology, ego, brain limitations, linear time, five-sense perception, and other things that keep us bottled up in a matrix reality. It’s enlightenment in Buddhism or becoming a master shaman/nagal/sorcerer in the Toltec system, or becoming Christ-like in the Christian system. There’s a point at which the spirit/soul/consciousness becomes aware and powerful, more so than the influx of matrix/physicality influences keeping it down, and that’s when it rises.

They don’t become 100% free of physicality, as even in 4D there is physicality, just kind of plastic and more vibrant and responsive to thought. It’s not until 5th Density that one is in the spirit realms, which is the density one temporarily visits between lifetimes.

Or to put it another way, a physical human becomes more and more spiritually pure. Some psychic powers begin manifesting. They look at the world differently than before. They become less and less fettered by things that limit others. They grow tired of typical 3D ways of living, needs, goals, wants, and attachments. They become more interested, observant, and steeped in higher spiritual dynamics that really work, and they can prove it by living it. They become increasingly transcendental. And then at some point there is a flip-over.

One historical example is alchemist Fulcanelli — that link is an interesting article there about his Obi Wan-Kenobi-like presence after his supposed death.

The 3D to 4D transition is possible for a single person through spiritual perfection, but also apparently through a boost by some kind of Wave or Shift, sort of like what’s been prophesied regarding the whole 2012 idea. The boost is what allows maybe someone with a mere 75% perfection rate to flip over, whereas without that boost (say a guy like Fulcanelli who did it when Earth was not under the influence of such a boost) might need 95% to get on out of here. That’s just my interpretation, and it worries me only because this means there could be a lot of people who flip into 4D who are basically naive concerning things there, and thus easy game for any negative beings already there. Whereas someone who goes that master-occultist-shaman-etc. path already has training and wouldn’t get lost during such a flip over.

» Is the Starseed Movement a possible front for an alien takeover?

Well I think the Starseed movement can deviate from a similar but real phenomenon. I do have reason to believe that beings from other worlds, other times, other dimensions or densities incarnate as humans. And that many of them may afterward feel alienated, as well as having a vague longing for their home world. And they may be here on a mission too. But that’s where the similarity between this real phenomenon and the Starseeds movement ends.

The Starseed movement may deviate in the following way:

1) When it emphasizes the ego-identity of being of non-terrestrial origins. Meaning, people take this label “Starseed” and dissolve themselves in that identity, taking it on along with all its baggage and ready-made answers it provides that may not be true to their actual purpose and soul origins. So it risks straying into Ren-fair or Trekkie fetishism, in addition to making people stop examining their own purpose after having found something that seems to provide a convenient one-size-fits all set (like religion or cults or political groups).

2) When it emphasizes the “dislike Earth, long for home world instead” feeling, which is okay in
moderation but not when it interferes with the fact that, if you came to Earth, you did so for a reason, so be here and be present and fulfill your potential. Reveries for another world that leads to escapism, irresponsibility, denial, etc. is the danger here.

3) When it leads to over-alienation from humanity, and over-affiliation with extra-terrestrials. Worse, it may hitch you to the wrong alien group. The Gray agenda for instance makes use of this, taking people who don’t remember what alien group they actually came from, and telling them lies that they used to be Grays and are here to help mankind welcome the Grays. Just because you feel you are alien, does not mean you need to become a Gray-hugger, because they’re not the only aliens in town and you may well be affiliating yourself with the very forces you came here to counter.

4) When it builds a base of support for the Grey hybridization and takeover agenda. That is, to have a youth movement aligned with Grays or related aliens, to lead the charge toward transformation of society into one lead by human-Grey hybrids who have control over the affairs of man while serving their alien progenitors.

5) When the love-n-light angle is unbalanced toward New Age denial of discernment of dark force existence and tactics. For instance, how many Starseeds are aware of negative aliens pretending to be good guys and how to distinguish between them and the real good guys? Some, but majority I would say are not aware. You can emphasize love, but only if balanced with sharp discernment and wisdom and understanding. Instead, New Age uses the idea of love, in its lower dopey naive form, toward tranquilization of intellect and discernment. And then other groups who are paranoid and cynical like the Quantum Future Group use this as an excuse to bash all love and positivity as being tranquilization, which is false and an equal and opposite fallacy that serves those same negative alien forces, since the Matrix Control System plays false opposites against each other toward a common dialectic synthesis.

6) When it takes attention away from the point of being of service in a true, humble, realistic, practical way. If you are from another world, you don’t need to boast about it, fantasize about it, preoccupy yourself with the superficial details of your star system, construct your own alien language like Trekkies learn Klingon, and so on. No need to worship your alien affiliates. What truly matters is the spiritual mission. If there is an alien mission too, then you better be sure it’s what you came here to do, and not what aliens of opposing sides have programmed into you during this lifetime to serve their ends.

So I agree with you that the Starseed movement has problems, just like the Indigo/Crystal children movement. Ultimately I’d say it’s deviated aspects can become primers of mass consciousness, or the forerunner, to an introduction of alien-human hybrids en masse.

» There is one thing I can’t figure out about the dimensional timeline splits around “2012”. I had a dream that there will be three different divergent paths, one hellish (negative), one pretty white picket fence like (neutral), and one where fairies live (positive). If this is true that the doorway will be opened and we will synch to the path that is congruent with spirit level needs, than what will happen to the remaining 2/3 of people in the other timelines that are not synched with the one I am going to end up in? Disappear by some means?

I’ve wondered the same thing. There are several possibilities:
1) Smooth segue: The other 2/3 people gradually and smoothly leave your sphere of experience through a natural parting of ways. Let’s say civilization breaks down, there is no news, people are cut off from each other except in groups. You only see and experience those you’re with. Then everyone else can fade out and it wouldn’t make a difference to you. Decades pass and they might as well be dead, you’ll never know. You just come across other people belonging to your 1/3 population. If you ask them about the other 2/3, everyone one of them will say, “I don’t know, last time we saw each other was before the cataclysm, and we went in different directions and I haven’t seen them since.”

2) Timeline rewriting: your own timeline and memories get rewritten all the way into the past, so that those 1/3 you are with will seem like those are the only ones who were on Earth for as long as you can remember. Same for others in their respective timelines. Those in the hell timeline will only remember being born into a dark hellish world and living out a sucky existence.

3) Three copies from one timeline: Each of the three groups wakes up one day, not knowing that 2/3 of the people around them are actually on other timelines, and what they see of those people are just empty holographic placeholders, like echoes of their real selves. They look physical, but are like broken records whose growth and sentience has left them, and they are like background characters now while your life shifts to interacting with those 1/3 you’re with who are still real.

4) Everyone goes poof: you wake up one day and 2/3 of the people are missing. They have gone to the other timeline. The world is a lot less populous and everyone wonders where those people went. From that point on, it’s only your own 1/3 that remain in the world. And since their spiritual development is within your 33% percentile, the timeline from that point on will develop accordingly. Thus, the hellish timeline is the one where the bottom 33% of the world’s population go, and since they are selfish greedy people, their world will go to hell quickly.

5) One world, two new dimensions: the world continues, but 2/3 of the population develop extra-dimensional abilities. Those of the negative orientation become increasingly interfaced with a hellish dimension that they can cross over into and back, and eventually stay there permanently, while those of the positive orientation do likewise with some higher plane of existence. Those in the middle are stuck in 3D linear time as always, and if that timeline comes to an end then probably like all cataclysms in the past, through mass death from cataclysms. Meanwhile, the other 2/3 will enjoy the benefits of their respective negative/positive dimensions that they now can access.

3. may already be happening, judging by the increase in empty people out there, if that’s what’s causing the problem.

4. is what I’m hoping for, nice and easy transition and no bad guys to deal with, if you’re in the good guy timeline.

5. is likely if the world status quo remains, while awareness continues to spread among those who are open to truthseeking.

2. has some logical problems, like if the timeline changes so drastically, how is it that you can have certain grandparents or parents if they’re actually now on the other timeline with a different past…

1. is the most plausible, or at least true to my experience about how people seem to branch
timelines in minor ways through simple parting of ways and never seeing them again.

So, some food for thought. I don’t know which way it would go, but there are ways it can be done.

» I was reading through the “intelligent design” article and was wondering if you could explain as best you could the exact process of metaphysical soul coupling to the physical body. I’ve wondered about this for a long time, even before researching fringe topics.

The only thing I can say for certain is that the interface must happen at the quantum sub-atomic level. Only at that tiny scale does the behavior of matter become truly unpredictable. As long as something is perfectly predictable, it has no freewill, no consciousness, it’s just a machine ticking along according to the mechanical laws governing it. That’s what matter above the sub-atomic level is like; it is a bunch of dominoes knocking over more dominoes, each effect having a prior physical cause.

But at the sub-atomic level, you can have an effect without any discernible prior physical causes. A radioactive atom emits an electron suddenly; why now and not a few moments earlier? What caused the electron to just eject right then? Science cannot say. What causes a photon to “choose” to go through one slit cut into a board versus another slit? Science cannot say. There are no physical causes at work here; if there were, they could be measured, studied, and used to perfectly predict what an electron or photon will do. But there is that mysterious nonphysical factor.

What this means, is that there is something nonphysical influencing things at the sub-atomic level, which starts a mechanical chain of cause and effect that amplifies or cascades up into the big world we see around us. Thus at the root of physical reality are little quantum switches, little events, that are decided by a nonphysical factor. The factor, of course, being consciousness or conscious energy.

Now obviously you don’t have to intend each neuron in your brain to fire, you just think a thought and the corresponding neurons fire; those neurons firing are, at their very beginning, quantum phenomena sensitive to nonphysical influences. So when you think a thought, there is likely some intermediate energy field that does the job of synching your nonphysical mind with the physical neurons. And that’s what the occultists call the astral and etheric bodies. They’re interface fields. The etheric is the one closest to physicality, therefore I would say that the etheric energy field is what “bends” quantum events into happening one way instead of another.

With just the bare minimum conscious energy, and here I mean the consciousness of a rock or even a molecule, the quantum events will be without purpose or order; they will be unpredictable but not with intelligence. It takes a complex consciousness (a soul/spirit) and an equally complex physical mechanism (like the brain, with its billions of neurons, each of which is sensitive at the quantum level) to create a walking talking intelligence like we ourselves.

So how exactly does the etheric energy field influence a quantum event? I don’t know, other than to speculate that all possible choices already exist in this self-contained matrix, like a choose-your-own-adventure book already containing all the outcomes; and that the etheric energy somehow flips us to the right page according to which direction of the story we choose next (whether to think one thought or another). But all I know for fact, is that science leaves a wide door open when it comes to quantum physics; they cannot rule out consciousness being something nonphysical, all they can do is say they have no proof since they aren’t even looking for it.
I read in Rudolf Steiner’s books that after death, the physical body is left behind and the Mind/Spirit (core of being) is left only with its etheric and astral bodies surrounding it, and within a period of a few days or weeks the etheric body likewise disintegrates (called the “second death”) and after much longer time, the astral is also cast off.

So then the process reverses when about to enter a new life; the spirit coagulates around itself an astral body, gets drawn to a fetus in gestation that offers a matching life ahead, and then the etheric body starts forming that will bind the Spirit/astral to the physical body. So it’s a gradual process of growth of the interfacing fields between physical body and Spirit. Apparently it’s a bit more complicated; I mean, there’s supposedly discussions with higher beings about the life you’re about to enter, some tweaks you do to your life plan, and so on, and then entering the fetus and being born.

After that it takes years for the astral and etheric to fully crystallize and solidify into the body; so a young child will still have an immature and vulnerable field there since it’s not firmly planted. I think that’s why they can see strange stuff, get more negative entities going after them, because they are more vulnerable (yet also more flexible and vibrant) than adults whose fields are a bit more leathery and resilient although dimmer due to energy loss throughout life.

I’m thinking there’s a resonance or feedback flow between the potential lives one can incarnate into, and what one’s needs and karmic issues are. There’s never a perfect match, but I think we’re born into the lives that best match our mission, learning needs, and abilities. So this resonance could be what starts drawing a Spirit to its next life.

» I was hoping you could give me and others your thoughts on suicide. I am not considering it. I am just curious about your thoughts on the subject.

The kind of suicide where you’re going through a tough but necessary phase of life, and instead of dealing with it you hurry up and kill yourself under a temporarily and emotionally intoxicated state of mind, that’s the kind where afterwards you supposedly regret it severely. Odd comparison, but it’s probably like waking up discovering you wet your bed — you were in a dream, did something you knew deep down wasn’t a good thing to do, and only after waking up do you realize the mistake. Because once you kill yourself, you can’t come back, and so if from your higher sober state of mind you had much more planned in life, by checking out early you made a major F-up and will reincarnate to finish up what you didn’t before. It’s a major rebellion that you did against your soberer Self. The regret is a lot more severe once you’re out of the body, and this tends to trap souls in a vicious circle. So you get lost souls sometimes this way, who stay in the astral planes a lot longer than other souls who died under different circumstances.

There are sober forms of suicide too, however. One is killing yourself to save another, like a sacrifice. Another is when you’re about to be killed by the enemy or tortured or whatever, with little hope of surviving, and it’s better to check out now peacefully. I think in Buddhism, these two forms of suicide are allowed because they are noble. Jesus handing himself over to the Romans is an example; because the sacrifice serves a higher good in the long run. The Cathars only allowed suicide if it was done under the most positive and blissful state of mind. Incidentally they would commit suicide in pairs, so that they would continue their companionship even after leaving the body.
Problem is that there are demonic and negative astral forces rampant, not to mention military/remote-influencer and alien forms of telepathic persuasion and mind programming that can drive a targeted person toward suicide. Or mental illnesses or chemical imbalances. If someone dies under those influences by committing suicide, it’s still a screw-up but really, screw-ups are counted in terms of freewill — how much freewill did you have to act differently? Should you have known better? Or did you have no choice because you were just so overbearingly hammer? I think that determines the amount of regret and cause for reparations after death.

Sad to say, I see suicide rates increasing dramatically over the next couple years as people’s cushy lives fall apart — especially if there is ever a public perception that hope is lost and that there’s no future. Not that it’ll necessarily go that way, but if it does, the natural reaction for many will be to quietly commit mass suicide.

My own philosophy is that unless you have no choice but to sacrifice yourself to save others, or to avoid guaranteed torture before death, there is never a good cause to kill yourself. Because even in WWII, those who survived the holocaust went on for years afterwards and did things they wouldn’t have, if they just committed suicide early on. You never know what’s going to still come after your current time of troubles. If you’re still alive, then you still have a reason to be here. When your life is finished, you’ll be finished. May not seem finished to others, but they don’t see the bigger picture maybe.

» Could you comment on the web-bot project at halfpasthuman.com?

I treat their reports the way one would interpret dreams. Dreams contain nonsense, real prophetic elements, and most of it all wrapped up in symbolism. A dream about a tornado may not be about real tornado, but say an emotionally stressful situation. So if they’re predicting something like an island sinking, it may be symbolic of it being economically ruined. That’s how I view their reports.

As for what they describe of the future (not specific events, just general trends), my conclusions are largely in line with theirs. Like, often Cliff or George Ure will say something that matches what I just recently figured out. Maybe they’re reading my stuff, I don’t know. Maybe we’re both plugged into something.

Anyway, I wouldn’t take every prediction in the web-bot reports literally, however you can tell from their material that they have a broad perspective. They are aware of aliens, conspiracies, politics, economics, time shifts, and so on. So I appreciate more their view on trends and events, the connections they make, than the web-bot output itself.

» Can you share some insight on Taoist philosophy?

It’s all about acting on the level of mind/quantum instead of matter/force. Like turning a key to open a door versus bashing it in with a sledgehammer. It’s also about transcending false dualities, and reaching a higher creative solution to things. Like a riddle, where the obvious guesses at an answer that take the riddle literally are always wrong, and the true answer is always on a higher plane of creativity that has an element of unexpectedness to it. So Taoism is about that which is always beyond the bubble of our “common sense” — and at a higher level of “uncommon sense” so to speak.

You’re right that non-anticipation is a large part of that. The future hinges entirely on the present.
By synchronizing your mind and actions with the flow of time as it passes through the present, you act in an immediately responsible manner. Versus, say, positioning your mind within the past/future aspect of time where you calculate based on the past in hopes of creating a certain effect in the future, which is like walking in the dark based on some math calculations and hearsay about what’s in front of your path, versus seeing the path itself or rather feeling it as you walk it, which is Taoism.

So yes, Taoism is a very anti-matrix kind of thing. It goes against ego and linear time conditioning. Its only potential downside is that if misapplied, or not applied in balance, it can make one passive as a vegetable during situations where synchronicity has guided one to be there to fight. So Taoism is about responding in the optimal manner according to one being in touch with that most optimal probable future whose influence guides one in the present, and if this requires a bit of fire and action then so be it; therefore Taoism shouldn’t be confused with total and absolute non-resistance and passivity in all cases, as the latter only applies to cases where ego-based stupidity is what’s calling forth the fight and it’s better to outflank the ego and do what the matrix-ego-inspired situation doesn’t expect/demand.

» As I understood your book, prime targets can be repeatedly assaulted through abductions despite heightened awareness (or even specifically because of it). It would seem to me that anyone who was victimized this way and accepted the parameters of potential future assault would be catatonic and constantly freaked out, terrified of sleeping.

There are consequences, actually. But to address to core of your question, both alien and military abductions create a mind split in the person at a relatively young age (I’m guessing 4-8 years old) where one part of the mind (abductee mind) is what wakes up during an abduction and experiences it, and the other part (mundane mind) is only active during the person’s everyday life.

The abductee mind is sequestered at all other times, except for unintended surfacing in rare instances during the day when triggered by some sense stimulus that maybe resembles something it witnessed. That’s when some of its memories briefly cross over into the mundane mind, and an abductee actually remembers some of what happened.

If you were to switch these around, whereby the sequestered part becomes the main consciousness of daily life, then yes one would be a complete wreck. But what we are during the day, our mundane mind, is kept quarantined from this other part, and vice versa. There is only residual contamination between the two.

The things that don’t depend on state of mind do leave more of a residue however. For instance, bruises, scars, pains, soreness, tiredness, mental fatigue, and drug or electroshock after-effects (in the case of military abductions). So a person can wake up with some of these symptoms but no memory of the abduction encounter.

During the onset of an abduction, there is a transition between the mundane mind and the abductee mind. Thus if a person wakes up to a presence in the room and gets really terrified, and only then switches minds, then the next day or night they could feel kind of jumpy because their mundane mind did get traumatized a little, but not as much as their sequestered abductee mind did after that during the abduction.
Another thing is that abductions are not all directly traumatic. If it’s a programming session, and done by aliens, it’s actually quite passive and uneventful. So imagine a person who is sleeping gets taken out of their body, or maybe their body itself is taken as well, and the whole time they are in this very sleepy trance state, semi-dreaming as they’re being shuffled about. And then they get placed before a machine or Grey or something that transmits telepathic information into their heads to create posthypnotic suggestions, then they’re placed back in their body/bed. During this, there may never need be a moment of physical struggle, terror, torture, or anything. So even if you had this a few times a month, it wouldn’t be as taxing on a person as you’d think from reports of the more stressful abduction.

That said, there are lots of cases where a person, due to their mundane mind really focusing on the alien stuff and being obsessed/terrified with it, creates a feedback loop whereby those same forces have more access to this person, and become more overt/tangible in their interactions. That’s when quarantine breaks down a bit, and the person does indeed fall apart. Their mind gets shattered over time. So you’ll see abductees who are a bit hysterical, wild-eyed, not all there in the head, because their mundane minds are fried from this. A mind native to this 3D matrix existence needing only to think enough to buy groceries, raise kids, work and pay the bills is too fragile in the face of contact and psychic interface with alien beings.

The catch is that the abductee mind, and the mundane mind, in being somewhat separate, have different access parameters and permission levels. If during the day you say you want nothing more to do with aliens, but your abductee mind doesn’t make that same commitment, and if you get abducted in such a way that little trace of it spills over into your mundane mind, then those abductions can indeed continue because to the mind making that intention, it’s being fulfilled. Therefore it would take intentions and commitments by the mundane mind so prolonged and deep, with such attention toward carrying over all through the night, that it percolates down into the subconscious and thus the same “basement” that the abductee mind shares, and then therefore can bubble up into the abductee mind and make a difference.

The weak minded are vulnerable to invasions into their more remembered reality. Meaning, a much more overt, memorable, tangible, and frequent alien presence in their daily life, instead of it being quarantined to that part of life one doesn’t really remember. So if you ever come across a person who has all-out alien stuff that seems non-stop, and they’re wrecks as though curled up on a corner sucking their thumbs, that’s an example of someone whose abductions and alien activities have been allowed to infiltrate too much into their mundane life. Another example of that is being wide awake, and aliens showing up and squashing your mind asleep or into trance to take you; that never happens to me. Instead I first go to sleep myself, and then when my mundane mind is out to lunch, that’s when it can happen.

Lots of weird things happen while we sleep, including negative astral critters, succubi, etc. stopping by sometimes to jack into our dreams and feed off us. That’s way more common than an actual alien presence. Astral things are as plentiful as ocean life, whereas aliens are fewer in number and thus less prevalent.

Practicing lucid dreaming sounds like something useful in your case, if you haven’t practiced that already. I still haven’t mastered it, and only still have them spontaneously. But being aware in your dreams, I think would work to stave off a lot of abductions. For instance, if you do wake up into
your mundane mind with a presence in the room, you still have time to fight it before you flip over into that tranced out abductee mind. I know people who stopped abductions this way. It may be said that staying non-lucid and not resisting such an abduction is tantamount to giving it permission to continue.

» Given the demiurges” and archons” surveillance power and technology, they should know they we are real threats to them. Why don’t they just eliminate us right now? Perhaps they are not able to somehow?

That’s right, they are working within a greater law framework that they can’t violate. But they are good at finding loopholes, which is the one about freewill. If piece by piece we give away our freewill, a point comes when we have given it all away and virtually given permission to have us killed.

One example is getting tempted with drug or black magic abuse, and after a while you make enough deals with the dark side that they own you, and then when you cross them, they do indeed kill you. Same thing with people who get clearances in the military, they sign away they life, and then when they blow the whistle they die. Like Phil Schneider. Another example is dark side bluffing you with some scare tactics, and you choose not to keep a grip on yourself, and gradually you become more paranoid and spiritually weakened, then you get sick and die or whatever.

Another way you can be killed is if you are about to do something that pisses everyone off, good guys included. For instance, you’re about to unleash Free Energy technology to the world. Why would positive side not want that? Well, I think ultimately they do, but the right thing at the wrong time under the wrong circumstances leads to trouble. It’s like an FBI sting where they’re almost at the point of nabbing someone, and then some idiot jumps in and starts shooting at the criminals, which blows up the whole operation and the bad guys get away. Free energy is like that… it will turn the world upside down and screw things up before its time… and if we only wait a few more years then the time is right. But guys have tried to do it prematurely and died for it, killed by oil interests and negative forces, and they didn’t get protection from the positive side because of them being a bit too reckless and premature.

Point being that it all starts somewhere, and is a gradual process toward you being killable, legally killable that is. So as long as you don’t take those first steps, or as long as you know the warning signs and correct yourself before it’s too late, then you’re okay. Therefore it’s mostly an internal spiritual battle. if you stay on track, I don’t think you can be killed. But you have to be cautious, keep yourself balanced, and don’t stubbornly go against the flow of destiny. When you start straying, that’s when you get sick a lot, accidents happen, etc. and those are warning signs. Not to mention, dreams will warn you too. So yeah, if you get out of warm water, you’ll never be in hot water, so to speak.

» I read on your site that it is possible (once awakened and lucid) that material laws can be broken. Is this implying that we can fly, just like we can fly in a lucid dream? If so, what exactly needs to be done to become lucid?

When spirit becomes master over the mind, and mind over the soul, and soul over the body, then the body is absorbed into the spirit and comes under its full command. That’s when the body no longer obeys physical laws, only metaphysical laws. It’s when a body can be materialized or
dematerialized at will, without technology. Certain advanced positive aliens can do this. You’ll also read of this in some of Carlos Castaneda’s books, where highly trained shamans can do this. If you have never read Carlos Castaneda, I think that will give you an idea of what’s required.

The main problem is that we are held here by a kind of “gravity” — not strictly the physical gravity, but a conscious kind of gravity that holds us to the illusion that reality is completely real. Even if you tell yourself that a pen isn’t real, and thus you try to move it with your mind, there is still a part of your mind that remains unconvinced. That part is your subconscious and unconscious, and it can’t be convinced just by your surface conscious mind willing it.

To reach that part of your mind is difficult. You have to be able to focus without focusing, intend without being aware that you’re intending, and other Zen-like paradoxes. One of the introductory skills needed for this, is being able to keep your mind awake as you fall asleep. So instead of dissolving into a dream and forgetting you’re dreaming, you stay aware while your body fully falls asleep and dream images appear. In this state, you can even have your eyes open and, with enough training, move around and talk.

It’s in this weird state of consciousness that you can do lots of things, and it’s the starting point for being able to override physical laws. It’s because in this state, you are not 100% locked into physical linear time reality. You can see things you can’t normally see (mostly etheric thought-forms and invisible beings hanging out). And you can then start manipulating etheric energy, which is the precursor to physicality. In this state, you are more merged with your subconscious than otherwise, and so reality becomes more fluid.

But yeah, I’d say check out some Carlos Castaneda books. They’re mostly fictionalized, but the ideas discussed are pretty valid I think. A big lesson in there is conserving energy and switching to alternate states of consciousness. You need energy to overcome that conscious gravity that keeps you stuck. Ever had a lucid dream opportunity where you were just too tired while asleep to bother becoming fully lucid? I have, and it showed me that becoming aware takes energy, mental and emotional and spiritual vital energy, and if you’re not bursting with this energy, then you won’t have the coherence and enthusiasm and concentration to step outside your rut.

And so with waking reality it’s similar, except even more difficult, because in dreams it’s only your subconscious keeping the dream environment stable, whereas in waking life it’s the mind of all beings in this universe. So you have to overcome that, and this takes a lot of energy and subconscious detaching.

By the way, it’s a lot easier to bend probability and create synchronicities, than outright break the laws of physics. According to quantum physics, the laws of physics we know are just averaged out values of little tiny quantum fluctuations. Sort of like how a big crowd doesn’t move as a whole, even though the individual people in it are bustling about. So it’s hard to get a whole crowd to move (meaning, to bend physics) but not hard to get one critical person to move which then influences the future in an interesting way. So what I’m saying is, if levitating is too much of a feat, no worries because you can do lots of cool stuff still if you just try to bend ordinary probability instead. See my Reality Creation Redux article for some tips on that, it’s in the Research Notes section of my site.

» Have you determined a way to know for sure if you are under attack of a negative entity/alien/boogie/etc.?
There tends to be a clustering of symptoms. If you only had one symptom, then it could be explained away, but several together makes it more definite a conclusion. Here are some possible symptoms:

- Ear tones/ringings — usually a sign of getting pinged by some psychic entity, meaning something interested in watching you right now
- Seeing warning omen signs — certain synchronistic numbers, certain insect infestations, bunch of police/ambulances, etc. Whatever symbolic dictionary applies to you and gets the point across.
- Seeing faces of aliens or ghouls as you close your eyes and try to go to sleep. These hypnagogic images are visual representations of psychic impressions.
- Nightmares, gory dreams, really uncomfortable dreams like something’s trying to mess with you.
- A sudden, uncalled-for, irrational shift into depression, wild anger and irritation, or hopelessness.
- All this happening during an important time in your life, like working on a project, or contemplating a decision, that could have positive outcomes.
- Increase in injuries and objects breaking and illness
- Insomnia and a feeling of wariness or jumpiness like something’s around when you try to sleep, also extreme amped up feelings, elevated heart beat, and racing mind while trying to sleep, that keeps you up and leaves you tired from lack of sleep. Sort of like too much caffeine, but not having had any caffeine.
- Unusual tiredness, headache and nausea and chills, that come on suddenly, and leave suddenly and don’t have prior physical cause that you can pinpoint.
- Temporary intestinal/digestive issues that don’t trace back to dietary causes.

I wish to ask you how you filter these emotions of distaste out when you see the world decaying. You mean moral and spiritual decay with dark people doing evil things?

The way I see it, those people are not in control of themselves, not all there in the head, sometimes not fully human. They may be acting in perfect harmony with their nature if they are being controlled by ego or demonic influences, same way a shark eats innocent people just because that’s in its nature to do so.

So first of all I see them as either being defective (like a crazy or retarded persons) or else not really human (like a demon). In either case, there is no disgust within me coming from the “They should know better!” perspective, because they don’t and can’t know better. They are what they are.

Secondly I believe there is a divine framework that puts me in the right spot at the right time, according to my abilities and resources. Therefore when I encounter a situation when I can indeed do something about these dark people, or to help those they oppress, then I will. Until then, I am patient, knowing it’s not yet time.
Third, I believe there will be a time of reckoning. That darkness will get what it deserves. This makes me patient.

Fourth, I realize that everything beyond my ability to change is wasteful for me to fret over. For that, I leave it to others, until my time comes to do my share.

Fifth, I think these people are goners, and so I don’t really care about them because they will have no presence in the future. Or so I hope.

Ultimately I take a practical approach, where I only care about what is within my place to care about and do something about. The rest I accept as inevitable for the moment and I endure it patiently.

» (question about ear ringings/tones)

I talked to an alien contactee, who is knowledgeable on such matters, and he believes ear ringings are caused by an entity or person distorting your own body’s etheric field in the region of the head, which creates an abrupt alteration in blood flow and pressure to the ear, causing the inner ear organs to register a ringing.

They would distort your field by trying to remote view you, focus on your energy and purposely try to distort it, or some other act where they have to consciously focus on you. The entity could be a person who is truly psychic, an alien who checks in on you, a nonphysical being like a deceased person’s spirit or some angel-like entity. Ear ringing may be a side-effect of what they’re doing, or a purposeful induction of a tone in order to communicate with you, perhaps about the future as you noted.

My asian grandmother said left ear means someone’s talking bad about you, right ear means someone is thinking blessings. I myself have found that my left ear means an upcoming attack/test consisting of me getting very angry at someone, while right means an attack consisting of me having a moment of panic and loss of confidence. So it means different things to different people, but in all cases it’s someone else’s (or something else’s) psychic influence affecting the etheric field of your head around the ear.

So if you get one, most likely someone or something has you in mind at that moment. I also found an interesting phenomenon today. Had an ear ringing while in the kitchen, and it went away shortly, then when I returned near the same spot in the kitchen, it came back. Then it went away. I suspect perhaps an entity, not completely physical and not visible, may actually have been standing there. So I would move my head around the kitchen and when I got to another spot the ringing happened once more. Maybe I was intersecting where the entity stood, and ear would thus ring. After another minute of this, the kitchen was clear, but I ran to the living room a few feet away and at one spot it happened again. So if it was an entity, it was moving around. Suggesting that an ear ringing can be caused by such an entity right next to you maybe touching or somehow influencing the field of your head.

Though it can be done remotely as well, it seems. I have never gotten an ear ringing from a regular person though, no matter how much they were thinking of me positively or negatively. It’s more a trait unique to psychic beings who know how to project their own energy field or disturb mine. Some are negative, doing this to monitor you and see what your current state is, as well as what’s on
your mind and maybe even scan your immediate probable futures. Others could be positive and trying to help by giving you an intelligent signal in either ear, that, once you figure out what it means, can alert you to certain ideas you’re thinking that are important and correct, or certain events coming up that you should be warned about.

I’ve had a couple ear ringings occur while I was asleep. This was in 2002. I dreamt of being in a fire station, with our black cat there, and the fire alarm was going off, while I noticed at the same time my actual ear was ringing. That’s what first clued me into the idea of what the ringing meant for me. Black cat for me meant presence of a nonhuman supernatural force. Fire alarm means an urgent situation or warning. So I concluded that my ear ringing meant like an alarm going off for me, about a dangerous situation coming up. Since that time, my ear ringings have always matched such situations which often do arise within hours or a few days. The only time nothing happens, is if I have enough dreams and ringings and other signs to know the nature and timing of the upcoming event; once I know what it is, that somehow seems to prevent it from manifesting.

So, since it means different things to different people, you can do what you’ve already been doing and find patterns in when they happen, what ear, how loud, how long, and how high or low the pitch. I’m glad to hear that you paid attention enough to notice a pattern already.

» It seems that the deception is being perpetrated at all levels by the alien presence! Everything also points to a clear ownership of the astral plane/spirit plane by the alien/demon entities themselves. It seems that these higher entities have transcended love…is it the means that is used to keep us trapped on this level?

“Higher” beings just means they are more complex and perceptive than we are. There are higher positive beings, and higher negative beings. The higher positive beings have not transcended love, but have mastered and perfected it to an extent. They know its power and live it. The higher negative beings have vanquished love, at least the love of others as they still love themselves I’m sure like any tyrant would. But in doing so they put themselves slaves to the highest negative beings in their hierarchy. They live on a spiritual credit card system, where they have certain powers but only because they’ll repay it in double when the time comes. They don’t actually own any true spiritual wealth. Higher positive beings do, because they earned it through hard choices and experiences and cultivating their awareness, their soul light, and their love of balance, truth, and of other beings.

But love itself has different levels. There is the lowest level which isn’t really love but carnal attraction based on hormones and genetic programming. That’s what most people call love, the love between young lovers I mean. They say they’ll love each other until the end of time but a few months into marriage they already hate each other; it’s because it was a chemical love that wears off, not anything based on true soul appreciation and bonding.

Real love makes you more of who you really are. Fake love intoxicates you and makes you less than you really are, impairs your consciousness. That’s their main differences.

I define love as the force that drives spirits toward greater perfection and congruence with the Creator. In other words, it’s the impulse within you that gives you concern and appreciation for the spiritual health of another. That makes you care about them and support them in a healthy way. That’s love of another person. Love of ideas, love of truth, is likewise the impulse that moves you
forward to greater states of evolution, to greater awareness, through those truths/ideas. Love is an arrow that points upward to infinite consciousness. Wherever you are, it points upward. So it’s sort of an anti-gravity force. Whereas ego is like the ground pulling you down. It takes freewill and effort to stand upright and fight against the pull of gravity. Higher positive beings are like the birds who can soar freely.

There is an interesting movie about this subject, called Ink (2009) — some places online offer it for free viewing. The first half is kind of slow, but by the end it pays off because it’s really a touching movie about redemption and how humans are caught in an invisible war between higher positive and negative forces.

Now, the astral planes are like the ocean. You have different depths, and at the bottom it’s dark and cold and heavy and weird creatures dwell. Those are the lower astral planes. Up near the top is sunlight and highly sentient and positive beings. Where you go depends on the quality/vibration of your consciousness. Think of people who are always angry or shameful or fearful… that’s a kind of resonance in their soul that, after death, guides them to a corresponding level. From what I have read/heard/seen, what happens in the afterlife (at least for a period of “time” between physical death and eventual return to the spirit realm) is heavily dependent on your beliefs, programming, biases, and addictions that you die with. There also appear to be parasitical entities in the astral that feed on such lost souls. For instance, those who die believing in purgatory may end up in an astral level where such entities pose as priests or holy figures telling them they are in purgatory and that they must wait and suffer and pray (feed these entities their soul energy) if they want to get out. So these souls either wake up and realize what a false illusion this is, or else stay and give their energy until they shrivel up and fade out and only then move on to the spirit realm.

So I believe you are only as free in the afterlife, as you are in life. If you are slave to lies in life, then you may be slave to lies in afterlife. If you are lucid, careful, discerning, and aware in this life, then likewise after death. The Tibetans liken the afterlife to something that is similar, but deeper, than what we experience in sleep. Thus what dreams we have have are an indication of how likely/easily we can get caught up in afterlife illusions.

The important thing to remember is that, in the absolute context, and at our core, we are immortal spirits. The point is best illustrated by a dream I had a couple months ago. I was having lunch at a Chinese restaurant with two blond women (looked like aliens). We were conversing and they asked me a question/riddle: “What do science and spirituality have in common?” — and I answered, but the answer came out of me almost as if they were suggesting it telepathically. The answer was that both involve energy not being created or destroyed, rather transformed from one state to another. They elaborated that what we take as 3D reality is like a self-contained bubble, a special kind of environment. That the true inner core of us, that spark of sentience, is situated and originates from outside that bubble. That it is immortal and transcendent, and cannot be harmed. But that there are forces in the bubble who are native here, or at least trapped by their own choice to be the way they are. They may eat our bodies, even harvest our soul energies. But in the end, they are the prisoners of their realm, and we are above beyond it even though we are temporarily extending ourselves here into this environment.

Anyway, point being that up to a point you do have negative alien and demonic forces controlling a
lot of what’s down here. The bright side is that they control through cunning and deception due to our own ignorance and bad choices, not so much because they have absolute power. If they had absolute power, they wouldn’t need to hide themselves or manipulate so cunningly, they could just do it simply and openly. In my own life, there is a tug of war between them/my own ego, and higher spiritual beings/my own heart or spirit. These forces put pressure on us when we are to make a choice. Even a small one, where we choose between giving into selfish base impulses or listen to our conscience and common sense.

As long as we become aware of negative impulses and choose the alternative, in that moment we triumph over even an entire group of demons or aliens. Because their reach is limited. But if we are so weak, then of course it seems like they have control over us. And fact is, most of mankind is very weak and asleep, due to genetics, diet, environment, and social/religious/education programming.

Who’s on our side? I believe in the Higher Self. Which on my site, and in other published materials, is described as that future final version of us, perfect as we can be, high up in the chain of spiritual evolution, who can look back and help out its past selves still moving forward. It acts as a silent chaperone, a whisperer or ideas, a small voice of conscience sometimes. Guiding in the right direction. We have other positive forces, including positive aliens if they have an interest in you (if you’re an alien contactee/abductee). They all help silently for the most part. They guide covertly rather than intervene. Although based on close calls with accidents and such, it seems they do intervene when there is no choice. Like if negative forces manage to take control over some car driver, who then swerves into your lane to try and collide with your car and kill you, positive forces then, in seeing that you have no freewill choice in the matter either way, will step in and bend the laws of physics if necessary. Not every collision is such a violation though; sometimes it’s random chance to someone who is not yet high priority or sufficiently in tune with higher forces, or who attracted/desired it out of some spiritual imbalance or karmic need. But certain people seem to have protection. I think it depends on how much they matter to others, how much the future depends on them, how aligned they are with genuine spiritual forces and not just impostors pretending to be good guys.

» How do I align with these positive transcendent forces?

Positive forces gain satisfaction from seeing a person make the right choices, acting from their more noble and loving side. See we are confronted with choices everyday on whether to give in to our selfish, contemptuous, blind ego impulses, or to stay conscious and sacrifice our egos to do the right thing. It’s by consistently making those right choices and consistently sacrificing the lower ego impulses that we start aligning with the higher, not just in our intention, but in our actions. So we do make mistakes, but it’s the persistence to keep getting back on track and adopting a higher perspective as often as possible that counts.

Now, as far as positive aliens go, it seems they are more limited in their resources than, say, higher more angelic spiritual beings. Therefore they’d notice you if you are of concern to their particular mission or agenda. However, I suspect that they work more with people who made pre-life agreements with them, who may be one of them now incarnated in human form. Thus I’m not sure whether an alien group would care too much about a person they’ve never ever had affiliation with. On the other hand, we always have the choice to get involved with their business, let’s say spreading the word about whatever message they are aiming to send humanity, like educating
people on the possibility of deception by opposing negative groups.

That said, the one thing not to do is look into the sky and send a strong message that you want contact. Because it's like shouting at the top of your lungs in a war zone; you don't know which side might hear you and come. However, you can try to maintain a steady composed attitude on the positive side of neutral, and basically place yourself in serve of positive higher power to effect positive change to the degree of your ability. You may then notice opportunities pop up where you can do a little thing to help someone in a spiritually meaningful way.

There is a lot that keeps positive forces from doing a face-to-face meeting with a person.

For one, apparently it’s dangerous for them to show up in the physical as airspace is monitored for those incidences and they can be shot down by military weaponry upgraded by opposing alien faction technology.

Secondly they are very non-interventionist and don’t want to interfere with anyone, and would prefer helping you in a way where you don’t even realize you’re being helped and where you do most of the work yourself. This is necessary for you to grow strong, instead of being carried and thus grow weak.

And third, it’s difficult asking them without some level of ego and anticipation involved; for instance, if you were to look up and ask for a sign from them, and a star appears and moves in response, would your heart skip a beat? If so, that is a sign of anticipation, possible fear, and those act as blocks to the request; not until you remain completely calm would they consider it, as anything beyond that is interference and runs the risk of unpredictable reactions on your part.

So you’d basically have to tread the positive path for the sake of the love and fulfillment of it, rather than the expectation of future reward or passing of some test, and then you naturally grow to that point where when you least expect it, it will happen and you won’t be surprised but rather calmly relieved.

» Based on the principles we’ve studied (stuff like Steiner’s work, Mouravieff, Gurdjieff, Baines, etc.), how would you go about debunking the idea of solipsism? I mean, one of the hermetic principles is “all is mind”, there are other notions such as those from Ra and Cassiopaeans that talk about the so called “Law of One”. If in fact, “all is mind”, how can we prove that everything is not just a creation from our own subconscious minds? Solipsism seems absurd, but how can you find concrete evidence for individuality other than our own?

The fact that others have enough freewill to do things against our will shows that their minds are functionally separate from our own. The fact that reality stays constant even if we are unconscious shows something more than just our minds is keeping it together.

Also if you are in any way intuitive or clairvoyant you can sense the consciousness of other people, see their energy fields, and know they are sentient beings versus, say, dream characters who lack that energy and sentience.

And if our own minds are creating all this, why is our dream environment malleable to our intent, but physical reality is a lot more solid? Shouldn’t they both be the same if they’re both projected from the same subconscious?
Now if you’re talking about reality being created by our collective rather than just your or my subconscious, then yes, the more consciousness you include in the picture, the more reality is a projection of it. Through reality creation (manifestation) we as individuals can indeed influence our reality a little bit, like manifesting some opportunity or material item. The collective subconscious of humanity may likewise manifest collective events and circumstances. Yet that doesn’t mean everything is a product of collective human subconscious, just as not everything in the world is a product of my or your own mind. There are intelligences beyond humanity, on other worlds, in the cosmos, that also have a say in what reality is.

The difference between solipsism and the Law of One, is that the latter says only that we are of the same substance, essence, origin, but that we are endowed with freewill to pursue our own paths, that we add our influence to the common reality. Whereas solipsism says your mind is the only one, and everyone else is just a figment of your subconscious projection as in a dream.

There is a difference between just imagining something, dreaming it, and experiencing it for real. Imagination is no more creative than your conscious mind. Dreams have the novelty of being projected by your subconscious, so at least it has some autonomy and originality, but then again beings can telepathically project into your dreamscape to provide new information as well. And reality is the most autonomous of all; I can go to college knowing nothing about higher math or physics, and it makes more sense that an actual teacher gives that to me, than to say it was in my subconscious all along. Reason being that even in dream, logic can be scrambled and breaks down on closer examination, whereas in real life mathematics is solid from beginning to end, just like physical reality is.

» I am very distressed by the current state of our world, and even more so by the direction we seem to be heading in. It feels like an overwhelmingly dark force is guiding things from behind the scenes, yet there is no positive counterbalance to act as an opposition to the malevolent intentions steering the planet.

There are a few things I keep in mind when feeling like this.

First is that we can only act within the sphere of our influence, meaning we must accept that which is beyond our reach, while focusing on what is actually within our current circumstances, resources, and abilities to do. So dividing things between what you can do, and what you cannot, helps to take away some of the worry and shift your concern to where you can actually do something about it.

Second is that there is an optimal time and method for each action. Meaning that if your intuition says no, and circumstances aren’t right for you to act, but fear and frustration push you into acting anyway, you will find that you meet only further frustration. Therefore it comes down to patience and foresight, and careful listening to intuition for when you suddenly realize the moment of opportunity has arrived, that you’re enthusiastic about it, and that you now have the means to do take a particular action. Then you go for it. So the idea that there is indeed a guidance or flow to things, helps you be more patient.

And third is the idea that the majority moves in a deterministic direction, a direction that’s ill-fated by the sheer fact that they are so stubbornly programmed and stuck in their ways, or maybe because at some level they almost need to experience tough times to jar them out of their slumber. Those people you cannot help, beyond providing an option for an informed choice like maybe making
information available. But then there is the minority who can indeed be helped. They can weave their way through what the majority experience without themselves getting taken down. And it is they who matter most. Therefore if you focus on victory one person at a time, rather than trying to change the entire world, you can get more done. If you think in terms of quality of enlightenment, rather than quantity of people reached, then you’ll have less frustration.

» What if those negative abduction experiences you describe were human in origin? I mean, how do you know for sure that they were actual aliens, beside a gut feeling? Because I think it’s possible for the negative experiences to be fear mongering by some secret human group.

I can tell a difference between human and alien, both have their capabilities, which are very similar, but they differ in style and characteristics.

Generally the human groups are more crude, are anchored in the physical plane, tend to use concepts of sex and violence (like gun nut/survivalist) in their mind programming, are restricted to working out of underground military bases, are themselves a bit perverted in mindset with human-type humor mixed in, and have human vibes.

Generally the alien types shift frequently into a non-physical/etheric/hyper-dimensional state, often do soul abductions (which human groups cannot do) for mind programming purposes (that’s where body is left in bed, soul extracted upward into ship), have an energy field around them that is very strong and can shift your consciousness into trance state just by being around them (whereas humans need hypnotic triggers like a strobe light or verbal command), are always able to “hang around” you in an etheric state (whereas for human types it’s more cumbersome, requiring cloaking and teleportation which takes extra time and effort and risk and isn’t done that often). Also there’s no mistaking Grey alien vibes. There’s an actual vibe to their limited consciousness and their very being that would be different from a mere cloned or artificial human-manufactured PLF (programmable life form, term used by James Casbolt and Greer), which is more just a flesh-robot. Real Grays have something more beyond that.

Now here’s the interesting thing. The human groups are very advanced, and the most advanced ones are seen by abductees working side by side with aliens who usually act in a supervisory role in underground military bases. They’re not just props shuffled in to make the abductee think aliens and military are working together, as they’re too involved in tasks there and display psychic powers typical of aliens. By advanced, I mean these human military groups have remote viewing technology, limited invisibility cloaking, very limited psychic powers (but still above average), teleportation technology that can extract an abductee from bedroom, and electromagnetic trance-inducing technology.

But like I said, aliens and the human groups have their qualitative and logistical differences. It’s like eagles versus turtles. Sure a turtle could strap into a glider harness and fly, but an eagle can do so anytime, do it easier, and better. So it appears to me that military groups are either cooperating with, or have been taken over by, negative alien groups, and that together they are pushing a disinformation scenario that will ultimately get us to turn toward a false-positive alien group for leadership in the years ahead. In other words, the “egg in the nest” or “baby in the cradle” that needs protection is whatever alien group will be pushed as the good guys; the rest are disposable scapegoats to be used in the various disinfo scenarios. For instance, in Greer’s scenario that
egg/baby is well protected with the human military using PLFs as the scapegoat. Other disinfo vectors use reptilians and/or Grays as the sole scapegoat, leaving the blond/Nordic aliens as the egg/baby.

In my opinion, Grays, reptilians, some military factions, and some Nordic groups are part of the same conspiracy. The real good guys are other Nordic factions and whatever miscellaneous lesser alien types are on their side of non-interventionism. So you see, by splitting up the conspiratorial group into various “good cop” and “bad cop” divisions, we think we’ll be choosing the good against the bad, when really it will be two choices leading to the same outcome. The real good guys would represent a third choice that isn’t obvious. Who knows, maybe they will be demonized for trying to withhold technology from humans (which they do for ethical reasons, but portrayed as wanting to keep us in the dark) whereas the false positive groups will give us lots of technology but with a heavy price of our freedom and sovereignty.

» Have you had any positive alien encounters? It sounds like from what you’ve experienced that its all negative and scary stuff.

Yes, although the positive groups are incredibly discreet. They are non-interventionists who respect freewill, and know that a person they are guiding from behind the scenes needs to make his/her own choices in order to grow strong as a spiritual individual. Whereas the negative groups want to interfere, want to take away a person’s freewill by rigging their choices through false information and mind programming. That’s really what the difference between positive and negative aliens comes down to. Some groups are in the middle zone between these, most notably time travelers who are advanced humans but not necessarily advanced by 4D alien standards.

So my contacts with them have been mainly through abductions I don’t remember, although they are rare and are not preceded by the negative precursors and negative after-effects. They have other precursors and after-effects unique to positive abductions. Also they prefer dream-time contact more than physical. I heard it’s because the military-alien alliance is heavily monitoring U.S. airspace and tries to shoot down any positive ships that they can track, and so coming in for a physical encounter is very dangerous for them. Thus psychic projection into dreams or staying purely in the etheric. It seems they do more to your subconscious to inspire you with ideas that you then develop on your own without knowing the source. They stay behind the scenes, like I said. Every once in a while I might have a dream encounter, or dream fragments reflecting an encounter earlier in the night.

I also suspect that positive groups are loading up people’s (their contacts) subconscious minds with knowledge and instruction, that stays safely buried until some future time when it’s needed. A bit like sneaking weapons into enemy territory and caching it there for an eventual revolution. And I think that’s what the negative alien/military groups fear the most, and why they try to monitor and counter-program anyone who might be part of that.

» How can I fight better these dark forces that sometimes take hold of me, and who get very angry as soon as someone tries to supply me with assistance?

Alright, being here in this world is a bit like diving into a muddy river with garbage and piranha swimming around in it. As long as we’re in that river, we cannot be completely clean and dry and safe. So instead we can minimize attracting piranha, avoid coveting and consuming the garbage, and know how to wisely respond to any provocations. The more knowledge, self-control, and
spiritual harmony you have, the less you will be affected by these things. They still exist around you, but you then no longer are always at their mercy.

For instance, just because you use a computer, glitches can happen either naturally or be induced. That’s a given. But your reaction to it is entirely your own choosing. I received a fortune cookie once that said, “You control your own reactions, and therein lies your freedom.” Very wise fortune. I also think oracles and fortune cookies and such, can be avenues for messages from beyond this space-time.

Anyway, what I do is 1) minimize attracting negative attention, and 2) maximize the elegance in how I handle such attention when it comes.

Minimizing attention is tricky. But basically the brighter the light, the darker the shadow, meaning the more you swing into strong positivity, the more you catch attention of dark forces. Which is fine, as long as you’re strong and aware enough to handle the attention. You only want to minimize it enough so that you don’t attract more than you can handle. And the way that works, is by never straying too far from your equilibrium, but just going positive enough that over time that becomes your new equilibrium point, then you can go a bit further. Handling the attention is all about controlling your reactions, all about knowing what the attack is trying to get you to do, and then not doing that.

I noticed that attacks generally operate through:

1) getting you to back down through fear and intimidation,
2) getting you to lose faith and confidence through depression and sudden feeling of emptiness and doubt,
3) getting you obsessed with some big distraction that you know deep down is a waste of time,
4) inducing a moment of forgetfulness that leads to a big drama (like forgetting to save a document, forgetting keys, etc.),
5) getting you to shoot yourself in the foot through an over-reaction, like saying regretful words to someone,
6) wearing you down through sleep disturbances and other people in life that cause you stress.

Of course these happen naturally too from time to time, but when they cluster together the probability of it being mere chance goes way down. These are all means that dark forces regularly use. I’m sure you are familiar with a lot of them. There are other methods that I can’t think of right now.

So basically being calmly vigilant/watchful, taking precautions, thinking ahead, using self-control to nip any irrational thoughts and feelings in the bud, and staying positive enough to not get imbalanced by negative moods — these work pretty well for me. And the thing is this — if you are already prepared to handle something ahead of time, it has less chances of happening. I mean, why would dark forces attack you where you are prepared and strongest? They would call off the attack since it would be a waste of their energy. Thus they always hit where you aren’t looking, where you aren’t expecting, what you aren’t noticing.

And thus awareness is key. But calm awareness with a tinge of positivity and confidence and optimism, because emotion does attract experiences or bend probability, and if you have this
underlying fear, like a gnawing worry that grips you and has a life of its own, that means you are magnetized and attracting more of these than you actually need to. If you can be solid as a rock and tranquil as a sea inside, yet aware and precautionary on the outside via your awareness and actions, then you’ve got your bases covered.

Hmm, that’s all that comes to mind right now. I’m still in the process of figuring this all out too. It would be a lot easier if I could see etheric things at command; then at least I can see my own etheric/auric imbalances, what physically invisible entities are around, and so on. But for now, it’s about doing what we can with our common sense, experience, and intuition.

» Did aliens introduce the knowledge we know as occult or esoteric knowledge and thus begin the mystery schools of antiquity? Or are aliens and their connection to mankind’s origins just a part of a deeply esoteric doctrine.

Mystery schools almost always claim to have been given their knowledge by higher beings, whether directly by such a being (like the idea that Hermes Trismegistus was an extraterrestrial) or indirectly with a human being transferred that knowledge through revelation by either aliens or divine beings.

So yes, it seems that knowledge about things beyond the human sphere, were injected into our knowledge pool by beings from beyond the human sphere. But they could be aliens, angels, demons, future human time travelers, the species group consciousness of animals or hallucinogenic plants, elemental beings, etc. Maybe different sources depending on the tradition.

It does seem that Hermeticism, Sufism, and Toltec shamanism were both seeded by humanoid aliens. I’m guessing possibly Nordic-like humanoids, since accounts of their philosophy is similar to what ended up being transmitted through those mystery schools. Not to mention, humanoid aliens would be similar enough to us, that techniques that worked for them might work for us. Although I can’t rule out them being so smart as to custom design spiritual practices tailored to our physical and nonphysical makeup.

There may sometimes be a long chain of transmission between the original nonhuman source and the final human tradition. For instance, take someone like Rudolf Steiner who started the anthroposophy movement. Well when he was young, he got in touch with and got tutored by what were likely real Rosicrucians (not the modern ones that advertise in magazines). He was taught a lot of stuff by them, but also had enough psychic vision and intellect to figure things out for himself. But they definitely gave him a head start. Where did they get their knowledge? Probably goes way back. Real mystery schools don’t just pass on dead knowledge, like what the freemasons do, but also keep it fresh with communion with that higher source. So those real Rosicrucians, for all we know, could still be actively taught and guided by alien humanoids. Thus the knowledge and skills to expand that knowledge could both originate, and later be expanded and refreshed on an ongoing basis, by non-human beings.

William Bramley’s book “The Gods of Eden” says as much, that aliens founded the Egyptian mystery schools, and that a rebellion or split happened that began a dark brotherhood that has ruled Earth to this day.

» If multi-dimensional beings exist who can manipulate events in past, present, future in order to advance their objectives, why would anyone be “allowed” to publish information about them like
this website? And does the simple fact that it exists here and/or me being able to read it, demonstrate that it must be of no significance towards my own personal growth?

Timeline manipulation has its limits, or degrees of limitation depending on who is manipulating and using what method. The one thing limiting everything is freewill. It seems that timeline manipulators try not to violate freewill for whatever reason. I suspect it’s some law of metaphysics and physics that they must obey in order to even “get a lock” on a portion of the timeline to edit.

But of those who do not violate freewill, some respect it completely, and others try their best to subvert it indirectly without directly violating it. Of the latter kind, what they do is hit points on the timeline where a decision is being made, or some pivot point, sensitive point, critical moment, that sort of thing. Could be as simple as someone deciding whether or not to attend a conference where, if they did, they would end up meeting someone that changes their life in a positive direction; suddenly they get hit with a feeling of sadness and depression, and mistaking it for an intuitive warning not to go, stay home, and thus the future changes. That’s an example of a past point being hit with an emotional signal in order to change the future. It happens all the time.

Another method used is some kind of synchronistic obstacle. Say this person is on his way to the conference and a really odd obstacle arises, let’s say an accident or roadblock with cars backed up for blocks. Originally this accident didn’t happen. Either the driver got hit with sudden sleepiness and crashed or maybe looked down at his cellphone when originally he wouldn’t have, or maybe the accident isn’t even real but some kind of artificial event sequence patched into the timeline. Point being that it doesn’t violate the person (visiting the conference)’s freewill because he still has the choice of waiting an extra ten minutes or taking a detour, he can still make it, just now his choice is a little harder to accomplish than before, but not completely blocked.

So timeline manipulators often hit the softest spots, which are thoughts and emotions and beliefs. After that, they might be able to insert artificial events. I don’t know how real those events are, but they are physical and can be touched, it’s just that they weren’t originally there prior to the edit. There also appears to be certain technology that allows greater degrees of timeline editing, their advantage lying not in how sophisticated the technology is, but what “access privileges” it has been given by its designers, which depends on the highness of consciousness and spiritual development of the designers and builders. It’s attuned to their consciousness, and if they have great powers over reality, then so will the device, thus if the device is somehow captured and used by lower negative forces, those forces will have greater power than they would otherwise. In the Bible, the Ark of the Covenant was one such device.

Negative forces patiently manipulate the timeline. If you have ever played pickup-sticks, it’s like that… careful editing here and there where possible without disturbing too much at a time, but approaching the goal of domination. They are limited by the freewill of the population they are trying to ensnare. And that’s a problem because positive forces, let’s say divine intervention, is likewise limited by freewill of those they are trying to help. Therefore a slow process of manipulation is countered by a slow process of liberation, and that’s what we’re in right now. Lots of tug of wars going on, from the tiniest to the largest, and I believe it will escalate severely in the years ahead.

The reason freewill must be preserved is because that is the point of creation, to learn and grow
from the choices you make, it’s the prime directive of existence. If the Creator wanted to micromanage everything and control it according to its own Will, then there would be no freewill and no being could choose alignment with the Creator because the choice would already be made for him or her. But if there is choice to choose negative, then the choice for positive is real and so even the most powerful of positive beings, the Creator, needs to allow for freewill, maybe even enforcing it, but not doing anything about people choosing negative if they so desire and if it serves their learning path in the end like the story of the Prodigal Son.

Our personal choices and experiences do matter. We do navigate our way through the terrain of life. Timeline manipulation changes the terrain here and there, and maybe now we must climb a hill twice as high as before, but we still climb if we must. The edits bias our choices, but don’t completely block them. Well, the only exception is if a being much more powerful than ourselves, but of a positive nature and connected to ourselves (like our Higher Self) deems it absolutely necessary to keep us from making a choice that would ruin everything, then we will find our ability to make the choice blocked. Maybe we encounter obstacle after obstacle, or some situation that forces us to not make it, and in the end we give up because we simply cannot do it. That happens rarely but it does happen.

Aside from changing the terrain, timeline manipulation may also attempt to influence our decisions, emotions, beliefs… and there you use discernment and self-control to distinguish what is true, and what is genuine intuition or higher knowing and not just some artificial blast of emotions trying to be plastered onto you.

» Why are you sure that we have freewill and not are living in a simulation?

We could be living in a simulation, but even then we have limited freewill. Freewill isn’t an all-or-nothing thing. There are different levels of it. You can have freewill within restricted parameters. In fact that’s what physical reality is. If you have freewill to choose your direction in life, but not freewill to jump off the ground and float in mid-air, does that mean you don’t have freewill at all? It just means you have freewill in some areas, and not in others.

So, what makes me think we have any freewill at all? Mainly because by becoming aware of a chain of causality, one can go against it. If we have no freewill, then everything is pre-decided. Thus even if I become aware of the future, if there were no freewill then there’s nothing I can do to change it. And yet, I can. If you were God and told me I would drop my pen in exactly 5 seconds, based on that I can choose to keep holding it, making the prediction wrong.

In a more real-life example, we can see a tug-of-war in our own lives, opposite impulses pulling us in different directions. But it’s not always the strongest one that wins. For most people it is, as they’re not aware, not having willpower, and not caring, so they go whichever way the wind blows. But by becoming aware of these impulses, one can then choose which to go against. If all environmental and biological conditions induce a feeling of hunger in me, and I have before me a plate of food, then causality says I would be driven to eat it right away. If I didn’t think, I would. But if I become aware that causal forces are driving me to eat, that awareness alone is enough for me to choose to resist, thereby contradicting causality and showing I have freewill.

» (question about Sasquatch/Bigfoot)
I am in complete agreement that Sasquatch is not just a sophisticated bipedal gorilla-like animal native to certain mountains and woods. There is a supernatural component to them. No corpse has ever been recovered. And like you said footprints disappear into thin air.

Three possibilities come to my mind:

1) They are mere projections or illusions created by nonhuman trickster entities (the “ultra-terrestrials” hypothesized by John Keel in *The Mothman Prophecies*).

2) They are actual physical beings, but have developed the ability to dematerialize, teleport, become invisible, etc. (like chameleons changing color, but on a much more sophisticated level).

3) They are physical, but not native to Earth, and under the ownership and direction of other entities who use them, move them, and disappear them as needed.

The third possibility is supported by abduction/UFO accounts, where the Sasquatch has been seen during some abductions man-handling abductees. For instance, someone gets abducted while going for a walk in the woods; they get paralyzed by some force field and then a Sasquatch carries them into a craft where other beings like reptilian, mantis, or Grays await to carry out the finer details of the abduction. As far as the Sasquatch goes, if physical beings like ourselves can be teleported into and out of alien crafts, then aliens (whomever they may be) could do likewise with physical servants in their keep. No abduction account, to my knowledge, has ever portrayed Sasquatch in a position of authority. They are always lower class servants, used mainly for brute physical tasks.

Now in my own experience, there is a definite difference between demons and aliens, although it appears to me that negative aliens (including those pretending to be good guys) are either possessed by demons or ultimately working in their service. The difference is that demons are more spirit-like, nonphysical, non-technological, opportunistic, like sharks feeding on a person and trying to possess them, whereas true aliens tend to be more patient, strategic, and far more likely to use actual technology whose reason for operation you can sleuth out, whereas trickster/demonic entities rarely do that, and if they do, it’s strictly sham props psychically projected that don’t have any substance to them or logic to their operation.

But for all practical purposes, negative aliens and demons are both bad news, and both operate along the lines of spiritual warfare when ensnaring and manipulating their targets. Spiritual warfare works against both of them as well, but that doesn’t mean aliens and demons are identical, in my view. More like demons have both feet in the nonphysical realms, aliens have one foot there and one foot in the physical. Thus, with both sharing operation/presence in the nonphysical, spiritual warfare is used by, and can be used against, both of them.

In fact, that is the great secret being hidden in the alien/UFO phenomenon — that it has a spiritual/demonic component, and that spiritual methods can be used to combat them, because they’re not 100% 3D physical beings like us. I’d say aliens are amphibious, some mostly like us, some mostly like demons, some perhaps even resembling angels, and everything in between. It’s a spectrum, not a black and white thing. After all, even with people you have a spectrum… some are more angelic/Christlike, others are more demonic in their predatory ways, and everything in between.

» From what I understand, the aliens intervening the humanity at this time are 3-dimensional beings
and not hyperdimensional beings as you claim. I thought all their abilities (such as walking through wall — by somehow aligning electrons of all the atoms of nearby objects including their bodies and abductees" bodies in order to lower the densities) were via technological devices.

There are two mainstream (in the UFO community) views on this. One is that all aliens are physical 3D beings from other planets. This is the nuts-n-bolts “extraterrestrial hypothesis” espoused officially by . The other is that they are shadow puppets projected by nonphysical trickster entities using the guise of aliens to playing to our modern science fiction expectations. That is the “ultra-terrestrial hypothesis” espoused by Jacques Vallee.

Neither of these explain the full range of observations from abduction reports and alien/UFO encounters. I think these two are just opposite ends of the same spectrum, with most aliens being somewhere in between and able to shift between degrees on the spectrum.

If they downshift fully into our 3D spacetime then they are physical to us. If they upshift toward a more timeless state, then they can view history from outside of time. In between, they are relatively tangible to each other and use actual technology, but all of it is naturally invisible to us because it is shifted away from our reality. If we get abducted and shifted into their environment, then we can interact. If they shift into our environment, we can interact as well. But by default we are in our environment, and they are in their native shifted environment.

There are several reasons why I think this is likely:

• Of all the thousands of UFO sightings and drawings of alien crafts, there is very little similarity among them. As if the ship for each sighting were newly made and never used again. If these were physical crafts built just like our military builds their jets, then we would see the exact same crafts repeatedly throughout history. That they are new each time suggests they are materialized or projected on the spot as needed, indicating a projection into our reality from some other dimension.

• Strong indications that some aliens are involved in harvesting our emotional and life-force energies, that it gives them sustenance and may be used in their technology. This says that neither they, nor their technology, is 100% physical in the same way ours is. Because they have requirements for something nonphysical to accomplish things that don’t fit within our 3D physics.

• We know that nonphysical beings like ghosts, angels, demons, and spirits exist. We know from observation how they behave, how they don’t use technology, how they can lurk around invisibly yet subtly influence us, how they can sometimes even materialize to our five senses. Aliens can have all these traits but not as purely so, suggesting aliens are somewhat in between where we are, and where these purely nonphysical beings are, on that spectrum.

• Jacques Vallee pointed out how again and again their technology and behaviors don’t fit within 3D physics, within linear time, within purely physical motivations. He concluded that they are nonphysical, but I think they are in between and that both their technology and bodies are more fourth dimensional than three dimensional. But they can still become physical, as all the trace evidence and physical evidence of UFOs and aliens suggests. Only
that other observations show they are more than that too.

- Beings can move through walls, be invisible, materialize without the aid of technology. Some aliens can do this, and they tend to be the really advanced ones. So if they’re not using technology to do it, but can do it with their minds alone, are they still to be considered 3D beings like us? If ghosts can do it without technology, why not aliens. The line between technology and mind is blurred at this higher level; technology is just the application and externalization of what consciousness alone can do given enough spiritual development.

- There’s the phenomenon of aliens abducting only people’s souls, not their bodies. And also giving people etheric implants and not just physical. Also the phenomenon of alien entity attachments, that is, a nonphysical Grey alien attached to a person possessing him or her. And additionally, people who astral project can often see aliens (including Grays) hanging around the room that were invisible to physical eyes. These are not characteristic of purely physical beings with 3D technology like ours. It suggests they are of a dimensionally more expansive nature than our own daily existence which is strictly limited to 3D matter and linear time.

- There are frequent anecdotes where aliens indicate being able to directly perceive our probable futures, our alternate selves, and how they need to adjust themselves to our particular time or time rate or frequency, that they need to focus or synchronize themselves with our present moment in space-time. This indicates that they are not 100% from here, from this time, from this space. Also they seem adept at time travel, or seeing the timeline from outside of time. They may be on a different “channel” or “radio station” so to speak, nearby yet not always fully in our environment.

So by hyper-dimensional, I mean their default state of existence is a superset of ours. We are like turtles who can only crawl on land, and they are like certain birds who can dive, swim, walk, and fly. We occupy a plane, and they occupy not only that plane but the space above and below it. We are like squares, they are like cubes. We perceive and build our technology on strictly 3D physics, and they perceive and build their technology on what appears to be 4D physics. I’m not saying they are nonphysical beings. Just saying that they are variably physical, being able to crawl on land like us, but also being able to take flight and live in trees above where we can see and interact with them.

» What is the role of emotions? They are what connect humans together. They essentially are the matrix. They are how we relate to one another. By paying attention to my own emotions I find I change the outcome of many of the people around me. Sometimes this is for mutual benefit and sometimes not.

Emotions are forces that push us out of homeostasis or equilibrium. If they are harmful emotions, they push us backwards and beneath our potential, to make us underachievers through our depression/self-doubt, or make us do unwise reactive choices like acting in a moment of hate only to regret it later. If they are helpful emotions, they can push us forwards past homeostasis into new territory we otherwise wouldn’t have had the confidence to enter. So emotions are like gravitational fields; they bind us toward or against the object of attraction/repulsion, against our tendency to remain where we are. They can be a hindrance of the end result is something unwise or limiting;
helpful if the end result is an expansion.

We can use emotions if 1) we become aware of them as they arise BEFORE they influence our
decision, thinking it over and then deciding whether to go along with them (then amping them up to
motivate us) or whether to dissipate them through an act of willpower and higher understanding of
the situation. So they are like horses too — do you ride the horse where YOU want to go, or do you
let the horse take you wherever IT wants to go (off a cliff)?

The matrix control system aims to trigger emotions of hindrance and ignorance. That includes both
ignorant bliss that makes you ignore problems, and negative emotions that preoccupy you with
imaginary problems or create them in the first place. So it’s a gravitational field of sorts pulling us
toward the matrix by limiting us and swaying our choices in the wrong direction.

The higher balance between these is positive emotions rooted in or checked by awareness to make
sure it’s a healthy impulse. Then it’s a gravity field originating from a probable future of greater
spiritual strength and success. So if you are lacking motivation for something out of sheer apathy,
hesitant to change, not really feeling like being nice today, etc. then one can invoke emotions to
give yourself some momentum towards that ends.

The secret to “reality creation” is resonating with the very future you are aiming for, by feeling now
exactly how you would feel then when it’s accomplished. The emotions resonate your future self
who feels the same. Then you need awareness to avoid the pitfalls on the way. In reverse, probable
futures on their way can induce corresponding emotions in you now. So if someone is bad news,
you may feel a gut reaction or aversion to them, since not only do you subconsciously know who
they are inside, but the future calamity brought about by your interaction with them ripples back in
linear time and hits you in the solar plexus.

» What does STS and STO stand for?

STS stands for “service to self” — it’s a term that originated with the Ra Material (aka The Law of
One books).

STO means “service to others” — both these terms were used in abbreviated form later in the
Cassiopaean Material.

These represent the negative/positive spiritual orientations, or paths of spiritual evolution. The STO
path serves self by also serving others. The STS path serves self at the expense of others. STO is the
path of balance and maximum freewill, while STS is the path of imbalance and maximum control
over others.

There’s a common misconception that STO means never serving self, and blindly serving others
and getting eaten alive by abusers taking advantage of one’s kindness.

That is not at all what STO is. STO is serving the spiritual upliftment and empowerment of others,
which doesn’t happen when you’re just feeding their egos or predatory impulses.

If you are unwise and ruin your health and life overextending yourself, you end up reducing your
lifespan and energy and thereby reduce how much total positive impact you can have. Which is why
STS is about balance and maximization, balance between self and others.

STS is a path of evolution in the sense that one becomes more perfected as a separated fragment of
the Creator, by rebelling against Creation and trying to make everyone else an extension of your will. The end destination of that path is to merge with the sleeping half of creation, which is physical matter. Before that, such beings make it up the ranks of the demonic hierarchy and eventually cave in on themselves from being so dark and low vibrational.

» What if STO’s are just putting out the energy as food for the STS’s?

That’s not really STO then. It’s not STO to feed STS, as that would be increasing imbalance. STO is about maximizing balance in the system overall, which means not contributing to further imbalance and restoring balance where needed. Those compassionate but naive people who just feed the predators have the right intentions but not the wisdom. And very often they are acting from secret STS motives to make themselves feel better like they are goody martyrs or something. A real STO does it out of understanding and love, not just blind pity.

That’s why it’s said that we here, no matter how good our intentions, are fundamentally STS. And although we can become candidates for STO status, being that we’re humans in this matrix system means we have STS flaws and thus our good intentions will easily feed the STS because we are part of that food chain. By becoming wiser and acting more from our wisdom/heart/spirit, we avoid misplacing our help and therefore grow closer to STO graduation. Love without wisdom is foolishness if you think about it.

There is common misunderstanding on the net about the meaning of STO and STS. STO is serving self by serving others in balance between yourself and others, while STS is serving self through exploitation of others with imbalance between yourself and others. So the important point is balance versus imbalance, rather than never caring for yourself versus only caring for yourself. Maximum balance is they key, maximization of freewill in yourself and in others, not one at the expense of the other. Freewill is they key to conscious evolution; without it, there would only be deterministic motions rather than evolution and hence no novelty for the Creator. That’s why maximizing freewill is maximizing the purpose of Creation.

Also, as long as we are in human physical bodies on 3D Earth, we are fundamentally STS due to our biology and mode of existence. We can have STO impulses, lean in an STO direction, but we are still tied to an STS existence in an STS world. Meaning, we still need food, shelter, money, and we are stuck in linear time bounded heavily by physical laws. The balance between our needs and what we give therefore makes us less capable of serving the spiritual awakening of others than what a true STO being can do who isn’t part of this matrix Earth world, because they have less physical and logistical limitations.

For instance, whereas we can blindly help someone who abuses our trust, and we lose a couple months rent in the process and then go hungry, a completely STO being would first of all be able to see someone’s needs and not fall for such a mistake, plus they would be so in tune with the flow of the universe that they would never experience lack due to synchronistic help and being able to bend time and so on.

So the best we can be is aim in an STO direction (serving self in balance with serving others) even if our location is in an STS mode of existence. Besides, if one were to be imbalanced toward serving others at the expense of taking care of self, then one would die sooner, become poorer sooner, and otherwise be incapacitated, which makes one less capable in the long run of maximizing
the helping of others. Therefore only balance maximizes it, whereas shortsighted martyrdom cuts it short in the long run. Unless of course one absolutely must make an act of martyrdom if it maximizes things (for instance, the myth of Jesus willingly going along with the crucifixion, because in not resisting he was to only grow that much more powerful in the minds of man).

So either way you do end up serving yourself. Question is, do you do it at the expense of others, or by also helping them along as well? Do you acquire freewill and personal power by taking it from others, or by helping them attain it too? It’s the net result that counts for now. Your intention is what matters too.

» We are like batteries, either taking energy in or putting energy out. We sometimes have to take that energy back or we run low.

The thing about STS is that it’s defined by limited energy, limited resources, and thus competition and survival. Maybe you’ve noticed how when you truly love someone or something, your energy available toward it is much higher than if you feel aversion and must force yourself to be with them or do the task. If you love something, like music or hanging out with friends, your energy to do that will be greater than even your physical impulse to sleep, for some time at least. This shows that love, and STO-oriented impulses that truly come from within, originate from a boundless source. And this means that we become more capable of giving with fewer drain on our insides, if we act from noble soul-inspiring motivations. But while human, it’s still not infinite, and you’re right we run low, not to mention our lifespans are limited. So without awareness to make sure the energy goes in the right place, we might as well be dumping it down a toilet; especially if we step over the line and help people who refuse to help themselves, who become dependent on you to carry their weight; no STO being would do that, since they would see that this actually spiritually harms the person by playing into their ego and spiritual weaknesses. The price is a weakening of their spirit, and a weakening of yours. Therefore awareness is necessary to optimize where you put your energy.

» I searched your site, and there is little talk about the military. How does this fit into the whole picture? Can you be in the military without negative effects, or is this exactly where they want you to end up to brain wash you?

When you join the military, you sign over your life and your freewill. They can move you wherever they want, experiment on you, send you into combat to die, etc. So although it sounds like a brave and adventurous move to see the world, your world actually grows smaller because you can only be where they order you to be. Also basic training requires some degree of breaking you down and remolding you. That’s brainwashing. The mental focus is on killing, violence, ruthlessness, cunning, machismo, and the enemy. That mindset puts you squarely in the realm of STS/Service-to-Self frequencies.

You also enter directly into the grips of the black operations projects, the military abductors and mind programmers who possess advanced technology. This means anyone in the military is way more susceptible to abduction, implantation, and mind control than a civilian. That’s why there are so few whistleblowers at the deep black levels, because anyone who gets clearance also gets higher and higher degrees of monitoring and control. It’s very bad news to get involved in that stuff, because ultimately it’s no different from joining a satanic coven and making pacts with demonic entities. It carries karmic consequences into other lives.
The surface military is inconsequential. By that I mean the military that your neighbor could join. The deeper black/shadow military residing in underground bases, those are the ones that concern me. Because whereas the surface military is used to depopulate the gullible and carry out political actions on the world stage, it’s the shadow military that really controls things. I think they interface with the alien levels of the control system. They have very advanced technology, but not fully on par with alien technology, though it’s similar yet clunkier too and more limited to spacetime instead of being fully etheric or hyper-dimensional. Anyway, they are like the theater crew behind the curtain that you never see, that preps the stage characters and props and controls the lighting.

Their recruits do include members of the surface military. For instance, you join the surface military and get monitored/tested for your abilities. If you have something unusual like a strong intellect and/or psychic powers, you may get pulled aside to work on a secret project. Those who get really deep give up their old lives, maybe have a fake death, and continue working in the shadow military world doing who knows what. I doubt they remain themselves anymore, they’re probably so programmed and implanted by that point. I heard that if you work for such projects, your thoughts are monitored 24/7 for any sign of contradiction or dissent, and you are dealt with accordingly. Thus the environment is highly controlled and people are scared to even think or question other than what little compartmentalized job they are told to do. In there you also have the sicko power trippers who participate in military/alien abductions and engage in things like torture and rape of abductees, just because they can. A lot of them are societal rejects with no family connections, who got involved in criminal/satanic activities and were recruited through their connections to serve in these underground bases. If it can happen at Abu Ghraib, it happens all the time in the black military world, intentionally so.

So overall, I’d say the military is just another tool of the control system, and joining it means giving away rights to your mind, body, and soul. Not to say all military personnel are evil, as it appears there could be some fifth columnists and genuine “patriot” types who are just stuck in a hard place between keeping their positions and throwing a coup. Probably lots of secret infighting and cold-war type internal battles that we don’t see in the public. Not anything I’d want to be part of.

» Could you maybe explain a bit about your experience with a psychomanteum?

What I discovered so far, is that the prerequisite is being able to achieve a hypnagagic trance with your eyes open. So first you learn that with your eyes closed, and once conditioned to that, doing it with eyes open. I only barely succeeded on a couple occasions, and not for long, so it’s been very difficult. Doing it with eyes closed means doing progressive relaxation, tensing and releasing all the muscles, eliminating all tension everywhere, then trying to keep aware as you fall asleep. Problem is, staying aware tends to keep me from falling asleep. Or rather, I jolt myself out of it reactively when I notice myself slipping into sleep. Best success has been after waking up in the middle of sleep, then staying aware while drifting off, since the body then is already in tired sleep mode.

So, when you do this with eyes open, you bypass the physical eyes and see with your third eye. For instance, couple months ago I was experimenting with falling asleep while sitting in an office chair. I’d drift off, then catch myself and quickly open my eyes. This gives me about 5-10 seconds before my mind resynchronizes with linear 3D reality. Until then, I can see some weird stuff. They’re called hypnopompic hallucinations, but I think a lot of them are real. In this case, I was able to see the top of my toe (had my legs crossed) even though with my regular physical eyes I could only see
the joint due to my physical eyes being lower perspective. So as I snapped out of this state, I once again saw only the joint. So I raised my head to see how high I’d have to see the top of the toe, and it was about 2 inches. That means in my hypnopompic state, my vision was two inches higher, originating from my forehead. Either I was seeing through the third eye, or my etheric eyes detached from the physical and moved upwards by a couple inches.

Anyway, in this state I can see etheric things normally hidden from view. Random stuff, like astral bugs, what looks like floating tissues, these grapefruit sized balls of writhing spaghetti things, frame-like geometric structures hovering before me. These are all fully three dimensional in appearance, and even have the correct lighting for the room environment. So I suspect they are real but ever so slightly phased out from regular physical reality. Only one time did I see a being in this state, a blond female in a silver jumpsuit standing next to my bed. I think it was a phased out Nordic alien watching me for some reason.

Alright, so that is the vision needed to see stuff in a psychomanteum. The psychomanteum environment makes it easier to achieve this state, due to sensory deprivation and a bit of random light flickering. Plus seeing into a dark mirror lets you focus on infinity, which is when your eyes are most relaxed, and as I said relaxation is half the equation for getting into this state. But if you’re wound up like me, then you’d have to practice the hypnogogic/hypnopompic state in bed with eyes closed first for a while, and only when you get good at that, at keeping your mind awake as your body falls asleep, will you have success in there.

The black mirror therefore acts as an infinite focus point, and a blank screen against which these “hallucinations” play out. From what I read, it’s pretty much dreaming with your eyes open but also observing the physical environment at the same time. It’s like having one vision superimposed upon another. What you end up seeing is largely symbolic, just like in a dream. So if I see some astral bug crawling up a wall, it’s not actually a wasp or spider, but an energy construct or being that is most closely approximated by my subconscious as a wasp or spider. Also, I noticed that some of these are external projections of internal biological conditions, let’s say some infection or disease or cold coming on, as well as emotional states; therefore what you see in this state, you have to distinguish between what’s actually there and external, and what is internal to you. It can be done. Rudolf Steiner (1900’s clairvoyant and mystic) was an expert at this and wrote a couple books on how to do it (although they weren’t clearly written or easy to read. “How to Know Higher Worlds” is one of them).

» If one supports the alien belief system and the Law of Attraction, I would imagine many of ones desires would come true toward that end.

It’s a bit complicated but goes something like this:

• If you read about aliens and start fearing them, thinking every night that they might abduct you and getting creeped out, then you may get some scary alien visitations. I think they pick up on your focusing on them, emitting fear, and come in to mess with you while you are in such a vulnerable state. That’s an example of thought/belief attracting an alien experience.

• Even if you don’t believe in aliens, don’t read or think about them, if aliens decide you are useful to them, they will abduct you regardless and most of the time you won’t remember it except for after-effects that you may rationalize away as just a strange night of sleep. That's
an example of aliens being in your life even if you don’t believe/think about them. It’s their choice.

• If you don’t know much about aliens and believe they are all our friends, and deeply wish to meet them, then very likely you will get abducted or contacted by them and trained into becoming a “sales representative” for them with regards to spreading good word about them to other people. Problem is most of the time these are negative aliens pretending to be good guys, and using fake stories and ego hooks to make you feel special. So that’s an example of believing that aliens are positive while attracting negative aliens pretending to be positive, mainly due to lack of awareness. The gullibility attracts deceivers. So just because one has a positive vibe, does not mean one will attract positive-vibed aliens, for it can also attract those who merely project that.

• If aliens show up to the world, it affects everybody in the long-run. This means that even those who don’t believe in aliens will be affected. And that means worldwide events don’t really depend on any particular individual’s belief, but rather on the collective conditions and mindsets of the world. So regardless of what you and I believe, what aliens will do in the future with the world may be out of our hands. Well, unless we are instrumental in changing world conditions of perceptions of aliens.

So the main thing I can say is, the Law of Attraction, when it comes to aliens, is more about strengthening a connection with a particular alien group. And that even if you do no strengthening at all with them, they can still access you and be in your life for other reasons. What I have noticed, however, is that strengthening the connection increases the tangible-ness or physicality or directness of the interaction. Thus, if you have a strong connection with the Grays you will likely have more memorable and emotionally impacting abductions with them (which is not a good idea). Whereas if you have no connection on your part, it could still happen but it will be too vague and less memorable. Belief and emotion are the driving factors behind a stronger connection. This works with non-alien beings too. For instance, if you believe in Jesus and have a strong emotional connection, you may start dreaming and experiencing visions of Jesus.

A good example of strengthening connection to negative forces, is with people who are always on edge, paranoid (for good reason because real phenomena are happening), and fearful of what aliens will do to them next. This mindset actually increases the severity and frequency of abductions. Like they will get more bruises and marks more often, as an example. On the other hand, even if they stop believing in aliens completely, that doesn’t mean abductions will also completely stop. All belief does there is stop attracting; to go further and block it, one must either have a counter-belief or be aware without any fear or emotional attraction of their tactics and taking active countermeasures.

Dropping fear and obsession (not same as prudence and mindfulness), increasing awareness, taking active countermeasures, and creating a positive counter-belief are possible solutions to this, although ideally it takes a complete change in attitude/being/temperament to make a real difference, which it seems most people cannot do out of their own willpower and must let experience and exhaustion and suffering hammer them into changing.
I have been doing a TON of research lately, and I came across your site. But there is just SO much to read through and to think about! I don’t know where to begin!

What I do is start with what I can’t deny based on personal experience, and what others I have no reason to doubt have experienced. This gives a base of “givens” that narrow down what’s really going on. For instance, the idea that people have had past lives, that alone disproves the skeptic scientific idea that we’re just walking bags of meat without a soul.

Now, I have had the benefit of some strange experiences in life. Alien abductions as a kid. Ghost sightings. Synchronicities. Prophetic dreams. Ear ringings that correlate with impending emotionally distressing events in my life. And then I have friends, or trusted acquaintances, who have had even weirder experiences. These have given me a big set of “givens” from which I’ve been forced to come up with best-fit theories to account for them. And thus the theories you see on my site. They are the minimum I need, to account for what I cannot deny.

Getting overwhelmed, confused, lost, or depressed can be a problem. That’s why I have a blank notebook which I periodically use to sketch out what I know, what I don’t know, what questions I have, what unresolved mysteries there are, and so on. Trying to hack away at the mystery. It’s this taking time to contemplate and work things out that give me some confidence to at least pick a direction and follow it, test it out. Way better than never digesting anything and just throwing my hands up in the air, and getting paralyzed not knowing what to believe. I think believing something confidently is necessary, as long as you are willing to instantly change your belief as soon as something better comes along, or some flaw comes to your attention.

How can I talk to people close to me about “fringe knowledge”?

Most don’t even have a frame of reference. I mean, how many have even heard of astral projection or remember having weird dreams as a child? So this fringe knowledge stuff is so foreign to them, it’s like telling them about the electrical system of a water treatment plant. But if I had to do it, I would frame these ideas as what if questions, or “isn’t it weird that… “ (name some fact or trivia that’s a bit odd) and then launch into some speculation.

As long as you don’t come across as preaching, angry, or serious, but rather as being curious yourself and also engaging their curiosity, then people tend to be more open. Like if you seem genuinely perplexed and innocent at having come across some mystery or data that contradicts your old reality (their reality) then it’s more like sharing with them a mystery instead of thumping them on the head.

Kids like this approach, as they like to wonder about fantastic possibilities. Older people might go the route of “don’t think such silly things” or else play the devil’s advocate just to get a rise out of you. See, people can watch science fiction movies because it’s fiction. Once it becomes reality for them, then it’s scary, but until then they can go along with it. So even if people lack a frame of reference, maybe they can think speculatively. Then at least the concepts penetrate their mind, and should one day proof come their way that it’s all real, boom they already have pre-thought the possibilities.

Do you have any tips or info how to pray or pray the right way?

The key is to evoke the emotion of the very thing you’re praying for. So if you are praying for
protection, try to evoke the feeling of safety and comfort that comes with having protection as though you’re relieved your prayer is being fulfilled, that it’s a done deal. This, instead of say, feeling overwhelmed with terror and only feeling that while begging for protection, which only resonates you with the probable future of victimhood and terror.

Try to adopt an earnest, sincere, bottom-of-your-heart attitude, but not with a pissy or commanding tone to it as higher positive beings don’t obey ego or rudeness.

The most effective prayer is done when you aren’t fully aware of your surroundings, but totally absorbed and committed to the thing you’re praying about. It has to be consciously done, intended, and not just mindlessly recited like some catholic rosary bead prayer thing.

Also be careful what you pray for, since if it comes from ego and base desire, it will open the door for negative or demonic beings to fulfill it, but at the cost of you losing some of your freedom and your regret when it comes true and is more than you bargained for.

To connect with the right source via prayer, you have to raise your vibes, raise your mood, try to work up some optimism, gratitude, love or whatever is positive, since that brings you vibrationally closer to those higher positive forces (and makes your consciousness more potent as a reality-bending force field).

Prayers don’t have to be long, they don’t have to be ritualistic with repetition or symbols or burning of herbs or anything, just close your eyes and think of the highest spiritual power you can, and address it. The end with a thanks, preferably a “thanks for hearing my prayer” or “thanks for fulfilling my request” (saying it with conviction and relief and certainty, not doubt, since doubt means you are sending mixed signals.

Lastly, might be good idea to add in, “for the highest spiritual good of myself and all involved” if praying for a request.

» I was wondering if you could give me anymore information on the dangers of transcendental meditation?

There are different kinds of meditation, some that heighten your awareness by extending your conscious awareness into new areas, and ones that handicap your conscious awareness by obliterating it through submerging into lowered areas. The TM technique is the latter type. It involves prolonged periods of chanting mantras given to you by a trained instructor.

The problem is that it ends up being a form of self-hypnosis where you get entranced by the repetition of the mantra sound and thereby enter a reduced-awareness, submerged, highly suggestible state of mind. It’s said to be successful if you “get so deep that when you come out of it you don’t know where you’ve been for the past couple hours” — that’s very bad. It shows an obliteration of awareness, like a blackout.

I tried this for a while back in high school. It damaged my ability to stay focused and sharp, so like when giving speeches or talking to people I’d sometimes slip into this blanked-out state of mind where I just stop thinking, and so can’t continue to talk. It was a comfortable place to be, to return to, to fall back upon, but it’s a vegetative embryonic state and dangerous. For more on problems with the TM technique, take a look at suggestibility.org.
Real meditation has the opposite effect — you stay aware and become sharper, maintaining continuity of consciousness more so than ever before, rather than blacking out or becoming hypnotically suggestible. Mindfulness meditation is one. Others include becoming very good at inner visualization, of staying lucid instead of getting swayed by random thoughts, and maintaining awareness while falling asleep for instance. Rudolf Steiner wrote about that kind of meditation, see How to Know Higher Worlds, Outline of Occult Science, and Gates of Knowledge.

» You say that positive and negative are absolute defined by STO, and STS. It doesn’t make sense to say that these are absolute. I think that good and bad are important, but they are always dependent on your moral perspective, just as your perspective is they can be defined by STO and STS. Why don’t you see this as value based judgment?

Great question… well, “value-based” assumes subjective, like comparing a given action to some subjective standard like religious morals or personal preferences. That’s not the case with STS and STO because these respectively mean unbalancing or balancing with respect to the whole system of life both local and universal.

STO is that which maximizes freewill for the entire system, and STS is that which minimizes freewill by concentrating it in the hands of a few via the violation or subjugation of freewill of the rest.

So it’s no different from saying “self-sustaining” versus “destructive” economy, for instance. It’s objective because the results are plain to see.

And yes, when this principle of balance and maximization of freewill is applied in the human sphere, it does result in guidelines that have many points in common with morals and ethics, but that doesn’t mean STO itself is strictly subjective like morals and ethics.

As for the importance of maximizing freewill, I think that’s a fundamental truth of a reality in which there are individualized conscious beings with freewill, where freewill is the necessary ingredient for those beings to be conscious and grow in their consciousness. If freewill weren’t important, then we wouldn’t even be here discussing it.

» How important do you think Obama is to the alien agenda (that is, the various agendas of different factions)?

Well, the fact is that Obama is multi-ethnic, very charming, good looking for a president, speaks of hope and change, has a “lead his people to the promised land” aura about him, and is very good at oratory to the point of making people like him even though they don’t know know why or what exactly he stands for on various issues.

So, you can imagine that he would be a good asset for an alien disinformation agenda. Let’s say aliens show up and someone has to meet with them, someone representing humanity. Among the various leaders of the world who would do this, Obama would be very fitting. Not a crusty old white guy, but a politically correct, idealistic, multi-cultural, progressive kind of guy. I can’t think of a better person. Imagine the kind of speech he could give in front of billions, especially a speech laden with the kind of misconceptions that I detailed in Part 4 of my Discerning Alien Disinfo article. It would be quite convincing I’d think.
But more immediately, if you actually look at the changes he’s spearheading, you’ll see some concerning elements. The first is an expansion of the mid-east war into Afghanistan, and later by proxy Pakistan and everything that comes from that. The second is the expansion of the police state apparatus to the local level. The Bush administration kicked the police state into gear from the top down, via TSA, Homeland Security, and all that good stuff. Next phase is to install it from the bottom up.

Right now it’s in the early stages with the plan for various kinds of Corps, volunteer brigades, or compulsory national service. Obama himself said we need a civilian national security force that is bigger than the military. While in the beginning it may appear to be a nice volunteerism thing like helping out your local area, planting gardens, helping poor people, etc. it is VERY easy to absorb into a top-down command structure, like say upgrading it toward the purpose of “keeping your community safe from terrorists” via surveillance, snitch networks, Hitler-Youth-like groups — all under the banner of hope, change, progress.

And that’s where it’s going. Only through society being thoroughly locked down at the national and local level, through a well-equipped police state apparatus, can society be kept together through any kind of alien disclosure event. It’s a dual-edged sword, because on the one hand we do need more volunteerism and social cohesion to help each other out through the coming Earth cataclysms (solar disruptions, food disruptions, weather disasters, etc.) but on the other hand if it is controlled from the top down then it can and will become an instrument of oppression as it did in Nazi Germany and Soviet Russia.

You see, Obama’s political platform is very similar to the kind of platform that alien deceivers would be running on, a messianic platform of change and progress. Therefore it is the perfect lead-in to that kind of deception. People are getting used to having a leader that is different from all previous leaders. Thus I see his role during these times as an usher into the alien deception phase, if it ever gets off the ground. Obama is guaranteed at least eight years in office. So that’s until 2017 at the earliest, which covers the time period when lots of these end times events are predicted to occur.

Lastly, there is a possibility that a civil war might break out in the U.S. and that Obama could play the role of a modern day Abraham Lincoln, in another federal vs states rights conflict. If that happens, it would be another problem-reaction-solution move toward global government, necessary to global overt alien control.

> What do you mean when you say time is not linear?

By linear time I mean the perception that we move from the past into the future in a straight line, like dominoes knocking over dominoes, one after the other, on and on and on. So there’s a sequence that moves in one direction. Future becomes present, present becomes past. We think we can’t change the past or visit it. Time flows at a constant rate. That’s linear time. Linear because it’s like a line from past to future.

Non-linear time is like this. Imagine if you could slow down time. Or time travel to the past. Or position yourself above the line and view the past, present, and future simultaneously. And not only that, but it isn’t just one line, but a whole web of lines interconnected and branching, with different pasts leading to different presents and different futures. Where the past can be changed. Where there are different alternate presents. You can choose which alternate present (which alternate timeline) to
enter into, you can see them all simultaneously, and the future and past are not any more different to you than, say, the left end and right end of a table which both exist simultaneously and whichever end you look at is the end you see.

I’ll make an analogy. In a novel, a book, the story usually flows from past to future. The characters in the book progress along a set sequence of events, along what to them seems like linear time. But you, the reader, can hold the whole book in your hand, containing the past and the future simultaneously. You can flip forward, flip to earlier pages, and the characters don’t even know you’re doing it. Now if you were the author, you could change the story too, change it earlier and modify the story from that point on into the story’s future. You are living the story via non-linear time, whereas the characters are living it in linear time. When you change their past, their “memory” changes and they don’t realize their story has been altered. But you do, because you’re outside of their story.

So we humans live according to linear time. There are aliens and higher nonphysical beings who live according to non-linear time. They can time travel, make little changes to our history and view our future (well, our possible futures, not necessarily the one we will surely take, since we still have freewill and the future is therefore open). So with the book analogy, it’s more like a choose-your-own-adventure book, where you can flip through it and see the alternate endings but don’t know which one a particular reader will take. But for the reader following along with the story, they’ll follow it according to the linear time that moves forward in the story, whereas when you just flip through the book willy nilly the story moves more with non-linear time for you since you’re viewing all possibilities in any order and at any speed of your choosing.

» What are your thoughts on 2012?

I think it will be a soft transition to a new world, not a sudden blink of the eye and waking up in a utopia. I think we’ve got a lot of work to do in the next 20 years. The decade from 2010 to 2020 will be the toughie to make it through. It will seem like its own lifetime. Life in 2020 will be so different from 2009. How, I’m not sure but I envision it being like a forest fire where the old has burned up and new plants are rising from the ashes. 2010-2013 = forest fire. Right now it’s starting to smolder. We’ll see lots of catalysts forcing us to choose sides, catalysts from the smallest to the biggest. Personal choices about whom we want to associated with, what we will stand for, and eventually, what probable future we bring into manifestation. There will be pockets of self-made utopias (small communities in rural areas) and pockets of degenerated hells (remnants of old urban centers that succumbed to disintegration). And then there’s the whole alien savior issue to deal with, which I wrote about in my recent six part article. Change, lots of it, false hope and real hope.

» If aliens can operate in the future can’t they see their loss or victory? Or because of humans freewill is the future never certain?

Freewill splits the timeline into branches of varying probability. The more probable, the easier they can see it. When you become aware and use your freewill to act accordingly, that creates a very improbable set of futures because you are acting intelligently. When you’re spacing out, on autopilot, acting mechanically, then your future doesn’t branch much and you’re as predictable as a falling rock. So when they view you, they have one idea of how things will go, but there’s always the chance that you’ll act differently than how you would have originally, and that complicates
Therefore they are not always certain of their victory. Or to be more accurate, they are confronted only with your probable futures that are most in line with their own, meaning they tend to see success most clearly. But then they end up dumbfounded when you do something they didn’t expect (took the .001% probable future instead of the 80% probable future). I should mention that the lower the probability of the future you try to take, the harder it is for you to take it — meaning, the more awareness, willpower, conscious effort, and synchronicity is involved to get you there. If you don’t try at all and just let yourself be led along, then of course you’ll always take the 80% or higher probable future.

That’s the reason aliens even try to do anything with the timeline. If all was certain, they wouldn’t have to do anything, just let it come to pass. And yet the timeline is constantly in flux, shifting, rearranging like train tracks switching everywhere all the time. This makes their job (the aliens) very complicated, but they’re smart enough to actually achieve decent success. It’s just that when someone becomes aware, that they become an anomaly who can really throw a wrench in their works.

I’d like to understand “vibrations” from a more technical/scientific point of view, and was wondering if you’ve run across anyone that tries to explain them in those terms.

I’m mainly familiar with it through:

1) Bringers of the Dawn by Barbara Marciniak
2) Ra Material by L/L Research
3) The Cassiopaean Transcripts (where it is called FRV or Frequency Resonance Vibration)
4) The 33 Arks by the Nexus Seven (called resonance)

The spiritual circles use these terms qualitatively, like “low vibe” means crude and negative, while “high vibe” means spiritually evolved and positive. There is no official scientific or technical literature on what exactly that is.

But based on my physics background, I have made an educated guess into the technical aspect of this. It is complicated, but I will write it out so that you can get an idea of how “soul vibes” might be explained from a physics perspective.

Seems to me that consciousness itself vibrates, like a speaker cone vibrating to produce sound. Instead of air, it is the fabric of the hyper-dimensional multiverse that carries these vibrations. Part of that multiverse is the space-time continuum of our own universe. Consciousness causes our own space-time fabric to vibrate according to its own unique spectrum of frequencies, a spectrum ultimately dictated by its own thoughts, emotions, intent, and level of spiritual development.

These vibrations, if they were to be measured by physicists, would have to be termed gravitational waves, temporal waves, quantum potential waves, scalar electromagnetic waves, or force-free electromagnetic potential waves. All generally the same thing. But they are not conventional electromagnetic waves, otherwise they would have been easily detected already.

Well, what these oscillations do, is they affect the way probable futures collapse into a single
manifested present experience. This is quantum physics. In quantum physics, this collapse of the future into the present is thought to occur purely by chance. But we know from experience that our own thoughts, emotions, and intent can affect the way things go by shaping probability, attracting synchronicity, and so on. Well, that is because consciousness affects things at the quantum level.

A consciousness in the present is faced with different probable future selves, each of which carries a slightly different vibrational spectrum due to it having been altered by going through the unique experience offered by that particular probable future. The probable future self that most closely matches the spectrum of the present self acquires the greatest level of quantum phase-locking, the one most likely to collapse into the present, the one with whom there is the greatest mutual energy exchange via a temporal feedback loop, and the one most strongly attracted. And so in the end, you attract that with which you resonate.

» Do you know if there is there any explanation from a scientific/quantum perspective for channeling or intuitive communication with other realities?

That gets into superluminal/non-local communication.

The communication we are used to (phone, light, voice) all travels at the speed of light or slower. It all travels within a channel contained inside this physical universe, this timeline, this reality. That kind of communication is simple, and both sender and receiver are fully tangible to each other because they are both in the same reality.

Now, when you send a signal faster than light, or through time, or across dimensions, the sender and receiver are no longer in exactly the same universe.

Let’s say I were near the star Sirius, and you on Earth, and I sent you a superluminal (faster than light) message that got to you in less than a second. Normal light would take years. But what happens is, the message leaves the physical universe, takes a shortcut through hyperspace, and re-enters at your location without taking the time to cross the space in between.

The problem is this: when the message enters back into the physical universe at your location, WHICH physical universe is it? The one where you hear the message and say yes to my question that I asked in it, or the one where you say no, or the one where you dropped the walkie talkie and didn’t get the message at all? Same goes when you respond back — which universe, which version of me, will ultimately reply back to you?

So anytime you use communication that goes outside the physical universe, outside space-time, you really end up having two beings communicating with probable versions of each other, in accordance with which of those versions they are each tuned into. Thus if you are irritated and send a snippy message back to me, maybe you’ll hear back only from the version of me that is equally irritated and snippy. Both those probable versions of ourselves are resonant/tuned to each other.

And so when you’re channeling — whether with beings from the future, beings from outside of time, beings from another dimension — the message goes through hyperspace, through the void between different reality bubbles. And that makes for shifting between sender and receiver according which aspect of each the other is tuned into. This is true for channeling, and also for faster-than-light communication.
This is why some channelers, after they become ego-driven and go down a dark path, may still continue channeling what seems like the same source, but anyone observant can tell the old source has left and a new negative impostor source has taken its place. The communication conduit has shifted alignment due to shift in the attunement of the channeler.

Now, science will say information cannot be sent faster than the speed of light. But that is false, since they are only assuming the straight-shooting, mundane, normal, tangible kind of communication that takes place within one physical universe, within the same reality bubble. When it’s BETWEEN such bubbles, all bets are off.

It does have to do with quantum physics, and I could explain that too, but it gets abstract and complicated and hard to explain without pointing at an equation. But if I had to summarize, it would go like this: everything within a reality bubble, within the same universe, shares the same “quantum phase” — meaning, the same position along its own spectrum of probable selves. Everything is synchronized. To lock phase with something means to share mutual tangible reality with it. Well, breaking the speed of light means breaking the chains of that locking, ungluing it, unbinding it, and that loosens up how sender and receiver interact with each other, as mentioned above.

» Would you define singularity as different from “hyperspace” and if so, how would you define hyperspace?

Well, in Relativity, there are equations for how time slows, how space distorts, as space-time is contorted due to gravity or velocity. Well, when space shrinks to zero, and time slows to zero, that is the singularity. It’s right up on the edge of the bubble of reality as we know it. This condition also occurs at the event horizon of a black hole. Now, interesting things happen when you take the equations even further. Then what happens is that space and time get multiplied by an imaginary number.

Are you familiar with imaginary numbers? The basic imaginary number is the square root of minus one, which sounds like a mathematical absurdity since usually no number times itself can equal a negative number — minus two times minus two equals four, not minus four. So the letter “i” was denoted to be this mysterious number that, times itself, can indeed equal a negative result. And for some reason, reality itself works according to processes that involve this “i” number. Although there is no such thing as an “imaginary” number of apples, for instance… so science doesn’t know what exactly this “i” corresponds to in reality. Maybe it’s because “i” has to do with stuff outside reality, thus it being called “imaginary”.

Well, in Relativity, in order to treat time as a physical dimension, you have to do the following: whereas space can be denoted by x, y, and z, time itself has to become i*c*t where c is the speed of light. This means that relative to space, time has to be multiplied by an imaginary number to be treated on an equal footing. So in Relativity we have three real coordinates for space, and one imaginary coordinate for time. That’s if you want everything to work out correctly in true 4-dimensional spacetime coordinates.

Okay, so what happens when you pass through the singularity? The coordinates all get multiplied by i (or -i to be more exact). Thus the coordinates can become: i*x, i*y, i*z, c*t — meaning, space has become imaginary, and time has become real. This is hyperspace. Another name for it would be timespace instead of spacetime. You could think of it as a 90 degree rotation through the fifth
In this state, moving back and forth through time is as easy as it is for us to walk back and forth along a straight line. So that is hyperspace to me, just an inversion of spacetime into timespace. You reach this anytime you go through a black hole or exceed the speed of light. The boundary between spacetime and timespace is a portal, the singularity. As for the imaginary coordinates of space, I’m not sure what that entails, but I suspect it means that in timespace, you find yourself in a network of tunnels (tunnel = only can move forward and back) where different tunnels represent different timelines, parallel universes, and so on. Just a guess.

» In your article on realm dynamics I’m a little confused about how dissonance and perception work. If gaps in an individual’s frequency spectrum are what create those learning experiences (empty parts of their frequency spectrum), then the same metaphor cannot be used to explain what doesn’t enter that individual’s perception. Is there another way of clarifying how this works, the difference between what is perceived, and what new experiences are being learned in the metaphor of the frequency spectrum?

Good question. Since our perception is normally limited to the five senses, we can only see the physical. What we call physical matter is at the lowest vibration. I don’t know if it is a complete flatline, or something very close to it with an ultra-low frequency. In either case, something that does not vibrate at that level cannot be seen with our conventional five senses. That is why we cannot normally see thoughts, emotions, or out-of-body-travelers since the lowest vibrating components to those things are still above the vibrational level of basic physical matter.

So when it comes to being unable to perceive something physically, that is due to a gapping at the very lowest end of the spectrum. I suspect this is the case with invisibility technology supposedly used by aliens or in the Philadelphia Experiment, whereby an otherwise physical object is shifted upwards in frequency so that its lowest frequency is above what our five senses can detect. And yet those shifted things can supposedly still observe us.

So someone who is cloaked can observe you, but you cannot see them. That indicates they are slightly higher than you in vibration. This is typical behavior for alien, astral, or demonic lurkers. And in those cases, I don’t know if they are viewing your physical body, or that part of your body that is naturally of a higher vibration than just the physical. Here I mean the etheric and astral body, which interpenetrate the physical and act upon it, but cannot be seen with our five senses. I’m guessing that a cloaked observer would be easily seeing your etheric body.

This leads right into your next question:

» If physical reality is the subset of all realms and sits at an infinitesimally low frequency there must be frequencies that exist between that value and the next harmonic of it. But according to realm dynamics these frequencies would not be able to interact with physical reality because they would not be harmonics. What could those frequencies be describing then?

I believe those would be the etheric plane, at the very least. Because the etheric is similar to physical matter, but a bit beyond it. There can exist constructs in the etheric plane, like so-called “thought forms” and various alien gadgetry. So it has structure and tangibility to it (within its realm) but to our physical eyes it remains invisible. But clairvoyants can see it, since the spiritual organs of
clairvoyance are attuned to perceiving slightly higher vibrations than physical matter.

Now, to return to the idea of learning lessons. The physical matter comprising the environment, the bodies of the people, and the tangible things making up the learning experience are already resonant with your spectrum since all share in common the vibration of physicality. However, the archetypal essence behind the experience, the thing that you will gain by going through it successfully, is more on the level of thoughts and emotions, more an intangible thing. This archetypal essence is of a frequency that you are missing, which is why you don’t yet know the content of the lessons, as you are yet still blind to that lesson. The archetypal essence relates to the physical staging grounds of the experience similar to how your spirit and soul relates to your physical body; they are not the same thing, but they are coupled.

So what I’m saying is that between you and the learning experience, there is no gapping between the lowest parts of both spectrums, only a gap at the higher parts that have to do with thoughts/emotions/spirit. Thus you can physically perceive it, but not initially perceive the lesson involved since those two aspects are at different parts of the spectrum.

» If experience is represented by a spectrum of frequencies, there is still something occurring outside of that spectrum, which is choice. Choice affects each notch in the frequency scale, high and low. So where and what is choice and how does it fit?

I only have a vague intuitive idea of this at the moment. But what I know for certain is that matter itself barely has any freewill, except at the quantum level where it jitters about in an unpredictable way. However, above the quantum level, where there is no such jittering (because all the quantum jitters cancel or average out) — for instance, a rock sitting on a table — there is no freewill. So somehow zero frequency (or very low frequency) is associated with no choice. That’s why in physics one can calculate almost perfectly what a piece of matter will do next, and given enough data and a good model, what it will do indefinitely, meaning because you can predict it, it has no choice of its own.

Now what happens if there is frequency involved. Now you have waves and resonance. Resonance means something is vibrating, or the vibrations are occurring within a bounded area and have the wavelength just right for that area. So different frequencies that are not harmonics of each other, will resonate with different bounded areas or cavities or node networks.

Therefore I suspect that reality, or our multiverse, has some kind of fractal or grid or node-like structure to it, and these represent choice points in spacetime. So different vibrations will fit into different spacings of these nodes, some nodes being inaccessible to lower frequencies. Like a guitar string, if tuned too low its wavelength will be much longer than the guitar and it will just flop around like a limp noodle. Thus matter, if it has very low or zero frequency, would resonate with any of those choice point nodes, and therefore be unable to take them. But I’d like to work this out mathematically instead of in an ad hoc way, which is why I haven’t published anything on that yet. But it’s the direction I’m going at the moment.

To answer your question, though, soul vibrations act on the quantum level by shaping the way in which probable futures turn into a single experience. A quantum system is a cloud of probabilities until observed. Observation is a choice, even if done subconsciously, in which the probabilities turn into a single actuality. Once the actuality is chosen, the next quantum wave function approaches
from the future, from which another choice is made, and so on into the future. Soul vibrations shape
this process. It can increase the probability of one experience happening over another because you
resonate with it or because you need it. But once that experience happens (the actuality occurs) now
the next quantum wave function approaches and you still have the choice of how to proceed with
that experience. Will you get the point and learn and apply what you learn? Or will the experience
pass you by without learning or growing, in which case the attraction or non-repulsion field remains
and the experience will return again?

So what you attract, only ends up putting in your lap further possibilities from which to choose, but
possibilities that follow from the attracted experience that started it all.

» If the act of observation of many quantum possibilities “forces” a certain choice to be made would
the same apply to a robotic random observation? Could a robot which is not conscious (not living)
also force the same result?

The usual explanation is that there’s a chain of collapses that starts with the initial quantum event
and ends with the observer. So let’s say a detector watches for radioactive particle to hit it, and a
computer records data from the detector, and a lab assistant reads the computer and finally reports it
to the scientist.

The idea is that, not only is the initial quantum system in a wave form, but so is the detector spread
out among various possibilities, and thus the computer and lab assistant as well.

Ultimately the scientist, then, “chooses” (not consciously, most likely) one particular quantum event
to manifest, which not only collapses that tiny subatomic system but also the wave functions of the
detector, computer, and lab assistant.

Of course, what about his wife who asks him later what happened? Now the scientist is a wave
function too, from her point of view, that collapses according to her “choice” of what to hear about
how the experiment turned out.

It boggles the mind to think, then, how many probable versions of ourselves there are… are there
parallel selves for each choice we didn’t remember making, but which were made in an alternate
timeline? What is a being — is it a focalized point of consciousness, or is it some super-being
smeared out across all probabilities with each probability being its own mind making its own
choices, yet just a fiber in the rope of the super-being?

So as far as the robot goes, if it’s not conscious, then the only thing making it different from a
conscious human is that it never gets to choose the collapse of anything, it’s just a link in the chain
and nothing more. Conscious beings are links in the chain of collapse as well, relative to other
beings, but at least from their own view they are the end of the chain of collapse, since they are
conscious of the manifested event.

Therefore the ultimate conclusion from the above is that the only thing making conscious beings
unique… is that they are conscious. Sounds circular, but that’s what it seems to amount to.

Now there is another difference, which physics won’t talk about because they can’t prove it (or get
funding for it) — which is that only a conscious being can, due to intent, thought, and emotion,
influence the outcome of quantum events. That’s a conscious choice. They can skew radioactive
decay rates, for example. I don’t have the references handy, but I do recall some private experiments being done on this. Dr. William Tiller, for instance, did experiments on consciousness influencing the pH of water, as well as altering the statistical output of random number generators. No way you could program a robot to do that. On the other hand, you could “imprint” the robot, or even a stone, with your intent/consciousness so that it skews quantum events for you, which now gets into the occult stuff about etheric energies, the etheric plane, and so on.

» What the heck is this matrix stuff? What is it actually? A board game?

I think ultimately it’s a bubble of Creation gone awry. The original motivation? Maybe exploration of life, consciousness, learning, seeing what happens with certain conditions and individualized beings endowed with freewill… that’s the problem though… freewill can only be freewill if it allows the choice to go astray, and going astray accumulates until eventually you have organized collectives seeking to dominate the Creation solely for themselves, against other beings who’d prefer things stay balanced and optimal.

One way or another a rift or black hole or tar pit arose, and Earth seems to be part of it. Souls come here, many get trapped by making bad choices or just getting crushed by the challenges to be faced in this world. Then there are the negative elite who run this planet, and the higher negative beings who seem to have their fingerprints all over our dimension, pulling strings from behind the scenes.

Then there are positive beings just as powerful, if not more, who did no succumb to the negative path, and who are trying to debug the matrix and set it right.

The problem is twofold though: 1) the powerful negative beings keeping this world enslaved, and 2) the people who choose to be enslaved, desire it, and resist any attempts to be deprogrammed or told the truth. The latter is the main problem here, and that’s why it’s taking so long.

Ultimately what needs to happen, I think, is for new/young souls, possible spiritless people, and other lead weights to stop incarnating here, so that all you have are the enslaved/fallen souls. Then those can be woken up one by one, for as long as it takes, until everyone’s finally out and then the lights can be turned off on this errant creation and the switch turned on in the new re-creation where everything is back in balance.

That’s how I would do it, but alas I’m just a sub-creator like every other spirited person on this planet and can only contribute my share to the whole thing rather than control it from above…

» Your opinion on Christianity being born out of paganism and other occult matter as stipulated on the Zeitgeist movies? Is there any real truth in your opinion to existence of Jesus being the Son of God and that he was the sacrifice made on behalf of sinful man and there is no there way to “salvation” except through Him?

Well, my opinion is that the pagan stuff was tacked onto the original Christianity, and that there’s a core of truth and legitimacy to it consisting of the teachings of the advanced soul who we know as Jesus, who incarnated and purified himself enough to channel down into himself the Christ Intelligence which is somewhat like the Higher Self but a bit more powerful and general and devoted to the redemption of humanity from having fallen into this spiritual prison.

And I believe the second coming is not the physical return of Jesus, but a replication of the process
in numerous people who likewise will become readied to accept the Christ Intelligence into
themselves (or rather activated it from within, activate the connection to it). I think thousands of
 Christs are better than one, at least. The idea of Jesus Christ as your personal lord and savior, I don’t
 subscribe to that in the modern Christian sense of giving over my freewill to an externally
 visualized personality. But I do believe in bowing my self (my lower self/ego/personality) to that
 higher transcended part of me, my higher spirit/higher self, whose spiritual impulses act like a
 magnet drawing me ever closer to that distant goal of spiritual awakening and perfection, allowing
 greater service in the name of the divine will. In other words, an internal process of becoming the
 true spiritual Self. So if I am Christian, it would be via the Gnostic stream of Christianity.

So I see Jesus Christ as an example of what’s possible. Also I believe his crucifixion wasn’t on a
 wooden cross, but on the cross of space and time through the sacrifice of having to be born here into
 a world of darkness to inject a bit of “spiritual tech support” and offset the damage caused by the
 Old Testament with its jealous angry god of wrath and advocacy of tribalism.

Problem though is that after Jesus left the world, the worldly powers-that-be did some heavy
damage control and as history shows, used it toward political ends. I believe they also modified his
biography by merging it with their own occult/pagan symbolism and lore, thus what Zeitgeist says
about the life of Jesus mirroring so closely the other mythical deities and practices. I disagree with
Zeitgeist that he never existed. I think what few records existed of him were scrubbed by the
Church so that they could push their own version of it. There’s lots that has been scrubbed about our
past.

» Do you believe others in the past have made the transition to 4th density and on the way to full
transition were able to achieve teleportation, telekinesis, shape shifting, invisibility, etc. ?

Yes, initiates of secret societies who reached a certain level of mastery achieved this. If you read
some of the Carlos Castaneda book, some of that is described among the Toltec shamans. In western
esotericism, there are examples like Comte Saint-Germain, Fulcanelli, and Christian Rosenkreutz,
although the discreetness among those on this path would preclude most from entering the history
books. There are also esoteric masters in the orient, who have done this, Buddha being the most
well known. I think their path was so difficult because they were doing it on their own. Now, if
there is a sort of “wave” approaching, that wave can give a boost so that it doesn’t take multiple
lives of achieving mastery via mystery schools to transcend the 3D physical.

» I remember you saying that Grays are nothing more then biological robotic space suits or 4d
reptilian entities to inhabit via a hyperdimensional soul to body linking technology. Well couldn’t
we say that we too are 4d entities linking to our biological bodies through a similar technology?

That’s right, good observation. The main difference is that we are bio suits for a 5D spirit, whereas
Grays are bio suits for 4D variably-physical reptilians. Either way it involves a physical extension
of a remote consciousness. Grays however seem especially engineered for that purpose, to be
especially susceptible to remote interfacing by a lower consciousness that goes in and out as
necessary, while humans are by default specialized for housing one consciousness that incarnates at
beginning of life and leaves at death. However, another thing in common is that when Grays aren’t
being interfaced, they still act on their own like AI-controlled automatons to carry out their
programming, while humans likewise can still walk and talk even if their spiritual core is
temporarily or permanently absent, meaning people can still live on autopilot without a higher driver.

» I hear/read about DUMBs (Deep Underground Military Bunkers), human-alien treaties, the control matrix, hybrids walking among us, the evil agenda, etc., but I have a difficult time discerning if this is truth or disinformation and deception. How would you recommend I proceed in finding the truth on this subject?

For myself, I look for hidden agendas behind these various theories, things that they fail to account for or explain adequately, and I also try reading the vibe of the intent/consciousness behind the individuals pushing those ideas. Sometimes it’s just misinformation — someone who hasn’t had enough experiences, reasoning, or resources to come to the correct conclusion and made some faulty assumptions. I’m sure some of my info falls into this category as I’m still learning. However, the goal is not to be perfect, but to be more logically sound and practical a theory than what else is out there.

Disinfo always has an agenda to deceive, and so with any idea, it helps to look at whom does it benefit, whom does it harm, what is it ultimately trying to get you to do, what is its effect in the long run. Most often it takes some basic truths and spins them toward false conclusions, in which case you can try to look for the logical fallacies they are using to make those false conclusions, or what other truths they are purposely leaving out. They tend to stick to a small set of popular truths that gets everyone nodding their heads, but either don’t know about or try to ignore those more fringe-like truths.

For example, someone pushing a pro-alien agenda may refer to everything from Whitley Strieber’s books to Zechariah Sitchin, John Mack, and so on… and thus try to say that Grays are benevolent and are hybridizing a new race that has the best of both qualities human and alien, in order to save both our races from imminent extinction. That sounds good in theory until you come across more fringe truths like the works of Karla Turner, Eve Lorgen, James Bartley, and others who have had experiences (or talk to people who have) that mainstream ufology reject as being too unusual or dark or not fitting the expected pattern. Then you realize that Grays are also involved in energy harvesting, mind programming of people, monitoring and manipulation, and other nefarious activities. But these authors are relatively unknown to the mainstream UFO crowd, thus the propagandizes can get away with it.

Ultimately you only need to believe the minimum needed to account for everything you know to be fact or have no reason to suspect is fabricated. If you’ve had alien experiences yourself, that helps a lot since it gives you additional dots to connect. I’ve had communications with lots of people who share their experiences with me, and have had experiences myself, that I’ve got plenty of dots that don’t fit into some theories out there. That’s why I’ve had to devise my own to account for them, and the result is on my site.

You can also detect the vibe behind a source by putting yourself in their shoes or listening to the tone of the writing. There’s a certain glibness, slickness, calculation, hastiness, desperation behind it, like a con-artist calling you up on the phone with a friendly voice but you can tell there’s something not right underneath. What has more truth will resonate more with you, like ring a bell of recognition that yes this sounds right, although the trick there is that you have to be coming from a
place of truth and discernment yourself, otherwise something could just stroke your ego and you feel good and think it’s the truth even though it’s deception (which a lot of New Age channeling and material tends to do for instance).

Overall I’d say keep it simple, have your pile of what you are pretty sure is true, and a pile of speculation that still needs some work. As you encounter new materials, look for oversights, holes, logical fallacies, and vibes of deception or naive entrancement. The latter feels like they’ve got cotton in their brain, are in a trance state, and it’ll rub off on you when you read it by putting you in a less discerning and more muddled mindset. You’ll start accumulating ideas that remain solid time after time, passing all your tests, and even if you can’t prove them completely true you know at least that you haven’t yet proven them false and that they are actually useful ideas that explain some things that other theories can’t. That’s the sign of a keeper, until you realize its flaw.

» Why don’t you provide more excerpts, references, and citations to the source material for your articles?

Mostly because my writings are more than the sum of their parts. They are not strictly patchworks assembled from the words of others. First and foremost they are based on reason, intuition, observation, and experience. I use source material more for the purposes of inspiration, correlation, and post-confirmation, therefore they aren’t necessarily sources in the sense of me just regurgitating what I read based on its authority.

Further, an excerpt in itself lacks the context of the entire work from which it was pulled, it lacks the context of my own insights I had while reading it, and it lacks the context of how it compares to my personal experiences and all the other sources I have come across. And only in those contexts, none of which are apparent in the excerpt itself, does the excerpt have any importance. Brevity keeps me from spelling out the full context. May aim is to get ideas across, and having articles with fifty parts made mostly of excerpts and footnotes interferes with that.

The only times I find it worth providing an excerpt is when it says my point better than I can say it, or when the source might be difficult for a reader to obtain and the relevant excerpt is short enough for me to include. But I am very much against the idea of making my case on the basis of authority, like quoting someone and saying it must be true because this person has lots of credentials. That is a form of manipulation that caters to blind faith in authority. I want to be persuasive solely on the basis of logic, intuition, and experience, and I want to do it quickly, efficiently, and clearly. Most often that means presenting the distilled end product in its most concise and generic form.

And the only time I find it valuable to cite a “source” is to point readers to additional reading. Therefore you will see me provide lists of recommended books and websites, leaving it to the reader to pull their own weight in pursuing those sources and distilling their own important insights, which will reveal to them why I stressed the importance of those books and websites.

My method is to take everything I have at my disposal, distill a refined end product, provide this to the reader, and then let it inspire the reader to realize or confirm it through his or her own experience, intuition, reason, and research. Last thing I want to do is take away that precious eureka moments of self-discovery when a realization on their part occurs. There has to be an element of
surprise and self-growth involved, otherwise it’s a form of dry information transfer that borders on programming. My words are intended to be signposts pointing to pre-existing truths that readers can and must access themselves through moments of inspiration and realization. They are not intended to point to other signposts that point to other signposts, ad infinitum.

» Since you readily admit you believe in both positive and negative ETs, how do you know you aren’t being duped, that in truth all are negative. It’s cosmic good cop/bad cop with the end result being the same, they get total control of the human race in the end, whether they portrayed themselves to be positive or not. Why would you trust your own senses to somehow detect the true intentions of beings of higher intelligence? Isn’t that the ultimate gamble to trust ANY of “them”?

Your question is similar to asking how you can tell whether someone befriending you is actually friendly, and not just a con-artist, murderer, leech, or crazy person. What you do is take in every perception, observation, intuitive impression you can about them, and look for red flags or ways that these could indicate insincerity. You take one of those possibilities, or one of those ulterior motives that you can think of, and you test it against your observations — do the observations prove or disprove that possibility?

If the higher intelligence of aliens implies they can dupe anyone and everyone, then I wouldn’t be able to detect any deception in any alien because they would be smart enough to have all bases covered. Yet, there is enough observation, intuition, and research available to me, that I can detect ulterior motives, deception, insincerity in many of them.

Then there are a few that pass all my tests. I tentatively consider those few positive until further observation/data comes along to suggest an opening for deception. The problem is that there are many pro-ET people out there who are so lacking in broadness of data/observation that their tests for what is positive is too simplistic. For example, someone says, “Aliens haven’t attacked us yet because we are still here… if they were hostile, they would have done so already, therefore they must be benevolent” — nope, wrong, because higher forms of hostility use the illusion of peace and progress to gain a bloodless victory through the acquiescence of freewill in their victims.

Another reason behind my views, is that I can do a side-by-side comparison with alien groups who appear to have a genuinely positive orientation, and those deceptive ones pretending to be positive. The latter do a mimicry that appears positive superficially, but underneath you can detect insincerity, you can see how it’s cherry picking certain supporting truths and sweeping the rest under the rug, and how following that faux positive agenda would lead to negative consequences in the long run. The genuinely positive ones don’t have that. So there is a good cop/bad cop scenario happening, only aside from the fake positives I can recognize real positives too. Unfortunately the real ones you simply don’t hear or read about in most UFO/abduction literature.

Should some ET group in the future show up and claim to be the good guys, it’s not their opposition to the bad guys that counts, it’s what they say, what they do, and what red flags they give off that will allow a determination of their orientation. In this way, the only way for me to be duped, is if my own hierarchy of values (freedom, truth, wisdom, respect, balance) is in error, because as long as I ensure that an alien group is in complete alignment with these values both in word and action, then I would be the one duping myself and would gladly accept the responsibility for that error.

» I was wondering if this information, namely “THE TRUTH” will eventually become known to all
souled humans and if the grand scheme of things upon this planet will be soon changing because of increased awareness and development of collective human consciousness?

People will learn the truth according to their readiness and need to know. Which unfortunately means that many will go without it, since many are neither ready nor have the need to know concerning certain truths. I mean, some people just aren’t here to hear the truth, but to live a life, get their issues worked out, pick up some lessons, and leave. It depends also on how generic and universal the truth is. Some things are simple, direct, practical, and those could be more widely known. But trivia items like who the Grays are working for, what secret societies are running the world, and so on will be least known. Truth will spread to open and receptive minds, though, and I see the future as a competition over the minds and awareness of humans, a competition between truth and deception, which confronts individuals with a choice about what values take priority for them and what side they truly stand for.

» Does a human’s eyes say everything about their personification and soul (or absence of)?

It says something about their sincerity and level of sentience. You can detect slyness or dimness in a person’s eyes. But only if you’re good at observing such things, which requires a bit of empathy and clairvoyance. I mean, there are people with shallow or immature souls who have pretty sparkling eyes, but that’s because they might be good looking and wearing makeup and having good genetics. You really have to look at the “I” behind their eye, get inside their heads and feel what’s going on in there.

» Dwelling on loneliness, sadness and hopelessness. Are these simply elements of darkness and will only result in loss of soul energy?

Loneliness, sadness, and hopelessness I find are good as temporary, and sparingly used, feelings to add some sobriety and seriousness — these though have to be transmuted into their closest positive soul-based emotions, such as sorrow and hurt for others, which then leads right into compassion, acceptance, humility. You can start with those and pull the pendulum that way to the negative direction, but when you then focus on more positive feelings the pendulum swings the other way farther than if you tried to start from a flat, apathetic, numb state.

I listen to doom metal too, which has themes of sorrow, depression, loneliness, and it’s like a dead weight, like a ballast to my ship, keeping me a bit more serious than otherwise, so that when I do raise my vibes and think of helping others and that I’m an immortal spirit in a human body, that I don’t get too giddy and frivolous for my own good. However, based on past experience, I do know it’s possible to do away with those negative emotions and sustain enthusiasm, sobriety, determination, optimism, and realism, humility, compassion, etc. and the longer I keep it up, the more my reality becomes magically helpful and filled with real miracles and positive coincidences.

» It was obvious the peer pressure of this world at such a young age, kids keep getting exposed to violence, sex, drugs at younger and younger ages, it makes me angry, but I’m guessing this is a selfish reaction, do you have any thoughts on what is going on and going to happen to the children of this world?

Ultimately, perhaps the majority of kids are being brain-damaged, corrupted, and programmed to prepare them to become docile members of a global totalitarian police state. Then there is a
minority who are “special” and along the lines of Indigo children, hybrids, etc. some of which are genuinely higher positive souls and some who are assets for the alien agenda. This means there will be a greater polarization of society between superhuman and subhuman types of people. From a Control System perspective this would be useful to create a soft master-slave society, or somehow degrade and wipe out the “useless eaters” while preserving the useful ones.

The average child whose destiny and talents are of no use or threat to the bigger agenda is getting swept up in all the degradation, as you have noticed. And you can only work with a few, and only to the extent that you have contact with them. If they are your own child, then great there is lots you can do. But if you only see him or her irregularly, it’s hard enough saying anything that will get through to them and stick. Parents have a hard time teaching pre-teens and teens anything, let alone just a friend or acquaintance trying that.

But myself, if there is a seed of curiosity in the child toward anything unusual, I’ll converse with questions and awe-inspiring possibilities for him or her to ponder, and to show the specialness of the higher conscience within us and how it’s like a secret power that we can nurture. As their curiosity grows, I can lead them toward seeing more and more of the fakery and illusion we are surrounded with, including what is taught in schools. So it’s like lighting a spark and fanning the flames a bit, and hopefully that breaks them out of the stupor a bit. Depends on the individual, as some are naturally curious while others are already jaded and too caught up in superficials to care about anything.

» I haven’t gotten into E.T’s and UFO’s at this point… but if it is something that I’ll need to approach, I’ll eventually come around to it without forcing it on myself.

Regarding the alien issue, that’s a whole huge topic in itself. Normally I would say, if you haven’t had signs of abductions in your life, or interference from unseen negative forces, then there is not much practical value in studying it. However, I do sense we are fast approaching a time when aliens will reveal their existence to mankind… but to the detriment of mankind since it will be selfish aliens pretending to be here in our best interests. And in that sense, it will involve and impact everyone on the planet. It’s worth studying therefore once the signs become all too clear that such a scenario is approaching. For instance, when NASA announces life has been found on Mars (in the form of microbes) and the religious/scientific implications are debated in the following months, and alien/UFO political groups kick into high gear trying to prepare us for open contact with aliens, then it will be absolutely necessary to know a few things in order to see through any potential lies and deceptions when those aliens do arrive.

» An acquaintance of mine familiar with these conspiracy subjects is bitter and depressed about the state of things, especially about how we are being controlled by forces we cannot even comprehend. He has experienced this control first hand and is disheartened.

About being depressed and bitter, a lifetime of being under the gun will do that. He knows full well, because he sees it every day, that there are higher negative forces who can manipulate reality to the smallest detail, and I think that is a bit overwhelming for him to see how powerless we can be in the face of that.

But when it comes to dealing with such forces, there is a way out and beyond. And it has to do with how our consciousness throttles or redirects the flow of our experiences, and how it hooks us up
with whatever hyper-dimensional forces we are resonating with. It’s kind of like we parachuted behind enemy lines and are now surrounded by hostility, and our radios got thrown out of whack and we can only pick up noise or the local enemy communications. By retuning the radio, we can make contact with our own air support, who can then drop-lift supplies, give guidance, and take out a few enemies when things get too tough. This world is a rigged game, and the only way to win a rigged game is to not play by its rules, but by the rules of something outside of it that has more power than it.

And depression, hopelessness, bitterness is how not to retune the radio. I think a combination of optimism and hope concerning the things we cannot absolutely know or control is necessary, and awareness and responsible action for the things we can do something about is required. The first attunes consciousness to a certain frequency that shifts the probability of events away from further misfortune, and the latter shifts the spectrum of what is possible versus impossible. This has worked in my own life, and through it one can create a bubble of synchronicity or “good luck and protection” that only bursts when you fail to uphold that elevated state of mind and slip back into mindlessness and cynicism. Which happens to me periodically and then, after probability shifts the opposite way and holds a hot poker to my ass, I snap back to attention and turn things around.

» By nature I am a skeptical person, as much as I don’t want to be. I am not doubting that the material you presented is false; I have no way of proving or disproving so I will not bother. My question is where do you get your information from? Clearly this is not something that is taught to people on a large scale.

I’ll give you some background on myself, so that you get an idea of where I’m coming from.

I’ve been trying to figure things out since being a baby. Came into this life with lots of latent knowledge that later surfaced as questions and intuitions. Had paranormal and alien experiences as a kid that taught me reality was weird. My grandfather taught me science, and grandmother kept me busy with construction material and Legos, while my dad didn’t mind having cool discussions with me about whatever questions came to mind. Here is a picture of me at age three or four, playing with magnets while sitting in my first of two homemade UFOs. So I did lots of questioning, pondering, tinkering, and creative things back then.

Then at age 12, after having relocated to the U.S. with my mom and new stepfather, I got a library card and read all the UFO, New Age, and physics books at the local library. Several years later I made friends with a pen pal who became a mentor of sorts regarding fringe subjects, and we carried on a correspondence for a couple years more, and this was my intro to the conspiracy subjects.

Then around 1999 I stumbled onto esotericism/metaphysics, the material at trufax.org. In 2000 I began researching the Cassiopaean material and the next three years would be spent consolidating all I had learned previously and working with the Cassiopaean research group. I also read a bunch more books and websites, and corresponded with people who relayed me their personal experiences.

My main inspirations… well I tend to come across sources that match what I’ve intuited first, so they’re not always primary sources so much as secondary correlating sources. But some have been more influential than others. The research journals published by Val Valerian and his Matrix I – IV books. Several UFO books like the ones by David Jacobs and UFO magazines. I read Trance
Formation of America back in 95 or 96, same with Behold a Pale Horse by William Cooper (thanks to that mentor pen pal). Good channeling sources like Seth Material, Law of One (Ra) Material, Cassiopiæan Transcripts and The Wave Series at that site. And later, some Fourth Way books (Gurdjieff and Ouspensky, and later Boris Mouravieff and his Gnosis books), Carlos Castaneda books (and Theun Mares, similar subject matter). The Impersonal Life books by Joseph Benner, a couple by Manly P. Hall, and more recently some Rudolf Steiner. Also some more hardcore conspiracy sources like Branton, Creston, Phil Schneider, Karla Turner, James Bartley, Eve Lorgen, George Andrews, and Jordan Maxwell, David Icke. But my real source is my intuition, observation, experience. Sitting down with a nice blank notebook and a good pen, posing questions and figuring out answers … that’s where the real work takes place.

So combine all this with continuous pondering and sketching things out, trying to crack the mysteries, test them out in real life, and plenty of networking with others and incorporating their anecdotes of anomalous experiences into my data pool, and here I am!

» If I understood your book “Fringe Knowledge for Beginners” correctly, “all of this is by Design”. The Subterranean Aliens desire and have orchestrated a “Revolution”, so they may Surface and become the “Ultimate Peace Keepers, Saviors and Controllers.”

The elite human/nonhuman controllers who do not have our best interests in mind, may have initiated or allowed the internet as a means of consolidating their surveillance and control abilities. Since, after all, it is through the internet that there will be online banking, which ties into the “mark of the beast” system once personal identity cards or numbers are linked into bank accounts and perhaps implantable chips and such. I don’t think they are directly in favor of this awareness-revolution where people are waking up to the truth.

However, it is a typical tactic of negative forces to allow a small success for the positive side so that they can reap an even bigger negative victory for themselves. One example is Bush — why was someone this obviously retarded and irritating placed in the White House? He is too obviously someone that the world can hate. Therefore it may have been by design. Personally I think the goal is to use him as a fall guy to prop up whatever alternative they offer after him. One scenario is that he and other world leaders are being used to create so much error and corruption that the world gets fed up with human leadership and wouldn’t mind allowing some kind of alien group, perceived as enlightened saviors, to take over the leadership. That’s where I think this is going, to shock the world with the ineptness of human leadership, the pure irresponsibility and corruptibility of humans leading humans, so that the alien alternative is way better. Of course, what they don’t say is that these leaders were selected, programmed, and encouraged in their corruption by these same negative forces later offering themselves up as the solution. Problem Reaction Solution, as David Icke has written about… it works on the political scale, and on the intergalactic scale too!

» I have a question which is kind of unrelated: Regarding the “Negative Aliens” and the “Illuminati”; who’s ultimately in charge? I’m assuming there’s a hierarchy. If I recall correctly, the Reptilian Aliens report to the Nordic Aliens, which means the “Nordics” must be atop the Pyramid, with the Illuminati being “third in command” under the Reptilians and Nordics.

That’s one version, yes, and it makes the most sense to me. I think it works something like this:

Demonic overlords (5D negative)
Nordic occult overlords (lower 5D negative)
Nordic crusaders and Mantis beings (upper 4D)
Lower demonic minions (astral)
Reptilian Minions and other negative aliens (lower 4D)
Grays, which are genetically engineered robots (semi 4D/3D)
Upper Illuminati (occult, possessed, secret society people) (3D, a little 4D)
Shadow Government (underground bases, ultra-black ops military)
Lower Illuminati (political elite, Bilderbergers, etc.)
Open secret societies (freemasons and so on)
State/local government, corporations, university systems, etc.

So that’s top to bottom, except each thing can influence each thing below it. So for instance one could have demonic entities influencing people at the local level.

» What is your opinion of the Invisible College? Are they Good, Bad or Both? They are very “upfront” about their motivation of telling the “truth.” They are trying to protect their planet from our “bad guys.”

Depends on which source speaking about the Invisible College you have in mind. (Jacques Valle speaks of an “Invisible College” of academics who do fringe research on the side, but that’s not the same thing). There are impostors pretending to be the Invisible College, there are charlatans using that name in their fabrications, and so on. So if you read of an “Invisible College” in a particular text, it’s no guarantee they’re the real deal. You’d have to go by what they’re saying, who they seem to be, what they advise, what they do. Ideally, the Invisible College is a body of graduates from our physical realm, beings on the next rung up the spiritual evolutionary ladder, who are into knowledge and balance… same thing as the ideal version of the Great White Brotherhood you might read about elsewhere, or the 4th density Service-To-Other beings. In that case, yes they’re good guys, but they have limitations and sometimes their wisdom and farsightedness makes them stand back from taking certain actions if they know it needs to transpire.

The text War in Heaven also speaks about an Invisible College, but I believe those guys in that text are astral impostors trying to play the good guy in order to suck souls into never-ending make-believe astral warfare in the afterlife in order to suck their energy dry. The way the Invisible College speaks and acts in that book just has the sound of immaturity and petty melodrama to it, which is in contrast to the real good guys who are very calm, collected, lucid, matter-of-fact, wise, and humble.

I agree with what the book says about Theocratic control in the sense that there are astral dictators who round up lost souls and squeeze them dry, who enslave them in the afterlife for quite a long “time.” Although the book makes it sound like people have no choice, and that they get enslaved if they don’t choose sides. In my view, people are only as enslaved in the afterlife as they are here in this life. So someone who is deeply indoctrinated into organized religion will, after death, continue to feed into that illusion, an illusion created and run by the Theocrats. But likewise, those who think for themselves and do not join into a pre-manufactured belief system, who have found a true, practical, living, and empowering spirituality in life, will not feed into a Theocrat-run illusion after death. Nor would they have to join the so-called Invisible College to do endless battle.

Everything that is described concerning the Theocrats and Invisible College appears to take place on the astral planes. The thing about the astral planes is that entities there are not physical in the
same way we are, but they are nevertheless not much smarter. In other words, they are still 3Dish in their consciousness, if not less so at times. The real positive forces are of a spiritual purity and power that the average person cannot comprehend, way above what the book describes concerning the Invisible College. The latter sounds more like a team of discarnate freedom fighters caught up in the game of tit-for-tat astral warfare than those positive forces that work beyond that level. And what I therefore conclude is that either the Invisible College is simply that, an organization of 3Dish-yet-nonphysical freedom fighters, or else it’s actually another Theocratic deception. Think about it — if after you die, you join this team to do battle against the “bad guys”, you will spend an awful long time and energy doing so perhaps with no real results gained for yourself in terms of spiritual growth and liberation. Thus it could be a decoy to get you spinning your wheels. I just don’t think the Invisible College as described in the book is true to how higher positive forces actually operate, and that it acts a bit too petty. Just my view on that. Or if they are positive, then I don’t think they are the end-all-be-all of what’s out there in terms of positive forces. War in Heaven makes a good point about astral control systems, but I just feel it’s placing a ceiling on the truth concerning who the good guys are.

Whether any of the good guys are trying to protect the planet… very tough question. They are known to protect individuals who need to be protected, and they seem to answer sincere calls for assistance, but at the same time they do hold back in matters beyond their jurisdiction, or in matters brought on by the willful ignorance of a person who must suffer the consequences as the only way to get the lesson through his thick skull. They are more about helping people help themselves rise higher in spiritual purity and awareness, than taking away all their problems. I think they understand that negative beings can sometimes act as a learning catalyst, but they are known to step in when things get out of hand.

» Are “Demonic Overlords” and “Lower Demonic Minions”, Aliens? In other words, are all levels above the Human Illuminati, Aliens?

When I think of “aliens” I picture a being that is not human, equal or more intelligent than a human, and in some way physical even if only semi-physical in the sense that it can change into energy and walk through walls or perhaps travel consciously through time and travel between dimensions. But that it still exists in a physical or semi-physical state and environment (in alien ships or underground bases for instance) is what differentiates them from, say, demonic beings.

Demonic beings seem to be entirely located in the non-physical dimensions. These are primarily the astral planes. They are one step above aliens for that reason, because they are no longer physical. However, they can materialize themselves physically if given enough energy to do so, like when Illuminati do sacrificial rituals and so on. They are purely dark energy beings. The demonic overlords are at the tip top of the negative hierarchy, however. The more negative a being becomes, the more cut off he is from the rest of Creation, so these demonic overlords are like black holes in their nonphysical dimension, very heavy, very dense, very dark in the spiritual sense. Something like you’d read about in an H.P. Lovecraft novel. They are the most ancient, the most “wise” among negative beings, the most trained in magickal manipulations and so on. Their only limitation is their lack of energy because they need so much of it to keep from collapsing into oblivion, and that they are so cut off from the rest of Creation. So they only tend to project their minds into those trying to contact them, because for the most part they are stuck.
» Is it possible to retain 100% memory after reincarnation? Not a “swiss cheese” memory, but 100%? Why learn all of this incredible knowledge just to “lose it in the next life? 

According to Carlos Castaneda, through the shamanic technique of recapitulation, this is possible. In recapitulation you spend months, even years, systematically remembering everything you did in life, everyone you met. Of course nowadays with our busy lives this is harder to do, so remembering at least the important impressionable and meaningful events in full detail is demanded. The idea being, that by doing so you create a copy of your life, so that at death when your original set of memories dissolve back into the universe as supposedly happens, you still get to keep this copy.

What recapitulation may do is transfer memories to a part of you that survives death, rather than the part that is dissolved by death. Kind of like creating a printout of documents so that when the hard drive gets wiped out you still have something.

Why learn all this knowledge just to lose it? Well, the thing is this — anything you truly learn, you don’t forget. In fact, it’s not that you “remember” it anymore so much as it’s lodged so deep within you that it becomes you. In the next life, this could manifest as a knowingness that you don’t know how you know, you just do. It means that if you did have to learn again next life, it would be very quick because you’d merely be reminded of what you already know subconsciously rather than having to go through trials and pains to get it stamped into your soul as with new lessons. Amnesia is a true filter between separating what is superfluous and what is universally important. That’s why we don’t remember how to do math, how to speak a particular language, or how to drive a car necessarily because these are mechanical programs that disappear with the death of the physical memory system (brain, body, etc.). However, those soul aspects of it, like say the love and appreciation of mathematical beauty, the enthusiasm for a particular language, that alone can carry over into the next life and form the impulses to pick those up again.

Neither is always fully a good thing. With amnesia does come repeating mistakes, wasting time learning superfluous things over again. But with full memory… ha, ever notice a lot of people in their 60s and 70s who are just drained from life and bitter and crotchety? Imagine if they were to keep that state permanently. For those kinds of people, maybe getting the crud wiped out before next birth is a good thing. On the other hand, if you are a higher soul here on a mission, then remembering and staying true to your True self is absolutely important… therefore I’d say it depends on the individual, whether it’s more positive than not or vice versa to have the amnesia upon incarnating.

» My understanding is, all “Time” (the Past, Present and Future) is happening “Simultaneously” on different “Frequencies.” That’s why time travel is possible. To go to the Past or the Future, one must simply enter that particular frequency. Is this true or false?

Linear time is an illusion in the sense that all alternate pasts and probable futures along with parallel presents exist simultaneously. It’s just a big, complicated, set of possibilities frozen in a single eternal moment.

However, there is still a kind of “time” that separates one freewill choice from the one that comes after, that separates your less wise self from your wiser self after having learned new lessons. It’s just that those lessons and choices don’t necessarily have to follow the stream of linear time from
past to future. They can span different timelines, different lives, go forward and backward in time, alter the past, change the future, shift in the present, etc.

Think of time like a large library of DVDs. All those movies exist simultaneously. But only as mere possibilities. Maybe some friends of yours have rented a few and are playing them right now, while the rest sit on the shelf. But it’s you and your DVD player that creates a sequence of what is played for you. And you can play them in any order, rewind them, pause them, etc. though while watching them, time within the movie moves forward. Is the time in a movie real? No, the beginning, middle, and end are simultaneous, unless you’re a character in the movie then it’s real.

Same with us… here in these physical bodies, which themselves are chained to the illusion of linear time, we see time as linear. But outside the physical body, outside this bubble, what was once a real and unstoppable motion of time may be seen as having been an illusion all along.

Illusions are real to things equally illusory. Therefore reality is illusion to those above the illusion, but real to those within the illusion. Linear time is real to us, but imaginary to us when we’re no longer our limited little selves down here.

» When you say “illusion,” do you mean it in the sense that if a person does not “experience” the reality, therefore it’s an illusion?

Oh, by “illusion” I mean that it’s not an absolute, that the limits seemingly delineated by it fall away when you exist outside its boundaries. Within linear time, it seems real alright. I can remember my past, know that I’m in the present, and know that I’m going into tomorrow not into yesterday. It is all I have consciously known this life, therefore linear time seems real and absolute to me. And by real, I would mean inescapable, that it cannot be any other way. And that’s the illusion, that it cannot be another way. Outside my body though, in dreams, in between life times, linear time no longer applies as strictly as it does in the body, indicating there are counter-examples to the idea that linear time is absolute.

» If that’s true, everything is an “illusion,” except that which we personally experience, which is a very small part of our life.

In a way I agree. The modification I would make is this — that the things we are not personally experiencing because we are “above” them are indeed illusions to us, while the things “above” us which are still beyond our little spotlight of conscious experience are real but invisible. For example, a game of chess requires that you sink “down” into its make-believe world to take the rules seriously enough to play the game. But really you are above the game of chess and can walk away, or if desired can move the pieces around any way you wish. The game of chess is an illusion to you.

Then you get in your car and bump your head in the top of the doorframe — the doorframe is real and visible because it’s on the same level of realness/illusoriness as your head.

Then as you drive home, you are about to get T-boned by a drunk driver but at the last moment time freezes and your car is moved slightly so that the collision never happens, and afterwards all you remember is that you narrowly missed the collision. Something higher interceded, and it affected you with your being aware of it, because it is higher than your spotlight of experience. You are an illusion to it, but it’s more real than you, just as stagehands behind the curtain are more real than the
If there is a Negative Hierarchy, I’m assuming there is also a “Positive Hierarchy” (of which you and me are a part). What is the Positive Hierarchy?

That’s a great question. It’s not so much a master-controller/slave-subordinate hierarchy, but a master-teacher/journeyman-student relationship. The higher is seen as a source of higher wisdom, guidance, and inspiration.

The “lowest” part of this “hierarchy” would be ourselves, or at least those of us with more benevolent than malevolent inclinations.

Above that would be those saintly or masterly people among us who have awakened to their higher consciousness and hearts and serve mankind in very quiet but powerful ways. You’d never know they had that role if you met them because discretion comes with the wisdom they have. They are still physical though. Many of them seem to be part of positive secret societies, secret because their mission is compromised if they were publicly known (via worship or fear, persecution by people who don’t know better), and society because strength in numbers is always a good thing.

Above them are semi-physical superhuman or angelic humanoid types who can shift in and out of our reality and are part of a spiritual brotherhood spread throughout the realms beyond our own. They are humble divine servants who are not limited by the physical and emotional limitations that we are still bound to. They can take on physical form, but are not fully angelic because they still have bodies and technology, and are more popularly known as positive hyper-dimensional aliens. I think the positive Nordic aliens are of this category. They are like elder brethren to us.

Those individuals then are known to communicate with, or get guidance from, even higher nonphysical divine beings. From what I can tell, those nonphysical divine beings are more of the angelic category, often functioning as oracles or master-teachers or council members. Those beings themselves don’t engage in battles, but are even more purely service-oriented and are beyond the whole physical incarnation thing.

In the Allies of Humanity material they are referred to as “The Unseen Ones” while those in the previous paragraph are called the “harim” — while by the Ra/Cassiopaean material the former are 6D STO social memory complexes while the latter are 4D/5D STO beings. I think in the Seth Material the former are referred to as “The Others” although my memory is spotty on that one. Generic term would be “lower positive beings” versus “higher positive beings.”

It’s a recurring pattern in various sources, that above us are individualized variably physical positive beings who are like initiates or knights or journeymen compared to the oracles/master-teachers/unseen guides in the realm above them. For instance, the latter can comprise councils, to which the lower positive types go to for arbitration and important decision making, and so on. That lower/upper division I am pretty certain about.

And above all that is God/Creator, which equally interpenetrates us, and of which we are a tiny extension. That part of us from where our intuition, love, empathy, and creativity comes from is this godspark.

There is also the Christ intelligence and/or the Higher Self (I think those are the same) which
appears to be a specialized extension of God representing our spiritually perfected versions of ourselves. If we connect with it and become an open expression of it, it makes us the most potent and powerful servants of the divine will possible in our individualized form. It’s like a higher consciousness. Those higher positive humans, and the positive superhuman types, have an active line of mutual communion with this Christ/Higher Self. Jesus was the flagship example of what happens when a spiritually disciplined person successfully becomes a channel for the Christ.

» I find it hard to concentrate on one topic and read everything about it. I think I’ll miss something else and lose focus. In your learning do you concentrate on one aspect learn all you can about it then move on to another one? Or jump around topic to topic whatever you’re led to pursue?

I usually go where my enthusiasm leads me. So if something is really fascinating, I’ll read up on it for a while. When I run out of steam, I go onto something else, and usually within a period of time I’ll stumble on something that takes the old thing to a new level and then I return to it. If you read up on something and it feels like you’re going through the motions, trying to squeeze water from a stone, then it’s time to put it aside for now and pick it up again later. That is, unless it’s important that you research something to the end, like when I’m writing an article and have to do some research for it. But just for fun and learning, yeah I just do what fascinates me. When I hit a block, I kind of summarize in my mind what I learned so far, pose and ponder some questions, try to answer them, and if my mind draws a blank then I leave it alone and often the right piece of the puzzle falls into my lap after a while to answer those questions.

» I’m going to be direct — and maybe I’m off the mark — but surely you are aware of a drug called “METHAMPHETAMINE” … what’s really weird — is there is not one reference to this drug anywhere on your website — with all your insight into the pure negativity and all the players, tools and techniques of the dark side. I wonder how you could have overlooked that one (by design) being one of the most evil and insidious influences on our planet?

Meth is bad stuff alright, just too obvious and avoidable a problem. You don’t have to believe in conspiracy theories to know what meth is about, how destructive an influence it is. It is not a hidden danger.

As for the conspiracy behind meth, it targets and destroys the most vulnerable and expendable people, the matrix equivalent of a meat plant that takes in the cheapest “downer cows” and grinds them up into taco bell meat. Its effects are devastating on the person, but in context of the whole it’s a low-level tool targeting low-level targets. The matrix goes after higher level targets in more sophisticated and stealthy ways, and that’s what I deal with on my site because those conspiracies are not well known.

My readers are more likely to fool around with salvia, pot, mushrooms, and ayahuasca than meth. Therefore I would be better off writing about the downsides of pot for instance (which I did in my research notes about Ether Body and FRV).

If there is one conspiracy behind meth worth mentioning, and this I will include in future revisions of my site, is that if abused beyond a certain threshold, it can desoul a person and turn them into fully controllable puppets of hyper-dimensional or demonic forces. They’d only be used for petty harassment though, like gang stalking, because they aren’t in shape enough for more complicated purposes. The same can be said of other mind-frying drugs. Too much acid has a similar but lesser
effect of fragmenting the mind and allowing something dark to take up what was displaced.

» What’s your thoughts on orgonite as a deterrent against targeted and general ambient EMF waves?

I have experience with orgonite, but also with the orgonomy of Wilhelm Reich and Trevor Constable. The best I can tell is that orgonite emits an ambient orgone field that freshens the energies of a room. That much I can confirm.

But beyond that I think there is lots of wishful thinking, subjectivity, and paranoia in the orgonite community that has deviated good-hearted truth seekers from a path of legitimate action and spiritual development into a quixotic battle against forces that gladly feed upon their paranoia.

I know from personal experience that orgonite devices cannot actually repel reptilians, neutralize cellphone towers, or even keep away negative astral entities. They don’t actually block EMF waves or disable cell-towers. Even if they broke up some of the DOR (deadly orgone) that electrical devices generate, the EM fields of those devices alone are still untouched and harmful and in the case of cell-towers can still resonate your brain cavity and zap your mental coherence. So I think instead it is the talismanic/belief factor of orgonite that does the job. Perhaps the orgone field generated helps a little to amplify belief and intent, that’s a possibility. But I’m not in support of gifting operations and the whole “Atlantean war games” attitude behind it. Rather I would have one in the room to use as I would use an air freshener, that’s about it.

» From your writing it sounds like you may have encountered negative aliens directly. Have you encountered any positive that you know about?

Most of the positive encounters I have had with those would be in dreams. They are mentally powerful and meeting with you in dream-space would be more characteristic of them than, say, coming by in a ship to abduct you unwillingly. Another time on my birthday last year I got a mental nudge to ask for the positive aliens to show me a sign they were there, and I said I’d look at a spot in the night sky and they can fly by and shine a light at me… so I was in a good mood and looking up at that spot when within ten seconds a star appeared and traveled in a measured way into the middle of it, flared up in brightness as though directing a spotlight at me, and then continuing on for another five seconds before I looked away in amazement and then couldn’t see it when I looked back. It looked to be very high up, as high as a satellite.

The positive aliens are very discrete, non-interventionist, yet at the same time omnipresent. Whereas the negative ones are pushy, showy, manipulative, grandiose, and have a swoop-in-and-grab attitude. When negative pretend to be positive, it’s always to give some phony message or get you to do something against your better judgment, trying to extort a choice from you, whereas positive aliens give suggestions and appeal to your inner understanding but don’t try to twist your arm with lies and stage illusions.

» I have a few questions on how you (the personal you, or rhetorical “you”) use reality creation or at least how it works. I understand that expectation can have a freezing effect on desired outcomes and probable futures. What I am still trying to figure out (both objectively and also in terms of me) is how plans work out.

I plan enough to cover the bases and use reality creation to take care of the things I cannot plan ahead of time. For instance, if I’m visiting my family, I plan ahead of time how much money to
take, what to bring, and various safety items like oil change and having adequate tools and fluids on hand in case of a breakdown. But that’s the extent of what I myself can do. The other half is up to reality, and so I intend very strongly that the trip go well, that I have a perfect and smooth ride from here all the way there, that I remain free of mechanical problems, cop encounters, accidents, delays, and so on. Because those things I cannot predict or prevent ahead of time, so that’s where intention comes in.

When starting a new project or setting out on a trip, intending that all go well (and feeling it inside, like a sigh of relief that your request has been granted) is pretty important. Otherwise it leaves too large of a “legal” loophole for Murphy’s Law to manifest. At the very least, it dramatically cuts down on those things. The key is to be mentally aware of it and prepared, but with zero emotional response (no pangs of fear for instance). This way you block it with expectation but don’t attract it with emotional resonance. That blocks it.

Intending that all goes well, that you have a good trip, and whatever goals you have, are non-specific enough that your being aware of those ideas only acts to select them in your mind, and once selected it is your emotional resonance that draws it in. Emotional resonance means that, what you feel as you make the intention, should be the same feeling you have after what you intend has come to pass. It creates a resonance between your present and that probable future, and thus creates an attractive link that draws it in.

Regarding antsy anticipation, think of it this way: if you were given absolute assurance that something will be here in two days, then you would not really be anticipating it too much, you’d relax and do other things since it’ll be there guaranteed. However, if there is risk involved and you doubt you might actually get it, and then you’d be highly anticipative, constantly mentally checking up on it because of the uncertainty and doubt. Well, the emotional resonance there is uncertainty, doubt, and disappointment. The feeling of grasping after something is really grasping for something that could slip away, to get it as quick as possible because you can’t stand the thought of not having it. And so that’s what you get. Not only is your constant awareness blocking that thing from happening, but the fearful desperation underlying anticipation emotionally resonance the future of disappointment. That’s why antsy anticipation more often than not prevents a probable future from manifesting synchronistically.

When something is blocked synchronistically, only you through your own willpower and actions can make it happen by directly working for it, assuming it can be gotten that way.

To answer your question though, for attracting things I need, I use reality creation for “what” and “why” of what I need and try not to focus on the “when” and “how”. So I’m focused on the end result only and do more energizing of it with my intent and emotion than I repel it with my thinking about in the first place.

For repelling bad things, I both try to emotionally resonate with a feeling of protection to attract that, and mentally survey the “what/when/how” of those bad things to block them with my awareness.

Also, the longer you have kept yourself in a state of balanced positivity and a connection to the Divine, to spiritual devotion and responsible action, the more “magnetic” you become to attracting positive futures. In fact, just be being more uplifted in your spirits for a prolonged time (takes about
three days to get the flow going) you can have more positive things happen to you without your even having to intend for it. Like you’ll be at the right place at the right time. I think that’s the ideal and most ego-less way to be, because using reality creation to attract specific things is still using a crowbar to pry open a probable future that you decided you want which isn’t necessarily what’s always best for you. But if your heart feels it, then it’s usually okay, and then just go for it.

» Who are the main alien players in this scenario and how do they fit in?

The ones that consistently pop up in both the real research and the disinfo, are your typical Nordic types, Grays, reptilians, and mantis-beings. Although the Grays and Nordics are more ubiquitous. There are also human military abductors (or hybrids in uniforms) but they work behind the scenes. The Nordic types (which can also have dark hair) are positive or negative depending on the faction, and as you may have read elsewhere they can also be clones.

Negative Nordics are the so-called Orion STS. If you ever watch Stargate SG1, they’re symbolized in that series as the various human-looking Goa-Ulds and System Lords. Grays are tools for the most part that carry out the mission of whoever programmed them, so they’re negative most of the time. I think there are some positive reptilians, but only a small minority. I haven’t heard of any positive mantis beings except in disinfo literature trying to make them appear positive.

» I just finished reading Fringe Knowledge and it was really an eye opener for sure! The one section that REALLY freaked me out is the Alien abduction one. I must admit that this keeps me from falling asleep!

Yes, back in junior high when I started reading up on alien abductions, nights became a scary time for me. If I would wake up at 2AM, I would stay awake until 3AM because I read that abductions happen most frequently around 2:30AM. But even as a kid, I would leave the light and radio on when sleeping because subconsciously I knew that things were around or could pop into the room when my eyes were closed.

Right now, there are a couple things you can do aside from leaving some lights on. One is requesting to higher positive forces that you be protected as you sleep, and visualize/feel a force field surrounding you and your room or house/apartment, then go to sleep with a feeling of safety that all is well. This really does help keep things out. Another is to get a voice-activated recorder (tape or digital) and let it run at night. Not only does it act as a deterrent, but also if something does happen (physically) you’ll catch it the next day.

» I take issue with your notion that some beings don’t have souls. Intuitively I’m convinced that all life has consciousness and is sacred, even the lives of those who wish to oppress us.

It may be a matter of semantics, like it is possible to say that a rock has a soul because underneath the illusion of physicality is consciousness upholding the essence of its mineral existence, conscious energy vibrating as frozen light. Or it could be narrowed down a little to say that all life, as in plants, bacteria, insects, and fungi upwards, have souls since they are more than just machines and thus endowed with something nonphysical.

In the case of my article, I narrowed it down even more to define soul (or more properly, spirit) as a core of self-awareness that has freewill, higher spiritual aspirations, empathy, that remains intact from lifetime to lifetime and is endowed with individualized destiny and karma, and that gives a
person a spark of divinity allowing them to learn life lessons and thus progress quickly. It’s like conscious energy that has become its own stable vortex growing and growing, rather than just a wind that rises and disperses.

Because it’s the only way I can explain what I have observed of certain people who are strangely two-dimensional and lacking all the qualities that I assume comes with having a soul/spirit. They still have a type of awareness, conscious energy, and are all still part of the unified Creation, but I sense there is something simplistic, hollow, embryonic behind their eyes which I interpret to be that conscious energy not having become a full self-sustaining individual soul yet, but more just a loose bunching of energies.

Normally they are benign, just background characters keeping the world running. When one is activated into baiting you, however, they can become a mirror of you without their own individuality, a kind of “too good to be true” phenomenon where it looks good superficially but it’s more like pretty paint just the way you like it over a rotten interior. It’s like they’re going through the motions of what you’re into, even the esoteric stuff, but it’s more an act for show and you can sense that for them it’s more about the identity and appearance than an equal enthusiasm and thirst for knowledge like with you. Besides, there are lots of other red flags accompanying them, like an overall big time/energy drain, empty promises, and the introduction of disinformation and odd snappiness when you don’t fall for it. They can pretend to understand esoteric ideas but it’s glib repetition of what they picked up and read or seen or heard from others, and when it’s mentioned it tends to have a twist or an ulterior motive. Ultimately you have to psychically step into their heads and see if you sense a real independent mind, or this dull mirage-like hollowness.

It’s just a hypothesis though, and if I come across an idea that explains all of it better, I would change my views.

» I wonder if the negative energy farm is necessary to our spiritual growth in the physical realm. Without it would our souls be challenged to grow and seek truth?

I believe there are modes of soul growth that can take place without the challenge of darkness, energy feeding, and the kinds of risks we face here in this world. But you have to wonder why people go into high risk professions, go skydiving, watch distressing movies, play heart-pounding video games … when they could just stay comfortable doing nicer things. Obviously they get some challenge, glory, excitement, and fulfillment over these things. So I would imagine that souls in a nicer environment can follow their path up to a point before some feel a desire to test themselves and grow in a more challenging situation.

That said, it’s in the process of conquering these challenges that the growth occurs, so in a way they exist to be conquered. Therefore if someone tries to reason that darkness is necessary and therefore we should just let it be and not challenge it, that’s a logical fallacy. Darkness will always exist so long as freewill exists, and our job then is to choose and act on the alternative in the face of it all, using the shadow to define the light.

» If all of mankind were enlightened what would be the spiritual benefit of existing in the physical realm?

Well, based on what I’ve seen and read, such societies first of all reach a more transcended state of
existence where physicality is also overcome, but generally speaking there are plenty more lessons and challenges to handle. One type is the challenge of group cooperation and growth. Another is perfecting the self beyond mere intellectual enlightenment. And another is now working as a civilization to help other civilizations out who are still in an imbalanced and precarious situations. As you know, this could include incarnating into those civilizations and hoping you have the mettle and soul strength to make a difference in their world. That’s what I think is the role of some people here on Earth right now.

But I’m pretty sure that once a level of the game has been won, it’s on to the next level. So if the physical realm no longer serves the needs of those in it, they will move onto something a bit more complex, like going from tic tac toe to checkers and then chess.

» If teachers and truthseekers can choose to reincarnate and potentially awaken mankind to its full positive potential, does that mean that Universal Consciousness is making a choice to unify its infinite variety of finite fragments back into one singular consciousness?

It is the fragment of that consciousness within those people that, by its very nature, is stirred into loving and helping others become more aware and free. We have dual natures within us, two faces of Creation, one that rejects the pure core within and seeks control at the expense of others, and one that acts from its pure core and seeks freedom for the benefit of all. So the choice happens on an individual scale to help uplift others and oneself to manifest the Creator more.

I also get the impression that the journey matters more than the destination, and that the infinite fragments winding their way back to unity have more the function of experiencing a unique path and thus having infinity understand its infiniteness in an infinite variety of ways, rather than separation being something terrible that must be run away from, toward unity, as quick as possible.

» I feel, in my soul, that mankind is going to be faced with something very soon. I feel that it will be potentially devastating to those who are not awake.

Yes, fortunately and unfortunately that is so. I foresee an accelerating cascade of changes. It’ll be like a sinking ship. People will have to choose between holding onto their valuable furniture on the ship and drowning (the old ways), or letting go and acclimatizing to the new realities and ideas. I foresee synchronistic conditions changing so that those who don’t adjust will meet with mounting resistance and misfortunes. It’s known that people with emotional suppression, anger issues, etc. often get cancer because of it, because they are not letting go and adjusting, and something similar may happen if there is a collective environmental change of conditions that requires letting go and adjusting. Accompanying this we have social and political upheaval, increased weather disasters and volcanic/seismic activities, energy and food crunches, the imminent contact with mankind by alien forces, and more… wild ride!

» Do you think that the Matrix series was created and released with divine intervention? What are you thoughts on the movie?

The Wachowski duo may have been front-men for a script that was either written, or at least outlined, by some secret society they somehow got involved with. Their biographies are very short and seem fabricated. Why are there no neighbors, classmates, or relatives giving interviews on their memories of these guys?
The reason this movie was released, I think, is because both sides light and dark get something out of it. The dark gets a good programming tool for teaching an us vs. them mentality, that people in the matrix are expendable, that you are elite, that violence is cool. The light gets a good metaphorical tool for exposing the hidden slavery behind what we perceive as reality, and the transcendence needed to break out of it.

There is a lot of truth in there, spiritual, historical, hyper-dimensional. For instance, when it mentioned that the Matrix was reset five or six times already, that is true to reality with mankind having been wiped out five or six times already, or perhaps the timeloop being reset that many times and we’re now on the sixth or seventh iteration of that loop. One of those two possibilities. The doorway being open for 314 seconds, well 3.14 is Pi which represents a circle, and seconds represents time, thus timeloop. Outside in the hallway of the Oracle’s apartment there is Pi graffiti’ed on the wall with a red circle and slash through it, probably indicating no circle, or breaking the loop.

Also the idea of machines burrowing ever deeper toward Zion until they break through and all hell breaks loose. That may symbolize negative forces getting ever closer to being able to manifest physically and starting up an overt war, where so far they’ve had to be very delicate operating from behind the dimensional veil.

And with Agent Smith multiplying and taking everyone over, that seems to be happening a lot with people succumbing to spiritual death and being like puppets for a shadowy intelligence working through them when needed.

And in the end, everything becoming apocalypse but then getting rewound deus ex tempus and everything fixed so that there’s a happy ending, a common theme you’ll see in other movies like Dark City, Ice Pirates, Galaxy Quest, one of the Harry Potter films, which relates to how all this is going to turn out in the world… how things can get really really bad, or maybe already has, and whoever wins in the end will not only win it for the future but also be able to alter the past accordingly. So whatever we go through now may get rewritten for the better if we win, or maybe we are living now the past of that victory… just a guess. That’s all hyper-dimensional stuff.

» My philosophical undertakings have brought me nothing but pain. I feel the more I understand the more I’m disconnected from humanity.

That is another problem, or you could say rite of initiation, that truthseekers go through … becoming ever more separated from sleeper people. It’s an age old issue that students of esoteric mysteries also had to deal with. They dealt with it by creating a split in themselves between how they acted to the normal world, and who they really were to themselves, on their own time, and with others of their kind. It’s okay to act enough to get by, like social camouflage, up to a point where others demand you devote too much time and energy to their shared mundane pursuits and false dreams where you just have to decline.

There are others like you out there, and if synchronicity doesn’t help you find some in person, then on the internet you’d have to do with website and especially forums/message boards where you’ll gravitate to others who are on your wavelength, and then it can progress to instant messaging or Skype and eventually hanging out in person if travel allows it.
But it’s also very important to begin building an internal source of interest and strength, where you could theoretically stand on your own, solitary but not lonesome. For me this is staying fascinated with learning about things, figuring out mysteries, doing what still gives me a feeling of enthusiasm and interest. Maybe self-improvement, exercise, art, music, whatever… because there’s nothing worse than having time on your hands and using it to fret about something you cannot currently change. So during those lulls, do what fulfills you in a healthy way, and who knows it might actually lead to where you’re to go next.

» The whole alien issue is just like with people, one has to interact and through experience one comes to know people as well as ETs. Judge a tree by its fruit I like to say.

I understand, and I have interacted with positive ETs as well although they tend to be more discreet so as not to cross the line of freewill violation. The problem is that they are so much more genuine, wise, spiritual, and lofty compared to the types of positive aliens often portrayed in alien, channeling, and exopolitical literature. Even worse is that I know for fact there are negatives pretending to be friendly just to gain rapport, stroke egos, and lull people into a false sense of security and trust.

So if you focus on the friendlies without knowing how to distinguish between them and the impostors, you would be like a person trusting anyone who acts friendly including the charming con artist. What I’m saying is that you don’t have to focus on the negative in order to be suckered by it. The opposite actually, if you are unaware of a deception you are wide open to it.

Indeed it’s just like with people… there are those who are easy to spot as psychopaths, and others who are very slick and tell you everything you want to hear without compromising their true goal. Two flavors of evil, one bitter and one sweet.

It is naive to think only of friendly peaceful positives versus negative paranoid human Cabal. That dynamic exists, but there’s also negative aliens working with the negative human Cabal against the true positive ETs, and they do it pushing a false positive alternative, namely what you read concerning Grays being here to genetically advance our species and bring us into the next phase of global evolution, and other lies. There is so much disinformation “backing up” this deception that no wonder most people fall for it.

I therefore call for a higher level of awareness, discernment, and sophistication in dealing with this subject. There really is no reason why the possibility of negative ETs pretending to be positive should go unconsidered, and why the question of how to distinguish them from the genuine positive ETs should not be asked.

» Now about which ones predominate. The way I see it has to be that friendlies that predominate because if unfriendly ones did it would be all over. I think it is simple as that!

Well, that’s along the lines of “Any civilization advanced enough to cross the galaxy must be advanced enough to have eradicated all its negative tendencies, thus aliens can only be good” — which again underestimates the sophistication and cunning of commercial forces looking to exploit new areas. I mean, the Spaniards crossed the mighty Atlantic in ships advanced for their time, but only because the investment was ultimately worth the returns in slavery and precious metals.

Concerning your point, I agree that if the negatives were truly dominant and could therefore do
anything they wanted, it would be over. But it’s also more complicated. First complication is that positive ETs are very patient, wise, and respectful of our freewill. They will allow our planet to be deceived and enslaved if we choose it, because it will be our choice.

Furthermore, that the positives are greater in number does not mean that the aliens already in contact with our governments, with abductees, channelers, are therefore in the majority positive. Reason is that the discretion of positive ETs holds them back, quiet and silent except to those who truly need and have earned their contact. Meanwhile, negative ETs are very eager to sink their hooks into anyone and everyone who unwisely opens that door.

Therefore the great majority of channeling, abduction, and government witness testimonies involve contact with negative ETs often pretending to be the good guys. And it’s these same impostor ETs that are now, thanks to the opinion leaders in exopolitics, being portrayed as our necessary guides to the new millennium. So it is more complex, and I can only hope that enough will shift from the simpler to the more complex understanding in order to avoid falling for the most successful deception of all time — evil under the guise of good.

> All I am asking you to consider is that there may be a contradiction in your thinking. If the unethical are manipulative then they are affecting perception and could and are making themselves out to be stronger than they are. If they were strong they would not have to be covert, right? If they were strong they could just move right in and take us over. So what is holding them back?

Well, if you read the First Earth Battalion manual by Jim Channon you see the kind of thinking and strategy that these negative ETs seem to employ. They probably believe in what they are doing, that they are doing what is best for themselves and for us. And they believe in non-destructive conquest. That kind of conquest requires presenting themselves to us as the good, logical, and necessary choice, so that we hand ourselves over willingly. From the viewpoint of dark occultism, there is no better way of conquering your victim than having them invite you in willingly, as with freewill being preserved it contractually allows you to carry out things that previously were barred by divine intervention. So even if they were so strong that they could just land by the millions and enslave us by raygun-point, the kind of conquest they are after is much more sophisticated with a bigger metaphysical, hyper-dimensional, occult payoff. Non-destructive control is the higher way.

But at the same time, I agree that the negative ETs are smaller in number than the positive ones. That is indeed why they have to be so covert and cunning. Though to reiterate the point from my last email, since they are more ubiquitous than the positive ones, they are what the mainstream alien/abduction researcher knows and think of as “aliens.” In other words, that the positive ETs are greater in number doesn’t mean the majority of what the public perceives as “aliens” are positive. And so when exopolitics people talk about the importance of opening diplomatic channels with “aliens” – it is the negative ones that many of them are inviting in since they don’t know about negative ETs pretending to be positive, and don’t know how prudent and restrained the genuine positive ETs tend to be. The positive ones are too discreet and beyond our monkey-politics to sign treaties, do trading of technologies, or appear on Times magazine cover shaking hands with the President. Whoever ends up playing that role will earn my suspicion.

I think the best way people could handle this situation is to do some deep soul-searching and study of metaphysics and spirituality to know what matters and what is never worth giving up. They can
learn the deceptive tactics used by negative ETs, and most of all they can learn what the positive ETs are really like and what it takes to become spiritually initiated enough to establish mutual contact with them on a personal and group level.

» Do you believe the stuff you’re writing, or is this satire/immersive sci-fi? I really want to know.

No, it is not satire or sci-fi, although it seems that way to some people who haven’t had the anomalous experiences or investigated anomalous phenomena. It’s this layer of reality that many cannot relate to, but for others it’s everyday life. Whether I believe all of it — well, I consider it all a theory to explain what is otherwise unexplainable, and so if I find out that I’m wrong or come across a better explanation, then I’ll trash my old belief and try out the new one.

Anyway, the things on my site are best taken as a suggested interpretation, and if you read it once, then maybe down the line when something odd dawns on you about yourself, others, reality, paranormal phenomena, etc. you’ll remember what you read and make a connection much faster as to what it could be than had you never read it.

Also keep in mind that different types of people get attracted to the fringe subject – those who do it for entertainment, those who try to build up their identity with it, those who use it to make a buck or rip people off, those who are just plain nuts, and finally those who are more sane and logical than “normal” people and pursue truth into uncharted territories. It’s easy lumping them all in the same category, but really what I write on my site is the product of hard observation, investigation, testing, and research. But — like I said on my front page, take only what makes sense and applies to your life so far, and leave the rest for another time.

» How can you write such enlightened information while at the same time being interested in heavy metal and negative forms of music with negative lyrics???

You asked about my interest in music. The answer is that metal is fundamentally about power and the archetypal basis of my purpose here is divine warriorship or knighthood. So the idea of divine power and spiritual battle permeates my soul. You may have noticed that aside from the spiritually uplifting material, I also write about the tactics used by dark forces and how to win against their attempted manipulation and suppression.

I deal more with higher positive forces, higher negative forces, higher spiritual principles, and so on. Thus my main interest is in the positives and negatives of what is beyond the mundane human sphere. And the metal I enjoy often juxtaposes these two, the divine beauty element with the opposite, to capture a very broad spectrum of dynamics and themes that transcend the mundane themes of pop music. I’m mainly talking about epic doom, melodic doom, and symphonic metal, and then only certain bands within those genres (Therion, Orphaned Land, While Heaven Wept, Warning, Whispering Gallery, Edenbridge).

The only other kind of music that gets transcendental might be certain forms of classical, and thus I like classical also, mainly the baroque fugues and sacred polyphonic works like those of Palestrina and Monteverdi. It is all complex music that explores the extremes of human talent and potential. It matches my attitude to this whole life as being one of heaviness, seriousness, duty-bound, on-a-mission, sorrow for the suffering of others, and so on. Thus I resonate with heavy, serious, powerful music.
Now, regarding the negative lyrics, that I agree with you. I really wish some of these bands would be more positive in their lyrical themes. For some reason the bands that do have more positive lyrics tend to have weaker music. There are exceptions. I consider music way more important than lyrics, however, so some things I allow since there are no perfect bands out there. But I also write/compose music, and the upcoming songs I am making will be metal but with positive lyrics. Maybe my taste will change over time, since I’m still in my 20s.

» I’ve been asking myself what is true about upcoming roles as we shift into a new “illusion” that would cause me to stifle myself? How do we remember who we are?

I am facing the same challenge of “remembering who I am.” And I don’t know whether this entails truly regaining my memories of my mission and identity prior to losing consciousness of this upon incarnating, or whether it means identifying the core within me that is the source of my intuition, wisdom, compassion, and discernment? If the latter, then that is doable with discipline … you just identify what is ego, what is selfless spirit, and focus on living, thinking, feeling, and acting from your spirit. The hard part then is distinguishing between the real spirit, and ego dressing up in spiritual clothing.

There is something I call “entering into confluence with the heart” which is where you carry out a truly heart-based thought, feeling, action, words, etc. in a single-minded way where you lose awareness of your personal self and are wholly absorbed in freely expressing forth this love. If in the middle you become aware of what you’re doing and go “gee look I’m being so loving right now” then that is ego hijacking the process. But if you can act purely without self-consciousness from a higher place within, getting into the flow, then you are in a way living as your REAL self. Does that count as remembering who you are? Again, I’m not totally sure. At least it’s a step in the right direction.

Now, there is another way of remembering, which I haven’t yet succeeded in accomplishing but I’ve read enough from different great sources to know this is the way. And that is to meditate — not just sitting there blanking your mind, but lying down and letting go of your body, entering into a lucid trance/dream state where your consciousness is free of the physical brain and body. And from there, you can plumb the depths of your subconscious and discover clues that are otherwise barred to your regular linear waking consciousness. The state is called “mind awake body asleep” — all it requires is a shift of the etheric body out of the physical, or turning deep within and entering into a new “inner” world. I strongly think that if you can do this, explore it, sooner or later you will retrieve your true identity. Living from the heart may vibrationally raise and energize you enough that, should you operate outside your physical body, you will then have the energy and frequency necessary to unlock those hidden memories and realizations.

Also, only when you remember who are you are in the literal sense, will you have the certainty and conviction you need to carry out your mission. So that’s what I know about it so far, and am trying… As far as resources go, “How to Know Higher Worlds” by Rudolf Steiner, and “Cry of the Eagle” (second book by Theun Mares) are good resources on this.
Science

Science Intro

30 July 04 (science)

Science encompasses the study of nature and its laws. Physical reality as we know it is built upon certain rules and structures separate from our own chosen perspectives. These can be codified in via mathematics or visualized geometrically. By understanding science, mankind changes his relationship with nature. Some use knowledge of natural laws to more effectively place their personal will over the forces of nature, while others use this knowledge to better harmonize their personal will with nature. The latter brings balance and bounty, while the first brings imbalance and diminishing resources. The world today runs on a power base that relies upon imbalance and diminishing resources to sustain itself as the sole providers of these resources. Technologies that advance individual freedom by connecting man directly with nature instead of through the church of scientism and industry are heavily suppressed or corrupted. Thus, technology – while not substituting for spiritual evolution – does represent an important factor in catalyzing spiritual evolution if it helps free one from material limitations and preoccupations.

Metaphysics of Physics

• Science studies the chains of causality. When effects can be predicted from causes, the effects can be controlled by controlling the causes. This is how science is used today – to predict and thus control outcomes, particularly how the forces of nature work toward advancing or hindering our own will. Because science is knowledge, and knowledge is power, those who desire power tend to have research divisions heavily involved in secret science – the more they know, the farther up the causality chain they can act, and thus the more effects they can control.

• When we incarnate into physical bodies, we agree to abide by certain limitations and rules. This “contract with physicality” is really an agreement to follow the laws of physics as the majority of people experience them. It is necessary to allow the learning game of life to proceed smoothly with freewill preserved for the maximum number of participants. This contract, however, does constitute certain permissions whereby those exploiting the laws of physics can in turn exploit the individuals who adhere to them. This is why higher dark forces are fond of technology – rather than engaging freewill directly, they use clever ways of working around freewill through the various metaphysical “legal” channels and loopholes to attain their desires.

• Science and technology increase the leverage of one’s freewill, thus increasing power. Thus, it can be used to maintain control over a lesser leveraged population, or it can be used as counter-technology to level the playing field. Unfortunately, the majority of those who attempt to bring liberating technology into mainstream use and thus upset the power monopoly are killed. This shows that while metaphysical advancement and knowledge are important, the effectiveness of this knowledge increases when used in conjunction with technological advancement and scientific knowledge.

Suppression of Science
• Because science acts to increase the leverage of one’s freewill, the last thing those in power want is for their subjects to gain increased leverage and thus diminish the power ratio. Thus, liberating technologies are either regulated or suppressed. These technologies include free energy, antigravity, psychotronics, time travel, reality engineering, cancer cures, teleportation, etc… — all of which exist at the secret government level but none of which is open to the public. The greater the technological difference between master and slave levels of society, the greater the power difference.

• Researchers of unconventional science who faced suppression include the following: Nikola Tesla, Thomas Townsend Brown, John Searl, Stefan Marinov, Eugene Mallove, Wilhelm Reich, Royal Rife, and Joseph Newman. There are many more who have been eliminated or silenced prior to becoming publicly known.

• Science and mathematics as taught in our public educational institutions have been dumbed down and rigged to prevent exploration into sensitive areas. This is done through tricks of logic that play upon the intellect’s many vulnerabilities, namely the inability to differentiate absolute from relative values. Certain concepts and variables are discarded on the basis of irrelevance or arbitrariness, when in actuality they are far from arbitrary and instead provide the doorway to secret sciences. Subjects are frequently taught in compartmentalized and overly abstract ways to prevent students from understanding subjects on a gnostic level, meaning on a geometric and intuitive foundation. The latter is necessary to allow true progressive and creative use of knowledge, but what is encouraged instead is applying formulas and definitions in mechanical ways, resulting in refinement rather than evolution of knowledge.

Toward a True Science

• Mathematics and geometry describe the rules and structure of the game we all play. However, the outcome of a game does not depend solely upon its rules and structure; the players’ freewill choice must also be taken into account. Among other things, physics equations aim to predict definite effects from definite causes. With freewill as a variable, the effects cannot be entirely predicted. Quantum mechanics provides the best example of this, being a theory of statistical trends rather than deterministic equations because quantum systems always involve a level of uncertainty.

• A true science would have to include both a complete description of deterministic physical rules and structures, and allow for the nondeterministic influences of freewill choice. This would make physics a harmonious subset of metaphysics.

• The problem of incomplete science is solved by cutting the Gordian knot rather wasting energy trying to untie it. In other words, rather than forcing further refinement of existing mainstream theories, it would be better to revisit the assumptions upon which they are based.

The Bigger Picture

• Because knowledge is power, and not all individuals can handle power responsibly, there is good reason why much technology remains hidden from the public. The general rationale is that were certain technologies to fall into the wrong hands, there would be devastating
results. For example, teleportation technology used by criminals would render bank safes obsolete.

• On the other hand, it is through suppression of technology that the manipulators of this world maintain their overwhelming control. One avenue of control and funding for the elite, the oil industry, would crumble if free energy technology replaced petroleum technology, and if the transition were smooth, we would be liberated from dependence upon finite energy resources. The extra time, capital, and energy gained could then be applied toward progress instead of survival.

• So regarding the suppression of knowledge, it is a question of which poses a greater threat: the irresponsible use of knowledge by the ignorant, or the hoarding and consequent abuse of knowledge by the elite? The first justifies keeping certain knowledge secret, the second justifies its release to disempower the manipulators.

• At the highest levels of truth, there is no difference between technology, occultism, and metaphysics – for all are part of a whole and the grand truth in one thus contains the grand truth in the other. Rules and structure still exist outside physicality, and these can be included in science with provisions made for freewill choice. A complete science would place astral planes, parallel dimensions, synchronicities, consciousness, etheric fields, telepathy, vital energies, emotional energies, volition, hyperdimensional existence and timeloops all under the same framework. At present, these appear to be phenomena distinct from science, but that is because science as we know it is incomplete. It is not that these phenomena can be explained in terms of present science as reductionists and debunkers enjoy doing, but rather that present science must expand to accommodate these phenomena in terms of higher physical and metaphysical principles.

• To know nature is to know one portion of the Creator. To know yourself is to know another portion of the Creator. Because what is within mirrors what is outside, and what is outside mirrors what is within, knowing both nature and yourself makes for a straight path toward knowing the Creator.

Time: Reversible or Irreversible?

20 June 04 (science)

Classical physics says time is reversible because its laws hold true whether time flows forward or backward. Thermodynamics says time only flows forward, because were it to reverse, entropy of an isolated system could decrease which would violate the second law of thermodynamics.

So is time reversible or irreversible? The answer cannot be deduced from either classical physics or thermodynamics because both are flawed in their assumptions.

Classical Systems are Timeless

Classical physics only deals with deterministic systems whose past, present, and future are entirely contained in a single timeless equation. As a result, for such systems time does not exist except as
spatial increments marking the various aspects of a static pattern frozen in eternity. Moving one way or another on a static pattern does not change it, and for this reason the laws of classical physics hold true regardless of whether the time variable is positive or negative. Because time is not an intrinsic part of deterministic systems, classical physics has nothing valid to say about the real nature of time.

**Thermodynamics Is Just A Suggestion**

Thermodynamics is a statistical science that calculates trends rather than individual events. This means it sweeps complex molecular motion under the rug and only makes observations about the resulting lump. It is important to remember that according to classical physics, molecular motion is deterministic, implying that thermodynamic systems must also be deterministic because they are merely collections of deterministic molecules. If the components of a system are time reversible, then so must the system itself.

So why does thermodynamics claim time is irreversible? Because due to the overwhelming complexity in keeping track of every deterministic molecule, it is forced to ignore this level of precision where reversibility resides.

The illusion of time irreversibility in thermodynamics arises from two problems:

1) its inability to calculate a system with absolute precision, which prevents it from mathematically confirming time symmetry, and

2) that its laws are based on incomplete statistical observations and assumptions.

Time symmetry or reversibility requires that the laws of a system in question do not change when time is reversed. In classical physics, this is easy to check because past and future of a system can be calculated with absolute precision. But thermodynamics cannot completely know the total characteristics of a system because its molecular details are too complex to take into account. So it cannot even compare the forward and reversed systems to check for symmetry because they are too complex. On this point alone, thermodynamics is therefore inconclusive about the nature of time.

**Thermodynamics Makes Statistical Laws Apply to Individual Cases**

Resorting to statistical observations, it forces a match between limited laboratory observation and mathematics by fatally assuming that instead of collections of deterministic particles, things are made of perfect fluids. This is done as a matter of practicality to smooth over the randomness of molecular motion, which unfortunately throws out its inherent deterministic and time reversible nature.

Assuming a perfect fluid is like assuming that each family in America has exactly 1.3 children, to match the national statistic. While this is a neat mathematical device, when it gets taken too seriously any family's claim to have two children is seen as an impossibility because it would "violate the statistical law."

Likewise, when time is reversed and entropy decreases, the resulting violation of the second law of thermodynamics should be no cause for alarm because the second law is only a unique statistical trend, not an absolute pillar of physics as its supporters claim. It seems universal only because the
mathematics apparently support it, but remember that the math in thermodynamics is built upon the assumption that systems are made of perfect fluids.

While the systems to which science has restricted its observations do show increasing entropy, this says nothing about the ignored systems. What applies to the minority need not be universal for the majority. In truth, a decrease of entropy violates nothing because it is not an impossibility – it simply has lower probability than were the system to increase in entropy. Therefore, the mathematical and observational proof in thermodynamics are insufficient to claim that time is irreversible.

Proper Definition of Time Irreversibility

So how do we determine whether time is reversible or irreversible, being that classical physics and thermodynamics have now been eliminated from the debate? We see that thermodynamics is on the right track – stated another way, time seems irreversible because the future is more uncertain than the past. While the past can be clearly observed from observation of what transpired in a system, if calculations are unable to perfectly predict the future as well, the future will seem murkier. So the future seems always “in the making” which gives rise to an apparent forward flow of time.

But this murkiness of the future is only due to incomplete information concerning the individual particles of a thermodynamic system. Were we to know them in detail, we could indeed see that the future is as certain as the past and that time in that case is reversible. The nearsightedness of an observer says nothing about the intrinsic fuzziness of the object observed; that science cannot determine the future state of a system does not mean the system itself is nondeterministic.

Quantum Mechanics Proves Direction of Time

It should now be clear that only nondeterministic systems are time irreversible. Time cannot be symmetric in systems whose future is not already contained in some tidy equation connecting it with the past.

Do such systems exist? Yes, quantum processes are nondeterministic by nature. What state a wave function collapses into cannot be predicted mathematically. Quantum mechanics is a lot like thermodynamics in the sense that its laws deal with the statistical trends of random processes, except there is one crucial difference: the unpredictability of a quantum system comes not from shallowness of an observer’s perception, but on the intrinsically nondeterministic nature of the system itself.

Then how exactly does time arise? By consciousness sequentially choosing which aspects of quantum wave functions to manifest as physical experience. Choice is nondeterministic because were it not, it would already be pre-decided, leaving no choice. Choice necessitates freewill, so the irreversibility of time ultimately stems from freewill being neither predictable nor easily undoable.

Perhaps this sounds like new age mumbo jumbo to you, but all this is self evident from the mathematics of quantum mechanics. There are no hidden variables in quantum theory, only those created on the spot by conscious selection. Nothing in quantum physics contradicts this idea.

Consciousness and Quantum Phase

The phase of a wave function is entirely “arbitrary” according to physics, and it is precisely this
phase that creates huge consequences for how a time-dependent wave function evolves and interacts with other wave functions. In truth, this phase factor is not arbitrary, but deliberately chosen at some level of consciousness because being detached from the deterministic (statistical) parts of quantum theory, phase is left entirely at the discretion of choice. This shows how mind ultimately affects physical reality, not by violating its classical laws, but by working through nonlinear systems to amplify “arbitrary” quantum fluctuations into macroscopic effects.

Time dependent wave functions show how consciousness creates time. The only reason they appear to evolve through time is that they consist of multiple stationary states (wave functions independent of time) whose various phases change to produce a “moving” wave function. But these phases are chosen by consciousness, and since it is the phases that give rise to the seeming time-dependence of a wave function, it should be beyond debate at this point that consciousness creates time.

Furthermore, once a wave function has “collapsed” (one disc of the jukebox selected to be played), it cannot “uncollapse”. The collapse of a wave function is not time reversible because mathematics cannot calculate it equally well forwards and back. Only linear systems which are perfectly predictable are time reversible. So once more, time is irreversible when, and only when, it comes to quantum systems and freewill choice.

The Interface Between Quantum and Classical Systems

How does all this fit with the systems of classical physics? Classical systems are merely series of deterministic effects, while conscious choice is the original nondeterministic cause.

The interval between deterministic events is known as linear time, which is illusion for the simple fact that the span between first and last effect is redundant and thus nonexistent except to the observer choosing to observe it as real. Deterministic systems appear to move only because our consciousness slides its observational focal point along the eternally static pattern of the system, not because the system itself is changing.

As an analogy, the songs on a CD do not change with time because they all exist simultaneously as data on a disc, and any illusion of time between beginning and end of a song arises solely from them being played as such. When a CD is played, it progresses at a default sequence, direction, and speed – but these can be changed if one chooses to skip tracks, increase the speed, or listen to it backwards, all without actually changing the CD itself.

True time does not span intervals of deterministic sequences, but rather intervals of freewill choice. If consciousness were to choose to view the static pattern backwards, sideways, or in jumps, then that is perfectly permissible. The term “irreversible” only means that there exists a tendency for time to progress in the direction that conscious choices are made.

Thus, reality progresses in piecewise deterministic jumps. This can be compared to how road trips consist of roads and intersections. What roads have been traveled determine which new roads are available at an intersection, but not which particular road will be chosen. Quantum physics equations show what roads are available, but consciousness ultimately decides which to follow.

And so it is with reality – the choices we make determine what choices are available, but not which ones we’ll end up making. Thus, classical and quantum processes interact to give rise to the rich dynamic fractal we call life.
Some call it weather engineering, others call it rain-making; cloudbusting is the science of correcting unbalanced weather patterns. With the right equipment, skills and conditions, one is able to initiate breaks in droughts and the weakening or deviation of torrential storms. Cloudbusting principles are based upon Wilhelm Reich’s research into orgonomy.

Orgone is a creative life-force energy that manifests in various ways, from sexual biological functions to psychological states, and from thermodynamic effects to meterological phenomena. According to orgonomy, the function of such systems depends upon the amount, quality, polarity, flow, and direction of orgone energy. The redirection of orgone energy effects changes in these systems. Various devices known as orgone accumulators, cloudbusters, and DORbusters are capable of storing, emitting, or redirecting orgone energy.

There are many articles, books, and videos to be found on this subject. Those wishing to consistently experiment with are strongly encouraged to familiarize themselves with this subject before beginning to experiment. The purpose of cloudbusting is to correct unbalanced weather systems, or experiment to learn how to do so.

Cloudbusting is not for those who want a thrill, are consistently reckless, want financial gain from influencing the economy by manipulating weather, who wish to feel powerful, or use the principles of orgonomy for any negative or selfish reasons. One may certainly attempt to use it for these reasons, but karmic, ethical, and metaphysical consequences are severe. Also, it is the conscious nature of orgone that obstructs its detrimental utilization by those with negative soul characteristics, for such negativity atrophies the flow of orgone within such individuals to a degree that they become less successful in their attempts to do so.

One must also have an understanding of meteorology and have access to live radar and weather maps and know how to read them. Aside from the scientific aspect, there is also much visualization and intuition involved.

Several articles on this website introduce one to orgone theory and cloudbusting:

- **Microbusting** shows how weather may be influenced on a local level, within the visible sky. It is based upon my couple years of experimentation and observation. This article was written in 1998, and has some outdated theory, but the methods described are effective.

- **Macrobusting** shows how weather can be influenced on a national level, how low and high pressure systems may be triggered with the help of cloudbusters. Again, this article has some outdated theory, but methods described do work.

- **Cloudbusting Demonstration** is the account of an experiment conducted in Florida, to test the responsiveness of weather in subtropical environments. Additional factors, such as the soul nature of observers, unfortunately resulted in a strong response greater than I had ever encountered or could have predicted. This article presents a basic introduction to cloudbusting theory.
Experimenter’s Equipment has many photos, anonymously submitted, of actual simple cloudbusting devices, with construction details.

When the reader searches for other sources of information on orgonomy and cloudbusting, he will encounter the works of several researchers. I will list their names, recommend some items they have published, and give my opinion on each of them.

Wilhelm Reich

CORE – Cosmic Orgone Engineering. This is the definitive cloudbusting manual, written by the discoverer of orgone energy. It is absolutely essential that one obtain and read this manual in full, for it provides a foundation necessary to effectively do any cloudbusting operation. The link takes one to a partial online version.

Wilhelm Reich wrote many books, articles, and papers, and I recommend reading all one can find. His work also provides the political, psychological, ethical, and medical implications of orgonomy, all of which is critical to know when it comes to cloudbusting, for “weather engineering” has consequences in each of these areas. The psychological area of study in orgonomy explains why many people are emotionally armored, mentally sick, and incapable of understanding or accepting the idea of orgone energy or cloudbusting. However, because of the limited time Reich had to do his research, and the time period in which he experimented, some of his research is incorrect or outdated.

Dr. James DeMeo

Orgone Accumulator Handbook – explains how to build and experiment with orgone accumulators. This is the best and most concise book on the nature of orgone energy and how to experiment with it. Includes diagrams and plans.

So You Want to Build A Cloudbuster – long article by Dr. DeMeo discussing misconceptions and unheeded cautions by modern day cloudbuster experimenters. He makes many good points, and one should read this article to gain a wider perspective of the implications of cloudbusting. Good as this article is, there are some problems. First, Dr DeMeo is a conservative orgonomist and sticks strongly to Reich’s original principles, some of which I find outdated and incorrect. Second, not everything can be viewed through the eyes of orgonomy, rather, orgonomy is a subset of a larger uncompleted paradigm. Third, Dr DeMeo ridicules the chemtrail idea, saying they are ordinary contrails and indicate healthy orgone concentrations in the sky – he obviously has not done adequate research into chemtrails.

Trevor James Constable

Loom of the Future – A book-length interview with Trevor Constable, with pictures, diagrams and news excerpts that detail his modern method of cloudbusting. He has expanded orgonomy principle, and built cloudbusters many times more effective than Reich’s equipment. This book also discusses the ethical and political aspects of orgonomy. Highly recommended book.

Etheric Weather Engineering on the High Seas – Constable’s video proving the efficacy of his cloudbusting devices, with time lapse photography and footage of his devices in operation. Also recommended.
Trevor Constable has done decades of hands-on research into cloudbusting, and has developed new concepts along the way that allow smaller, but more powerful cloudbusters to be built. He has documented his experiments and includes them in his book and video. Constable’s work points way to the larger paradigm of which orgonomy is just a small part.

**Don Croft**

*How to build a Chembuster, Holy Hand Grenades* – those researching cloudbusting will eventually run into Don Croft’s chembusters, of which DeMeo is so critical. I have built and experimented with some of Croft’s devices, and am familiar with their theory and application. They utilize a matrix of plastic resin and metal shavings, crystals, perhaps magnets, and copper pipes or wires.

I have an unfavorable opinion of these devices. First, their construction isn’t based on any solid testing or theory. Second, the Holy Hand Grenades are claimed to disable negative influences from cellular phone towers, which I know is absolutely false because such devices have no effect on the electromagnetic radiation coming from the towers, into which the harmful effects are encoded. Third, because orgonite transforms rather than generates or depletes orgone, chembusters are not as effective as traditional water-based cloudbusters which show instant results under the same conditions. Fourth, while the basic theory of orgonite seems sound, the various derivative devices based upon it are indiscriminately channeled or imagined. Depending on who the source may be for some of these designs, they might actually be harmful, if not just causing people to believe they are doing good when they are wasting their time with ineffective devices. And fifth, busting chemtrails does not get rid of the chemicals therein, which fall slowly to the ground anyway. This is not an armchair criticism, but an analysis derived from actual experimentation and participation. This particular field is interspersed with wishful thinking, disinformation, and misplaced paranoia. Not to say there isn’t honest research being undertaken in this area – I just urge those who experiment in this area to at least get an understanding of the fundamentals of orgonomy from Reich himself.

(index)

**The Biefeld-Brown Effect**

30 July 04 (science)

What is antigravity? An artificially generated gravity field that can oppose earth’s own and provide propulsion.

The earliest modern discovery of antigravity belongs to Dr Alfred Biefeld, professor of physics and astronomy at Denison University. According to an old article in FATE magazine, in the early 1920s Dr Biefeld performed laboratory experiments involving capacitors charged with high voltage alternating currents. When charged, these capacitors would violently “twist and lurch” before burning out. This indicated that charged high voltage capacitors exhibited self-propulsive effects. Further research into this anomalous phenomenon was taken up by Thomas Townsend Brown, then a physics student at Denison University working for Dr Biefeld. This began Townsend Brown’s lifelong research into antigravity.

Brown’s first experiments consisted of two lead spheres connected by a nonconductive glass rod, like a dumbbell. One sphere was charged positive, the other negative, with a total of 120 kilovolts between them. This formed a large electric dipole. When suspended, the system moved toward the
positive pole, arcing upwards and staying there against the force of gravity tugging downward. This showed that electric dipoles generate self-acceleration toward the positive pole. This experiment was repeated in oil, in a grounded tank, proving that ion wind was not responsible.

Improved versions of this setup replaced the lead spheres with metal plates, and glass rod with dielectric plates or blocks. This created a high voltage parallel plate capacitor with one or more layers. Brown’s British patent #300,111 – issued in 1927 – described what he termed a “cellular gravitator” consisting of numerous metal plates interleaved with dielectric plates, the entire block wrapped in insulating material and end plates connected to output electrodes and a spark gap to limit the input voltage. This device produced significant acceleration.

Later, Brown experimented with saucer-shaped disks with positive and negative electrodes on opposite sides. This created an open-air high voltage capacitor that combined the electrogravitational effect with ion wind phenomena for propulsion. They worked well in air, and they worked well in vacuum.

Interestingly, the majority of modern articles investigating Brown’s work tend to focus on disk gravitators. Because they include ion wind as part of their operation, debate has arisen whether the Biefeld-Brown effect cannot be explained away entirely by ion wind. Brown’s 1927 patent, however, described a self-contained device that exhibited no ion wind effects and relied solely upon the electrogravitational action arising from the electric dipoles within the gravitator-capacitor.

In my opinion, the cellular gravitator is far more important in demonstrating the validity of the Biefield-Brown effect than the debatable disk-shaped gravitators. Why did Brown never mention cellular gravitators again after the 1930s, considering they unequivocally proved electrogravitation? Maybe because that part of his research became classified. The remaining public aspect, particularly his later patents, were limited to ion wind type devices, or at least those that included that possibility so as to make the electrogravitational aspect more ambiguous. We should remember that Brown was allegedly involved in Project Rainbow, suggesting that much of what we know publicly of his work may only be the “soft” stuff.

Let us therefore focus on the more important part of his research, the cellular gravitators. There were several factors Brown recognized affecting their behavior and the strength of the electrogravitational effect. These are listed as follows:

1. **applied voltage** — greater the voltage, greater the gravitator swings toward the positive end. However, in his British patent, Brown explained that beyond a critical voltage the gravitator would reverse motion and swing toward the negative electrode instead. Perhaps this was due to dielectric breakdown.

2. **applied current** — current is necessary only to overcome leakage of the capacitor. If current is insufficient, the gravitator will not maintain its voltage and therefore the electrogravitational effect will either wane or not manifest noticeably. Van de Graff generators provide microamps of currents, which is normally not enough to power a gravitator. A solid state high voltage DC generator utilizing a cockroft-walton multiplier would be needed instead.

3. **mass of the dielectric** — determines only the total energy of the gravitator once it swings to a given height. Some sources state that the greater the mass, the stronger the
electrogravitational effect, but this is debatable since Brown never mentioned this and said instead that only the gravitational potential energy increases with mass since $E = m g h$.

4. **duration of impulse** — the gravitator’s impulse fluctuates with time, apparently due to environmental gravitational conditions – particularly those arising from position of the sun and moon. This effect was later employed by Greg Hodowanec in his gravitational wave detector circuits, which monitored the voltage across an electrolytic capacitor that fluctuated as the gravitational influence of heavenly bodies changed with time. Just as capacitors charged with electricity generate a gravity field, so can gravity fields affect the electrical charge of a capacitor.

5. **strength of the dielectric** — higher the dielectric constant, stronger the effect. The dielectric constant measures a material’s ability to store electricity in the form of electric displacement or polarization. The more energy is stored via electric polarization, the greater the electrogravitational effect.

6. **capacitance of the gravitator** — higher the capacitance, greater the effect. So the closer the metal plates, the larger the plates, the greater the number of cells (and as mentioned, higher the dielectric constant of the insulator between metal plates, as this also determines total capacitance), the stronger the Biefield-Brown effect.

7. **geometry of electrodes** — increased asymmetry between electrodes increases the effect. This will be explained below.

**How it Works**

To understand the Biefeld-Brown effect, we must understand why electric dipoles (positive and negative charges separated by a fixed distance) accelerate toward the positive pole. The answer is simple:

Positive and negative charges, in addition to creating an electric field, also generate slight gravitational fields. You could say charged masses warp space more than uncharged masses do. Positive charges induce a convergence in space and negative charges inducing a divergence in space. Thus, positive charges emit a gravitational field while negative charges emit an antigravitational field. This arises purely from the geometry of the electric field, which happens to include a component that shares the same geometry as a gravity field and thus gives rise to one.

Now, an electric charge by itself emits a symmetric field, whether it’s gravitationally attractive or repulsive. So left to itself, the charge goes nowhere. However, in an electric dipole, an interesting situation arises as shown in the following diagram:

![Diagram](image)

Consider positive charges “sucking in” the surrounding space, and negative charges “blowing out” the surrounding space. By separating them at a fixed distance, the fields between the poles “occupy” or “cancel” each other, while the flow/distortion surrounding the entire dipole is biased in one direction. The positive pole sucks in from the left, the negative pole blows out to the right, and thus the entire dipole propels itself leftward toward the positive pole.

In a parallel plate capacitor, the electric fields outside the capacitor cancel, but the divergent and convergent gravity fields do not, which is why a cellular gravitator can accelerate toward the
positive pole without inducing or utilizing any external ion wind effects.

Because electric fields are immensely stronger than gravity fields, it is not generally recognized by modern physics that electric charges contain net gravity fields because the latter are difficult to detect. Nevertheless, certain experimental setups confirm that it is so, such as the gravitator experiment, the different fall rates or pendulum swing periods of oppositely charged objects.

**Asymmetric Electrodes**

It should now be clear that electrogravitational self-acceleration requires a difference in the gravitational divergence between two poles. Using symmetric electrodes, this is done as simply as giving one a positive charge and the other a negative one. But it’s also possible to create additional asymmetry by making the electrodes themselves asymmetric. This changes the spread of the electric field, which in turn affects the geometric component giving rise to the gravity field.

Toward this end, Brown experimented with umbrella and disk shaped gravitators. The umbrella devices consisted of two electrodes, one positive and one negative, with one electrode shaped like a large bowl and the other like a smaller bowl. Overall, this formed an open-air capacitor but with asymmetric electrodes, whose asymmetric electric fields generated unbalanced gravitational divergences and increased acceleration. The disk gravitators, described earlier, did the same except one electrode formed the leading edge of the disk, while the other electrode formed the body and trailing edge.

**Lifters**

One common application of the Biefeld-Brown effect is in the form of “lifters” — these are constructions made of balsa wood frames, wire, and aluminum foil. Lifters separate a grid of negatively charged wires from a grid of grounded or positively charged aluminum foil fins. They rely upon a principle patented in 1957 by Townsend Brown (US patent #3,018,394 titled “Electrokinetic Transducer”). While they have been around since the late 50s, lifters haven’t become popular until recently. They are easy to assemble and require only a moderate high voltage supply, around 30 kilovolts.

How do lifters work? The same way Brown’s later devices worked: through a combination of electrogravitational and ion wind mechanisms. The asymmetry of electrodes alone guarantees a genuine electrogravitational component to the propulsion, while it is clear from observing them in action that ion wind is also involved.

Some say that ion wind cannot explain the level of wind generated by lifters. That much I agree with – however, one must also take into account that negative ions create an electrostatic cooling effect, converting thermal energy to kinetic energy, cooling the air while speeding it up. Thus, the wind results not only from air becoming negatively ionized and attracting toward the positive electrode, but also because it gains additional kinetic energy thanks to the negentropic electrostatic cooling phenomenon.

Nevertheless, for those wishing to debunk the Biefeld-Brown effect by attributing it entirely to ion wind, it must be pointed out that closed capacitors, the cellular gravitators, also self-accelerate without any ion wind effects. Electrogravity arises primarily from the gravitational component of the electric field, harnessed for propulsion via the asymmetrical gravitational field of electric
dipoles. Brown also experimented with disk gravitators in vacuum chambers and observed them accelerating nearly as quickly as when run at atmospheric pressure.

Experimental Set up
Confirming the Biefeld-Brown effect would require the following:

1. 200 kilovolt DC, minimum 200 microamps, solid state high voltage generator — these consist primarily of an autotransformer, a TV flyback transformer and transistor circuit, and a many-staged cockcroft-walton voltage multiplier and rectifier. You can buy them from Information Unlimited.
2. metal capacitor plates — made from aluminum foil or aluminum flashing cut into rounded squares. The rounded edges are needed to prevent arcing and corona leakage.
3. dielectric sheets — made from the best dielectric material available. These must be cut into squares that are larger than the metal plates. Polypropylene, polystyrene, mica, and if available, high-K ceramic plates, are appropriate materials. Make sure the sheets are thick enough to prevent dielectric breakdown or your gravitator will burn out.
4. paraffin wax or transformer oil — because the metal plates take up space due to their thickness, there will be slight spaces between one dielectric sheet and another. Once all the plates and sheets are interleaved and bound together, the entire thing is best immersed in transformer oil, or cast in paraffin wax or resin.

These are just the basics…examine Brown’s 1927 patent for more information. Also beware that while a high voltage generator gently zaps you should you touch it, once this electricity is stored in a capacitor it reaches lethal power levels. Once I was stupid enough to peel apart a gravitator capacitor days after charging it with a Van de Graaf generator…thought it was discharged, but the shock I received as I stuck my fingers in there to pry it apart threw me back against the wall. So — only do this experiment if you’re a responsible and smart hobbyist, as I’ll take no responsibility for what you do with this info.

Conclusion
The Biefeld-Brown effect demonstrates a link between electricity and gravity. Given the explanation above, it should be clear why electric dipoles self-accelerate toward the positive pole; the positive pole converges space, the negative poles diverges space, and being that between poles these distortions cancel while outside these poles they point in one direction, the dipole as a whole should accelerate in one direction.

Further Information

- [Thomas Townsend Brown](#) – excellent collection of documents, articles, and pictures of Brown and his research.
- [Rex Research, T. T. Brown](#) – an important article by Brown himself, and a copy of his 1927 British patent.
- [Jean Naudin Lifter Page](#) – theory, documentation, and pictures of the “lifter” experiment.
Earth Grid Research

23 June 06 (science)
Version 0.4 :: March 22, 2010
Original :: Jun 2006

Summary

This is a quick write-up of my ongoing research into the earth grid. Skip to the next section if you wish to bypass my technical speculation on the nature of gridpoints.

Within the spherical center of large masses is a neutral center. John Keely worked extensively with the vibrational neutral centers of resonating masses. I define the neutral center as a point at which the gravitational field sums to zero but gravitational potential is quite high. If sufficiently high, time slows to a crawl and becomes imaginary, meaning spacetime breaks down and opens a window into other dimensions and densities. The Cassiopaeans said the centers of stars and planets are windows.

Neutral centers can be created electromagnetically via radially converging or diverging electric current pulses, spherical standing waves in piezoelectric materials, or via the radial null vectors of large masses as described above.

The earth’s own neutral center is a dimensional window that vibrates at frequencies resonant with the earth’s own spherical harmonics. I’m not certain whether these spherical harmonics correlate to mechanical, electromagnetic, or gravitational vibrations. Whatever the case, standing waves are set up that create equally spaced node and antinodal points on earth’s surface. These points are spaced in various configurations matching the Platonic solids: tetrahedron, octahedron, cube, icosahedron, and dodecahedron.

These standing waves pull from the central dimensional window multiple vortical conduits. Unlike a neutral center which has a null point in the middle of a sphere, these vortical conduits have a null axis inside a tubular vortex. They pierce the earth’s surface at the aforementioned node or antinode points.

Thus, there are dimensional window points spaced equally apart on the earth’s surface – these are the primary earth grid points and correspond to the vertices of the Platonic solids. Their electromagnetic configuration includes little if any magnetic, electric, or gravitational components except in special circumstances at special times. Their primary electromagnetic structure consists of potential fields, both magnetic, electric, and gravitational potential, which are not easily detectable.
Based on calculations, one possible magnetic profile of such a conduit should consist of circular magnetic fields that are weakest at the center and increase in magnitude with distance from the center, a vector plot looking similar to how wheat is laid down in crop circles. This is exactly the reverse of how ordinary magnetic fields behave, which drop off with distance instead. This “reverse magnetism” was hinted by the annotators of the book *Case for the UFO* in regards to gridpoints.

Safe to say, specialized instruments are needed to detect these gridpoints. Such conduits may, however, alter the dynamic characteristics of oscillating electric and magnetic fields brought into them, so a device that can measure displacement current would suffice.

### Platonic Grids

So assuming the earth grid network is distributed like the corners of Platonic solids, plotting the grid would require placing each solid within the globe, aligning one vertex to a chosen geographic location and rotating the rest of the vertices to find all other points. There may be other grids, but here I’m dealing solely with the Platonic grid.

*Richard Hoagland* has investigating the tetrahedral model. Placed within the earth, a tetrahedron with vertex at the north pole has the other three points touching 19.47 degrees south of the equator, and an inverted tetrahedron will have base vertices touching 19.47 degrees north, which falls right on the Hawaiian islands on earth and the Big Red Spot on Jupiter. But the other four Platonic solids are just as important.

The *Becker-Hagens* Grid incorporates both the Platonic solids and the hexakis icosahedron to create a grid of 62 points. It is worth reading the work of Becker and Hagens as they delved deeply into the historical backup for such a grid. A decent article in PDF format can be downloaded [here](#).

There is an interesting map drawn by *Admiral Piri Reis* in 1513, assembled from fragments of other maps known at the time. These maps were anomalously advanced and probably put together from maps dating back to the first several millennia after the Great Flood.

I realized the map showed a grid system that conformed precisely to a dodecahedral configuration overlayed upon the globe. So it seems the ancients were well aware of the earth grid and Platonic solids correspondence — most likely it used to be standard knowledge.

### Computer Program

Now, to test the theory it would be necessary to create a computer program that could calculate the latitude and longitude coordinates of all Platonic solid vertices within the earth given a set of lock coordinates and bearing or rotation angle around that point.

Thus I created a couple scripts written in Python that would produce a list of coordinates that could then be plotted in [Google Earth](#). Here is what the dodecahedron grid looks like:
Two Python scripts, an example output, and a readme file are available in the zip package. The first script (GoogleEarth_bearing.py) requires entering the chosen type of grid, lock longitude, lock latitude, and bearing angle. The second (GoogleEarth_coord.py) is similar but instead of bearing requires a second coordinate point to align the grid with. Instructions are included in the package.

To run them, some quick instructions:

**How To Generate the Platonic Grid using Python**

1. Install [Google Earth](#). Broadband recommended.

2. Install [Python](#), a programming language. (Use only version 2.7.x)

3. Download the zip file containing
   a) GoogleEarth_bearing.py
   b) GoogleEarth_coord.py

4. From the Python folder, run IDLE and open one of the above scripts. It will appear in a separate editor window.

5. Hit F5 from the editor window to run the script, or go to Run -> Run Module

Input prompts and possible values are as follows:

*Shape?* tetrahedron, cube, octahedron, icosahedron, dodecahedron, beckerhagens

*Latitude?* latitude of the locking coordinate (negative for S)

*Longitude?* longitude of locking coordinate (negative for W)
Bearing? *angle in degrees from true north, sets how grid is rotated around locking coordinate*

Instead of bearing, the script `GoogleEarth_coord.py` will ask for *header coordinates*, the point toward which the grid will be rotated. It calculates the bearing angle for you.

6. Locate the output file (ends with .kml) and open it with Google Earth.

Recently (November 2007) I created a web interface to allow generation of these files through your web browser. See the very beginning of this article for details.

Test Grids

Where to look? Starting with the Piri Reis map, one can get a pretty nice match using the Becker-Hagens grid. After playing around with the scripts, aligning various grids to various major landmarks including the Great Pyramids, I recalled an interesting passage from Umberto Eco’s book *Foucault’s Pendulum*:

Now we had the entire modern age filled with industrious moles tunneling through the earth, spying on the planet from below. But there had to be something else, another venture the Baconians had set in motion, whose results, whose stages were before everyone’s eyes, though no one had noticed them…The ground had been punctured and the deep strata tested, but the Celts and the Templars had not confined themselves to digging wells; they had planted their stations and aimed them straight to the heavens, to communicate from megalith to megalith, and to catch the influences of the stars.

The idea came to Belbo during a night of insomnia. He leaned out the window and saw in the distance, above the roofs of Milan, the lights of the steel tower of the Italian Radio, the great city antenna. A moderate, prudent Babel. And he understood. “The Eiffel Tower,” he said to us the next morning. “Why didn’t we think of it before? The metal megalith, the menhir of the last Celts, the hollow spire taller than all Gothic spires. What need did Paris have of this useless monument? It’s the celestial probe, the antenna that collects information from every hermetic valve stuck into the planet’s crust: the statues of Easter Island; Machu Picchu; the Statue of Liberty, conceived first by the initiate Lafayette; the obelisk of Luxor; the highest tower of Tomar; the Colossus of Rhodes, which still transmits from the depths of a harbor that no one can find; the temples of the Brahman jungle; the turrets of the Great Wall; the top of Ayers Rock; the spires of Strasbourg, which so delighted the initiate Goethe; the faces of Mount Rushmore — how much the initiate Hitchcock understood! — and the TV antenna of the Empire State Building. And tell me to what empire this creation of American initiates refers if not the empire of Rudolf of Prague! The Eiffel Tower picks up signals from underground and compares them with what comes from the sky. And who is it who gave us the first, terrifying movie image of the Tour Eiffel? Rene Clair, in Paris qui dort. Rene Clair, R.C.”

The entire history of science had to be reread. Even the space race became comprehensible, with those crazy satellites that did nothing but photograph the crust of the globe to localize invisible tensions, submarine tides, currents of warmer air. And speak among themselves, speak to the Tower, to Stonehenge….

Check out the book, it’s interesting and stocked with clues and secrets hidden in plain sight for those with eyes to see. Basic plot revolves around three intellectuals stumbling upon a Templar
conspiracy to jack into the earth grid and thereby attain ultimate power, a conspiracy initiated six hundred years ago and awaiting a time when technology would be sufficient to make use of these gridpoints.

That the Eiffel Tower might be on a grid point seems logical, and with the Python scripts wouldn’t take much time to test. Inputs were as follows:

Shape? dodecahedron
Latitude of lock coordinate? 48.858209
Longitude of lock coordinate? 2.294359
Bearing? 0

Bingo! With one dodecahedron vertex on Paris, the other grid points aligned with the North and South poles, the two major Piri Reis map gridpoints, the Hawaiian Islands, and Mecca. The chances of this are pretty slim, so I would say with certainty that Paris was intentionally built on a major gridpoint. Here is the output:

Click here for map comparisons (this compares the Piri Reis map to a simpler plot created with PhiGrid instead of Google Earth because for this illustration it makes the points easier to see. The PhiGrid website is gone, but here is a copy of the PhiGrid software). You can download the KML showing a dodecahedron grid aligned to Paris and open it with Google Earth to see for yourself. The Becker-Hagens grid aligned to Paris may also be downloaded.

The calculated coordinates are close enough for horseshoes, off just a little perhaps due to either the rotational pole having wandered slightly or the calculations not taking into account the earth being a slightly oblate spheroid — most likely both.

The one shortcoming of the Becker-Hagens grid is that it has only one alignment. Perhaps there are other alignments. Before the Great Flood, the earth’s pole was located somewhere in middle to northern Hudson Bay, so the earth grid back then was aligned differently. In fact, it could wander over a period of several hundred or thousand years after a major pole shift before it settles into its stable configuration we know today. Different ancients sites built at different times may therefore be aligned to different grids due to the shifting grid alignment with shifting rotational pole orientation.

The ancients, if they were aware of these grids, would need a flexible way of calculating what gridpoints at one period in time correspond with gridpoints at another period in time — in fact, in the Becker-Hagens article linked above there is mention of a globe contraption with an adjustable grid cage over a sphere:
…it may very well be possible these were used to calculate grid shifts over time, which would make sense only if gridpoints can be used for teleportation both through space and through time.

So Paris is on the grid. Perhaps other major landmarks are located on other grids. These other grids could be other Platonic shapes or perhaps the same shape but different alignment.

Whatever the case, once the gridpoints are known the next question is when do they activate, if ever? My hypothesis is that astrological alignments answer this question. In the end, one computer program should be able to plot all the gridpoints and what times they activate. Something like this was discussed in the Time Vector Field Chronicles.

This would have use in tracking ritualistic and extraterrestrial activity, and later to be coupled with technology allowing teleportation, reality engineering, healing, free energy, and antigravity.

Links

Time Vector Field Chronicles — clues about time travel and the earth grid.

David R. Cowan — ley line research

(index)

Ether Physics

7 August 06 (science)

Summary: The forces of magnetism, electricity, and gravity are simply different types of perturbations in a single field that permeates the universe and comprises the fabric of existence. Here is just a brief overview without the math. See the “Further Reading” at the end for links to more technical overviews.

“Everything is flux” – Heraclitus
Our universe is permeated by an ether substrate from which electric, magnetic, and gravitational fields arise. Ether is the medium in which space itself exists and through which electromagnetic and gravitational waves travel.

Circulation in the ether generates magnetic field lines along the axis of circulation. Accelerative flows in the ether create electric field lines in the direction of flow. Compressions or expansions in the ether give rise to gravity and antigravity fields. Certain distortions create neither magnetic nor electric effects and these cannot be detected by conventional instruments.

Ether flows outward from every point in space into the center of every mass. The total mass of the universe therefore determines the total outflow of ether. This outflow establishes in this universe a default ambient ether pressure. The pressure has a certain value in space, drops near masses, and reduces to zero at the event horizon of black holes. It also sets the speed of light.

Changes in ether pressure over some distance creates gravitational forces just as gradients in air pressure create wind, and so masses attract each other. Ether pressure also determines the local rate of time and scale of space. Gravitational force fields are equivalently time rate gradients. The lower the pressure, the slower the rate of time and more reduced the scale of space. Therefore time and space as we know them are ultimately generated by the very masses occupying this universe.

Moving at constant velocity through the ambient ether reduces the locally experienced pressure, slowing time and shrinking space in accordance with Relativity. Accelerating through the ether creates a locally experienced gradient in this pressure, creating a gravitational force field opposite the direction of acceleration and inducing the phenomenon of inertia. This means inertia, like space and time, is established by the total mass of the universe, which explains the physical basis of Mach’s Principle.

The ether is dragged along by electric currents, in the direction of current flow. Compressions or expansions in the ether can be induced by compressions or expansions in the flow of current. Current flowing toward or away from a common center does the same to ether. Also, sudden intense current pulses create compressions in electron flow, and thus linear compressions in the ether to produce longitudinal forces in wires.

Anytime electric or magnetic fields change without inducing the other, the energy in the created wave becomes partly longitudinal, meaning partly gravitational. Because of its geometry, a metal sphere given an alternating electrical charge suppresses the magnetic component of the electric field, and so it functions as a longitudinal antenna. Similar for flat electrodes with large surface areas, which send concussive waves into the ether. Or if electromagnetic standing waves have either the electric or magnetic component cancelled, then longitudinal standing waves would result.

When magnetic fields are rapidly rotated their intrinsic etheric circulation loosens up and partially converts to compression or expansion. Rotating magnetic fields have a gravitational component.

Since electric fields are accelerative flows in the ether, a diverging or converging electric field has within it a compressive or expansive ether component. Negative charges like electrons exhibit a slight antigravitational effect, and positive charges like protons a gravitational effect. When positive and negative charges are kept close but apart, there exists a gravitational imbalance between them and the entire thing will experience a net force towards the positive pole, as demonstrated in the
Biefeld-Brown effect. Maximizing intensity and nonlinearity in the electric field increases the effect. Ether pressure also influences the natural spacing between electric charges and can thus be measured indirectly by measuring charge density.

Anything that induces current can manipulate the ether if properly directed. The greater the intensity and divergence or convergence of the current, the better. Ion-acoustic, piezoelectric, or thermoelectric processes could allow even sound or heat to indirectly interact with the ether.

Through manipulation of ether, its pressure can be artificially reduced in order to warp time and space. If brought to zero, time stops and space disappears. Beyond that, both become imaginary. It is possible to artificially reproduce the event horizon of a black hole. If the pressure is brought down but kept uniform throughout the local space, then there exist no gravitational forces within, yet time and space would still be altered. In this way a portal into imaginary spacetime could be created without the destructive gravitational forces associated with physical black holes.

Further Reading

The Etheric Origins of Gravity, Electricity, and Magnetism — a more technical but math-free explanation of this theory, including numerous diagrams that show visually and conceptually the unity between the three primary forces.

A Brief Introduction to Scalar Physics — my detailed paper on the scalar superpotential theory, which includes diagrams and equations and discusses the following topics: potentials, electric and magnetic force fields, force-free potentials, superpotential, potential-free superpotential, electric and magnetic singularities, gravitation as a function of the vector potential, the fallacy of gauge theory, Maxwell’s Equations, transverse and longitudinal wave equations, displacement current, electrogravitational potential, the relation between mass and charge, time dilation, ambient gravitational potential, derivation of Mach’s Principle and Newton’s 1st and 2nd Laws, inertia and centrifugal force, derivation of the Equivalence Principle.

Scalar Physics Research Center — website dedicated to this subject, containing a short FAQ on the front page and a Resources section with links to papers and websites by others who have discovered the significance of scalar fields and waves.

The Physics of 2012

30 March 07 (science)

[Update 10/2010 – aside from the mechanism described in this article, I believe that earth passing through, or being irradiated by, a dense cloud of etheric energy would also explain the phenomena allegedly associated with the 2012 / Dimensional Shift idea.

If you read this contactee encounter you’ll note that being in the presence of an alien that pumps out intense etheric energy has an induction effect upon the abductee, causing the abductee to likewise glow brighter, and which induces a shift in consciousness toward a more expansive state of mind. Well, a global etheric energy event would do the same to the population, forcing a shift in perception. This includes being able to remember past lives and other suppressed knowledge, including knowledge implanted and encrypted in one’s energy field during a lifetime of abductions.
Therefore if the ambient etheric energy concentration were to suddenly rise, we would indeed see major change take place. It would be like the tide coming in and fish formerly flopping about and gasping, suddenly being able to swim.]

**Introduction**

If the 2012 phenomenon is real, it appears to be more complicated than some assume. My research tells me that in no way does it imply the mass ascension of everyone on this planet, because that would go against the freewill of those who instead of being ready for a higher realm are stubbornly content with the lower. Nor will it happen precisely on December 21, 2012 because that date is supposedly based on only two things: when the Mayan calendar ends and when the sun on winter solstice overlaps the galactic center; the first is of questionable dating while the second already occurred in 1998. The Shift may in fact be more the dimensional effect of a broad wave whose central peak resides on or after 2012, whereby the years immediately before and after the peak might be just as significant. My best estimate is that the window of 2012-2032 is of greater importance than the winter solstice of 2012 itself.

What does the Shift entail? As best as I can tell, it is an ungluing of our consensual collective reality so that the dissonant sectors of the population can diverge onto separate time streams, and then into separate realms of existence altogether. It is a higher degree expression of the same **Realm Dynamics** underlying our daily experiences. At the moment we all share the same planet, and separation among people of incompatible learning paths amounts to geographic separation at best, but more usually involves a simple synchronistic barrier between them so that they rarely cross paths in life. But as the polarization increases and the repulsive tension between dissonant population sectors grow, and as conditions on this planet increasingly leave less room for everyone’s freewill to be accommodated in the same space and time, there will be increasing pressure for more extreme means of separation. According to Realm Dynamics, what begins as mere dislike between individuals can grow to parting of ways, a parting of timelines, and finally parting of dimensions. It is cellular mitosis on the hyper dimensional scale.

What causes the Shift? Why is it cyclical? Why does it relate to astronomical alignments? It may be that our solar system will be passing through a region of spacetime whose conditions vary greatly from our current region. Or perhaps rather than our going toward it, it is coming toward us. Either way, it is worth hypothesizing what physical mechanism could substantiate the Shift.

It’s possible that radiating outwardly from the galactic center are spiral arms of greatly altered gravitational potential. As our solar system moves around the galactic center, it will cyclically enter and exit these spiral arms so that all planets and the Sun experience a simultaneous change in their gravitational potential. Others may have hypothesized similarly, but in this article I will follow this concept through to its logical conclusion and show you why the implications profoundly explain everything we can confidently say concerning the Shift.

**General Relativity: Reaching the Portal Threshold**

The galactic center is a super massive black hole, and black holes are exits from our universe. To understand black holes, one must first understand gravity. All masses give off gravitational force fields that cause other masses to fall towards them and vice versa. But underlying this field is a more fundamental field known as the gravitational potential. To make an analogy, if the gravity
force field is like the downward slope of a hill, then gravitational potential is the measure of height at any point on that slope. Or if the force field is like wind, the potential is like air pressure. It takes changes in gravitational potential over some distance to produce a gravitational force field, just as it takes changes in height to make a slope that things can roll down, or changes in air pressure to create wind. On earth, each height above the surface (or distance from planetary center) carries a different gravitational potential, which creates a “slope” pointing downward (to the center) causing objects to fall if released.

It is evident from Einstein’s Theory of General Relativity that the gravitational potential also sets the rate of time and scale of space. Clocks run slower and vertical rulers are shorter at lower altitudes because the gravitational potential is stronger there. A black hole is so compact and massive that its gravitational potential some distance away is already strong enough to slow time to a stop and shrink a dimension of space to zero. That distance is known as the event horizon, or the Schwarzschild radius. From our perspective, an object entering the event horizon will appear frozen in time, while the object itself is instantly propelled toward eternity and either ejected out of our physical universe or destroyed in the process.

Anyone entering a black hole will most likely be smushed to death because the changes in gravitational potential near the event horizon are so steep that the associated forces are too much to bear. But remember that it is the gravitational potential itself, and not the force field, that slows time and shrinks space. Therefore it is possible to have the same spacetime bending effects without any dangerous forces if the gravitational potential, despite being intense, varies very little within a given volume of space. It would be like a region of high air pressure without any wind. So as long as the spatial gradient in the gravitational potential is negligible, the potential itself can vary freely without accompanying forces.

Where things get interesting is what happens beyond the event horizon, or to put it another way, beyond the value of gravitational potential necessary to stop time. General Relativity has an equation showing how the gravitational potential determines time dilation:

\[
T = T_0 \frac{\sqrt{1 + \frac{2GM}{Rc^2}}}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{2\varphi}{c^2}}}
\]

- \(T =\) dilated time
- \(c =\) speed of light
- \(\varphi =\) gravitational potential

As you can see, the more negative the gravitational potential, the greater the dilated time. Upon reaching a critical value, the potential causes the dilated time to become infinite, meaning that from our perspective the affected clock would take forever to reach the next second. In other words, that is when its time rate slows to zero. This critical value of potential may be called the portal condition:
\[ \varphi_p = \frac{c^2}{2} \]

The portal condition is found precisely at the event horizon of a black hole, but can exist elsewhere in gradient-free and thus force-free form. If the potential grows even more negative than the portal condition, then not only does the time rate shrink to zero, but it actually becomes imaginary. Unlike real quantities which are multiples of one, imaginary quantities are multiples of the square root of negative one, which in practical terms means “an impossibility in one dimension made possible in another.” What we know as everyday linear time is real time. Imaginary time can vary without a single second of real time ticking by, and so it is the only time that continues to exist after one crosses the portal threshold.

Quantum Physics: Beyond the Portal Threshold
Crossing the portal threshold is equivalent to breaking the speed of light, but without moving an inch. It ejects one from real spacetime into imaginary spacetime, which is called hyperspace according to physics, timespace according to the Ra Material, and antimatter or etheric universe according to the Cassiopaeans. If linear time (real time) is really a loop, then crossing zero time and entering hyperspace would mean exiting from that loop. From there, other loops would become open to exploration. These would be parallel timelines.

After one crosses the portal threshold, how does one navigate, where does one go? This is where Relativity leaves off and quantum physics steps in. When time rate is reduced to zero, there is no longer a difference between cause and effect. Rather these exist as a single state from start to finish, simultaneous and overlapping, like a movie reel just sitting there. These are causal or deterministic sequences, meaning sequences where cause leads to a predictable effect without any surprises on the way. Such surprises are called quantum choice points, places where time branches onto any number of alternate possibilities. These represent nondeterministic events whereby consciousness alone chooses from a multiple set of “movie reels” which one to play next. This choice is represented in quantum mechanics as a particular “quantum phase,” a single angle of alignment or position along the quantum wave function. What is the wave function? Unlike particles, which exist as tangible things in a single universe, a wave function is the collection of this particle’s possible states as existing across all its parallel universes simultaneously. When consciousness observes a wave function, it automatically selects from the wave a single phase to lock onto and turn into a tangible possibility to experience.

So after entering hyperspace, it is imaginary time and the fundamental quantum phase (perhaps they are the same thing) that provide the primary measure markers of navigation. After entering hyperspace, consciousness can automatically phase-lock onto the linear timeline of choice and emerge into it by punching back through the portal threshold into real spacetime.

The Shift as Macroscopic Quantum Wave Expansion
Now, what does this have to do with 2012? Possibly everything. As mentioned, the hypothesis given here is that the galactic center radiates waves or spiral arms of altered gravitational potential.
According to the unified field theory, there are a variety of mechanisms to generate such waves. Whatever the mechanism, if the solar system undergoes a gravitational potential change that exceeds the portal condition, our reality would literally become unglued.

See, the reason we are currently sharing the same planet on the same timeline is because we are all phase-locked onto the same fundamental quantum phase and thus the same primary reality. Our individual instances of reality are bound together because we are collectively stuck at the bottom of the same gravitational potential well, like marbles piled together at the bottom of a depression in a rubber sheet. Incidentally, the portal threshold is the amount of potential required to overcome the potential well of the entire physical universe. If the marbles were elevated beyond the lip of the depression they could escape, and likewise if we experienced a boost in our gravitational potential, our collective reality would dissolve. And that is exactly what would happen if we passed through an sufficiently altered region of spacetime, or if a gravitational potential wave passed through us. I believe this is the key mechanism behind the Shift.

Let’s say that 2012-2032 does involve a cataclysmic alteration of our gravitational potential to the point where everything opens up. Then anything would go, anything is possible, future and past merge into a single moment of eternity, spacetime blows up into infinity, and consciousness is blasted into hyperspace. In the years leading up to this point, reality would simply become more plastic and responsive to our consciousness due to the changed gravitational potential loosening things up, but after that point reality would dissolve entirely. And after being tossed into hyperspace, consciousness would simply phase-lock onto whatever reality befits it. Far from being New Age speculation, this follows directly from a creative application of quantum and relativistic physics.

So what the Shift really means in this context is the unlocking of the gravitational chains that bind us to each other, so that a natural sorting or resettling process can occur where individuals can diverge onto new realities that best fit their own spiritual needs, realities that best resonate with their own quantum phase spectrum. The latter part is properly called a “macroscopic quantum wave collapse” — which is a term others have previously used, but here I tell you that this is only half the equation. The other half is meeting the portal threshold in the first place, which is the only way a tangible reality can be “uncollapsed,” and that requires a gravitational potential wave whose peak amplitude is beyond the portal threshold. Put another way, the Shift is a macroscopic quantum wave expansion followed by a macroscopic quantum wave collapse. It is the opening and closing of the door to our reality. The Sampo grinds once more!

What happens afterward depends on the individual in question. Those of the least spiritual polarization and awareness may, like birds too young to fly being tossed into the air, fall immediately back into a limited linear timeline without remembering anything different. Our memories are part of the linear timeline and change along with any alterations to that timeline. Others may have gained sufficient personal energy and spiritual polarization to no longer be stuck inside gravitational potential wells, giving them a new degree of freedom to enter and exit timespace / hyperspace at will. That level of existence is called “fourth density” but here I wish to give a technical hypothesis of what that really means: total quantum phase freedom and conscious navigation through imaginary time.
The Future in Your Hands

Ultimately this means that where (and when) we end up depends on where we need to end up, on the culmination of our spiritual choices in life, and on what resonates most with our soul natures, because it is these that determine what realities we access after entering hyperspace.

That’s why it’s incredibly unrealistic to say that come 2012 everyone on earth is guaranteed to ascend to a higher level. That scenario would violate the freewill of those not ready and encourage passivity since, with ascension being guaranteed, all one needs to do is sit around and wait until 2012 comes, which is no different from the Christian Rapture or other doomsday lifestyles that promote passively waiting for the end. As far as the common criticism goes that even the kind of Shift mentioned in this article is no different from Rapture theories since it deals with a “grand event” that leads to a “judging of people” — keep in mind that the criteria for the sorting process discussed here is based entirely on freewill and spiritual necessity rather than some backwards moralistic dogma, and that the only ones doing the judging are the individuals themselves (or rather their own higher selves).

Realm Dynamics explains why the principles underlying the Shift are the same ones active at a lower degree in our lives everyday. If you want to know what your quantum phase resonance is, look at the kind of experiences you are attracting right now. What is the “theme” of your life experiences? Are you madly clambering for material satisfactions, stepping over others to attain your ambitions? Do you constantly suffer misfortune after misfortune, hostility, and persecution? Or do you strive for greater awareness and balance, with your life having its regular share of miracles? There are a thousand further questions, but these should get you thinking.

To vector onto the optimal reality trajectory, it takes a combination of optimal attitude, awareness, and action. More on these in another future article, but see my research note on attitude vs awareness. The greater your awareness, the more harmonious your attitude, and the more responsible your actions, the more you resonate with positive probable futures. Leave one of these out and the triad is broken, imbalance arises, and problems inevitably creep in.

I believe that if we do our part to empower ourselves, assist others in need, and continually reinforce the connection with our inner voice of intuition and spiritual conscience, we will ever come closer to remembering who we are and why we are here. With this “blueprint” of higher awareness fully activated in our souls, what precipitates from the hyperdimensional state is a new reality in full harmony with that blueprint.

Intelligent Design

2 August 09 (science)

God designs what only God can design. The rest is delegated to lesser beings who design lesser things. In being the greatest being of all, God therefore designed only the greatest things of all, that which cannot be created by any other being in existence. That thing is existence itself.

Lesser beings design only what lesser beings can design. Those beneath them lack the ability to create the same, and those above them would be interfering with the purpose of Creation if they denied lesser beings the opportunity to advance through exploration of their own potential.
Therefore higher beings don’t interfere with what is only for lower beings to do, and lower beings can’t interfere with what only higher beings can do. Therefore everything is designed only by the lowest order of intelligence that can design it. Therefore God did not design everything in existence.

God designed existence but does not micromanage it. Through the freewill and intelligence of conscious beings inhabiting that existence, existence continues designing itself. God is both beyond existence as a singular infinite being who created it, and within existence as the total plurality of finite beings experiencing it. This is about an infinite being exploring its infinite potential through an infinity of finite beings.¹

**Nature**

Again, everything is designed only by the lowest order of intelligence that can design it. Your car did not come together solely by natural causes, nor was it assembled by God, rather it was built by humans.

Some things are completely the products of nature. Nature is the lowest intelligence of all since it is simply the framework of matter, energy, and spacetime that operates according to the rigid laws of physics.² Some higher being must have designed those laws, but that higher being did not design everything that resulted as a consequence. Thus if a rock is stirred by the wind and falls off a cliff then splits in two upon hitting the ground, the two halves were not designed by the higher being, rather it was blindly “designed” by nature through the convergence of deterministic factors that lead to it splitting in a certain way.

Modern science attempts to explain everything as the convergence of deterministic factors. Life is just the deterministic consequence of atoms coming together to form molecules, and those molecules deterministically combining to form DNA, and so on. But as quantum physics has shown, not everything is deterministic. The laws of physics alone are not enough to account for everything that happens. For instance, nothing of science can predict when exactly a radioactive particle will decay. Some mysterious factor originating outside the physical universe determines the timing. This mysterious factor cannot be found within the physical, thus it is metaphysical. And so the existence of God is proven through the inability of atheism and scientific materialism to offer up material causes for quantum processes.

**What is Life?**

What separates an inert chemical from a living organism? Where does life begin? It begins when nondeterminism enters the picture. Chemicals combine according to known laws, and chemical reactions can be predicted to perfection because nature blindly obeys its programming without the freewill to deviate. But when a system of atoms and molecules becomes complex and sensitive enough that quantum processes at the subatomic level begin influencing big changes on the macroscopic scale, that is when factors outside the physical universe start influencing processes within the physical universe. That is when the transcendent infinite God, or at least an infinitesimal extension, penetrates into the physical universe and begins locally influencing it.

This forms the tiniest seed of life. Life within this universe arises when soul (the metaphysical system) couples to body (the physical system). This coupling happens via quantum processes that allow injection of the metaphysical into the physical. Both the physical and metaphysical then grow...
in complexity through a mutual feedback loop whereby a more complex body enriches the spectrum of experience available, and the resulting growth in consciousness allows for greater influencing of the physical system toward more complex states.

**Random Mutation**

If nature were the sole driving force behind evolution, then natural selection and random mutation would be the only ways in which species can advance. Those ways do indeed occur; in a situation of survival, the strong survive, and thus the species becomes stronger over time. And natural factors like cosmic rays can disrupt DNA to create mutants with a survival advantage. Such random mutations are shots in the dark, however. There are too many harmful mutations possible versus healthy ones to account for the successful evolution of species toward stronger and healthier ones.

There are countless more ways to break something than to fix it. Mutations are entropic and destructive unless guided by an intelligence that can drastically cut down on the number of attempts needed to reach success. Something is needed to shape the probability of mutations toward those that are healthy and have purpose.

Notice that the term “random” in “random mutation” simply means it is something that science cannot predict or explain. The same term is used in physics when referring to quantum jumps, which are also said to be random. Sometimes randomness stems from lack of information about the actual physical cause; other times randomness stems from the cause being nondeterministic and nonphysical. Science refuses to distinguish between these in an effort to pin everything on material causes and turn a blind eye to everything metaphysical.

**The Driving Forces of Evolution**

So some “random” mutations may in fact be intelligently guided mutations. This does not mean that, as Creationists believe, God is the sole intelligent designer of all life. That is because lesser beings are capable of driving evolution. What lesser beings?

Nature, the lowest and least conscious being of all, could drive a small component of evolution but not all of it due to the sheer improbability that purely random factors can produce something as complex as the human being from primordial microorganisms within the time span of several billion years. Also, no life processes can continue solely via mechanical deterministic factors, thus something beyond nature takes part in life, and therefore nature alone likewise cannot produce complex living beings like ourselves.

The next higher intelligence would be the consciousness of the species, whether that of the individual member of that species, or some collective consciousness or group soul unique to that species. If consciousness can couple to the body due to its complexity, then why not a group consciousness that couples to the greater ensemble of members of that species? This would be an intelligence with some level of purpose and intent since its own growth is at stake, and that would shape the types of “random” mutations that occur. Probability can be bent so strongly that irreducibly complex structures may form that are otherwise too complex to be formed solely by nature. If telekinetics can bend spoons and move objects with their minds, consciousness can influence genetics. For those familiar with occult principles, the physical is patterned after etheric structures, and the latter is what is molded by consciousness. If the consciousness outgrows its
bodily form, an impulse could arise that drives a rapid series of purposeful mutations toward a more suitable form.

The next higher intelligence would be direct intervention by advanced beings through genetic engineering. Even if life evolves by default through a bootstrapping process whereby the evolving consciousness evolves the bodily form of its species, that does not mean species cannot also be modified or created by other species through genetic engineering. Further, even if it were extremely improbable for life to arise on a planet, such that according to calculations earth is virtually the only planet that ought to have life, the fact that we can and will achieve interstellar space travel and master genetic engineering means one world can seed life on another, meaning we ourselves are likely seeded, modified, or created by those from other worlds who matured before us. Thus sentient life in one place in the universe can spread to other places, multiplying life exponentially, and offsetting whatever dismal chances of life are allotted by the most pessimistic of scientific calculations. In other words, sentient life spreading life elsewhere is not taken into account by the **Drake Equation** or any other traditional science calculations.

**Examples of Intelligent Intervention**

Humans are most certainly the products of purposeful genetic engineering by various alien factions, although these aliens more likely modified or combined existing species instead of creating humanity from scratch. A few other species like cats and pigs are also odd enough in their characteristics and rapid appearance in history to warrant suspicion of having been genetically engineered. Other species on earth evolved on their own through natural and self-directed intelligent evolution. God is the watchmaker who set it all into motion and then experiences it, intervening theistically only when nothing else can.

Between the theistic view of Creationists and the atheistic view of Darwinians lies a whole spectrum of in-betweens where the truth is more likely found than at either extreme. [Lloyd Pye](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lloyd_Pye) and [William Bramley](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Bramley) make good cases for alien intervention in human evolution and history. [Bruce Lipton](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bruce_Lipton) explains how our own consciousness can modify our DNA through epigenetic processes. I strongly recommend everyone check out their works.

**Conclusion**

With all these options available and evidence pointing to different causes for different examples, the greatest error would be sticking solely to one explanation as the cause of everything. To believe that aliens designed all life on earth is an error. To believe that all life arises from purely physical causes is an error. To believe all life-forms were created as they are by God is an error. To believe all life evolves itself morphogenetically without external interference is an error. The truth is a combination of all of these, depending on the case.

**Notes**

1. The formal term for this philosophy is [Panentheism](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Panentheism).

2. The term “nature” used in this article refers to an omnipresent computer-like intelligence that goes by the following names in other sources: [Word/Logos](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Word/Logos) (Bible, Greeks, Ra Material), **Ptah**
(Egyptians), Malkuth (Kabbalah), Ormethion / First Density (Cassiopaeans), Artifact (Philip K. Dick), Demiurge (Greeks and Gnostics), and Base Level Consciousness (my older writings).